

Oracle® Retail Customer Engagement User Guide



Release 24.0.101.0

F91703—02

February 2024



Copyright © 2024, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Primary Author: Kenneth R Ramoska

Contributing Authors:

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software, software documentation, data (as defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulation), or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs) and Oracle computer documentation or other Oracle data delivered to or accessed by U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software," "commercial computer software documentation," or "limited rights data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, reproduction, duplication, release, display, disclosure, modification, preparation of derivative works, and/or adaptation of i) Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs), ii) Oracle computer documentation and/or iii) other Oracle data, is subject to the rights and limitations specified in the license contained in the applicable contract. The terms governing the U.S. Government's use of Oracle cloud services are defined by the applicable contract for such services. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle®, Java, MySQL and NetSuite are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Inside are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Epyc, and the AMD logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

Contents

Send Us Your Comments

Preface

Audience	xxiv
Documentation Accessibility	xxiv
Related Documents	xxiv
Customer Support	xxiv
Improved Process for Oracle Retail Documentation Corrections	xxv
Oracle Retail Documentation on the Oracle Help Center (docs.oracle.com)	xxv
Conventions	xxv

1 Navigation

About This Guide	1-1
Getting Started	1-4
Navigation	1-5
Navigation Icons	1-5
Task Lists	1-7
Admin Task List	1-8
Campaign Task List	1-11
Customer Task List	1-11
Program Task List	1-12
Job Management Task List	1-12
Segment Task List	1-13
Additional Tasks	1-13
Favorites	1-14
Adding or Removing a Favorite	1-14
Viewing Favorites	1-15
Pin or Unpin Favorite Tasks	1-17
Editing Pins - Navigation Menu Icons	1-19
Editing Favorites	1-20
Edit Favorites - Working with Folders	1-22

Searching Favorites	1-23
Notifications	1-23
Notifications Page	1-24
Accessing the Notifications Page	1-24
Using the Notifications Panel	1-25
Working with Notifications	1-28

2 Customer Home

Search for a Customer	2-1
Associated Customer List	2-1
Filtering by Segment	2-2
Sorting Associated Customers	2-2
Linking to the Customer Dashboard	2-2
Associated Customer Actions	2-2
Add to Personal List	2-3
Create Appointment	2-3
Create Note	2-3
Create Registry	2-4
Create To Do	2-4
Day Planner	2-4

3 Customer Merge Review

Customer Duplicate Set Search	3-1
Duplicate Sets Found	3-3
Sorting Duplicates	3-4
Action Menu	3-4
Approve Duplicate Sets	3-5
Unapprove Duplicate Sets	3-5
Delete Duplicate Sets	3-5
View Duplicate Sets	3-6

4 Customer Search

Customer Search	4-1
Rules for Searching	4-2
Search Criteria	4-3
Customers Found	4-4
Sorting Customers	4-6
Displaying a Customer in the Customer Dashboard	4-6
Creating a New Customer	4-6

Customer Validation	4-6
Rules for Entering Customer Information	4-7

5 Customer Dashboard

Customer Household	5-2
Viewing the Customer Household List	5-2
Personal Lists	5-4
Actions Menu	5-5
Customer Information	5-6
Emailing a Customer	5-7
Editing Customer Details	5-7
Editing Customer Contact Information	5-10
Add, Edit, or Delete a Mailing Address:	5-10
Add, Edit, or Delete an Email Address:	5-13
Add, Edit, or Delete a Telephone Number	5-17
Viewing Customer Details and Contact Information	5-20
Attributes	5-20
Creating an Attribute	5-21
Editing an Attribute	5-22
Deleting an Attribute	5-23
Activity	5-24
Item Purchase History	5-25
Filters	5-25
Item Details	5-26
Transaction Details	5-27
Purchase Profile	5-31
Viewing Purchase Pattern Details	5-32
Viewing Purchase History	5-32
Stratified Segments	5-33
Viewing Stratified Segment Details	5-35
Viewing Customer Stratified Segments List	5-36
Cards and Programs	5-37
Viewing Card Assignments	5-39
Assigning a Card	5-40
Generating a Card	5-42
Offers	5-42
Promotion History	5-43
Filters Panel	5-44
Promotion History Panel	5-44
Segments	5-45

Viewing Customer Segments	5-46
Notes	5-47
Create a Note	5-48
Edit a Note	5-49
Delete a Note	5-51
Alternate Keys	5-52
Adding an Alternate Key	5-53
Deleting an Alternate Key	5-53
Associate Assignment	5-54
Assigning an Associate	5-55
Unassigning an Associate	5-56
Franchisee Assignment	5-56
Assigning a Franchisee	5-57
Unassign a Franchisee	5-59
Merge	5-59
Merging Customers	5-60
Working with Payment Card Tokens	5-62
Refresh Payment Card Tokens Results	5-64
Deleting a Payment Card Token	5-64
Deleting All Payment Card Tokens	5-64
Preference Center	5-64
Working with Preference Types	5-65
Sorting Preference Types	5-66
Adding a Preference Type	5-66
Editing a Preference Type	5-67
Viewing a Preference Type	5-68
Deleting a Preference Type	5-69
Editing a Preference	5-69
Security Groups Assignment	5-70
Assign Security Group	5-71
Edit Security Group	5-72
Tasks	5-73
Adding a Task	5-74
Editing a Task	5-78
Viewing a Task	5-80

6 Promotions

Overview	6-1
About this Chapter	6-1
Promotion Search	6-1

Loyalty Bounceback	6-4
Working with Promotion Results	6-7
Viewing a Promotion	6-7
Viewing Promotions - Marketing Engagements	6-9
Creating a Coupon Promotion	6-10
Working with Coupon Promotions	6-45
Creating Additional Coupons	6-45
Creating a Product Promotion	6-46
Creating a Message Promotion	6-50
Creating an Award Promotion	6-52
Creating a Points for Purchase Promotion	6-62
Creating a Points for Marketing Engagements Promotion	6-90
Creating a Points Promotion	6-114
Promotion Actions	6-138
Editing a Promotion	6-140
Editing a Promotion - Loyalty Bounceback	6-142
Duplicating a Promotion	6-143
Promotion Scorecard	6-145
Viewing the Promotion Scorecard	6-145
Promotion Information - Scorecards	6-154
Promotion Information - Tabs	6-156

7 Offers

About this Chapter	7-1
Offer Types	7-1
Intended Use	7-2
Offers Quick Search	7-2
Offers Advanced Search	7-4
Searching Offers	7-7
Sorting Offer Results	7-7
Creating Offers	7-8
Process by Offer Type	7-8
Create Offers Procedure	7-9
Updating the Information Tab	7-15
Type Pane	7-16
Description Pane	7-17
Options Pane	7-17
Time Rules	7-18
Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	7-20
Assigning a Franchisee	7-20

Unassigning a Franchisee	7-21
Updating the Attributes Tab	7-22
Updating the Qualifying Items Tab	7-24
Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1	7-24
Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 2	7-31
Define Qualifying Items for Offer Tiered Discount	7-38
Update Award Items Tab	7-45
Update Award Items for Group A	7-45
Update Award Items for Offer Type Kit	7-47
Update Award Items for Gift with Purchase	7-48
Update Award Items for Buy X Get X	7-52
Update Award Items for Buy X Get Y	7-53
Update Award Points for Buy X Get Points	7-55
Define Tiered Discount	7-58
Updating Award Points for Marketing Engagements	7-59
Update Shipping Awards Tab	7-61
Using the Review Tab	7-63
Transaction Discount Review	7-63
Line Item Discount Review	7-64
Fixed Quantity/Price Review	7-65
Gift with Purchase Review	7-65
Buy X Get X Review	7-66
Buy X Get Points Review	7-67
Kit Review	7-67
Buy X Get Y Review	7-68
Tiered Discount Review	7-69
Marketing Engagements Review	7-70
Deleting Offers	7-71
Editing Offers	7-73
Duplicating Offers	7-74
Viewing Offers	7-76
Offer Scorecard	7-77
Offer Scorecard Feature Bar	7-79
Metric Tiles	7-80
Revenue LTD	7-80
Average Unit Retail Tile	7-81
Engagements	7-83
Loyalty Points	7-84
Average Points Issued Per Transaction	7-86
Response Rate	7-87

8 Segments

About this Chapter	8-1
Segment Quick Search	8-1
Segment Advanced Search	8-4
Searching Segments	8-7
Sorting Segment Results	8-7
Creating a Segment or Personal List	8-8
Editing Segments/Personal Lists	8-42
Duplicating Segments/Personal Lists	8-44
Viewing Segments/Personal Lists	8-45
Exporting Segments	8-47
Deleting Segments/Personal Lists	8-50
Segment Scorecards	8-53
Segment Scorecard Feature Bar	8-54
Scorecard Analysis	8-54
Stratified Segment Scorecard	8-54
Unstratified Segment Scorecard	8-59
Personal List Segment Scorecard	8-60

9 Registries

Overview	9-1
About this Chapter	9-1
Looking Up an Item Registry	9-1
Creating a Registry	9-5
Step 1: Information	9-5
Step 2: Items	9-7
Step 3: Attributes	9-10
Step 4: Addresses	9-12
Step 5: Review	9-14
Viewing a Registry	9-15
Downloading a Registry Report	9-17
Registry Report Output	9-17
Header Information	9-18
Detail Information	9-18
Editing a Registry	9-19
Deleting a Registry	9-20

10 Programs

About this Chapter	10-1
Program Quick Search	10-2
Advanced Program Search	10-4
Searching Programs	10-6
Sorting Program Results	10-6
Creating a Program	10-7
Editing Programs	10-65
Viewing Programs	10-66
Cards	10-69
Viewing Cards	10-69
View Card - Card Series Actions	10-70
View Card - Programs Actions	10-74
Editing Cards	10-75
Program Scorecards	10-75
Viewing the Tender Program Scorecard	10-75
Viewing the Loyalty Program Scorecard	10-82
Viewing the Award Program Scorecard	10-89

11 Card Administration

Overview	11-1
Card Search	11-1
Card and Account Details	11-3
Basic Card Information	11-4
Actions Menu	11-5
Open Customer Record	11-6
Activate Card	11-7
Add Account	11-8
Card Attributes	11-10
Add Card Attribute	11-11
Editing Card Attributes	11-12
Deleting a Card Attribute	11-13
Deactivate Card	11-14
Merge Card	11-15
Reset Card Expiration Date	11-17
Unblock Card	11-17
View Card Details	11-18
Account Information	11-19
Tender Account	11-19
Award Account	11-32

12 Job Management

About this Chapter	12-1
Job Quick Search	12-1
Job Quick Search - Process Queue and Alerts Tiles	12-2
Job Quick Search - Job Scheduling Tiles	12-3
Job Advanced Search	12-5
Searching Jobs	12-10
Sorting Job Results	12-11
Viewing a Scheduled Job	12-12
Creating a Scheduled Job	12-12
Job Processing Window	12-24
Editing a Job	12-25
Deleting a Job	12-26
Disabling a Job	12-27
Enabling a Job	12-27
Running a Job Immediately	12-28
Viewing a Job in Process Queue	12-28
Jobs and Tasks	12-29
Customer Tasks	12-30
Location Mass Assignment	12-30
Duplicate Search	12-30
Duplicate Merge	12-30
Household Identification	12-30
Home Location Reassignment	12-31
Franchisee Assignment	12-31
Customer Sync Export	12-31
Customer Activity Sync Export	12-31
Customer Attributes Sync Export	12-31
Customer Address Sync Export	12-31
Customer Household Sync Export	12-31
Rebuild Category Totals	12-32
BI/Analytics Package Exporter	12-32
Reset Customer YTD Totals	12-32
Associate Assignment Tasks	12-32
Automated Associate Assignment	12-32
Associate Mass Reassignment	12-32
Customer Segment Tasks	12-32
Unstratified Segment	12-32

Stratified Segment	12-33
Segment Sync Export	12-33
Account Tasks	12-33
Export Card Series	12-33
Release Expired PreAuthorizations	12-33
Points/Awards Transfer Notification Export	12-33
Notify Card Renewal	12-34
Tender Sync Export	12-34
Award Account Tasks	12-34
Issue Anniversary Awards	12-34
Notify Awards Expire	12-34
Award Sync Export	12-35
Update Award Program Customer Map	12-35
Loyalty Tasks	12-35
Distribute Loyalty Awards	12-35
Create Loyalty Awards	12-35
Earn Loyalty Points	12-35
Expire Loyalty Points	12-35
Reset Loyalty YTD Points	12-35
Loyalty Account Sync Export	12-36
Loyalty Account Activity Sync Export	12-36
Loyalty Program Sync Export	12-36
Loyalty Award Transaction Sync Export	12-36
Update Loyalty Program Level Customer Map	12-36
Housekeeping Tasks	12-36
Delete Award Inquiry Activities	12-36
Delete Batch Process Tracking	12-36
Delete Customers	12-37
Delete Gift Registries	12-37
Delete Inactive Customer Addresses	12-37
Delete Inactive Customer Email Addresses	12-37
Delete Inactive Customer Phone Numbers	12-37
Delete Inactive Customers	12-37
Delete Inactive Item Registries	12-37
Delete Inactive Segment	12-37
Delete Job History	12-37
Delete Loyalty Accounts and Activities	12-38
Delete Loyalty Inquiry Activities	12-38
Delete Loyalty Program Summary	12-38
Delete Merged/Archived Customers	12-38
Delete Promotion	12-38

Delete Segment History	12-38
Delete Segments	12-38
Delete Social Activity	12-39
Delete Tasks	12-39
Delete Stored Files	12-39
Delete Transaction History	12-39
Delete Web Service Tracking	12-39
Delete Import Files	12-39
Delete Batch Import History	12-39
OLAP Tasks	12-39
Aggregate Award Program Summary	12-40
Aggregate Loyalty Program Summary	12-40
Aggregate Promotion Scorecard Summary	12-40
Aggregate Tender Program Summary	12-40
Aggregate Loyalty Facts	12-40
Aggregate Tender Facts	12-40
Campaign Tasks	12-40
Dynamic and Recurring Promotions	12-40
Promotion Response Data Import	12-41
Social Network Integration Tasks	12-41
Social Network Listener	12-41
Social Network Update	12-41
Clienteling Tasks	12-41
Task Generator	12-41
Email Notification Tasks	12-41
Batch Import Review	12-41
System Tasks	12-41
OCDS Sync	12-41
Data Sync	12-42
ORPE Sync	12-42
Configure Job Parameters	12-42
Location Mass Assignment	12-42
Duplicate Search	12-42
Search Strategy Field Comparisons	12-43
Duplicate Merge	12-43
Merge Behavior	12-43
Merge Records Logic	12-43
Household Identification	12-44
Home Location Reassignment	12-45
Franchisee Assignment	12-45
Customer Sync Export	12-46

Customer Sync Export - Marketing	12-46
Customer Export File - Marketing	12-47
Customer ,Delete Export File - Marketing	12-48
Customer Sync Export - BI/Analytics	12-48
Customer Export File - BI/Analytics	12-48
Customer Address Sync Export	12-49
Customer Address Export File - BI/Analytics	12-49
Customer Activity Sync Export	12-50
Customer Activity Export File	12-50
Customer Attributes Sync Export	12-51
Customer Attributes Sync Export - Marketing	12-51
Customer Attributes Sync Export - BI/Analytics	12-52
Customer Attribute Metadata Export File - BI/Analytics	12-52
Customer Attribute Export File - BI/Analytics	12-53
Customer Household Sync Export	12-53
Household Export File - BI/Analytics	12-54
Household Customer Association Export File - BI/Analytics	12-54
Rebuild Category Totals	12-54
BI/Analytics Package Exporter	12-55
Reset Customer YTD Totals	12-55
Automated Associate Assignment	12-55
Associate Mass Reassignment	12-58
Unstratified Segment	12-59
Stratified Segment	12-59
Segment Sync Export	12-59
Segment Sync Export - Marketing	12-59
Customer Segment File for Marketing: Stratified Segments	12-60
Customer Segment Export File for Marketing: Unstratified Segments	12-61
Segment Sync Export - BI/Analytics	12-61
Segment Export File - BI/Analytics	12-62
Segment Attributes Export File - BI/Analytics	12-63
Customer Segment Association Export File - BI/Analytics	12-63
Attribute Metadata Export File - BI/Analytics	12-64
Customer Segment Category - BI/Analytics	12-64
Points/Awards Transfer Notifications Export	12-64
Award Transfer Notifications Sync Export File	12-65
Points Transfer Notifications Sync Export File	12-65
Export Card Series	12-66
Release Expired PreAuth	12-66
Notify Card Renewal	12-66
Tender Account Sync	12-66

Tender Account Export File	12-67
Tender Account Activity Export File	12-67
OCDS Sync	12-68
Issue Anniversary Awards	12-69
Export File	12-70
Notify Awards Expire	12-70
Award Sync Export	12-70
Award Account Export File	12-71
Award Coupon Export File	12-72
Update Award Program Customer Map Parameters	12-72
Distribute Loyalty Awards	12-72
Export File	12-73
Create Loyalty Awards	12-73
Export Files	12-73
Earn Loyalty Points	12-73
Expire Loyalty Points	12-73
Reset Loyalty YTD Points	12-73
Loyalty Account Sync Export	12-73
Loyalty Account Sync Export - BI/Analytics	12-74
Loyalty Account Sync Export File - BI/Analytics	12-74
Loyalty Account Sync Export - Marketing	12-74
Loyalty Account Sync Export File - Marketing	12-75
Loyalty Account Activity Sync Export	12-76
Loyalty Account Activity Export File - BI/Analytics	12-76
Loyalty Program Sync Export	12-77
Loyalty Program Data Export File - BI/Analytics	12-77
Loyalty Award Transaction Sync Export	12-78
Loyalty Award Transaction Data Export File - BI/Analytics	12-78
Update Loyalty Program Level Customer Map Parameters	12-79
Delete Customers	12-79
Delete Inactive Customers	12-80
Delete Inactive Customer Addresses	12-81
Delete Inactive Customer Phone Numbers	12-81
Delete Inactive Customer Email Addresses	12-81
Delete Transaction History	12-82
Delete Promotion	12-82
Delete Merged/Archived Customers	12-82
Delete Loyalty Accounts and Activities	12-83
Delete Loyalty Inquiry Activities	12-83
Delete Loyalty Program Summary	12-83
Delete Segments	12-83

Delete Segment History	12-84
Delete Job History	12-84
Delete Export Files	12-84
Delete Import Files	12-85
Delete Gift Registries	12-85
Delete Inactive Item Registries	12-85
Delete Inactive Segment	12-86
Delete Social Activity	12-86
Delete Tasks	12-86
Delete Award Inquiry Activities	12-87
Delete Web Service Tracking	12-87
Delete Batch Import History	12-87
Delete Batch Process Tracking	12-87
Delete Stored Files	12-88
Aggregate Loyalty Facts	12-88
Aggregate Tender Facts	12-88
Aggregate Award Program Summary	12-89
Aggregate Loyalty Program Summary	12-89
Aggregate Promotion Scorecard Summary	12-89
Aggregate Tender Program Summary	12-89
Dynamic and Recurring Promotions	12-89
Promotion Response Data Import	12-89
SENT_EMAILS Promotion Import File	12-89
CLICK_EMAILS Promotion Import File	12-90
OPEN_EMAILS Promotion Import File	12-90
FAIL_EMAILS Promotion Import File	12-91
Social Network Listener	12-91
Social Network Update	12-91
Task Generator	12-92
Batch Import Review	12-92
ODCS Sync	12-93
Data Sync	12-93
ORPE Sync	12-94

13 Reports

About this Chapter	13-1
Report Categories and Report Descriptions	13-1
Account Management	13-2
Award Management	13-2
Campaign Management	13-3

Card Management	13-4
Customer Management	13-4
Item Management	13-5
Location Operations	13-5
Loyalty Management	13-5
Segment Management	13-6
Tender Account Management	13-7
Registry Management	13-7
Task Management	13-7
Displaying Reports	13-7
Running Reports	13-10
BI Publisher Toolbar	13-11
View Report Options	13-12
BI Publisher Actions	13-12
Report Generation Options and Contents	13-13
Account Management Reports	13-13
Account Activity Summary Report	13-13
Award Management Reports	13-16
Award Account Activity Details Report	13-16
Award Account Activity Errors Report	13-19
Award Account Activity Trend Report	13-24
Award Account Balance Report	13-27
Award Account Error Trend Report	13-28
Award Account Last Use Report	13-32
Award Activity by Location Report	13-33
Award Activity by Program Report	13-36
Award Entitlement Expiration Report	13-39
Award Entitlement Redemption (Trend) Report	13-40
Award Entitlement Summary Report	13-44
Award Program Balance Summary Report	13-46
Award Program Definition Report	13-47
Award Redemption Rate Report	13-48
Campaign Management Reports	13-50
Promotion Response by Category Report	13-50
Promotion Response by Date Report	13-52
Promotion Response by Deal Report	13-55
Promotion Response by Location Report	13-58
Promotion Response by Target Report	13-61
Promotion Response Detail Report	13-64
Promotion Target Details Report	13-67
Promotion Target List Report	13-68

Promotion Target Segment List Report	13-71
Card Management Reports	13-72
Card Batch Activation Rate Report	13-73
Card Detail Report	13-74
Card Series Activation Rate Report	13-76
Customer Management Reports	13-77
Address Summary Report	13-77
Birthday Summary Report	13-78
Customer Alt Key Summary Report	13-79
Customer Associate Assignment by Associate and Role Report	13-81
Customer Contact Email List Report	13-82
Customer Contact Phone List Report	13-84
Customer Purchase by Department by Year Report	13-85
Customer Status Summary Report	13-87
Gender Summary Report	13-89
Location (Store) Capture Rate Report	13-90
Postal Code Summary Report	13-91
Social Network Summary Report	13-92
State Summary Report	13-93
Summary Detail Report	13-94
Item Management Reports	13-96
Item Attribute Summary Report	13-96
Location Operations Reports	13-96
Capture Quality Summary Report	13-97
Customer by Home Location Report	13-99
Shoppers by Location Report	13-100
Signup Location (Store) by Postal Code Report	13-102
Signup Location by State Report	13-104
Signup Location Report	13-105
Signup Location Daily Trend Report	13-107
Loyalty Management Reports	13-109
Loyalty Account Detail Report	13-109
Loyalty Account Activity Errors Report	13-112
Loyalty Account Level Summary Report	13-113
Loyalty Activity Type Summary Report	13-115
Loyalty Activity Type Trend Report	13-118
Loyalty Issue Rule Impact Report	13-123
Loyalty Rules Results Summary Report	13-125
Loyalty Rules Results Trend Report	13-127
Loyalty Account Balance Summary Report	13-131
Loyalty Account Last Use Summary Report	13-133

Loyalty Account Life Cycle Summary Report	13-135
Loyalty Account Activity Summary Award Report	13-137
Loyalty Account Activity Summary Issue Report	13-139
Loyalty Program Level Summary Report	13-140
Segment Management Reports	13-143
N-Tile / Range Strata Report	13-143
Segment by Home Location Report	13-145
Segment by State Report	13-146
Segment Count List Report	13-148
Segment Customer Master Report	13-149
Segment Purchase Profile Report	13-151
Segment Trend Analysis Report	13-152
Tender Account Management Reports	13-156
Tender (Account) Activity Summary Report	13-156
Tender Activity Summary by Batch Report	13-159
Tender Activity Type Trend Report	13-162
Registry Management Reports	13-166
Registry Detail Report	13-166
Task Management Reports	13-168
Associate Task Details Report	13-169
Associate Task Summary Report	13-171
Task Status Summary Report	13-173

14 Administration

About this Chapter	14-1
Associate Role Definition	14-2
Adding an Associate Role	14-3
Editing an Associate Role	14-4
Attribute Management	14-4
Filtering and Sorting Attributes	14-5
Creating an Attribute	14-6
Editing an Attribute	14-8
Deleting an Attribute	14-9
Batch Import Review	14-10
Searching for Batch Imports	14-10
Sorting Batch imports	14-12
Viewing a Batch Import	14-12
View Files Processing	14-13
Batch Process Tracking	14-14
Exchange Rate	14-15

Accessing the Exchange Rate Feature	14-16
Working with Exchange Rates	14-16
Sorting Results	14-17
Viewing Exchange Rate History	14-17
Creating a New Exchange Rate	14-18
File Review	14-19
Searching for Available Files	14-20
Sorting Available Files	14-20
Viewing a File	14-20
Downloading Files	14-21
Transfer to Server	14-21
Searching for Transfer Activity	14-22
Sorting Transfer Activity	14-22
Viewing a Transfer Activity	14-22
Retry a Failed Transfer	14-23
Franchisees	14-23
Searching for Franchisees	14-23
Sorting Available Franchisees	14-24
Viewing a Franchisee	14-24
Adding Franchisees	14-24
Editing Franchisees	14-27
Deleting a Franchisee	14-28
Viewing Assigned Customers to a Franchisee	14-28
Import Franchisees using CSV File	14-29
Location Management	14-30
Adding a Location	14-32
Location Information	14-32
Location Attributes	14-34
Adding a Location Attribute	14-34
Editing a Location Attribute	14-35
Deleting a Location Attribute	14-35
Editing a Location	14-36
Managing External Application Access	14-37
Searching Application Clients	14-38
Sorting Application Clients	14-38
Delete an Application Client	14-38
Disable an Application Client	14-38
Regenerate Secret	14-39
Generate Client	14-41
Preference Types	14-43
Sorting Preference Types	14-43

Adding a Preference Type	14-43
Editing a Preference Type	14-44
Viewing a Preference Type	14-45
Delete a Preference Type	14-46
Role Groups	14-47
Sorting Role Groups	14-47
Adding Role Groups	14-47
Editing Role Groups	14-47
View Role Group	14-49
Delete Role Group	14-51
Security Groups	14-51
Accessing Security Groups	14-51
Sorting Results	14-52
Working with the Security Groups	14-52
Creating a New Security Group	14-52
Viewing Security Group Details	14-55
Edit an Existing Security Group	14-55
System Configuration	14-56
Accessing System Configuration	14-56
Categories Configuration	14-58
Viewing Property Configurations	14-59
Working with System Configurations	14-60
Audit Log	14-61
Cancel Deploy	14-64
Deploy	14-65
Export File	14-68
Import File	14-69
Rollback	14-74
Upload File	14-75
Upload Default File	14-77
System Logs	14-77
Viewing System Logs	14-78
Exporting System Logs	14-80
Task Management	14-81
Creating a Task	14-84
Assigning Customers	14-84
Task Details	14-85
Assigning Users	14-86
Deleting Users	14-87
Task Notes	14-87
Editing a Task	14-88

Viewing a Task	14-88
Reassigning a Task	14-88
Web Service Tracking	14-89
Activity Views	14-89
Viewing Operation Details	14-90
Users	14-91
Searching for Users	14-91
Viewing a User	14-92
Editing Users	14-93

15 Segment Queries

Overview	15-1
Segment Query Categories	15-1
Segment Queries	15-2
Customer Demographics	15-2
Customer Contact	15-6
Customer Attributes	15-8
Purchase Activity	15-9
Basic Programs	15-17
Segment Elements	15-20
Promotion Activity	15-21
Strategic Segments	15-22
Loyalty Segments	15-24
Strata Queries	15-28
Loyalty Summary	15-28
Transaction Criteria	15-31
Line Item Detail	15-33

A Calculations

Calculations on Scorecards	A-1
----------------------------	-----

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Cloud Service User Guide , Release 23.0.101.0

Oracle welcomes customers' comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document.

Your feedback is important, and helps us to best meet your needs as a user of our products. For example:

- Are the implementation steps correct and complete?
- Did you understand the context of the procedures?
- Did you find any errors in the information?
- Does the structure of the information help you with your tasks?
- Do you need different information or graphics? If so, where, and in what format?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, then please tell us your name, the name of the company who has licensed our products, the title and part number of the documentation and the chapter, section, and page number (if available).



Note:

Before sending us your comments, you might like to check that you have the latest version of the document and if any concerns are already addressed. To do this, access the Online Documentation available in the Oracle Help Center (docs.oracle.com). It contains the most current Documentation Library plus all documents revised or released recently.

Send your comments to us using the electronic mail address: retail-doc_us@oracle.com.

Please give your name, address, electronic mail address, and telephone number (optional).

If you need assistance with Oracle software, then please contact your support representative or Oracle Support Services.

If you require training or instruction in using Oracle software, then please contact your Oracle local office and inquire about our Oracle University offerings. A list of Oracle offices is available on our Web site at <http://www.oracle.com>.

Preface

This guide describes the Customer Engagement Cloud Services. It provides step-by-step instructions to complete most tasks performed through the user interface.

Audience

This User Guide is for users and administrators of Oracle Retail Customer Engagement. This includes merchandisers, buyers, business analysts, and administrative personnel.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.

Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> or visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> if you are hearing impaired.

Related Documents

For more information, see the following documents in the Oracle Retail Customer Engagement documentation set:

- *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement User Guide*
- *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide*
- *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Release Notes*
- *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Administration Guide*
- *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Batch Processing & Web Services Guide*

Customer Support

To contact Oracle Customer Support, access My Oracle Support at the following URL:

<https://support.oracle.com>

When contacting Customer Support, please provide the following:

- Product version and program/module name

- Functional and technical description of the problem (include business impact)
- Detailed step-by-step instructions to re-create
- Exact error message received
- Screen shots of each step you take

Improved Process for Oracle Retail Documentation Corrections

To more quickly address critical corrections to Oracle Retail documentation content, Oracle Retail documentation may be republished whenever a critical correction is needed. For critical corrections, the republication of an Oracle Retail document may at times not be attached to a numbered software release; instead, the Oracle Retail document will simply be replaced on the Oracle Help Center (docs.oracle.com), or, in the case of Data Models, to the applicable My Oracle Support Documentation container where they reside.

This process will prevent delays in making critical corrections available to customers. For the customer, it means that before you begin installation, you must verify that you have the most recent version of the Oracle Retail documentation set. Oracle Retail documentation is available on the Oracle Help Center (docs.oracle.com) at the following URL:

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/industries/retail/index.html>

An updated version of the applicable Oracle Retail document is indicated by Oracle part number, as well as print date (month and year). An updated version uses the same part number, with a higher-numbered suffix. For example, part number E123456-02 is an updated version of a document with part number E123456-01.

If a more recent version of a document is available, that version supersedes all previous versions.

Oracle Retail Documentation on the Oracle Help Center (docs.oracle.com)

Oracle Retail product documentation is available on the following web site:

<https://docs.oracle.com/en/industries/retail/index.html>

(Data Model documents can be obtained through My Oracle Support.)

Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
boldface	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
monospace	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the window, or text that you enter.

1

Navigation

This chapter provides a brief description of how to get started using the Customer Engagement Modern View.

About This Guide

This guide contains the following information:

1. [Navigation](#)
 - [Navigation Icons](#)
 - [Task Lists](#)
 - [Favorites](#)
 - [Notifications](#)
2. [Customer Home](#)
 - [Search for a Customer](#)
 - [Associated Customer List](#)
 - [Day Planner](#)
3. [Customer Search](#)
 - [Customer Search](#)
 - [Customers Found](#)
4. [Customer Dashboard](#)
 - [Customer Household](#)
 - [Personal Lists](#)
 - [Actions Menu](#)
 - [Customer Information](#)
 - [Attributes](#)
 - [Activity](#)
 - [Purchase Profile](#)
 - [Stratified Segments](#)
 - [Cards and Programs](#)
 - [Offers](#)
 - [Segments](#)
 - [Notes](#)
 - [Alternate Keys](#)
 - [Associate Assignment](#)

- Franchisee Assignment
 - Merge
 - Preference Center
 - Tasks
5. Promotions
- Promotion Search
 - Viewing a Promotion
 - Creating a Coupon Promotion
 - Creating a Product Promotion
 - Creating a Message Promotion
 - Creating a Award Promotion
 - Creating a Points for Purchase Promotion
 - Creating a Points for Marketing Engagement Promotion
 - Promotion Actions
 - Editing a Promotion
 - Duplicating a Promotion
 - Promotion Scorecard
 - Promotion Information - Scorecards
 - Promotion Information - Tabs
6. Offers
- Offer Types
 - Intended Use
 - Offers Quick Search
 - Offers Advanced Search
 - Creating Offers
 - Editing Offers
 - Duplicating Offers
 - Viewing Offers
 - Offer Scorecard
7. Segments
- Segment Quick Search
 - Segment Advanced Search
 - Creating a Segment or Personal List
 - Editing Segments / Personal Lists
 - Duplicating Segments / Personal Lists
 - Viewing Segments / Personal Lists
 - Exporting Segments

- Deleting Segments / Personal Lists
- Segment Scorecards
- 8. Registries
 - Looking Up an Item Registry
 - Creating a Registry
 - Viewing a Registry
 - Downloading a Registry Report
 - Editing a Registry
 - Deleting a Registry
- 9. Customer Validation
- 10. Programs
 - Program Quick Search
 - Advanced Program Search
 - Creating a Program
 - Editing Programs
 - Viewing Programs
 - Cards
 - Program Scorecard: Tender Programs
- 11. Job Management
 - Job Quick Search
 - Job Advanced Search
 - Viewing a Scheduled Job
 - Creating a Scheduled Job
 - Editing a Job
 - Deleting a Job
 - Disabling a Job
 - Enabling a Job
 - Running a Job Immediately
 - Viewing a Job in Process Queue
 - Jobs and Tasks
 - Configure Job Parameters
- 12. Reports
 - Report Categories and Report Descriptions
 - Displaying Reports
 - Report Generation Options and Contents
- 13. Administration
 - Associate Role Definition

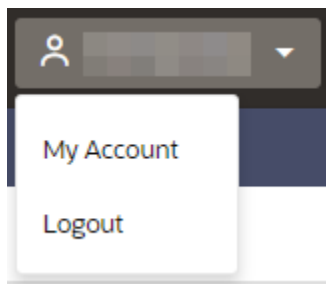
- [Attribute Management](#)
 - [Location Management](#)
 - [Preference Types](#)
 - [Task Management](#)
 - [Creating a Task](#)
 - [Exchange Rate](#)
 - [Security Groups](#)
14. [Card Administration](#)
- [Overview](#)
 - [Card Search](#)
 - [Card and Account Details](#)
15. [Segment Queries](#)
- [Segment Query Categories](#)
 - [Segment Queries](#)
 - [Strata Queries](#)
16. [Calculations](#)

Getting Started

User Options are accessed by clicking the User Name after a successful login.

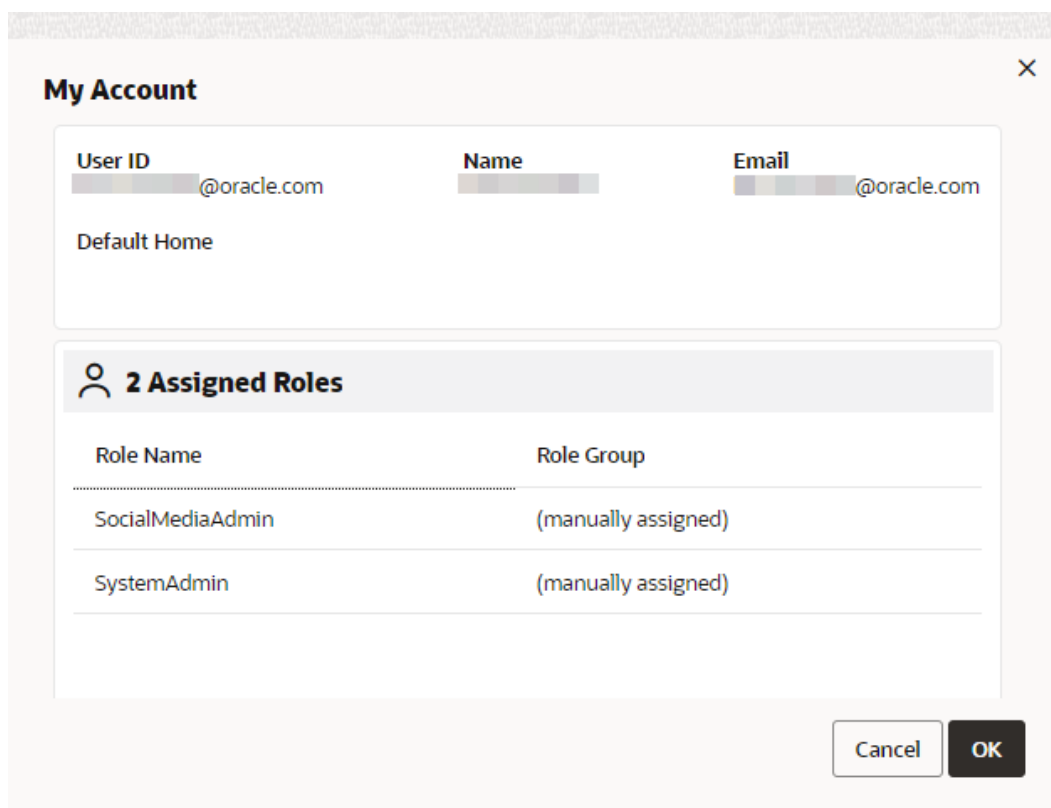
They include:

Figure 1-1 User Options



- **My Account** - Displays your profile and the assigned roles. Depending on your access privileges, you may be able to change your Default Home. If available, select the desired Home Page and click **OK** to confirm the selection.
- **Logout**- Logs you out of the application. Click **Yes** to logout, or **No** to return to the application.

Figure 1-2 My Account



Navigation

Navigation Icons













When you first log in to the application, it displays a menu and toolbar that you can use to navigate to other areas of the application. Your administrator can assign a roll to determine your start page. Roles include:

- If you have the Customer Home user role, the Customer Home landing page displays.
- If you have the Promotion user role, the Promotion Home landing page displays.
- If you have the Segment user role, the Segment Home landing page displays.
- If you have the Program user role, the Program Home landing page displays.
- If you have the Job Management user role, the Job Management Home landing page displays.

 **Note:**

If a user has multiple "home" roles, this will be the priority of the home window the user lands on after login.

- Customer Home
- Promotion Home
- Segment Home
- Program Home
- Job Management

Icon	Description
	The Menu icon pins/unpins the Menu.
	The Favorite icon displays frequently used Tasks and Reports. See Adding or Removing a Favorite for more information.
	The Tasks icon displays a Search for a task search box, where you can enter text to search for Task submenu options, along with links to the Home and Customer pages. See Note below for more information.
	The Notifications icon alerts you to items needing your attention.. Click the icon to open the Notifications Panel Menu. See Notifications for more information.
	The Customer Search icon displays the Customer Search page. See Customer Search for more information.
	The Segment Search icon displays the Segment search which allows you to select more criteria that are not available in the Segment Quick Search box. You can also Create Segments. See Segments for more information.
	The Offer Search icon displays the Offers Advanced search which allows you to select more criteria that are not available in the Offer Quick Search box. You can also Create Offers. See Offers for more information.
	The Promotion Search icon displays a Promotion Search which allows you to select criteria to search promotions. You can also Create Promotions. See Promotion Search for more information.
	The Card Search icon displays a Card Search which allows you to select criteria to search Cards. See Card Search for more information.
	The Program Search icon displays a Program Search which allows you to select criteria to search Programs. See Advanced Program Search for more information.
	The Reports icon displays a list of reports that can be run. See Reports for more information.
	The Overflow Menu provides additional options including Edit, View, and Delete.

Task Priority

Icons displayed are based on what the user has access to. However, if the user has access to more than 6, there is a priority order for the icons to display. The ones further down the list will then only be accessible from the Main menu or from favorites section if they are marked as a favorite.

The Priority Order is:

- Customer Search
- Segment Search
- Offer Search
- Promotion Search
- Card Search
- Program Search
- Reports

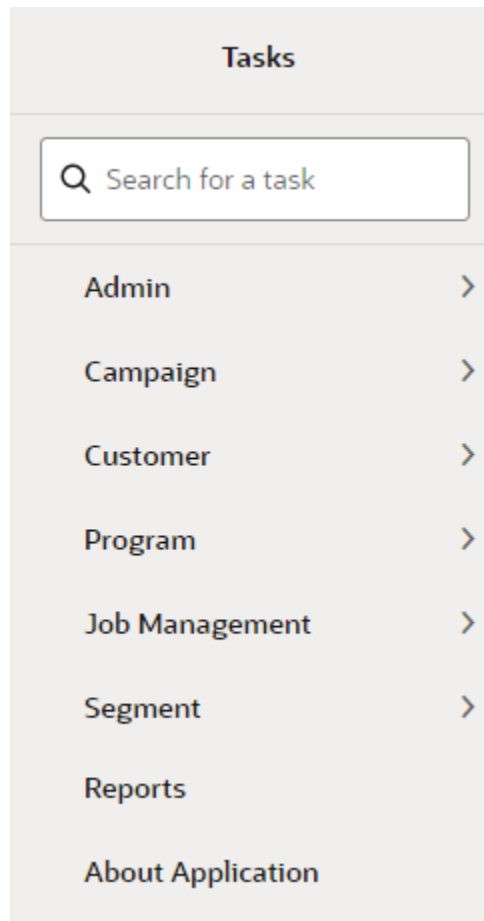


Note:

Displays only if the user does not have one of the first six features, otherwise it is not a menu option, but can be saved as a favorite

Task Lists

The following tasks are available in the Customer Engagement Modern View.

Figure 1-3 Task List

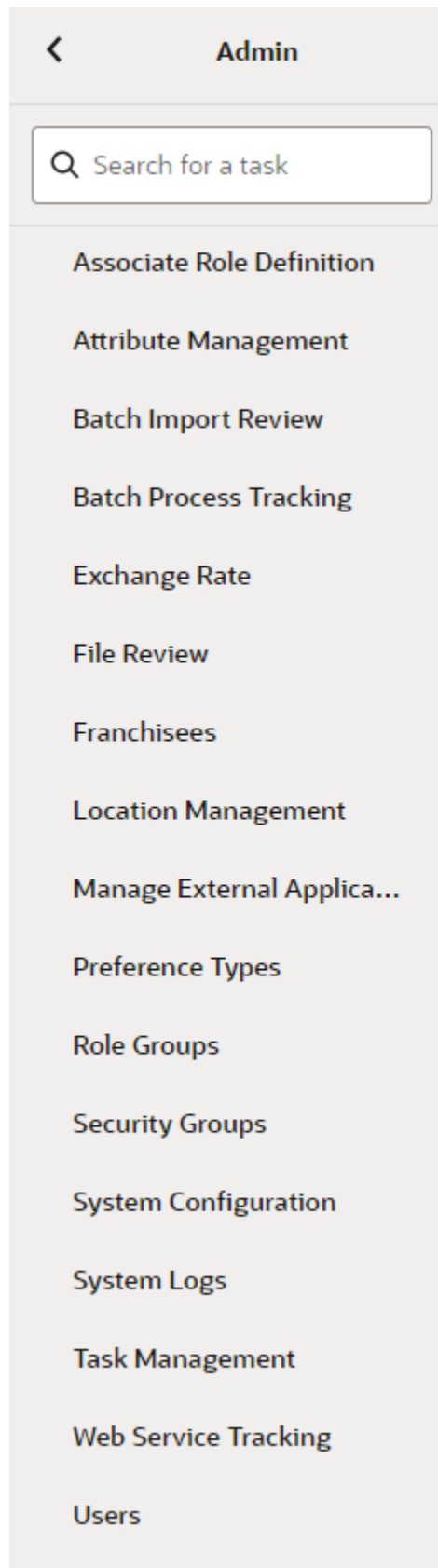
Admin Task List

The Admin Task List contains the following tasks:

- Associate Role Definition
- Attribute Management
- Batch Import Review
- Batch Process Tracking
- Exchange Rate
- File Review
- Franchisees
- Location Management
- Manage External Application Access
- Preference Types
- Role Groups
- Security Groups

- System Configuration
- System Logs
- Task Management
- Web Service Tracking
- Users

Figure 1-4 Admin Task List

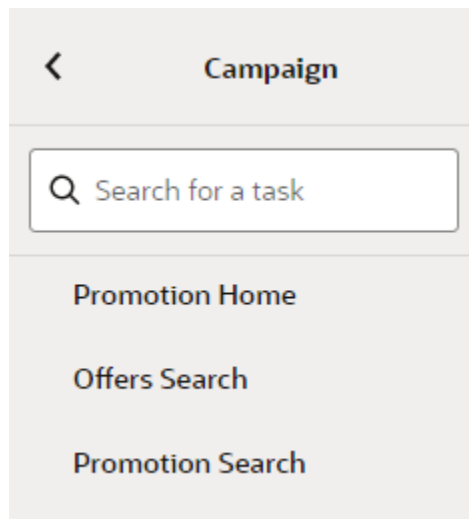


Campaign Task List

The Campaign Task List contains the following tasks:

- Promotion Home
- Offers Search
- Promotion Search

Figure 1-5 Campaign Task List

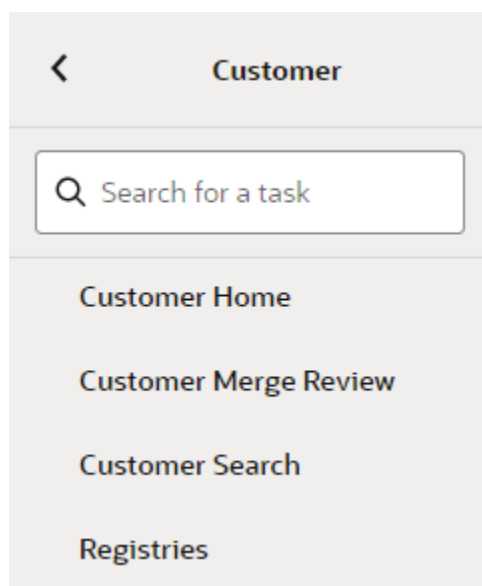


Customer Task List

The Customer Task List contains the following tasks:

- Customer Home (Role Dependent)
- Customer Search
- Registries

Figure 1-6 Customer Task List

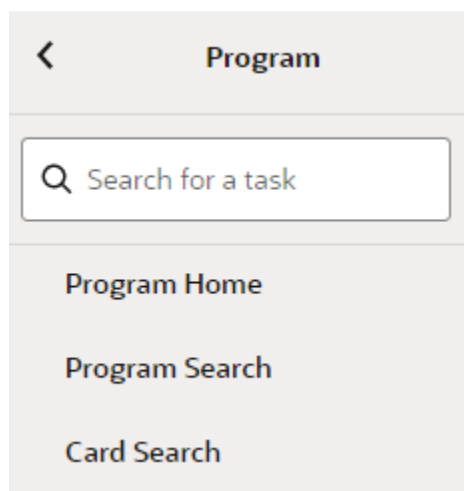


Program Task List

The Program Task List contains the following tasks:

- Program Home
- Program Search
- Card Search

Figure 1-7 Program Task List

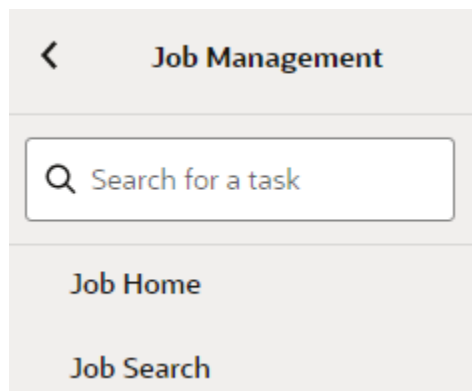


Job Management Task List

The Job Management Task List contains the following tasks:

- Job Home
- Job Search

Figure 1-8 Job Management Task List

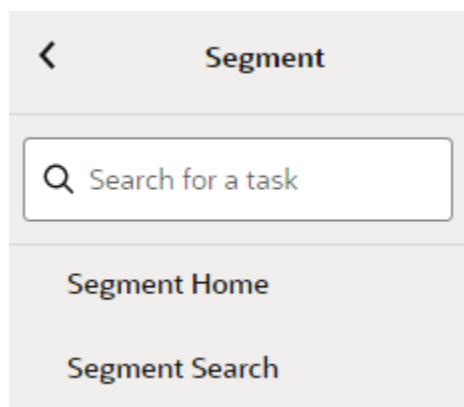


Segment Task List

The Segment Task List contains the following tasks:

- Segment Home
- Segment Search

Figure 1-9 Segment Task List



Additional Tasks

The Reports Task opens the Reports application. The About Application opens a pop up window with the information regarding this version.

Favorites

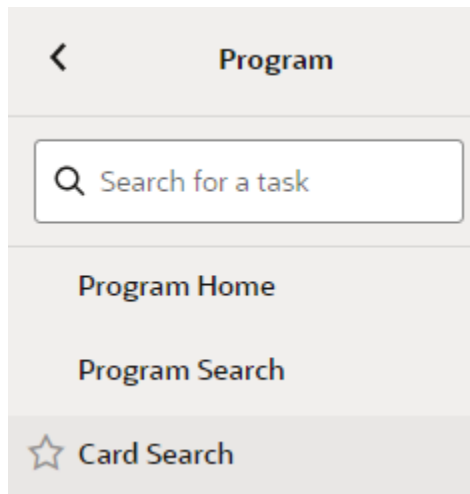
Favorites provide the ability to designate certain Tasks or Reports as Favorites that allow quick and easy access to frequently menu selections. You may also Pin or Unpin favorites to the Main Navigation Menu.

Adding or Removing a Favorite

A full blue star indicates which Task or Report is a Favorite and conversely, an empty blue star indicates which Task or Report is not a Favorite. To add a Favorite do the following:

1. Navigate to the desired **Task** or **Report**.

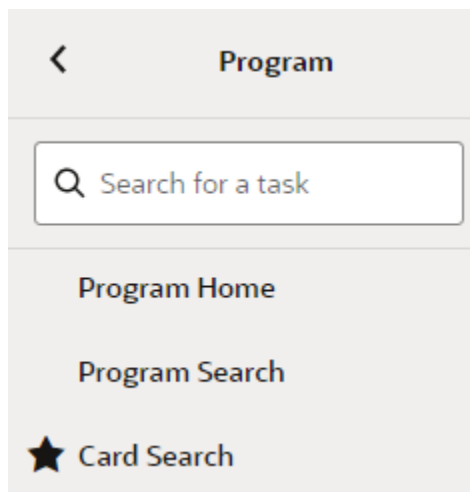
Figure 1-10 Menu Item - Favorites



2. To designate the Task or Report as a Favorite, click the empty star icon to change it to a full blue star icon.

Result: The specific task or report is designated as a Favorite.

Figure 1-11 Favorite



3. To remove the Task or Report as a Favorite, click the full blue star to change it to an empty star icon.

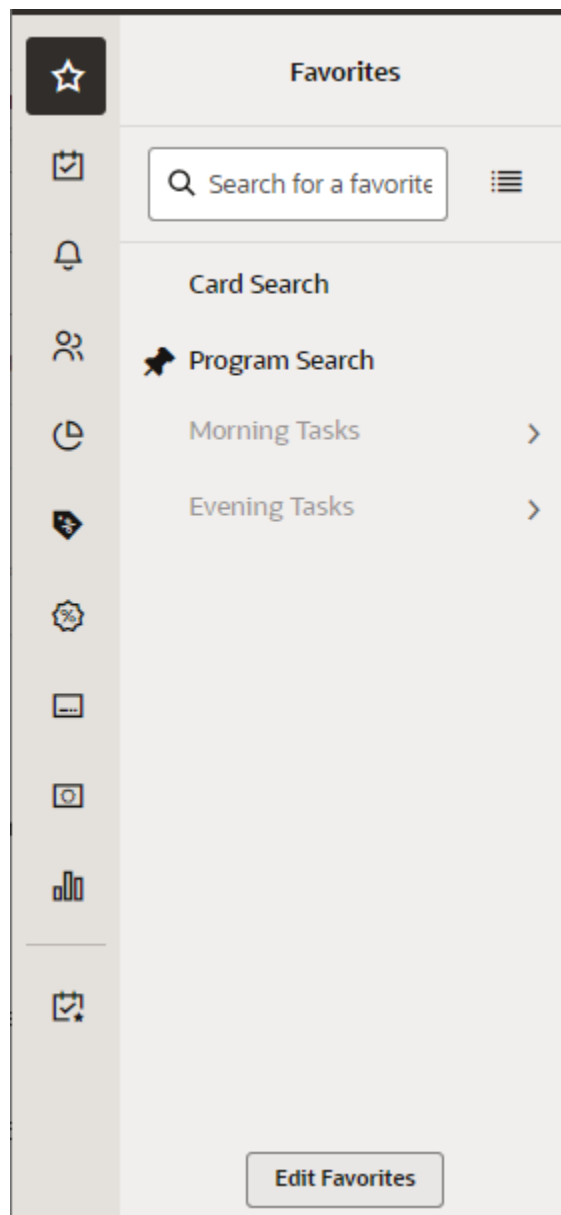
 **Note:**

You can also remove a Favorite that has been designated as a Pin. See [Pin or Unpin Favorite Tasks](#) for more information.

Viewing Favorites

From the Navigation bar, click the Star icon to view all Favorites.

Figure 1-12 Favorites



Group View

By default, nested Favorites are contained inside folders within the Group View. [Figure 1-13](#) displays top level directories containing one or more Favorites. [Figure 1-14](#) displays the Favorites included in that directory. See [Organized Favorites](#) for details on how to create folders.

Figure 1-13 Nested Favorites

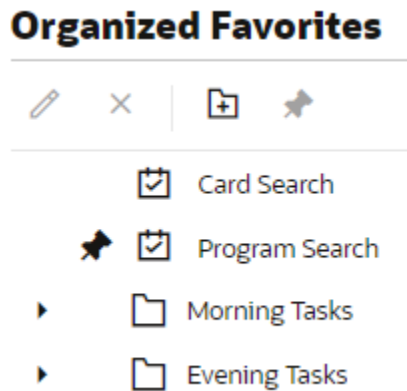
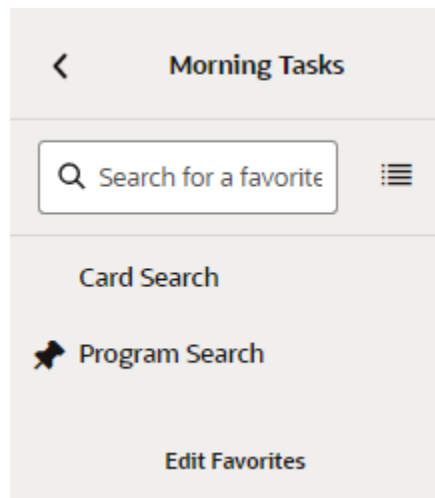
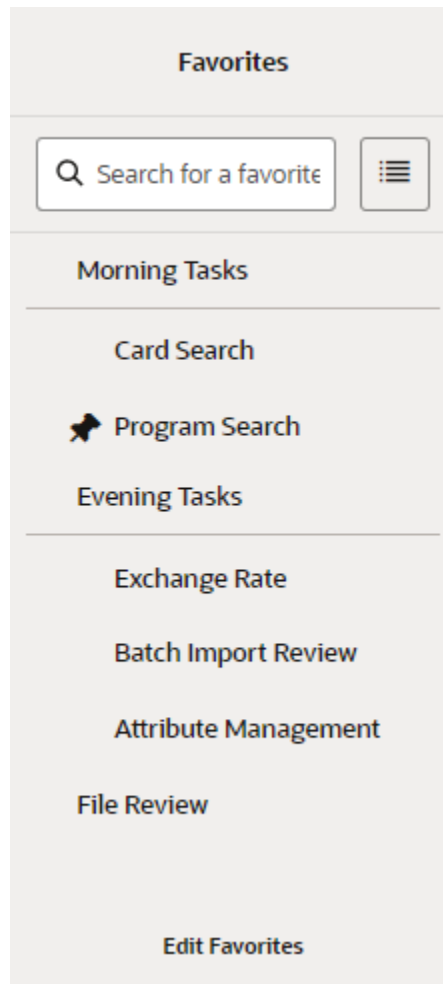


Figure 1-14 Nested Favorites - Drill Down



List View

Folders and their contents display as a flat list in the List View. Click the **Group View** or **List View** icon to toggle the display options.

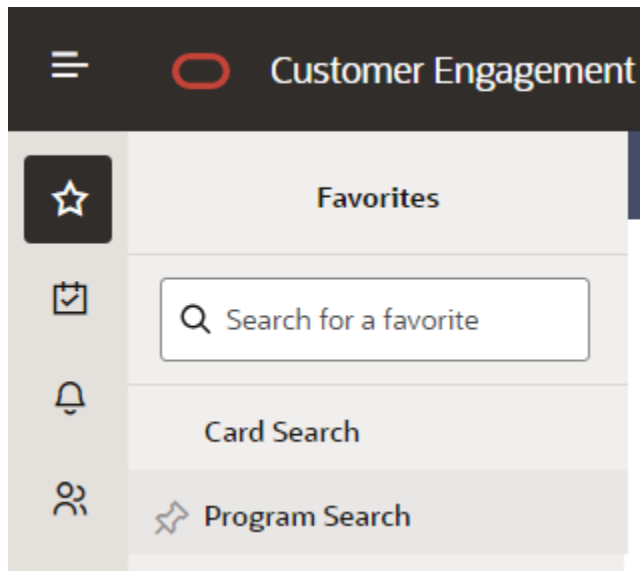
Figure 1-15 Nested Favorites - List View

Pin or Unpin Favorite Tasks

Favorite Tasks can be pinned or unpinned to the Navigation Bar for quick access. To Pin or Unpin a Task, do the following:

1. Click the **Favorites** icon.
2. Hover over the **Task** to display an empty pin icon.

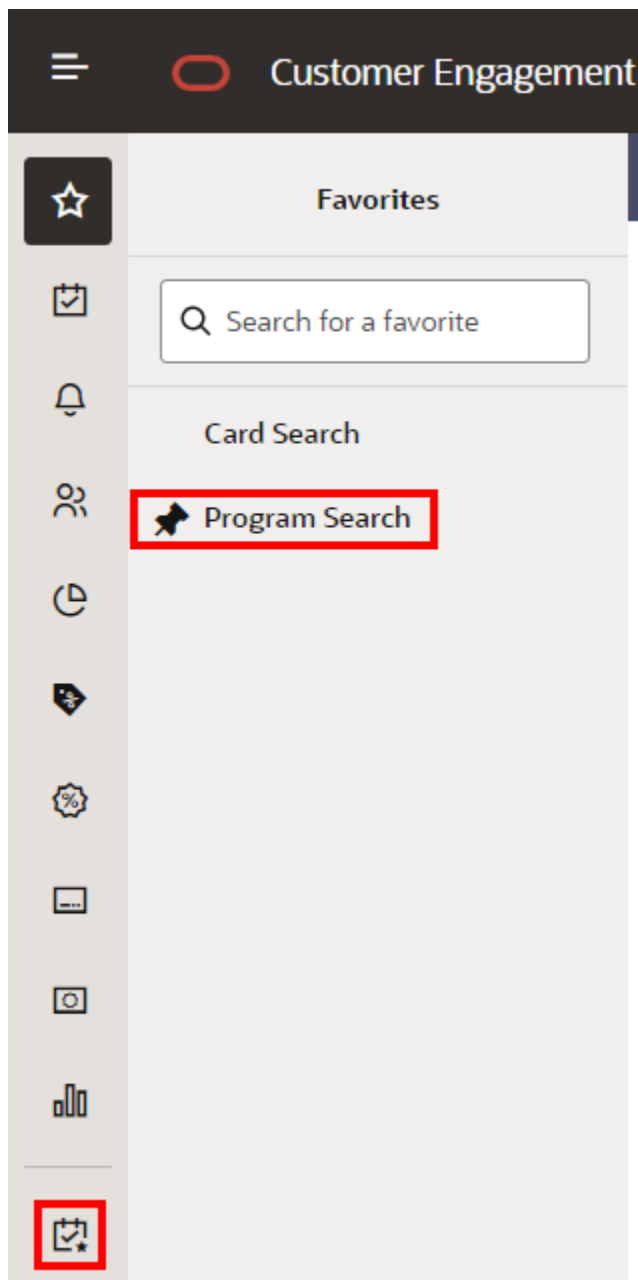
Figure 1-16 Pinning a Favorite



3. Click the **Pin** icon.

Result: The Pin icon is filled in and a corresponding icon for the Task appears in the Navigation menu as noted in [Figure 1-17](#).

Figure 1-17 Pinned Favorites



4. Click any filled **Pin** icon to unpin.

Editing Pins - Navigation Menu Icons

Favorites that are pinned appear on the Navigation Bar as icons. The following options are available when you right-click a **Pinned Favorite**:

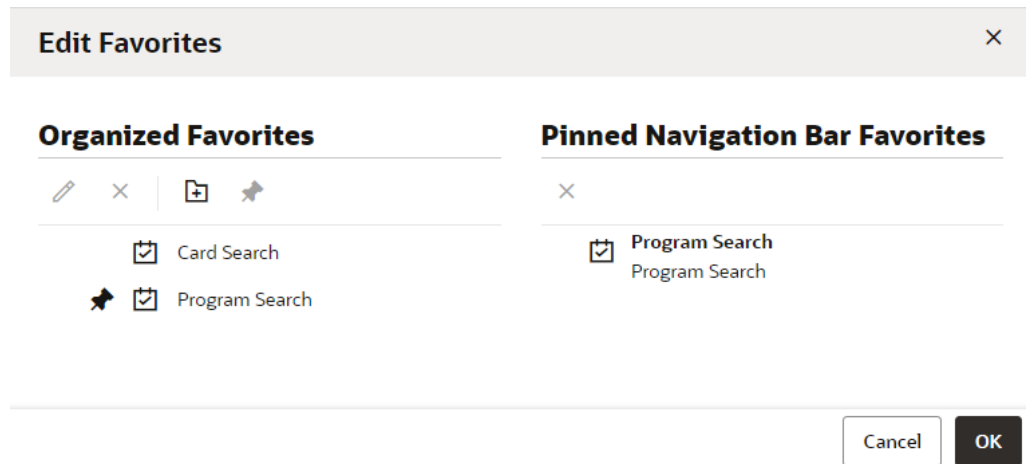
- **Unpin Favorite** - Removes the Task or Report from the Navigation Bar.
- **Unpin and Remove Favorite** - Removes the Task or Report from the Navigation Bar and Favorites List.
- **Edit Favorites** - Opens Edit Favorites. See [Editing Favorites](#) for more information.

Editing Favorites

From the **Edit Favorites** window, you can edit, organize, rename, pin, and unpin favorites. In **Edit Favorites**, you can manage which Favorites display and in which order the Favorites display.

- From the Context Menu of the Pinned Navigation Bar Favorites, right-click any pinned favorite icon and then select **Edit Favorites**.
- Click **Edit Favorites** at the bottom of the Favorites Menu.

Figure 1-18 Editing Favorites



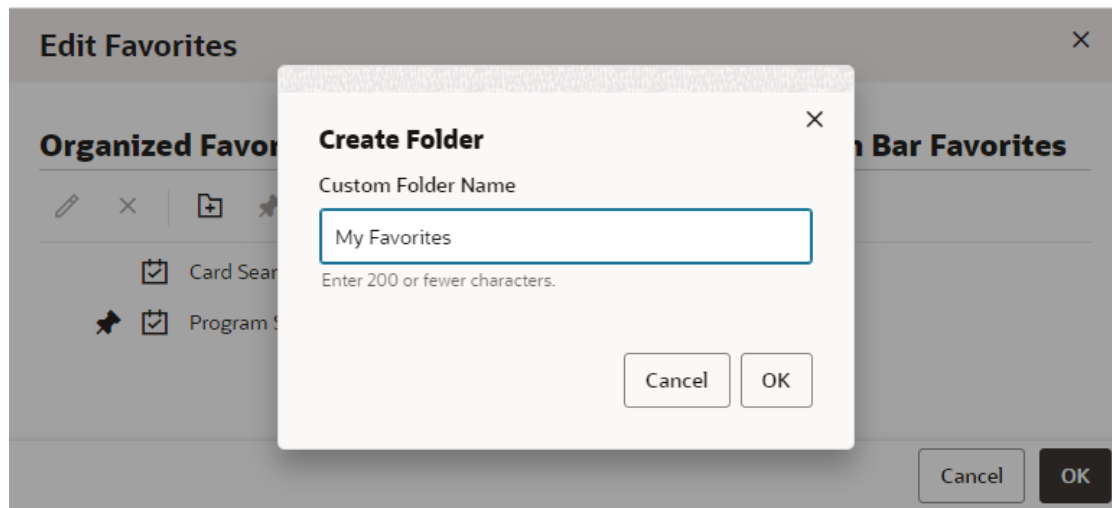
Organized Favorites

The following options are available after highlighting a Favorite:

- **Edit Favorite** - Enter a **Custom Favorite Name** and click **OK** to save the changes or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving any changes.
- **Delete Favorite** - Click the **X** icon to remove (unpin) the task from the Navigation Bar and Favorites task list.
- **Toggle Pin** - Click the **Pin** icon to Add or Remove (Pin or Unpin) Favorite Tasks from the Navigation Bar.

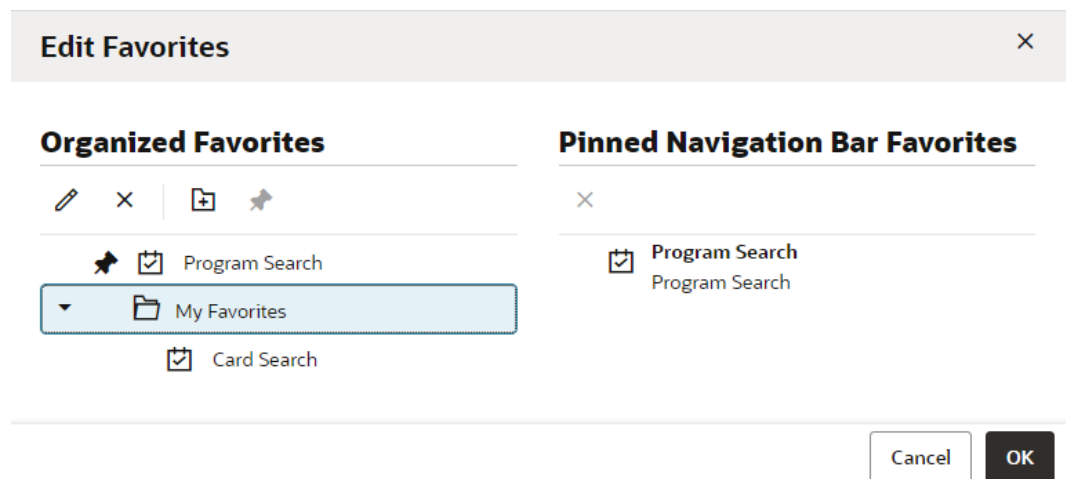
At anytime, you can click **Create Folder** to organize your Favorites into directories. Once created you can drag and drop favorites into these directories. To create a folder do the following:

Figure 1-19 Creating Folders



1. Click the **Create Folder** icon.
2. Enter a **Customer Folder Name**.
3. Click **OK** to create the folder or **Cancel** to close the window without saving changes.
4. Drag and drop the desired **Favorites** into the folders. See [Edit Favorites - Working with Folders](#) for more information.

Figure 1-20 Organized Favorites - Folders



Pinned Navigation Bar Favorites

Press **Shift + F10** or right-click a **Pinned Favorite** to display the following options:

- Cut
- Paste Before
- Paste After

 **Note:**

In addition to the cut and paste options, you can reorder the pinned favorites from the Pinned Navigation Bar Favorites section on the Edit Favorites window by clicking a folder or favorite and dragging it to a new position.

- Unpin Favorite

 **Note:**

You can also highlight a Pinned Task and click the **X** icon to unpin a favorite.

Edit Favorites - Working with Folders

You can edit, organize, rename, pin, and unpin favorites from the **Edit Favorites** window. The favorites displayed and the order in which the favorites are displayed are managed in **Edit Favorites**.

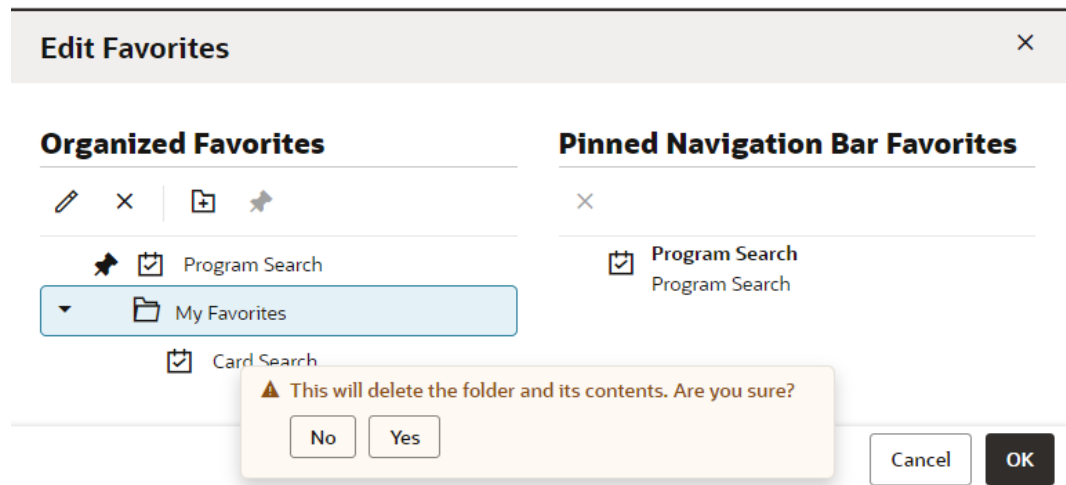
 **Note:**

See [Organized Favorites](#) for information on how to create a folder.

Press **Shift + F10** or right-click a folder to display the following options:

- Edit - Enter a **new name** for the previously created folder. Click **Ok** to accept or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
- Cut
- Paste Before
- Paste After
- Paste Inside - Use this option on Favorites to move them into a folder.
- Delete - Deletes the folder and the contents. A warning message appears. Click **Yes** to delete the folder and its contents or click **No** to close the warning without deletion.

Figure 1-21 Delete Folder - Warning

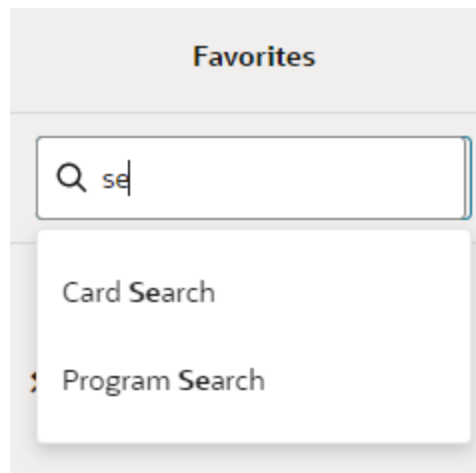


Searching Favorites

The Favorites Menu provides a smart search feature to enable you to quickly find and open a task or report that is marked as a Favorite.

- Enter any part of a task or report name and the list automatically populates with matching results as shown in [Figure 1-22](#).
- Select one of the items in the list to open that task or report.

Figure 1-22 Smart Search Feature



Notifications

The Notifications icon serves as a quick access point for all notification activity and provides an initial view of Job Status. The notification icon on the sidebar displays a badge with the total number of unread notifications.

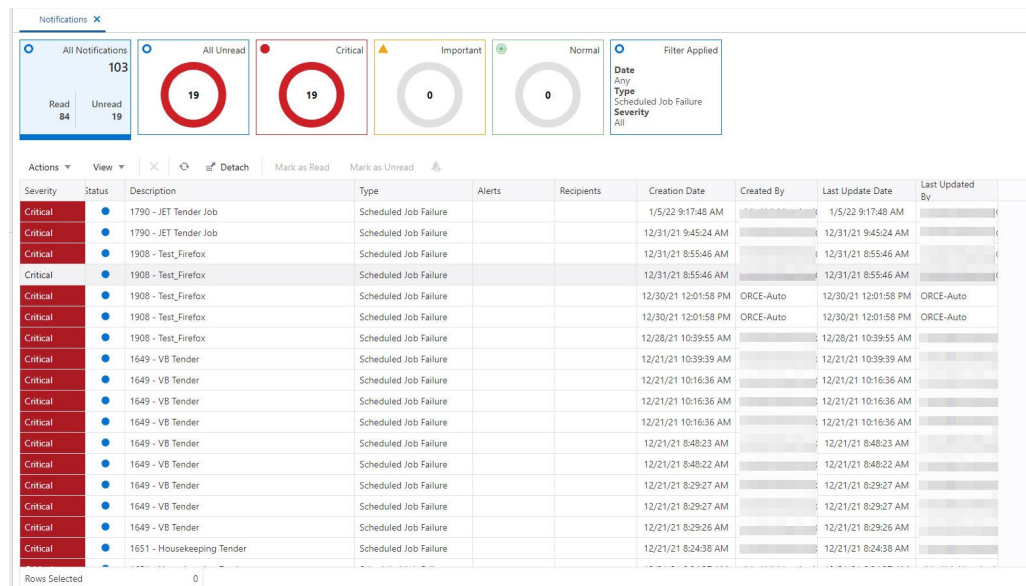
Figure 1-23 Notification Icon



Notifications Page

The Notifications Page provides more details about the notifications.

Figure 1-24 Notifications Page

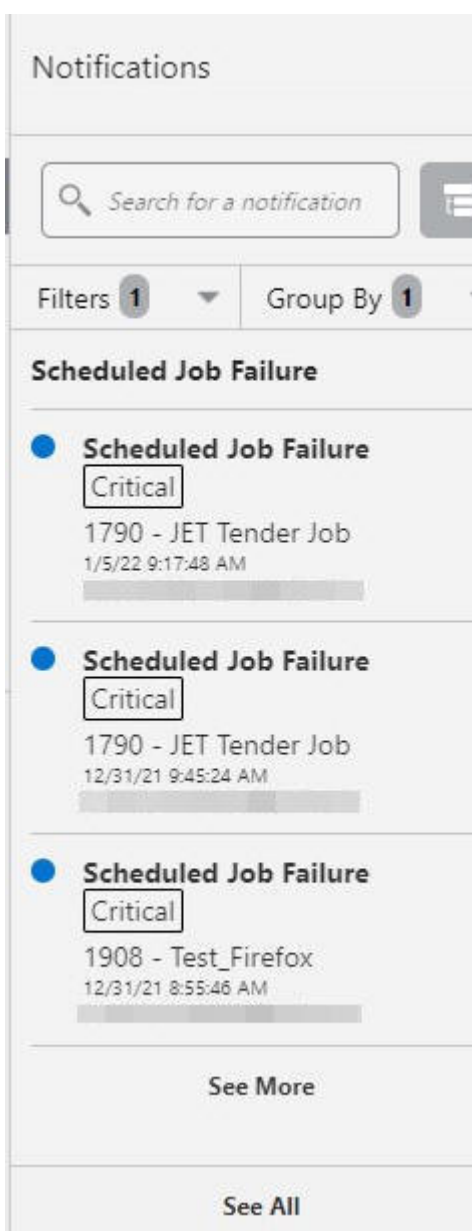


Accessing the Notifications Page

To view the Notifications Page do the following:

1. Click the **Notifications** icon. The Notifications panel appears.

Figure 1-25 Notifications Panel



2. Click **See All**. The Notifications page appears.

Using the Notifications Panel

The active view in the panel depends on which filters are selected and whether the grouping toggle is activated. The filter view is active when the grouping toggle is off. The grouped view is accessed by turning the grouping toggle on.

Filter View

The Filter view shows each notification individually. Click the **Filters down facing arrow** to expand the filter options.

Figure 1-26 Filter View

The screenshot shows a mobile application interface for filtering notifications. At the top, there is a header titled "Notifications". Below the header is a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and the placeholder text "Search for a notifica". To the right of the search bar is a menu icon (three horizontal lines). Below the search bar is a section titled "Filters" with an upward-pointing triangle icon. Under "Filters", there are three filter categories: "Time Period" with a dropdown menu showing "Any", "Type" with a text input field showing "All", and "Severity" with a text input field showing "All". At the bottom of the filter section, there are three buttons: "Reset", "Cancel", and "Apply".

The filter view supports three search criteria. The Time Period, Type, and Severity inputs allow filtering on the respective fields of the notification.

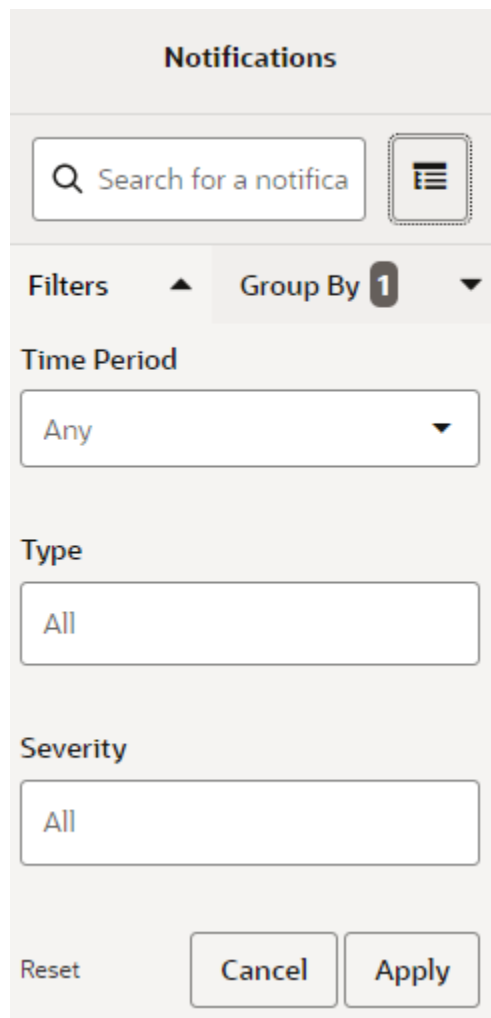
Click **Apply** to fetch the Notifications that match the set values. Click **Cancel** to revert to the previously used values, and Click **Reset** to reset to the default values (but does not close the tab or save them).

In this view, individual notifications are listed out in detail. In order, the notifications: Type, Severity, Description, and Last Updated values are displayed.

Clicking a notification with launch able context will mark it as read and open the context. For other notifications, they can be marked as read by clicking the filled blue circle in the upper-left corner; clicking the rest of the notification will have no effect.

Group View

Figure 1-27 Group View



The screenshot shows the 'Notifications' interface in a 'Group View' mode. At the top, there is a search bar with the placeholder text 'Search for a notifica' and a menu icon. Below the search bar, there are two tabs: 'Filters' and 'Group By'. The 'Group By' tab is active, indicated by a dark background and a white circle containing the number '1'. Under the 'Group By' tab, there are three filter sections: 'Time Period' with a dropdown menu set to 'Any', 'Type' with a dropdown menu set to 'All', and 'Severity' with a dropdown menu set to 'All'. At the bottom of the filter section, there are three buttons: 'Reset', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

The Group view shows notifications grouped by hierarchy values. The group view is active by clicking the **Grouping Toggle** to on and only **one** grouping option at a time can be selected.

The grouping options allow the selection of up to two hierarchy levels to organize the notifications by. The first selection is required while the toggle is active; the second is not. Also, the group by and then by lists are mutually exclusive - selecting an option in one will remove it from the other. The buttons on the tab work in the same manner as those on the filter tab.

This view is similar to the first, save that the notifications are organized by hierarchy value. Initially, the three most recent notifications for each hierarchy value will be displayed. Click **See More** to load up to twenty five notifications. Clicking a notification in this view behaves the same as in the filter view.

Working with Notifications

The Notifications page provides more details about the notifications. It also displays read notifications and the ability to reassign notifications.

Metric Tile Section

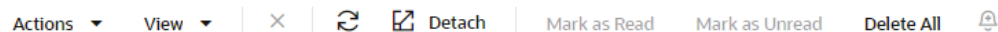
The Notifications Page has the following five tiles in this section. Clicking on any tile will filter the table to the content for that tile (for example, unread critical notifications). The Filter tile only shows up in certain cases: when there are filters set on the sidebar menu.

- All Notifications
- All Unread
- Critical
- Important
- Normal
- Filter Applied - Displays only when Filters are applied.

Data Display Section

The following options will display in the toolbar of the data display section:

Figure 1-28 Toolbar Options



- **Action Menu**
 - Delete
 - Refresh Notifications
 - Mark as Read
 - Mark as Unread
 - Reassign Notification
- **View Menu**
 - Manage Columns
 - Detach
 - Sort
- **Icons**
 - Delete
 - Refresh
 - Detach
 - Mark as Read

- Mark as Unread
- Reassign Notification

Click on one or more rows and then select the desired option from the Toolbar options.

2

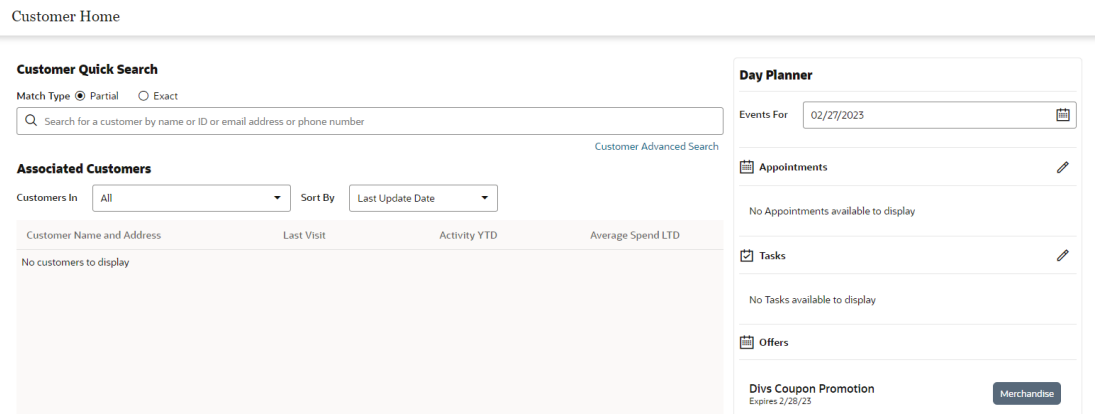
Customer Home

Customer records store basic information about each customer. These records can be associated with a card or an account used to track transactions and provide incentives to customers.

Customer records can be used to track individual customers and their shopping preferences, habits, and tendencies. This allows locations and chains to target promotions to customers most likely to take advantage of purchase incentives given by the location or chain.

When you log in to the application, it first displays the Home page with the Customer Quick Search panel and the Day Planner panel. If you have customers assigned to you, the Home page search panel will also have a list of Associated Customers. See [Associate Assignment](#) for more information about associated customers.

Figure 2-1 Customer Home



Search for a Customer

You can search for additional customers by entering the customer name, customer id, alternate key, email address, or phone number in the Search bar. Select **Partial**, if you want to results that match part of what you enter, or select **Exact** if you only want results that are an exact match.

Click the Customer Advanced Search link to do an advanced search. See [Customer Search](#) for more information.

Associated Customer List

You can filter for customers by segment and select from a list of sort criteria. There are several actions available on an Action menu in each customer row, including Add to Personal List, Create Appointment, Create Note, Create Registry, and Create To Do.

This information is displayed for each customer in the Associated Customers grid:

- Customer - The customer image, icon or initials and the customer's name and address.
- Last Visit - The date of the customer's last purchase.
- Activity YTD - The total amount of the customer's purchases year-to-date, displayed in the base system currency.
- Average Spend LTD - The average amount of the customer's purchases life-to-date (the total amount of the customer's purchases life-to-date divided by the number of purchases). Displayed in the base system currency.

Filtering by Segment

By default the Associated Customers list includes all customers assigned to the associate regardless of the segments to which they belong. If you do not want to filter by segment, keep the default selection in the Customers In field, as All.

To Filter the Associated Customers list by Segment:

1. Click the drop-down list in the Customers In field.
2. Click a segment from the list to filter for only the customers in that segment.

Sorting Associated Customers

You can sort customers in the Associated Customer list by any of the information contained in the grid by making a selection from the items in the Sort by list. These include:

- Average Spend LTD
- Activity YTD
- Last Visit
- Last Name
- First Name
- Address
- City
- State
- Last Update Date

Linking to the Customer Dashboard

You can click a customer name or image icon in the Associated Customers list to view them in the [Customer Dashboard](#).

Associated Customer Actions

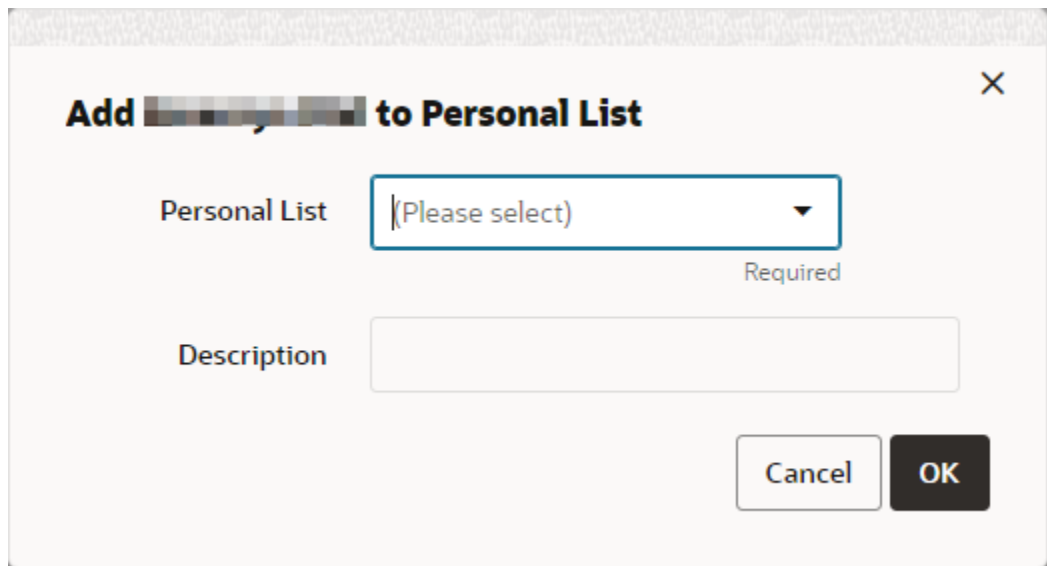
The Actions menu in each row, in the Associated Customers list, provides access to the actions described below:

Add to Personal List

To add a customer to your personal list:

1. In the row of the customer that you want to add, click the Actions menu and choose Add to Personal List. This displays the following prompt:

Figure 2-2 Add Customer to Personal List



2. Select a list from the Personal List drop-down. A description of the selected list is displayed in the Description field.
3. Click **OK**. This adds the customer to the list.

Create Appointment

To create an appointment for a customer:

1. In the row of the customer for whom you want to create an appointment, click the **Actions** menu and choose **Create Appointment**. This displays the Create Task window for the customer with the Task Type, Appointment selected.
2. Enter the rest of the details for the appointment and click **OK** when you are done. This creates the task and returns you to the Associated Customers list.

For more information, see: [Tasks](#)

Create Note

To create a note for a customer:

1.
 - a. In the row of the customer for whom you want to create a note, click the Actions menu and choose Create Note. This displays the Create Note dialog for the customer.
 - b. Select the Note Type and enter the note in the Note field. If you do not want the note to be seen by others select the Mark as Private check box.

- c. Click **OK** when you are done. This creates the note and returns you to the Associated Customers list.

For more information, see: [Notes](#)

Create Registry

To create a registry for a customer:

1. In the row of the customer for whom you want to create a registry, click the **Actions** menu and choose **Create Registry**. This displays the Create Registry window for the customer.
2. Enter the registry details and click **OK** when you are done. This creates the registry and returns you to the Associated Customers list.

For more information, see: [Registries](#)

Create To Do

To create a To Do task for a customer:

1. In the row of the customer for whom you want to create a To Do task, click the **Actions** menu and choose **Create To Do**. This displays the Create Task window for the customer with the Task Type, To Do selected.
2. Enter the rest of the details for the task and click **OK** when you are done. This creates the task and returns you to the Associated Customers list.

For more information, see: [Tasks](#)

Day Planner

The Day Planner shows a list of appointments and tasks assigned to the associate as well as offers for a given day.

Figure 2-3 Day Planner

The screenshot shows the 'Day Planner' interface. At the top, there is a title 'Day Planner'. Below it is a section for 'Events For' with a date input field containing '02/27/2023' and a calendar icon. The interface is divided into three main sections: 'Appointments', 'Tasks', and 'Offers'. The 'Appointments' section shows a time slot '3:05 PM' and a button labeled 'Customer Update'. The 'Tasks' section shows a message 'No Tasks available to display'. The 'Offers' section shows a promotion 'Divs Coupon Promotion' with an expiration date 'Expires 2/28/23' and a button labeled 'Merchandise'.

Click the **Calendar** icon in the Events field to select a different date.

The following information is displayed for the selected date:

- **Appointments** - Shows the appointments for the selected date. No expired appointments are shown. The maximum number of appointments displayed is 25. If there are no appointments, the message `No appointments available to display` is shown.
- **Tasks** - Shows the tasks assigned on the selected date. No expired tasks are shown. The maximum number of tasks displayed is 25. If there are no tasks, the message `No tasks available to display` is shown.
- **Offers** - Shows all active offers based on the selected date. The offers are shown for the default location of the associate. If there is no default location identified, all offers for the chain are shown. No expired offers are shown. The maximum number of offers displayed is 25. If there are no offers, the message `No offers available to display` is shown.

3

Customer Merge Review

The Customer Merge Review process allows you to search for and view duplicates prior to approving a merge.

The merge will combine multiple customer records into one, new customer record. This new customer record includes the transaction, card and account information from all the merged customer records based on how the system is configured. Other customer data: addresses, e-mail addresses, phone numbers, and so on, are taken from a single source record determined by Customer Engagement. The Customer Merge Review is displayed by accessing the Customer Merge Review option from the Customer Tasks menu.

 **Note:**

The customer merge will be blocked if there are payment card tokens on any one of the customers being merged. The payment card tokens can be deleted from the Payment Card Tokens screen or via web service. When payment card tokens are deleted, the payment service provider will provide new tokens when a payment is initiated.

Customer Duplicate Set Search

To search for a duplicate set:

Figure 3-1 Customer Merge Review Search Panel

Customer Merge Review

Search

Duplicate Strategy
Name Address ▼

Strategy Status
Unapproved

Number of Customers per Set
▼

Reset Search

Search Results

Enter search parameters in the sidebar to search for duplicates.

1. In the Duplicate Strategy selection menu, select the **strategy** of the search to view. This field is required for the search. It is used to select the duplicate strategy results to review. The duplicate strategy is how the duplicates were found, such as matching by name and address or name and phone, and includes the following combinations.
 - Name Address
 - Name Phone
 - Name Email
 - Name Address Phone Email

 **Note:**

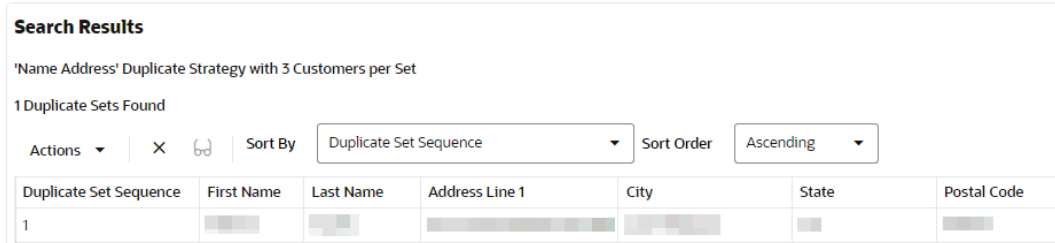
Strategy Status - This identifies whether the duplicate strategy selected is Approved or Unapproved. This is for informational purposes only.

2. In the Number of Customers per Set Menu, select the **number** of customers per set. It is used to select the number of customers in each set to display. This field is required for the search and is based on the duplicate strategy selected.
3. Click **Search**. The Duplicate Sets Found results appear.

 **Note:**

Customer eligibility for merging is based on how the system is configured. See the Implementation Guide for more information.

Figure 3-2 Search Results - Duplicate Sets Found



Search Results

'Name Address' Duplicate Strategy with 3 Customers per Set

1 Duplicate Sets Found

Actions Sort By Duplicate Set Sequence Sort Order Ascending

Duplicate Set Sequence	First Name	Last Name	Address Line 1	City	State	Postal Code
1						

The duplicate list displays the following information for each duplicate. Note that the address information displayed is from the source record. Fields include:

- Duplicate Set Sequence - The order in which the duplicate was found during the duplicate search.
- First Name - First name of the customer.
- Last Name - Last name of the customer.
- Address Line 1 - Line 1 of the customer's primary street address.
- City - City of the customer's primary address.
- State - State or province of the customer's primary address.
- Postal Code - Postal code or zip code of the customer's primary address.

Duplicate Sets Found

The customer records matching the search criteria are displayed under Duplicate Sets Found.

Sorting Duplicates

Figure 3-3 Duplicate Sets Found

Search Results

'Name Address' Duplicate Strategy with 2 Customers per Set

8 Duplicate Sets Found

Actions ✕ ↺ Sort By Duplicate Set Sequence Sort Order Ascending

Duplicate Set Sequence	First Name	Last Name	Address Line 1	City	State	Postal Code
2				KANSAS CITY	MO	64134
3				SANTA CRUZ	CA	95060
4				WOODSIDE	NY	11377
5				SOLOMON	OH	44139
6				HONOLULU	HI	96814
7				NEW YORK	NY	10028
8				GULFPORT	MS	39507
9				VB	VB	12345

You can use the Sort By drop-down list to sort the list of duplicate sets found by the following options:

- **Duplicate Set Sequence** - The order in which the duplicate was found during the duplicate search.
- **First Name** - First name of the customer.
- **Last Name** - Last name of the customer.
- **Address Line 1** - Line 1 of the customer's primary street address.
- **City** - City of the customer's primary address.
- **State** - State or province of the customer's primary address.
- **Postal Code** - Postal code or zip code of the customer's primary address.

Results can be sorted ascending or descending from the list.

Action Menu

The Actions menu for the Customer Merge Review screen has the following options:

- **Approve** – Indicates to the system the duplicates found by the currently selected strategy should be merged. See [Approve Duplicate Sets](#) for more information.
- **Unapprove** – Indicates to the system the duplicates found by the currently selected strategy should not be merged. See [Unapprove Duplicate Sets](#) for more information.
- **Delete** – Delete all the found duplicates from the currently selected strategy. See [Delete Duplicate Sets](#) for more information.

- **View** – When selected, the View Duplicate Customer Set screen will display. See [View Duplicate Sets](#) for more information



Note:

An individual duplicate set cannot be selected for approval, unapproving, or deletion. When selecting the action menu option, the action will apply to all duplicate sets that are currently displayed.

Approve Duplicate Sets

To indicate the duplicates found by the selected Duplicate Strategy should be merged:

1. Select **Approve** from the Customer Merge Review Actions menu.
Result: A confirmation window appears.
2. Click **OK** to approve merging the displayed duplicate sets.



Note:

The duplicates found by the currently selected duplicate strategy are approved for merging. The duplicates will be merged during the next run of the Duplicate Merge job.

Unapprove Duplicate Sets

To indicate the duplicates found by the selected Duplicate Strategy should not be merged:

1. Select **Unapprove** from the Customer Merge Review Actions menu.
Result: A confirmation window appears.
2. Click **OK** to unapprove merging of the duplicate sets.



Note:

The duplicates found by the currently selected duplicate strategy will not be merged during the next run of the Duplicate Merge job.

Delete Duplicate Sets

To empty the list of duplicates found by the selected strategy:

1. Select **Delete** from the Customer Merge Review Actions menu.
Result: A confirmation window appears.
2. Click **OK** to empty the list of duplicate sets.



Note:

The duplicates previously found by the currently selected duplicate strategy will be deleted from the system. These duplicates must be found again by another duplicate search job before they can be reviewed and approved for merge.

View Duplicate Sets

To view the customer records for a selected duplicate set, so that you can evaluate whether they should be merged.:

1. Select **View** from the Customer Merge Review Actions menu.

Result: The View Duplicate Customer Set window appears

Figure 3-4 View Duplicate Customer Set

Customer Name and Address	Primary Email Address	Primary Phone	Cards	Attributes
AM (ID 7044347) KANSAS CITY, MO, 64134, US	[Redacted]	[Redacted] (HOME)	8757964244050939	No Attributes Available
AM (ID 8772738) KANSAS CITY, MO, 64134, US	[Redacted]	[Redacted] (HOME)	2292390025874258	No Attributes Available

2. You can click the following links from this window:

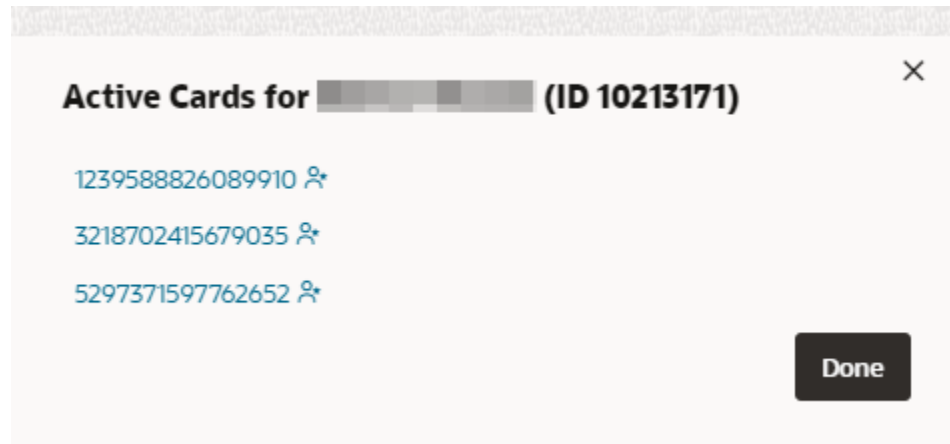
Figure 3-5 View Options

Customer Name and Address	Primary Email Address	Primary Phone	Cards	Attributes
DN (ID 10213171) BEND, CO, 17313-3563, US	[Redacted]	8762331581 (HOME)	1239588826089910 3218702415679035	ACTIVE_FLAG 23 BIRTHDAY 2023-04-13
DN (ID 10960632) MANITOWOC, RI, 56995-2105, US	[Redacted]	3312858634 (HOME)	1470485612695398	No Attributes Available
DN (ID 10995660) ANAHEIM, WV, 64801-5301, US	[Redacted]	7883906665 (HOME)	7877681043864460	No Attributes Available

- a. To view the Customer Dashboard, click the Customer Name from the Customer Name and Address column.

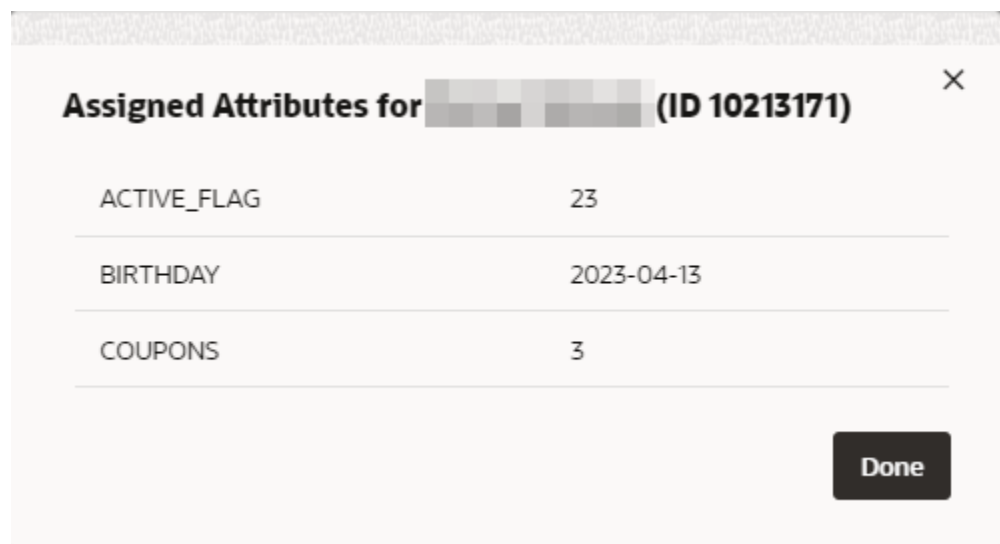
- b. To view the Active Cards available when there are more that two assigned, click the Show More... link from the Cards column.

Figure 3-6 Active Cards



- c. To view the Attributes when there are more than two assigned, click the Show More... link from the Attributes Column.

Figure 3-7 Assigned Attributes



- 3. Click **Done** to close the list of duplicate customer records.

4

Customer Search

Use the Customer Search page to find an existing customer to work with.

How to display this page:

- Select the **Customer Search** icon.
- [Customer Search](#) - You can search for customers using a number of criteria such as Name, Address, and Customer ID.
- [Customers Found](#) - Shows a list of customers retrieved based on the search criteria.

Customer Search

To search for a customer, enter any combination of the following search criteria and select Search. Optionally, select Reset to clear the entered search criteria.

Figure 4-1 Customer Search

The screenshot shows the Oracle Customer Engagement Cloud Services interface. At the top, there is a dark header with a hamburger menu icon, the Oracle logo, and the text "Customer Engagement Cloud Services". Below the header, a breadcrumb trail shows "Customer Search" with a close icon. The main content area is titled "Customer Search" and contains a search form. The form has a "Search" heading and four input fields: "Last Name", "First Name", "Business Name", and "Address". Below these fields is a "City" label. At the bottom right of the form are "Reset" and "Search" buttons.

Rules for Searching

- **Matching:** Unless otherwise indicated, the results are restricted to customer records that begin with your entry or match it exactly. For example, if you enter a postal code of 2050, the results include customers whose postal codes are 20501 or 20502.

- Case: Searching is **case-insensitive**.
- Searches for primary records only: In cases where the customer can have a primary record and additional records, such as address, email or phone number, the customer is included in search results only if the primary record matches. For example, if the postal code for the customer's primary address is 01602, but the customer also has an additional address in postal code 01609, the customer is not included in the search results if you search on postal code 01609.

 **Note:**

Be as specific as possible when entering search information. The more specific the information, the fewer customer records are returned

Search Criteria

- **Last Name** - Customer last name.
- **First Name** - Customer first name.
- **Business Name** - Name of the customer's business.
- **Address** - Address line for the customer. Searches address line 1 in the customer's primary address.s
- **City** - City of the customer's primary address.
- **State** - State or province of the customer's primary address.
- **Postal Code** - Postal Code or ZIP Code of the customer's primary address.
- **Email Address** - Customer's primary email address.
- **Phone Number** - Customer's primary telephone number.
- **Second First Name** - Customer's second first name.

 **Note:**

This field appears only if the system is configured to display additional customer names. See the Implementation Guide for more information.

- **Second Last Name** - Customer's second last name.

 **Note:**

This field appears only if the system is configured to display additional customer names. See the Implementation Guide for more information.

- **Customer ID** - A unique identifier assigned by Customer Engagement. Searching on customer ID requires an exact match.

- **Alternate Key** - Customer Alternate Key. A unique identifier assigned to identify the customer in an integrating system. Searching on Alternate Key requires an exact match.
- **Card Number** - Card Number associated with the customer. Searching on card number requires an exact match.
- **Card Serial Number** - Serial Number of the card associated with the customer. Searching on card serial number requires an exact match.
- **Associate ID** - ID of an Associate assigned to the customer. Searching on associate ID requires an exact match.
- **Segment** - Name and ID of a customer segment. Segments are listed alphabetically by Segment Name in ascending order with All segments at the top. Optionally, select an existing segment from the list to restrict results to customers in the segment, or leave this field set to All.
- **Franchisee** - Name of the Franchisee. Franchisees are listed alphanumerically by franchisee name. Optionally, select a franchisee from the list to restrict results to customers associated with the franchisee, or leave this field set to All.



Note:

This field appears only if the Franchisee Support is enabled. See the Implementation Guide for more information.

Customers Found

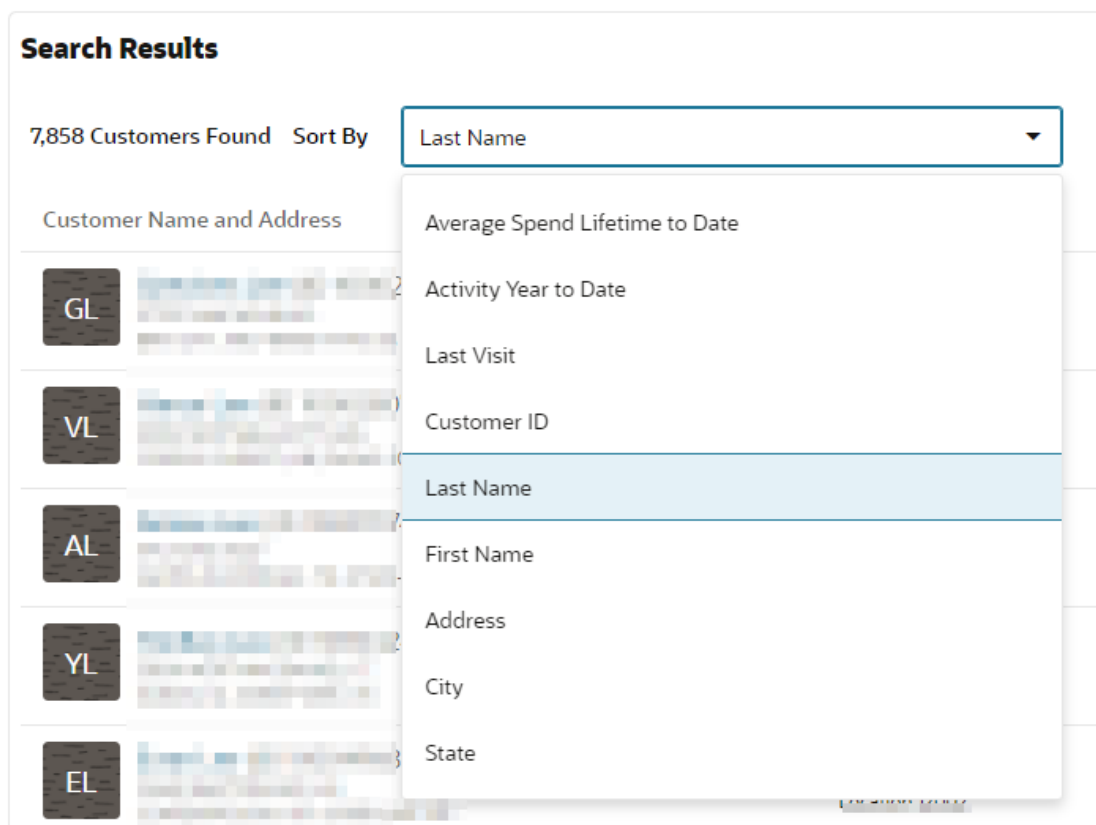
The customer records matching the search criteria are displayed under Customers Found.

Figure 4-2 Customers Found List

Search Results				Create Customer
7,858 Customers Found		Sort By	Last Name	
Customer Name and Address	Last Visit	Activity YTD	Average Spend LTD	
GL [blurred]	2/20/22 Location 12001	\$0.00	\$9.38	
VL [blurred]	2/20/22 Location 12001	\$0.00	\$570.27	
AL [blurred]	2/20/22 Location 12002	\$0.00	\$108.30	
YL [blurred]	2/21/22 Location 12001	\$0.00	\$84.42	
EL [blurred]	2/21/22 Location 12002	\$0.00	\$5.71	

- Customer image or initials - Displays:

- The image of the customer, if it has been identified. Otherwise,
- The customer's initial(s), if the customer's first or last name, or both, are known. Otherwise,
- A customer icon if the customer record has no first or last name (for example, a business).
- The customer image or initials provides a link to the Customer Dashboard.
- Customer name - The customer first and last name, if any.
- The customer name provides a link to the Customer Dashboard. This option is not available if the customer record has no first or last name (for example, a business).
- Customer address - Values include, Address 1, Address 2, City, State/Province, Postal Code, and country, if they exist. If the customer does not have a primary address, the message `No Address Available` is displayed.
- Last Visit - The date of the customer's last purchase.
- Activity YTD - The total amount of the customer's purchases year-to-date, displayed in the base system currency.
- Average Spend LTD - The average amount of the customer's purchases life-to-date (the total amount of the customer's purchases life-to-date divided by the number of purchases). Displayed in the base system currency.

Figure 4-3 Sort-by Options

Sorting Customers

You can use the Sort by drop-down list to sort the list of Customers found by the following options:

- **Average Spend LTD** - Select this option to list customers in descending order by average spend life-to-date (the total amount of the customer's purchases life-to-date divided by the number of purchases).
- **Activity YTD** - The total amount of the customer's purchases year-to-date, displayed in the base system currency.
- **Last Visit** - Select this option to list customers in descending order by the date of last visit (purchase).
- **Last Name** [default] - Leave this option selected to list customers alphabetically by last name.
- **First Name** - Select this option to list customers alphabetically by first name.
- **Address** - Select this option to list customers alphanumerically by street address.
- **City** - Select this option to list customers alphabetically by city name. Customers in the same city are listed alphabetically by last name.
- **State** - Select this option to list customers alphabetically by state or province. Customers in the same state or province are listed alphabetically by last name.

Displaying a Customer in the Customer Dashboard

There are two ways to access the Customer Dashboard. In Task Management, use the Search panel to list tasks. The customer names appear as a link that you can click. You can also click a customer name or image icon in the Customers found list to view more information about them in the [Customer Dashboard](#).

Creating a New Customer

Click the Create Customer button to create a new customer. This displays a blank Customer Details page for the new customer. See [Customer Information](#) for details about the information that can be entered on this page.

Customer Validation

Whenever a new Customer is added or updated, the Customer information (first name, last name, prefix, suffix, gender, address, postal code, email address and phone number) is validated. If any of the information provided does not meet the criteria of the Customer Engagement application, the Customer, address, phone, or email address is marked as invalid and a validation error is recorded. This does not affect how the information is saved or used; it just means the information did not meet the criteria.

 **Note:**

The Customer validation process is determined by configuration, including whether or not validation is performed. Refer to the [Customer Engagement Cloud Services Implementation Guide](#) for more information, or contact your Project Manager.

Rules for Entering Customer Information

Follow these rules to ensure that the customer information entered is valid:

- **Names** - The first letter of each name, if applicable, is capitalized.
- **Prefix (Salutation)** - The user can enter anything for a prefix.
- **Suffix** - The user can enter anything for a suffix.
- **Gender** - When adding a new customer, select Male or Female from the list.
- **Address** - Address lines can be left blank.
- **Postal Code** - The user can enter anything for a postal code.
- **Email Address** - The system looks for an @ symbol in the email address. If found, the system verifies that the email address is in the proper format: accountname@sub-domain.domain. If the email address is in the wrong format, the email address is marked as invalid and a validation error is generated.
- **Phone** - The application looks for and removes any non-numeric character except for E, e, X, x, T, or t. Any leading 1 (one) characters are removed.

5

Customer Dashboard

Use the Customer Dashboard to look up the information available for a customer and to edit customer information.

The Customer Dashboard is displayed when you look up a customer. See [Customer Search](#). You can also link from the customer name or image icon in the Customer List on the Home page.

Figure 5-1 Customer Dashboard

The screenshot shows the Customer Dashboard for a customer with ID 1005312. The dashboard is divided into several sections:

- Customer Information:** Includes Contact Information (Mailing Address, Email Address: work@example.com, Telephone), Customer Details (Language: EN, Class: WALKIN, Birth Date), and Gender.
- Attributes:** Lists attributes such as BRIDAL-DRESS-SIZE (Medium), NUMBER-RECEPTION-GUESTS (250), OMNI Channel Attribute, and SAVE_PAYMENT_CARD_TOKENS (Yes).
- Activity:** Shows a timeline of transactions: 9/22/22 at Locati... Return (\$100.00), 9/22/22 at Locati... Return (\$100.00), 9/21/22 at Locatio... Purchase (\$132.47), 9/9/22 test, 1/3/22 Test, and 10/30/21 Promotion Id:137:RCRMCS-11911.
- Purchase Profile:** Features a bar chart titled "Purchase Pattern by DEPT" for the Clothing Department, comparing 2022 and 2023. Summary statistics include: Total Spend Since 9/21/22: \$324.39, Profit Since 9/21/22: \$259.00, Total Item Count 9/21/22: 3, and Returns: 68.3%.
- Stratified...:** Shows stratified segments for "Stratified Segment Test" and "Loyalty", both with an Annual Income of 0.
- Cards and Offers:** Displays a card for "2423147643293776 VB - Franchisee - ..." and an offer "RPJ-QA-DEMO Expires 2/27/23".
- Segments:** Shows "Active Customers" with a count of 2.
- Notes:** Includes a note "EVT_CREATE_AWARD Issued 5 award(s) from Loyalty".

Information on the Customer Dashboard is divided into these sections:

- The header bar displays the Customer Name and ID, Sign Up Date, Personal Lists, Number in [Customer Household](#) and Actions menu.
- **Customer Information** - Basic information about the customer, such as mailing addresses, email addresses and phone numbers. See [Customer Information](#).
- **Attributes** - Information that helps to characterize the customer, such as birth month and marital status. See [Attributes](#).
- **Activity** - Shows current and upcoming customer tasks. See [Activity](#).
- **Purchase Profile** - Shows purchase pattern of the customer by revenue center over a year. See [Purchase Profile](#).
- **Stratified Segments** - Shows the stratified segments in which the customer is grouped. See [Stratified Segments](#).
- **Cards and Programs** - Includes information for each program where the customer has an account. See [Cards and Programs](#).
- **Offers** - Shows current offers for the customer. See [Offers](#).
- **Segments** - Segments define groups of customers. This section shows the segments to which the customer belongs. See [Segments](#).
- **Notes** - Provides information about all of the notes written about the Customer. See [Notes](#).

Customer Household

The Customer Household includes members of a household that a customer is a part of, so that it is possible to direct marketing efforts to a household, rather than each individual member. Household members can be included in this list if they share the same last name and address, or if they only share the same address.

Viewing the Customer Household List

To display the Customer Household list:

1. Display the customer in the Customer Dashboard, for example by clicking on the customer name or image in the Customer List.
2. In the header of the Customer Dashboard, look for the (Number) in Household link. This link will only display if there is more than one household member.
3. Click the (Number) in Household link. This displays the Customer Household list:

Figure 5-2 Customer Household

Household for [Customer ID] (Customer ID []) X

Household Batch Last Run On: 6/4/19

Household Activity

Activity YTD: \$2,911.62 Activity Count YTD: 6 Activity LTD: \$8,677.42 Activity Count LTD: 30

Customers In Household Sort By: Activity YTD

Name And Address	Last Visit	Activity YTD:	Activity Count YTD:	Activity LTD:	Activity Count LTD:
[Customer Name]	12/6/18 Location: [Address]	\$2,911.62	6	\$8,023.80	32
[Customer Name]	12/24/17	\$0.00	0	\$81.51	1
[Customer Name]	11/3/17	\$0.00	0	\$81.51	1
[Customer Name]	11/3/17	\$0.00	0	\$81.51	1

Done

The Household list displays the following view-only information:

- Household Activity - Summarizes the transaction activity of the household by these metrics:
 - Activity YTD – The amount of the total year-to-date transaction activity for the whole household.
 - Activity Count YTD – The number of transactions for the whole household for the year to date.
 - Activity LTD – The amount of the total life-to-date transaction activity for the whole household.
 - Activity Count LTD – The number of life-to-date transactions for the whole household.
 - You can sort by the above Household Activity metrics by selecting from these items on the Sort By drop-down list.
 - Activity YTD
 - Activity Count YTD
 - Activity LTD
 - Activity Count LTD
 - Name and Address – The name and address of the household member, and the customer image, if available.
 - Last Visit – The last date the customer made a purchase.
 - Activity YTD – The amount of the total year-to-date transaction activity for the household member.
 - Activity Count YTD – The household member's number of transactions for the year to date.
 - Activity Count LTD – The household member's number of life-to-date transactions.
4. Use the scroll bars to display hidden information. Click **Done** when you are done viewing the list. This returns you to the Customer Dashboard.

Personal Lists

The Personal List provides information about all the user-created personal lists (previously known as manual segments) to which the user can associate customers. The Personal Lists link at the top of the Customer Dashboard displays all the private lists created by the associate to which the customer may be assigned.

To Assign and Unassign Personal Lists:

1. Click the (#) Available Personal Lists link at the top of the Customer Dashboard. This displays the associate's available Personal Lists, with the ones that include the customer listed first.

Figure 5-3 Personal Lists for Customer

List ID	List Name	Description	Added On	Customer Count	Assign to List
1123	CPU 2022 JULY	CPU 2022 JULY		0	Assign
1072	VB - Personal List	VB - Personal List!		23	Assign
465	VB-Personal List (Franchisee)	VB-Personal List (Franchisee)		8	Assign
354	Test Private List	Test Private List		7	Assign
288	ManualSegment-NotPublic	ManualSegment-NotPublic		3	Assign
243	JS-TaskAssignmentJob	JS-TaskAssignmentJob		600	Assign
57	Private Manual Segment	Private Manual Segment		3	Assign

The Personal Lists for Customer pop-up window displays this information:

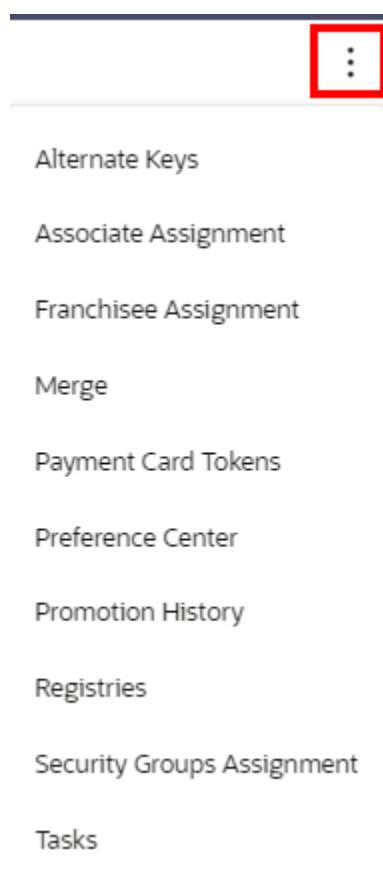
- Sorted by Customer Added On date and then by List ID, in descending order
- Customer Bar
 - The number of Available Personal Lists for the customer
 - Customer Name and ID
- Available Personal Lists Grid
 - List ID – ID of the list
 - List Name – Name of the List
 - Description – Description of the list
 - Added On – The date on which the customer was added to the list
 - Customer Count – The number of customers on that list.

- Assign to List – Buttons for assigning (Assign) and removing (Unassign)
 - Scroll bars are available if there are more lists than will fit on the window.
2. Add or remove the customer from a list:
 - Click **Assign** to assign a customer to a list
 - Click **Unassign** to remove a customer from a list.
 3. Click **OK** when you are done. This returns you to the Customer Dashboard.

Actions Menu

The actions menu at the top of the Customer Dashboard provides access to several tasks associated with customer management.

Figure 5-4 Actions Menu



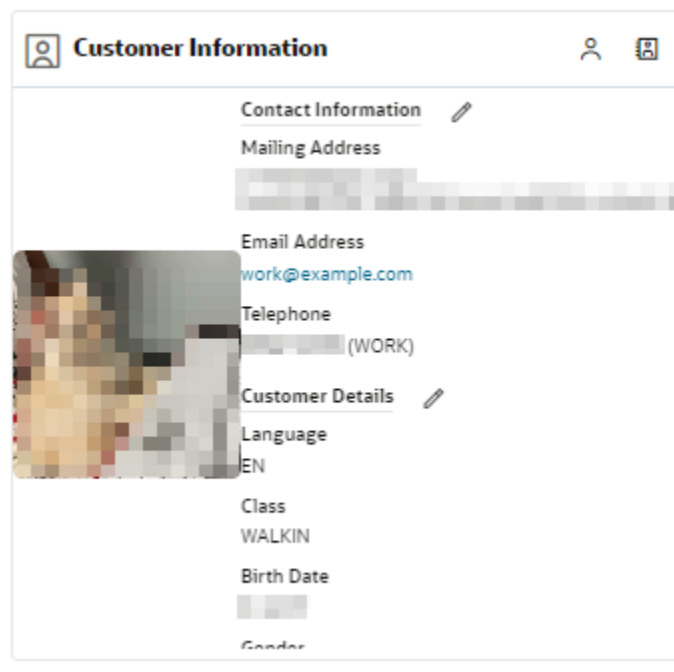
- Alternate Keys - Displays the Alternate Keys window for the customer displayed in the Customer Dashboard. See: [Alternate Keys](#)
- Associate Assignment - Displays the Associate Assignment window for the customer displayed in the Customer Dashboard. See: [Associate Assignment](#)
- Franchisee Assignment - Displays the Franchisee Assignment window for the customer displayed in the Customer Dashboard. This option is only displayed if the associate has access to at least one franchisee. See: [Franchisee Assignment](#)

- Merge - Displays the Customer Merge window for the customer displayed in the Customer Dashboard. See: [Merge](#)
- Payment Card Tokens - Displays the payment card tokens window for the customer displayed in the Customer Dashboard. See [Payment Card Tokens](#).
- Preference Center - Displays the Preference Center window for the customer displayed in the Customer Dashboard. See: [Preference Center](#)
- Promotion History - Displays the Promotion History window for the customer displayed in the Customer Dashboard. See: [Promotion History](#)
- Registries - Displays the Registries window for the customer displayed in the Customer Dashboard. See: [Registries](#)
- Security Groups Assignment - Provides the ability to assign or unassign a Security Group to a customer, so that customer details will be protected based on the privileges for the assigned security group. See: [Security Groups Assignment](#)
- Tasks - Displays the Customer Tasks window for the customer displayed in the Customer Dashboard. See: [Tasks](#)

Customer Information

The Customer Information area of the Customer Dashboard includes contact information and other details about the customer.

Figure 5-5 Customer Information



- Use the scroll bar or up and down arrow keys to move through the information.
- If the user has read-only access, the View icon is displayed instead of the Edit icon.

Emailing a Customer

Click the Email Address link in the customer information panel to send a message to a customer. This link uses the client email server. After you send the message, you are returned to the Customer Information panel.

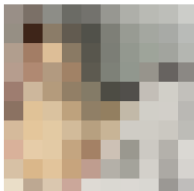
Editing Customer Details

To edit Customer Details, click the Edit icon at the top of the panel next to Customer Information, or next to Customer Details. This opens an editable Customer Details panel.

Figure 5-6 Customer Details Editing

Customer Details for **Adelina Aaron** (Customer ID 1005312) ×

Created by stuart.drennan@oracle.com on 10/29/20 Created by stuart.drennan@oracle.com on 10/29/20

 **Adelina Aaron**


Language: EN - English

Class: WALKIN

Prospect Rent

Customer Detail

Prefix: Mr, Mrs, Ms, etc. Owner ID: +

First Name: Adelina Birth Date: 

Second First Name: Gender: Female

Middle Name: Ann Education Level: Secondary, Bachelors, Gra

Last: Marital:

Customer Locations

Sign Up Location:

Home Location: 62101-Store 62101

Contact Permissions

Mail Email Telephone Fax

Card Detail

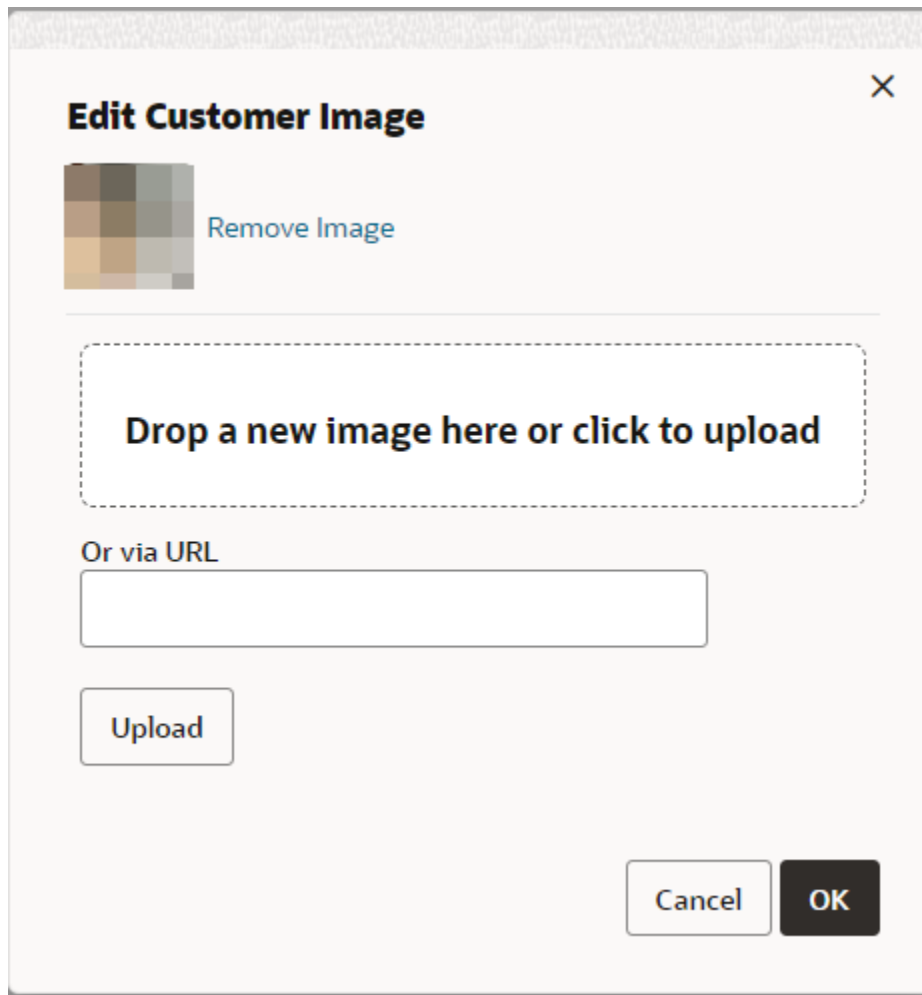
Cancel OK

A customer image, if provided, is displayed in the top left of this panel.

To edit the customer image:

1. Under the customer image, click **Edit Image**. This displays a dialog for uploading an image.

Figure 5-7 Edit Customer Image



2. Select an image and drag it into the top box. Alternatively, you can enter a URL for the image file in the or via URL field, and click **Upload**.
3. When you have selected the new image file, click OK.
4. For all other items, enter the information in the fields that need updating and click **OK**.

Customer Detail information includes the following:

Customer Details

- **Language** – The customer's preferred language (required).
- **Class** – The class to which the customer belongs (required).
- **Prospect** – Indicates whether the customer is a prospect.
- **Rent** – Indicates whether the customer name can be rented to other companies for prospecting efforts.
- **Prefix** – Prefix to the customer name.
- **First Name** – First name for the customer.
- **Second First Name** – A second first name for the customer, if provided.

- **Middle Name** – Middle name or middle initial for the customer.
- **Last Name** – Last name for the customer.
- **Second Last Name** – A second last name for the customer, if provided.
- **Suffix** – Suffix to the customer name.
- **Business Name** – Name of the business associated with the customer.
- **Organization Name** – Name of the organization associated with the customer.
- **Organization Type** – Type of organization associated with the customer.
- **Owner ID** - Used to control the associate able to assign one or more security groups to a customer. Do the following to add an Owner ID:
 1. Click the Owner ID **Assign Owner Add** icon. Result: The Assign Owner window appears.

Figure 5-8 Assign Owner

2. In the Search for User field, enter the **User ID**, **Name**, **Email Address**, or **Location** of the user you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for users that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.
3. Click **Assign** for the user you wish to assign to the customer.
4. When you are finished assigning a user, you can either click **OK** to close the window and save the changes or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving the changes.

 **Note:**

Click **Unassign** to remove an existing user assigned to a customer. This enables you to assign a new user. Each customer can only have one user assigned as an owner.

- **Birth Date** – Date of birth of the customer.
- **Gender** – Customer gender.
- **Education Level** – Highest level of education completed by the customer.
- **Marital Status** – Current marital status of the customer.

- **Anniversary** – Customer anniversary date.
- **Ethnicity** – Customer ethnicity.
- **Annual Income** – Customer's annual income.
- **Net Worth** – Net worth of the customer.
- **Signup Location** – Location where the customer signed up.
- **Home Location** – Home location for the customer.
- **Contact Permissions** – The methods by which the customer has given permission to be contacted. Check the box next to each allowed method.
- **Card Detail** – Details on card associated with the customer

Editing Customer Contact Information

To edit the customer's contact information, click the Edit icon next to Contact Information. This opens an editable Contact Information panel.

Figure 5-9 Edit Customer Contact Information

Contact Information for [redacted] (Customer ID 1005312)

Mailing Addresses Last Updated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 5/3/22

Actions: +, edit, delete, refresh

Primary	Address Type	User Label	Address 1	Address 2	City	State	Postal Code	C
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WORK	Work	[redacted]		MANCHESTE	GREATER MA	M15HG	C
<input type="checkbox"/>	HOME		[redacted]		WASHINGTON	DC	20524	U
<input type="checkbox"/>	GIFTREGISTRY		[redacted]		WASHINGTON	DC	20521	U

Email Addresses Last Updated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 5/3/22

Actions: +, edit, delete, refresh

Primary	Email Address Type	User Label	Email Address
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WORK	Work	[redacted]

Telephone Numbers Last Updated by tom.a.lewis@oracle.com on 5/3/22

Actions: +, edit, delete, refresh

Primary	Telephone Type	User Label	Phone Number	Exten
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WORK	Work	[redacted]	

Done

Customer Contact information includes the following:

- **Mailing Addresses** - All mailing addresses of the customer.
- **Email Addresses** - All email addresses of the customer.
- **Telephone Numbers** - All telephone numbers of the customer.

Add, Edit, or Delete a Mailing Address:

To create a new mailing address:

1. In the Contact Information editing panel under Mailing Addresses, choose **Create Address** from the Actions menu, or click the **Add (+)** icon. This opens a Create Address dialog.

Figure 5-10 Create Address Dialog

Create Address ✕

Primary

Country (Please select) Required

Address Type (Please select) Required

User Label

Address 1

Address 2

Address 3

Address 4

Apartment

City

State

Postal Code Required

County

Contact (Please select)

Cancel OK

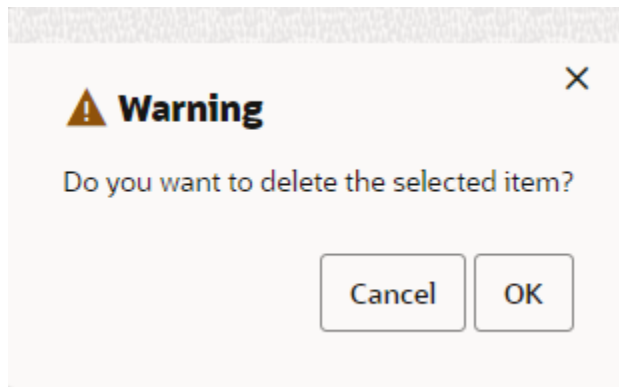
2. Enter the information for the new address (see Step 2 in Editing a Mailing Address) and click **OK**. The new address is displayed at the top of the Mailing Address list, because the Primary flag is automatically defaulted when adding a new mailing address.

The Primary field for any address that was previously the primary address is de-selected.

To delete a mailing address:

1. In the Contact Information editing panel under Mailing Addresses, select the address you want to delete.
2. Choose **Delete Address** from the Actions menu, or click the **Delete** icon. This displays a Warning message:

Figure 5-11 Warning



3. In the Warning message, click **OK**. The address is deleted from the Mailing Addresses list.

To edit a mailing address:

1. In the Contact Information editing panel under Mailing Addresses, choose **Edit Address** from the Actions menu, or click the **Edit** icon. This opens an Edit Address dialog:

Figure 5-12 Edit Address Dialog

The "Edit Address" dialog form includes the following fields and controls:

- Primary:** A checkbox that is checked.
- Country:** A dropdown menu showing "GB - UNITED KII".
- Address Type:** A dropdown menu showing "WORK".
- User Label:** A text input field containing "Work".
- Address 1:** A text input field containing a redacted name.
- Address 2:** An empty text input field.
- Address 3:** An empty text input field.
- Address 4:** An empty text input field.
- Apartment:** An empty text input field.
- City:** A text input field containing "MANCHESTER".
- State:** A text input field containing "GREATER MANCHEST".
- Postal Code:** A text input field containing "M15HG".
- County:** A text input field containing "UK".
- Contact:** A dropdown menu showing a redacted name.

At the bottom right of the form are two buttons: "Cancel" and "OK".

2. Edit the information for the address (see Step 2 in Editing a Mailing Address) and click **OK**. The edited information is displayed in the Mailing Addresses list.

If the Primary check box for the address that you are editing was selected, the Primary check box is disabled in the Edit Address dialog. If the Primary check box for the address that you are editing was not selected, the Primary check box is enabled in the Edit Address dialog. To set an address as the new Primary address, select the Primary check box when editing.

The Create and Edit Mailing Address dialogs display the following information:

- **Primary** – Indicates whether this is the primary address for the customer.
- **Country** – The country for the customer address. Select a country from the drop-down list (required).
- **Address Type** – Indicates the type of address, such as Home or Business. Select a type from the drop-down list (required).
- **User Label** – User label for the address.
- **Address 1-4** – The street number in the address. You can enter up to four addresses, for example, suite or office number.
- **Apartment** – The apartment number, if applicable.
- **City** – The city for the customer address.
- **State** – The state for the customer address.
- **Postal Code** – The postal code for the customer address (required).
- **County** – The County for the customer address.
- **Contact** – The contact rule for the address. Select a contact preference from the drop-down list.

Add, Edit, or Delete an Email Address:

To create a new email address

1. In the Contact Information editing panel under Email Addresses, choose **Create Email Address** from the Actions menu, or click the **Add** icon. This displays a Create Email Address dialog:

Figure 5-13 Create Email Address Dialog

Create Email Address ✕

Primary

Email Address Type Required

User Label

Email Required

Format Preference

Contact

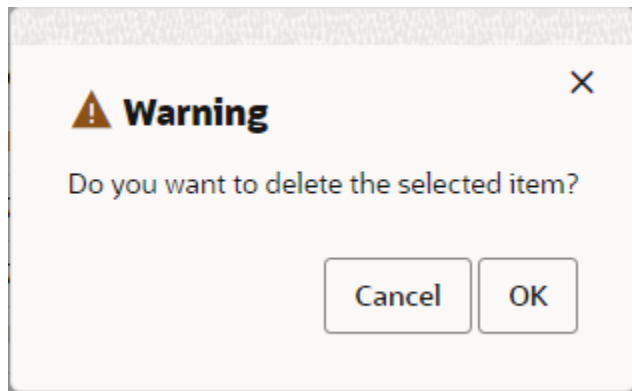
2. Enter the information for the new email address (see Step 2 in Editing an Email Address) and click **OK**. The Primary flag is automatically defaulted when adding a new email address, so the new email is displayed at the top of the Email Addresses list.

The Primary field for any email that was previously the primary email is de-selected.

To delete an email address:

1. In the Contact Information editing panel under Email Addresses, select the email you want to delete.
2. Choose **Delete Email Address** from the Actions menu, or click the **Delete** icon. This displays a Warning message:

Figure 5-14 Warning



3. In the Warning message, click **OK**. The email is deleted from the Email Addresses list.

To edit an email address:

1. In the Contact Information editing panel under Email Addresses, select the email address you want to edit, and choose **Edit Email Address** from the Actions menu, or click the **Edit** icon. This opens an Edit Email dialog.

Figure 5-15 Edit Email Address Dialog

Edit Email Address X

Created by [redacted]@oracle.com on 5/3/22

Primary

Email Address Type WORK ▼

User Label Work

Email [redacted]

Format Preference Text ▼

Contact N ▼

Cancel OK

2. Edit the information for the email address (see Step 2 in Editing an Email Address) and click **OK**. The edited information is displayed in the Email Addresses list.

If the Primary check box is selected for the email address being edited, the Primary check box is disabled in the Edit Email Address dialog. If the Primary check box is not selected for the email address being edited, the Primary check box is enabled in the Edit Email Address dialog. To set an email address as the new primary email address, select the Primary check box when editing.

The Create and Edit Email Address dialogs display the following information:

- **Primary** – Indicates whether this is the primary email address for the customer.
- **Email Address Type** – The type of email address, for example, Home or Business. Select a type from the drop-down list (required).
- **User Label** – User label for the email address (required).
- **Email** – The email address (required).

- **Format Preference** – The preferred file format for receiving email messages. Select a format from the drop-down list.
- **Contact** – The contact rule for the email address. Select a contact preference from the drop-down list.

Add, Edit, or Delete a Telephone Number

To create a new telephone number:

1. In the Contact Information editing panel under Telephone Numbers, choose **Create Telephone** from the Actions menu, or click the **Add** icon. This opens a Create Telephone dialog.

Figure 5-16 Create Telephone Dialog

Create Telephone ✕

Primary

Telephone Type (Please select) ▾
Required

User Label

Phone Number Enter Numeric value
Required

Extension

Contact (Please select) ▾

Cancel OK

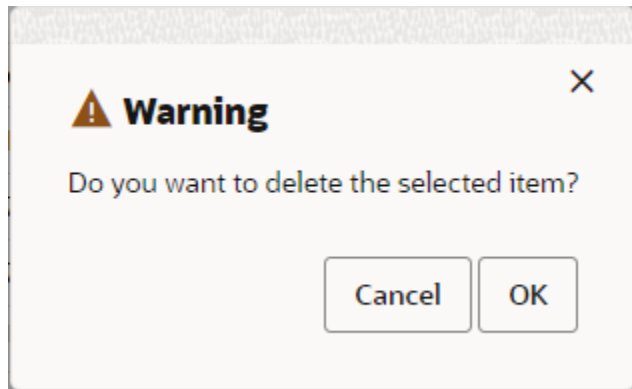
2. Enter the information for the new number (see Step 2 in Editing a Telephone Number) and click **OK**. The Primary flag is automatically defaulted when adding a new telephone number, so the new number is displayed at the top of the Telephone Numbers list.

The Primary field for any number that was previously the primary number is de-selected.

To delete a telephone number:

1. In the Contact Information editing panel under Telephone Numbers, select the number you want to delete.
2. Choose **Delete Telephone** from the Actions menu, or click the **Delete** icon. This displays a Warning message.

Figure 5-17 Warning



3. In the Warning message, click **OK**. The number is deleted from the Telephone Numbers list.

To edit a telephone number:

1. In the Contact Information editing panel under Telephone Number, select the telephone number you want to edit, and choose **Edit Telephone** from the Actions menu, or click the **Edit** icon. This opens an Edit Telephone dialog.

Figure 5-18 Edit Telephone Dialog

Edit Telephone ✕

Created by [redacted]@oracle.com on 5/3/22

Primary

Telephone Type

User Label

Phone Number

Extension

Contact

2. Edit the information for the number (see Step 2 in Editing a Telephone Number) and click **OK**. The edited information is displayed in the Telephone Numbers list.

If the Primary check box is selected for the telephone number being edited, the Primary check box is disabled in the Edit Telephone dialog. If the Primary check box is not selected for the telephone number being edited, the Primary check box is enabled in the Edit Telephone dialog. To set a telephone number as the new Primary telephone number, select the Primary check box when editing.

The Create and Edit Telephone dialogs display the following information:

- **Primary** – Indicates whether this is the primary telephone number for the customer.
- **Telephone Type** – The type of telephone number, for example, Home or Business. Select a type from the drop-down list (required).
- **User Label** – User label for the telephone number.
- **Phone Number** – The telephone number, including area code (required).

- **Extension** – The telephone number extension, if applicable.
- **Contact** – The contact rule for the telephone number. Select a contact preference from the drop-down list.

Viewing Customer Details and Contact Information

If you have read-only access, you will see the **View** icon in the Customer Information panel instead of the **Edit** icon.

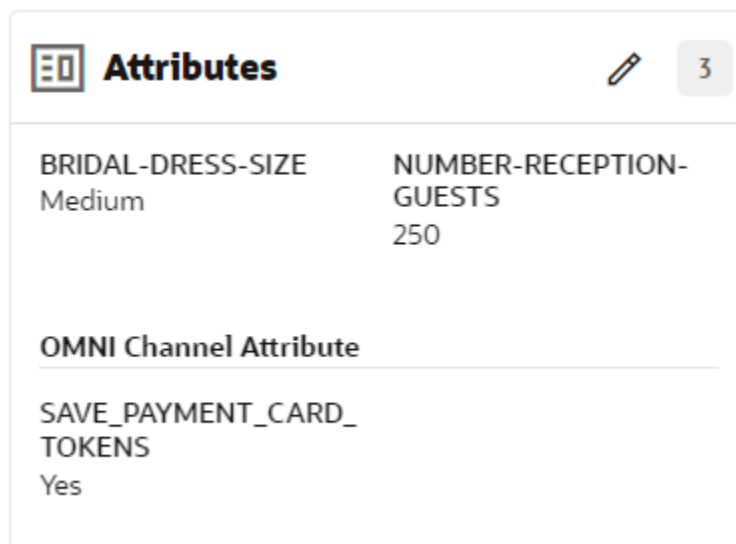
- To view both customer details and contact information, click the View icon at the top of the Customer Information panel.
- To view just customer contact information, click the View icon at the top of the Contact Information section.
- To view just customer details, click the View icon at the top of the Customer Details section.

See the previous sections for more information on the fields displayed in View mode.

Attributes

The Attributes panel of the Customer Dashboard displays all the attributes and attribute values associated with the customer:

Figure 5-19 Customer Attributes



- A badge with the total number of attributes assigned to the customer is displayed on the right side of the title bar, as in [figure 4-19](#), above.
- An Edit icon is displayed next to the badge as in [figure 4-19](#), above. This lets you access controls for editing, creating and deleting attributes.
- The Customer Attribute section contains the following information for each customer attribute:

- Group - The group associated with the attribute.
 - Name - The name of the attribute.
 - Value - The value set for the attribute.
 - Description - Description of the information provided by the attribute.
- The name of the attribute appears above the attribute value.
 - If attributes are assigned to a group, those attributes are sorted by group, and the group name is displayed above the attributes.
 - Scroll bars are available if the number of attributes do not fit in the display area of the panel.
 - If there are no attributes assigned to the customer, a pop-up appears indicating `No Attributes assigned`.

Creating an Attribute

1. Click the **Edit** icon at the top of the Attributes panel.

This displays a window with details of the customer's attributes:

Figure 5-20 Customer Attributes Details

Group	Name	Description	Value	Data Type	Unique	Editable	Open Access	Publish to Batch Exporter
	BRIDAL-DRESS-SIZE	BRIDAL-DRESS-SIZE	Medium	List	No	Yes	Yes	No
	NUMBER-RECEPTION-	NUMBER-RECEPTION-GUESTS	250	Number	Yes	No	Yes	No
OMNI Channel	SAVE_PAYMENT_CARD	OMNI Save Card Permission	Yes	List	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Done

The following controls are available in the toolbar:

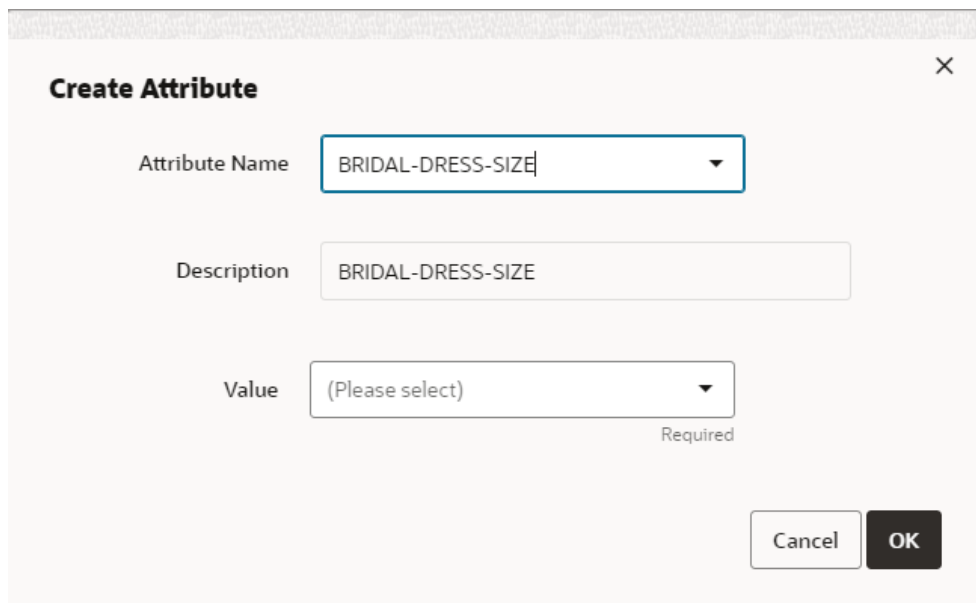
- **Actions menu** – The Actions menu has options that correspond to the Add, Edit, and Delete icons.
- **Add icon** - Displays a dialog that lets you create a new customer attribute
- **Edit icon** - Displays a dialog that lets you edit a selected customer attribute.
- **Delete icon** - Deletes a selected customer attribute.

The following information is displayed for each attribute:

- Group – The group associated with the attribute.
- Name – The name of the attribute.
- Description – Description of the information provided by the attribute.
- Value – The value set for the attribute.

- Data Type – The type of data contained in the attribute value.
 - Unique - Only one value can be added to the attribute when it is identified as unique.
 - Editable - Identifies whether the associate is allowed to edit the value for the attribute once it is added.
 - Open Access – Indicates whether there is open access to this attribute.
 - Publish to Batch Folder – Indicates whether the attribute has been made available for export to a marketing system such as Responsys.
2. Click **Add**, or click the **Actions Menu** and select **Add**. This displays the Create Attribute dialog:

Figure 5-21 Create Attributes Dialog



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Create Attribute" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog contains three input fields:

- Attribute Name:** A dropdown menu with the selected value "BRIDAL-DRESS-SIZE".
- Description:** A text input field containing "BRIDAL-DRESS-SIZE".
- Value:** A dropdown menu with the selected value "(Please select)". Below this field is the text "Required".

At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Cancel" and "OK".

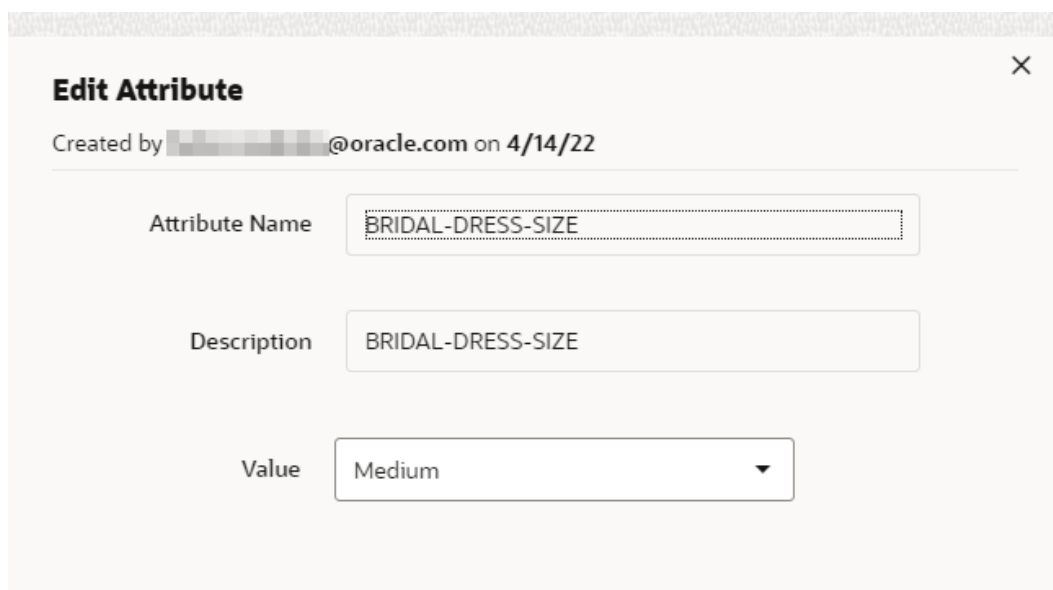
3. Select a **name** from the Attribute Name list.
4. Select a **value** from the Value list.
5. Click **OK**. This adds the new attribute to the list of attributes for the customer

Editing an Attribute

1. Click **Edit** at the top of the Attributes panel.
2. Select the **attribute** that you want to edit.
3. Click **Edit** at the top of the detail window, or choose **Edit** from the **Actions** menu.

This displays an Edit Attribute dialog with details of that attribute:

Figure 5-22 Edit Attribute Dialog



Edit Attribute ✕

Created by [redacted]@oracle.com on 4/14/22

Attribute Name

Description

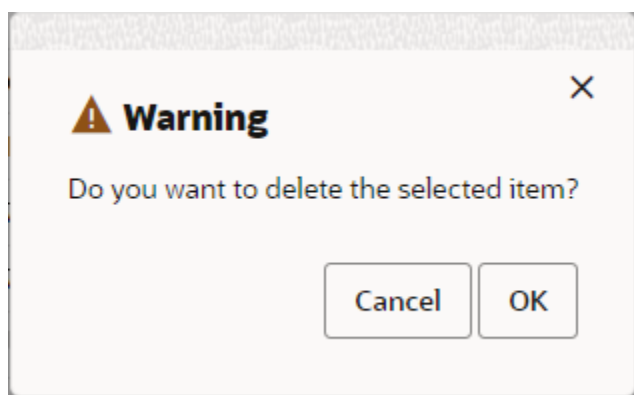
Value

4. Select a new **Value** for the Attribute from the list in the Value field.
5. Click **OK** to accept the value. The attribute is displayed with the new value.

Deleting an Attribute

1. Click **Edit** at the top of the Attributes panel.
This displays a window with details of the customer's attributes:
2. Select the **attribute** that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**, or click the **Actions Menu** and select **Delete**. This displays a Warning message:

Figure 5-23 Warning



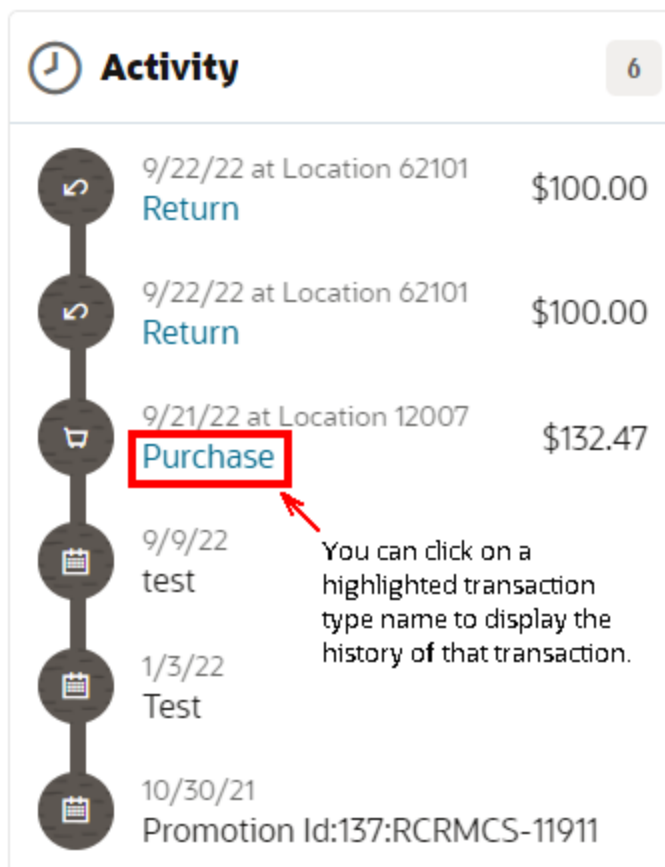
4. Click **OK** to verify that you want to delete the message.
5. When you are finished adding, editing or deleting customer attributes, click **Done**, to return to the Customer Dashboard.

Activity

The Activity panel of the Customer Dashboard provides quick access to transactions and other activities pertaining to a customer.

- This panel displays current and future tasks, and after those, the past 25 activities, which include tasks and retail transactions.
- The user can view the tasks associated with the customer only if they have the appropriate user roles for task access.
- The activity stream is sorted by the most recent first.
- Scroll bars are available if the number of activities do not fit in the display area of the panel.
- If there are no activities to show for the customer, an image with No Activity available to display displays.

Figure 5-24 Customer Activity



The Activity panel can display the following information, depending on the type of activity:

- The date of the activity.

- The name of the activity.
- The location where the activity occurred, if available.
- The total amount of a transaction, such as a purchase.

Item Purchase History

In the Activity panel as shown in [Figure 5-24](#), if the activity is a transaction such as a purchase, return, or void, you can link to the item purchase history details by clicking the highlighted transaction type name.

Figure 5-25 Item Purchase History Details

Item Purchase History for ██████████ (Customer ID 1005312) ×

Filters

Item Keyword

Transaction ID

Date Range

From

To

Unit Price

Minimum

Item Purchase History

	Boys Argyle Sweater (210012459) Purchased on 1/1/70 at 12:00 AM Transaction ID: 1200700001202209214770304 SKU: 210012459	Purchased 2 at \$115.39 each (+691.56 points) Clothing Department, Mens Clothing, Sweaters - Mens
	Boys Argyle Sweater (210012970) Purchased on 1/1/70 at 12:00 AM Transaction ID: 1200700001202209214770304 SKU: 210012970	Purchased 1 at \$9.00 each (+27 points) Clothing Department, Mens Clothing, Sweaters - Mens

Note:

You can also link to the Item Purchase History from the Purchase Profile by clicking a colored area in the bar chart, or by clicking the View All Purchases link. See [Purchase Profile](#).

Filters

You can use the fields in the Filters panel to search for specific items by the following criteria:

- **Item Keyword** – Enter a keyword in the item description to filter for items having that keyword.
- **Transaction ID** – Enter an exact Transaction ID to filter for that transaction.
- **Date Range** – Specify a date range using the calendars to search for items in that date range.
- **Unit Price** – Use the up and down arrows to specify a minimum and maximum unit price to filter for items in that price range.

- **Department** – The store department where the item was purchased. Select a department from the list to filter on items from that department.

 **Note:**

This is a client-specific hierarchy field and the name (for example, Department) will depend on the client system configuration.

- **Reset** – Click **Reset** to clear all filters. This displays all of the items purchased by the customer.
- **Apply** – Click **Apply** to display items filtered by the specified criteria.
- When there are more fields than can fit in the filter box, a scroll bar is provided to navigate to the hidden items.

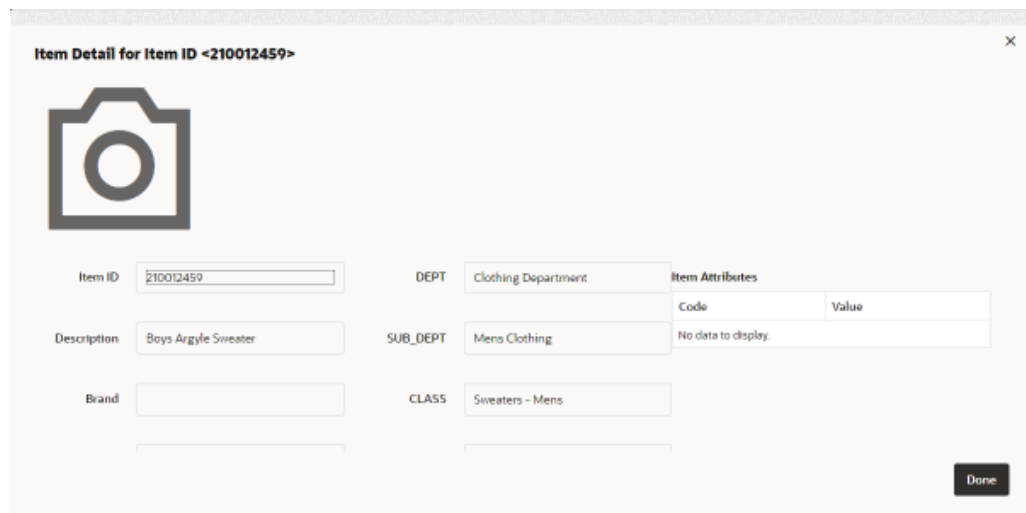
The following information is displayed for each item in the list, if available:

- Item name and number
- Purchase date and time
- Transaction ID
- SKU
- Quantity – the number of items purchased or returned
- Price – the price paid for the item
- Points –the loyalty points earned or reduced for the item purchased or returned
- Item Hierarchies for the item


Item Details

When you click a specific item in the Item Purchase History panel, the Item Detail opens:

Figure 5-26 Item Detail



Item Detail for Item ID <210012459>



Item ID: DEPT: Item Attributes

Description: SUB_DEPT:

Code	Value
No data to display.	

Brand: CLASS:

These details for the item are displayed, if available:

- Item ID
- Description
- Brand
- Season
- Color
- Hierarchy 1-5 - These vary according to the way the customer is configured, for example, Department, SUB_DEPT, CLASS, SUB_CLASS, STYLE_ID. Only configured levels are displayed.
- Item Attributes:
 - Code
 - Value
 - If more attributes are available than can fit in the Item Attributes box, scroll bars are provided for navigation to hidden information.

Click **Done** to close the Item Detail.

Transaction Details

When clicking a specific transaction ID in the Item Purchase History panel, a Purchase Details window displays for that transaction ID.

- The popup has three tabs.
- The information is read-only.
- It displays both purchases and returns, in all three tabs, based on the selected transaction.
- All currency fields are populated based on the system base currency.
- If there is more information than can fit in the tab, scroll bars are provided for navigation to hidden information.

Figure 5-27 Purchase Detail - Purchase Information

Purchase Detail for Transaction ID <12007000012022092147710304>

Purchase Information | Line Items | Line Item Modifiers

Purchase Details

Purchase	47790304	Exchange Rate	1
Grand Total	\$152.47	Net Amount	\$124.59
Location	12007	Status	DELIVERED
Business Date	9/21/22	Start Time	9/21/22, 1:33 PM
Void Flag	No	End Time	9/21/22, 1:38 PM

Purchase Properties

Code	Value
SoapUI Test Plan	TestSuite-PostLogService TestCase1.1

Done

The first panel, Purchase Information, is displayed by default when you click the transaction ID, or when you click the Purchase Information tab. It displays the following details about the transaction, if available:

- Purchase
- Grand Total
- Location
- Business Date
- Void Flag
- Register
- Cashier
- Currency
- Original Currency
- Exchange Rate
- Net Amount
- Status
- Start Time
- End Time
- Tax Amount
- Points Earned
- Linked Purchase
- Code
- Value

Figure 5-28 Purchase Details - Line Items

Purchase Detail for Transaction ID <12007000012022092147710304> X

Purchase Information Line Items Line Item Modifiers

Sales Line Items

	Void Flag	Sequence	Item ID	Actual Price	Quantity	Extended Amount	Regular Price	Unit Cost	Item Type	Scan ID	DEPT	SUB_DEPT	CLASS	SUB_CLASS	STYLE_ID
	No	1	210012459	\$115.39	2	\$115.39	\$125.99	\$21.01	Stock	210012459	900	900-M	900-M-5	900-M-5E	SWEATERS
	No	2	210012970	\$9.00	1	\$9.00	\$10.00	\$23.37	Stock	210012970	900	900-M	900-M-5	900-M-5E	SWEATERS

Tax Line Items

Void Flag	Sequence	Tax Amount	Taxable Amount	Exempt Amount	Exempt ID	Override Amount	Override Flag	Override Percentage	Override Reason
No	3	\$8.08	\$124.39	\$0.00	116X1113111H	\$8.08	Yes	0.065	New Tax Rate

Tender Line Items

Done

Line items are displayed when you click the Line Items tab. The following information is displayed, if available:

- Sales Line Items
 - Void Flag
 - Sequence
 - Item ID
 - Actual Price
 - Quantity
 - Extended Amount
 - Regular Price
 - Unit Cost
 - Item Type
 - Scan ID
 - Department
 - Hierarchy 1-5 - These vary according to the way the customer is configured, for example, Department, SUB_DEPT, CLASS, SUB_CLASS, STYLE_ID. Only configured levels are displayed.
 - Points Earned
- Tax Line Items
 - Void Flag
 - Sequence
 - Tax Amount
 - Taxable Amount

- Exempt Amount
- Exempt ID
- Override Amount
- Override Flag
- Override Percentage
- Override Reason
- Tender Line Items
 - Void Flag
 - Sequence
 - Tender ID
 - Tender Amount
 - Authorization Code
 - Account Number
 - Activity
 - Adjudication Code
 - Expiration Date
 - Face Value
 - Issue Date
 - Issue Type
 - Serial Number
 - Remaining Amount

Figure 5-29 Purchase Detail - Line Item Modifiers

Purchase Detail for Transaction ID <12007000012022092147710304> ×

Purchase Information Line Items Line Item Modifiers

Commission Line Item Modifiers

Void Flag	Sequence	Commission Amount	Commission Percent	Commission Percent Of Item	Commissioned Employee ID
No	1			1 100	
No	2			1 100	

Price Line Item Modifiers

Void Flag	Sequence	Price Change Amount	Price Modifier Type	Price Change Reason	Promotion ID
No	1	-\$10.00	Subtract	Target 3_2	315.3339:
No	2	-\$1.00	Subtract	Target 3_2	315.3335:

Done

When clicking the Line Item Modifiers tab, the line item modifiers are displayed. The following information is displayed, if available:

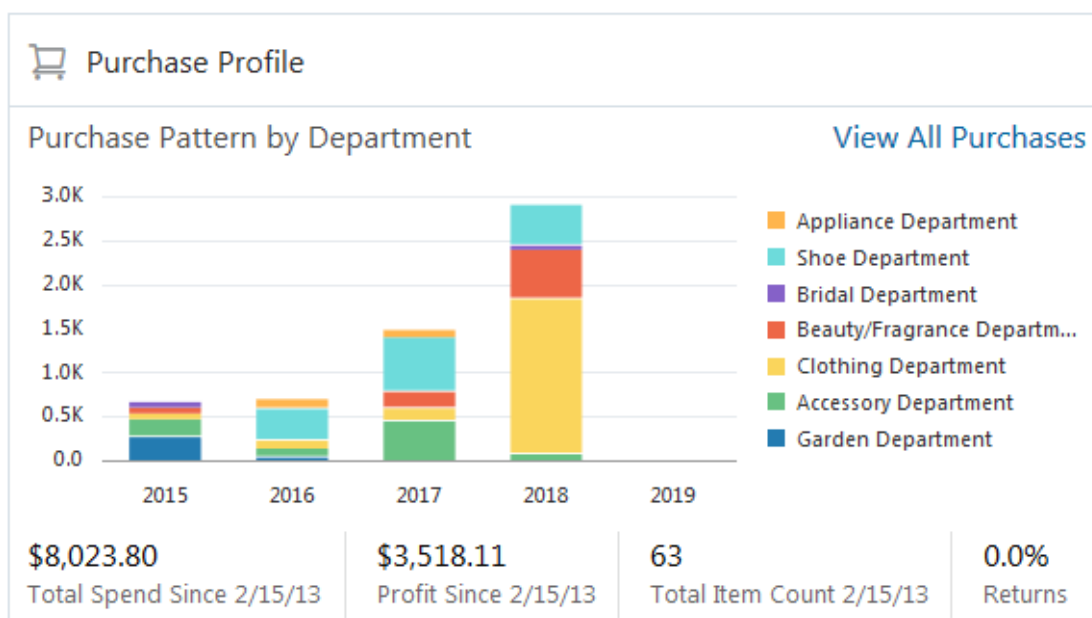
- Commission Line Item Modifiers:
 - Void Flag
 - Sequence
 - Commission Amount
 - Commission Percent
 - Commission Percent of Item
 - Commissioned Employee ID
- Price Line Item Modifiers:
 - Void Flag
 - Sequence
 - Price Change Amount
 - Price Modifier Type
 - Price Change Reason
 - Promotion ID

Click **Done** when you are finished viewing the transaction details.

Purchase Profile

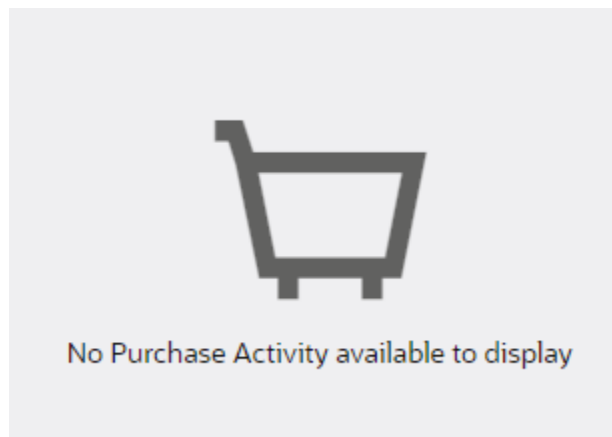
The Purchase Profile panel shows the purchase pattern of the customer. Each bar in the graph represents a year. The colored bands correspond to the revenue department* (*or other entity named by the client) in which the customer purchased products during that year, measured by the amount of spending. Each year in the graph displays the top five revenue departments (or other entities named by the client).

Figure 5-30 Customer Purchase Profile



- Other revenue metrics include:
 - **Total Spend** - Shows how much the customer has spent since their first purchase to date.
 - **Profit Since** - Shows the total profit the store or chain has made since the customer's first purchase to date.
 - **Total Item Count** - Shows the total transaction (purchases minus returns) count for the lifetime of the customer. This includes all transactions, not just the ones represented in the five departments and five years displayed in the graph.
 - **Returns** - Shows the percentage of the amount of Returns to the amount of Total Spending.
- If there are no Purchase Profiles to show for the customer, an image with No Purchase Activity available to display appears:

Figure 5-31 No Purchase Activity Available Message



Viewing Purchase Pattern Details

Hover over a colored area in a graph to see detail information in a tool tip. This information includes:

- **Category** – The category of the purchase, such as Clothing Department.
- **Category Spend** – How much the customer spent on items in this category.
- **Classes** – The name of the classes (or client-specific hierarchy level) within the selected category.

Viewing Purchase History

Click a colored area in a bar chart to go the Item Purchase History for all the items represented in that area.

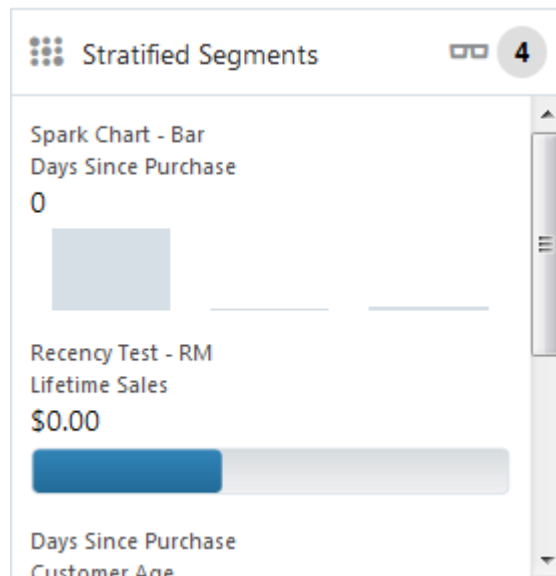
You can also click the **View All Purchases** link to go to the Item Purchase History for all items.

See [Item Purchase History](#) for more information.

Stratified Segments

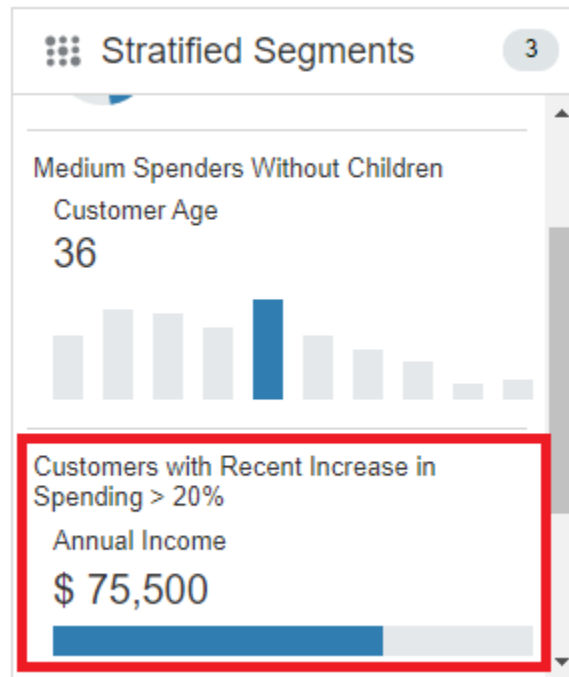
Stratified Segments define groups of Customers. The Customers within a Stratified Segment are divided into levels within the Segment. The stratified segments to which the customer belongs are shown in the Stratified Segments panel of the Customer Dashboard.

Figure 5-32 Stratified Segments Panel



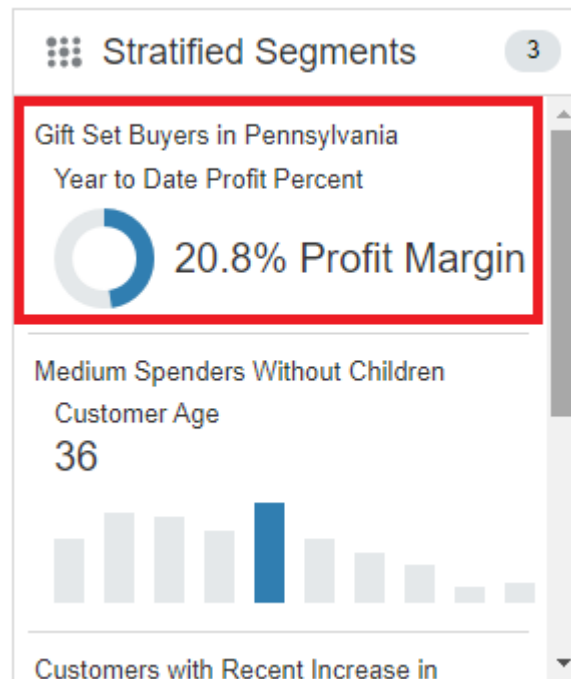
- Stratified segments classified as public are shown. If a stratified segment is classified as private, it will only be shown to the associate who created the stratified segment.
- Three types of graphs are used to represent statistics:
 - Status Meter Gauge – Horizontal, uses horizontal orientation to indicate thresholds at specific values:

Figure 5-33 Stratified Segments - Horizontal



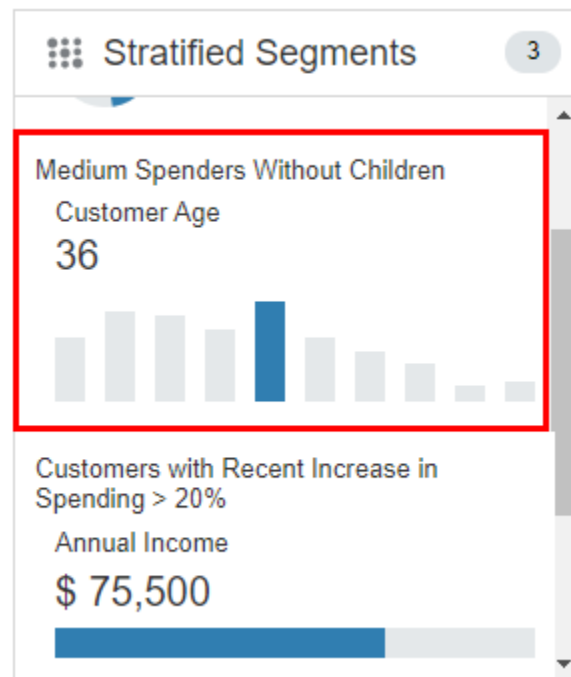
- Status Meter Gauge - Circular, uses circular orientation to indicate thresholds at specific values:

Figure 5-34 Stratified Segments - Circular



- Spark Chart - Bar, used to view trends over time and generally paired with additional context in a table:

Figure 5-35 Stratified Segments - Spark Chart (Bar)



- A badge with the total number of stratified segments to which the customer belongs displays on the right side of the title bar.
- An eyeglass icon lets you view details about all the Stratified Segments to which the customer belongs. See [Viewing Customer Stratified Segments List](#).
- Scroll bars are available if the number of stratified segments do not fit in the display area of the panel.
- If there are no stratified segments assigned to the customer, the following image is displayed:

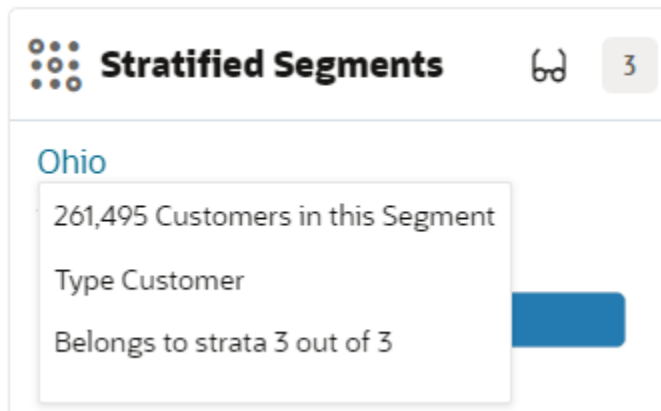
Figure 5-36 No Stratified Segments Assigned Message



Viewing Stratified Segment Details

If you hover over a segment name in the Stratified Segments panel a tool tip is displayed:

Figure 5-37 Stratified Segments Tool Tip



The following information is provided:

- Segment Description.
- Customer Count – Total number of customers in this segment.
- Strata Type and Based on Value:
 - Strata Type values (Customer, Loyalty, Transaction).
 - Based on Value (Header, Detail, Customer, Loyalty Summary, Loyalty Detail).
 - Type = <strata type> based on <based on value>.
- Customer Strata membership - The strata the customer falls into.

Viewing Customer Stratified Segments List

1. Click the **eyeglass** icon in the title bar. This displays the Stratified Segments for (Customer) window:

Figure 5-38 Stratified Segments for Customer

Segments for ██████████ (Customer ID 1005312) ×

Assigned Stratified Segments

Segment ID	Segment Name	Description	Create User	Added On	Customer Count	Strata Type	Strata Format
1121	Stratified Segment Test	Desc	██████████@oracle.com	7/26/22	23850	Customer	Range Strata
1297	Loyalty	segment	██████████@oracle.com	2/22/25	2223062	Customer	Range Strata

Done

This window displays the following view-only information about the stratified segments associated with the customer:

- The Customer Name and ID Number are displayed in the Segments for title bar. If there are no segments assigned, the table displays No Segments Assigned.
- Assigned Stratified Segments Grid

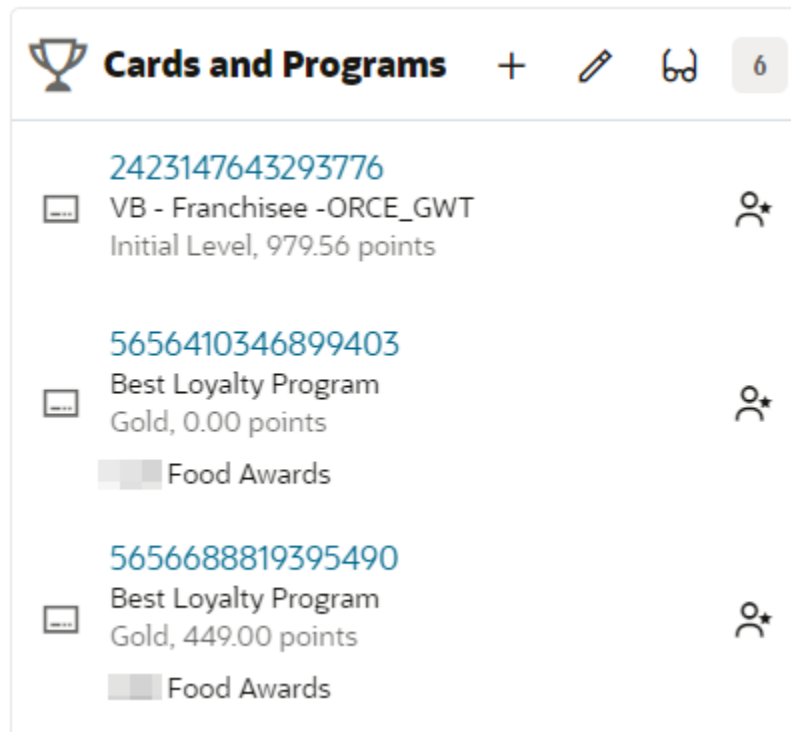
- Segment ID – ID of the segment
- Segment Name – Name of the segment
- Description – Description of the segment
- Create User – the user who created the segment
- Added On – the date on which the customer was added to the segment.
- Customer Count – the number of customers in that segment.
- Strata Type – (Customer, Loyalty, Transaction)
- Strata Format – the format used to create the strata. Possible values are:
 - Range Strata – Strata are determined by configured ranges
 - Ntile Strata – Strata are formed by equally sized groups of customers
- Based on Value – the basis used for determining the Strata field (Header, Detail, Customer, Loyalty Summary, Loyalty Detail)
- Strata Field – the field used to create the Strata
- Average Strata Value
- Number of Strata – the number of strata in the segment
- Customer Strata – the strata the customer falls into
- Customer Value

2. Click **Done**. This returns you to the Customer Dashboard.

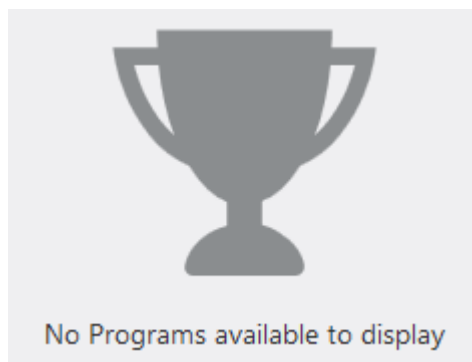
Cards and Programs

The Cards and Programs panel of the Customer Dashboard includes information about cards held by the customer and about the programs associated with each card. Programs include Tender, Award, and Loyalty. You can assign and generate cards for the customer in this panel.

Figure 5-39 Cards and Programs



- The title bar icons let you perform the following actions:
 - Click the **Add** icon to assign a card or generate an electronic card
 - Click the **Pencil** icon to display the Cards and Programs window for the customer
- Only active programs and cards are displayed.
- If there are multiple cards associated with the customer, the programs are grouped together by card, and the card number is displayed next to the programs.
- A badge with the total number of programs for which the customer has an account displays on the right side of the title bar.
- Scroll bars are available if the number of programs do not fit in the display area of the panel.
- If there are no programs assigned to the customer, the following image displays:

Figure 5-40 No Programs Assigned Message

Viewing Card Assignments

To view details about the cards and programs assigned to the customer:


1. Click the **Edit** icon in the Cards and Programs title bar. This displays the Cards and Programs for (Customer) window:

Figure 5-41 Assigned Cards


Cards and Programs for ██████████ (Customer ID 1005312) X

Assigned Cards Assign Card


Card Type	Card Number	Serial Number	Primary Card Holder
Cub Foods	5656410346899403	5656501001000003	██████████ (ID 1005312)

Card Holders	Programs																					
 ID 1005312	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Program</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Account Number</th> <th>Program Level</th> <th>Balance</th> <th>YTD Points</th> <th>LTD Points</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Best Loyalty Program</td> <td>Loyalty</td> <td>35086362</td> <td>Gold</td> <td>0.00</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cub Food Awards</td> <td>Award</td> <td>28999981</td> <td></td> <td>0.00</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Program	Type	Account Number	Program Level	Balance	YTD Points	LTD Points	Best Loyalty Program	Loyalty	35086362	Gold	0.00	0	0	Cub Food Awards	Award	28999981		0.00	0	0
	Program	Type	Account Number	Program Level	Balance	YTD Points	LTD Points															
	Best Loyalty Program	Loyalty	35086362	Gold	0.00	0	0															
Cub Food Awards	Award	28999981		0.00	0	0																

Card Type	Card Number	Serial Number	Primary Card Holder
Cub Foods	5656688819354400	5656501001000001	██████████ (ID 1005312)

Card Holders	Programs																					
 ID 1005312	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Program</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Account Number</th> <th>Program Level</th> <th>Balance</th> <th>YTD Points</th> <th>LTD Points</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Best Loyalty Program</td> <td>Loyalty</td> <td>35086365</td> <td>Gold</td> <td>449.00</td> <td>0</td> <td>549</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cub Food Awards</td> <td>Award</td> <td>28999985</td> <td></td> <td>10.00</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Program	Type	Account Number	Program Level	Balance	YTD Points	LTD Points	Best Loyalty Program	Loyalty	35086365	Gold	449.00	0	549	Cub Food Awards	Award	28999985		10.00	0	0
	Program	Type	Account Number	Program Level	Balance	YTD Points	LTD Points															
	Best Loyalty Program	Loyalty	35086365	Gold	449.00	0	549															
Cub Food Awards	Award	28999985		10.00	0	0																

Card Type	Card Number	Serial Number	Primary Card Holder
RCRMCS-11685	7419966864561406	7419901025000021	██████████ (ID 1005312)

Card Holders	Programs														
 ID 1005312	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Program</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Account Number</th> <th>Program Level</th> <th>Balance</th> <th>YTD Points</th> <th>LTD Points</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>RCRMCS-11685</td> <td>Tender</td> <td>29652538</td> <td></td> <td>0.00</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Program	Type	Account Number	Program Level	Balance	YTD Points	LTD Points	RCRMCS-11685	Tender	29652538		0.00	0	0
	Program	Type	Account Number	Program Level	Balance	YTD Points	LTD Points								
RCRMCS-11685	Tender	29652538		0.00	0	0									

Done

- The Customer Name and ID number are displayed in the title bar.
- Assign Card allows access to the Assign Card to (Customer) dialog. See: [Assigning a Card](#).
- The following fields are displayed for a card:
 - Card Type
 - Card Number

- Serial Number
 - Primary Card Holder (Customer Name and ID)
 - Card Holders
 - Customer Image, if available, or customer initials
 - Customer Name
 - Primary Card Holder Customer Name and ID
 - Primary Card Holder icon – displayed to the right of the card holder name and ID.
 - Secondary Card Holders Image, Name and ID – There can be multiple secondary card holders
 - The following fields are displayed for each program:
 - Program Name
 - Program Type – The type of program: Award, Tender, Loyalty
 - Account Number
 - Program Level – displayed for Loyalty programs only.
 - Balance
 - YTD Points – Year to Date points. This is displayed for Loyalty programs only
 - LTD Points – Lifetime to Date points. This is displayed for Loyalty programs only.
 - The list is sorted by card number, where the Customer is a primary cardholder first.
2. Click **Done** to return to the Customer Dashboard.

Assigning a Card

To assign a card:

1. Click **Assign** in the Cards and Programs panel header or click **Assign Card** in the Cards and Programs for (Customer) detail window. Either action displays the Assign Card to (Customer) dialog:

Figure 5-42 Assign Card to (Customer)

Assign Card to [redacted] (ID 5428503)

Generate New Card
 Enter Existing Card

Card Type (Please select) ▼

Cancel Enroll

2. Select the **Enter Existing Card** option. This populates the dialog with Search for Card field:

Figure 5-43 Search for Card

Assign Card to [redacted] (ID 5428503)

Generate New Card Enter Existing Card

Search for Card

Search by Card Number 🔍 Search

Selected Card Details

Card Number	Serial Number	Primary Card Holder
No cards to display.		

Cancel Enroll

3. In the Search for Card field, enter the full **Card Number** or **Serial Number** of the card you want to assign. Do not use spaces.
4. Click **Search**. This populates Selected Card Details with the Card Number, Serial Number, and Primary Card Holder of the card, if one exists.
5. Click **Enroll** to assign the card to the customer. This returns you to the previous window with the new card displayed for the customer.

Generating a Card

To generate a card:

1. Click **Assign** in the Cards and Programs panel header or click **Assign Card** in the Cards and Programs for (Customer) detail window. Either action displays the Assign Card to (Customer) dialog (see [Figure 5-42](#)).
2. By default, Generate New Card is selected. Keep this selection.
3. Select a **Card Type** from the list.
4. Click **Enroll** to generate a new electronic card for the customer. This returns you to the previous window with the new card displayed for the customer.

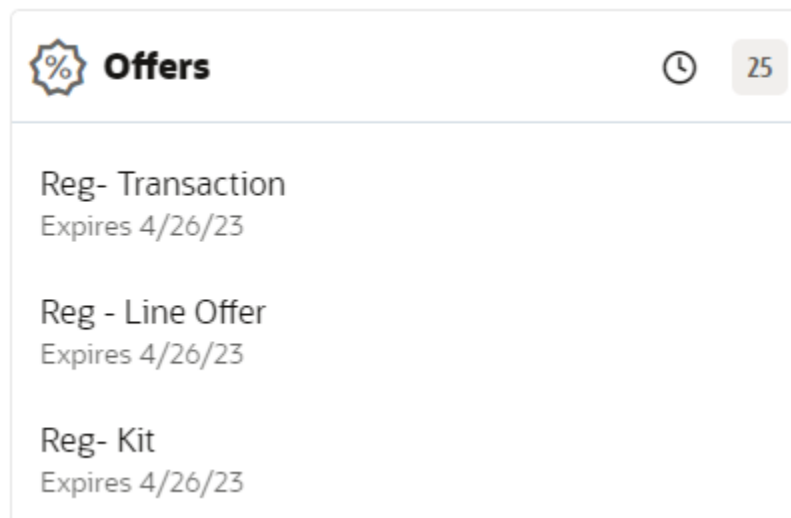
 **Note:**

: If you select a valid card series where all cards have been assigned or generated already, clicking Enroll displays a message: *No cards found for selected card type.*

Offers

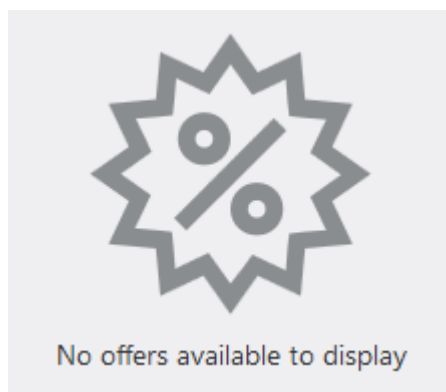
An offer is part of a campaign that is intended to provide some purchase incentive to customers. These offers may provide price incentives on a specific item, or provide coupons to be redeemed during a purchase, they may be messages notifying customers of special events or pricing, or they may provide tender certificates that a customer can use at a later date. The Offers panel of the Customer Dashboard shows current offers for the customer.

Figure 5-44 Offers



- A badge with the total number of offers the customer is qualified for displays on the right side of the title bar.
- The following information is displayed for each offer:
 - Offer Name
 - Expiration date – the expiration date comes from the promotion of which the offer is a part, or from the coupon expiration date, if the offer has coupons.
- The following offers are displayed:
 - Any offer within an ACTIVE, NOT EXPIRED promotion that is exclusively targeted to a segment the customer is a part of.
 - Any offer within an ACTIVE, NOT EXPIRED promotion that is NOT exclusively targeted.
 - Any offer within an ACTIVE, NOT EXPIRED promotion that is NOT targeted.
 - Any entitlement offer within an ACTIVE, NOT EXPIRED Award promotion, with an Award Program. Requires a card associated to the program for the customer.
- A maximum of 25 offers are displayed.
- The offers are sorted by expiration date in ascending order.
- Scroll bars are available if the number of offers do not fit in the display area of the panel.
- Exclusive offers are indicated with an icon next to the exclusive offer. When you hover over the icon, the text Exclusive Offer displays. Entitlements are exclusive offers. Promotional offers can be exclusive or general.
- If there are no offers assigned to the customer, the system displays the following image:

Figure 5-45 No Offers Available Message



- There is a View Promotion History link at the bottom of the Offers panel that provides access to the Promotion History window. See the following section, [Promotion History](#) for details.

Promotion History

When you click the **View Promotion History** link in the Offers panel or choose the **Promotion History** option from the **Actions** menu on the Customer's Dashboard, the Promotion History window is displayed.

Figure 5-46 Promotion History

Promotion History for ██████████ (Customer ID 1005312)

Filters

Date Range

From

To

Response

All

Promotion History

Number of Events: 7 Number of Responses: 2 Response Rate: 29% Total Promotion Revenue: \$1,472.56

Actions

Campaign ID	Campaign Name	Promotion ID	Promotion Name	Start Date	End Date	Control Group	Response Amount
325	VB - Promotions	548	VB - Promotions	1/1/20	10/11/22	No	\$1,023.17
324	VB-Points for Purchase	549	VB-Points for Purchase	1/1/20	10/11/22	No	\$449.39
21	Coupon - All Active Customers	21	Coupon - All Active Customers	1/14/21	1/31/21	No	\$0.00
25	Promotion 741	25	Promotion 741	1/14/21	1/31/21	No	\$0.00
115	RCRMCS-11911	137	RCRMCS-11911	10/18/21	10/31/21	No	\$0.00
211	Reg- all new Offers	233	Reg- all new Offers	4/8/22	4/27/23	No	\$0.00

Reset Apply

Done

The Promotion History window displays metric summary information and detail information about specific promotion events for the selected customer. You can filter the list of events by date range and response type.

Filters Panel

You can filter the list of promotion events using these controls:

- Date Range – Select a date range in the From and To calendar fields to filter on promotion events in only that date range
- Response – Select a promotion response from the list to filter on one of the following response types:
 - All
 - None
 - Generated Revenue

Click **Apply** to apply the filter, or **Reset** to clear the filter.

Promotion History Panel

The Promotion History panel lists the filtered promotion events and summarized metrics for the set of events. The following information is provided:

- Metrics:
 - Number of Events – The number of promotion events that have been available to the customer within the date range of the search.
 - Number of Responses – The number of promotions to which the customer has responded within the date range of the search.
 - Response Rate – The percentage of available promotions to which the customer has responded within the date range of the search.
 - Total Promotion Revenue – The total revenue received from customer responses to promotions within the date range of the search.
- The following information is displayed in the Promotion History table for each event:

- Campaign ID
 - Campaign Name
 - Promotion ID
 - Promotion Name
 - Start Date
 - End Date
 - Control Group
 - Response Amount
- The Promotion History list is sorted by Response Amount in descending order (highest value first).
 - If there are no promotions for the customer, the message No Promotions Available to Display displays.

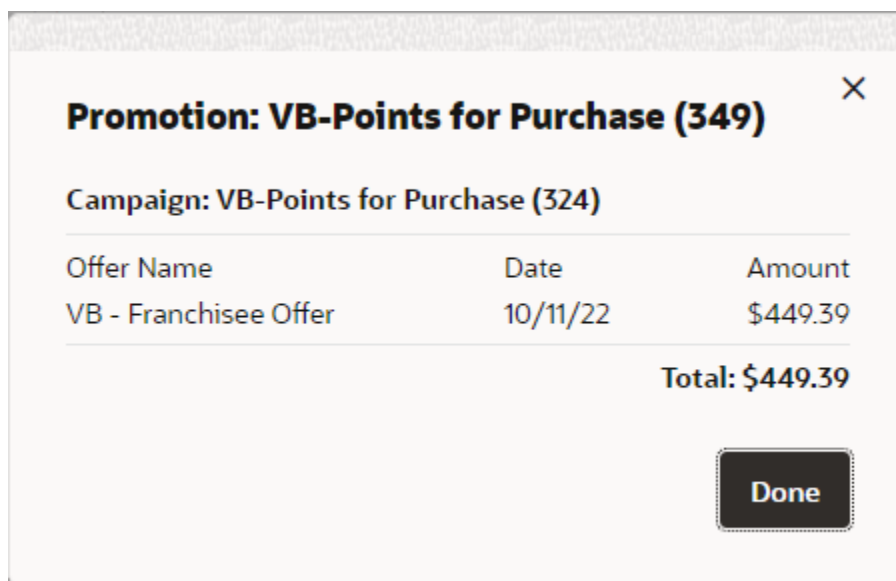
Viewing Promotion Event Detail

You can see more detail about an event in a view-only window following these steps:

1. Select the event in the grid that you want to view.
2. From the Actions menu, choose View, or click the View icon.

This displays the event in a view-only window:

Figure 5-47 Promotion Event Detail

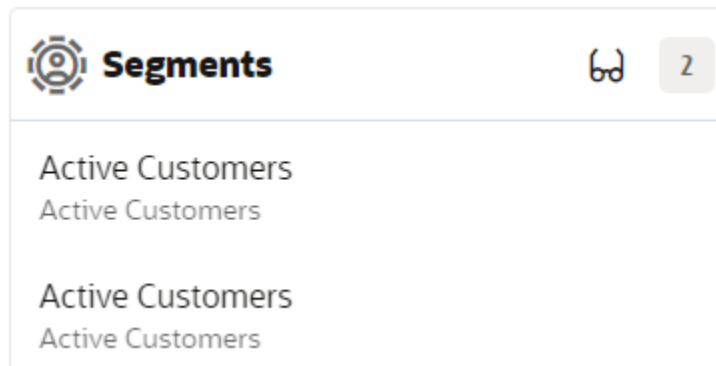


3. Click **Done**. This returns you to the Promotion History window.
4. To return to the Customer Dashboard, click **Done**.

Segments

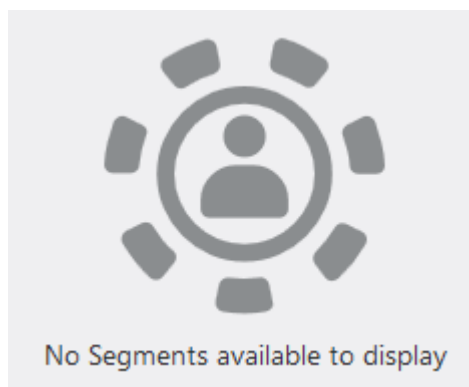
The Segments panel displays the unstratified segments to which the customer belongs.

Figure 5-48 Customer Segments



- An eyeglass icon lets you view details about all the Segments to which the customer belongs. See Viewing Customer Segments
- A badge with the total number of segments to which the customer belongs displays on the right side of the title bar.
- The following information is displayed for each segment:
 - Segment Name
 - Segment Description
- If a segment is designated as private, it is only displayed for the user who created it.
- Scroll bars are available if the number of segments do not fit in the display area of the panel.
- If there are no segments assigned to the customer, the following image is displayed:

Figure 5-49 No Segments Available Image



Viewing Customer Segments

1. Click the **Eyeglass** icon in the title bar. This displays the Segments for (Customer) window:

Figure 5-50 Segments for Customer

Segments for ██████████ (Customer ID 1035234) ×

Assigned Unstratified Segments

Segment ID	Segment Name	Description	Create User	Added On	Customer Count
323	Daily-Promotion Audience 3 (KEEP)	Daily-Promotion Audience 3 (KEEP)	████████@oracle.com	7/2/21	909306
453	DynamicPromotion-Audience	DynamicPromotion-Audience	████████@oracle.com	10/18/21	2108527
455	TestSegment	TestSegment	████████@oracle.com	10/19/21	913707
88	Active Customers	Active Customers	████████@oracle.com	1/7/21	8830875
1151	RS-DynamicPromotion-Audience	RS-DynamicPromotion-Audience	████████@oracle.com	10/5/22	2330183
1152	RS-BatchExporter-SFTP	RS-BatchExporter-SFTP	████████@oracle.com	10/6/22	990224
1153	RS-BatchExporter-SFTP-Large	RS-BatchExporter-SFTP-Large	████████@oracle.com	10/6/22	3351745

Done

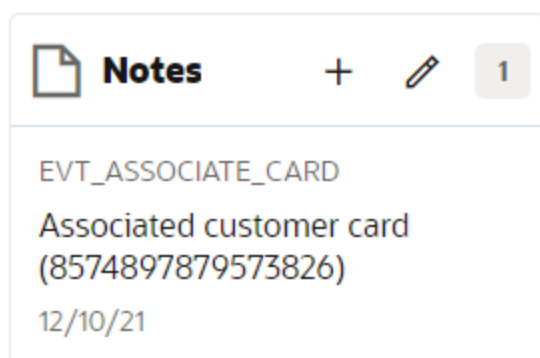
This window displays the following view-only information about the segments associated with the customer:

- The Customer Name and ID Number are displayed in the Segments for title bar. If there are no segments assigned, the title displays No Segments Assigned.
 - Assigned Unstratified Segments Grid
 - Segment ID – ID of the segment.
 - Segment Name – Name of the segment.
 - Description – Description of the segment
 - Create User – the user who created the segment.
 - Added On – the date on which the customer was added to the segment.
 - Customer Count – The number of customers in that segment.
2. Click **Done**, to return to the Customer Dashboard.

Notes

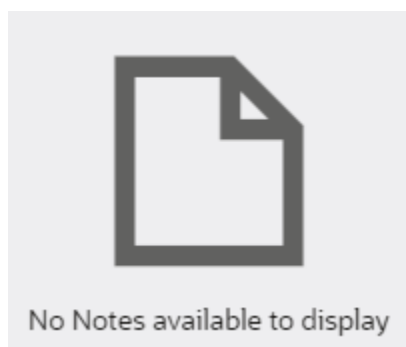
The Notes panel of the Customer Dashboard provides information about the last 25 Notes written about the Customer.

Figure 5-51 Notes



- A badge with the total number of notes for the customer displays on the right side of the title bar.
- The following information is displayed for each note:
 - The note type.
 - The first three lines of the note.
 - The date the note was created.
 - The user name of the person who create the note.
- If a note is marked as private, the details of the note are masked to all associates except for the note creator or an associate with the System Administrator role.
- A maximum of 25 notes are displayed.
- The notes are sorted by update date in descending order.
- Scroll bars are available if the number of notes do not fit in the display area of the panel.
- Notes created within a task do not appear on the list.
- If there are no notes created for the customer, the following image is displayed:

Figure 5-52 No Notes Available Message



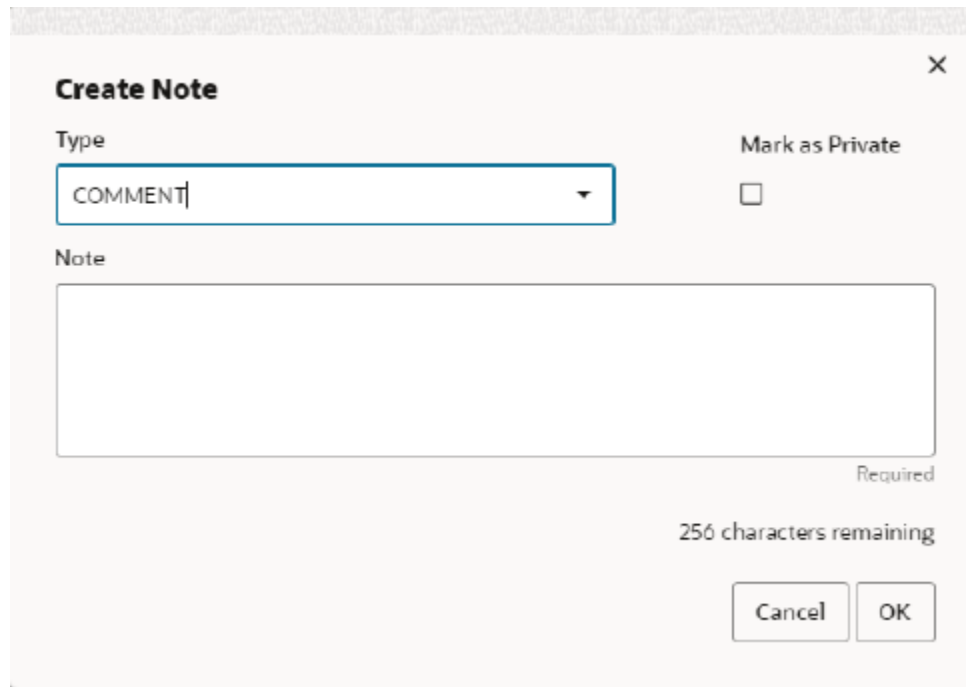
Create a Note

To add a note about the customer, use one of these methods to display the Create Note window:

- Click the **Add + icon** in the top right corner of the Notes panel.
- Click the **Edit** icon in the top right corner of the Notes panel to display the Notes for Customer list, and use either action:
 - Click the **plus sign** in the toolbar
 - From the Actions menu, choose **Add**.

Any of the following actions display the Create Note window:

Figure 5-53 Create Note



Create Note [X]

Type: COMMENT [v]

Mark as Private:

Note: [Text Area]

Required

256 characters remaining

Cancel OK

To create a note:

1. If you want the note to be private, select **Mark as Private**, otherwise, leave it de-selected.
2. Select a **note type** from the Type list.
3. Enter a note of up to 256 characters in the Note field.
4. Click **OK** when you are finished to save the note. Click **Cancel** if you do not want to add the note.

Edit a Note

You can edit notes that are listed in the Notes panel of the Customer Dashboard.

To edit a note:

1. Click the **Edit** icon at the top of the Notes panel. This displays a Notes for (Customer) window that lists the notes stored for the selected customer.

Figure 5-54 Notes for (Customer)

Type	Note	Private	Created By	Created on	Last Updated By	Last Updated on
EVT_SET_AS_PRIMARY	Set as primary account holder: customer card (5507337024358037)	No	@oracle.com	2/7/23		
EVT_ASSOCIATE_CARD	Associated customer card (5507337024358037)	No	@oracle.com	2/7/23		
EVT_ACTIVATE_CARD	Activated customer card (5507337024358037)	No	@oracle.com	2/7/23		
EVT_SET_AS_PRIMARY	Set as primary account holder: customer card (5656657048053287)	No	@oracle.com	2/7/23		
EVT_ASSOCIATE_CARD	Associated customer card (5656657048053287)	No	@oracle.com	2/7/23		
EVT_ACTIVATE_CARD	Activated customer card (5656657048053287)	No	@oracle.com	2/7/23		

The Notes for (Customer) window provides the following information and features:

- The title bar displays the Customer Name and ID
 - The user that last updated the notes and the date they were last updated is displayed beneath the title bar.
 - The toolbar and actions menu provide commands to Add, Edit, and Delete a note
 - The notes grid displays the following about each note:
 - Type – the type of note
 - Note – the text of the note
 - Private – indicates whether the note is private (can be seen only by the note's author or system administrators) Yes/No
 - Created By – the ID of the user who created the note
 - Last Updated By – the ID of the user who last updated the note
 - Last Updated On – the date the note was last update
 - The Note list is sorted by the Last Updated On date in descending order, by default. If there is no Last Updated On date, the Created On date is used.
 - If there is more information than can be displayed on the window, scroll bars are provided to navigate to hidden information.
2. Select the **note** in the grid that you want to edit, and click the **Edit** icon, or choose **Edit** from the Actions menu. This displays the note in the Edit Note window:

Figure 5-55 Edit Note

Edit Note [X]

Created by [redacted]@oracle.com on 2/28/23

Type: COMMENT [v] Mark as Private:

Note: Need to update the customer with new loyalty program options.

195 characters remaining

Cancel OK

3. You can change any of following:
 - Mark as Private** – Select the check box to ensure that only the note's author and system administrators can see it, or de-select if you do not want to restrict access.
 - Type** – Select a different type from the list.
 - Note** – Edit the text of the note.
4. When you are finished editing the note, click **OK** to save the changes or click **Cancel** if you do not want to save the changes. Either action returns you to the Notes for (Customer) window.

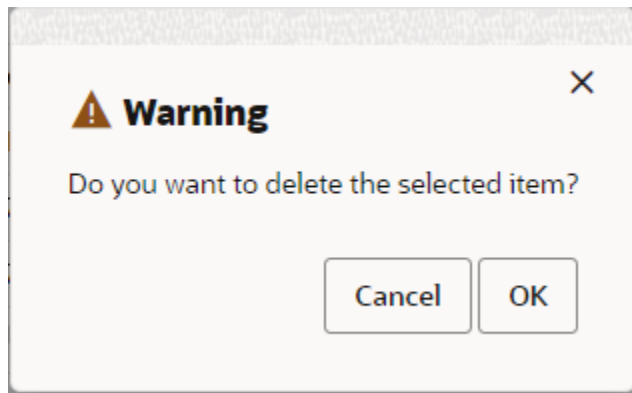
Delete a Note

You can delete a note in the Notes for (Customer) window.

To delete a note:

1. Select the note in the grid that you want to delete, and click the **Delete** icon, or choose **Delete** from the Actions menu. This displays a Warning message:

Figure 5-56 Warning Message

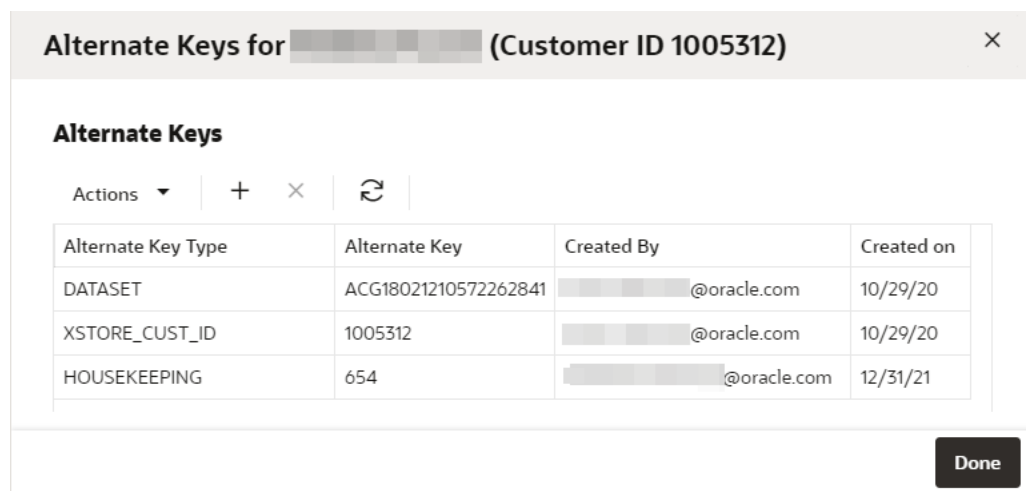


2. Click **OK** to delete the note, or **Cancel**, if you do not want to delete the note.
3. Either action returns you to the Notes for (Customer) window. If you chose **OK**, to delete the note, it is no longer displayed in the grid and is removed from the database.
4. Click **Done** in the Notes for (Customer) window when you are finished. This returns you to the Customer Dashboard.

Alternate Keys

Alternate keys are used to link customer accounts with other systems. Choose the Alternate Keys option on the Actions menu in the Customer Dashboard for access to the Alternate Keys page:

Figure 5-57 Alternate Keys



The Alternate Keys window offers the following information and features:

- The customer name and ID
- The user who last updated the window and the date it was last updated

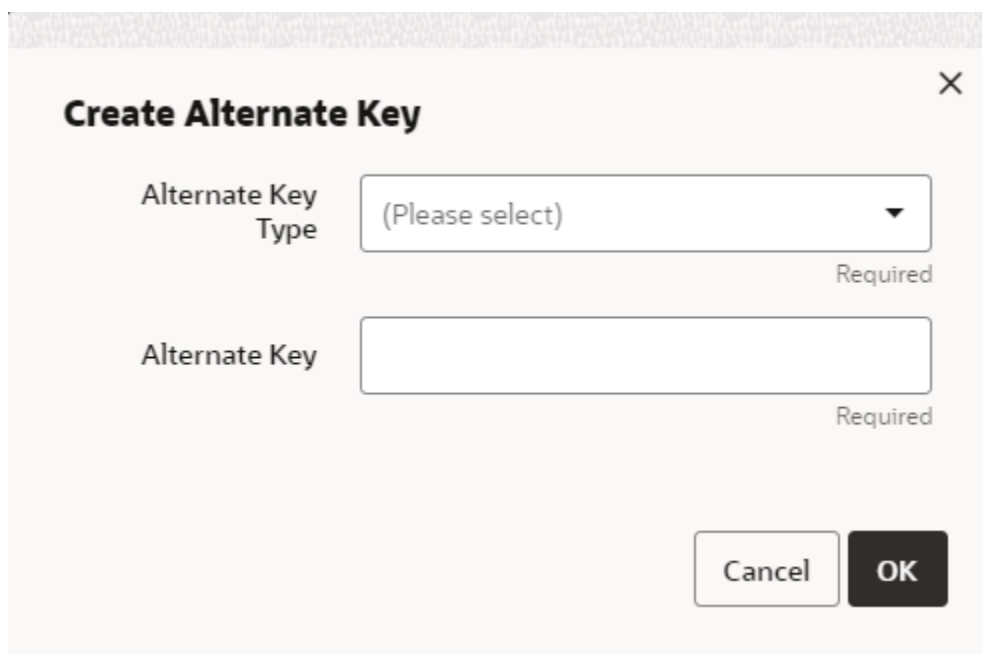
- The Actions menu and corresponding icons let you Add and Delete alternate keys.
- Alternate Key Type –The type of the alternate key (these are defined by the customer)
- Alternate Key – The value of the alternate key (the value format is defined by the customer)
- Created By – The user who created the alternate key
- Created On – The date the alternate key was created

Adding an Alternate Key

To add an Alternate Key:

1. Click the **Actions** menu in the Customer Dashboard and choose **Alternate Keys**. This displays an Alternate Keys window listing the customer's alternate keys.
2. Click the **Add+** icon, or choose **Add** from the Actions menu. This displays a Create Alternate Key window.

Figure 5-58 Create Alternate Key



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Create Alternate Key" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog contains two required fields:

- Alternate Key Type**: A dropdown menu with the text "(Please select)" and a downward arrow. The label "Alternate Key Type" is to the left of the dropdown. The word "Required" is to the right of the dropdown.
- Alternate Key**: A text input field. The label "Alternate Key" is to the left of the field. The word "Required" is to the right of the field.

At the bottom right of the dialog are two buttons: "Cancel" and "OK".

3. Select an Alternate Key Type from the list.
4. Enter the **value** of the new alternate key in the Alternate Key field.
5. Click **OK** to save the new alternate key and return to the Alternate Keys window, click **Cancel** to return without saving the alternate key.

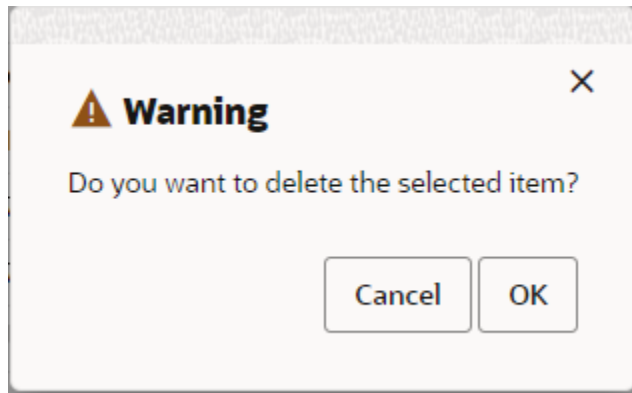
Deleting an Alternate Key

To delete an alternate key:

1. Select the alternate key that you want to delete.
2. Click the **Delete** icon, or chose **Delete** from the **Actions** menu.

This displays a Warning message asking you to confirm that you want to delete the alternate key.

Figure 5-59 Warning



3. Click **OK** to delete the alternate key, or **Cancel**, if you do not want to delete the alternate key.
4. Either action returns you to the Alternate Keys window. If you chose **OK**, to delete the alternate key, it is no longer displayed in the grid and is removed from the database.
5. Click **Done** in the Alternate Keys window when you are finished. This returns you to the Customer Dashboard.

Associate Assignment

The Associate Assignment page lets you add, update, or delete associates assigned to a role for a customer. Choose the **Associate Assignment** option on the **Actions** menu in the Customer Dashboard for access to the Associate Assignment page:

Figure 5-60 Associate Assignment

Associate Assignments for [REDACTED] (Customer ID 1005312) ✕

Assigned Associates

Actions ▼ |

Primary	Role	Associate	Email	Location	Lock
✓	WSDL1-Wedding Planner	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]@oracle.com		Unlocked
	Personal Shopper	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]@oracle.com		Unlocked
	Dress Fitting				
	Jewelry Buyer	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]@oracle.com		Unlocked
	Wedding Planner				

Done

The Associate Assignment window offers the following information and features:

- The customer name and ID
- The user who last updated the window and the date it was last updated
- The Actions menu and corresponding icons let you Assign and Unassign associates.
- Primary – Indicates the pre-designated Primary role, which is set by the client.
- Role – Associate Role. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Cloud Service Implementation Guide* for more information about Associate Roles
- Associate – Name of the associate
- Email – The email of the associate
- Location – ID of the associate's location
- Lock – Indicates whether the associate user assignment can be changed (Unlocked) or not changed (Locked).
 - If an associate is not assigned, this field is blank.
 - When the assignment is locked, the logged in user must be the same as the assigned user to edit or unlock the associate user assignment, with the exception of a system administrator. The system administrator can edit any assigned user.
 - If a user without the privileges to change the associate assignment attempts to do so, an error message displays: *The assignment is locked, and can only be changed by the assigned user or a system administrator.*

Assigning an Associate

To assign an associate to a role for a customer:

1. In the Associate Assignment grid, select the **role** to which you want to assign an associate.
2. From the Action menu, choose **Assign**, or click the **Assign** icon. This displays the Assign Associate dialog:

Figure 5-61 Assign Associate

Assign Associate to Dress Fitting [X]

Search for Associate

00 [X] Search Partial Exact

Search Results

Associate ID	Name	Location	Email Address	Assign To Role
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	00005	[REDACTED]@oracle.com	Assign
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	00004	[REDACTED]@oracle.com	Assign

Cancel OK

3. In the **Search for Associate** prompt, enter the ID, Name, Location or E-mail of the associate you want to assign to the role. Select **Partial** to search on a partial entry, or **Exact**, to search for only exact matches.
4. Click **Search**. This displays the associates matching the search criteria in the Search Results grid.
5. Click **Assign** in the row of the associate that you want to assign to the role. Assign changes to **Unassign**, and the Locked check box is displayed:
6. If you want to lock the assignment so that only you and system administrators can change it, select the Locked check box. If not, leave it clear.
7. Click **OK**. This returns you to the Associate Assignments page. The associate added to the role is displayed in the assignment row.

Unassigning an Associate

To un-assign an associate from a role for customer:

1. In the Associate Assignment grid, select the **assignment** from which you want to un-assign an associate. Only one assignment can be selected to un-assign at one time.
2. From the Action menu, choose **Unassign**, or click the **Unassign** icon. This removes the associate from the role, and their information is deleted from the assignment row.
3. Click **Done** when you are finished with associate assignments. This returns you to the Customer Dashboard

Franchisee Assignment

The Franchisee Assignments page displays information about the franchisees to which the customer has been assigned.



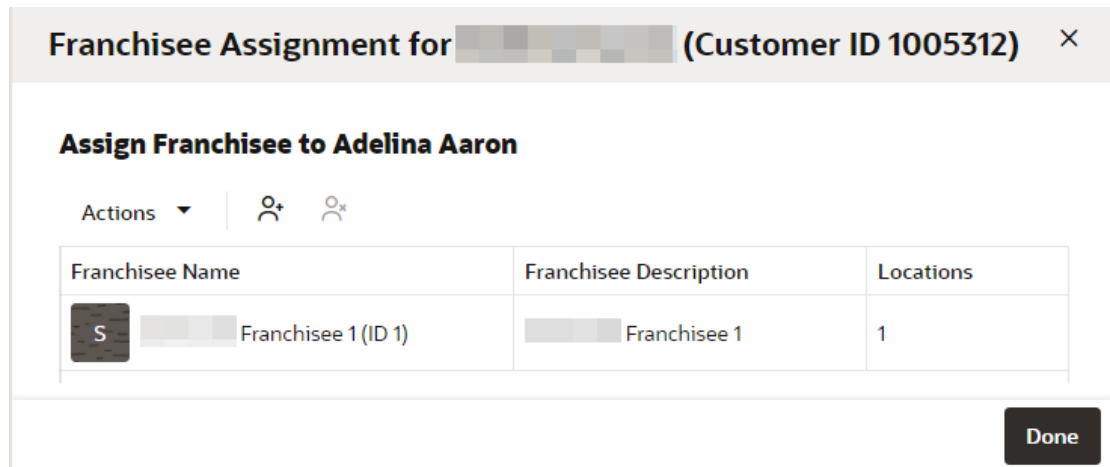
Note:

The Franchisee Assignment option is only displayed if the (Franchisee) user has access to more than one Franchisee.

For more information about how franchisees are initially set up and the configuration is enabled, see the Customer Engagement Cloud Services Implementation Guide

Choose the **Franchisee Assignment** option on the Actions menu in the Customer Dashboard for access to the Franchisee Assignment page:

Figure 5-62 Franchisee Assignment



The Franchisee Assignment page offers the following information and features:

- The customer name and ID
- The user who last updated the window and the date it was last updated
- The Actions menu and corresponding icons let you Assign and Un-assign franchisees.
- Franchisee ID – ID number of the franchisee
- Franchisee Name – Name of the franchisee
- Franchisee Description – a description of the franchisee

Assigning a Franchisee

To assign a Franchisee to a customer:

1. Choose **Assign** from the Actions menu, or click the **Assign** icon. Either action displays the Assign Franchisee dialog:

Figure 5-63 Assign Franchisee

Assign Franchisee to [Redacted]

Search for Franchisee

Search by Franchisee ID or Name or Description [X] Search

Search Results

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations	
[S] [Redacted] Franchisee 1 (ID 1)	[Redacted] Franchisee 1	1	Unassign

Unassign All

Cancel OK

2. Enter a full or partial franchisee ID, name or description in the Search for Franchisee field and click **Search**. A list of franchisees matching the search text is displayed in the Search Results grid.

Note:

The only franchisees to display are those to which the associate has access.

Figure 5-64 Assign Franchisee - Results

Assign Franchisee to [Redacted]

Search for Franchisee

Fran [X] Search

Search Results

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations	
[S] [Redacted] Franchisee 1 (ID 1)	[Redacted] Franchisee 1	1	Unassign
[J] [Redacted] -Franchisee-1 (ID 3)	[Redacted] Franchisee Assignment	1	Unassign
[S] [Redacted] Franchisee 2 (ID 2)	[Redacted] Franchisee 2	1	Assign
[J] [Redacted] -Franchisee-2 (ID 4)	[Redacted] - Franchisee Assignment 2	1	Assign

Assign All

Cancel OK

3. The Search Results list all franchisees that match the search criteria to which the associate has access. If the franchisee is already assigned to the customer, **Unassign** is enabled. If the franchisee is not assigned, **Assign** is enabled. In the row of the franchisee that you want to assign, click **Assign**.
 - To assign a Franchisee, click **Assign**.
 - To unassign a Franchisee, click **Unassign**.
4. Click **OK** to accept the assignment or **Cancel** to cancel. Either action returns you to the Franchisee Assignment page. If you click **OK**, the new franchisee assignment displays in the grid.

Unassign a Franchisee

To unassign a franchisee:

1. In the Assign Franchisee grid, select the franchisee that you want to unassign from the customer.
2. Choose **Unassign** from the Actions menu, or click the **Unassign** icon. Either action unassigns the franchisee from the customer and deletes the franchisee from the grid.

Note:

Click the **Unassign All** button to remove all assigned Franchisees.

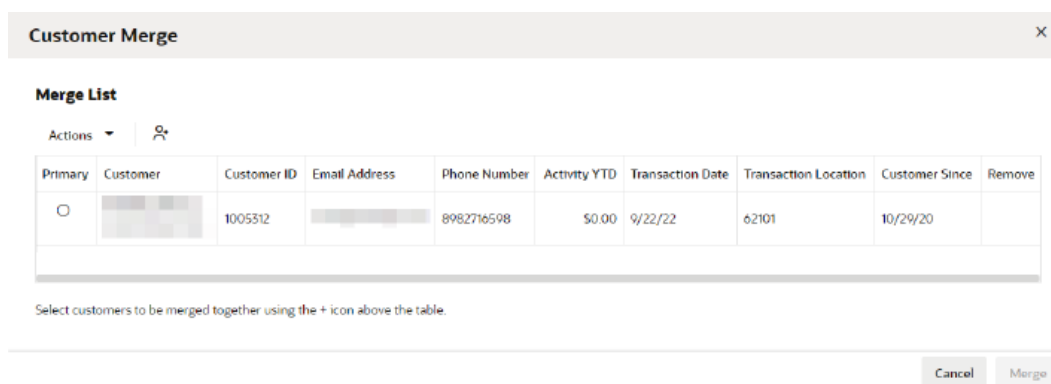
Merge

Customer Merges combine multiple Customer records into one, new Customer record. This new Customer record includes the Transaction, Card, and Account information from all the merged Customer records.

To merge customer records:

1. From the **Actions** menu in the Customer Dashboard, choose **Merge**. This displays the Customer Merge window:

Figure 5-65 Customer Merge



Primary	Customer	Customer ID	Email Address	Phone Number	Activity YTD	Transaction Date	Transaction Location	Customer Since	Remove
<input type="radio"/>	[REDACTED]	1005312	[REDACTED]	8982716598	\$0.00	9/22/22	62101	10/29/20	

Select customers to be merged together using the + icon above the table.

Cancel Merge

The Actions menu and corresponding icon lets you **Add Customers to Merge**.

The Customer Merge page offers the following information and features:

- Primary – When selected, indicates the primary customer
 - Customer – The customer name and address
 - Customer ID – The ID of the Customer
 - Email Address – The customer email address
 - Phone Number – The customer phone number
 - Activity YTD – The amount of the customer's transactions for the year to date
 - Transaction Date – The date of the last transaction
 - Transaction Location – The location of the last transaction
 - Customer Since – The customer creation date
 - Remove – Click to remove a customer from the list
2. Click **Merge** to accept the merge, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Merging Customers

First: Add Customers to Merge

1. In the Customer Merge page, click the **Actions** menu and choose **Add Customers to Merge**, or click the **Add Customers to Merge +** icon. Either action displays the Add Customers to Merge dialog:

Figure 5-66 Add Customers to Merge

2. In the **Search for Customer** prompt, enter the Name, Email, Phone, ID, or Alternate Key of the customer you want to add to the Merge list. Select **Partial** to search on a partial entry, or **Exact**, to search for only exact matches.
3. Click **Search**. This displays the customers matching the search criteria in the Search Results grid:

Figure 5-67 Add Customers to Merge Results

Add Customers To Merge ✕

Search for Customer

8027495 Search Partial Exact

Search Results

Customer	Contact Info	Activity YTD	Customer Since	Add To List
(ID 8027495) DAYTON, OH, 45405, US	[blurred]	\$0.00 Last Transaction Date 3/10/21	10/30/20	Add

Cancel OK

The grid displays the following information for each customer:

- Customer – the customer name, ID, and primary address
 - Contact Info – the customer email address and phone number
 - Activity YTD - the amount of the customer's transactions for the year to date, and the date of the last transaction
 - Customer Since – the creation date of the customer
4. Click **Add** in the Customer row if you want to add the customer to the Customer Merge list. **Add** is replaced with **Remove**, which you can use to remove the customer.

Note:

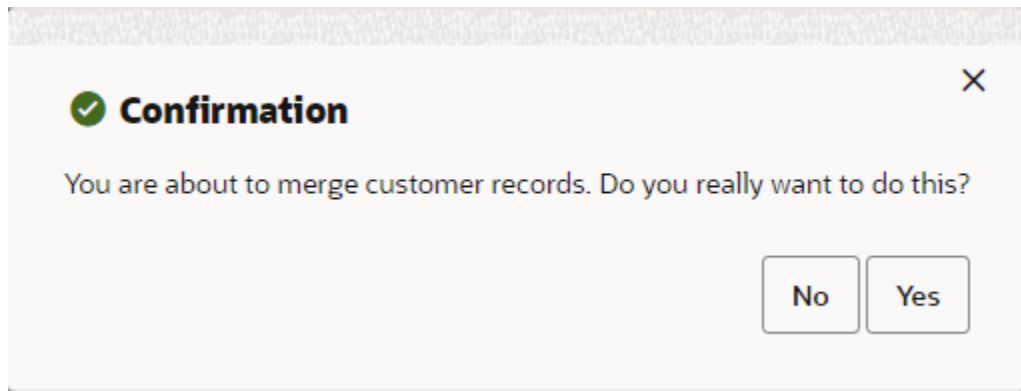
You can only merge up to five customers at one time.

5. Click **OK**. This returns you to the Customer Merge page with the customers added to the Merge List.

Second: Merge Customers

1. In the Customer Merge page, review the Merge List and click **Remove** to remove any customers you do not want to merge.
2. Click **Primary** in the row of the customer that you want as the primary customer.
3. Click **Merge** to display a confirmation prompt:

Figure 5-68 Confirmation



4. To merge the customer records, click **Yes**. To exit without merging the customers, either click **No** or **X**.

Working with Payment Card Tokens

Payment Card Tokens are unique identifiers generated by a payment service provider and can be re-used to make purchases and returns more secure when using a credit or debit card. Since the card number will only be held at the payment service provider, a hacker is unable to access the card number. The payment card tokens are stored in Customer Engagement and can be shared with systems that interact directly with payment service providers.

 **Note:**

This menu option will only display if the customer has payment card tokens and if they have a Payment Card Token additional security permission. See Administrator Guide for more information.

 **Note:**

There are three web services (Post, Get and Delete) that are used to manage the payment card tokens. See Batch Processing and Web Services Guide for more information.

 **Note:**

A 'SAVE_PAYMENT_CARD_TOKENS' (customer) attribute will need to be assigned to the customer to support the Payment Card Token feature for Omni Channel. When a payment card is used to make a payment for purchases, the customer needs to give permission to save the payment card token information for future payments. The value will need to be set to Yes, for payment card tokens to be saved from the external systems.

Figure 5-69 Payment Card Tokens For Customer

Payment Card Tokens For ██████████ (Customer ID 1005312) ✕

Payment Card Tokens

Actions ✕ 🔄

PSP Name	PSP Customer Token	Source Customer ID	Original Source System	Card Token	Card Type	Card Last 4	Card Expiration	Card Alias	Create Date	Created By	Update Date	Updated By
██████████	1234567890	1005312	Xstore	7254gfvkefg374nds	MasterCard	4357	0125	spdcfsa8734684	12/16/22	██████████		
██████████	1235	1005312	EComm	K8956fjggj904567h	Visa	1278	0324	3897bvjh345f	12/16/22	██████████		
██████████	a23bje	1005312	OMS	gdsk4688agsdo4agr	MasterCard	5446	0623	753jkdlsasg	12/16/22	██████████		
██████████	XY21234567890	1005312	OMS	kldg000dkt#00000e	Visa	7857	0523	ajfdlsa977364	12/16/22	██████████		

Done

The Payment Card Tokens window offers the following information:

- Customer Name and ID
- The user who last updated the payment card token table.
- The Actions menu and corresponding icons let you Delete payment card tokens. See Delete or Delete All Payment Tokens for more information.

 **Note:**

Payment Card Tokens can only be added via web service from integrated systems that interact directly with payment service providers. Examples: Cybersource and Adyen.

Payment Card Tokens fields include:

- PSP Name (Payment Service Provider) - The name of the payment service provider that supplied the payment card token. (**Examples:** Cybersource, Adyen)
- PSP Customer Token - The unique token provided by the payment service provider.
- Source Customer ID - The customer ID sent to the payment service provider initially and associated with this payment card token.
- Original Source system - The system that sent the initial request to the payment service provider.
- Card Token - The unique value supplied by the payment service provider when the initial request for payment was sent.
- Card Type - The credit or debit card type.
- Card Last 4 - The last four digits of the card number used when the payment card token was generated.
- Card Expiration - The month and year the card expires.
- Card Alias - The name given to a card that can be used to identify a card used for multiple individuals on the same card for a household.

 **Note:**

A separate unique payment card token is generated by the payment service provider when there is more than one individual on the card.

- Create Date - The user that created the payment card token through the web service.
- Created By - The date the payment card token was added into Customer Engagement.
- Update Date - The user that last updated the payment card token.

 **Note:**

The payment card token record can only be updated through the web service and is limited to the card expiration field.

- Updated By - The date the payment card token record was updated.

The following actions for Payment Card Tokens include:

- [Refresh](#)
- [Delete](#)
- [Delete All](#)

Refresh Payment Card Tokens Results

Click the **Actions** menu, then click **Refresh**, or click the **Refresh** icon to refresh the results.

Deleting a Payment Card Token

Highlight the **row** of the Payment Card Token you want to delete and click the **Actions** menu, then click **Delete**, or click the **Delete** icon to open the delete confirmation window. Click **OK** to delete the Payment Card Token for that Customer or **Cancel** to close the window without deleting the row.

Deleting All Payment Card Tokens

Click the **Actions** menu, then click **Delete All** to open the delete all confirmation window. Click **OK** to delete all of the Customers' Payment Card Tokens, or **Cancel** to close the window without deleting the rows.

Preference Center

The Preference Center page displays the contact preferences for a customer. For more information about how Preference Center channels are initially set up and the configuration is enabled, see the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Cloud Service Implementation Guide*.

Choose the **Preference Center** option on the **Actions** menu in the Customer Dashboard for access to the Preference Center page:

Figure 5-70 Preference Center

Preference Type	Channel	Opted In	Frequency	Authorization	Communication Last Sent	Last Updated	Last Updated By	Uploaded By
Automation_Sales_Email	EMAIL		WEEKLY					
Automation_Sales_Email	MAIL		WEEKLY					
Automation_Sales_Email	PHONE		WEEKLY					
Automation_Sales_Email	EMAIL		WEEKLY					

The Preference Center page offers the following information and features:

- The customer name and ID
- The Actions menu and corresponding icons let you Edit a preference.
- Preference Type – Name of the preference center. This is displayed for all the channels in a preference center.
- Channel –The communication channel
- Opted In – Indicates whether the customer has opted to be contacted through the channel. If there is a check mark in the field, then the customer is contacted through the channel.
- Frequency – The frequency at which the customer is contacted through the channel
- Authorization – Name of the file in which the customer authorized communication
- Communication Last Sent – Date the communication was last sent to the customer
- Last Updated – Date and time the channel preferences for this customer were last updated
- Last Updated By – ID of the user who last updated the channel preferences for this customer.
- Uploaded By – User who last updated the image/file. This is populated by the logged in user who uploads the latest file on the preference.

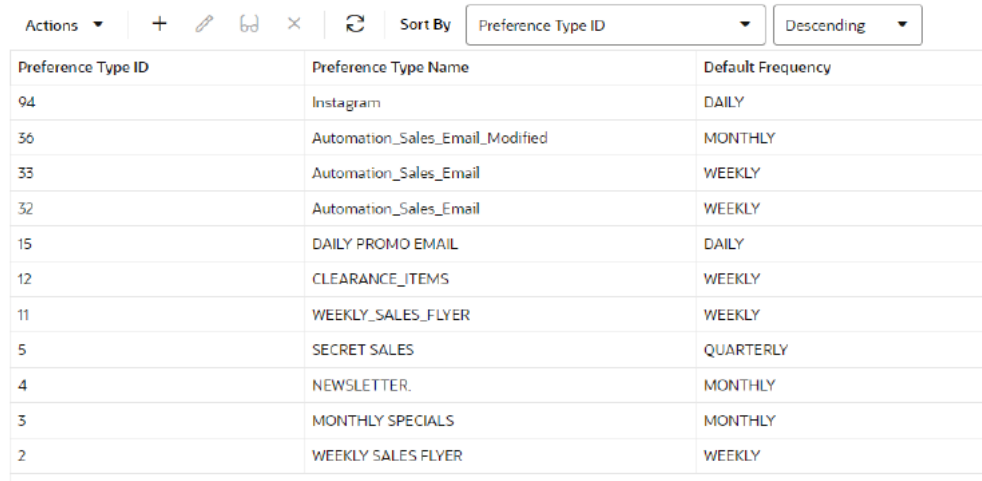
Working with Preference Types

You can refresh, sort, view, add, edit and delete preference types, so that you can setup unlimited preference types to use with the Customer Preference Center. To access Preference Types:

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click the **Admin** Task.
3. Click the **Preference Types** Task.

Figure 5-71 Preference Types

Preference Types



Preference Type ID	Preference Type Name	Default Frequency
94	Instagram	DAILY
36	Automation_Sales_Email_Modified	MONTHLY
33	Automation_Sales_Email	WEEKLY
32	Automation_Sales_Email	WEEKLY
15	DAILY PROMO EMAIL	DAILY
12	CLEARANCE_ITEMS	WEEKLY
11	WEEKLY_SALES_FLYER	WEEKLY
5	SECRET SALES	QUARTERLY
4	NEWSLETTER	MONTHLY
3	MONTHLY SPECIALS	MONTHLY
2	WEEKLY SALES FLYER	WEEKLY

Sorting Preference Types

You can sort by:

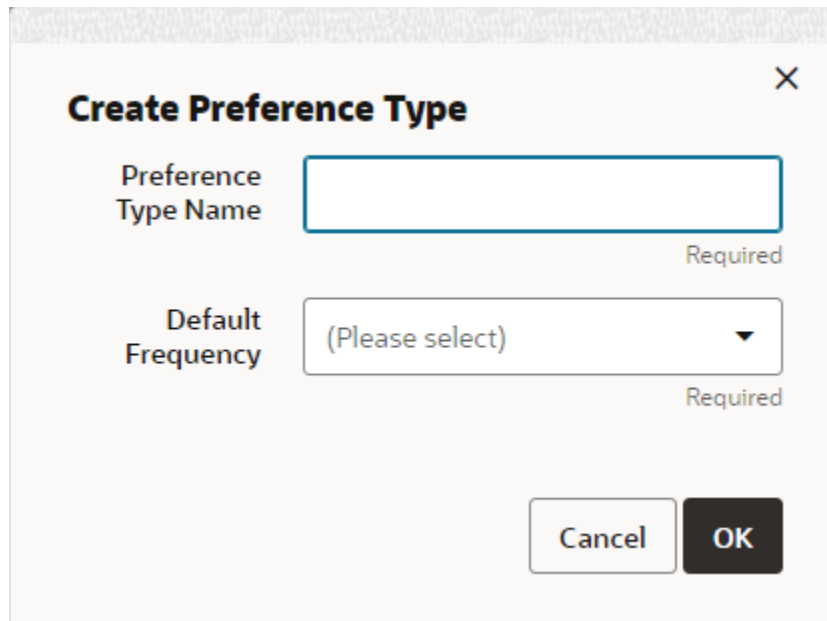
- Default Frequency
- Preference Type ID
- Preference Type Name

Preference types can be sorted ascending or descending from the list.

Adding a Preference Type

Click the **Actions** menu or the **Add** icon to open the Create Preference Type window.

Figure 5-72 Create Preference Type



Create Preference Type ✕

Preference Type Name Required

Default Frequency Required

Cancel OK

Type a Preference Type Name and choose one of the following default frequencies.

- Anytime
- Weekly
- Monthly
- Yearly
- Daily
- Fortnightly
- Quarterly

Click **OK** to add the new Preference Type. Click Cancel to close the window.

 **Note:**

Preference types are configured values and they may vary from what is listed. Contact your system administrator for more information.

Editing a Preference Type

Highlight the row of the Preference Type you want to edit and click the Actions menu or the Edit icon to open the Edit Preference Type window.

Figure 5-73 Edit Preference Type

Edit Preference Type ✕

Created by **ORCE-GWT** on 2/23/22 Last updated by **ORCE-GWT** on 2/23/22

Preference Type ID:

Preference Type Name:

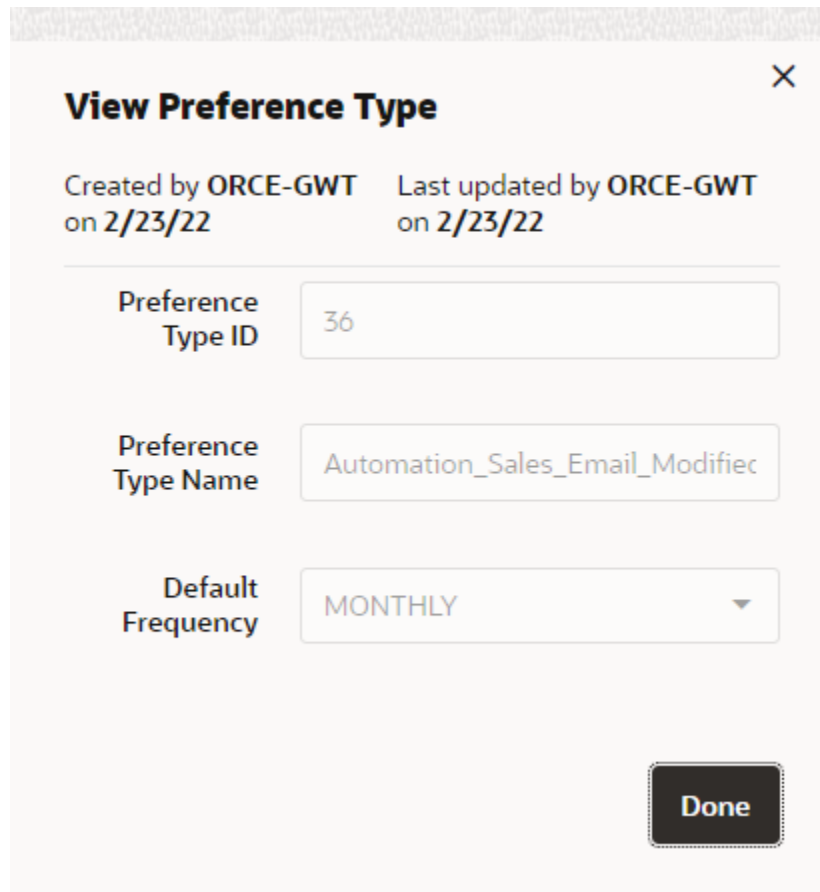
Default Frequency:

Edit the Preference Type Name or select a different Default Frequency and click **OK**. Or click **Cancel** to close the window and discard any changes.

Viewing a Preference Type

Highlight the **row** of the Preference Type you want to view and click the **Actions** menu, then click **View**, or click the **View** icon to open the View Preference Type window.

Figure 5-74 View Preference Type



View Preference Type ✕

Created by **ORCE-GWT** on *2/23/22* Last updated by **ORCE-GWT** on *2/23/22*

Preference Type ID: 36

Preference Type Name: Automation_Sales_Email_Modific

Default Frequency: MONTHLY

Done

View the details of the Preference Type and click **Done** to close the window.

Deleting a Preference Type

Highlight the **row** of the Preference Type you want to delete and click the **Actions** menu, then click **Delete**, or click the **Delete** icon to open the delete confirmation window. Click **OK** to delete the Preference Type or **Cancel** to close the window without deleting the row.

Editing a Preference

To edit a Preference:

1. In the Preference Center grid, select the preference that you want to edit.
2. From the Actions menu, choose **Edit**, or click the **Edit** icon. This displays the Edit Preference dialog:

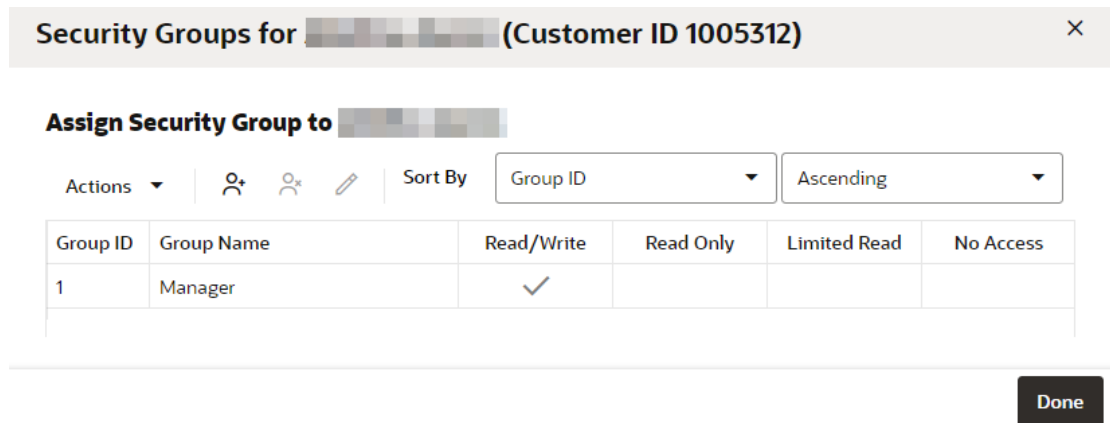
Figure 5-75 Edit Preferences

3. Edit the fields that you want to change:
 - **Opt In to** – Click to the on position to indicate that the customer accepts communication from this channel, or click off, to indicate the customer does not want communication.
 - **Frequency** – Select the frequency with which the customer receives communication from this channel.
 - **Communication Last Sent** – Click the date in the calendar on which communication from the channel was last sent.
 - **Authorization File** – Drag and drop a file authorizing the communication, or click in the field to search for a file to upload.
4. Click **OK**. This returns you to the Preference Center page.

Security Groups Assignment

You the ability to assign or unassign a Security Group to a customer, so that customer details will be protected based on the privileges for the assigned security group. Choose the **Security Groups Assignment** option on the **Actions** menu in the Customer Dashboard for access to the Security Groups page.

Figure 5-76 Security Groups



Security Groups can be sorted ascending or descending using the following options:

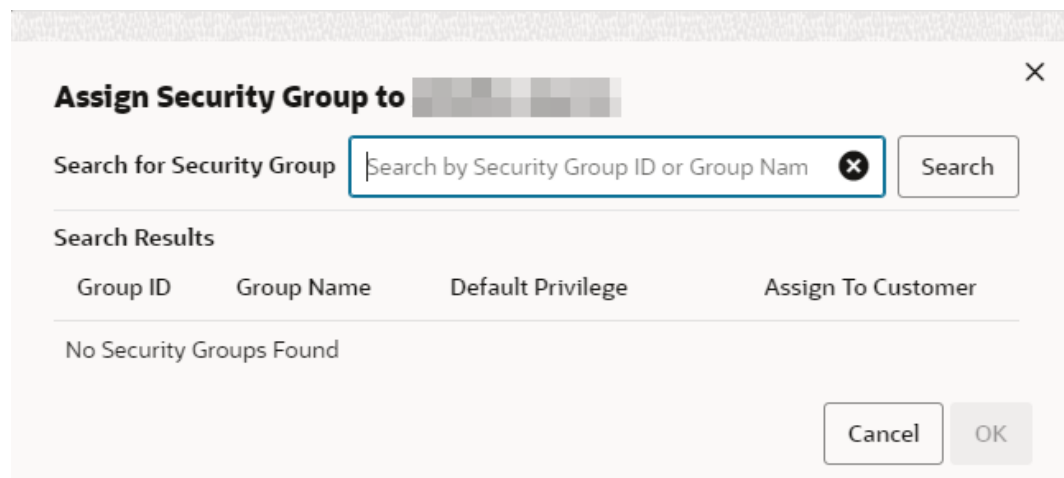
- Group ID (default)
- Group Name

Assign Security Group

To assign a Security Group do the following:

1. Click the **Assign** icon or the click the **Action** menu and click **Assign**. The Assign Security Group to Customer displays.

Figure 5-77 Assign Security Group



2. Enter the **Security Group ID** or **Group Name**.
3. Click **Search**. The search results display.

Figure 5-78 Assign Security Group To Window

Assign Security Group to [blurred]

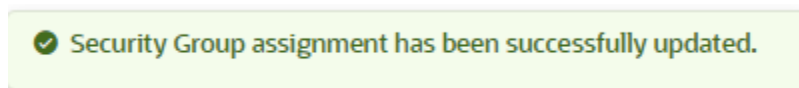
Search for Security Group

Search Results

Group ID	Group Name	Default Privilege	Assign To Customer
1	Manager	Read/Write	<input type="button" value="Unassign"/>
3	Cashier!	Limited Read	<input type="button" value="Assign"/>
4	Designers	No Access	<input type="button" value="Assign"/>
5	Loss Prevention	Read/Write	<input type="button" value="Assign"/>

4. Click **Assign** to assign to customer, or click **Unassign** to remove the assignment.
5. Click **OK** to save the assignments or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving. A notification appears indicating a successful update.

Figure 5-79 Notification

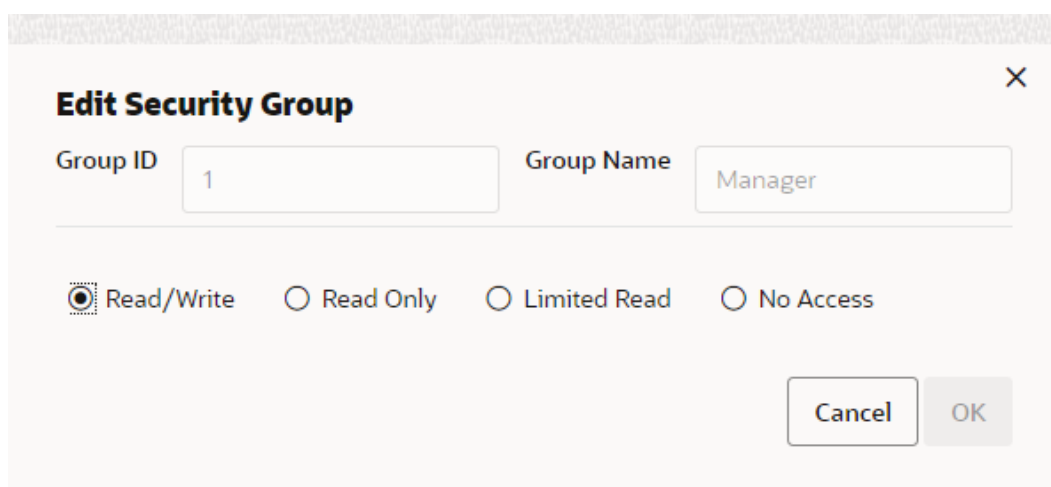


Edit Security Group

To edit a Security Group do the following:

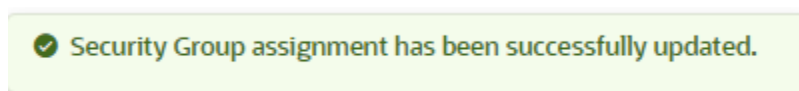
1. Click the **Assign** icon or the click the **Action** menu and click **Edit**. The Edit Security Group window displays.

Figure 5-80 Edit Security Group



2. Select a **Privilege Type**.
 - Read/Write - Users in the security group can read and update all data for customers who have had the security group applied.
 - Read Only - Users in the security group can read all data for customers who have had the security group applied, but cannot make updates.
 - Limited Read - Users in the security group can read some data for customers who have had the security group applied, but cannot read sensitive customer information (such as address, telephone numbers, and email addresses) and cannot make updates.
 - No Access - A user in the security group will not even see that the customer exists in the system.
3. Click **OK** to save the privileges or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving. A notification appears indicating a successful update.

Figure 5-81 Notification



Tasks

The Tasks page displays the tasks that are associated with the customer. Choose the **Tasks** option on the **Actions** menu in the Customer Dashboard for access to the Tasks page:

Figure 5-82 Customer Tasks

Customer Tasks for ██████████ (Customer ID 1005312) ×

Tasks

Search for a task or task note by a term

Actions ▾ + ✎ 👁️ 👤 Task Type All ▾ Status All ▾ Start Date Last 10 Tasks ▾

Task Type	Task Name	Start Date	End Date	Status	Assigned To
APPOINTMENT	test	9/9/22	9/10/22	IN_PROGRESS	██████████
APPOINTMENT	Test	1/4/22	1/4/22	OPEN	
EVENT	Promotion Id:137:RCRMCS-1911	10/27/21	10/31/21	OPEN	

Done

The Tasks page offers the following information and features:

- The customer name and ID
- The user who last updated the window and the date it was last updated
- The Search panel lets you search for a task or task note by term
- The Actions menu and corresponding icons let you Add, Edit, View, and Reassign a task
- Task Type – The type of task. These are configured by the customer. See the [Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Cloud Services Implementation Guide](#) for information about configuring custom Task types
- Task Name – A name for the task that was entered by the user who created the task
- Start Date – The start date of the task
- End Date – The end date of the task
- Status – The selected status of the task
- Assigned to – The associate to whom the task is assigned

Adding a Task

To add a task:

1. Choose **Add** from the Actions menu, or click the **Add** icon. This displays the Create Task window:

Figure 5-83 Create Task

Create Task
✕

Assigned Customer [Redacted] (ID 1005312) ✎

Task Details

Task Type	<input type="text" value="APPOINTMENT"/>	End	<input type="text" value="2/28/2023, 11:59 PM"/>
Subject	<input type="text"/>	Location	<input type="text" value="None"/>
	Required	Priority	<input type="text" value="LOW"/>
Status	<input type="text" value="OPEN"/>	Event Type	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/>
Start	<input type="text" value="2/28/2023, 3:32 PM"/>	Duration	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/>

Assigned Users

Actions ▾ | + ✕

User ID	Name	Email Address	
[Redacted] @oracle.com	[Redacted]	[Redacted]	

Task Notes

Actions ▾ | + ✎ ✕

Type	Note	Created By	Created on
No Notes available to display			

Cancel
OK

2. If you want to change the customer assigned to the task, click the **Edit** icon next to the Assigned Customer Name and ID. This displays the Edit Assigned Customer window:

Figure 5-84 Edit Assigned Customer

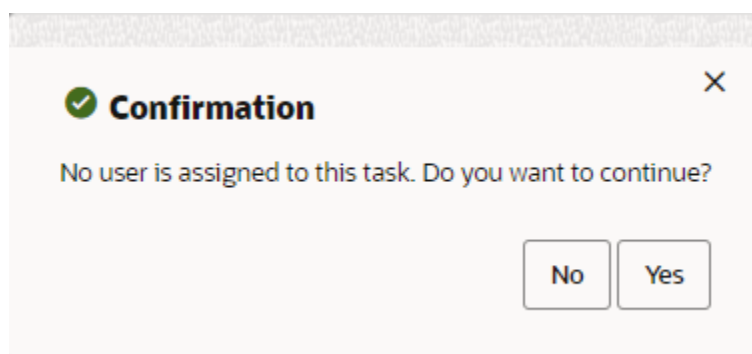
- a. In the Search for Customer field, enter the **Name**, **Email**, **Phone**, **Customer ID**, or **Alternate Key** of the customer you want to search for. Select **Partial** to search for customers that partially match the search text, or **Exact**, to search for an exact match.
 - b. Click **Search**. This displays the list of matching customers under Search Results.
 - c. Select the customer in the list that you want to assign to the task and click **OK**, or click **Cancel** if you do not want to change the customer assignment. This returns you to the Create Task window. If you click **OK**, the Customer Name and ID for the selected customer precede the Task Details.
3. Enter the details for the new task. Mandatory fields are indicated with asterisks (*):
 - Task Type – Select a task type from the list. This list is determined by the customer.
 - Subject – Enter a subject. This will appear in the Task Name field.
 - Status – Select a status from among those on list:
 - Open – Set the status of your task to Open.
 - In Progress – Set the status of your task to In Progress
 - Cancelled – Set the status of your task to Cancelled.
 - Closed – Set the status of your task to Closed.
 - Start – Select a start date for the task from the calendar.
 - Duration – Select the duration of the task from the list (optional). Selecting one of the duration options will determine the value for the End Date/Time based on the option chosen.
 - End – If no selection was made in the Duration field, select an end date for the task using the calendar.
 - Location – Select a location from the list.
 - Priority – Select a priority level from the list. These are configured by the customer. See the Customer Engagement Cloud Services Implementation Guide for information about configuring custom Task Priority Codes.

- Event Type – If you selected Event as the Task Type, select an Event Type from the list. For all other task types, this field is disabled.
4. Under Assigned Users, assign a user to the task. This defaults to the current logged-in user.
 - If you want to remove the current user, select the user and choose **Remove** from the **Actions** menu, or click the **Remove** icon. This clears the user from the grid.

 **Note:**

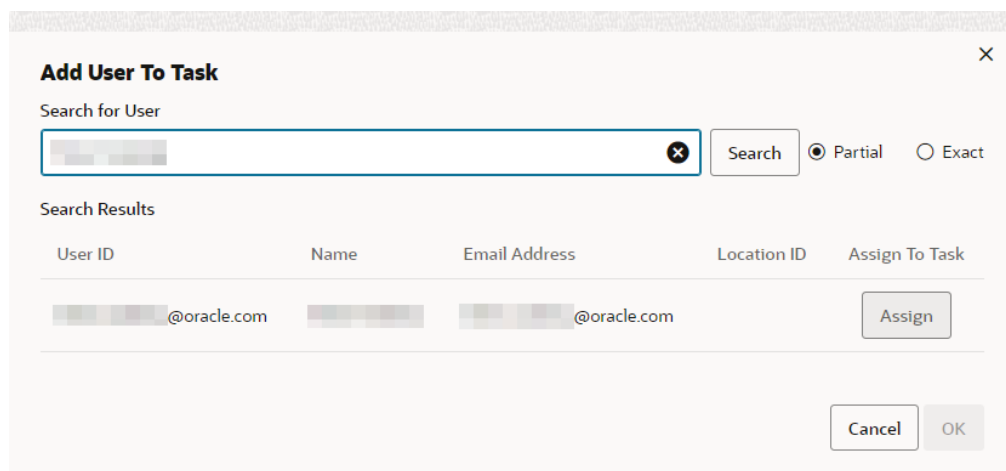
If no user is assigned to the task, and you click **OK** in this window, a Confirmation prompt is displayed:

Figure 5-85 Confirmation



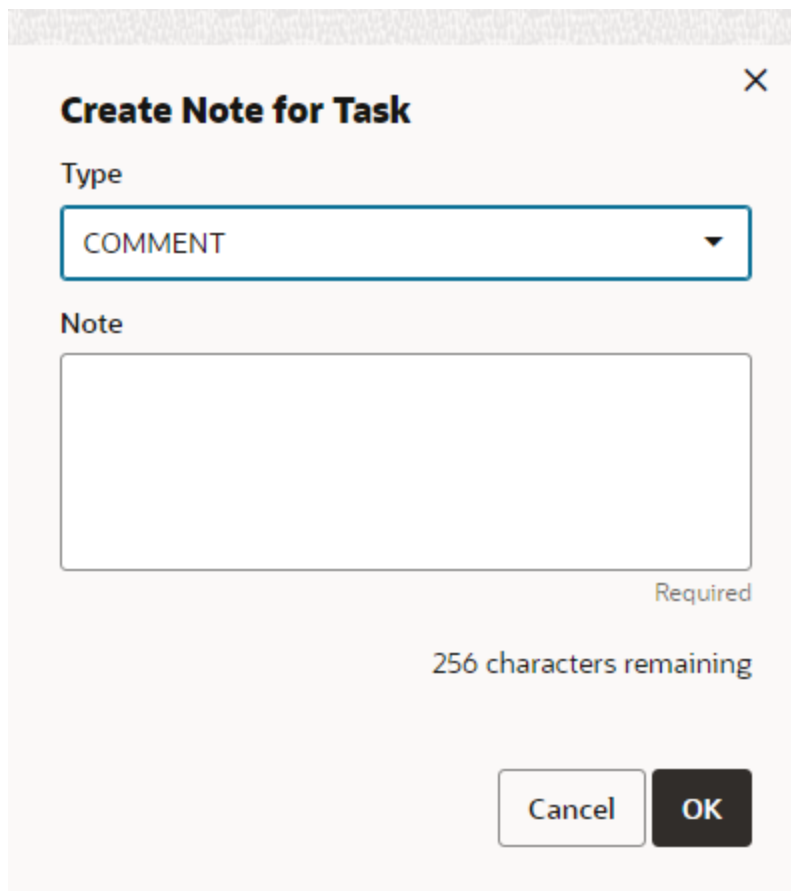
- Click **No** if you want to return to the Create Task window.
 - Click **Yes** if you want to create the task without a user assigned.
- If you want to add a user, remove the current user (see previous) and choose **Add** from the Actions menu, or click the **Add** icon. This displays an Add User to Task dialog:

Figure 5-86 Add User to Task - Search Results



5. In the Add User to Task Search field, enter the **User ID**, **Name**, **Email Address**, or **Location**. Select **Partial**, to search a partial entry, or **Exact**, to search for only exact matches.
6. In the Search Results list, select the **user** you want to add to the task, and click **Assign**, then click **OK**. This returns you to the Create Task window.
7. If you want to add a note with more information about the task, in the Task Notes panel, choose **Add** from the Actions menu, or click the **Add +** icon. This displays a Create Note for Task window:

Figure 5-87 Create Note for Task



Create Note for Task [X]

Type

COMMENT

Note

Required

256 characters remaining

Cancel OK

- a. Select a **note type** from the Type list.
 - b. Enter a **note** of up to 256 characters in the Note box.
 - c. Click **OK**. This returns you to the Create Task window.
8. Click **OK**. This returns you to the Tasks page. The new task is displayed in the grid.

Editing a Task

To edit a task:

1. In the Tasks List, in the Customer Tasks window (see [Figure 5-82](#), select the task that you want to edit.
2. Choose **Edit** from the Actions menu, or click the **Edit** icon. This displays the task in the Edit Task window:

Figure 5-88 Edit Task

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Task' window with the following sections:

- Assigned Customer:** [Redacted] (ID 1005312) with an edit icon.
- Task Details:**
 - Task Type: APPOINTMENT
 - Start: 9/9/2022, 10:14 AM
 - Location: None
 - Subject: test
 - Duration: (Please select)
 - Priority: LOW
 - Status: IN_PROGRESS
 - End: 9/10/2022, 12:59 AM
 - Event Type: (Please select)
- Assigned Users:**
 - Actions: +, x
 - Table with columns: User ID, Name, Email Address. One user is listed with a redacted name and email address ending in @oracle.com.
- Task Notes:**
 - Actions: +, edit icon, x
 - Table with columns: Type, Note, Created By, Created on. One note is listed with Type: COMMENT, Note: test, Created By: [Redacted], and Created on: 9/9/22.

Buttons for 'Cancel' and 'OK' are located at the bottom right.

- The user who created the task and the date it was created are displayed at the top of the window.
 - The Assigned Customer Name and ID precede the Task Details. You can change the assigned customer.
 - The Task Type and Event Type fields are not editable.
3. If you want to change the customer assigned to the task, click the Edit icon next to the Assigned Customer Name and ID. This displays the Edit Assigned Customer window. See [Adding a Task](#) for more information on editing the assigned customer.
 4. Modify what you want to change in the Task Details, Assigned Users, and Task Notes panels. See [Adding a Task](#) for more information on entering information in these fields.
 5. Click **OK** to return to the Customer Tasks page. Or, click **Cancel** to return to the Customer Tasks page without saving any of your changes.

If you clicked **OK** to save the changes, the Update User and Update Date are updated to that of the logged-in user and the date/time the changes were saved and displayed at the top of the Customer Tasks window.

Viewing a Task

To view a task:

1. In the Tasks List, in the Customer Tasks window (see [Figure 5-82](#)) select the task that you want to view.
2. Choose **View** from the Actions menu, or click the **View** icon. This displays the task details in view-only mode in the View Task window.
3. Review the task details. See [Adding a Task](#) for more information on the task details in these fields.
4. Click **Done** when you are finished reviewing the task details. This returns you to the Tasks page.

6

Promotions

Overview

In Customer Engagement, a Promotion defines an offer, within a Campaign, that is intended to provide some purchase incentive to Customers. These offers may be made available to all Customers, or they may be offered only to a specified subsets of Customers. These offers may provide price incentives on a specific item, they may provide coupons to be redeemed during a purchase, they may be messages notifying Customers of special events or pricing, or they may provide tender certificates that a Customer can use at a later date.

About this Chapter

This chapter contains the following information;

- [Promotion Search](#)
- [Viewing a Promotion](#)
- [Creating a Coupon Promotion](#)
 - [Creating Additional Coupons](#)
- [Creating a Product Promotion](#)
- [Creating a Message Promotion](#)
- [Creating an Award Promotion](#)
- [Creating a Points for Purchase Promotion](#)
- [Creating a Points for Marketing Engagements Promotion](#)
- [Creating a Points Promotion](#)
- [Promotion Actions](#)
- [Editing a Promotion](#)
- [Duplicating a Promotion](#)
- [Promotion Scorecard](#)
- [Promotion Information - Tabs](#)

Promotion Search

To search for a promotion use the following steps:

1. Click the **Menu** icon.
2. Click the **Campaign Task**.
3. Click the **Promotion Search Task**.

Figure 6-1 Promotion Search

Promotion Search

Search

Promotion ID

Campaign
All

Status
All

Type
All

Exported
All

Attribute Type
All

Attribute Value

Search Results

436 Promotions Found Sort By Revenue Lifetime To Date

Promotion Name and Campaign Name	Type	Source	Start Date	End Date	Offers	Status	Exported	Revenue LTD
<input type="checkbox"/> Points Promotion (ID 112) Points Promotion	Points	Internal	3/21/21	8/31/21	0	Saved	No	\$18,502.25
<input type="checkbox"/> Points-Static (ID 111) Points-Static	Points	Internal	3/21/21	7/31/21	0	Approved	No	\$5,536.96
<input type="checkbox"/> Performance Test (ID 175) Performance Test	Points for Purchase	Internal	1/27/22	2/28/22	2	Conflict	No	\$2,851.74
<input type="checkbox"/> Fixed Points - 20 points (ID 221) Fixed Points - 20 points	Points for Purchase	Internal	3/28/22	4/8/22	1	Conflict	No	\$1,900.24
<input type="checkbox"/> VB-Points for Purchase (ID 347) VB-Points for Purchase	Points for Purchase	Internal	1/1/70	10/1/22	1	Clear	No	\$1,977.30
<input type="checkbox"/> VB - Promotions (ID 348) VB - Promotions	Points for Purchase	Internal	1/1/70	10/1/22	1	Approved	No	\$1,769.91
<input type="checkbox"/> Message 241 (ID 52) Message 241	Message	Internal	1/30/21	1/31/21	0	Approved	Yes	\$1,602.38
<input type="checkbox"/> Fixed Points - 30 points (ID 220) Fixed Points - 30 points	Points for Purchase	Internal	3/25/22	4/8/22	1	Conflict	No	\$1,368.20
<input type="checkbox"/> DuP Points for Purchase-3K (ID 62) DuP Points for Purchase-3K	Points for Purchase	Internal	2/19/21	10/12/22	1	Approved	No	\$1,210.05
<input type="checkbox"/> Fixed Points - 30 points - Checked (ID 222) Fixed Points - 30 points - Checked	Points for Purchase	Internal	3/28/22	4/8/22	1	Conflict	No	\$1,243.90

4. Enter any or all of the following information to conduct a search. The Search pane contains the following filters:
- **Promotion ID** – Returns the exact ID match of the Promotion. No partial IDs or wild cards may be used.
 - **Campaign** – Filters the list by the name of the Promotion. The default filter is all.
 - **Status** – Filters the List by the current Promotion Status. This filter has the following options:
 - **All** - [DEFAULT] Do not filter by Status; display all Statuses
 - **Approved** - Display only Approved Promotions.
 - **Clear** - Display only Promotions that have been cleared.
 - **Conflict** - Display only Promotions with conflicts.
 - **Saved** - Display only Saved Promotions.
 - **Terminated** - Display only Terminated Promotions.
 - **Type** – Filters the List by the Type of Promotion. This filter has the following options:
 - **All** - [DEFAULT] Do not filter by Type; display all Promotion Types.
 - **Award** - Display only Award Promotions.

 **Note:**

The Display Promotions with Recurring Awards option appears only when the Award type is selected.

Figure 6-2 Only Display Promotions with Recurring Awards option

The screenshot shows a web form with a 'Type' dropdown menu. The dropdown is currently set to 'Award'. Below the dropdown is a checkbox labeled 'Only Display Promotions with Recurring Awards', which is currently unchecked.

- **Coupon** - Display only Coupon Promotions.
- **Message** - Display only Message Promotions.
- **Points** - Display only Points Promotions.
- **Points for Marketing Engagements** - Display only Points for Marketing Engagements only.
- **Points for Purchase** - Display only Points for Purchase Promotions.
- **Product** - Display only Product Promotions.
- **Loyalty Bounceback Type** - Filter the list by the type of Loyalty Bounceback.

Note: This filter is activated when the types Coupon or Product are selected. See [Loyalty Bounceback](#) for information on how to use this filter.

 - None [DEFAULT]
 - Bonus Points
 - Entitlements
- **Exported** – Filter the List by whether the promotion definition or data has been exported. This filter has the following options:
 - **All** - [DEFAULT] Do not filter by Export status; display both exported and unexported Promotions
 - **Yes** - Display only exported Promotions
 - **No** - Display only Promotions that have not been exported
- **Attribute Type** – The type of attribute.
- **Attribute Value** – This is a dynamic field based on the attribute previously entered.
- **Franchisee ID** – This Text Field searches for Promotions by the Franchisee associated with the Promotion. The Franchisee ID criteria is only visible if the `EnableFranchiseSupport` configuration is enabled. Only Franchisees associated with the user is displayed. This will default to All.
- **Coupon Code** – Coupon code associated with the Promotion.
- **Created By** – List Box with list of associates who created available Promotions. This will default to Everyone.
- **Generated** – Indicates whether the target data for the promotion has been generated.
 - **All** [DEFAULT]
 - Yes

– No

5. Click **Search** -



Note:

Reset clears all fields and returns the list values to the default selections.

Figure 6-3 Promotion Search Results

Search Results									Create Promotion
456 Promotions Found		Sort By	Revenue Lifetime To Date						
Promotion Name and Campaign Name	Type	Source	Start Date	End Date	Offers	Status	Exported	Revenue LTD	
<input type="checkbox"/> Points Promotion (ID 112) Points Promotion	Points	Internal	7/21/21	8/31/21	0	Saved	No	\$18,150.25	
<input type="checkbox"/> Points-Static (ID 111) Points-Static	Points	Internal	7/21/21	7/31/21	0	Approved	No	\$5,536.96	
<input type="checkbox"/> Performance Test (ID 175) Performance Test	Points for Purchase	Internal	1/27/22	2/28/22	2	Conflict	No	\$2,851.74	
<input type="checkbox"/> Fixed Points - 20 points (ID 221) Fixed Points - 20 points	Points for Purchase	Internal	3/28/22	4/6/22	1	Conflict	No	\$1,990.24	
<input type="checkbox"/> VB-Points for Purchase (ID 349) VB-Points for Purchase	Points for Purchase	Internal	1/1/70	10/11/22	1	Clear	No	\$1,917.30	
<input type="checkbox"/> VB - Promotions (ID 348) VB - Promotions	Points for Purchase	Internal	1/1/70	10/11/22	1	Approved	No	\$1,769.51	
<input type="checkbox"/> Message 741 (ID 32) Message 741	Message	Internal	1/30/21	1/31/21	0	Approved	Yes	\$1,602.38	
<input type="checkbox"/> Fixed Points - 30 points (ID 220) Fixed Points - 30 points	Points for Purchase	Internal	3/25/22	4/6/22	1	Conflict	No	\$1,368.29	
<input type="checkbox"/> DUP Points for Purchase-JK (ID 62) DUP Points for Purchase-JK	Points for Purchase	Internal	2/19/21	10/12/22	1	Approved	No	\$1,290.05	
<input type="checkbox"/> Fixed Points - 30 points - Checked (ID 222) Fixed Points - 30 points - Checked	Points for Purchase	Internal	3/28/22	4/6/22	1	Conflict	No	\$1,243.90	

Loyalty Bounceback

The Loyalty Bounceback filter appears when a Coupon type or Product type filter is selected. This enables you to view coupon promotions and or product promotions that include a loyalty bounceback.

Figure 6-4 Loyalty Bounceback Type

Search

Promotion ID

Campaign

Status

Type

Loyalty Bounceback Type

Exported

Attribute Type

The Loyalty Bounceback filter is a multi-select box. Choose one or more filter options as shown in Figures [Figure 6-5](#), [Figure 6-6](#), [Figure 6-7](#), and [Figure 6-8](#). Click **X** in any selected filter to remove that option.

Figure 6-5 Loyalty Bounceback Type Filter Options

Type
Coupon ▼

Loyalty Bounceback Type

Bonus Points

Entitlements

Figure 6-6 Multi-Select Options - Single Option

Type
Coupon ▼

Loyalty Bounceback Type

Bonus Points ×

Figure 6-7 Multi-Select - Adding Additional Options

Type
Coupon ▼

Loyalty Bounceback Type

Bonus Points ×

Entitlements

Figure 6-8 Multi-Select - All Options Selected

Type

Coupon ▼

Loyalty Bounceback Type

Bonus Points × Entitlements ×

Working with Promotion Results

The results will indicate the number of promotions found displayed in a table. Fields include:

- **Promotion Name and Campaign Name** – The promotion and campaign name. Click the name to view the Promotion Scorecard for the promotion.
- **Type** – The type of promotion.
- **Start Date** – The start date of the promotion.
- **End Date** – The end date of the promotion.
- **Offers** – The number of offers associated with the promotion.
- **Status** – The status of the promotion.
- **Exported** – Whether or not the promotion was exported.
- **Revenue LTD** – Revenue Lifetime to Date (LTD) of the promotion.

You can sort by:

- Last Update Date
- Promotion Name
- Promotion ID
- Campaign Name
- Type
- Status
- Exported
- Revenue LTD

Promotion results can be sorted ascending or descending.

Viewing a Promotion

There are three places that a user can find the View option in order to view a Promotion:

Figure 6-9 Overflow Menu

Promotion Name and Campaign Name	Type	Source	Start Date	End Date	Offers	Status	Exported	Revenue LTD	
Points Promotion (ID 112) Points Promotion	Points	Internal	7/21/21	8/31/21	0	Saved	No	\$18,150.25	⋮
Points-Static (ID 111) Points-Static	Points	Internal	7/21/21	7/31/21	0	Approved	No		Approve Duplicate
Performance Test (ID 173) Performance Test	Points for Purchase	Internal	1/27/22	2/28/22	2	Conflict	No		Edit Export Promotion Definition
Fixed Points - 20 points (ID 221) Fixed Points - 20 points	Points for Purchase	Internal	3/28/22	4/8/22	1	Conflict	No		Export To Batch Generate
VB-Points for Purchase (ID 349) VB-Points for Purchase	Points for Purchase	Internal	1/1/70	10/11/22	1	Clear	No		Terminate
VB - Promotions (ID 348) VB - Promotions	Points for Purchase	Internal	1/1/70	10/11/22	1	Approved	No		View
Message 741 (ID 32) Message 741	Message	Internal	1/30/21	1/31/21	0	Approved	Yes		

- Select **View** under the Action Menu (also known as the Overflow Menu) icon for each individual Promotion on the Promotion Advanced Search window.
- Select **View** in the Overflow Menu on each individual Promotion on the Promotion List window (which displays in the Promotion Home menu).
- Select **View** in the Overflow Menu for the individual Promotion on the Promotion Scorecard.

The View Promotion window displays:

Figure 6-10 View Promotion

View Promotion (ID 112) ✕

Promotion Name Points Promotion	POS Name Points Promotion	Description Points Promotion	Campaign Name Points Promotion	Timeframe 7/21/21 12:00 AM - 8/31/21 12:00 AM	☆ Points ⋮
Status Saved	Create Date 7/21/21	Create User ID lorraine.steiner@oracle.com	Update Date N/A	Update User ID N/A	

📍 550 Locations

Included
All Locations Defined

Excluded
No Excluded Locations Defined

👤 13 Customers in Audience

Audience
Exclusive

Selection Method
Dynamic

Update Method
New audience members will be added

Included
LoyaltyTarget_112 13 Customers

👤 1 Loyalty Program Levels and 9 Loyalty Members

Issue Points To
Active Accounts With Registered Customers

LS-CardAccountAdmin
Loyalty-CardAccountAdmin

● Loyalty-Level1 65.25 Bonus Points

📄 Export / Approve Status

Last Export Date	N/A
Last Approval Date	N/A
Last Export User	N/A
Last Approval User	N/A
Export Count	0
Approval Count	0
Conflict At Approval	No
Generated	Yes

Done

The information displayed will depend upon the configuration for a Promotion.

- Display Bar
 - Promotion Name

- POS Name
- Description
- Campaign Name
- Timeframe
- Promotion Type
- Status
- Create Date
- Create User ID
- Update Date
- Update User ID
- Cards - In the Review panel, the individual sections are called "Cards", which display details added to some of the tabs during Promotion setup. Some of those cards may be:
 - Locations
 - Attributes
 - Franchisees
 - Offers
 - Audience
 - Budget
 - Loyalty Program Levels and Loyalty Cards



Note:

At any time click the Pencil icon to go into the edit mode, see [Editing a Promotion](#) for more information. You can also click the **X** icon to close the promotion.

Viewing Promotions - Marketing Engagements

Once a Marketing Event is created, it needs to be activated. The following message appears on Marketing Engagements to assist the user setting the event. The message reads: Marketing Engagement must be configured externally to activate this Promotion Event..

Figure 6-11 Trigger Event Information



Marketing Engagement must be configured externally to activate this Promotion event.

Creating a Coupon Promotion

There are a few choices available to start the process of creating a promotion. The **Create Promotion** button is available in both the Promotion Home window as well as the Promotion Search window.

Note:
You will need the Promotion Home role to access the Promotion Home window.

1. Click **Create Promotion**, which opens up the Promotion wizard to the Information tab.

Figure 6-12 Information Tab - Coupon

The screenshot shows the 'Create Promotion' wizard in the 'Information' tab. The 'Promotion Definition' section is active, showing several promotion types. The 'Coupon' type is selected, with a checkmark and a description: 'Utilizes embedded coupons placed in various media, such as magazines or newspapers'. Below this, there is a 'Coupon Serialization' checkbox which is currently unchecked. Other promotion types listed include Product, Message, Award, Points for Purchase, Points for Marketing Engagements, and Points. The 'Campaign' section has three radio button options: 'Auto-create campaign' (selected), 'Associate this promotion with an existing campaign', and 'Create a new campaign for this promotion'. The 'Promotion Name and Date Range' section contains fields for Name, Description, Start Date (03/02/2023), Start Time (12:00 AM), End Date (M/d/y, h:mma), and End Time (11:59 PM). The 'Options' section has a 'Loyalty Bounceback' checkbox which is unchecked. On the right side, the 'Promotion Information' summary shows: Information (No information entered), Franchisees (All Franchisees defined), Locations (All Locations Defined), Offers (No offers defined), Attributes (No promotion attributes defined, No promo-offer attributes defined), Coupons (No coupon codes defined), Audience (No targeted audience defined), Budget (No budget details defined), and Save Options (No save options to display). At the bottom right, there is a 'Next >' button. At the very bottom of the window, there are 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK' buttons.

2. Select the **Promotion Type**: Coupon

 **Note:**

Contact your administrator if you do not see the Promotion Types needed for your promotion

3. There are two options for a Coupon Promotion - Serialized and Non-Serialized. The selection you make will display different options on the Coupon tab. A Serialized Coupon promotion will generate coupons, each with a unique serial number, generally for a one-time use. A Non-Serialized Coupon promotion will generate a unique coupon code for the promotion, for example, a SHOE20 may represent a code a customer can use, multiple times, to receive 20% off a shoe purchase. If you wish to create a Serialized Coupon promotion, use the Coupon Serialization switch in the Coupon type box to activate that option. This Switch is only available if the Serialized Coupon Enabled Flag configuration is set to **Yes**. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Cloud Service Implementation Guide* for more information about the Serialized Coupon Enabled Flag configuration.
4. Select one of the choices for the Campaign.
 - **Auto-create Campaign** – The campaign is automatically created and will use the same name and description from the promotion name and description.
 - **Associate this promotion with an existing campaign** – Uses existing campaigns in the system.
 - Click the list arrow and select an **existing campaign**.

 **Note:**

The Start Date and End Date display underneath the Existing Campaign list.

- **Create a new campaign for this promotion** – A new campaign is created with this promotion being the first added.
5. Enter the following information:
 - Enter a **Campaign Name** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Description** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Name**.
 - Enter a **Description**.
 - Select a **Start Date**.
 - Select a **Start Time**.
 - Select an **End Date**.
 - Select an **End Time**.
 6. **Optional** - Slide the **Loyalty Bounceback** toggle to ON to activate.

Figure 6-13 Loyalty Bounceback - Activated

Options

Loyalty Bounceback

Bounceback Type Bonus Points ▼

Next >

- Select a **Bounceback Type**.
 - Bonus Points
 - Entitlements

 **Note:**

Loyalty Bounceback configuration occurs in **Step 12**, the **Offers** tab.

7. When finished entering the Campaign and Promotion information, click **Next** to continue to the **Franchisees** tab.

 **Note:**



This tab will only display if the `EnableFranchiseSupport` configuration is enabled, and Franchisees have been created.

8. By default, all franchisees are assigned to the promotion. To make changes to those assignments, do the following:

Figure 6-14 Franchisees Tab

Franchisees

Included Franchisees

Actions ▼ |  

All Franchisees are included

Next >

Assigning a Franchisee

- a. Click the **Actions Menu**, then, click **Assign**, or click the **Add (+)** icon. This opens the Add Franchisee window.

Figure 6-15 Assign Franchisee

Assign Franchisee X

Search for Franchisee

Search by Franchisee ID or Name or Description X Search

Search Results

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations
-----------------	------------------------	-----------

Unassign All

No Franchisees to display

Cancel OK

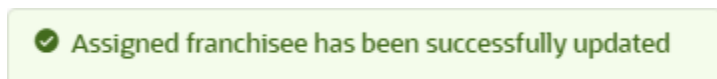
- b. In the Search for franchisee search box, enter part or all of the **Name**, **ID**, or **Description**, then click **Search**.

 **Note:**

You can also leave blank and click Search to return all Franchisees.

- c. To change the assignment from ALL (which is defaulted) click **Assign** on just the specific franchisees you wish to assign for this promotion. Only Franchisees associated with the user are displayed in the list.
- d. Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Figure 6-16 Confirmation Notification



 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the franchisee has been assigned.

Deleting a Franchisee

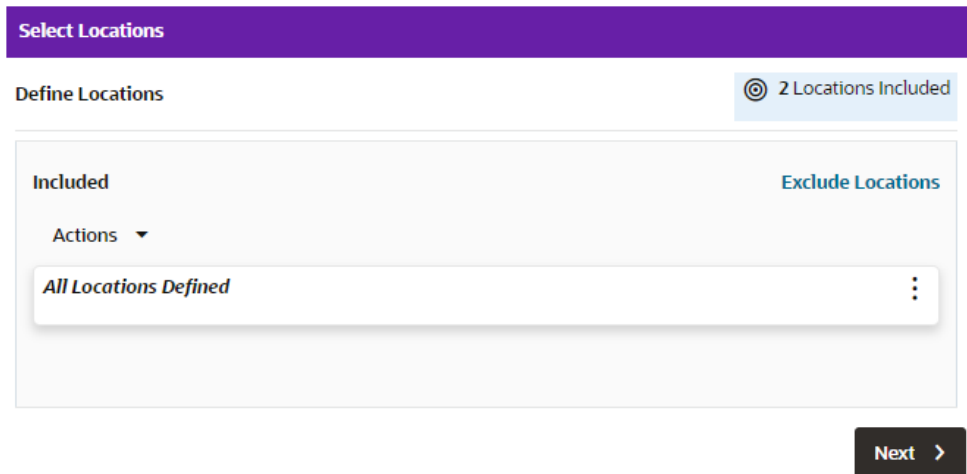
- a. In the included Franchisees window, highlight the desired **row**.
- b. Click the **Action Menu**, and click **Delete**, or click the **X** icon.

 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the franchisee has been deleted.

9. When finished entering the Franchisees information, click **Next** to continue to the **Locations** tab.
10. Enter the following for the **Locations** tab:

Figure 6-17 Locations Tab



Select Locations

Define Locations 2 Locations Included

Included Exclude Locations

Actions ▾

All Locations Defined ⋮

Next >

Define Locations

 **Note:**

By default, **ALL** locations are added to the promotion. You can select the Overflow Menu to edit the list of locations to include.

- Included

- a. If you wish to change the Locations assigned to this Promotion, click the **Overflow Menu**, then click **Edit**. This opens the Edit Location Rule window.

Figure 6-18 Edit Location Rule (Include)

Edit Location Rule (Include) [X]

Specific Locations Include By Attributes and Locations

2 Locations Selected

Search by Location ID or Name [X] Search

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Location ID	Location Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	15801	15801-SouthPark-MN
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00001	Franchisee 1 Location

Cancel **OK** OK and Add Another

Specific Locations

- a. Click the **Specific Location** option.

Figure 6-19 Edit Location Rule (Include) - Specific Locations

Edit Location Rule (Include) [X]

Specific Locations Include By Attributes and Locations

2 Locations Selected

Search by Location ID or Name [X] Search

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Location ID	Location Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	15801	15801-SouthPark-MN
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00001	Franchisee 1 Location

Cancel **OK** OK and Add Another

Note:

The Location ID check box at the top of the list enables you to deselect or select all locations. If you deselect all the locations, then you can scroll through the list or search for a specific location.

- b. Enter part or all of a **Location ID** or **Name**.
- c. Click **Search**.
- d. Click **Add** to select a location.
- e. Click **Add** for another location means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
- f. Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same search results and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add for another location**.
- g. Click **Ok** to close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Include by Attributes

- a. Click the **Include by Attributes** option.

Figure 6-20 Edit Location Rule (Include) - Include by Attributes

Edit Location Rule (Include)

Specific Locations
 Include By Attributes and Locations

By Attributes

Select Locations by Attribute

Search By Attribute

Attribute	Locations
Accessibility	
Daily Sales Amount	
Number Of Employees	
▶ LOSS PREVENTION	
GRAND OPENING DATE	
INTERNET	

Query

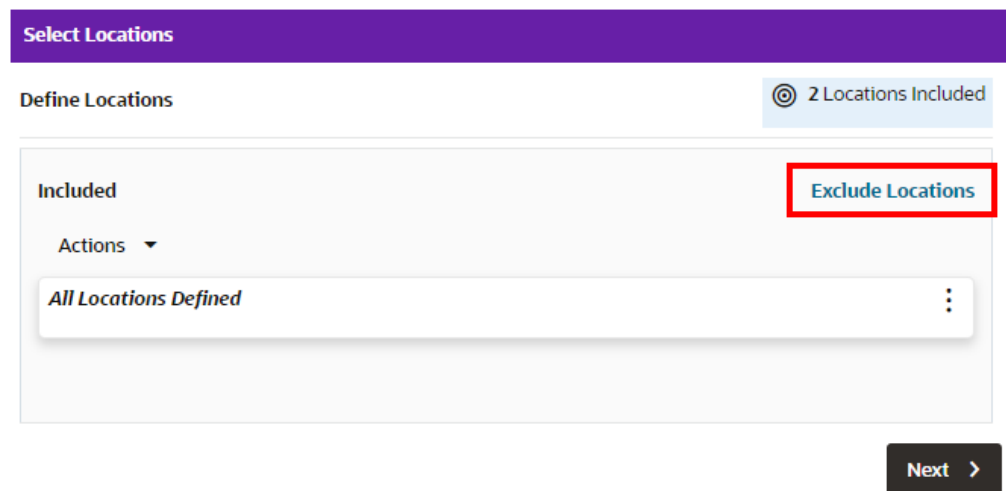
Add Attributes to build a query

Note:

A list of attributes enables you to add one more attributes in order to create a query to select only the locations that fit the requirements.

- b. Click **Add** to select an attribute. Some Location Attributes can be collapsed or expanded. They will default to collapsed to allow you to scroll thru the list easier and expand the attributes they you to add.
 - c. Click **Add** for another attribute means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
 - d. Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click the **Add** button for another attribute.
 - e. Click **OK** to close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
- Excluded Locations - This option allows you to select specific locations to exclude from the promotion.
- a. Click the **Exclude Locations** link.

Figure 6-21 Select Locations



Specific Locations

Figure 6-22 Edit Location Rule (Exclude) - Specific Locations

Edit Location Rule (Exclude) ×

Specific Locations
 Exclude By Attributes and Locations

0 Locations Selected

Search by Location ID or Name

<input type="checkbox"/>	Location ID	Location Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	15801	15801-SouthPark-MN
<input type="checkbox"/>	00001	Franchisee 1 Location

- a. Click the **Specific Location** option.

Note:

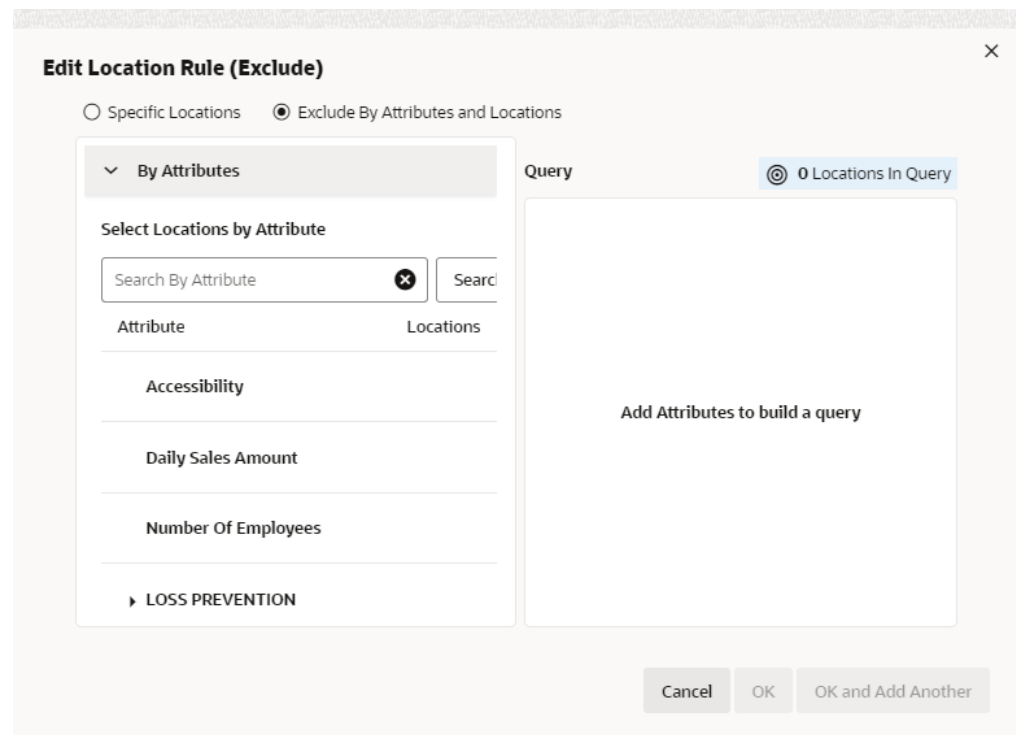
The Location ID check box at the top of the list enables you to deselect or select all locations. If you deselect all the locations, then you can scroll through the list or search for a specific location.

- b. Enter part or all of a **Location ID** or **Name**.
- c. Click **Search**.
- d. Click **Add** to select a location.
- e. Click **Add for another location** means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
- f. Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same search results and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add for another location**.
- g. Click **OK** to close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Exclude by Attributes

- a. Click the **Exclude by Attributes** option.

Figure 6-23 Edit Location Rule (Exclude) - Exclude By Attributes

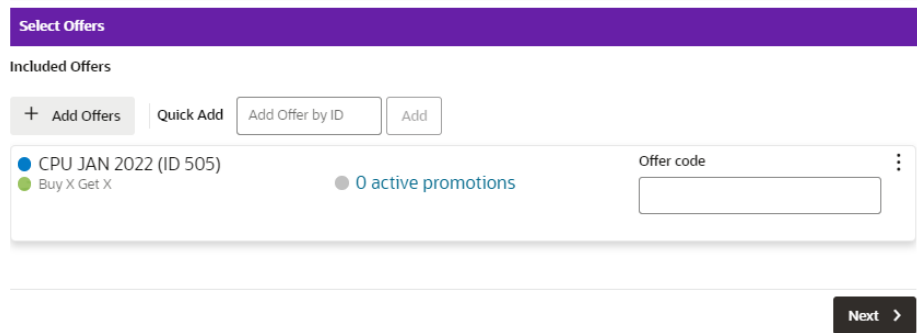


- b. Click **Add** to select an attribute. Some Location Attributes can be collapsed or expanded. They will default to collapsed to allow you to scroll thru the list easier and expand the attributes they you to add.
 - c. Click **Add for another** attribute means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
 - d. Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add** for another attribute.
 - e. Click **OK** to close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
11. When finished entering Locations for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Offers** tab.
 12. To begin the Offers tab, take the following actions:

There are two methods to add offers, either:

 - Select the **Quick Add** option to search for a known Offer ID.
 - Click **+Add Offers** for an Advanced Offer Search.

Figure 6-24 Offers Tab

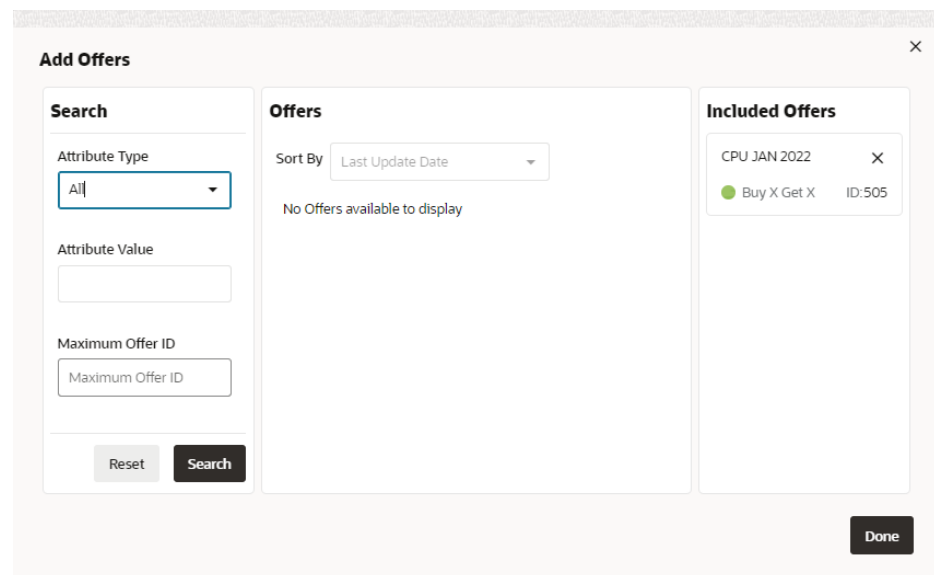


 **Note:**

Refer to [Figure 6-24](#) to enter the Offer Code field. A retailer can use it to qualify or track a particular offer.

- Click **+ Add Offers**. The Add Offers window enables you to search for offers to include in the promotion. Once you receive the results of the search you can sort the results, if desired for easier selection, before adding them to the promotion. Those offers appear in the Included Offers panel.

Figure 6-25 Add Offers



- In the Search section, enter any or all of the following information:
 - **Attribute Type** – Search for an Offer by the Attribute assigned to the Offer. The default is ALL.
 - **Attributes Value** - Type-ahead search according to the Attribute Type selected.

- **Maximum Offer ID** – Highest Offer ID number you wish to limit the search to. This will return that offer ID and all others with a lower number.
- **Offer ID** – This Text Field searches all the Offers currently present in the application. The default is an empty field.
- **Offer Name** – Name of the Offer.
- **Offer Type** – Search the Offer by Offer Type (Single Select). Depending on the Parameter value set in System Configuration (Offer Types), the value is populated in the list of options. The following list shows the Possible Offer Types:
 - All (Default)
 - Buy X Get X
 - Buy X Get Y
 - Fixed Quantity/Price
 - Gift with Purchase
 - Kit
 - Line Item Discount
 - Tiered Discount
 - Transaction Discount
- **Intended Use** – The type of Promotion associated with the Offer you are searching for.
- Click **Search**.

 **Note:**

Note: To retrieve all the offers in the system, select Search without entering any search criteria. All offers are returned to the Offers results section. From there, you can scroll through the list to choose which offers to add.

To clear the search fields and restore default selections in the search page, click **Reset**.

- Upon selecting **Search**, the results display in the Offers section. Use the **Sort by list** to sort by the following options:
 - Last Update Date
 - Offer Name
 - Offer Type
 - Intended Use
 - Offer ID
- In the Add Offers window, you can select any of the offers in the Include Offers section and remove them by selecting the **X** in the top right corner of the Offer. Click **Add** to include the offers in the promotion.
- When finished selecting offers to add to the Promotion, select **Done**, which returns you to the Select Offers window.

- On the Select Offers window, you can select the **Remove** option from the **Overflow Menu** to remove an offer from the promotion.
- Enter the **Offer ID** in the Quick Add field and then click **Add** to also add offers to a promotion.

Figure 6-26 Select Offers Quick Add

 **Note:**

The following two configuration options only appear when **Loyalty Bounceback** is activated in the **Information** tab.

Bonus Points - Points Bounceback options appear when Bonus Points is selected in the Information tab. From the Points Bounceback drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Figure 6-27 Points Bounceback - Fixed

- **Fixed** - Identifies the amount awarded as loyalty incentive points to the user's account upon meeting the promotion requirements. Define the amount of points added by entering a value or using the up and down arrows to increase/decrease the number of points awarded.

Figure 6-28 Points Bounceback - Multiplier

- **Multiplier** - Multiplies the number provided by the user by the dollar amount of the item to award the correct Loyalty Bounceback point amount upon meeting the promotion requirements.
- **None** - No bonus points are assigned.

Entitlements - Entitlement configuration options appear when Entitlements is selected in the Information tab.

Figure 6-29 Offers Tab - Assigning Entitlements

The screenshot shows a 'Select Offers' interface. At the top, there is a purple header with the text 'Select Offers'. Below this, the section is titled 'Included Offers'. A blue notification bubble at the top right states 'Entitlements will use the Program's expiration date unless overridden.' Below the notification, there is a '+ Add Offers' button, a 'Quick Add' field containing the number '7345', and an 'Add' button. The main offer card displays 'CPU JAN 2022 (ID 505)' with a blue dot, and 'Buy X Get X' with a green dot. To the right of the offer name, it says '0 active promotions'. Further right is an 'Offer code' field with a dropdown arrow. At the bottom of the offer card, there is a '+ Assign Entitlement Bounceback Offer' button.

- Click the **+ Assign Entitlement Bounceback Offer** button.
- Assign an Entitlement Offer in the same way you assigned an Offer as shown within in this step.

 **Note:**

The available Intended Use type for an Entitlement Bounceback is Entitlement. All other Intended Uses are disabled.

Figure 6-30 Expiration Types (Optional)


The screenshot shows the 'Select Offers' interface. At the top, there is a purple header with the text 'Select Offers'. Below it, the 'Included Offers' section contains a blue information box stating 'Entitlements will use the Program's expiration date unless overridden.' Below this are buttons for '+ Add Offers', 'Quick Add', 'Add Offer by ID', and 'Add'. The main offer card is titled 'CPU JAN 2022 (ID 505)' and includes a 'Buy X Get X' tag and '1 active promotions'. It features an 'Offer code' input field, an 'Expires' toggle switch (currently on), and an 'Expires After' section with 'Relative' and 'Fixed' tabs, a numeric input field with up/down arrows, and a 'Months' dropdown menu. A 'Required' label is positioned below the 'Expires After' field. An overflow menu icon is visible on the right side of the offer card. At the bottom right, there is a 'Next >' button.




Optional: Configure the Offer Expires options. Click the **Expires** slider shown in [Figure 6-30](#) to activate the following expiration types:


- Expiration Type: **Relative** (default)
 - Enter a **Value** or click the Up/Down arrows to **increase/decrease** the value in the **Expires After** field.
 - Click the drop-down list to indicate **Days**, **Months** (default), or **Years**.
 - Expiration Type: **Fixed**
 - Click the **Start Date** field to use the Date Editor (required).
 - Click the **End Date** field to use the Date Editor (required).
 - The Overflow Menu for Entitlement Bounceback Offers include the following options:
 - **Copy Bounceback Entitlement to all other Offers** - Copies the expirations rules to all other entitlement bounceback offers selected. They will take the exact same rules from the selected entitlement bounceback. Doing this will overwrite any existing bounceback details selected.
 - **Remove** - Removes the offer and the bounceback entitlement offer.
 - **Remove the Bounceback Entitlement** - Removes the bounceback entitlement offer only. The offer remains available to add an entitlement bounceback offer.
13. When finished entering Offers for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Attributes** tab.
14. Enter the following for the **Attributes** tab.

Figure 6-31 Select Attributes

Attributes

 **Promotion Attributes**

Name	Value	Description
AUTHORIZED SIGNATURE	<input type="text" value="Character"/> + Add Another	Authorized Signature
IN MARKET DATE	<input type="text" value="M/d/y"/>  + Add Another	Date Promotion In the Market
MARKET CIRCULATION	<input type="text" value="Number"/> + Add Another	Market Circulation Count
MARKETING BUDGET	<input type="text" value="Currency"/> + Add Another	Promotion Marketing Budget
PROMOTION CHANNEL	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/>  + Add Another	Promotion Channel
Winter Promo?	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/>  	Winter Promo?

 **Promo-Offer Attributes** Bypass Promo-Offer Attributes

Next >

Complete values for any Promotion Attributes and Promo-Offer Attributes you want added to the promotion. Fields marked with an asterisk are required.

- Promo-Offer Attributes Switch – Determines whether Promo-Offer attributes are used for this Promotion event:
 - **On** – The Promo-Offer Attributes switch defaults to ON, which means the step is bypassed and values for any defined Promo-Offer Attributes will not be required or added to the Promotion.
 - **Off** – When the Promo-Offer Attributes switch is set to OFF, it means that values for Promo-Offer Attributes will need to be defined and added to the Promotion.

15. When finished adding Attributes for the Promotion, click **Next**.

- If the Promotion Type is Coupon, go to Step 16 to continue to the Coupons tab.
- If the Promotion Type is Product, go to Step 21 to continue to the Audience tab.
- If the Promotion Type is Message, go to Step 21 to continue to the Audience tab.
- If the Promotion Type is Award, go to Step 33 to continue to the Budget tab.

16. Enter the following for the **Coupons** Tab.

- If you did not select the Serialized Coupon switch in Step 3, proceed to Step 17.
- If you did select the Serialized Coupon switch in Step 3, proceed to Step 19.

Coupon Serialization - Disabled

The following graphic depicts the options when Coupon Serialization is **Disabled**:

Figure 6-32 Coupon Codes Tab: Serialization - OFF

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing coupon codes. At the top, there is a purple header labeled "Coupon Codes". Below this, there are three main sections: "Offer Name" with the value "CPU JAN 2022 (ID 505)", "Offer Type" with a green icon and the text "Buy X Get X", and "Offer Group" with a dropdown menu showing "50%". Below these sections is a button labeled "+ Add Coupon Code". At the bottom, there is a table with three columns: "Coupon Code", "Media Description", and "Estimated Distribution". The first row of the table has the value "00274" in the "Coupon Code" column, and empty fields in the other two columns.

17. For each Offer that was added to the Promotion, as separate section will appear to complete these fields listed below.
 - a. Coupon Code - Enter a **6 digit code** to be used for the coupon.

 **Note:**

Values may be generated systematically, provided the *PromoCouponCodeManagement* configuration is enabled. Contact your system administrator regarding configurations.

- b. Media Description – Description of the Media for the Coupon
 - c. Estimated Distribution – Estimated Distribution specified for Media for the Coupon
 - d. Click + **Add Coupon Code** to add another coupon to the Offer for Promotion.
 - e. To delete Coupons from an Offer, click **X** for that row.
18. When finished adding Coupon information for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Audience** tab. Proceed to Step 21.

Coupon Serialization - Enabled

Figure 6-33 depicts the options when Coupon Serialization is **Enabled**.

Figure 6-33 Coupon Codes Tab: Coupon Serialization - ON

The screenshot shows a form titled "Coupon Codes" with the following fields and values:

- Offer Name:** CPU JAN 2022 (ID 505)
- Offer Type:** Buy X Get X (with a green icon)
- Offer Group:** 50 (with a dropdown arrow)
- + Add Coupon Prefix:** A button to add a new coupon prefix.
- Coupon Prefix:** 00274
- Media Description:** (Empty field)

19. For each Offer that was added to the Promotion, as separate section will appear to complete these fields listed below.
 - a. Coupon Prefix - Enter a **6 digit prefix** to be used for the coupon.

 **Note:**

Values may be generated systematically, provided the *PromoCouponCodeManagement* configuration is enabled. Contact your system administrator regarding configurations.

- b. Media Description – Description of the Media for the Coupon
 - c. Click **+ Add Coupon Code** to add another coupon to the Offer for Promotion.
 - d. To delete Coupons from an Offer, click **X** for that row.
20. When finished adding Coupon information for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Audience** tab.
21. Take the following actions for the Audience tab.

Figure 6-34 Audience Tab

Audience Rules – Select **All**, **Exclusive**, or **Non-Exclusive** to define the audience.

- If you select **All**, it means this promotion is open to anyone who responds to the sale – everyone who buys items on the promotion get the Offer.
- The category **All** is defaulted when you open the Audience Window. Make no changes and advance to the next tab to add all customers to be targeted for this promotion.

Exclusive Targeting - If you create an exclusive targeted promotion, this means that only the customers you've identified in your target group are eligible to receive the promotion at the point of sale.

Non-Exclusive Targeting - If you create a non-exclusive targeted promotion, all customers are eligible for the promotion.

- The Exclusive and Non-Exclusive options operate the same - the difference is only if the Promotion is exclusive to just those customers or non-exclusive for the groups selected. The Static and Dynamic selections apply to both.
 - **Static** – Only customers defined at this time are considered eligible for the promotion.
 - **Dynamic** – Dynamic can not only add customers but also remove customers that no longer apply. When Dynamic is selected, Update Method is available.

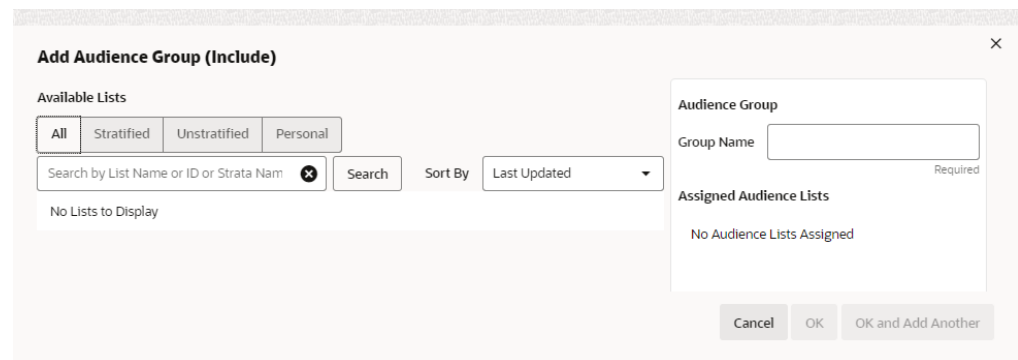
New audience members will be added – When the Dynamic and Recurring Promotions job runs, any new customers found that meet the criteria, are added to the audience. All customers currently in the audience will remain in the audience.

Audience members can be added and removed – When the Dynamic and Recurring Promotions job runs, any new customers found that meet the criteria, are added to the audience. Additionally, only the customers that meet the criteria will be included in the audience. If the customer is in the audience before the job runs, but no longer meets the criteria, the customer will be removed from the audience.

Define Audience - Included Audience Groups

- a. Click + **Add Audience Group**.

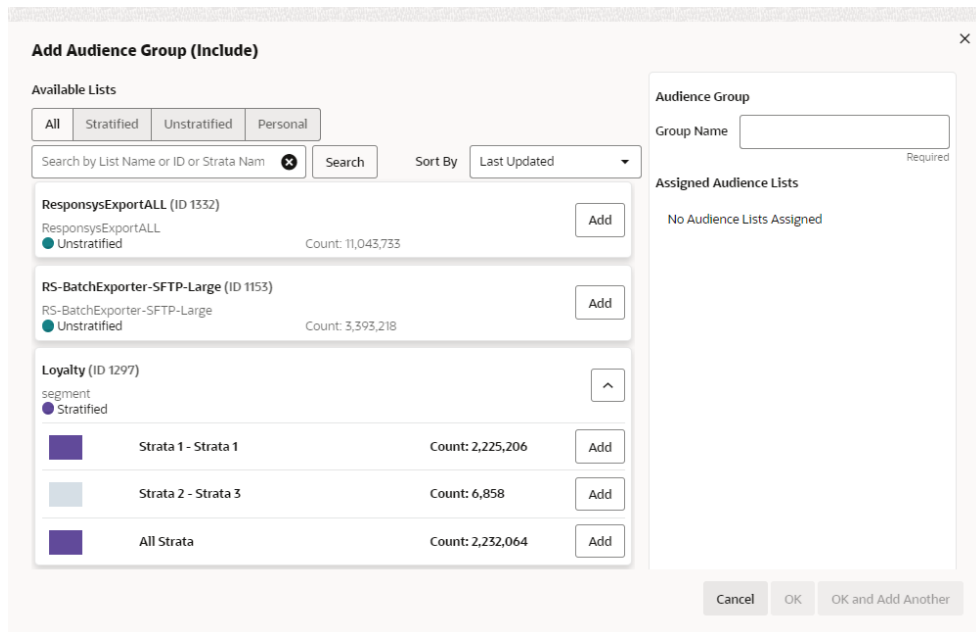
Figure 6-35 Add Audience Group (Include)



- b. Select an **Available List** type
 - All** - Default
 - Stratified** - The Customers within a Stratified list are divided into levels.
 - Unstratified** - Customers maintained by the user.
 - Personal** - Customers maintained by the user.
- c. In the Search field, enter some or all of the **List Name, ID, or Strata Name**.
- d. Click **Search**. The results can be sorted by using the Sort by list menu with the following options:
 - Last Updated
 - Name
 - Customer Count
- e. Enter a **Group Name**.

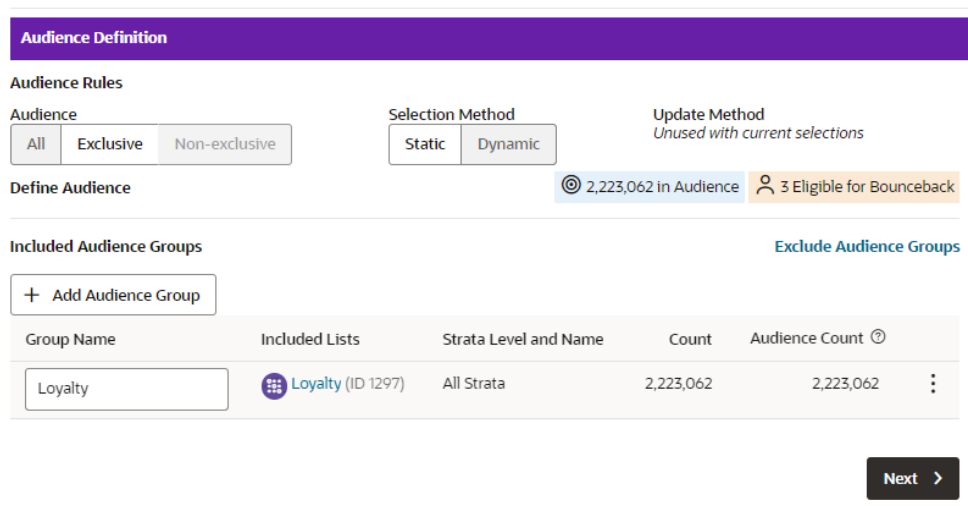
When lists are added from the Available Lists area, they appear in the Audience Groups section of the window. The Audience Group section Group Name automatically defaults to the name of the first list added. You can change the Group Name to something more meaningful to describe the group of customers, if desired.

Figure 6-36 Add Audience Group (Include)



- Click **Add** to add the selection to Assigned Audience Lists.
- Click **Add** for another list means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
- Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add** for another Audience Group.

Figure 6-37 Audience Definition



As shown in [Figure 6-37](#) the Count is shown for each audience group. In the Audience Rules section the Audience Count is provided on the right hand side.

Columns include the following details:

- Group Name
- Included Lists
- Strata Name and Level (if applicable)
- Count
- Audience Count

Each Group Name has an Overflow Menu Icon where you can Edit or Remove the Audience Group from the list.

The Included Lists column displays a link on that list (also known as a segment) and that link will open to the Audience List Details window.

In this window, the following sections may display, depending on the type of list and which of the options were selected when the list was created:

- List Options section
- Criteria section
- Trend Results section
- Strata Levels section
- Attributes section
- Franchisees section
- Message section
- Scheduled Jobs section

Figure 6-38 List Details

The screenshot shows the 'List Details' window for a list named 'Franchise 1,2,5,6 (ID 1141)'. The window is divided into several sections:

- List Options:** A list of checkboxes including 'Export', 'Open Access', 'Permanent', 'Public' (checked), 'Publish To Batch Exporter', 'Publish To Clienteling', 'Publish To Task Generator', 'Save as List' (checked), and 'Trend Results'.
- Criteria:** A section with a 'Segment Syntax' field containing 'Customer city of residence = Minneapolis AND Customer State = MN AND Selected Franchisees', a 'Format' field with 'Ntile Strata', and a 'Based on' field with 'Customer'.
- Trend Results:** A table with columns: Run ID, Run Date, Strata Level, Customer Count, Minimum Value, Maximum Value, and Average Value.

Run ID	Run Date	Strata Level	Customer Count	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Average Value
0	8/30/22, 3:44 PM	1	7	0	0	0
0	8/30/22, 3:44 PM	2	7	0	0	0
0	8/30/22, 8:44 PM	3	7	0	0	0
- Strata Levels Against Annual Income:** A table with columns: Strata Name and Customer Count.

Strata Name	Customer Count
Rich	7
Medium	7
Poor	7

The window also shows the list name, description, and creation details at the top, and a 'Done' button at the bottom right.

The checked List Options vary by the selections made when the list was created, and may include the following fields:

- **Export** – Indicates whether the Segment list is automatically exported after the Segment Query is run.
- **Open Access** – Indicates whether the Segment has Open Access.
- **Permanent** – Indicates whether the Segment is kept in the system, even if it meets the criteria for deletion by the housekeeping job.
- **Public** – Indicates whether the Segment is Public.
- **Publish to Batch Exporter** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available for export to a Marketing system.
- **Publish to Clienteling** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available to the Clienteling module.
- **Publish to Task Generator** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available to the Task Generator Job.
- **Save as List** – Indicates whether a list of matching Customer IDs is created when the Segment is created.
- **Trend Results** – Indicates whether the results of the Segment run are kept to provide trend information about the Segment.

Figure 6-39 displays the Trend Results in a chart. A user can scroll down to see a table as shown in Figure 6-40, which for this segment shows the Strata Levels Against Customer Age and displays the strata that are shown in the graph.

Figure 6-39 List Details Trend Results - Chart

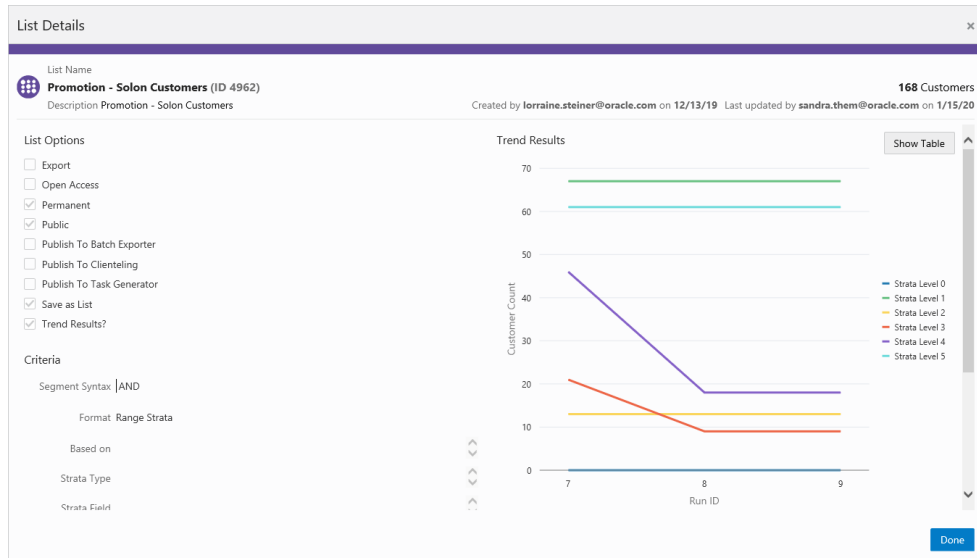


Figure 6-40 Trend Results Graph - Table

Trend Results						Show Chart
Run ID	Run Date	Strata Level	Customer Count	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Average Value
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	1	99	0	0	0
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	2	92	0	0	0
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	3	93	0	0	0
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	1	99	0	0	0
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	2	92	0	0	0
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	3	93	0	0	0

Figure 6-41 List Details Trend Results - Table

Strata Levels Against Annual Income			
Strata Name	From (>=)	To (<)	Customer Count
Strata 1	0	50	2,216,204
Strata 3	51	>	6,858

- Click **Done** to close the Audience List Details window.

Figure 6-42 Audience Definition - Exclude Audience Groups

The screenshot shows the 'Audience Definition' window. At the top, there's a purple header. Below it, the 'Audience Rules' section includes 'Audience' (All, Exclusive, Non-exclusive), 'Selection Method' (Static, Dynamic), and 'Update Method' (New audience members will be added, Audience members can be added and removed). The 'Define Audience' section shows '18 In Audience' and '0 Eligible for Bounceback'. The 'Included Audience Groups' section has a red box around the 'Exclude Audience Groups' link. Below this is a table with columns: Group Name, Included Lists, Strata Level and Name, Count, and Audience Count. The table currently shows 'No Audience Groups Added'. A 'Next >' button is at the bottom right.

Exclude Audience Groups - If you wish to exclude certain groups of customers that may also be a part of the Included Group, you can do that by selecting the **Exclude Audience Groups** link, which opens a new section in the Audience Definition window

- Select the **Exclude Audience Groups** link.
- Click **+ Add Audience Group**.
- Select an Available List type.
 - **All** – Default group listing.
 - **Stratified** – The Customers within a Stratified list are divided into levels.
 - **Unstratified** – The Customers within an Unstratified list are not differentiated into separate groups.
 - **Personal** – User created groups.
- In the Search field, enter some or all of the **List Name, ID, or Strata Name**.
- Click **Search**.
- The results can be sorted by using the **Sort by list** menu with the following options:
 - Last Updated
 - Name
 - Customer Count
- Enter a **Group Name**.
- Click **Add** to add the selection Assigned Audience Lists.
- Click **Add** for another list means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.

- Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add** for another Audience Group.
22. When finished entering all Audience Groups for the Promotion, click **Next**.
- If the Selection Method selected in **Step 21**, is Static, continue to the next tab, the **Filtering Audience** tab.
 - If the Selection Method selected in **Step 21**, is Dynamic, continue to **Step 22**, the **Control Groups** tab.
23. Enter the following for the **Filtering Audience** tab.

Figure 6-43 Filtering Audience Tab

Audience Filter

Audience Filtering

Customer Household Consolidation: None 2,223,062 Audience Count 0 Filtered Count

Audience Group Name	Audience Count	Approximate Household Count	Filter	Filter Value
Loyalty	2223062	2222617	None Top Sales Random	0

Next >

Use the **Customer Household Consolidation Selection Menu** to indicate whether the Promotion will use household consolidation, and the rule for determining the Customer who is the head of household.

- **None** – Do not perform household filtering.
- **LT Sales** – Select head of household based on amount purchased over the lifetime of their account.
- **LT Transaction Count** – Select head of household based on lifetime number of transactions.
- **Last Transaction Date** – Select head of household based on the Customer who performed the most recent transaction.
- **Customer Attributes** – Select head of household based on the Customer's numeric attributes.

Select the **Filter Type** for each Audience:

Figure 6-44 Select Desired Filtering

Audience Filter

Audience Filtering

Customer Household Consolidation: None

2,223,062 Audience Count | 0 Filtered Count

Audience Group Name	Audience Count	Approximate Household Count	Filter	Filter Value
Loyalty	2223062	2222617	None Top Sales Random	0

Next >

- **None** - [DEFAULT] All Customers in the Audience Group are eligible.
- **Top Sales** - Customers from the Audience Group will be chosen for eligibility by the greatest total amount of purchases.
- **Random** - Customers from the Audience Group will be chosen randomly for eligibility.

Enter a **filter value** to indicate the number of customers eligible for the promotion.

24. When finished entering any household filtering for the Audience Groups for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Split Audience** tab.
25. In the Split Audience tab, filtered audiences can, optionally, be split into smaller, separate audiences. If desired, create splits for the filtered audiences on the promotion.
 - Click **Split**.

Figure 6-45 Split Audience Groups

Split Audience Groups

Audience Group Name: Loyalty | Count: 200 | Split

Name	Count	Percent	
Loyalty_1	100	50.00	X
Loyalty_2	100	50.00	X

Next >

- The Split Name field is automatically populated from the name of the Audience Group Name. If desired, you can change the name of the splits in this step.
- Select **Split** to automatically divide the Audience Group into equal portions and percentages. If you desire different portions or percentages for the splits, enter either a count or a percentage, and the corresponding field will update.

26. When finished entering any Audience Group splits for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Control Groups** tab.
27. Enter the following information for the **Control Groups** tab.

Figure 6-46 Define Control Groups

Define Control Groups

Control Groups

Style

None	By Promotion	By Audience Group	
------	---------------------	-------------------	--

Audience Group Name	Original Count	New Count	Percent
Loyalty_1	100	80	40.00
Loyalty_2	100	80	40.00
Control Group for Spring Sale	0	<input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="40"/>	<input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="20.00"/>
Total	200	200	100.00

Next >

The control group is a statistically identical group that doesn't receive the offer. Following the promotional period, the results of the two groups are compared and you can determine if the offer generated incremental revenue. Options include:

- **None** – No Control Group
 - **By Promotion** – Enter either a New Count or Percent. The corresponding field will update automatically to determine the size of the control group.
 - **By Audience Group** – Enter either a Control Group count or percentage for each split created earlier. The corresponding field will update automatically.
28. When finished entering any Control Groups for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Export Channels** tab.
 29. Enter the following information for the **Export Channels** tab. The options include:

Figure 6-47 Export Channels Tab

Export Channels

Audience Name	Mail	Email/Batch Exporter	Phone	Clienteling	Clienteling Details
---------------	------	----------------------	-------	-------------	---------------------

Loyalty_1 80 Customer(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Assign Tasks To	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Location	<input type="radio"/> Associate
Filter <input type="checkbox"/>							

Loyalty_2 80 Customer(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>			
-----------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	--	--	--

Batch Exporter

Export Filename	Prefix	Static Name	Suffix
-----------------	--------	-------------	--------

Audience Export filename	yyyymmdd_HHmss	_PromotionTargetsSync	None
Filename {yyyymmdd_HHmss}_PromotionTargetsSync			
Offers Export filename	yyyymmdd_HHmss	_PromotionDealsSync	None
Filename {yyyymmdd_HHmss}_PromotionDealsSync			
Offers and Promo-Offers Attributes Export filename	yyyymmdd_HHmss	_PromotionDealsAttributesSy	None
Filename {yyyymmdd_HHmss}_PromotionDealsAttributesSync			
Promotion Export filename	yyyymmdd_HHmss	_PromotionSync	None
Filename {yyyymmdd_HHmss}_PromotionSync			

Next >

Mail - Determines whether the Customers in the Split/Control Group will be contacted by Mail.

Email / Batch Exporter - Determines whether the Customers in the Split/Control Group will be contacted by Email.

Note:

The system configuration setting *SupportedBatchExporters* determines if the Batch Exporter section is displayed.

- Export Filename – Name of the file.
- Prefix – Indicates the format of the datetime stamp used as a prefix the filename. Optional. Possible settings are yyyymmdd_HHmss, yyyy-MMdd_HHmss, or none.
- Static Name – The identifying filename.

- **Suffix** – Indicates the format of the datetime stamp used as a suffix the filename. Optional. Possible settings are yyyyMMdd_HHmms, yyyy-MMdd_HHmms, or none.
- **Filename** – Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any.

Phone - Determines whether the Customers are contacted by phone.

Clienteling – When the Clienteling switch is turned on, tasks will be created based on the assigned associates or locations for the defined target audience when the promotion is generated.

Figure 6-48 Clienteling Details

The screenshot shows the 'Export Channels' configuration interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Audience Name', 'Mail', 'Email/Batch Exporter', 'Phone', 'Clienteling', and 'Clienteling Details'. Below these are two audience sections: 'Loyalty_1' and 'Loyalty_2'. The 'Loyalty_2' section is active and shows the following settings:

- Assign Tasks To:** Radio buttons for 'Location' (selected) and 'Associate'.
- Filter:** A checked checkbox.
- Max Count Per Location:** An empty text input field with a 'Required' label.
- Method:** A dropdown menu currently showing 'Random', with a list of other options: 'Top - Recent Purchase', 'Top - LT Sales', and 'Top - Numeric Attribute'.

Below the audience sections, there is a 'Batch Exporter' section with fields for 'Export Filename', 'Prefix', and 'Static Name'. The text below these fields reads: 'No Batch Exports (based on current Email Channel selections)'. At the bottom right, there is a 'Next >' button.


Assign Tasks to:

- **Location Channel** – Tasks are assigned to a Location.
- **Associate Channel** – Tasks are assigned to an associate in a location.

The following fields are enabled if the Filter option is selected:

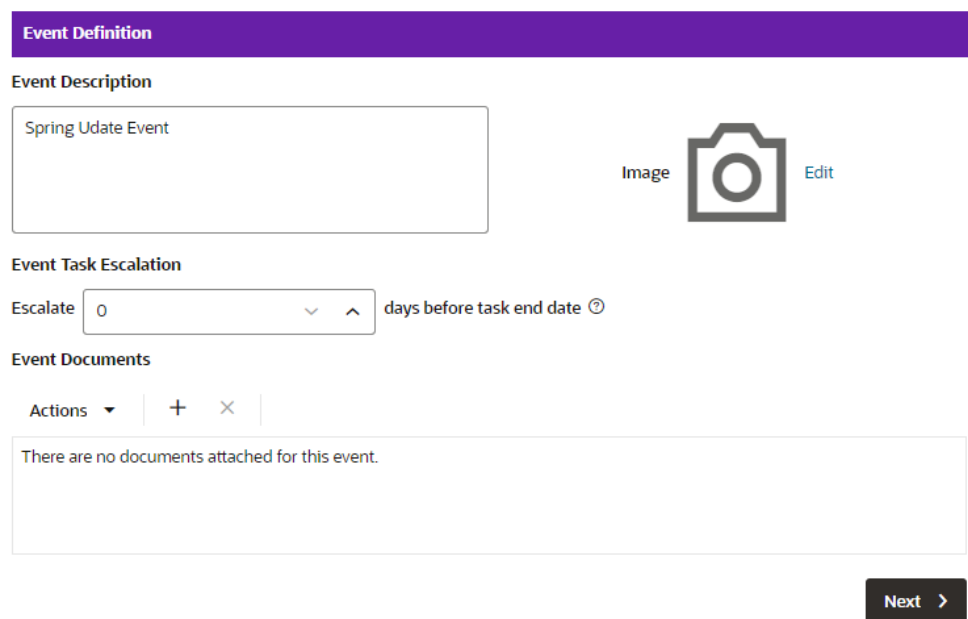
- **Max Count Per <type>** - Determines the maximum number of target Customers that will be contacted through the channel.
- **Method** - Method used to select the Customers contacted. Options include:
 - **Random** - Select Customers Randomly (Default).
 - **Top - Recent Purchase** - Filter the Customers based on the most recent purchases.

- **Top - LT Sales** - Filter the Customers based on the largest amount purchased over the lifetime of their account.
 - **Top - Numeric Attribute** - Filter the Customers based on the highest attribute value for a selected numeric attribute. If this option is selected, an additional Channel Filter option, Attribute, displays. Attribute is the numeric attribute used to determine the customers contacted
30. When finished entering any Export Channels for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Event Definition** tab.
31. Enter the following information on the Event Definition tab.

 **Note:**

The Event Definition Tab displays only when the Promotion uses the Clienteling Channel.

Figure 6-49 Event Definitions Tab



Enter a **description** of the Event in the Event Description field (required).

Select the **Edit** option to add an image to the Event.

- a. Perform one of the following actions:

Click **Drop a new image here or click to upload** to add the image and continue to Step 31.b.

Enter a **URL** in **Or Via URL** and click **Upload** and continue to Step 31.b.

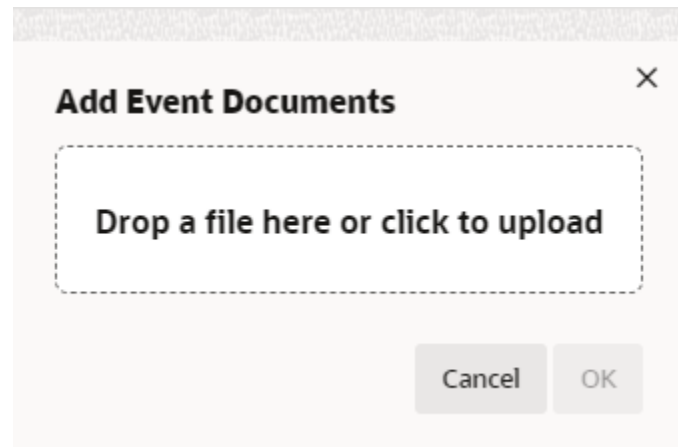
Click **Remove Image** to remove the image and continue to Step 31.b.

- b. Click **Done** to save the changes and close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving any changes.

Event Task Escalation – This option will flag an Event Task for the promotion as high priority on the Day Planner Task panel based on the number days before the end date of the promotion event task.

Event Documents – Click the Action Menu, and click Add, or click the Add icon (+) to open the Add Event Documents window.

Figure 6-50 Add Event Documents



- Use the **Drop a file here or click to upload area** to add an event document.
 - Click **OK** to save the changes and close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving any changes.
32. When finished entering any Event Definitions for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Budget** tab.
33. Enter the following information on the **Budget** tab.

Figure 6-51 Budget Tab

Budget

Promotion Costs

Description	Budget Amount	Actual Amount
	\$0.00	\$0.00

Add

Audience Group Name	Channel	Quantity	Budget Fixed	Budget CPM	Budget Total	Actual Fixed	Actual CPM	Actual Total
Loyalty_1	Clienteling	80	<input type="text" value="500"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	508	<input type="text" value="20"/>	<input type="text" value="110"/>	28.8
					\$508.00			\$28.80

Next >

- a. Click **Add** to enter the Promotion Costs. Enter values in any field is optional.
- b. Enter a **Description** of the cost item.
- c. Enter the **budgeted amount** for the Promotion in the Budget Amount field.
- d. Enter the **actual amount** for the Promotion in the Actual Amount field.
- e. Click **Add** if you wish to enter another budget line for the promotion, then follow **steps a-d** to complete the fields.

If Export Channels were selected for the audience group, the Audience Groups Costs section appears. Entering values in any field is optional.

Figure 6-52 Audience Group Costs

Audience Group Name	Channel	Quantity	Budget Fixed	Budget CPM	Budget Total	Actual Fixed	Actual CPM	Actual Total
Loyalty_1	Clienteling	80	<input type="text" value="500"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	508	<input type="text" value="20"/>	<input type="text" value="110"/>	28.8
Loyalty_2	Email	80	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	0	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	0
					\$508.00			\$28.80

- f. In the Budget-Fixed field, enter the **fixed cost budgeted** for the audience.
- g. In the Budget-CPM field, enter the **cost budgeted** for the Channel for each 1,000 Customers.
- h. In the Actual-Fixed field, enter the **actual fixed cost** of the Channel.
- i. In the Actual-CPM field, enter the **actual cost** of the Channel for each 1,000 Customers.

- j. Repeat **steps f-i** for each Target Channel in the Promotion.
- 34. When finished entering any Budget Costs for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Save Options** tab.
- 35. Enter the following information in the **Save Options** tab. You can enter more than one choice.

Figure 6-53 Options After Save Tab

Options After Save

After saving this promotion, also perform the following actions:

- Generate**
Start a job to generate promotion audience data.
- Approve**
Set this promotion's status to Approved.
- Export**
Start a job to create files for exporting this promotion to an external/POS/batch system.
- Apply Offers Immediately**
Indicate offers should be applied immediately to downstream systems.

This award promotion requires the Dynamic and Recurring Promotions batch job to be scheduled. Please contact your System Administrator.

Next >

- **Generate** – Start a job to generate promotion audience data.
- **Approve** – Set this promotion's status to Approved.
- **Export** – Start a job to create files for exporting this promotion to an external/POS/ batch system. This option automatically approves the Promotion.
- **Apply Offers Immediately** – Indicates that offers should be applied immediately to downstream systems. This option is configurable.
- **Dynamic Promotion Options** – Select one of the two export options for processing when using the Dynamic selection method on the Audience tab.

 **Note:**

Depending on the type of promotion that you created, different Options After Save are available.

- 36. When finished entering any Save Options for the Promotion, click **Next**.

- If the Promotion Type is Coupon go to Step 37 to continue to the Coupon Type Promotion Review tab.
 - If the Promotion Type is Product, go to Step 7 to continue in the [Creating a Product Promotion](#) Review tab.
 - If the Promotion Type is Message, go to Step 6 to continue in the [Creating a Message Promotion](#) Review tab.
 - If the Promotion Type is Award, go to Step 8 to continue in the [Creating an Award Promotion](#) Review tab.
37. The **Review** tab displays the key elements in the Promotion Setup.

Figure 6-54 Review Tab

The screenshot displays the 'Review' tab for a promotion setup. At the top, a purple header contains the word 'Review'. Below this, a summary bar shows: Promotion Name (Spring Sale), Description (Sale for Spring), Campaign Name (Spring Sale), and Timeframe (3/3/23 12:00 AM - 3/10/23 11:59 PM). A 'Coupon' button is visible on the right.

The main content area is divided into four sections:

- 550 Locations:** Shows 'Included' as 'All Locations Defined' and 'Excluded' as 'No Excluded Locations Defined'.
- 1 Coupon Codes:** Details for Offer Name CPU JAN 2022 (ID 505), Buy X Get X, Offer Group 505, and Coupon Code 00277. It also shows Media Description, Estimated Distribution (0), and Serialized Coupons (No).
- 1 Offers:** Lists Offer Name CPU JAN 2022 (ID 505) and Buy X Get X, with an Intended Use of 'Any'.
- 6,858 Customers in Audience:** Shows Audience Exclusive, Selection Method Dynamic, Update Method, and that new audience members will be added. It lists 'Included' as 'Loyalty' for 6,858 Customers. Below this, a 'Batch Exporter' section provides several filename templates for Audience, Offers, and Promo-Offers exports.

At the bottom right, there are navigation buttons: 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

Figure 6-55 Review Tab - Loyalty Bounceback

Review

Promotion Name	Description	Campaign Name	Timeframe
Spring Sale	Sale for Spring	Spring Sale	3/3/23 12:00 AM - 3/10/23 11:59 PM

550 Locations

Included
All Locations Defined

Excluded
No Excluded Locations Defined

1 Offers

- Offer Name CPU JAN 2022 (ID 505)
- Buy X Get X

Intended Use: Any

0 Loyalty Program Levels

Show member counts:

1 Coupon Codes

Offer Name CPU JAN 2022 (ID 505)

Buy X Get X Offer Group 505

Coupon Code 00277

Media Description: -
Estimated Distrib...: 0
Serialized Coupons: No

6,858 Customers in Audience

Audience Exclusion: Selection Method: Dynamic

Update Method: New audience members will be added

Included: Loyalty (6,858 Customers)

Batch Exporter

Audience Export filename: {yyyyMMdd_HH:mm:ss}_PromotionTargetsSync
Offers Export filename: {yyyyMMdd_HH:mm:ss}_PromotionDealsSync
Offers and Promo-Offers Attributes Export filename: {yyyyMMdd_HH:mm:ss}_PromotionDealsAttributesSync
Promotion Export filename: {yyyyMMdd_HH:mm:ss}_PromotionSync

0 Loyalty Members Eligible for Bounceback

Event

Event Description: Sale for Spring

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

38. Click **OK** to save the Promotion, or click **Cancel** to close the promotion without saving. Click **Previous** or any **Tab** to return to any point of the Create Promotion process.

Working with Coupon Promotions

Creating Additional Coupons

Users have the ability to create additional coupons for a Coupon Promotion with Serialized Coupons, so that you are not limited to only the coupons generated at the time of saving the promotion. To create an additional coupon do the following steps:

1. View a Coupon Promotion (for more information on how to view a promotion see [Viewing a Promotion](#)).
2. Click the **Overflow Menu**.
3. Click **Create Coupons**.

Note:

Some Coupon Promotions cannot be edited once saved.

Figure 6-56 Create Coupons

Create Coupons for Reg-Coupon Serialization (ID 236)

✕

🔔 Promotion runs from 8/30/22 to 4/29/26

Offer Name	Offer Type	Offer Group	
Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 30)	Fixed Quantity/Price	30	

Coupon Prefix	Media Description	Current Count	Additional Coupons
00175		44	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="0"/>

Offer Name	Offer Type	Offer Group	
Reg- Fixed Price/Qty (ID 577)	Fixed Quantity/Price	577	

Coupon Prefix	Media Description	Current Count	Additional Coupons
00174		64	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="0"/>

Cancel
Create Coupons

4. Enter the **number** of Additional Coupons.
5. Click **Create Coupons** to create additional coupons, or click **Cancel** to return to the View Promotion window without saving any changes.

Creating a Product Promotion

There are a few choices available to start the process of creating a promotion. The **Create Promotion** button is available in both the Promotion Home window as well as the Promotion Search window.



Note:

You will need the Promotion Home role to access the Promotion Home window.

Figure 6-57 Promotion Search

Promotion Search

Search

Promotion ID

Search Results

Enter search parameters in the sidebar to search for Promotions.

Create Promotion

⋮

1. Click **Create Promotion**, which opens up the Promotion wizard to the Information tab.

Figure 6-58 Information Tab - Product

Create Promotion ✕

1 Information
2 Franchisees
3 Locations
4 Offers
5 Attributes
6 Audience
7 Budget
8 Save Options
9 Review

Promotion Definition

Promotion Type

- **Coupon**
 Utilizes embedded coupons placed in various media, such as magazines or newspapers
 Coupon Serialization
- **Product**
 Receive monetary savings in exchange for the purchase of specific merchandise ✓
- **Message**
 Send out communications not specifically associated with any offers
- **Award**
 Award entitlement coupons or e-awards
- **Points for Purchase**
 Members earn points as a reward for a purchase activity
- **Points for Marketing Engagements**
 Members earn points for completing activities outside of a purchase, such as responding to surveys or social sharing.
- **Points**
 Award a defined number of points to loyalty accounts based on selected loyalty programs and levels

Campaign

- Auto-create campaign
- Associate this promotion with an existing campaign
- Create a new campaign for this promotion

Promotion Name and Date Range

Name Required

Description Required

Start Date Required

Start Time

End Date Required

End Time

Options

Loyalty Bounceback

Next >

Promotion Information

Information
No information entered

Franchisees
All Franchisees defined

Locations
All Locations Defined

Offers
No offers defined

Attributes
No promotion attributes defined
No promo-offer attributes defined

Audience
No targeted audience defined

Budget
No budget details defined

Save Options
No save options to display

Previous
Next
Cancel
OK

2. Select the **Promotion Type**: Product

Note:

Contact your administrator if you do not see the Promotion Types needed for your promotion.

3. Select **one** of the choices for the Campaign.

- **Auto-create Campaign** – The campaign is automatically created and will use the same name and description from the promotion name and description.
- **Associate this promotion with an existing campaign** – Uses existing campaigns in the system.
 - Click the **list arrow** and select an existing campaign.

 **Note:**

The Start Date and End Date display underneath the Existing Campaign list.

- **Create a new campaign for this promotion** – A new campaign will be created with this promotion being the first added.
4. Enter the following information:
 - Enter a **Campaign Name** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Description** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Name**.
 - Enter a **Description**.
 - Select a **Start Date**.
 - Select a **Start Time**.
 - Select an **End Date**.
 - Select an **End Time**.
 5. **Optional** - Slide the **Loyalty Bounceback** toggle to ON to activate.

Figure 6-59 Loyalty Bounceback - Activated

Options

Loyalty Bounceback

Bounceback Type

Next >

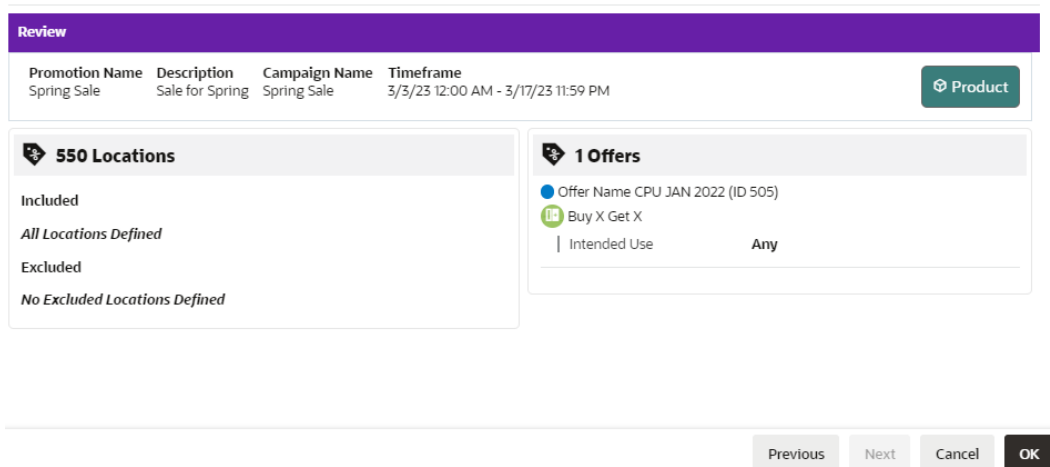
- Select a **Bounceback Type**.
 - Bonus Points
 - Entitlements

 **Note:**

Loyalty Bounceback configuration occurs in **Step 12**, the **Offers** tab in [Creating a Coupon Promotion](#).

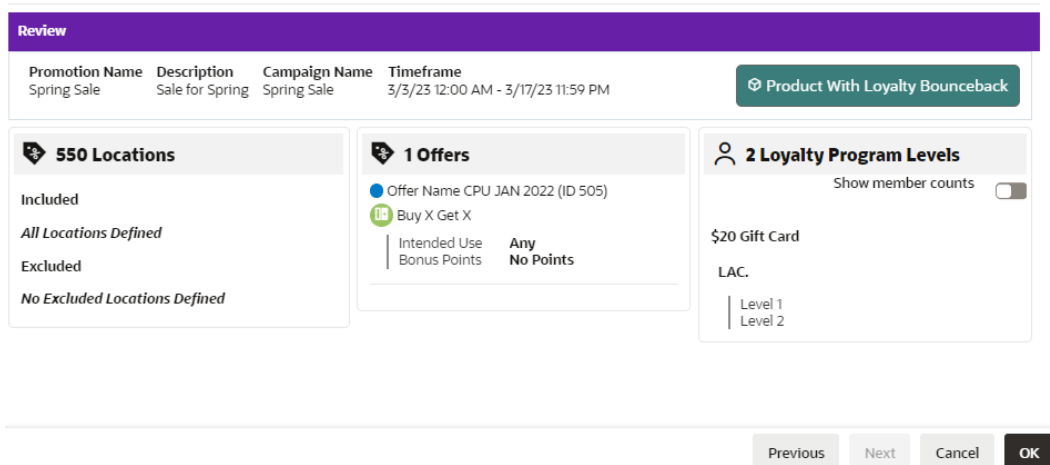
- When finished entering the Campaign and Promotion information, click **Next** to continue to the [Figure 6-14](#), see step 8 in [Creating a Coupon Promotion](#)
- The **Review** tab displays the key elements in the Promotion Setup.

Figure 6-60 Review Tab



The screenshot shows the 'Review' tab of a promotion setup. At the top, a purple header contains the word 'Review'. Below it, a table lists the promotion details: Promotion Name (Spring Sale), Description (Sale for Spring), Campaign Name (Spring Sale), and Timeframe (3/3/23 12:00 AM - 3/17/23 11:59 PM). A 'Product' button is visible on the right. The main content area is divided into two sections: '550 Locations' and '1 Offers'. The '550 Locations' section shows 'Included' as 'All Locations Defined' and 'Excluded' as 'No Excluded Locations Defined'. The '1 Offers' section shows one offer: 'Offer Name CPU JAN 2022 (ID 505)' with 'Buy X Get X' and 'Intended Use Any'. At the bottom right, there are buttons for 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

Figure 6-61 Review Tab - Loyalty Bounceback



The screenshot shows the 'Review' tab of a promotion setup with Loyalty Bounceback. The header and promotion details table are identical to Figure 6-60, but the button is labeled 'Product With Loyalty Bounceback'. The '550 Locations' section is the same. The '1 Offers' section is the same. A new section, '2 Loyalty Program Levels', is added on the right. It includes a 'Show member counts' toggle (which is turned off), '\$20 Gift Card', and 'LAC.' with 'Level 1' and 'Level 2' listed below. At the bottom right, there are buttons for 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

- Click **OK** to save the Promotion, or click **Cancel** to close the promotion without saving. Click **Previous** or any **Tab** to return to any point of the Create Promotion process.

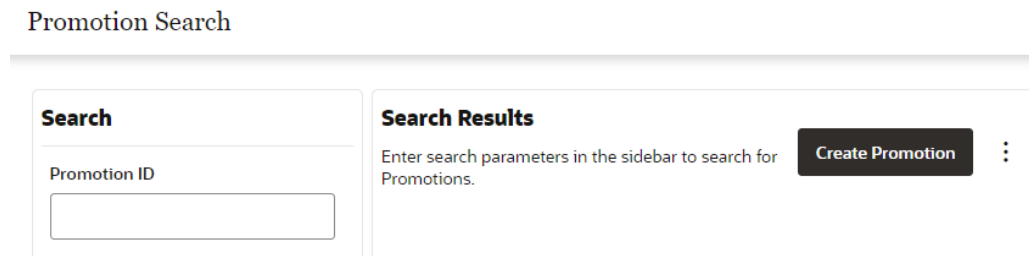
Creating a Message Promotion

There are a few choices available to start the process of creating a promotion. The **Create Promotion** button is available in both the Promotion Home window as well as the Promotion Search window.

Note:

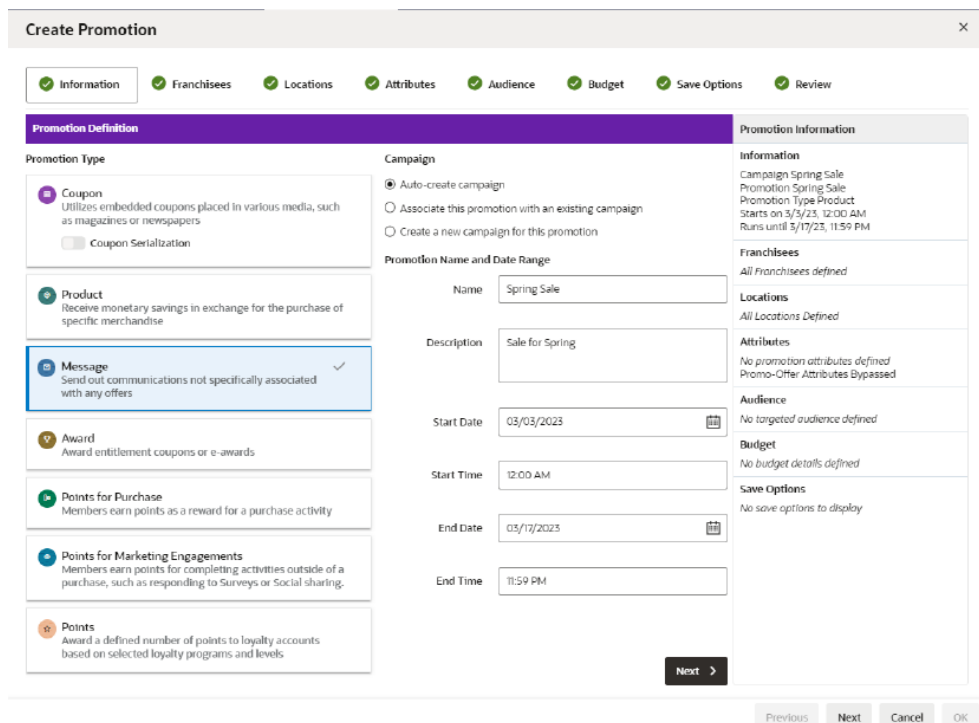
You will need the Promotion Home role to access the Promotion Home window.

Figure 6-62 Promotion Search



1. Click **Create Promotion**, which opens up the Promotion wizard to the Information tab.

Figure 6-63 Information Tab - Message



2. Select the **Promotion Type**: Message

 **Note:**

Contact your administrator if you do not see the Promotion Types needed for your promotion.

3. Select **one** of the choices for the Campaign.

- **Auto-create Campaign** – The campaign is automatically created and will use the same name and description from the promotion name and description.
- **Associate this promotion with an existing campaign** – Uses existing campaigns in the system.
 - Click the **list arrow** and select an existing campaign.

 **Note:**

The Start Date and End Date display underneath the Existing Campaign list.

- **Create a new campaign for this promotion** – A new campaign will be created with this promotion being the first added.

4. Enter the following information:

- Enter a **Campaign Name** (for new Campaigns only).
- Enter a **Description** (for new Campaigns only).
- Enter a **Name**.
- Enter a **Description**.
- Select a **Start Date**.
- Select a **Start Time**.
- Select an **End Date**.
- Select an **End Time**.

5. When finished entering the Campaign and Promotion information, click **Next** to continue to the [Figure 6-14](#), see step 8 in [Creating a Coupon Promotion](#)

6. The **Review** tab displays the key elements in the Promotion Setup.

Figure 6-64 Review Tab

Promotion Name	Description	Campaign Name	Timeframe
Spring Sale	Sale for Spring	Spring Sale	3/3/23 12:00 AM - 3/17/23 11:59 PM

Message

550 Locations	
Included	All Locations Defined
Excluded	No Excluded Locations Defined

6,858 Customers in Audience	
Audience	Selection Method
Exclusive	Static
Included	
Loyalty	6,858 Customers

Previous Next Cancel OK

7. Click **OK** to save the Promotion, or click **Cancel** to close the promotion without saving. Click **Previous** or any **Tab** to return to any point of the Create Promotion process.

Creating an Award Promotion

There are a few choices available to start the process of creating a promotion. The **Create Promotion** button is available in both the Promotion Home window as well as the Promotion Search window.



Note:

You will need the Promotion Home role to access the Promotion Home window.

Figure 6-65 Promotion Search

Promotion Search

Search	Search Results
Promotion ID <input type="text"/>	Enter search parameters in the sidebar to search for Promotions. <input type="text"/> Create Promotion

1. Click **Create Promotion**, which opens up the Promotion wizard to the Information tab.

Figure 6-66 Information Tab - Award

The screenshot shows the 'Create Promotion' window with the 'Information' tab selected. The 'Promotion Definition' section is divided into three main areas: 'Promotion Type', 'Campaign', and 'Promotion Name and Date Range'. In the 'Promotion Type' section, 'Award' is selected. In the 'Campaign' section, 'Auto-create campaign' is selected. The 'Promotion Name and Date Range' section contains several input fields: Name (Spring Sale), Description (Sale for Spring), Start Date (03/03/2023), Start Time (12:00 AM), End Date (03/17/2023), and End Time (11:59 PM). On the right, the 'Promotion Information' sidebar displays summary details for the selected promotion.

2. Select the **Promotion Type: Award**

Note:

Contact your administrator if you do not see the Promotion Types needed for your promotion.

3. Select **one** of the choices for the Campaign.

- **Auto-create Campaign** – The campaign is automatically created and will use the same name and description from the promotion name and description.
- **Associate this promotion with an existing campaign** – Uses existing campaigns in the system.
 - Click the **list arrow** and select an existing campaign.

Note:

The Start Date and End Date display underneath the Existing Campaign list.

- **Create a new campaign for this promotion** – A new campaign will be created with this promotion being the first added.

4. Enter the following information:

- Enter a **Campaign Name** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Description** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Name**.
 - Enter a **Description**.
 - Select a **Start Date**.
 - Select a **Start Time**.
 - Select an **End Date**.
 - Select an **End Time**.
5. When finished entering the Campaign and Promotion information, click **Next** to continue to the [Figure 6-14](#), see step 8 in [Creating a Coupon Promotion](#)
 6. To assign awards for the Awards tab, do the following:

Award promotions are based on award card definitions. Awards (EAwards or Entitlement Offer awards) are issued when the Promotion is generated. If the Promotion is defined as Issue to registered cards only, the awards will be created for cards within the selected program that are associated to a customer when the promotion is generated. This type of promotion is considered exclusively targeted to the customers with those cards. The targeting step will be available to define filters and/or control groups if desired.

A segment can be added to filter the number of awards created. For example, an Award Program has 1,000 customers associated to cards, but this Promotion is only for those customers that live in Ohio. A segment can be defined for Ohio customers within that card program and added to the Promotion as Included Targets. In this case, only the customers that live in Ohio are included. An alternative is to add an Excluded Target segment, which could exclude all customers that live in New York. The promotion target can also be defined as Dynamic Targeting. If Dynamic Targeting is selected, any new customers that are associated to cards are dynamically added to the promotion target, and awards are issued when the Dynamic and Recurring Promotion job is run.

If the promotion is defined to Issue Coupons Dynamically, the awards are created for activated cards within the selected program when the promotion is generated. The card does not need to be associated to a customer. This type of promotion is considered non targeted, since a customer association is not required. The promotion targeting step is skipped. This type of promotion is automatically considered a Dynamic and Recurring Promotion. For a Dynamic and Recurring Promotion, any new cards within the selected program that are activated will have an award issued when the Dynamic and Recurring Promotion job runs.

Figure 6-67 Select Award Tab

Select Award

Selected Program

+ Select Program

Options

Issue to registered cards only

Issue coupons dynamically

Award Validity Period

Fixed ✓

From 03/03, To 03/23,

Relative

Validity Period Days ▾

Next >

Click **+Select Program**, which retrieves all available Award Programs for selection.

Figure 6-68 Select Award Program

Program Name	Members	Card
AR-Award-Prog	4	AR-Card
ARTSANA SPA Program	0	Bug-34695496
Award	0	Active Cards No Customers
Award - test Late Account	59	TestingNewCard116
Award Automation Test Program	59	TestingNewCard116
Award Card	0	Automation Card

- a. If the list is too long, you may enter some or all of the **Program Name** or **Card Name** in the Search for Award field to refine the results.
- b. Click **Search**.
- c. Click the **row** of the desired Award Program.

 **Note:**

Only one program can be selected at a time.

- d. Click **OK**.

 **Note:**

Once the Program details display, if you wish to change the Award Program, you can click **Change**, which re-opens the Select Award Program window where you can select a different program for your promotion.

Certificate Options

Do the following to select a Certificate Type:

Figure 6-69 Award Program Certificate Options

The screenshot shows the 'Select Award' interface. At the top is a purple header with the text 'Select Award'. Below it is the 'Selected Program' section, which includes a blue circular icon with a document symbol, the program name 'Award-Promotion (KEEP)', the number of members '1,999,998', and the card type 'Loyalty-Promotion (KEEP)'. A 'Change' button is located to the right of the program details. Below the program details is a section for selecting the certificate type, with radio buttons for 'E-Award' (selected) and 'Entitlement'. To the right of these options is a 'Recurring Awards' toggle switch, which is currently turned off. Below the certificate type selection are two input fields: 'Coupon Prefix' and 'Amount (USD)'. Both fields are currently empty and have a 'Required' label below them. At the bottom of this section is an 'Apply to Similar Programs' toggle switch, which is also turned off.

Figure 6-70 Award Program Certificate Options - E-Award

This screenshot is identical to Figure 6-69, but with the 'Coupon Prefix' field containing the value '12201961' and the 'Amount (USD)' field containing the value '5'. The 'E-Award' radio button remains selected, and the 'Recurring Awards' toggle is still off.


Select the **Certificate Type**: E-Award

- a. Enter a **Coupon Prefix**. The value must be 10 or fewer characters.
- b. Enter the **Amount** for the award certificate.

Figure 6-71 Award Program Certificate Options - Entitlement

Select Award

Selected Program

	Program Name	Members	Card	
	Award-Promotion (KEEP)	1,999,998	Loyalty-Promotion (KEEP)	Change

E-Award
 Entitlement
Recurring Awards

Offer

LS-Entitlement Deal 1
▼

Coupon Prefix

12201961

Discount

Amount Off \$10.99

Apply to Similar Programs

Select the Certificate Type: **Entitlement**.

- a. Click inside the **Offer** field to see the list of Entitlement Offers associated to the Award Program. If there is more than one, you can choose which one to select. The Offer you choose will then display the value of the discount associated with that Offer (in the Discount field).
- b. Enter a **Coupon Prefix**. The value must be 10 or fewer characters.
- c. Discount - this field will automatically populate with the discount for the Offer.

Options

Figure 6-72 Select Award Certificate Options

Options

Issue to registered cards only

Issue coupons dynamically

Award Validity Period

Fixed ✓

From: 03/03/2023

To: 03/23/2023

Relative

Validity Period: Days

- Select **Issue to registered cards only** if the promotion should be restricted to cards that are registered to customers. If this option is not selected, coupons will be issued to all active accounts for the selected Award Program, and the option to target the promotion will not be available.
- Select **Issue coupons dynamically** to have the option to issue coupons dynamically. If this option is selected, coupons will be issued to all accounts that are activated when the program is generated.

Award Validity Period - Only one of the options will be available for the Award certificate.

- **Fixed** – The award certificate is valid between specific dates.
 - Start Date – The date on which the award certificate is **first valid**.
 - End Date – The **last date** on which the award certificate is valid.
- **Relative** – The award certificate is valid for a period of time after it is issued.
 - Validity Period – Period during which the award certificate is valid. The type of period is determined by the Period Type configuration.
 - Period Type – Units of time used to determine the validity period. Currently, this list can only be set to Days.
- **Apply to Similar Programs** is available when there is another program type on the same card with the same setup.

Figure 6-73 Apply to Similar Programs

- To Filter the list, enter some or all of the Program Name or Card Name in the Search field and click **Search**.
- Select **one or more** checkboxes for the rows of the desired Award Programs you wish to add. Click the checkbox next to **Program Name** to select all programs.
- Click **OK**.

Recurring Awards

Recurring Awards provide the user the ability to issue an award on a recurring basis during the promotion period. This feature will allow the user to define how often the award will be issued (Daily, Weekly or Monthly) and how many awards in total can be issued for the duration of the promotion. The award can be either an E-Award or an Entitlement offer and can be set to expire after defined days, weeks or months after the award is issued.

Note:

Recurring Awards feature appears when configured by your Administrator.

Figure 6-74 Recurring Awards

The screenshot shows a configuration form for recurring awards. It is divided into two main sections: 'Options' and 'Recurring Award Options'.
Under 'Options', there are two unchecked checkboxes: 'Issue to registered cards only' and 'Issue coupons dynamically'.
Under 'Recurring Award Options', there are four fields:
1. 'Frequency Period': A dropdown menu with 'Monthly' selected.
2. 'Maximum Issues': A numeric input field with up and down arrows, currently empty. A 'Required' label is positioned below the field.
3. 'Issue Day of Month': A dropdown menu with '1st' selected.
4. 'Expire After': A numeric input field with up and down arrows, currently empty, followed by a unit dropdown menu with 'Months' selected. A 'Required' label is positioned below the numeric field.
At the bottom right of the form is a black button with the text 'Next >'.

- Select the **Frequency Period**: Daily, Weekly, or Monthly
 - Enter the number of **Maximum Issues**: The number of times the award can be issued
 - Select the **Issue Day of Month**
 - Enter the **Expire After** increment and select the frequency period
7. When finished entering Awards for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to [Figure 6-31](#), step 14 in [Creating a Coupon Promotion](#).
 8. The **Review** tab displays the key elements in the Promotion Setup.

Figure 6-75 Review Tab

Promotion Name	Description	Campaign Name	Timeframe
Spring Award	Awards for Spring	Spring Award	3/3/23 12:00 AM - 3/23/23 11:59 PM

Budget	
Promotion Costs	
Budget Amount	\$200.00
Actual Amount	\$50.00

Award Program	
Valid from	3/3/23 to 3/24/23
Issue to all cards in the award program	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bug	34695496
SPA Program	
Certificate Type	E-Award
Coupon Prefix	12201961
Amount (USD)	\$5.00

9. Click **OK** to save the Promotion, or click **Cancel** to close the promotion without saving. Click **Previous** or any **Tab** to return to any point of the Create Promotion process.

Creating a Points for Purchase Promotion

There are a few choices available to start the process of creating a promotion. The **Create Promotion** button is available in both the Promotion Home window as well as the Promotion Search window.



Note:

You will need the Promotion Home role to access the Promotion Home window.

1. Click **Create Promotion**, which opens up the Promotion wizard to the Information tab.

Figure 6-76 Information Tab - Points for Purchase

The screenshot shows the 'Create Promotion' window with the 'Information' tab selected. The 'Promotion Definition' section is divided into three main areas:

- Promotion Type:** Includes options for Coupon, Product, Message, Award, **Points for Purchase** (selected), Points for Marketing Engagements, and Points.
- Campaign:** Includes options for Auto-create campaign (selected), Associate this promotion with an existing campaign, and Create a new campaign for this promotion.
- Promotion Name and Date Range:** Includes fields for Name (Spring Sale), Description (Sale for Spring), Start Date (03/05/2023), Start Time (12:00 AM), End Date (03/17/2023), and End Time (11:59 PM).

The 'Promotion Information' sidebar on the right provides a summary of the configuration:

- Information:** Campaign Spring Sale, Promotion Spring Sale, Promotion Type Product, Starts on 3/3/23, 12:00 AM, Runs until 3/17/23, 11:59 PM.
- Franchisees:** All Franchisees defined.
- Locations:** All Locations Defined.
- Programs:** 2 Program Level(s) Defined.
- Offers:** 0 Associated Offers.
- Attributes:** No promotion attributes defined.
- Audience:** No targeted audience defined.
- Budget:** No budget details defined.
- Save Options:** No save options to display.

2. Select the **Promotion Type: Points for Purchase**

Note:
Contact your administrator if you do not see the Promotion Types needed for your promotion

3. Select one of the choices for the Campaign.

- **Auto-create Campaign** – The campaign is automatically created and will use the same name and description from the promotion name and description.
- **Associate this promotion with an existing campaign** – Uses existing campaigns in the system.
 - Click the list arrow and select an **existing campaign**.

Note:
The Start Date and End Date display underneath the Existing Campaign list.

- **Create a new campaign for this promotion** – A new campaign is created with this promotion being the first added.

4. Enter the following information:

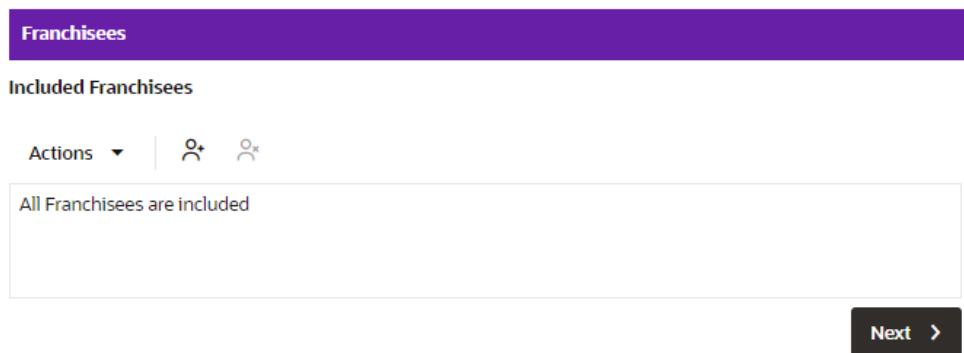
- Enter a **Campaign Name** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Description** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Name**.
 - Enter a **Description**.
 - Select a **Start Date**.
 - Select a **Start Time**.
 - Select an **End Date**.
 - Select an **End Time**.
5. When finished entering the Campaign and Promotion information, click **Next** to continue to the **Franchisees** tab.

 **Note:**

This tab will only display if the `EnableFranchiseSupport` configuration is enabled, and Franchisees have been created.

6. By default, all franchisees are assigned to the promotion. To make changes to those assignments, do the following:

Figure 6-77 Franchisees Tab



Assigning a Franchisee

- a. Click the **Actions Menu**, then, click **Assign**, or click the **Add (+)** icon. This opens the Add Franchisee window.

Figure 6-78 Assign Franchisee

Assign Franchisee [X]

Search for Franchisee

Search by Franchisee ID or Name or Description [X] Search

Search Results

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations
-----------------	------------------------	-----------

Unassign All

No Franchisees to display

Cancel OK


- b. In the Search for franchisee search box, enter part or all of the **Name**, **ID**, or **Description**, then click **Search**.

 **Note:**

You can also leave blank and click Search to return all Franchisees.

- c. To change the assignment from ALL (which is defaulted) click **Assign** on just the specific franchisees you wish to assign for this promotion. Only Franchisees associated with the user are displayed in the list.
- d. Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Figure 6-79 Confirmation Notification

 Assigned franchisee has been successfully updated

 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the franchisee has been assigned.

Deleting a Franchisee

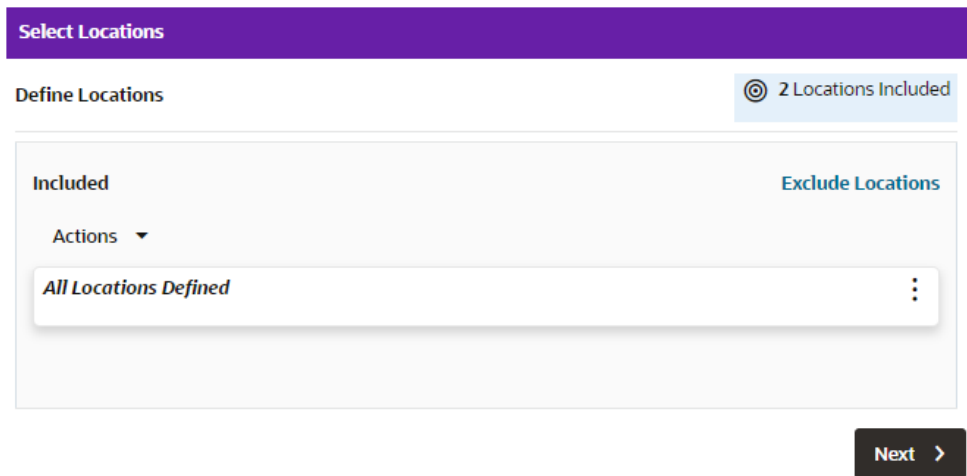
- a. In the included Franchisees window, highlight the desired **row**.
- b. Click the **Action Menu**, and click **Delete**, or click the **X** icon.

 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the franchisee has been deleted.

7. When finished entering the Franchisees information, click **Next** to continue to the **Locations** tab.
8. Enter the following for the **Locations** tab:

Figure 6-80 Locations Tab



Define Locations

 **Note:**

By default, **ALL** locations are added to the promotion. You can select the Overflow Menu to edit the list of locations to include.

- Included
 - a. If you wish to change the Locations assigned to this Promotion, click the **Overflow Menu**, then click **Edit**. This opens the Edit Location Rule window.

Specific Locations

 - a. Click the **Specific Location** option.

Figure 6-81 Edit Location Rule (Include) - Specific Locations

Edit Location Rule (Include)

Specific Locations Include By Attributes and Locations

2 Locations Selected

Search by Location ID or Name

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Location ID	Location Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	15801	15801-SouthPark-MN
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00001	Franchisee 1 Location

Note:

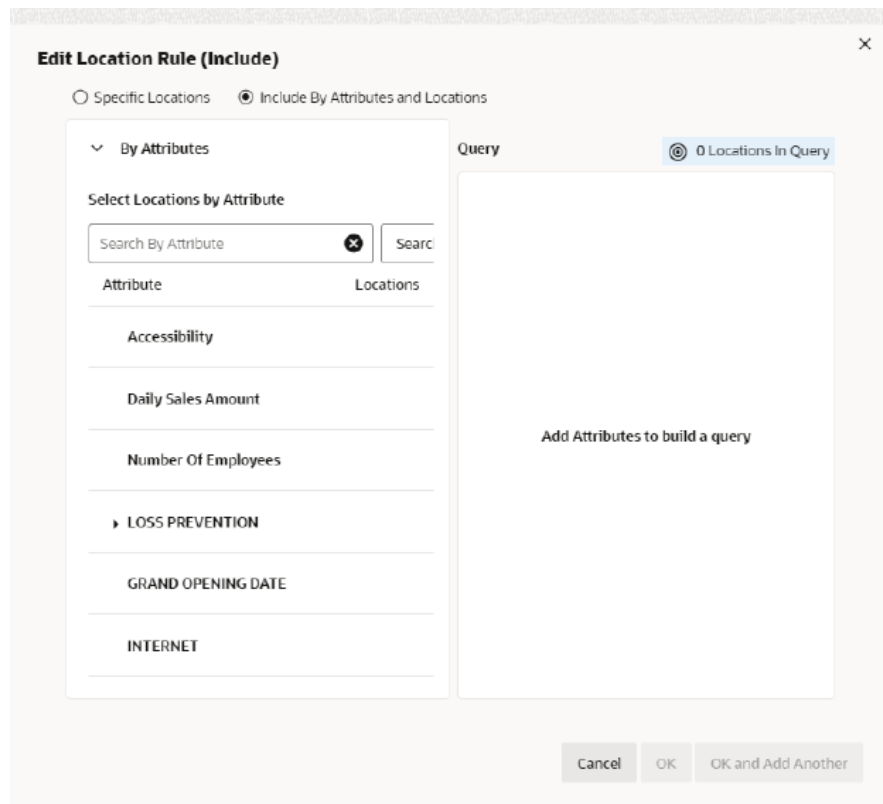
The Location ID check box at the top of the list enables you to deselect or select all locations. If you deselect all the locations, then you can scroll through the list or search for a specific location.

- b. Enter part or all of a **Location ID** or **Name**.
- c. Click **Search**.
- d. Click Add to select a location.
- e. Click **Add** for another location means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
- f. Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same search results and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add for another location**.
- g. Click **Ok** to close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Include by Attributes

- a. Click the **Include by Attributes and Locations** option.

Figure 6-82 Edit Location Rule (Include) - Include by Attributes and Locations

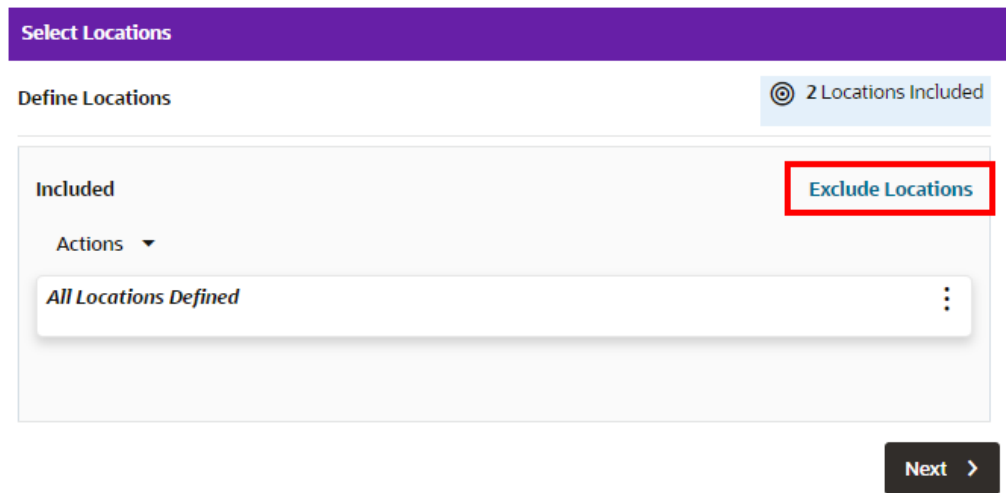


 **Note:**

A list of attributes enables you to add one more attributes in order to create a query to select only the locations that fit the requirements.

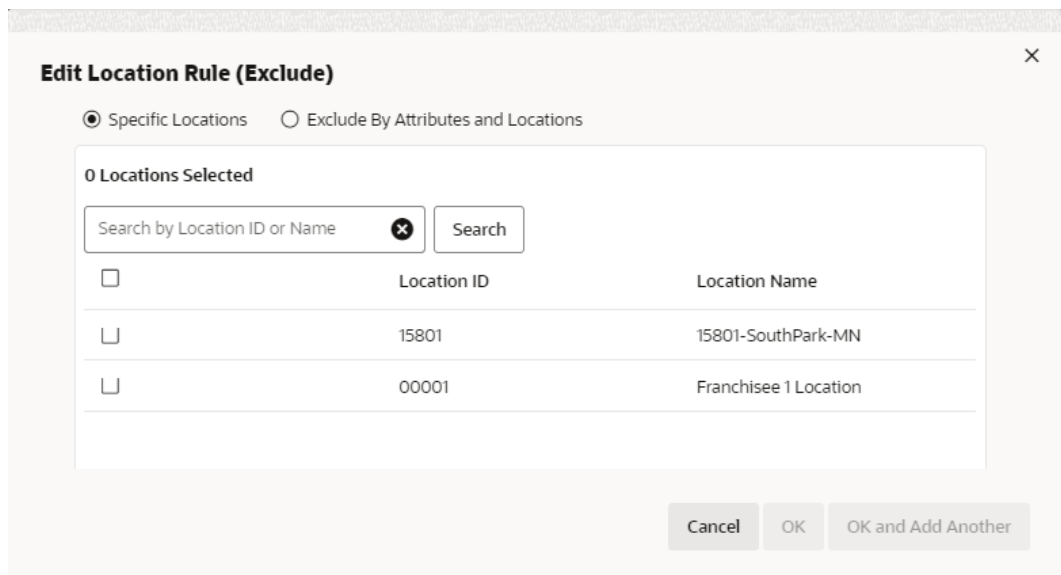
- b. Click **Add** to select an attribute. Some Location Attributes can be collapsed or expanded. They will default to collapsed to allow you to scroll thru the list easier and expand the attributes they you to add.
 - c. Click **Add** for another attribute means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
 - d. Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click the **Add** button for another attribute.
 - e. Click **OK** to close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
- Excluded Locations - This option allows you to select specific locations to exclude from the promotion.
 - a. Click the **Exclude Locations** link.

Figure 6-83 Select Locations



Specific Locations

Figure 6-84 Edit Location Rule (Exclude) - Specific Locations



- a. Click the **Specific Location** option.

Note:

The Location ID check box at the top of the list enables you to deselect or select all locations. If you deselect all the locations, then you can scroll through the list or search for a specific location.

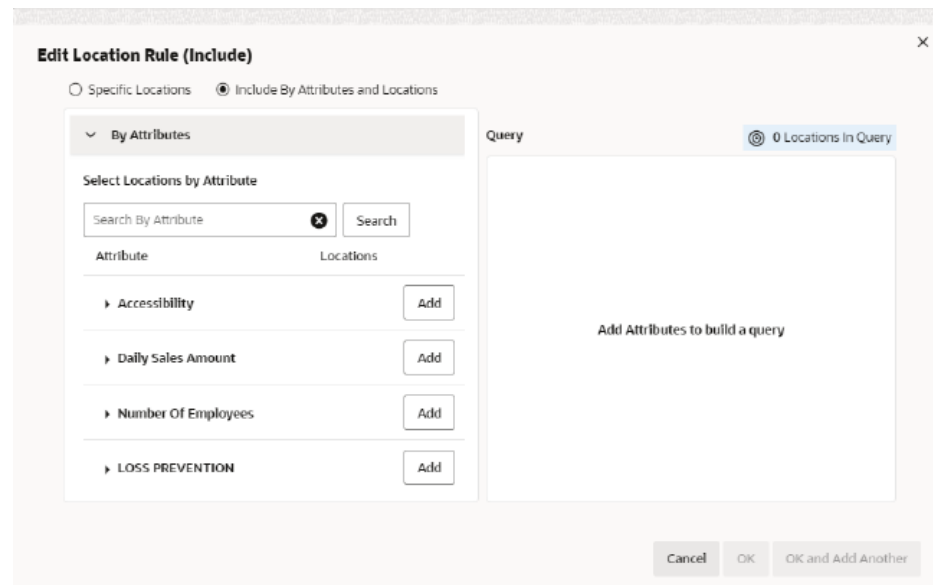
- b. Enter part or all of a **Location ID** or **Name**.

- c. Click **Search**.
- d. Click **Add** to select a location.
- e. Click **Add for another location** means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
- f. Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same search results and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add for another location**.
- g. Click **OK** to close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Exclude by Attributes

- a. Click the **Exclude by Attributes and Locations** option.

Figure 6-85 Edit Location Rule (Exclude) - Exclude By Attributes and Locations



- b. Click **Add** to select an attribute. Some Location Attributes can be collapsed or expanded. They will default to collapsed to allow you to scroll thru the list easier and expand the attributes they you to add.
 - c. Click **Add for another** attribute means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
 - d. Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add** for another attribute.
 - e. Click **OK** to close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
9. When finished entering Locations for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Programs** tab.

Figure 6-86 Programs Tab - Points for Purchase

Programs

Card: \$20 Gift Card (dropdown) Show member counts:

Select Program Levels on \$20 Gift Card

Filter by Program Name or Level Name or Level Description: Filter

Unselect All Displayed Levels

LAC:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Level Name	Members	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	Level 1		Level 1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Level 2		Level2

Promotion Information

Information
Campaign Spring Award
Promotion Spring Award
Promotion Type Points for Purchase
Starts on 3/3/23, 12:00 AM
Runs until 3/23/23, 11:59 PM

Franchisees
All Franchisees defined

Locations
All Locations Defined

Programs
No Programs Defined

Offers
0 Associated Offers

Attributes
No promotion attributes defined

Audience
No targeted audience defined

Next >

Previous Next Cancel OK

10. To begin the Programs tab, take the following actions:

a. Select a **Card**.

A list of cards display all active cards for the user to select from. If there is only one card to select from, the card appears by default and the list arrow is unavailable for selection.

Note:

The Select Program Levels section title will contain the name of the card selected.

b. In the Filter for **Select Programs Levels on** field, enter all or part of the **Program Name, Level Name, or Level Description** of the specific loyalty program you want to search for.

Figure 6-87 Filter Results

- c. Select one or more Loyalty Programs. The Deselect All Displayed Levels button clears all selections.
- 11. When finished selecting Loyalty Programs for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Offers** tab.
- 12. To begin the Offers tab, take the following actions:
 - There are two methods to add offers, either:
 - Select the **Quick Add** option to search for a known Offer ID.
 - Click **+Add Offers** for an Advanced Offer Search.

Figure 6-88 Offers Tab

Note:

Refer to [Figure 6-88](#) to enter the Offer Code field. A retailer can use it to qualify or track a particular offer.

- Click **+ Add Offers**. The Add Offers window enables you to search for offers to include in the promotion. Once you receive the results of the search you can sort the results, if desired for easier selection, before adding them to the promotion. Those offers appear in the Included Offers panel.

Figure 6-89 Add Offers - Points for Purchase

The screenshot shows the 'Add Offers' window with the following components:

- Search Section:**
 - Attribute Type: A dropdown menu with 'All' selected.
 - Attribute Value: An empty text input field.
 - Maximum Offer ID: A text input field containing 'Maximum Offer ID'.
 - Buttons: 'Reset' and 'Search'.
- Offers Section:**
 - Sort By: A dropdown menu with 'Last Update Date' selected.
 - Message: 'No Offers available to display'.
- Included Offers Section:**
 - Item 1: 'CPU JAN 2022' with a close button (X).
 - Item 2: A green circle icon followed by 'Buy X Get X' and 'ID:505'.
- Done Button:** A black button with white text 'Done' at the bottom right.

- In the Search section, enter any or all of the following information:
 - **Attribute Type** – Search for an Offer by the Attribute assigned to the Offer. The default is ALL.
 - **Attributes Value** - Type-ahead search according to the Attribute Type selected.
 - **Maximum Offer ID** – Highest Offer ID number you wish to limit the search to. This will return that offer ID and all others with a lower number.
 - **Offer ID** – This Text Field searches all the Offers currently present in the application. The default is an empty field.
 - **Offer Name** – Name of the Offer.
 - **Offer Type** – Search the Offer by Offer Type (Single Select). The value **Buy X Get Points** is populated in the list of options.
 - **Intended Use** – The type of Promotion associated with the Offer you are searching for. The value **Loyalty** is populated in the list of actions.
- Click **Search**.

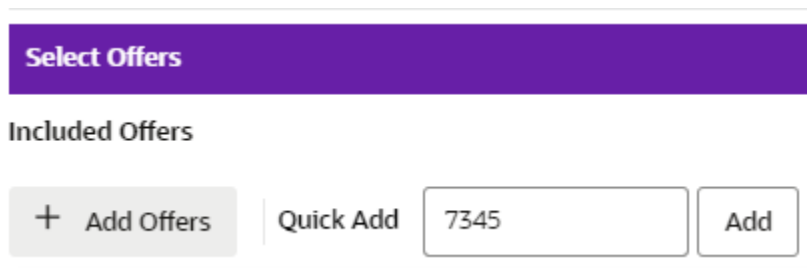
 **Note:**

To retrieve all the offers in the system, select **Search** without entering any search criteria. All offers are returned to the Offers results section. From there, you can scroll through the list to choose which offers to add.

To clear the search fields and restore default selections in the search page, click **Reset**.

- Upon selecting **Search**, the results display in the Offers section. Use the **Sort by list** to sort by the following options:
 - Last Update Date
 - Offer Name
 - Offer Type
 - Intended Use
 - Offer ID
- In the Add Offers window, you can select any of the offers in the Include Offers section and remove them by selecting the **X** in the top right corner of the Offer. Click **Add** to include the offers in the promotion.
- When finished selecting offers to add to the Promotion, select **Done**, which returns you to the Select Offers window.
- On the Select Offers window, you can select the **Remove** option from the **Overflow Menu** to remove an offer from the promotion.
- Enter the **Offer ID** in the Quick Add field and then click **Add** to also add offers to a promotion.


Figure 6-90 Select Offers Quick Add



13. When finished entering Offers for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Attributes** tab.
14. Enter the following for the **Attributes** tab.

Figure 6-91 Promotion Attributes

Attributes

 **Promotion Attributes**

Name	Value	Description
AUTHORIZED SIGNATURE	<input type="text" value="Character"/> + Add Another	Authorized Signature
IN MARKET DATE	<input type="text" value="M/d/y"/> <input type="button" value="📅"/> + Add Another	Date Promotion In the Market
MARKET CIRCULATION	<input type="text" value="Number"/> + Add Another	Market Circulation Count
MARKETING BUDGET	<input type="text" value="Currency"/> + Add Another	Promotion Marketing Budget
PROMOTION CHANNEL	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/> + Add Another	Promotion Channel
Winter Promo?	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/> + Add Another	Winter Promo?

Next >

- Complete values for any Promotion Attributes you want added to the promotion. Fields marked with an asterisk are required.
15. When finished adding Attributes for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Audience** tab.
 16. Enter the following for the Audience tab.

Figure 6-92 Audience Tab

Audience Definition

Audience Rules

<p>Audience</p> <div style="display: flex; gap: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; background-color: #eee;">All</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; background-color: #ddd;">Exclusive</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px; background-color: #ddd;">Non-exclusive</div> </div>	<p>Selection Method</p> <p><i>Unused with current selections</i></p>	<p>Update Method</p> <p><i>Unused with current selections</i></p>
---	---	--

Define Audience
👤 18 in Audience
🚫 0 Eligible for Bounceback

Included Audience Groups

All customers are included in the audience

Next >

Audience Rules – Exclusive is only used here to define the audience.

Exclusive Targeting - If you create an exclusive targeted promotion, this means that only the customers you've identified in your target group are eligible to receive the promotion at the point of sale.

- Selection Method
 - **Static** – Only customers defined at this time are considered eligible for the promotion.
 - **Dynamic** – Dynamic can not only add customers but also remove customers that no longer apply. When Dynamic is selected, Update Method is available.

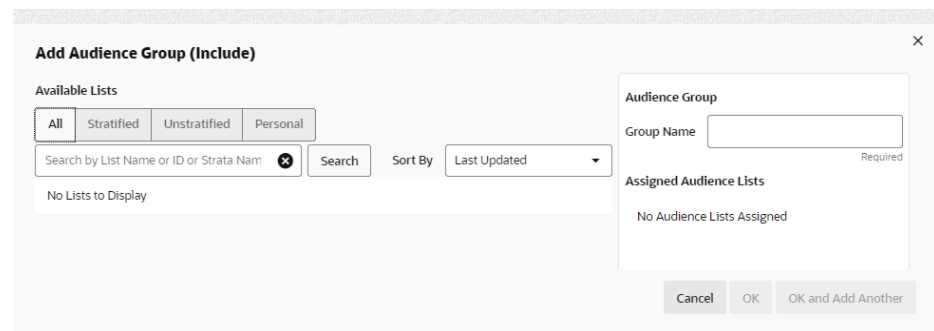
New audience members will be added – When the Dynamic and Recurring Promotions job runs, any new customers found that meet the criteria, are added to the audience. All customers currently in the audience will remain in the audience.

Audience members can be added and removed – When the Dynamic and Recurring Promotions job runs, any new customers found that meet the criteria, are added to the audience. Additionally, only the customers that meet the criteria will be included in the audience. If the customer is in the audience before the job runs, but no longer meets the criteria, the customer will be removed from the audience.

Define Audience - Included Audience Groups

- a. Click + **Add Audience Group**.

Figure 6-93 Add Audience Group (Include)



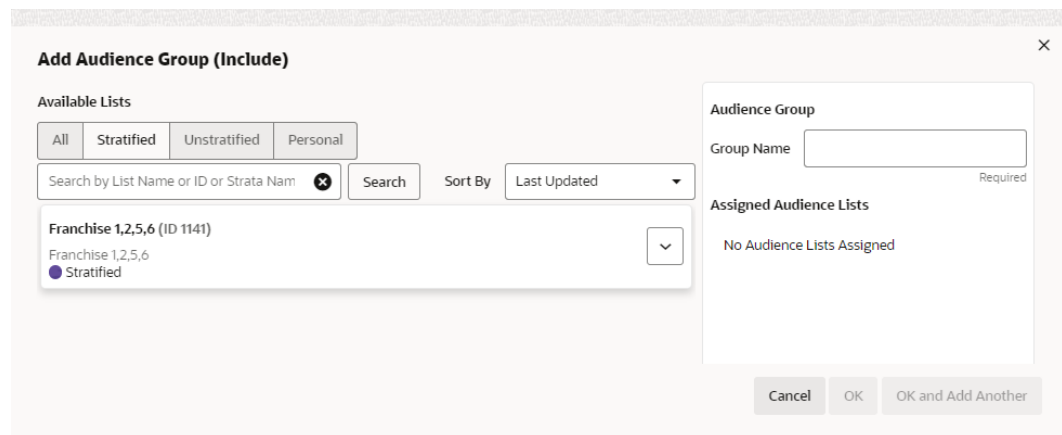
- b. Select an **Available List** type
 - All** - Default
 - Stratified** - The Customers within a Stratified list are divided into levels.
 - Unstratified** - The Customers within an Unstratified list are not differentiated into separate groups.
 - Personal** - Customers maintained by the user.
- c. In the Search field, enter some or all of the **List Name**, **ID**, or **Strata Name**.
- d. Click **Search**. The results can be sorted by using the Sort by list menu with the following options:
 - Last Updated
 - Name

Customer Count

- e. Enter a **Group Name**.

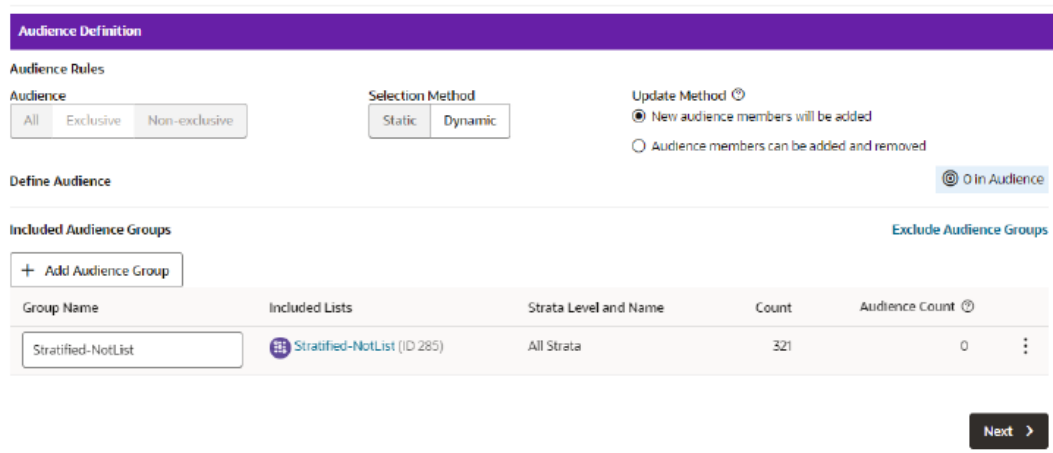
When lists are added from the Available Lists area, they appear in the Audience Groups section of the window. The Audience Group section Group Name automatically defaults to the name of the first list added. You can change the Group Name to something more meaningful to describe the group of customers, if desired.

Figure 6-94 Add Audience Group (Include)



- a. Click **Add** to add the selection Assigned Audience Lists.
- b. Click **Add** for another list means you are using the condition AND. Both conditions must be met.
- c. Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition OR. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add** for another Audience Group.

Figure 6-95 Audience Definition



As shown in [Figure 6-95](#) the Group Count is shown for each audience group. In the Audience Rules section the total count is provided on the right hand side.

Columns include the following details:

- Group Name
- Included Lists
- Strata Level and Name
- Count
- Audience Count

Each Group Name has an Overflow Menu Icon where you can Edit or Remove the Audience Group from the list.

The Included Lists column displays a link on that list (also known as a segment) and that link will open to the Audience List Details window.

In this window, the following sections may display, depending on the type of list and which of the options were selected when the list was created:

- List Options section
- Criteria section
- Trend Results section
- Strata Levels section
- Attributes section
- Franchisees section
- Message section
- Scheduled Jobs section

Figure 6-96 List Details

The screenshot shows the 'List Details' window for a list named 'Franchise 1,2,5,6 (ID 1941)'. The window is divided into several sections:

- List Options:** Includes checkboxes for 'Export', 'Open Access', 'Permanent', 'Public', 'Publish To Batch Exporter', 'Publish To Clienteling', 'Publish To Task Generator', 'Save as List', and 'Trend Results'. The 'Public' checkbox is checked.
- Criteria:** Shows a segment syntax: 'Customer city of residence = Minneapolis AND Customer State = MN AND Selected Franchisees'. The format is set to 'Ntile Strata' and based on 'Customer'.
- Trend Results:** A table showing results for three strata levels.

Run ID	Run Date	Strata Level	Customer Count	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Average Value
0	8/30/22, 3,44 PM	1	7	0	0	0
0	8/30/22, 3,44 PM	2	7	0	0	0
0	8/30/22, 3,44 PM	3	7	0	0	0
- Strata Levels Against Annual Income:** A table showing the distribution of customer counts across strata levels.

Strata Name	Customer Count
Rich	7
Medium	7
Poor	7

The checked List Options vary by the selections made when the list was created, and may include the following fields:

- **Export** – Indicates whether the Segment list is automatically exported after the Segment Query is run.
- **Open Access** – Indicates whether the Segment has Open Access.
- **Permanent** – Indicates whether the Segment is kept in the system, even if it meets the criteria for deletion by the housekeeping job.
- **Public** – Indicates whether the Segment is Public.
- **Publish to Batch Exporter** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available for export to a Marketing system.
- **Publish to Clienteling** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available to the Clienteling module.
- **Publish to Task Generator** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available to the Task Generator Job.
- **Save as List** – Indicates whether a list of matching Customer IDs is created when the Segment is created.
- **Trend Results** – Indicates whether the results of the Segment run are kept to provide trend information about the Segment.

Figure 6-97 displays the Trend Results in a chart. A user can scroll down to see a table as shown in Figure 6-98, which for this segment shows the Strata Levels Against Customer Age and displays the strata that are shown in the graph.

Figure 6-97 List Details Trend Results - Chart

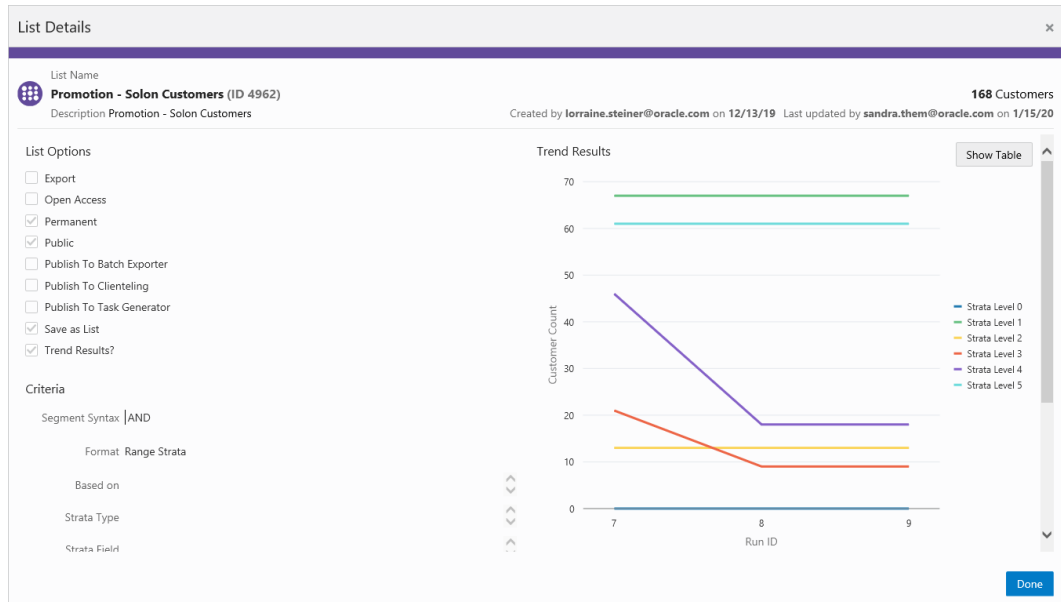


Figure 6-98 Trend Results Graph - Table

Trend Results						Show Chart
Run ID	Run Date	Strata Level	Customer Count	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Average Value
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	1	99	0	0	0
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	2	92	0	0	0
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	3	93	0	0	0
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	1	99	0	0	0
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	2	92	0	0	0
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	3	93	0	0	0

Figure 6-99 List Details Trend Results - Table

Strata Levels Against Annual Income			
Strata Name	From (>=)	To (<)	Customer Count
Strata 1	0	50	2,216,204
Strata 3	51	>	6,858

- Click **Done** to close the Audience List Details window.

Figure 6-100 Audience Definition - Exclude Audience Groups

Audience Definition

Audience Rules

Audience
 All **Exclusive** Non-exclusive

Selection Method
 Static Dynamic

Update Method ⓘ
 New audience members will be added
 Audience members can be added and removed

Define Audience
 ⓘ 18 in Audience ⓘ 0 Eligible for Bounceback

Included Audience Groups Exclude Audience Groups

Group Name	Included Lists	Strata Level and Name	Count	Audience Count ⓘ
No Audience Groups Added				

Exclude Audience Groups - If you wish to exclude certain groups of customers that may also be a part of the Included Group, you can do that by selecting the **Exclude Audience Groups** link, which opens a new section in the Audience Definition window

- Select the **Exclude Audience Groups** link.
 - Click **+ Add Audience Group**.
 - Select an Available List type.
 - **All** – Default group listing.
 - **Stratified** – The Customers within a Stratified list are divided into levels.
 - **Unstratified** – The Customers within an Unstratified list are not differentiated into separate groups.
 - **Personal** – User created groups.
 - In the Search field, enter some or all of the **List Name, ID, or Strata Name**.
 - Click **Search**.
 - The results can be sorted by using the **Sort by list** menu with the following options:
 - Last Updated
 - Name
 - Customer Count
 - Enter a **Group Name**.
 - Click **Add** to add the selection Assigned Audience Lists.
 - Click **Add** for another list means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
 - Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add** for another Audience Group.
- 17.** When finished entering all Audience Groups for the Promotion, click **Next**.
- If the Selection Method selected in **Step 16**, is Static, continue to the next tab, the **Filtering Audience** tab.
 - If the Selection Method selected in **Step 16** is Dynamic, continue to **Step 22**, the **Control Groups** tab.
- 18.** Enter the following for the **Filtering Audience** tab.

Figure 6-101 Filtering Audience Tab

Audience Filter

Audience Filtering

Customer Household Consolidation: None | 2,223,062 Audience Count | 0 Filtered Count

Audience Group Name	Audience Count	Approximate Household Count	Filter	Filter Value
Loyalty	2223062	2222617	None Top Sales Random	0

Next >

Use the **Customer Household Consolidation Selection Menu** to indicate whether the Promotion will use household consolidation, and the rule for determining the Customer who is the head of household.

- **None** – Do not perform household filtering.
- **LT Sales** – Select head of household based on amount purchased over the lifetime of their account.
- **LT Transaction Count** – Select head of household based on lifetime number of transactions.
- **Last Transaction Date** – Select head of household based on the Customer who performed the most recent transaction.
- **Customer Attributes** – Select head of household based on the Customer's numeric attributes.

Select the **Filter Type** for each Audience:

Figure 6-102 Select Desired Filtering

Audience Filter

Audience Filtering

Customer Household Consolidation: None | 2,223,062 Audience Count | 0 Filtered Count

Audience Group Name	Audience Count	Approximate Household Count	Filter	Filter Value
Loyalty	2223062	2222617	None Top Sales Random	0

Next >

- **None** - [DEFAULT] All Customers in the Audience Group are eligible.
- **Top Sales** - Customers from the Audience Group will be chosen for eligibility by the greatest total amount of purchases.

- **Random** - Customers from the Audience Group will be chosen randomly for eligibility.

Enter a **filter value** to indicate the number of customers eligible for the promotion.

19. When finished entering any household filtering for the Audience Groups for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Split Audience** tab.
20. In the Split Audience tab, filtered audiences can, optionally, be split into smaller, separate audiences. If desired, create splits for the filtered audiences on the promotion.
 - Click **Split**.

Figure 6-103 Split Audience Groups

Audience Group Name	Count	
Loyalty	200	<input type="button" value="Split"/>

Name	Count	Percent	
<input type="text" value="Loyalty_1"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="text" value="50.00"/>	<input type="button" value="X"/>
<input type="text" value="Loyalty_2"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="text" value="50.00"/>	<input type="button" value="X"/>

- The Split Name field is automatically populated from the name of the Audience Group Name. If desired, you can change the name of the splits in this step.
 - Select **Split** to automatically divide the Audience Group into equal portions and percentages. If you desire different portions or percentages for the splits, enter either a count or a percentage, and the corresponding field will update.
21. When finished entering any Audience Group splits for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Control Groups** tab.
 22. Enter the following information for the **Control Groups** tab.

Figure 6-104 Define Control Groups

Define Control Groups

Control Groups

Style

None	By Promotion	By Audience Group
------	--------------	-------------------

Audience Group Name	Original Count	New Count	Percent
Loyalty_1	100	80	40.00
Loyalty_2	100	80	40.00
Control Group for Spring Sale	0	<input type="text" value="40"/>	<input type="text" value="20.00"/>
Total	200	200	100.00

Next >

The control group is a statistically identical group that doesn't receive the offer. Following the promotional period, the results of the two groups are compared and you can determine if the offer generated incremental revenue. Options include:

- **None** – No Control Group
- **By Promotion** – Enter either a New Count or Percent. The corresponding field will update automatically to determine the size of the control group.
- **By Audience Group** – Enter either a Control Group count or percentage for each split created earlier. The corresponding field will update automatically.

23. When finished entering any Control Groups for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Export Channels** tab.
24. Enter the following information for the **Export Channels** tab. The options include:

Figure 6-105 Export Channels Tab

Export Channels

Audience Name	Mail	Email/Batch Exporter	Phone	Clienteling	Clienteling Details
Loyalty_1 80 Customer(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Assign Tasks To <input checked="" type="radio"/> Location <input type="radio"/> Associate
Filter <input type="checkbox"/>					
Loyalty_2 80 Customer(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Batch Exporter

Export Filename	Prefix	Static Name	Suffix
Audience Export filename	<input type="text" value="yyyyMMdd_HHmms"/>	<input type="text" value="_PromotionTargetsSync"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmms}_PromotionTargetsSync			
Offers Export filename	<input type="text" value="yyyyMMdd_HHmms"/>	<input type="text" value="_PromotionDealsSync"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmms}_PromotionDealsSync			
Offers and Promo-Offers Attributes Export filename	<input type="text" value="yyyyMMdd_HHmms"/>	<input type="text" value="_PromotionDealsAttributesSy"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmms}_PromotionDealsAttributesSync			
Promotion Export filename	<input type="text" value="yyyyMMdd_HHmms"/>	<input type="text" value="_PromotionSync"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmms}_PromotionSync			

Next >

Mail - Determines whether the Customers in the Split/Control Group will be contacted by Mail.

Email / Batch Exporter - Determines whether the Customers in the Split/Control Group will be contacted by Email.

Note:

The system configuration setting *SupportedBatchExporters* determines if the Batch Exporter section is displayed.

- Export Filename – Name of the file.
- Prefix – Indicates the format of the datetime stamp used as a prefix the filename. Optional. Possible settings are yyyyMMdd_HHmms, yyyy-MMdd_HHmms, or none.
- Static Name – The identifying filename.

- **Suffix** – Indicates the format of the datetime stamp used as a suffix the filename. Optional. Possible settings are yyyyMMdd_HHmms, yyyy-MMdd_HHmms, or none.
- **Filename** – Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any.

Phone - Determines whether the Customers are contacted by phone.

Clienteling – When the Clienteling switch is turned on, tasks will be created based on the assigned associates or locations for the defined target audience when the promotion is generated.

Figure 6-106 Clienteling Details

The screenshot displays the 'Export Channels' configuration interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Audience Name', 'Mail', 'Email/Batch Exporter', 'Phone', 'Clienteling', and 'Clienteling Details'. Two channels are listed: 'Loyalty_1' (80 Customer(s)) and 'Loyalty_2' (80 Customer(s)). For 'Loyalty_2', the 'Clienteling' switch is turned on. The 'Assign Tasks To' section has 'Location' selected. The 'Filter' checkbox is checked. The 'Max Count Per Location' field is empty and marked as 'Required'. The 'Method' dropdown is set to 'Random' and is open, showing options: 'Random', 'Top - Recent Purchase', 'Top - LT Sales', and 'Top - Numeric Attribute'. Below this, the 'Batch Exporter' section shows 'Export Filename' as 'No Batch Exports (based on current Email Channel selections)', with 'Prefix' and 'Static Name' fields. A 'Next >' button is at the bottom right.

Assign Tasks to:

- **Location Channel** – Tasks are assigned to a Location.
- **Associate Channel** – Tasks are assigned to an associate in a location.

The following fields are enabled if the Filter option is selected:

- **Max Count Per <type>** - Determines the maximum number of target Customers that will be contacted through the channel.
- **Method** - Method used to select the Customers contacted. Options include:
 - **Random** - Select Customers Randomly (Default).
 - **Top - Recent Purchase** - Filter the Customers based on the most recent purchases.

- **Top - LT Sales** - Filter the Customers based on the largest amount purchased over the lifetime of their account.
 - **Top - Numeric Attribute** - Filter the Customers based on the highest attribute value for a selected numeric attribute. If this option is selected, an additional Channel Filter option, Attribute, displays. Attribute is the numeric attribute used to determine the customers contacted
25. When finished entering any Export Channels for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Budget** tab.
26. Enter the following information on the **Budget** tab.

Figure 6-107 Budget Tab

Budget

Promotion Costs

Description	Budget Amount	Actual Amount
	\$0.00	\$0.00

Add

Audience Group Name	Channel	Quantity	Budget Fixed	Budget CPM	Budget Total	Actual Fixed	Actual CPM	Actual Total
Loyalty_1	Clienteling	80	500	100	508	20	110	28.8
\$508.00						\$28.80		

Next >

- a. Click **Add** to enter the Promotion Costs. Enter values in any field is optional.
- b. Enter a **Description** of the cost item.
- c. Enter the **budgeted amount** for the Promotion in the Budget Amount field.
- d. Enter the **actual amount** for the Promotion in the Actual Amount field.
- e. Click **Add** if you wish to enter another budget line for the promotion, then follow **steps a-d** to complete the fields.

If Export Channels were selected for the audience group, the Audience Groups Costs section appears. Entering values in any field is optional.

Figure 6-108 Audience Group Costs

Audience Group Name	Channel	Quantity	Budget Fixed	Budget CPM	Budget Total	Actual Fixed	Actual CPM	Actual Total
Loyalty_1	Clienteling	80	<input type="text" value="500"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	508	<input type="text" value="20"/>	<input type="text" value="110"/>	28.8
Loyalty_2	Email	80	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	0	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	0
					\$508.00			\$28.80

- f. In the Budget-Fixed field, enter the **fixed cost budgeted** for the audience.
 - g. In the Budget-CPM field, enter the **cost budgeted** for the Channel for each 1,000 Customers.
 - h. In the Actual-Fixed field, enter the **actual fixed cost** of the Channel.
 - i. In the Actual-CPM field, enter the **actual cost** of the Channel for each 1,000 Customers.
 - j. Repeat **steps f-i** for each Target Channel in the Promotion.
27. When finished entering any Budget Costs for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Save Options** tab.
28. Enter the following information in the **Save Options** tab. You can enter more than one choice.

Figure 6-109 Options After Save Tab

Options After Save

After saving this promotion, also perform the following actions:

- Generate**
Start a job to generate promotion audience data.
- Approve**
Set this promotion's status to Approved.
- Export**
Start a job to create files for exporting this promotion to an external/POS/batch system.
- Apply Offers Immediately**
Indicate offers should be applied immediately to downstream systems.

Dynamic Promotion Options

Set the export option for the Dynamic Promotion Job processing.

- Output Additions Only**
Only customers added to the event as a result of segment processing will be exported.
- Output All Updates**
All customers updated or added to the event as a result of segment processing will be exported.

Next >

- **Generate** – Start a job to generate promotion audience data.
- **Approve** – Set this promotion's status to Approved.
- **Dynamic Promotion Options** – Select one of the two export options for processing when using the Dynamic selection method on the Audience tab.

 **Note:**

Depending on the type of promotion that you created, different Options After Save are available.

29. When finished entering any Save Options for the Promotion, click **Next**.
30. The **Review** tab displays the key elements in the Promotion Setup.

Figure 6-110 Review Tab

Promotion Name	Description	Campaign Name	Timeframe
Spring Sale	Sale for Spring	Spring Sale	3/3/23 12:00 AM - 3/17/23 11:59 PM

550 Locations
Included
All Locations Defined
Excluded
No Excluded Locations Defined

1 Offers
Offer Name
Fixed Points - 30 points (210012907 & 210012970) - Checked (ID 560)
Buy X Get Points
Intended Use: Loyalty

2 Loyalty Program Levels
Show member counts
\$20 Gift Card
LAC.
Level 1
Level 2

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

31. Click **OK** to save the Promotion, or click **Cancel** to close the promotion without saving. Click **Previous** or any **Tab** to return to any point of the Create Promotion process.

Creating a Points for Marketing Engagements Promotion

There are a few choices available to start the process of creating a promotion. The **Create Promotion** button is available in both the Promotion Home window as well as the Promotion Search window.



Note:

You will need the Promotion Home role to access the Promotion Home window.

1. Click **Create Promotion**, which opens up the Promotion wizard to the Information tab.

Figure 6-111 Information Tab - Points for Marketing

The screenshot shows the 'Create Promotion' window with the 'Information' tab active. The 'Promotion Definition' section on the left lists several promotion types, with 'Points for Marketing Engagements' selected and marked with a checkmark. The 'Promotion Information' section on the right displays the following details:

- Information:** Campaign Spring Sale, Promotion Spring Sale, Promotion Type Product, Starts on 3/3/23, 12:00 AM, Runs until 3/17/23, 11:59 PM
- Franchisees:** All Franchisees defined
- Programs:** 2 Program Level(s) Defined
- Offers:** 0 Associated Offers
- Attributes:** No promotion attributes defined
- Audience:** No targeted audience defined
- Budget:** No budget details defined
- Save Options:** No save options to display

The 'Promotion Name and Date Range' section contains the following input fields:

- Name:** Spring Sale
- Description:** Sale for Spring
- Start Date:** 03/03/2023
- Start Time:** 12:00 AM
- End Date:** 03/17/2023
- End Time:** 11:59 PM

Navigation buttons at the bottom include 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK'. A 'Next >' button is also present at the bottom right of the form area.

2. Select the **Promotion Type**: Points for Marketing Engagements.

Note:

Contact your administrator if you do not see the Promotion Types needed for your promotion

3. Select one of the choices for the Campaign.
 - **Auto-create Campaign** – The campaign is automatically created and will use the same name and description from the promotion name and description.
 - **Associate this promotion with an existing campaign** – Uses existing campaigns in the system.
 - Click the list arrow and select an **existing campaign**.

Note:

The Start Date and End Date display underneath the Existing Campaign list.

- **Create a new campaign for this promotion** – A new campaign is created with this promotion being the first added.
4. Enter the following information:

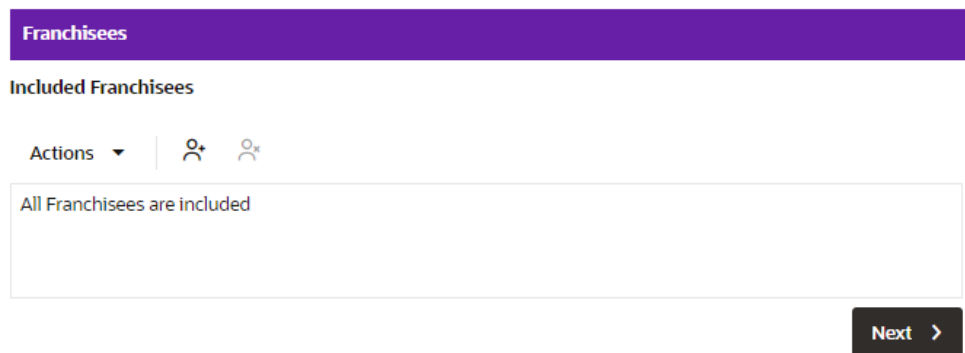
- Enter a **Campaign Name** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Description** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Name**.
 - Enter a **Description**.
 - Select a **Start Date**.
 - Select a **Start Time**.
 - Select an **End Date**.
 - Select an **End Time**.
5. When finished entering the Campaign and Promotion information, click **Next** to continue to the **Franchisees** tab.

 **Note:**

This tab will only display if the `EnableFranchiseSupport` configuration is enabled, and Franchisees have been created.

6. By default, all franchisees are assigned to the promotion. To make changes to those assignments, do the following:

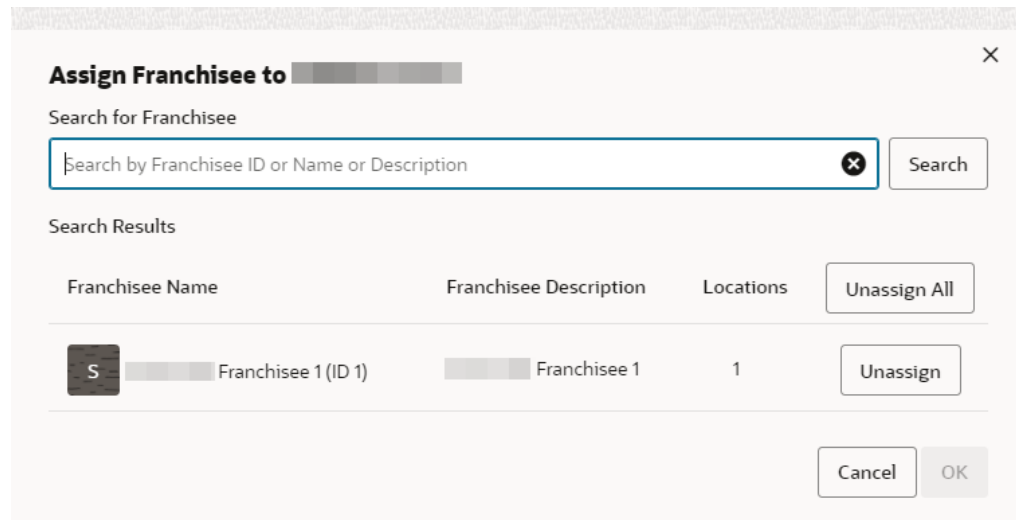
Figure 6-112 Franchisees Tab




Assigning a Franchisee

- a. Click the **Actions Menu**, then, click **Assign**, or click the **Add (+)** icon. This opens the Add Franchisee window.

Figure 6-113 Assign Franchisee

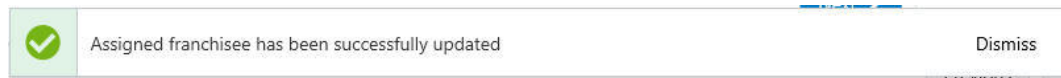



- b. In the Search for franchisee search box, enter part or all of the **Name**, **ID**, or **Description**, then click **Search**.

 **Note:**
You can also leave blank and click Search to return all Franchisees.

- c. To change the assignment from ALL (which is defaulted) click **Assign** on just the specific franchisees you wish to assign for this promotion. Only Franchisees associated with the user are displayed in the list.
- d. Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Figure 6-114 Confirmation Notification



 **Note:**
A confirmation notification appears to confirm the franchisee has been assigned.

Deleting a Franchisee

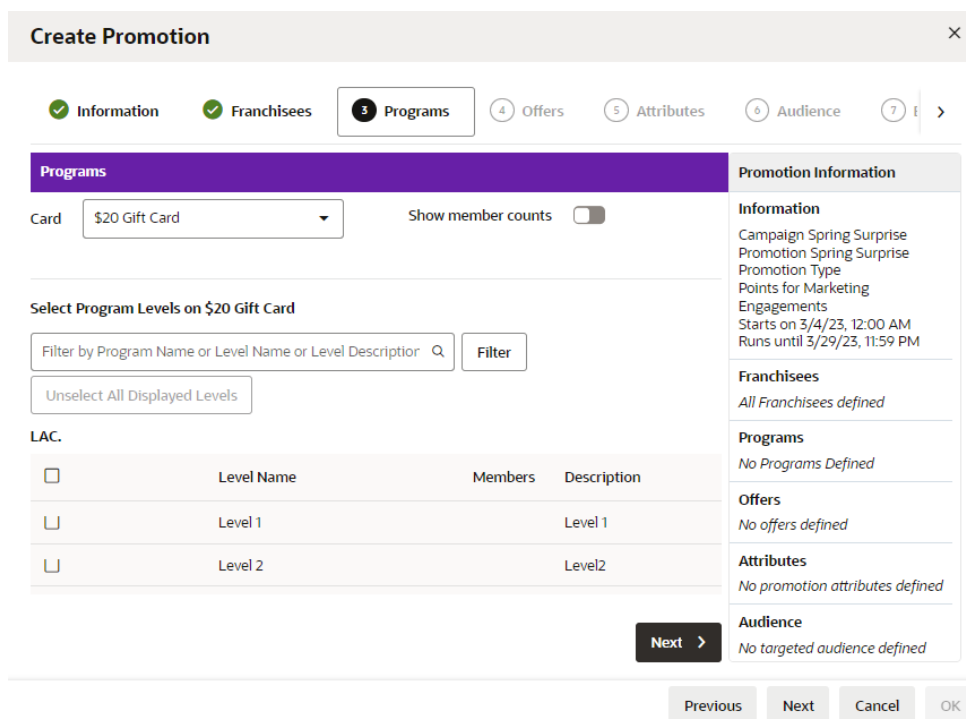
- a. In the included Franchisees window, highlight the desired **row**.
- b. Click the **Action Menu**, and click **Delete**, or click the **X** icon.

 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the franchisee has been deleted.

7. When finished entering the Franchisees information, click **Next** to continue to the **Programs** tab.

Figure 6-115 Programs Tab



Create Promotion [Close]

Information
 Franchisees
 Programs
 Offers
 Attributes
 Audience
 [Next] >

Programs | Promotion Information

Card: Show member counts:

Select Program Levels on \$20 Gift Card

Filter by Program Name or Level Name or Level Descriptor

LAC.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Level Name	Members	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	Level 1		Level 1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Level 2		Level2

Promotion Information

Information
 Campaign Spring Surprise Promotion Spring Surprise Promotion Type Points for Marketing Engagements
 Starts on 3/4/23, 12:00 AM
 Runs until 3/29/23, 11:59 PM

Franchisees
 All Franchisees defined

Programs
 No Programs Defined

Offers
 No offers defined

Attributes
 No promotion attributes defined

Audience
 No targeted audience defined

8. To begin the Programs tab, take the following actions:

- a. Select a **Card**.

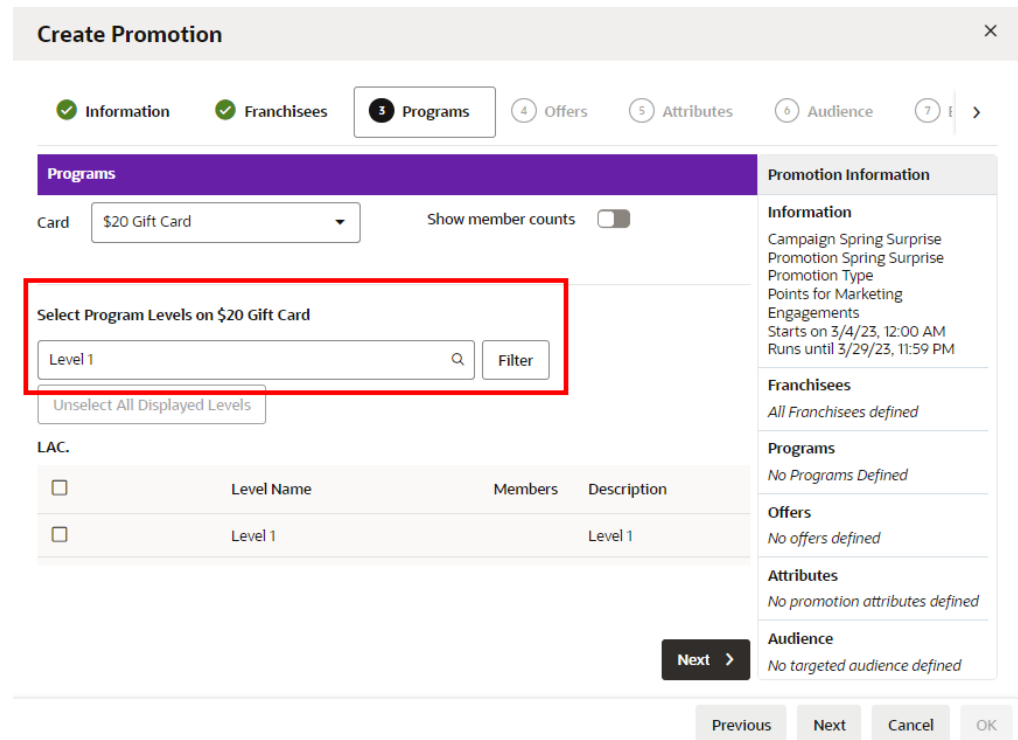
A list of cards display all active cards for the user to select from. If there is only one card to select from, the card appears by default and the list arrow is unavailable for selection.

 **Note:**

The Select Program Levels section title will contain the name of the card selected.

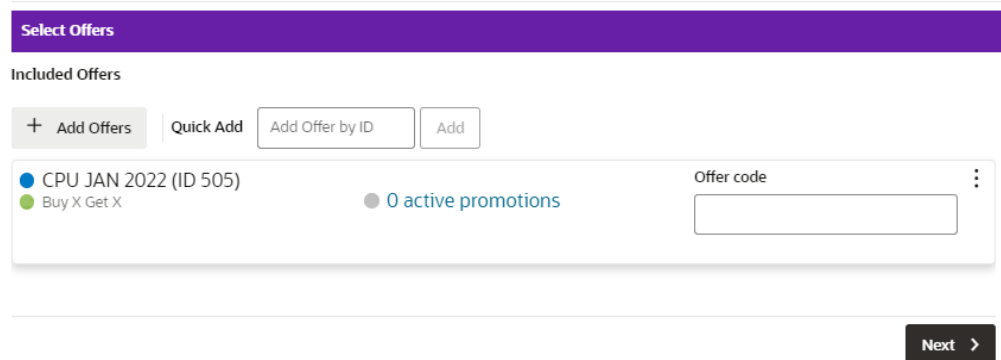
- b. In the Filter for **Select Programs Levels on** field, enter all or part of the **Program Name**, **Level Name**, or **Level Description** of the specific loyalty program you want to search for.

Figure 6-116 Filter Results



- c. Select one or more **Loyalty Programs**. The Deselect All Displayed Levels button clears all selections.
9. When finished selecting Loyalty Programs for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Offers** tab.
10. To begin the Offers tab, take the following actions:
 - There are two methods to add offers, either:
 - Select the **Quick Add** option to search for a known Offer ID.
 - Click **+Add Offers** for an Advanced Offer Search.

Figure 6-117 Offers Tab

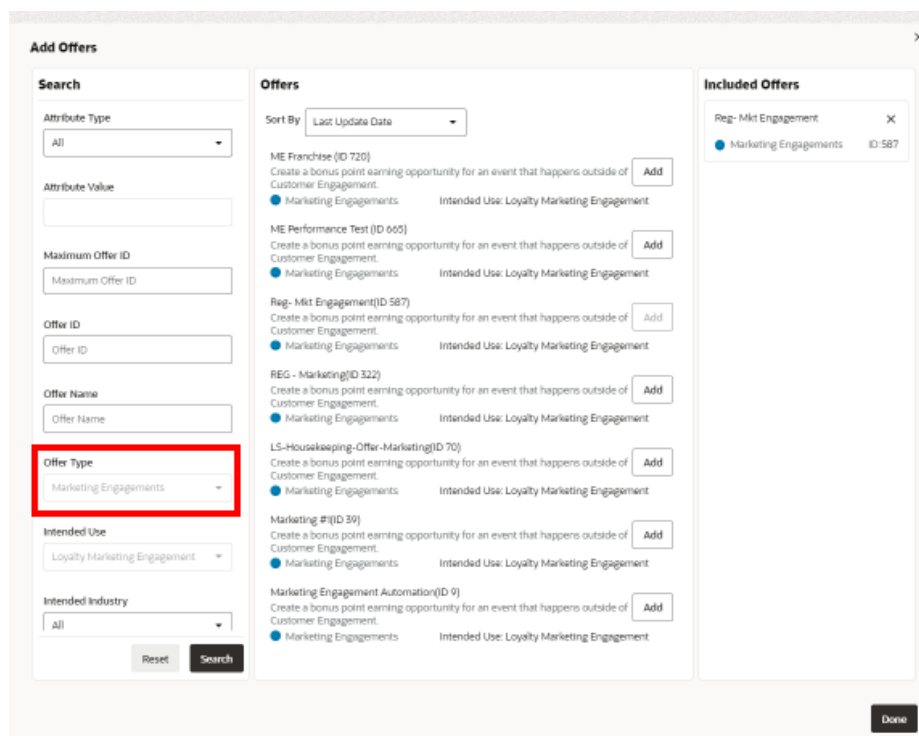


 **Note:**

Refer to [Figure 6-117](#) to enter the Offer Code field. A retailer can use it to qualify or track a particular offer.

- Click **+ Add Offers**. The Add Offers window enables you to search for offers to include in the promotion. Once you receive the results of the search you can sort the results, if desired for easier selection, before adding them to the promotion. Those offers appear in the Included Offers panel.

Figure 6-118 Add Offers - Marketing Engagements



- In the Search section, enter any or all of the following information:
 - **Attribute Type** – Search for an Offer by the Attribute assigned to the Offer. The default is ALL.
 - **Attributes Value** - Type-ahead search according to the Attribute Type selected.
 - **Maximum Offer ID** – Highest Offer ID number you wish to limit the search to. This will return that offer ID and all others with a lower number.
 - **Offer ID** – This Text Field searches all the Offers currently present in the application. The default is an empty field.
 - **Offer Name** – Name of the Offer.
 - **Offer Type** – Search the Offer by Offer Type (Single Select). The value **Marketing Engagements** is populated in the list of options.
 - **Intended Use** – The type of Promotion associated with the Offer you are searching for. The value **Loyalty Marketing Engagement** is populated.

- Click **Search**.

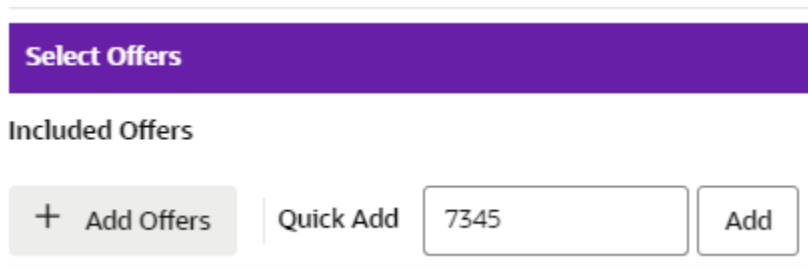
 **Note:**

To retrieve all the offers in the system, select **Search** without entering any search criteria. All offers are returned to the Offers results section. From there, you can scroll through the list to choose which offers to add.

To clear the search fields and restore default selections in the search page, click **Reset**.

- Upon selecting **Search**, the results display in the Offers section. Use the **Sort by list** to sort by the following options:
 - Last Update Date
 - Offer Name
 - Offer Type
 - Intended Use
 - Offer ID
- In the Add Offers window, you can select any of the offers in the Include Offers section and remove them by selecting the **X** in the top right corner of the Offer. Click **Add** to include the offers in the promotion.
- When finished selecting offers to add to the Promotion, select **Done**, which returns you to the Select Offers window.
- On the Select Offers window, you can select the **Remove** option from the **Overflow Menu** to remove an offer from the promotion.
- Enter the **Offer ID** in the Quick Add field and then click **Add** to also add offers to a promotion.


Figure 6-119 Select Offers Quick Add






11. When finished entering Offers for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Attributes** tab.
12. Enter the following for the **Attributes** tab.

Figure 6-120 Promotion Attributes

Attributes

 **Promotion Attributes**

Name	Value	Description
AUTHORIZED SIGNATURE	<input type="text" value="Character"/> + Add Another	Authorized Signature
IN MARKET DATE	<input type="text" value="M/d/y"/>  + Add Another	Date Promotion In the Market
MARKET CIRCULATION	<input type="text" value="Number"/> + Add Another	Market Circulation Count
MARKETING BUDGET	<input type="text" value="Currency"/> + Add Another	Promotion Marketing Budget
PROMOTION CHANNEL	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/>  + Add Another	Promotion Channel
Winter Promo?	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/> 	Winter Promo?

Next >

- Complete values for any Promotion Attributes you want added to the promotion. Fields marked with an asterisk are required.
13. When finished adding Attributes for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Audience** tab.
 14. Enter the following for the Audience tab.

Figure 6-121 Audience Tab

Audience Definition

Audience Rules

<p>Audience</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px 10px;">All</td> <td style="padding: 2px 10px;">Exclusive</td> <td style="padding: 2px 10px;">Non-exclusive</td> </tr> </table>	All	Exclusive	Non-exclusive	<p>Selection Method <i>Unused with current selections</i></p>	<p>Update Method <i>Unused with current selections</i></p>
All	Exclusive	Non-exclusive			

Define Audience
👤 18 in Audience
👤 0 Eligible for Bounceback

Included Audience Groups
All customers are included in the audience

Next >

Audience Rules – Exclusive is only used here to define the audience.

Exclusive Targeting - If you create an exclusive targeted promotion, this means that only the customers you've identified in your target group are eligible to receive the promotion at the point of sale.

- Selection Method
 - **Static** – Only customers defined at this time are considered eligible for the promotion.
 - **Dynamic** – Dynamic can not only add customers but also remove customers that no longer apply. When Dynamic is selected, Update Method is available.

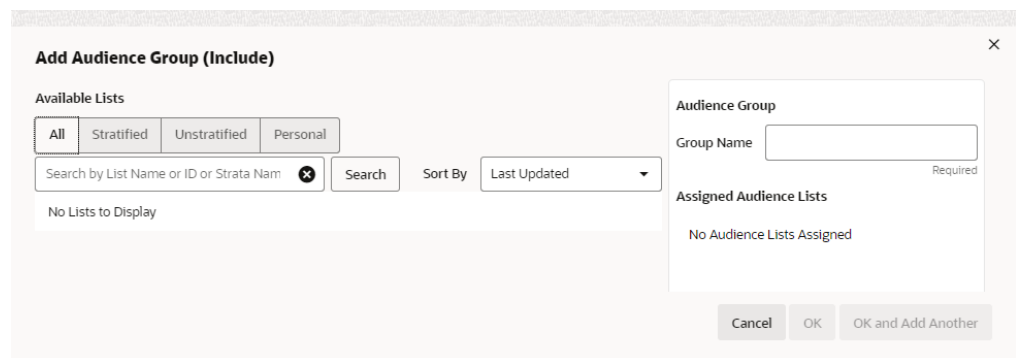
New audience members will be added – When the Dynamic and Recurring Promotions job runs, any new customers found that meet the criteria, are added to the audience. All customers currently in the audience will remain in the audience.

Audience members can be added and removed – When the Dynamic and Recurring Promotions job runs, any new customers found that meet the criteria, are added to the audience. Additionally, only the customers that meet the criteria will be included in the audience. If the customer is in the audience before the job runs, but no longer meets the criteria, the customer will be removed from the audience.

Define Audience - Included Audience Groups

- a. Click + **Add Audience Group**.

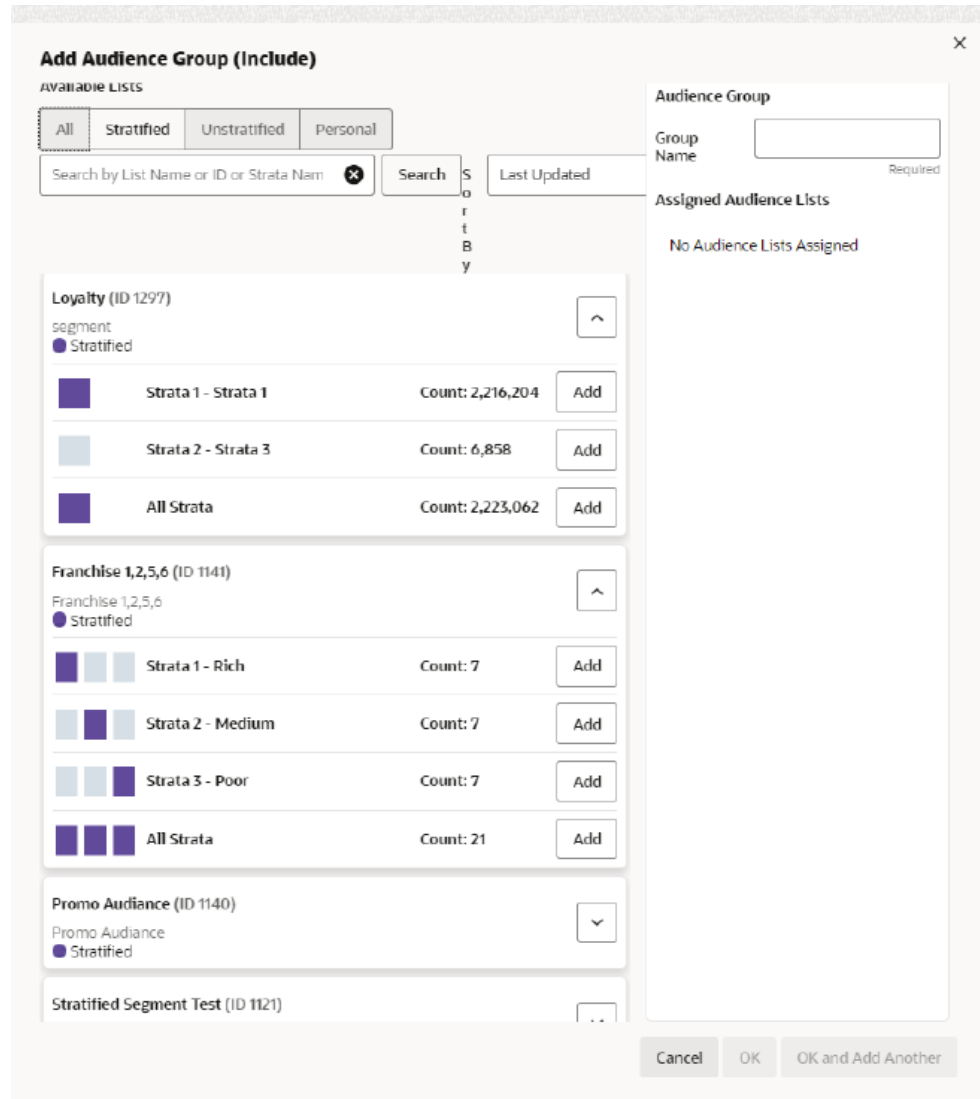
Figure 6-122 Add Audience Group (Include)



- b. Select an **Available List** type
 - All** - Default
 - Stratified** - The Customers within a Stratified list are divided into levels.
 - Unstratified** - Customers maintained by the user.
 - Personal** - Customers maintained by the user.
- c. In the Search field, enter some or all of the **List Name, ID, or Strata Name**.
- d. Click **Search**. The results can be sorted by using the Sort by list menu with the following options:
 - Last Updated
 - Name
 - Customer Count
- e. Enter a **Group Name**.

When lists are added from the Available Lists area, they appear in the Audience Groups section of the window. The Audience Group section Group Name automatically defaults to the name of the first list added. You can change the Group Name to something more meaningful to describe the group of customers, if desired.

Figure 6-123 Add Audience Group (Include)



- Click **Add** to add the selection Assigned Audience Lists.
- Click **Add** for another list means you are using the condition AND. Both conditions must be met.
- Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add** for another Audience Group.

Figure 6-124 Audience Definition

Audience Definition

Audience Rules

Audience: All Exclusive Non-exclusive

Selection Method: Static Dynamic

Update Method: Unused with current selections

Define Audience: 👁️ 2,223,062 in Audience 👤 3 Eligible for Bounceback

Included Audience Groups Exclude Audience Groups

[+ Add Audience Group](#)

Group Name	Included Lists	Strata Level and Name	Count	Audience Count 🌐
Loyalty	Loyalty (ID 1297)	All Strata	2,223,062	2,223,062

[Next >](#)

As shown in [Figure 6-124](#) the Audience Count is shown for each audience group. In the Audience Rules section the Audience count is provided on the right hand side.

Columns include the following details:

- Group Name
- Included Lists
- Strata Level and Name
- Count
- Audience Count

Each Group Name has an Overflow Menu Icon where you can Edit or Remove the Audience Group from the list.

The Included Lists column displays a link on that list (also known as a segment) and that link will open to the Audience List Details window.

In this window, the following sections may display, depending on the type of list and which of the options were selected when the list was created:

- List Options section
- Criteria section
- Trend Results section
- Strata Levels section
- Attributes section
- Franchisees section
- Message section
- Scheduled Jobs section

Figure 6-125 List Details

The screenshot shows the 'List Details' configuration page for a segment named 'Franchise 1,2,5,6'. The interface includes several sections:

- List Name:** Franchise 1,2,5,6 (ID 1141), Description Franchise 1,2,5,6, Created by [user]@oracle.com on 8/30/22, 21 Customers.
- List Options:** A set of checkboxes for 'Export', 'Open Access', 'Permanent', 'Public', 'Publish To Batch Exporter', 'Publish To Clienteling', 'Publish To Task Generator', 'Save as List', and 'Trend Results'. The 'Trend Results' option is checked.
- Criteria:** Segment Syntax: Customer city of residence = Minneapolis AND Customer State = MN AND Selected Franchises.
- Format:** Nile Strata.
- Based on:** Customer.
- Trend Results Table:**

Run ID	Run Date	Strata Level	Customer Count	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Average Value
0	8/30/22, 3:44 PM	1	7	0	0	0
0	8/30/22, 3:44 PM	2	7	0	0	0
0	8/30/22, 3:44 PM	3	7	0	0	0
- Strata Levels Against Annual Income Table:**

Strata Name	Customer Count
Rich	7
Medium	7
Poor	7

The checked List Options vary by the selections made when the list was created, and may include the following fields:

- **Export** – Indicates whether the Segment list is automatically exported after the Segment Query is run.
- **Open Access** – Indicates whether the Segment has Open Access.
- **Permanent** – Indicates whether the Segment is kept in the system, even if it meets the criteria for deletion by the housekeeping job.
- **Public** – Indicates whether the Segment is Public.
- **Publish to Batch Exporter** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available for export to a Marketing system.
- **Publish to Clienteling** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available to the Clienteling module.
- **Publish to Task Generator** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available to the Task Generator Job.
- **Save as List** – Indicates whether a list of matching Customer IDs is created when the Segment is created.
- **Trend Results** – Indicates whether the results of the Segment run are kept to provide trend information about the Segment.

Figure 6-126 displays the Trend Results in a chart. A user can scroll down to see a table as shown in Figure 6-126, which for this segment shows the Strata Levels Against Customer Age and displays the strata that are shown in the graph.

Figure 6-126 List Details Trend Results - Chart

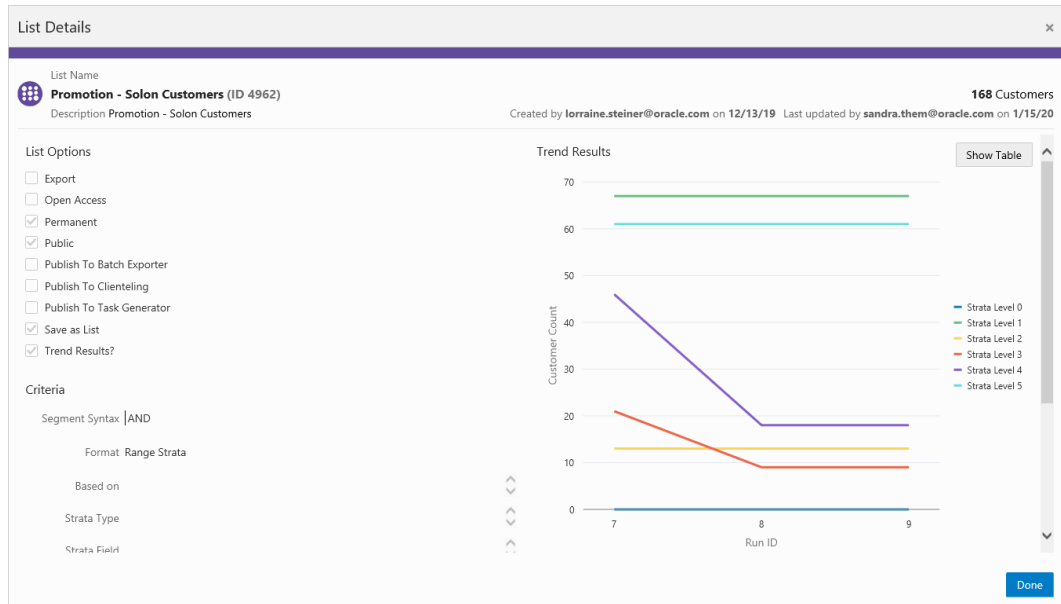


Figure 6-127 Trend Results Graph - Table

Trend Results							Show Chart
Run ID	Run Date	Strata Level	Customer Count	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Average Value	
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	1	99	0	0	0	
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	2	92	0	0	0	
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	3	93	0	0	0	
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	1	99	0	0	0	
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	2	92	0	0	0	
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	3	93	0	0	0	

Figure 6-128 List Details Trend Results - Table

The screenshot shows the 'List Details' window for a list named 'Franchise 1,2,5,6 (ID 1141)'. It includes a 'List Options' section with checkboxes for 'Export', 'Open Access', 'Permanent', 'Public', 'Publish To Reach Exporter', 'Publish To Clienteling', 'Publish To Task Generator', 'Save as List', and 'Trend Results'. The 'Criteria' section shows a segment syntax: 'Customer city of residence = Minneapolis AND Customer State = MN AND Selected Franchises'. The 'Format' is 'Nile Strata' and 'Based on' is 'Customer'. The 'Trend Results' table shows three runs with a customer count of 7 each. The 'Strata Levels Against Annual Income' table shows counts for Rich (7), Medium (7), and Poor (7).

Run ID	Run Date	Strata Level	Customer Count	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Average Value
0	8/30/22, 3:44 PM	1	7	0	0	0
0	8/30/22, 3:44 PM	2	7	0	0	0
0	8/30/22, 3:44 PM	3	7	0	0	0

Strata Name	Customer Count
Rich	7
Medium	7
Poor	7

- Click **Done** to close the Audience List Details window.

Figure 6-129 Audience Definition - Exclude Audience Groups

The screenshot shows the 'Audience Definition' window. Under 'Audience Rules', 'Audience' is set to 'Exclusive' and 'Selection Method' is 'Static'. The 'Update Method' is 'New audience members will be added'. The 'Define Audience' section shows '18 in Audience' and '0 Eligible for Bounceback'. The 'Included Audience Groups' section has a red box around the 'Exclude Audience Groups' link. Below is a table for 'Included Audience Groups' with columns for Group Name, Included Lists, Strata Level and Name, Count, and Audience Count. The table currently shows 'No Audience Groups Added'. A 'Next' button is at the bottom right.

Group Name	Included Lists	Strata Level and Name	Count	Audience Count
No Audience Groups Added				

Exclude Audience Groups - If you wish to exclude certain groups of customers that may also be a part of the Included Group, you can do that by selecting the **Exclude Audience Groups** link, which opens a new section in the Audience Definition window

- Select the **Exclude Audience Groups** link.
- Click **+ Add Audience Group**.
- Select an Available List type.
- — **All** – Default group listing.

- **Stratified** – The Customers within a Stratified list are divided into levels.
 - **Unstratified** – The Customers within an Unstratified list are not differentiated into separate groups.
 - **Personal** – User created groups.
- In the Search field, enter some or all of the **List Name, ID, or Strata Name**.
 - Click **Search**.
 - The results can be sorted by using the **Sort by list** menu with the following options:
 - Last Updated
 - Name
 - Customer Count
 - Enter a **Group Name**.
 - Click **Add** to add the selection Assigned Audience Lists.
 - Click **Add** for another list means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.
 - Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition **OR**. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add** for another Audience Group.
15. When finished entering all Audience Groups for the Promotion, click **Next**.
- If the Selection Method selected in **Step 14**, is Static, continue to the next tab, the **Filtering Audience** tab.
 - If the Selection Method selected in **Step 14** is Dynamic, continue to **Step 20**, the **Control Groups** tab.
16. Enter the following for the **Filtering Audience** tab.

Figure 6-130 Filtering Audience Tab

Audience Filter

Audience Filtering

Customer Household Consolidation: 2,223,062 Audience Count 0 Filtered Count

Audience Group Name	Audience Count	Approximate Household Count	Filter	Filter Value
Loyalty	2223062	2222617	<input type="button" value="None"/> <input type="button" value="Top Sales"/> <input type="button" value="Random"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>

Next >

Use the **Customer Household Consolidation Selection Menu** to indicate whether the Promotion will use household consolidation, and the rule for determining the Customer who is the head of household.

- **None** – Do not perform household filtering.

- **LT Sales** – Select head of household based on amount purchased over the lifetime of their account.
- **LT Transaction Count** – Select head of household based on lifetime number of transactions.
- **Last Transaction Date** – Select head of household based on the Customer who performed the most recent transaction.
- **Customer Attributes** – Select head of household based on the Customer's numeric attributes.

Select the **Filter Type** for each Audience:

Figure 6-131 Select Desired Filtering

Audience Filter

Audience Filtering

Customer Household Consolidation: None

2,223,062 Audience Count | 0 Filtered Count

Audience Group Name	Audience Count	Approximate Household Count	Filter	Filter Value
Loyalty	2223062	2222617	None Top Sales Random	0

Next >

- **None** - [DEFAULT] All Customers in the Audience Group are eligible.
- **Top Sales** - Customers from the Audience Group will be chosen for eligibility by the greatest total amount of purchases.
- **Random** - Customers from the Audience Group will be chosen randomly for eligibility.

Enter a **filter value** to indicate the number of customers eligible for the promotion.

17. When finished entering any household filtering for the Audience Groups for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Split Audience** tab.
18. In the Split Audience tab, filtered audiences can, optionally, be split into smaller, separate audiences. If desired, create splits for the filtered audiences on the promotion.
 - Click **Split**.

Figure 6-132 Split Audience Groups

Split Audience Groups

Audience Group Name Loyalty	Count 200	<input type="button" value="Split"/>
Name	Count	Percent
<input type="text" value="Loyalty_1"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="text" value="50.00"/>
<input type="text" value="Loyalty_2"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="text" value="50.00"/>

- The Split Name field is automatically populated from the name of the Audience Group Name. If desired, you can change the name of the splits in this step.
 - Select **Split** to automatically divide the Audience Group into equal portions and percentages. If you desire different portions or percentages for the splits, enter either a count or a percentage, and the corresponding field will update.
19. When finished entering any Audience Group splits for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Control Groups** tab.
 20. Enter the following information for the **Control Groups** tab.

Figure 6-133 Define Control Groups

Define Control Groups

Control Groups

Style

None

By Promotion

By Audience Group

Audience Group Name	Original Count	New Count	Percent
Loyalty_1	100	80	40.00
Loyalty_2	100	80	40.00
Control Group for Spring Sale	0	<input type="text" value="40"/>	<input type="text" value="20.00"/>
Total	200	200	100.00

The control group is a statistically identical group that doesn't receive the offer. Following the promotional period, the results of the two groups are compared and you can determine if the offer generated incremental revenue. Options include:

- **None** – No Control Group
- **By Promotion** – Enter either a New Count or Percent. The corresponding field will update automatically to determine the size of the control group.

- **By Audience Group** – Enter either a Control Group count or percentage for each split created earlier. The corresponding field will update automatically.
21. When finished entering any Control Groups for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Export Channels** tab.
 22. Enter the following information for the **Export Channels** tab. The options include:

Figure 6-134 Export Channels Tab

Export Channels

Audience Name Mail Email/Batch Exporter Phone Clienteling Clienteling Details

Loyalty_1
80 Customer(s) Assign Tasks To Location Associate

Filter

Loyalty_2
80 Customer(s)

Batch Exporter

Export Filename	Prefix	Static Name	Suffix
Audience Export filename	yyyyMMdd_HHmss	_PromotionTargetsSync	None
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmss}_PromotionTargetsSync			
Offers Export filename	yyyyMMdd_HHmss	_PromotionDealsSync	None
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmss}_PromotionDealsSync			
Offers and Promo-Offers Attributes Export filename	yyyyMMdd_HHmss	_PromotionDealsAttributesSy	None
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmss}_PromotionDealsAttributesSync			
Promotion Export filename	yyyyMMdd_HHmss	_PromotionSync	None
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmss}_PromotionSync			

Next >

Mail - Determines whether the Customers in the Split/Control Group will be contacted by Mail.

Email / Batch Exporter - Determines whether the Customers in the Split/Control Group will be contacted by Email.

Note:

The system configuration setting *SupportedBatchExporters* determines if the Batch Exporter section is displayed.

- Export Filename – Name of the file.
- Prefix – Indicates the format of the datetime stamp used as a prefix the filename. Optional. Possible settings are yyyyMMdd_HHmss, yyyy-MMdd_HHmss, or none.
- Static Name – The identifying filename.
- Suffix – Indicates the format of the datetime stamp used as a suffix the filename. Optional. Possible settings are yyyyMMdd_HHmss, yyyy-MMdd_HHmss, or none.
- Filename – Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any.

Phone - Determines whether the Customers are contacted by phone.

Clienteling – When the Clienteling switch is turned on, tasks will be created based on the assigned associates or locations for the defined target audience when the promotion is generated.

Figure 6-135 Clienteling Details

The screenshot shows the 'Export Channels' configuration interface. At the top, there is a purple header 'Export Channels'. Below it, a navigation bar includes 'Audience Name', 'Mail', 'Email/Batch Exporter', 'Phone', 'Clienteling', and 'Clienteling Details'. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'Loyalty_1' and 'Loyalty_2', each with '80 Customer(s)'. The 'Loyalty_2' section is active and shows several settings: 'Assign Tasks To' is set to 'Location' (radio button selected), 'Filter' is checked, 'Max Count Per Location' is a required empty text field, and 'Method' is set to 'Random' with a dropdown menu open showing options: 'Random', 'Top - Recent Purchase', 'Top - LT Sales', and 'Top - Numeric Attribute'. Below this, the 'Batch Exporter' section shows 'Export Filename', 'Prefix', and 'Static Name' fields, with a note: 'No Batch Exports (based on current Email Channel selections)'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right.


Assign Tasks to:

- **Location Channel** – Tasks are assigned to a Location.
- **Associate Channel** – Tasks are assigned to an associate in a location.

The following fields are enabled if the Filter option is selected:

- **Max Count Per <type>** - Determines the maximum number of target Customers that will be contacted through the channel.

- **Method** - Method used to select the Customers contacted. Options include:
 - **Random** - Select Customers Randomly (Default).
 - **Top - Recent Purchase** - Filter the Customers based on the most recent purchases.
 - **Top - LT Sales** - Filter the Customers based on the largest amount purchased over the lifetime of their account.
 - **Top - Numeric Attribute** - Filter the Customers based on the highest attribute value for a selected numeric attribute. If this option is selected, an additional Channel Filter option, Attribute, displays. Attribute is the numeric attribute used to determine the customers contacted
23. When finished entering any Export Channels for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Event Definition** tab.
- If Clienteling is not enabled, proceed to **Step 26**, the Budget Tab.
 - If Clienteling is enabled, proceed to **Step 24**, the Event Definition tab.
24. Enter the following information on the Event Definition tab.

 **Note:**


The Event Definition Tab displays only when the Promotion uses the Clienteling Channel.

Figure 6-136 Event Definitions Tab


Event Definition

Event Description

Spring Udate Event


Image
Edit

Event Task Escalation

Escalate days before task end date 

Event Documents

Actions + ×

There are no documents attached for this event.

Next >

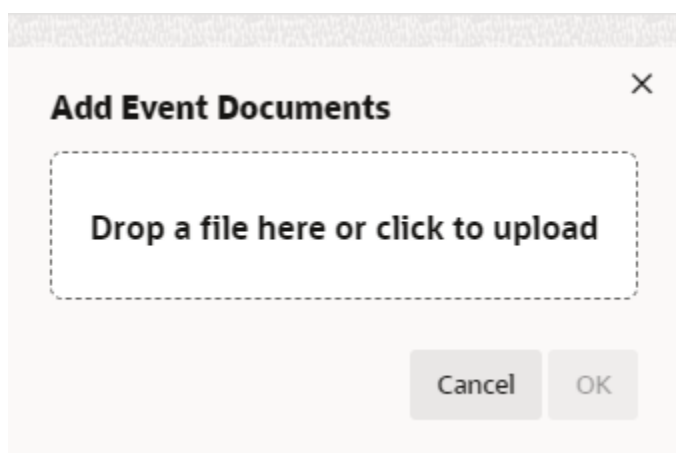
Enter a **description** of the Event in the Event Description field (required).
 Select the **Edit** option to add an image to the Event.

- a. Perform one of the following actions:
 - Click **Drop a new image here or click to upload** to add the image and continue to Step 31.b.
 - Enter a **URL** in **Or Via URL** and click **Upload** and continue to Step 31.b.
 - Click **Remove Image** to remove the image and continue to Step 31.b.
- b. Click **Done** to save the changes and close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving any changes.

Event Task Escalation – This option will flag an Event Task for the promotion as high priority on the Day Planner Task panel based on the number days before the end date of the promotion event task.

Event Documents – Click the Action Menu, and click Add, or click the Add icon (+) to open the Add Event Documents window.

Figure 6-137 Add Event Documents



- Use the **Drop a file here or click to upload area** to add an event document.
 - Click **OK** to save the changes and close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving any changes.
25. When finished entering any Event Definitions for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Budget** tab.
 26. Enter the following information on the **Budget** tab.

Figure 6-138 Budget Tab

Budget

Promotion Costs

Description	Budget Amount	Actual Amount
	\$0.00	\$0.00

Add

Audience Group Name	Channel	Quantity	Budget Fixed	Budget CPM	Budget Total	Actual Fixed	Actual CPM	Actual Total
Loyalty_1	Clienteling	80	<input type="text" value="500"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	508	<input type="text" value="20"/>	<input type="text" value="110"/>	28.8
					\$508.00			\$28.80

Next >

- a. Click **Add** to enter the Promotion Costs. Enter values in any field is optional.
- b. Enter a **Description** of the cost item.
- c. Enter the **budgeted amount** for the Promotion in the Budget Amount field.
- d. Enter the **actual amount** for the Promotion in the Actual Amount field.
- e. Click **Add** if you wish to enter another budget line for the promotion, then follow Steps **a-d** to complete the fields.

If Export Channels were selected for the audience group, the Audience Groups Costs section appears. Entering values in any field is optional.

Figure 6-139 Audience Group Costs

Audience Group Name	Channel	Quantity	Budget Fixed	Budget CPM	Budget Total	Actual Fixed	Actual CPM	Actual Total
Loyalty_1	Clienteling	80	<input type="text" value="500"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	508	<input type="text" value="20"/>	<input type="text" value="110"/>	28.8
Loyalty_2	Email	80	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	0	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	0
					\$508.00			\$28.80

- f. In the Budget-Fixed field, enter the **fixed cost budgeted** for the audience.
- g. In the Budget-CPM field, enter the **cost budgeted** for the Channel for each 1,000 Customers.
- h. In the Actual-Fixed field, enter the **actual fixed cost** of the Channel.
- i. In the Actual-CPM field, enter the **actual cost** of the Channel for each 1,000 Customers.

- j. Repeat **steps f-i** for each Target Channel in the Promotion.
- 27. When finished entering any Budget Costs for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Save Options** tab.
- 28. Enter the following information in the **Save Options** tab. You can enter more than one choice.

Figure 6-140 Options After Save Tab

Options After Save

After saving this promotion, also perform the following actions:

- Generate**
Start a job to generate promotion audience data.
- Approve**
Set this promotion's status to Approved.
- Export**
Start a job to create files for exporting this promotion to an external/POS/batch system.
- Apply Offers Immediately**
Indicate offers should be applied immediately to downstream systems.

Dynamic Promotion Options

Set the export option for the Dynamic Promotion Job processing.

- Output Additions Only**
Only customers added to the event as a result of segment processing will be exported.
- Output All Updates**
All customers updated or added to the event as a result of segment processing will be exported.

Next >

- **Generate** – Start a job to generate promotion audience data.
- **Approve** – Set this promotion's status to Approved.
- **Dynamic Promotion Options** – Select one of the two export options for processing when using the Dynamic selection method on the Audience tab.

 **Note:**

Depending on the type of promotion that you created, different Options After Save are available.

29. When finished entering any Save Options for the Promotion, click **Next**.
30. The **Review** tab displays the key elements in the Promotion Setup.

Figure 6-141 Review Tab

The screenshot shows the 'Review' tab of a promotion setup interface. At the top, there is a purple header with the word 'Review'. Below this, a table displays promotion details: Promotion Name (Spring Sale), Description (Sale for Spring), Campaign Name (Spring Sale), and Timeframe (3/3/23 12:00 AM - 3/17/23 11:59 PM). To the right of the table is a button labeled 'Points for Marketing Engagements'. Below the table, there are two main sections: '1 Offers' and '2 Loyalty Program Levels'. The '1 Offers' section shows a list of offers with 'Marketing Engagements' selected, and 'Intended Use' set to 'Loyalty Marketing Engagement'. The '2 Loyalty Program Levels' section shows '\$20 Gift Card' and 'LAC.' with two levels listed. At the bottom right, there are four buttons: 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

31. Click **OK** to save the Promotion, or click **Cancel** to close the promotion without saving. Click **Previous** or any **Tab** to return to any point of the Create Promotion process.

Creating a Points Promotion

There are a few choices available to start the process of creating a promotion. The **Create Promotion** button is available in both the Promotion Home window as well as the Promotion Search window.



Note:

You will need the Promotion Home role to access the Promotion Home window.

1. Click **Create Promotion**, which opens up the Promotion wizard to the Information tab.

Figure 6-142 Information Tab - Points

Create Promotion

1 Information 2 Franchisees 3 Attributes 4 Bonus Points 5 Budget 6 Save Options 7 Review

Promotion Definition

Promotion Type

- Coupon**
Utilizes embedded coupons placed in various media, such as magazines or newspapers.
 Coupon Serialization
- Product**
Receive monetary savings in exchange for the purchase of specific merchandise
- Message**
Send out communications not specifically associated with any offers
- Award**
Award entitlement coupons or e-awards
- Points for Purchase**
Members earn points as a reward for a purchase activity
- Points for Marketing Engagements**
Members earn points for completing activities outside of a purchase, such as responding to Surveys or Social sharing.
- Points** ✓
Award a defined number of points to loyalty accounts based on selected loyalty programs and levels

Campaign

- Auto-create campaign
- Associate this promotion with an existing campaign
- Create a new campaign for this promotion

Promotion Name and Date Range

Name Required

POS Name

Description Required

Start Date Required

Start Time

End Date Required

End Time

Promotion Information

Information
No information entered

Franchisees
All Franchisees defined

Attributes
No promotion attributes defined

Bonus Points
No Programs Defined

Budget
No budget details defined

Save Options
No save options to display

Next >

Previous Next Cancel OK

2. Select the Promotion Type: **Points** **Note:**

Contact your administrator if you do not see the Promotion Types needed for your promotion

3. Select one of the choices for the Campaign.

- **Auto-create Campaign** – The campaign is automatically created and will use the same name and description from the promotion name and description.
- **Associate this promotion with an existing campaign** – Uses existing campaigns in the system.
 - Click the list arrow and select an **existing campaign**.

Note:

The Start Date and End Date display underneath the Existing Campaign list.

- **Create a new campaign for this promotion** – A new campaign is created with this promotion being the first added.

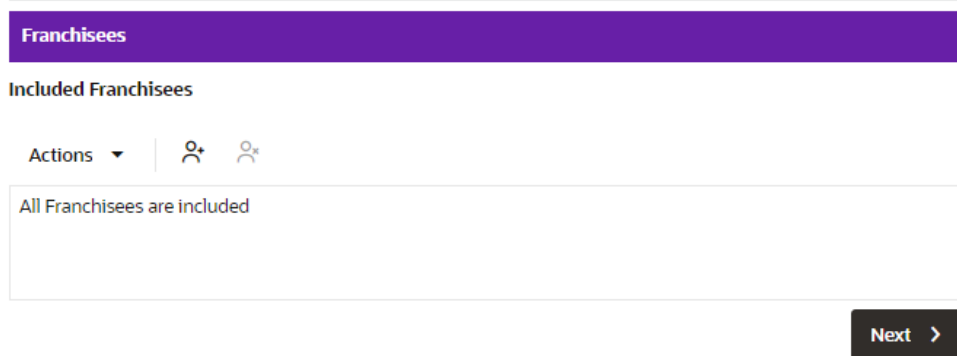
4. Enter the following information:
 - Enter a **Campaign Name** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Description** (for new Campaigns only).
 - Enter a **Name**.
 - Enter a **POS Name**.
 - Enter a **Description**.
 - Select a **Start Date**.
 - Select a **Start Time**.
 - Select an **End Date**.
 - Select an **End Time**.
5. When finished entering the Campaign and Promotion information, click **Next** to continue to the **Franchisees** tab.

 **Note:**

This tab will only display if the `EnableFranchiseSupport` configuration is enabled, and Franchisees have been created.

6. By default, all franchisees are assigned to the promotion. To make changes to those assignments, do the following:

Figure 6-143 Franchisees Tab



Assigning a Franchisee

- a. Click the **Actions Menu**, then, click **Assign**, or click the **Add (+)** icon. This opens the Add Franchisee window.

Figure 6-144 Assign Franchisee

Assign Franchisee to [Redacted]

Search for Franchisee

Search by Franchisee ID or Name or Description [X] Search

Search Results

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations	
[S] [Redacted] Franchisee 1 (ID 1)	[Redacted] Franchisee 1	1	Unassign

Unassign All

Cancel OK

- b. In the Search for franchisee search box, enter part or all of the **Name**, **ID**, or **Description**, then click **Search**.

Note:

You can also leave blank and click Search to return all Franchisees.

- c. To change the assignment from ALL (which is defaulted) click **Assign** on just the specific franchisees you wish to assign for this promotion. Only Franchisees associated with the user are displayed in the list.
- d. Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Figure 6-145 Confirmation Notification

Assigned franchisee has been successfully updated

Note:

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the franchisee has been assigned.

Deleting a Franchisee

- a. In the included Franchisees window, highlight the desired **row**.
- b. Click the **Action Menu**, and click **Delete**, or click the **X** icon.


 **Note:**




A confirmation notification appears to confirm the franchisee has been deleted.

7. When finished entering the Franchisees information, click **Next** to continue to the **Attributes** tab.
8. Enter the following for the **Attributes** tab.

Figure 6-146 Select Attributes

Attributes

 Promotion Attributes

Name	Value	Description
AUTHORIZED SIGNATURE	<input type="text" value="Character"/> + Add Another	Authorized Signature
IN MARKET DATE	<input type="text" value="M/d/y"/>  + Add Another	Date Promotion In the Market
MARKET CIRCULATION	<input type="text" value="Number"/> + Add Another	Market Circulation Count
MARKETING BUDGET	<input type="text" value="Currency"/> + Add Another	Promotion Marketing Budget
PROMOTION CHANNEL	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/>  + Add Another	Promotion Channel
Winter Promo?	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/>  	Winter Promo?

Next >

Complete values for any Promotion Attributes you want added to the promotion. Fields marked with an asterisk are required.

9. When finished adding Attributes for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Bonus Points** tab.
10. Take the following actions for the Bonus Points tab.

Figure 6-147 Bonus Points Tab

The screenshot shows the 'Bonus Points' configuration interface. At the top is a purple header with the text 'Bonus Points'. Below it is the 'Options' section, which contains three radio button options: 'Issue Points To' (with a help icon), 'Active Accounts at Promotion Start Date' (which is selected), 'Active Accounts Updated Dynamically', and 'Active Accounts With Registered Customers'. Below the options is the 'Included Programs' section, which includes a '+ Add Program' button, a 'Points' input field containing the value '0', and an 'Assign Points To All' button. At the bottom of this section is a table with three columns: 'Names and Levels', 'Points', and 'Cards'. The table is currently empty, displaying the message 'No data to display.'. At the bottom right of the interface is a dark grey button labeled 'Next >'.

11. Select one of the following options:

- **Active Accounts at Promo Start Date** -The bonus points will be applied to all active accounts for the selected Loyalty Programs and Levels. This will apply to all accounts regardless if there is a customer registered to the account.
- **Active Accounts Updated Dynamically** - The bonus points will be applied to all active accounts for the selected Loyalty Programs and Levels. Additionally, any accounts added during the promotion period will also receive the bonus points. This will apply to all accounts regardless if there is a customer registered to the account.
- **Active Accounts With Registered Customers** - The bonus points will be applied to all active accounts for the selected Loyalty Programs and Levels. This will apply to only accounts that have a customer registered to the account. Additionally, this will enable the Audience tab to display and provide the ability to further define the loyalty members that receive the promotion by selecting appropriate segments.

12. Click + **Add Programs**.

Result: The Add Programs window appears.

Figure 6-148 Add Programs

Add Programs ×

Search

Program Name

Description

Card
All

Programs

Sort By Program ID (descending)

No Programs Found

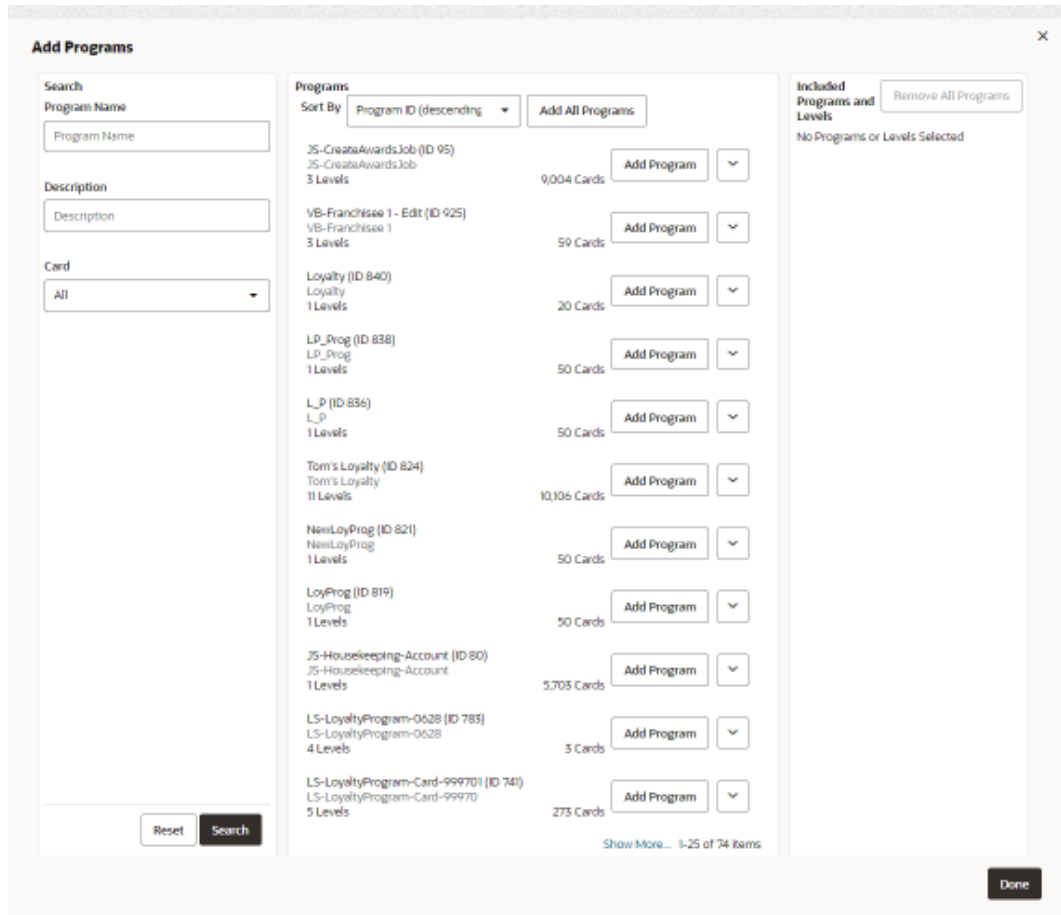
Included Programs and Levels

No Programs or Levels Selected

13. In the Search for programs search box, enter part or all of the **Program Name**, or **Description**.
14. Click the **Card** options list
 - Select a **Card**.

A list of cards display all active cards for the user to select from. If there is only one card to select from, the card appears by default and the list arrow is unavailable for selection. The default card selection is **All**.
15. Click **Search** to view the results, or click **Reset** to clear the selections. All programs appear if no criteria is entered.

Figure 6-149 Add Programs Search Results



- Sorting options include:
 - Program ID (ascending)
 - Program ID (descending) - Default
 - Program Name (ascending)
 - Program Name (descending)

16. To add a program perform one of the following options:

Figure 6-150 Programs Search Results Add Options

Programs

Sort By Program ID (descending ▼) Add All Programs

JS-CreateAwardsJob (ID 95)
JS-CreateAwardsJob
3 Levels

● BRONZE Level

● GOLD Level

● SILVER Level

9,004 Cards

3,700 Cards

0 Cards

5,304 Cards

Add Program ^

Add

Add

Add

VB-Franchisee 1 - Edit (ID 925)
VB-Franchisee 1
3 Levels

59 Cards

Add Program v

- Click **Add All Programs** to include all programs listed in the search results.
 - Click **Add Program** to include the program and all levels in that program.
 - Click either the up or down arrows located next to **Add Program** to hide/display the available levels for each program. Click **Add** to only add a specific loyalty level for each program.
17. To remove included programs and levels click the **X** icon for each entry. You can also click **Remove All Programs**.
 18. Click **Done**.

Result: The included programs appear and are ready for points value assignments.

Figure 6-151 Included Programs - Assign Points

Included Programs

+ Add Program | Points 0 Assign Points To All

Names and Levels	Points	Cards
JS-CreateAwardsJob (ID 95) 2 Levels Added		9,004
● BRONZE Level	<input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/>	3,700
● SILVER Level	<input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/>	5,304

 **Note:**

The last column header for the Included Programs are based on which Issue Points To option is selected. Active Accounts with Registered Customers are Members. All other options are Cards.

19. There are two options for adding points to the Included Programs:
 - To increase or decrease the number of points for all programs, either:
 - Enter the **number of points** in the Points field located next to the + Add Program button.
 - Use the up or down arrows to reach the desired number.
 - To increase or decrease the number of points for individual programs, either:
 - Enter the **number of points** in the Points field located in the table for each entry.
 - Use the up or down arrows to reach the desired number.
20. When finished configuring the Bonus Points for the Promotion, click **Next**.
 - If the Bonus Points issues points to Active Accounts at Promo Start Date, go to Step 31 to continue to the Budget tab.
 - If the Bonus Points issues points to Active Accounts Updated Dynamically, go to Step 31 to continue to the Budget tab.
 - If the Bonus Points issues points to Active Accounts with Registered Customers, continue to the next step, the Audience tab.
21. Take the following actions for the Audience tab.

Figure 6-152 Audience Tab

Audience Definition

Audience Rules

<p>Audience</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: flex; gap: 5px;"> All Exclusive Non-exclusive </div>	<p>Selection Method</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: flex; gap: 5px;"> Static Dynamic </div>	<p>Update Method <i>Unused with current selections</i></p>
---	---	---

Define Audience 👁️ 9,004 in Audience

Included Audience Groups Exclude Audience Groups

+ Add Audience Group

Group Name	Included Lists	Strata Level and Name	Count	Audience Count 👁️
No Audience Groups Added				

Next >

Audience Rules – Exclusive is the only option available for the Points Promotion to define the audience.

Exclusive Targeting - If you create an exclusive targeted promotion, this means that only the customers you've identified in your target group are eligible to receive the promotion at the point of sale.

- The Selection methods include:
 - **Static** – Only customers defined at this time are considered eligible for the promotion.
 - **Dynamic** – Dynamic can not only add customers but also remove customers that no longer apply. When Dynamic is selected, Update Method is available.

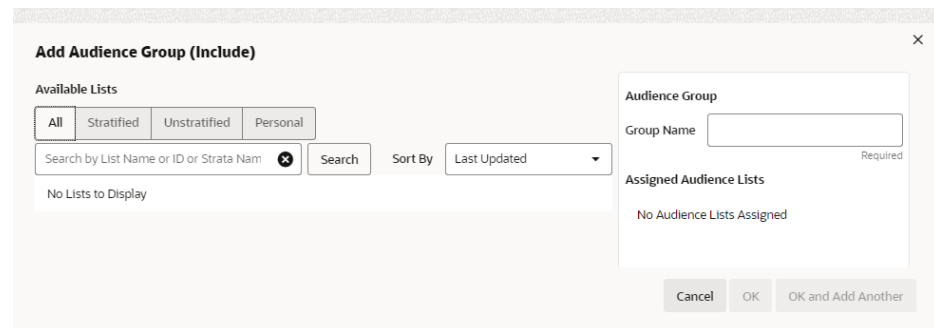
New audience members will be added – When the Dynamic and Recurring Promotions job runs, any new customers found that meet the criteria, are added to the audience. All customers currently in the audience will remain in the audience.

Audience members can be added and removed – When the Dynamic and Recurring Promotions job runs, any new customers found that meet the criteria, are added to the audience. Additionally, only the customers that meet the criteria will be included in the audience. If the customer is in the audience before the job runs, but no longer meets the criteria, the customer will be removed from the audience.

Define Audience - Included Audience Groups

- a. Click + **Add Audience Group**.

Figure 6-153 Add Audience Group (Include)

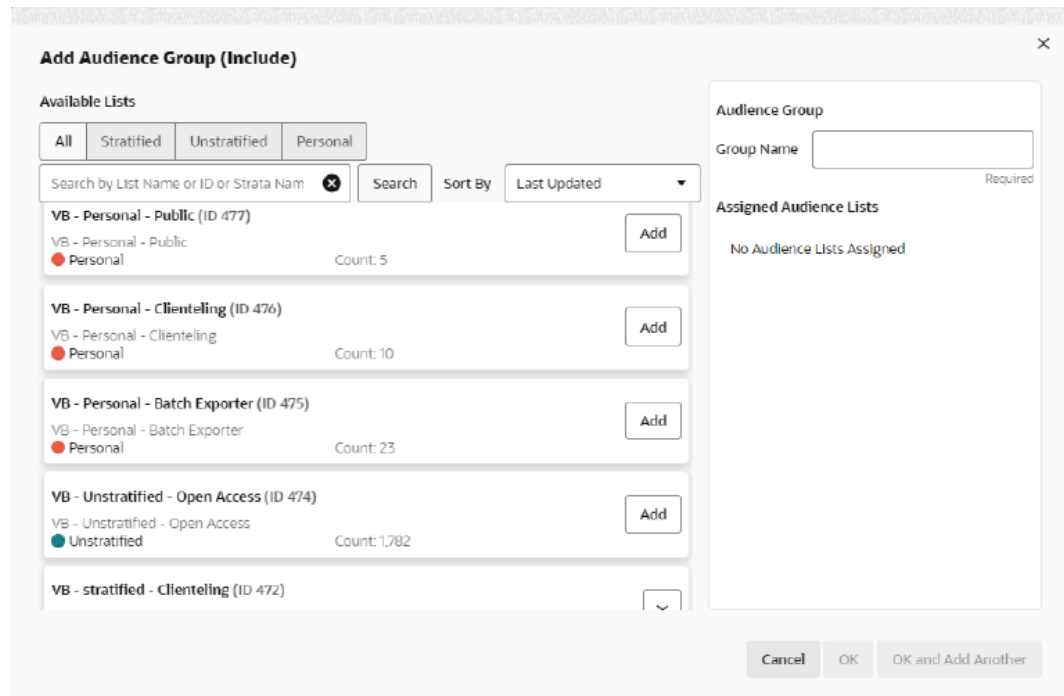


- b. Select an **Available List** type
 - All** - Default
 - Stratified** - The Customers within a Stratified list are divided into levels.
 - Unstratified** - Customers maintained by the user.
 - Personal** - Customers maintained by the user.
- c. In the Search field, enter some or all of the **List Name, ID, or Strata Name**.
- d. Click **Search**. The results can be sorted by using the Sort by list menu with the following options:
 - Last Updated
 - Name
 - Customer Count

e. Enter a **Group Name**.

When lists are added from the Available Lists area, they appear in the Audience Groups section of the window. The Audience Group section Group Name automatically defaults to the name of the first list added. You can change the Group Name to something more meaningful to describe the group of customers, if desired.

Figure 6-154 Add Audience Group (Include)



- a. Click **Add** to add the selection Assigned Audience Lists.
- b. Click **Add** for another list means you are using the condition AND. Both conditions must be met.
- c. Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition OR. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click Add for another Audience Group.

Figure 6-155 Audience Definition

Audience Definition

Audience Rules

Audience: All Exclusive Non-exclusive

Selection Method: Static Dynamic

Update Method: Unused with current selections

Define Audience: 2,223,062 in Audience 3 Eligible for Bounceback

Included Audience Groups [Exclude Audience Groups](#)

+ Add Audience Group

Group Name	Included Lists	Strata Level and Name	Count	Audience Count ⓘ
Loyalty	Loyalty (ID 1297)	All Strata	2,223,062	2,223,062

Next >

As shown in [Figure 6-155](#) the Count is shown for each audience group. In the Audience Rules section the Audience Count is provided on the right hand side.

Columns include the following details:

- Group Name
- Included Lists
- Strata Name and Level (if applicable)
- Count
- Audience Count

Each Group Name has an Overflow Menu Icon where you can Edit or Remove the Audience Group from the list.

The Included Lists column displays a link on that list (also known as a segment) and that link will open to the Audience List Details window.

In this window, the following sections may display, depending on the type of list and which of the options were selected when the list was created:

- List Options section
- Criteria section
- Trend Results section
- Strata Levels section
- Attributes section
- Franchisees section
- Message section
- Scheduled Jobs section

Figure 6-156 List Details

List Details [Close]

List Name: VB - Unstratified - Open Access (ID 474) 1,782 Customers
 Description: VB - Unstratified - Open Access Created by ORCE-Auto on 12/30/21

List Options

- Export
- Open Access
- Permanent
- Public
- Publish To Batch Exporter
- Publish To Clienteling
- Publish To Task Generator
- Save as List
- Trend Results

Criteria

Segment Syntax: Customer State = OH AND Selected Franchisees

Franchisees

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations
DQ-Ohio (ID 5)	Franchisee - Ohio	10

Trend Results

Run ID	Run Date	Customer Count
0	12/30/21, 4:20 AM	1,782

Message

Language: EN - English

POS Display: POS

Customer Display: Customer

Receipt Display: Receipt

Done

The checked List Options vary by the selections made when the list was created, and may include the following fields:

- **Export** – Indicates whether the Segment list is automatically exported after the Segment Query is run.
- **Open Access** – Indicates whether the Segment has Open Access.
- **Permanent** – Indicates whether the Segment is kept in the system, even if it meets the criteria for deletion by the housekeeping job.
- **Public** – Indicates whether the Segment is Public.
- **Publish to Batch Exporter** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available for export to a Marketing system.
- **Publish to Clienteling** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available to the Clienteling module.
- **Publish to Task Generator** – Indicates whether the Segment has been made available to the Task Generator Job.
- **Save as List** – Indicates whether a list of matching Customer IDs is created when the Segment is created.
- **Trend Results** – Indicates whether the results of the Segment run are kept to provide trend information about the Segment.

Figure 6-157 displays the Trend Results in a chart. A user can scroll down to see a table as shown in Figure 6-158, which for this segment shows the Strata Levels Against Customer Age and displays the strata that are shown in the graph.

Figure 6-157 List Details Trend Results - Chart

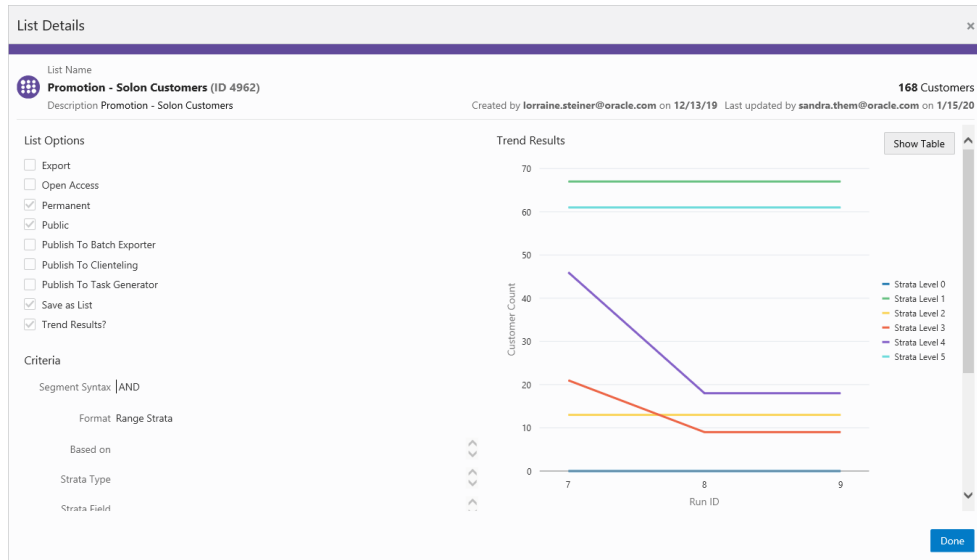


Figure 6-158 Trend Results Graph - Table

Strata Levels Against Annual Income

Strata Name	From (>=)	To (<)	Customer Count
Strata 1	0	50	2,216,204
Strata 3	51	>	6,858

Figure 6-159 List Details Trend Results - Table

Trend Results

Show Chart

Run ID	Run Date	Strata Level	Customer Count	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Average Value
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	1	99	0	0	0
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	2	92	0	0	0
95	1/29/21, 1:00 AM	3	93	0	0	0
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	1	99	0	0	0
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	2	92	0	0	0
94	1/27/21, 4:36 AM	3	93	0	0	0

- Click **Done** to close the Audience List Details window.

Figure 6-160 Audience Definition - Exclude Audience Groups

The screenshot shows the 'Audience Definition' window. At the top, there's a purple header. Below it, the 'Audience Rules' section includes 'Audience' (All, Exclusive, Non-exclusive), 'Selection Method' (Static, Dynamic), and 'Update Method' (New audience members will be added, Audience members can be added and removed). The 'Define Audience' section shows '18 in Audience' and '0 Eligible for Bounceback'. The 'Included Audience Groups' section has a red box around the 'Exclude Audience Groups' link. Below that is a table with columns: Group Name, Included Lists, Strata Level and Name, Count, and Audience Count. The table is currently empty with the text 'No Audience Groups Added'. A 'Next >' button is at the bottom right.

Exclude Audience Groups - If you wish to exclude certain groups of customers that may also be a part of the Included Group, you can do that by selecting the **Exclude Audience Groups** link, which opens a new section in the Audience Definition window

- Select the **Exclude Audience Groups** link.
- Click **+ Add Audience Group**.
- Select an Available List type.
 - **All** – Default group listing.
 - **Stratified** – The Customers within a Stratified list are divided into levels.
 - **Unstratified** – The Customers within an Unstratified list are not differentiated into separate groups.
 - **Personal** – User created groups.
- In the Search field, enter some or all of the **List Name, ID, or Strata Name**.
- Click **Search**.
- The results can be sorted by using the **Sort by list** menu with the following options:
 - Last Updated
 - Name
 - Customer Count
- Enter a **Group Name**.
- Click **Add** to add the selection Assigned Audience Lists.
- Click **Add** for another list means you are using the condition **AND**. Both conditions must be met.

- Click **OK and Add Another** to keep you in the same window and use the condition OR. One or more of the conditions must be met when you click **Add** for another Audience Group.
22. When finished entering all Audience Groups for the Promotion, click **Next**.
- If the Selection Method selected in **Step 21**, is Static, continue to the next tab, the **Filtering Audience** tab.
 - If the Selection Method selected in **Step 21** is Dynamic, continue to **Step 27**, the **Control Groups** tab.
23. Enter the following for the **Filtering Audience** tab.

Figure 6-161 Filtering Audience Tab

Audience Filter

Audience Filtering

Customer Household Consolidation: None 2,223,062 Audience Count 0 Filtered Count

Audience Group Name	Audience Count	Approximate Household Count	Filter	Filter Value
Loyalty	2223062	2222617	None Top Sales Random	0

Next >

Use the **Customer Household Consolidation Selection Menu** to indicate whether the Promotion will use household consolidation, and the rule for determining the Customer who is the head of household.

- **None** – Do not perform household filtering.
- **LT Sales** – Select head of household based on amount purchased over the lifetime of their account.
- **LT Transaction Count** – Select head of household based on lifetime number of transactions.
- **Last Transaction Date** – Select head of household based on the Customer who performed the most recent transaction.
- **Customer Attributes** – Select head of household based on the Customer's numeric attributes.

Select the **Filter Type** for each Audience:

Figure 6-162 Select Desired Filtering

- **None** - [DEFAULT] All Customers in the Audience Group are eligible.
- **Top Sales** - Customers from the Audience Group will be chosen for eligibility by the greatest total amount of purchases.
- **Random** - Customers from the Audience Group will be chosen randomly for eligibility.

Enter a **filter value** to indicate the number of customers eligible for the promotion.

24. When finished entering any household filtering for the Audience Groups for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Split Audience** tab.
25. In the Split Audience tab, filtered audiences can, optionally, be split into smaller, separate audiences. If desired, create splits for the filtered audiences on the promotion.
 - Click **Split**.

Figure 6-163 Split Audience Groups

- The Split Name field is automatically populated from the name of the Audience Group Name. If desired, you can change the name of the splits in this step.
- Select **Split** to automatically divide the Audience Group into equal portions and percentages. If you desire different portions or percentages for the splits, enter either a count or a percentage, and the corresponding field will update.

26. When finished entering any Audience Group splits for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Control Groups** tab.
27. Enter the following information for the **Control Groups** tab.

Figure 6-164 Define Control Groups

Define Control Groups

Control Groups

Style

None	By Promotion	By Audience Group
------	---------------------	-------------------

Audience Group Name	Original Count	New Count	Percent
Loyalty_1	100	80	40.00
Loyalty_2	100	80	40.00
Control Group for Spring Sale	0	<input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="40"/>	<input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="20.00"/>
Total	200	200	100.00

Next >

The control group is a statistically identical group that doesn't receive the offer. Following the promotional period, the results of the two groups are compared and you can determine if the offer generated incremental revenue. Options include:

- **None** – No Control Group
 - **By Promotion** – Enter either a New Count or Percent. The corresponding field will update automatically to determine the size of the control group.
 - **By Audience Group** – Enter either a Control Group count or percentage for each split created earlier. The corresponding field will update automatically.
28. When finished entering any Control Groups for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Export Channels** tab.
 29. Enter the following information for the **Export Channels** tab. The options include:

Figure 6-165 Export Channels Tab

Export Channels

Audience Name	Mail	Email/Batch Exporter	Phone	Clienteling	Clienteling Details
Loyalty_1 80 Customer(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Assign Tasks To <input checked="" type="radio"/> Location <input type="radio"/> Associate
Filter <input type="checkbox"/>					
Loyalty_2 80 Customer(s)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Batch Exporter

Export Filename	Prefix	Static Name	Suffix
Audience Export filename	<input type="text" value="yyyyMMdd_HHmss"/>	<input type="text" value="_PromotionTargetsSync"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmss}_PromotionTargetsSync			
Offers Export filename	<input type="text" value="yyyyMMdd_HHmss"/>	<input type="text" value="_PromotionDealsSync"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmss}_PromotionDealsSync			
Offers and Promo-Offers Attributes Export filename	<input type="text" value="yyyyMMdd_HHmss"/>	<input type="text" value="_PromotionDealsAttributesSy"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmss}_PromotionDealsAttributesSync			
Promotion Export filename	<input type="text" value="yyyyMMdd_HHmss"/>	<input type="text" value="_PromotionSync"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Filename {yyyyMMdd_HHmss}_PromotionSync			

Next >

Mail - Determines whether the Customers in the Split/Control Group will be contacted by Mail.

Email / Batch Exporter - Determines whether the Customers in the Split/Control Group will be contacted by Email.

Note:

The system configuration setting *SupportedBatchExporters* determines if the Batch Exporter section is displayed.

- Export Filename – Name of the file.
- Prefix – Indicates the format of the datetime stamp used as a prefix the filename. Optional. Possible settings are yyyyMMdd_HHmss, yyyy-MMdd_HHmss, or none.
- Static Name – The identifying filename.

- **Suffix** – Indicates the format of the datetime stamp used as a suffix the filename. Optional. Possible settings are yyyyMMdd_HHmss, yyyy-MMdd_HHmss, or none.
- **Filename** – Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any.

Phone - Determines whether the Customers are contacted by phone.

Clienteling – When the Clienteling switch is turned on, tasks will be created based on the assigned associates or locations for the defined target audience when the promotion is generated.

Figure 6-166 Clienteling Details

The screenshot shows the 'Export Channels' configuration interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Audience Name', 'Mail', 'Email/Batch Exporter', 'Phone', 'Clienteling', and 'Clienteling Details'. The 'Clienteling Details' tab is active. Two channels are listed: 'Loyalty_1' (80 Customer(s)) and 'Loyalty_2' (80 Customer(s)). For 'Loyalty_2', the 'Clienteling' switch is turned on. Below this, there are settings for 'Assign Tasks To' (radio buttons for 'Location' and 'Associate'), a 'Filter' checkbox (checked), a 'Max Count Per Location' input field (marked as 'Required'), and a 'Method' dropdown menu. The dropdown menu is open, showing the following options: 'Random', 'Top - Recent Purchase', 'Top - LT Sales', and 'Top - Numeric Attribute'. At the bottom of the form, there is a 'Batch Exporter' section with fields for 'Export Filename', 'Prefix', and 'Static Name', and a note: 'No Batch Exports (based on current Email Channel selections)'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right.

Assign Tasks to:

- **Location Channel** – Tasks are assigned to a Location.
- **Associate Channel** – Tasks are assigned to an associate in a location.

The following fields are enabled if the Filter option is selected:

- **Max Count Per <type>** - Determines the maximum number of target Customers that will be contacted through the channel.
- **Method** - Method used to select the Customers contacted. Options include:
 - **Random** - Select Customers Randomly (Default).
 - **Top - Recent Purchase** - Filter the Customers based on the most recent purchases.

- **Top - LT Sales** - Filter the Customers based on the largest amount purchased over the lifetime of their account.
 - **Top - Numeric Attribute** - Filter the Customers based on the highest attribute value for a selected numeric attribute. If this option is selected, an additional Channel Filter option, Attribute, displays. Attribute is the numeric attribute used to determine the customers contacted
30. When finished entering any Export Channels for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Budget** tab.
31. Enter the following information on the **Budget** tab.

Figure 6-167 Budget Tab

Budget

Promotion Costs

Description	Budget Amount	Actual Amount
	\$0.00	\$0.00

Add

Audience Group Name	Channel	Quantity	Budget Fixed	Budget CPM	Budget Total	Actual Fixed	Actual CPM	Actual Total
Loyalty_1	Clienteling	80	500	100	508	20	110	28.8
\$508.00						\$28.80		

Next >

- a. Click **Add** to enter the Promotion Costs. Enter values in any field is optional.
- b. Enter a **Description** of the cost item.
- c. Enter the **budgeted amount** for the Promotion in the Budget Amount field.
- d. Enter the **actual amount** for the Promotion in the Actual Amount field.
- e. Click **Add** if you wish to enter another budget line for the promotion, then follow **steps a-d** to complete the fields.

If Export Channels were selected for the audience group, the Audience Groups Costs section appears. Entering values in any field is optional.

Figure 6-168 Audience Group Costs

Audience Group Name	Channel	Quantity	Budget Fixed	Budget CPM	Budget Total	Actual Fixed	Actual CPM	Actual Total
Loyalty_1	Clienteling	80	<input type="text" value="500"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	508	<input type="text" value="20"/>	<input type="text" value="110"/>	28.8
Loyalty_2	Email	80	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	0	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	0
					\$508.00			\$28.80

- f. In the Budget-Fixed field, enter the **fixed cost budgeted** for the audience.
 - g. In the Budget-CPM field, enter the **cost budgeted** for the Channel for each 1,000 Customers.
 - h. In the Actual-Fixed field, enter the **actual fixed cost** of the Channel.
 - i. In the Actual-CPM field, enter the **actual cost** of the Channel for each 1,000 Customers.
 - j. Repeat **steps f-i** for each Target Channel in the Promotion.
32. When finished entering any Budget Costs for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the **Save Options** tab.
33. Enter the following information in the **Save Options** tab. You can enter more than one choice.

Figure 6-169 Options After Save Tab

Options After Save

After saving this promotion, also perform the following actions:

- Generate**
Start a job to generate promotion audience data.
- Approve**
Set this promotion's status to Approved.
- Export**
Start a job to create files for exporting this promotion to an external/POS/batch system.
- Apply Offers Immediately**
Indicate offers should be applied immediately to downstream systems.

Dynamic Promotion Options

Set the export option for the Dynamic Promotion Job processing.

- Output Additions Only**
Only customers added to the event as a result of segment processing will be exported.
- Output All Updates**
All customers updated or added to the event as a result of segment processing will be exported.

Next >

- **Generate** – Start a job to generate promotion audience data.
- **Approve** – Set this promotion's status to Approved.
- **Export** – Start a job to create files for exporting this promotion to an external/POS/batch system. This option automatically approves the Promotion.
- **Dynamic Promotion Options** – Select one of the two export options for processing when using the Dynamic selection method on the Audience tab.

 **Note:**

Depending on the type of promotion that you created, different Options After Save are available.

34. When finished entering any Save Options for the Promotion, click **Next** to continue to the Coupon Review tab.
35. The **Review** tab displays the key elements in the Promotion Setup.

Figure 6-170 Review Tab

Promotion Name	POS Name	Description	Campaign Name	Timeframe	Points
Spring Points		Points for Spring	Spring Points	3/7/23 12:00 AM - 3/24/23 11:59 PM	

Locations	Loyalty Program Levels and Members	Audience
552 Locations Included: All Locations Defined Excluded: No Excluded Locations Defined	2 Loyalty Program Levels and 9,004 Loyalty Members Issue Points To: Active Accounts With Registered Customers 35-CreateAwards.Job 35-CreateAwards.Job BRONZE Level: 10 Bonus Points SILVER Level: 50 Bonus Points	261,481 Customers in Audience Audience: Exclusive Selection Method: Static Included: Ohio 261,481 Customers

Navigation: Previous, Next, Cancel, OK

36. Click **OK** to save the Promotion, or click **Cancel** to close the promotion without saving. Click **Previous** or any **Tab** to return to any point of the Create Promotion process.

Promotion Actions

From within the Promotion Home and Promotion Advanced Search windows, there are different Overflow Menus that enable you to perform some of following actions:

- **Approve** – Approves the promotion the user is viewing.
- **Duplicate** – Opens a new window enabling the promotion wizard for a copy of the existing promotion.
- **Edit** – Opens a new window enabling the promotion for editing.
- **Export Promotion Definition** – The definition of the Promotion is exported in a job, and associated export files are then attached to the Export Promotion in the Process Queue page.

Note:

This option is not available for an Award Promotion.

- **Export to Batch** – This option exports details about the Promotion, in a job, including the Offers, Attributes, Audience, and Serialized Coupons, if applicable. The files are listed in the Process Queue page under the Promotion Batch Export job for this Promotion.

Note:

This option is available only if one or more types are selected for the Supported Batch Exporter Types property in System Configuration.

- **Generate** – Creates generate job that can be accessed via the Job Process Queue.
- **Terminate** – This action will terminate the Promotion on the current date as well as disable the associated Offers on the Promotion.
- **View** – Opens a new window, displaying the Review tab for the Promotion.

 **Note:**

The options will vary based on the promotion type and the user permissions.

Figure 6-171 Promotion Home Overflow Menu Options: One or More Promotions

Promotion Home

Active Promotions
59

\$300,549,369.15
Revenue LTD

Active Offers
79

\$280,442,684.69
Revenue LTD

Promotion Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact

Search for a Program by Name or ID

Promotions

Promotion Name and Campaign Name	Type	Start Date	End Date	Offers	Status	Exported
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="radio"/> VB-Austin (ID 435) VB-Austin	Product	2/21/23	3/4/23	1	Saved	Yes

Create Promotion

Approve

Export Promotion Definition

Export To Batch

Terminate

From within the Promotion Quick Search window and the Promotion Advance Search window, you can check one or many of the individual promotions using the check box to the left of the Promotion row. Then you can click the Overflow Menu to perform the following actions against the promotions:

- Approve
- Export Promotion
- Export to Batch
- Terminate

Figure 6-172 Promotion Home Quick Search Overflow Menu Options: Single Promotion

Promotion Home

Active Promotions
59

\$300,549,369.15
Revenue LTD

Active Offers
79

\$280,442,684.69
Revenue LTD

Promotion Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact Create Promotion

Search for a Program by Name or ID Promotion Advanced Search

Promotions

Promotion Name and Campaign Name	Type	Start Date	End Date	Offers	Status	Exp	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VB-Austin (ID 435) VB-Austin	Product	2/21/23	3/4/23	1	Saved	Yes	⋮
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VB- Austin Coupon (ID 436) VB- Austin Coupon	Coupon	2/21/23	5/2/23	1	Conflict	Yes	⋮
<input type="checkbox"/> Test (ID 446) Test	Coupon	3/4/23	3/15/23	1	Clear	No	⋮
<input type="checkbox"/> Test (ID 445) Test	Coupon	3/4/23	3/15/23	1	Clear	No	⋮
<input type="checkbox"/> Test (ID 444) Test	Coupon	3/4/23	3/15/23	1	Clear	No	⋮
<input type="checkbox"/> Test (ID 443) Test	Coupon	3/3/23	3/15/23	1	Clear	No	\$0.00 ⋮

From within the Promotion Quick Search window and the Promotion Advance Search window, you can click the Overflow Menu to the right of the individual promotion, and perform the following actions:

- Approve
- Duplicate
- Edit
- Export Promotion Definition
- Export to Batch
- Generate
- Terminate
- View

Editing a Promotion

There are three places that a user can find the Edit option in order to edit a Promotion:

- Select **Edit** under the Action Menu (also known as the Overflow Menu) icon for each individual Promotion on the Promotion Advanced Search window.
- Select **Edit** in the Overflow Menu on each individual Promotion on the Promotion List window (which displays in the Promotion Home menu).

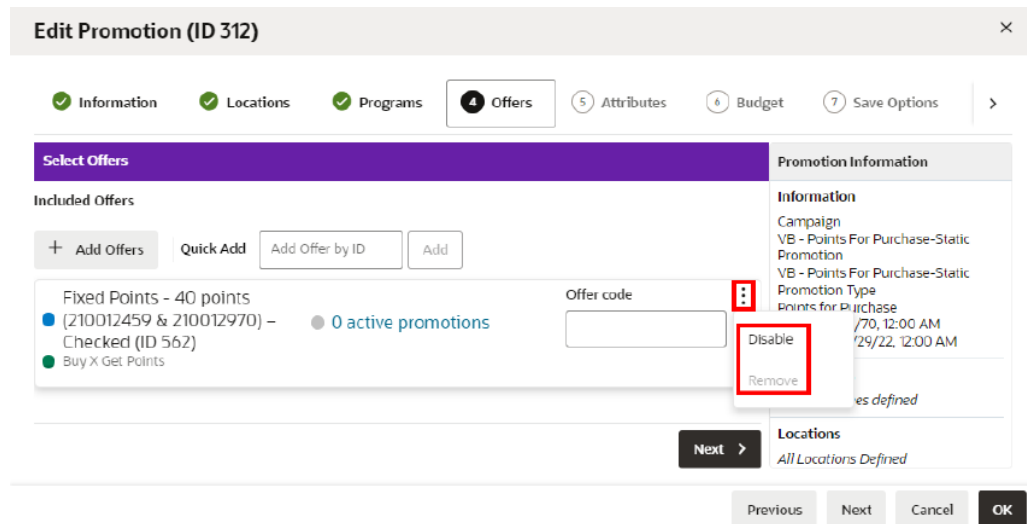
- Select **Edit** in the Overflow Menu for the individual Promotion on the Promotion Scorecard.

Figure 6-173 Edit Promotion

The screenshot displays the 'Edit Promotion (ID 350)' interface. At the top, there are five tabs: 1 Information, 2 Attributes, 3 Budget, 4 Save Options, and 5 Review. The 'Information' tab is active. The main content area is divided into two columns. The left column, titled 'Promotion Definition', contains several options: Coupon (selected), Product, Message, Award (checked with a checkmark), Points for Purchase, Points for Marketing Engagements, and Points. The right column, titled 'Promotion Information', contains details for the selected promotion: Campaign (Auto-create campaign selected), Promotion Name and Date Range (Name: XST 2 Promotion, Description: XST 2 Promotion, Start Date: 09/28/2022, Start Time: 12:00 AM, End Date: 09/30/2022, End Time: 11:59 PM), Franchisees (All Franchisees defined), Awards (Discount of Percent Off 50.00%), Attributes (No promotion attributes defined), Budget (No budget details defined), and Save Options (No save options to display). A 'Next' button is located at the bottom right of the main content area. At the very bottom of the interface, there are four buttons: Previous, Next, Cancel, and OK.

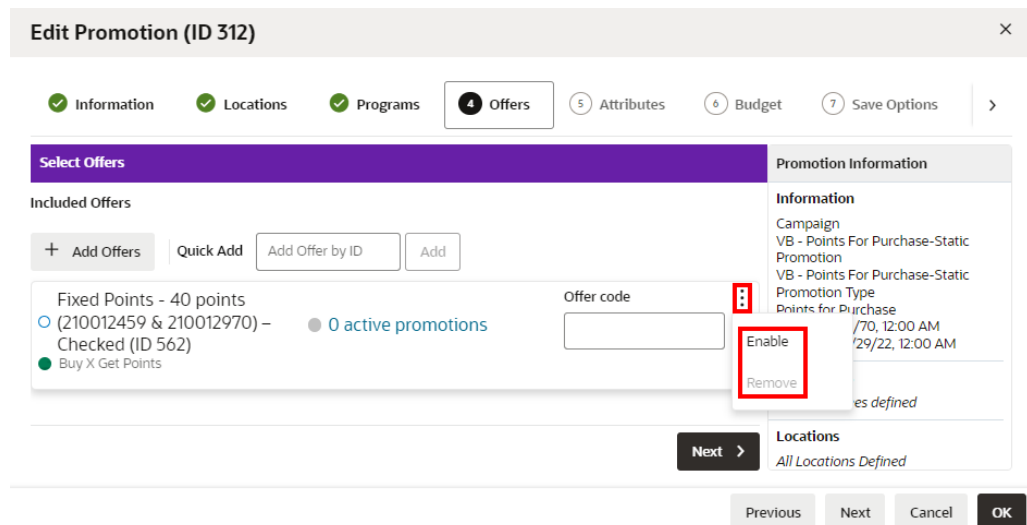
During the editing process an offer can be disabled by clicking the **Overflow Menu** and selecting **Disable**. Disabled offers have a Circle rather than a Dot next to the Offer Name.

Figure 6-174 Disable an Offer



Disabled offers can be enabled by clicking the **Overflow Menu** and selecting **Enable**. Enabled offers have a Dot rather than a Circle next to the Offer Name.

Figure 6-175 Enable an Offer



To edit other areas of the promotion, see [Creating a Coupon Promotion](#) for detailed information.

Editing a Promotion - Loyalty Bounceback

The Loyalty Bounceback that is available from the Information tab, the Programs tab, and the Offers tab are editable to allow you to modify the programs selected and the bounceback defined after the Coupon/Product promotion is created.

The ability to edit the promotion depends on whether or not the promotion has been generated.

See the following tab options when editing a Coupon/ Product promotion that includes a Loyalty Bounceback:

Information Tab

- You can change the Bounceback Type if the promotion has not been generated. All other fields can also be edited, with the exception of Campaign.
- When the Bounceback Type is changed, anything assigned to the offer on the Offers tab, is dropped.

 **Note:**

A warning appears. Click **OK** to remove all loyalty bounceback details, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

- You only have the ability to change the Name, Description and End Date fields after the promotion has been generated.

Programs Tab

- Existing program selections are set to default and are enabled when editing the promotion if the promotion has not been generated.
- When the promotion is generated, no changes to the Programs tab will be permitted.

Offers Tab

- All the fields included on the Offer tab are enabled when editing the promotion, if the promotion has not been generated.
- Existing offers cannot be removed after the promotion has been generated. However, they can be disabled. Additionally, a previously disabled offer can be re-enabled.

Duplicating a Promotion

To create a new Promotion with the same configurations as the current Promotion:

 **Note:**

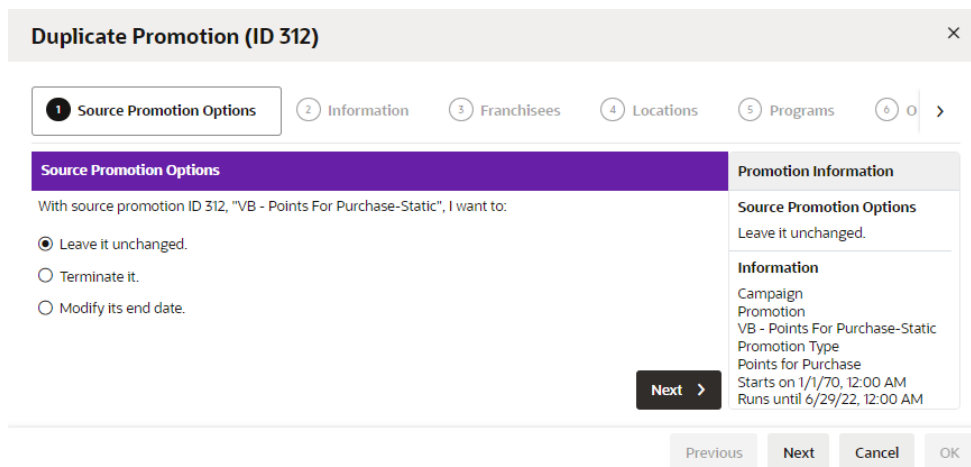
Some information will not be copied from the existing Promotion to the new Promotion:

- Auto-created Campaigns
- End Dates in the past
- Coupon configurations
- Target information
- Options after saving


1. There are three places that a user can find the Duplicate option in order to duplicate a Promotion:
 - Select **Duplicate** under the **Action Menu** (also known as the Overflow Menu) icon for each individual Promotion on the Promotion Advanced Search window.
 - Select **Duplicate** in the **Overflow Menu** on each individual Promotion on the Promotion List window (which displays in the Promotion Home menu).
 - Select **Duplicate** in the **Overflow Menu** for the individual Promotion on the Promotion Scorecard.

A copy of Promotion opens in the Promotion Wizard, prompting for the action to perform on the current Promotion.

Figure 6-176 Source Promotion Options



2. Select the action to perform on the existing Promotion:
 - Leave it unchanged. – Do nothing to change the existing Promotion.
 - Terminate and export it – Terminate the Promotion and export the termination to the POS systems.
 - Modify its end date and export it – Change the end date for the Promotion and export the Promotion, with its new end date, to the POS systems.

 **Note:**
 If you select this option, Customer Engagement prompts for the new End Date and End Time.

3. Click **Next**.
4. **Edit** the Promotion.
 - Use Wizard Navigation to move through the Wizard.
 - Make any necessary changes.
 - Click **Save** when you are finished making changes. The Wizard closes, saving the new Promotion and returning to the Promotion List.

- Click **Cancel** to exit the Wizard and return to the Promotion List without saving the new Promotion.

For more information about the fields and information to be entered, see [Creating a Coupon Promotion](#).

Promotion Scorecard

The Promotion Scorecard displays information about the Customer response to a Promotion.

Viewing the Promotion Scorecard

To access the Promotion Scorecard for summary information on a particular promotion, the user can select the link on the Promotion name on either the Promotion List or the Promotion Search results windows.

To access the Promotion List:

1. From the **Main** menu, click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Campaign**.
3. Click **Promotion Home**. This should default you to the Promotion List



Note:

You will need the Promotion Home role in order to see this menu option.

Figure 6-177 Promotion Home

Promotion Home

Promotion Home

Active Promotions	Active Offers
59	79
\$300,549,369.15 Revenue LTD	\$280,442,684.69 Revenue LTD

Promotion Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact

Search for a Program by Name or ID

Promotions

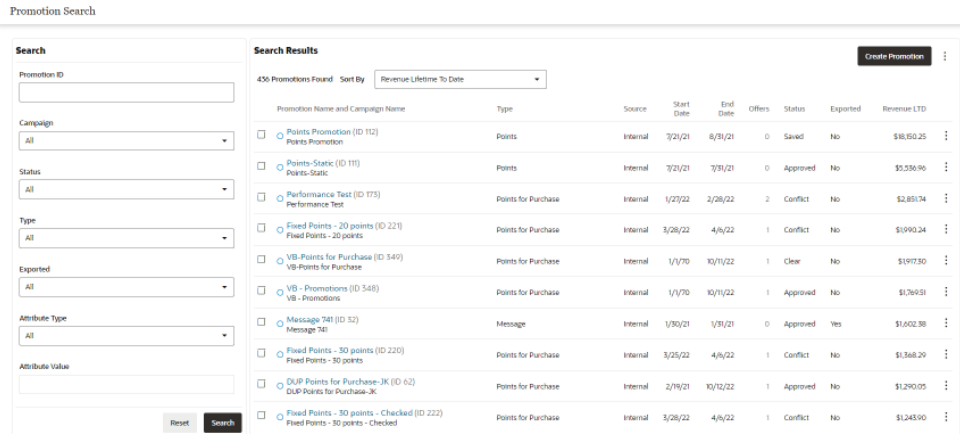
Promotion Name and Campaign Name	Type	Start Date	End Date	Offers	Status	Exported	Revenue LTD
<input type="checkbox"/> VB - Points For Purchase-Static (ID 312) VB - Points For Purchase-Static	Points for Purchase	1/1/70	6/29/22	1	Saved	No	\$497.56
<input type="checkbox"/> VB-Austin (ID 435) VB-Austin	Product	2/21/23	3/4/23	1	Saved	Yes	\$0.00
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VB-Austin Coupon (ID 436) VB-Austin Coupon	Coupon	2/21/23	3/2/23	1	Conflict	Yes	\$0.00

To access the Promotion Search results window:

1. From the **Main** menu, click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Campaign**.

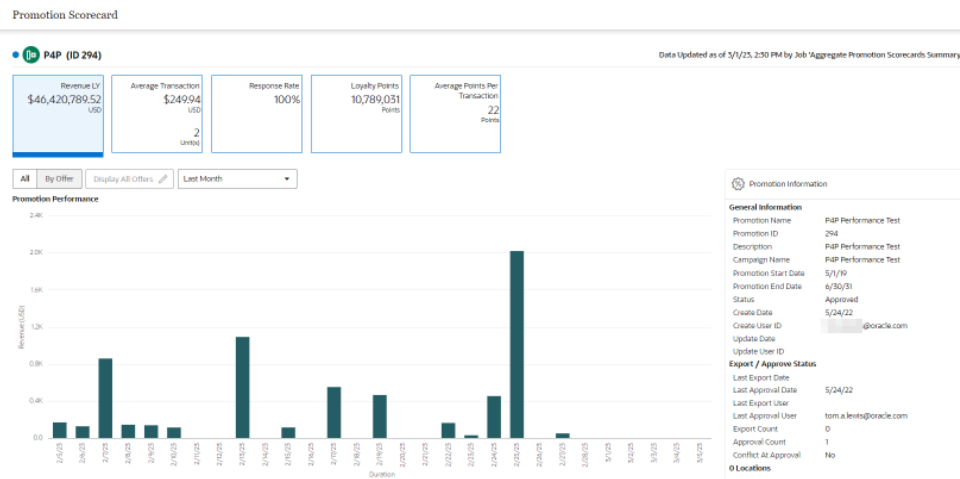
3. Click **Promotion Search**.
4. Enter **criteria** in the Search panel where you can search for a unique promotion, or click **Search** to retrieve all promotions.

Figure 6-178 Promotion Search



5. Select the **link** on a **Promotion Name**, which then opens the Promotion Scorecard for that promotion.
6. Click the **Revenue LY Metric Tile** to see the following information:

Figure 6-179 Promotion Scorecard - Revenue LY Metric Tile View



The Promotion Scorecard window displays the following sections:

- Title section (displays on all windows) – this contains the name and ID of the Promotion as well as an indicator of whether the promotion is currently active or inactive (a solid Blue Dot represents an Active Promotion while an Empty Dot represents an Inactive Promotion).
- Metric Tiles (displays on all windows) – The following metric tiles are included for the Promotion Scorecard:

- Revenue LY
- Average Transaction
- Response Rate
- Loyalty Points (Loyalty Only)
- Average Points Per Transaction (Loyalty Only)
- Filter/Sort Options
 - Filtering and sorting options for the Promotion Performance graph (displays only for the Revenue LY and Loyalty Points Metric tiles) - The following filter choices allow you to change the display in the Promotion Performance graph, and they include:
 - All – Displays total for All offers combined.
 - By Offer – Displays totals by individual offer.
 - Display all Offers – Filter the offers you wish to display in the Promotion Performance graph. This button is only available when By Offer is activated.

Figure 6-180 Filter Offers to Display

Filter Offers To Display X

2 Offers Displayed

Filters All ▾ Search by Name or ID 🔍 Search

Offer Details

Reg - Buy X Get Points (ID 323)
regression
● Buy X Get Points Intended Use: Loyalty

Buy X Get Points Offer (ID 468)
● Buy X Get Points Intended Use: Loyalty

Cancel OK

The Filters menu options on the Filter Offers to Display popup window will include the type of Offers that exist on the Promotion you are viewing.

- In the Filter Offers to Display popup window, you can also search by **Name** or **ID** and click **Search** to retrieve the list of offers on this promotion.

- From the list of filtered offers, select the **check box** for each offer you wish to display on the Promotion Performance graph.
- Click **OK** to display the offers in the graph, or click **Cancel** to return to the Scorecard without saving any filters.

Duration

- Last Week
- Last Month (Default)
- Last 6 Months
- Last Year
- Lifetime to Date – Offer performance for last five years

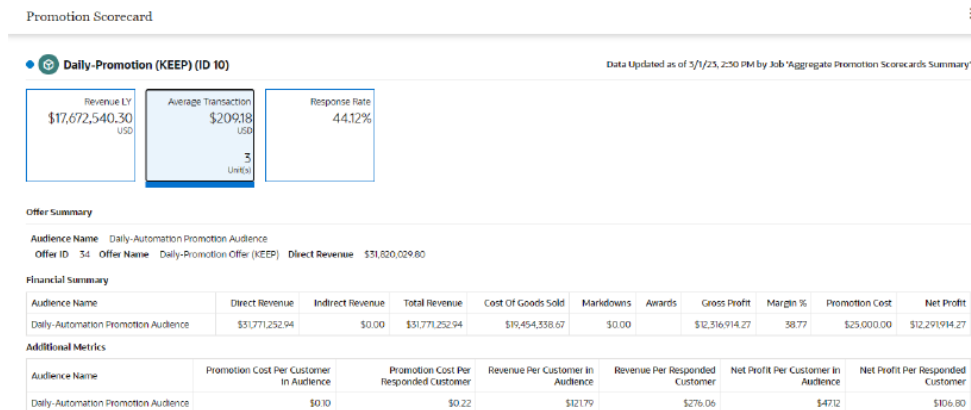
The Promotion Performance graph (displays only on the Revenue LY Metric tile) includes the following fields:

- Revenue
- Duration

The Promotion Information panel (displays only for the Revenue LY, Loyalty Points, and Average Points Per Transaction Metric tiles) See [Promotion Information - Scorecards](#) for more information.

7. Click the **Average Transaction Metric Tile** to see the following information:

Figure 6-181 Promotion Scorecard - Average Transaction Metric Tile Summary for a Product Promotion



Offer Summary – data displayed will depend on whether the promotion is a Product or Coupon Promotion. Award and Message type Promotions will not display an Offer Summary section.

- Audience Name
- Offer ID
- Offer Name
- Direct Revenue

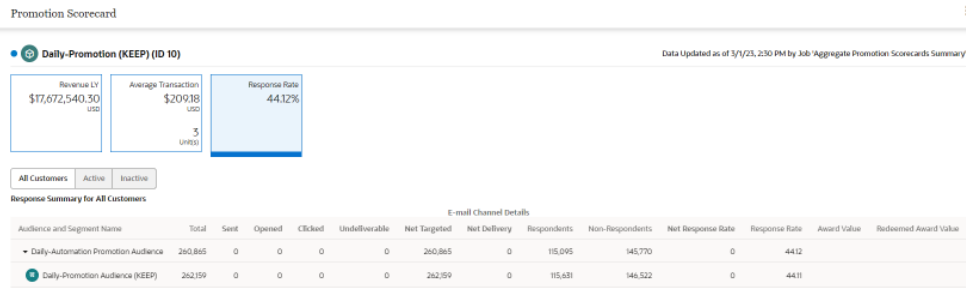
Financial Summary

- Audience Name
- Direct Revenue (Apply to Coupon Promotions Only)
 - Coupon Code
 - Respondents
 - Transactions
 - Value Of Discount
 - Average Sales By Coupon
 - Coupon Revenue
 - Estimated Distribution
 - Response %
- Indirect Revenue
- Total Revenue
- Cost of Goods Sold
- Markdowns
- Awards
- Gross Profit
- Margin %
- Promotion Cost
- Net Profit

Additional Metrics

- **Audience Name** – Name of the group of customers targeted for the Promotion.
 - **Promotion Cost Per Customer in Audience** – Cost of the Promotion per Customer targeted by the Promotion.
 - **Promotion Cost Per Responded Customer** – Cost of the Promotion per Customer who responded to the Promotion.
 - **Revenue Per Customer in Audience** – Revenue received from the Customers who were targeted for the Promotion.
 - **Revenue Per Responded Customer** – Revenue received from the Customers who responded to the Promotion.
 - **Net Profit Per Customer in Audience** – Net Profit from the Customers who were targeted for the Promotion.
 - **Net Profit Per Responded Customer** – Net Profit from the Customers who responded to the Promotion.
8. Click the **Response Rate Metric Tile** to see the following information which can be viewed by All Customers, Active, or Inactive:

Figure 6-182 Promotion Scorecard - Response Rate Metric Tile

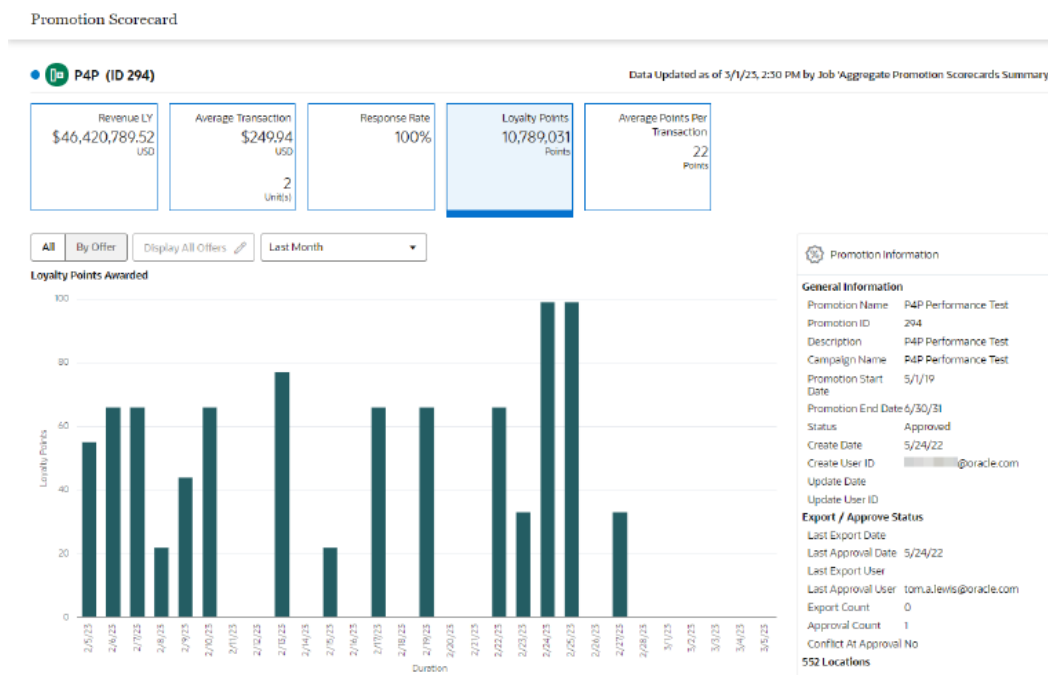


- **Audience and Segment Name** - Name of the target. A target name ending in **_CTL** indicates a control group. Non-Targeted is displayed as the Target Name for customers who responded to the Promotion but were not included in Target Groups.
 - **Total** - Number of Customers to whom emails were sent because they were in the Target Group. For Non-Targeted totals, this is the number of non-targeted customers who responded.
 - **Sent** - Number of emails sent. This total is 0 for Non-Targeted customers.
 - **Opened** - Number of emails opened.
 - **Clicked** - Number of emails clicked on.
 - **Undeliverable** - Number of emails that could not be delivered.
 - **Net Targeted** - Total customers - Undeliverable emails.
 - **Net Delivery** - Total number of emails Sent - Undeliverable emails.
 - **Respondents** - Number of Customers in the Target who have responded to the Promotion. This is the same as the Total for Non-Targeted customers.
 - **Non-Respondents** - Number of Customers in the Target who have not responded to the Promotion. This is 0 for Non-Targeted customers.
 - **Net Response Rate** - Calculated by dividing the total number of Respondents by the Net Delivery total. Set to 0.00 for Non-Targeted customers.
 - **Response Rate** - Calculated by dividing the total number of Respondents by the Total number targeted. Set to 100.00 for Non-Targeted customers.
 - **Award Value** - The total value of Awards issued through the promotion. Included only for an Award Promotion.
 - **Redeemed Award Value** - The total value of Awards redeemed. Included only for an Award Promotion.
9. Click the **Loyalty Points Metric Tile** to see the following information which can be viewed by All Customers, Active, or Inactive:

Note:

For Points Promotions, the Loyalty Tile displays differently. See [Figure 5-183](#) followed by the description for this type of promotion.

Figure 6-183 Loyalty Points Metric Tile



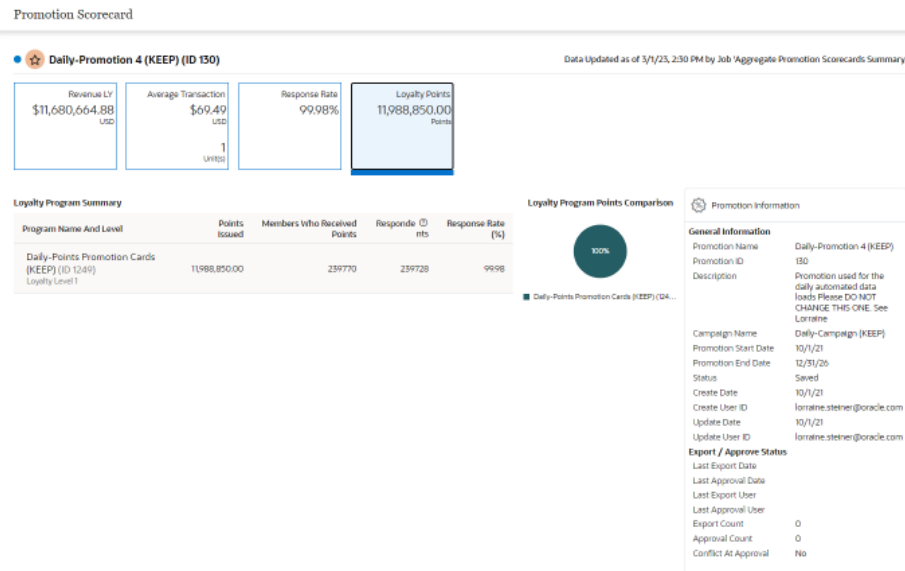
Graph

- The bar graph will dynamically update the Loyalty Points Awarded based on the Offers selected and Duration.
- By default the performance graph displays the offer details based on the time period selected for this promotion.
- The graph represents a plot between the Loyalty Points on Y-axis and Duration on X-axis for each individual Promotion.

Note:

See [Filter/Sort Options](#) for sorting and filtering options for the Loyalty Points Awarded graph.

Figure 6-184 Loyalty Points Metric Tile - Points Promotion Scorecard



Note:

This is a promotion type specific to the loyalty program and issues loyalty points to specific card loyalty programs. The purchase totals are based on the selected customers/loyalty members receiving the Points promotion. There are no offers (triggering events) that are required to receive the points. The total purchases are based strictly on the customers that are part of the promotion. There are no items to exclude as we would do in the case of a promotion with offers.

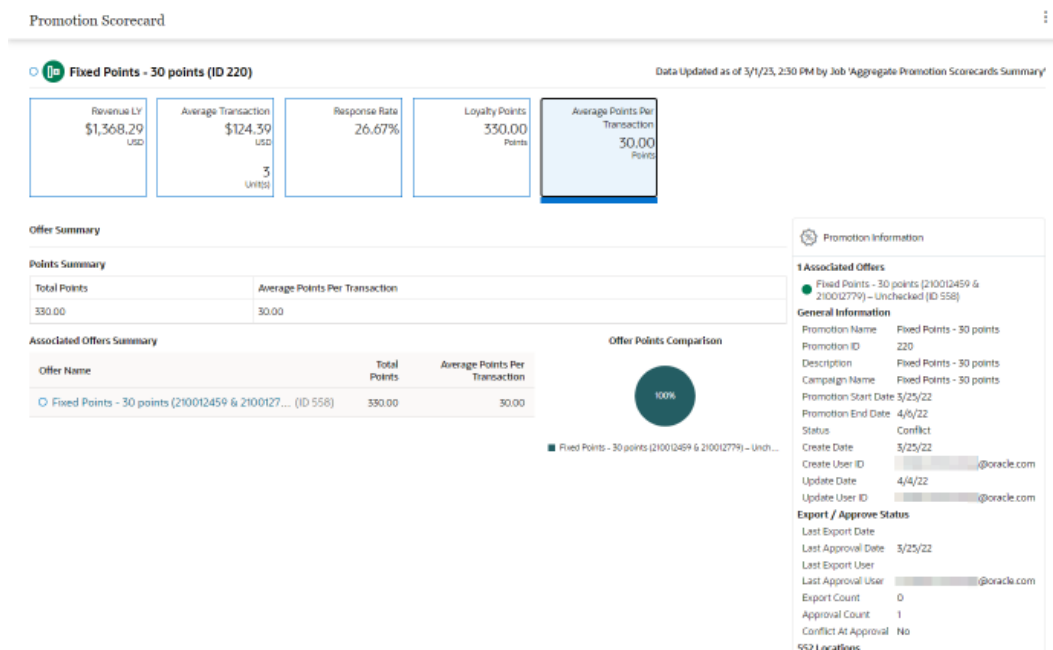
Note:

The values displayed in the scorecard will include only indirect revenue. The indirect revenue is based on all purchases made by the customers that received loyalty points. This scorecard is used to analyze the stimulation in revenue based on issuing loyalty points. However, these transactions cannot be tied directly to specific purchases.

- **Loyalty Program Summary**
 - Program Name and Level
 - ID
 - Points Issued
 - Members Who Received Points
 - Respondents - Members who received points that also made a purchase during this promotion period.

- Response Rate {%}
 - **Pie Chart**
 - Calculates and displays the Total Points Issued by program and level.
 - Each sector of the pie chart represents the points awarded to the unique program and level with a different color.
 - The table lists all the levels, but the pie chart will only show the top ten based on points issued.
 - **Promotion Information**
 - General Information
 - Export / Approve Status
10. Click the **Average Points Per Transaction Metric Tile** to see the following information which can be viewed by All Customers, Active, or Inactive:

Figure 6-185 Average Points Per Transaction Metric Tile



Offer Summary - Points Summary

- **Total Points** – Sum Total of the Points generated using the offer.
- **Average Points Issued Per Transaction** – Average number of points issued per Transaction during the Promotion period to the members against their purchase activity. The Average Value (Total Points issued/Number of Transaction).

Associated Offers Summary

- A full circle represents an Active Offer or an empty circle represents an Inactive Offer.
- Offer Name

- When a user selects the offer name from the list of offers on the Promotion Scorecard window, the system displays the View Offer window for the selected promotion on the same tab. See [Viewing Offers](#) for more information.
- Total Points - Total points distributed for the offer.
- Average Points Per Transaction - Average number of points issued per Transaction during the Promotion period to the members against their purchase activity. The Average Value (Total Points issued/Number of Transaction).

Offer Points Comparison

- The pie chart shows the pictorial representation of the points distributed from the respective offers.
- The title of the pie chart is Offer Points Comparison.
- The maximum of top ten offers by direct revenue display.
- Each sector of the pie chart represents the points distributed by an individual offer with a different color.
- A legend displays to the right of the pie chart and is linked with the information displayed in the pie chart.

 **Note:**

To close the Promotion Scorecard, click the close icon **X** associated with the Promotion Number in the Open Tasks area at the top of the window.

Promotion Information - Scorecards

The Metric Tiles that display Promotion Information include:

- Revenue LY
- Loyalty Points
- Average Points Per Transaction

Figure 6-186 Promotion Information - General Information (All Tiles)

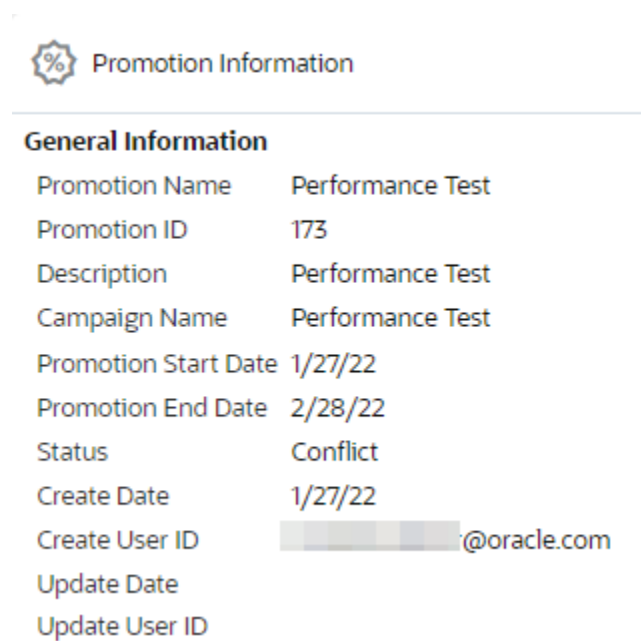
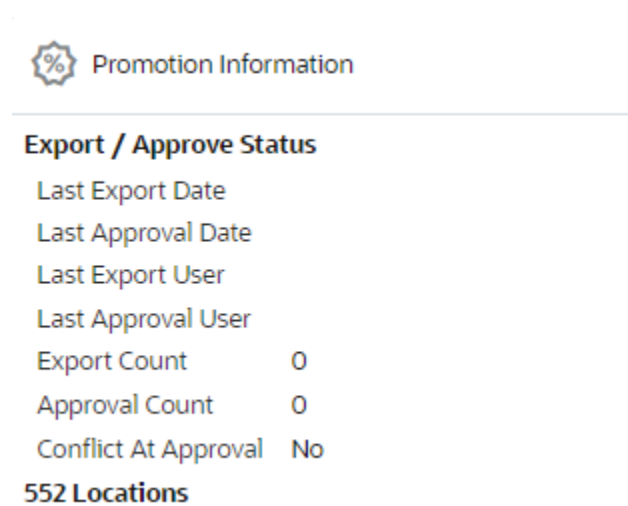


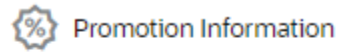
Figure 6-187 Promotion Information - Export/Approve Status and Locations (All Tiles)



Note:

Depending on the type of promotion that you created, different Export/Approve Status are available.

Figure 6-188 Promotion Information - Associated Offers (Average Points Per Transaction Tile Only)



2 Associated Offers

- Buy X Get Points Offer (ID 468)
- Reg - Buy X Get Points (ID 323)

Promotion Information - Tabs

Many of the tabs also include the Promotion Information panel on the right side for each tab. This information summarizes what has previously been configured for the Promotion. The tabs that display Promotion Information include:

- Information
- Franchisees
- Awards
- Locations
- Offers
- Attributes
- Coupons
- Audience
- Event Definition
- Budget
- Save Options

Figure 6-189 Promotion Information Panel

Promotion Information
Information Campaign Performance Test Promotion Performance Test Promotion Type Points for Purchase Starts on 1/27/22, 12:00 AM Runs until 2/28/22, 12:00 AM
Franchisees <i>All Franchisees defined</i>
Locations <i>All Locations Defined</i>
Programs 1 Program Level(s) Defined
Offers 2 Associated Offers
Attributes <i>No promotion attributes defined</i>
Audience 1 Defined Audience Groups
Budget <i>No budget details defined</i>
Save Options <i>No save options to display</i>

7

Offers

In Customer Engagement, Offers are price incentives given to the customer. These offers can often be reused in separate Promotions or Card Programs. To facilitate and ease the reuse of existing Offers, a library of Offers can be created in Customer Engagement.

About this Chapter

This chapter contains the following information:

- [Offer Types](#)
- [Intended Use](#)
- [Offers Quick Search](#)
- [Offers Advanced Search](#)
- [Creating Offers](#)
- [Editing Offers](#)
- [Duplicating Offers](#)
- [Viewing Offers](#)
- [Offer Scorecard](#)

Offer Types

The Offer Type determines the type of incentive provided by the Offer. Customer Engagement has the following Offer Types:

- **Transaction Discount** - A discount is prorated across all items within a transaction.
- **Line Item Discount** - A discount is applied to specific line items within a transaction.
- **Fixed Quantity/Price** - A fixed price is defined for various quantities of qualifying items.
- **Kit** - A defined set of heterogeneous items that, when purchased together, trigger special pricing.
- **Gift with Purchase** - A specific gift item is provided at a discounted price when the selected qualifying items are purchased.
- **Buy X Get X** - The purchase of defined items at regular price allows the customer to receive discounts on the purchase of subsequent quantities of the same items of equal or lesser value.
- **Buy X Get Y** - The purchase of defined items at regular price allows the customer to receive discounts on the purchase of subsequent different items at a discount.
- **Tiered Discount** - A discount is applied to a defined set of items and the amount of the discount can vary at different quantity thresholds.

- **Buy X Get Points** - The purchase of the qualifying items will result in the loyalty points being awarded to the loyalty program members.
- **Marketing Engagements** - Create a bonus point earning opportunity for an event that happens outside of Customer Engagement.

Intended Use

In Customer Engagement, Offers can be assigned an Intended Use. This indicates the manner in which an Offer is likely to be used.

- **Any (Default)** – An Offer that can be applied as a Product, Coupon, or Entitlement.
- **Coupon** – An Offer that is applied to an item or transaction through a Coupon.
- **Product** – An Offer that is applied directly to an item or transaction.
- **Entitlement** – An Offer that is applied to an item or transaction as an Entitlement for a Customer, including Offers associated with Promotions or Card Programs.
- **Loyalty** - An Offer that is applied to a transaction enabling the customer to earn loyalty points.

Offers Quick Search

Offers Quick Search displays a list of results as you type in characters in the search box. To use the Offers Quick Search do the following:

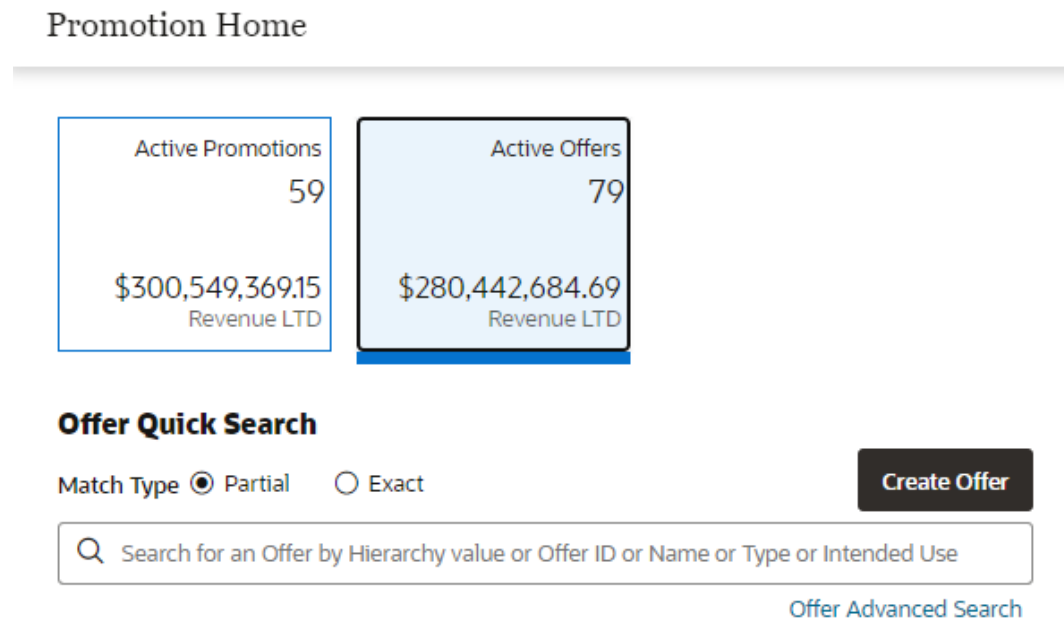
1. Click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Campaign**.
3. Click **Promotion Home**.

 **Note:**

You will need the Promotion Home role in order to see this menu option.

4. Click the **Active Offers** Metric Tile.

Figure 7-1 Promotion Home Active Offers Metric Tile



- In the Search for Offers field, enter the Hierarchy Value, Offer ID, Name, Type, or intended use of the offer you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for Offers that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.

Figure 7-2 Offers

Offers			
Offer Name and Status	Offer Type	Intended Use	Revenue LTD
<input type="radio"/> DEPT 925 (ID 919) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Austin Offer1 (ID 908) Enabled in 1 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00
<input type="radio"/> RPJ-QA-DEMO (ID 907) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Line Item Discount	Any	\$0.00
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pankaj Offer (ID 906) Enabled in 1 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00
<input type="radio"/> Shipping discount (ID 897) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00
<input type="radio"/> Fixed Quantity Price Demo (ID 882) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	\$0.00

- Click the Name which appears as a link in blue for any Offer to open the Offer Scorecard for that offer. See [Offer Scorecard](#) for more information. Use the Overflow Menu to Delete, Duplicate, Edit, or View the offer. See [Deleting Offers](#), [Duplicating Offers](#), [Editing Offers](#), or [Viewing Offers](#) for more information.

Figure 7-3 Action Menu Options - Offers Quick Search

Promotion Home

Active Promotions
59

\$300,549,369.15
Revenue LTD

Active Offers
79

\$280,442,684.69
Revenue LTD

Offer Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact Create Offer

[Offer Advanced Search](#)

Offers

Offer Name and Status	Offer Type	Intended Use	Revenue LTD
<input type="radio"/> DEPT 925 (ID 919) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Austin Offer1 (ID 908) Enabled in 1 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	
<input type="radio"/> RPJ-QA-DEMO (ID 907) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Line Item Discount	Any	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pankaj Offer (ID 906) Enabled in 1 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	

- Delete
- Duplicate
- Edit
- View

Offers Advanced Search

The Offer Advanced search allows you to select more criteria that are not available in the Offer Quick Search box.

Figure 7-4 Offer Advanced Search Window

Search

Offer ID

Hierarchy Level

Hierarchy Value

Promotions

Offer Type

Intended Use

- Any
- Coupon
- Product
- Entitlement
- Loyalty
- Loyalty Marketing Engagement

Attribute Type

Attribute Value

Created By

Franchisee ID

The following Search fields are available:

- **Offer ID** - This Text Field searches all the Offers currently present in the application. The default is an empty field.
- **Hierarchy Level** - The Merchandise Hierarchy Level, which consists of: Item ID, Department, Sub-Department, Class, Sub-Class, and Style ID. This will default to All. Example: You select Hierarchy level as Department.
- **Hierarchy Value** - The search box included on the top of the list allows you to search for a specific Department. As you begin to type, the application then displays any matching Departments. The field also includes a list of available departments from which to select. This will default to All.
- **Promotions** - To search for Offers which are part of Promotions. This will default to All. Options include:
 - All
 - Active
 - Inactive
- **Offer Type** - Search for Offers by Offer Type, which will be based on available Offer Types configured in the System Configuration module. Following are the current Offer Types. The default field is All.
 - Buy X Get Points
 - Buy X Get X
 - Buy X Get Y
 - Fixed Quantity/Price
 - Gift with Purchase
 - Kit
 - Line Item Discount
 - Marketing Engagements
 - Tiered Discount
 - Transaction Discount
- **Intended Use (Required)** - Search for Offers by the Intended Use assigned. By default, All will be checked.
 - Any
 - Coupon
 - Product
 - Entitlement
 - Loyalty
 - Loyalty Marketing Engagement
- **Attribute Type** - Search the Offer by the Attribute assigned to the Offer. The field will default to All.
- **Attributes Value** - Type-ahead search according to the selected Attribute Type.
- **Created By** - List of Associates who created Offers. This defaults to Everyone.

- **Franchisee ID** - This Text Field searches for Offers by the Franchisee associated with the Offer. The Franchisee ID field will only be visible if the `EnableFranchiseSupport` configuration is enabled and Franchisees are defined. Only Franchisees associated with the user are shown. This defaults to All.

Searching Offers

Once all the desired information has been entered, click **Search** to see the results.

Figure 7-5 Offers Search Results

Offers Search

Search

Offer ID

Hierarchy Level

Hierarchy Value

Promotions

Offer Type

Search Results

460 Offers Found Sort By

Offer Name and Status	Type	Intended Use	Revenue LTD	Source
<input type="radio"/> DEPT 925 (ID 919) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00	Internal
<input checked="" type="radio"/> MK 52 off Sub Dept 730100 (ID 792) Enabled in 1 Active Promotions	Line Item Discount	Product	\$0.00	Internal
<input checked="" type="radio"/> MK FQP Class 740100100 (ID 804) Enabled in 1 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	\$0.00	Internal
<input type="radio"/> RPJ-QA-DEMO (ID 907) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Line Item Discount	Any	\$0.00	Internal
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pankaj Offer (ID 906) Enabled in 1 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00	Internal
<input checked="" type="radio"/> MK 20% off 1003 - change 3 (ID 794) Enabled in 1 Active Promotions	Line Item Discount	Product	\$0.00	Internal
<input type="radio"/> Shipping discount (ID 897) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00	Internal

Note:

Click **Reset** to clear all fields and return list values to the default selections. You can also click Search without entering any criteria to see a complete list of offers.

Sorting Offer Results

The results can be sorted by the following options:

- Last Update Date (Default)
- Offer ID
- Offer Name
- Number of Active Promotions
- Offer Revenue
- Offer Type
- Intended Use

Creating Offers

In Customer Engagement, Offers are price incentives given to the customer. These Offers can often be reused in separate Promotions or Card Programs. To facilitate and reuse existing Offers, a library of Offers can be created in Customer Engagement.

Process by Offer Type

The Create Offers process depends on the type of offer you create with the Create Offer Wizard. In the wizard, the tabs are dynamic and vary by Offer Type.

[Table 7-1](#) shows the Create Offer process by offer type and a link to its procedure. Refer to the section, [Create Offers Procedure](#), for specifics about the steps to create offers.

Table 7-1 Create Offer Process by Offer Type

Offer Type	Tab 1	Tab 2	Tab 3	Tab 4	Tab 5	Tab 6	Tab 7
Transaction Discount	Information Updating the Information Tab	Franchisees Assignment Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	Attributes Updating the Attributes Tab	Qualifying Items Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1	Award Items Update Award Items for Group A	Shipping Awards Update Shipping Awards Tab	Review Tab Transaction Discount Review
Line Item Discount	Information Updating the Information Tab	Franchisees Assignment Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	Attributes Updating the Attributes Tab	Qualifying Items Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1	Award Items Update Award Items for Group A	Shipping Awards Update Shipping Awards Tab	Review Line Item Discount Review
Fixed Quantity/Price	Information Updating the Information Tab	Franchisees Assignment Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	Attributes Updating the Attributes Tab	Qualifying Items Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1	Award Items Update Award Items for Group A	Shipping Awards Update Shipping Awards Tab	Review Fixed Quantity/Price Review
Gift with Purchase	Information Updating the Information Tab	Franchisees Assignment Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	Attributes Updating the Attributes Tab	Qualifying Items Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1	Award Items Update Award Items for Gift with Purchase	Shipping Awards Update Shipping Awards Tab	Review Gift with Purchase Review
Buy X Get X	Information Updating the Information Tab	Franchisees Assignment Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	Attributes Updating the Attributes Tab	Qualifying Items Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1	Award Items Update Award Items for Buy X Get X	Shipping Awards Update Shipping Awards Tab	Review Buy X Get X Review

Table 7-1 (Cont.) Create Offer Process by Offer Type

Offer Type	Tab 1	Tab 2	Tab 3	Tab 4	Tab 5	Tab 6	Tab 7
Buy X Get Points	Information Updating the Information Tab	Franchisees Assignment Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	Attributes Updating the Attributes Tab	Qualifying Items Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1	Award Items Update Award Points for Buy X Get Points	Tender Type Define Tender Type for Buy X Get Points	Review Buy X Get Points Review
Kit	Information Updating the Information Tab	Franchisees Assignment Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	Attributes Updating the Attributes Tab	Qualifying Items Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 2	Award Items Update Award Items for Offer Type Kit	Shipping Awards Update Shipping Awards Tab	Review Kit Review
Buy X Get Y	Information Updating the Information Tab	Franchisees Assignment Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	Attributes Updating the Attributes Tab	Qualifying Items Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 2	Award Items Update Award Items for Buy X Get Y	Shipping Awards Update Shipping Awards Tab	Review Buy X Get Y Review
Tiered Discount	Information Updating the Information Tab	Franchisees Assignment Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	Attributes Updating the Attributes Tab	Qualifying Items Define Qualifying Items for Offer Tiered Discount	Award Items Define Tiered Discount	Review Tiered Discount Review	Not Applicable
Marketing Engagements	Information Updating the Information Tab	Franchisees Assignment Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab	Attributes Updating the Attributes Tab	Award Items Updating Award Points for Marketing Engagements	Review Marketing Engagements Review	Not Applicable	Not Applicable

Create Offers Procedure

The following procedure describes the steps to create an offer. Refer to specific details for each tab in these sections:

- [Updating the Information Tab](#)
- [Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab](#)
- [Updating the Attributes Tab](#)
- [Updating the Qualifying Items Tab](#)
- [Update Award Items Tab](#)
- [Define Tiered Discount](#)
- [Update Shipping Awards Tab](#)

- [Updating Award Points for Marketing Engagements](#)
- [Using the Review Tab](#)

Procedure

To create an offer:

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click **Campaign**.
3. Click **Offers Search**. Results: The Offers Search window opens.

Figure 7-6 Offers Search

Offers Search

Search

Offer ID

Hierarchy Level

All

Hierarchy Value

All

Reset Search

Search Results

Enter search parameters in the sidebar to search for Offers.

Create Offer

4. Click **Create Offer**. This opens the Create Offer Wizard. The Create Offer wizard may contain any of the following tabs, depending on configuration:
 - Information
 - Franchisees
 - Attributes
 - Qualifying Items
 - Award Items or Discount Tiers
 - Shipping Awards
 - Award Points
 - Review
5. Update the Information tab. For details, refer to "[Updating the Information Tab.](#)" After updating the Information tab, Click **Next** to continue to the next tab.

Figure 7-7 Information Tab

Create Offer

1 Information 2 Franchisees 3 Attributes 4 Qualifying Items 5 Award Items 6 Review

Offer Definition

Type

- Transaction Discount** (Selected) ✓
A discount is prorated across all items within a transaction.
- Line Item Discount**
A discount applied to specific line items within a transaction.
- Fixed Quantity/Price**
A fixed price is defined for varying quantities of qualifying items.
- Kit**
A defined set of heterogeneous items that, when purchased together, trigger special pricing.
- Gift with Purchase**
A specific gift item is provided at a discounted price when the selected qualifying items are purchased.
- Buy X Get X**
The purchase of defined items at regular

Description

Offer Name Required

POS Name

Intended Use

Comments

Shipping Award

Options

- Include Non-Merchandise Charges
- Allow Items to be used in other Offers
- Include Redlines
- Allow Zero Price

Offer Information

Information
No information to display

Franchisees
All Franchisees defined

Attributes
No Attributes to display

Qualifying Items
No Qualifying Items to display

Award Items
No Award Items to display

Previous Next Cancel OK

- Update the Franchisees Assignment tab. For details, refer to "[Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab](#)." After updating the Franchisees Assignment tab, Click **Next** to continue to the next tab.

Figure 7-8 Franchisee Tab

Franchisees

Included Franchisees

Actions |

All Franchisees are included

Next >

- Update the Attributes tab. For details, refer to "[Updating the Attributes Tab](#)." Click **Next** to continue to the next tab.
 - This Attributes tab does not apply to the offer type, Marketing Engagements. Continue to [Updating Award Points for Marketing Engagements](#).

Figure 7-9 Attributes Tab

Attributes

Offer Attributes

Name	Value	Description
CREATED BY	<input type="text" value="Character"/> + Add Another	Deal Created By
DEAL COST?	<input type="text" value="Currency"/> + Add Another	Estimated Deal Cost
Deal Logical Attributes	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/>	Deal Logical Attributes
DEAL SEASON	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/> + Add Another	Deal Time of year
DEAL TYPE?	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/> + Add Another	Deal Type
	<input type="text" value="Currency"/>	

Next >

8. Update the Qualifying Items tab. The Qualifying Items Tab is used to define which Items are included and excluded in the Offer. For details, refer to "[Updating the Qualifying Items Tab.](#)"

After completing the Qualifying Items tab, click **Next** to continue to the next tab as listed in [Table 7-5](#).

Figure 7-10 Qualifying Items Tab

Define Qualifying Items

Parameters

Subtotal Minimum	Subtotal Maximum	Threshold Style	Threshold Type	Threshold
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Minimum"/>	<input type="text" value="Quantity"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>

Define Qualifying Items Ⓞ 0 Items Included

Included [Exclude Items](#)

Actions ▾ Quick Add

No Items Included

Next >

Table 7-5 lists the next section by offer type.

Table 7-2 Next Step After Defining Qualifying Items by Offer Type

Offer Type	After Defining Qualifying Items, Continue To...
Transaction Discount	Update Award Items for Group A
Line Item Discount	
Fixed Quantity/Price	
Gift with Purchase	Update Award Items for Gift with Purchase
Buy X Get X	Update Award Items for Buy X Get X
Buy X Get Points	Update Award Points for Buy X Get Points
Kit	Update Award Items for Offer Type Kit
Buy X Get Y	Update Award Items for Buy X Get Y
Tiered Discount	Define Tiered Discount

- Update the Award Items tab. For details, refer to "Update Award Items Tab." Click **Next** to continue to the next tab.

After completing the Award Items tab, click **Next** to continue to the next tab as listed in Table 7-6.

Figure 7-11 Define Award Items Tab

Table 7-6 lists the next section by offer type.

Table 7-3 Next Step After Defining Award Items/Points by Offer Type

Offer Type	After Defining Award Items/Points, Continue To...
Transaction Discount	Update Shipping Awards Tab
Line Item Discount	
Fixed Quantity/Price	

Table 7-3 (Cont.) Next Step After Defining Award Items/Points by Offer Type

Offer Type	After Defining Award Items/Points, Continue To...
Gift with Purchase	
Buy X Get X	
Buy X Get Points	Define Tender Type for Buy X Get Points
Kit	Update Shipping Awards Tab
Buy X Get Y	
Tiered Discount	
Marketing Engagements	Marketing Engagements Review

- Update the Shipping Awards tab. The Shipping Awards Tab is used to define what shipping methods and other award rules are used for the offer. For details, refer to "[Update Shipping Awards Tab.](#)"

Figure 7-12 Shipping Awards Tab

The screenshot shows the 'Shipping Awards' configuration interface. It is divided into three main sections: 'Shipping Method', 'Ship To Country', and 'Qualifying Pay Type', each with a list of checkboxes. Below these sections are several input fields and dropdown menus: 'Sectional Center Facility' with 'From' and 'To' text boxes; 'Awards' with 'Shipping Charge Type' and 'Override Shipping Method' dropdowns; and 'Discount' with a 'Percent Off' dropdown and a 'Charge Code' dropdown. A 'Next' button with a right-pointing arrow is positioned at the bottom right of the form.

After completing the Shipping Awards tab, click **Next** to continue to the next tab as listed in [Table 7-4](#).

Table 7-4 Next Step After Defining Shipping Awards by Offer Type

Offer Type	After Defining Shipping Awards, Continue To...
Transaction Discount	Transaction Discount Review
Line Item Discount	Line Item Discount Review
Fixed Quantity/Price	Fixed Quantity/Price Review
Gift with Purchase	Gift with Purchase Review
Buy X Get X	Buy X Get X Review

Table 7-4 (Cont.) Next Step After Defining Shipping Awards by Offer Type

Offer Type	After Defining Shipping Awards, Continue To...
Buy X Get Points	No shipping awards, continue to: Buy X Get Points Review
Kit	Kit Review
Buy X Get Y	Buy X Get Y Review
Tiered Discount	Tiered Discount Review
Marketing Engagements	Marketing Engagements Review

11. The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

For details by offer type, refer to "[Using the Review Tab.](#)"

Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

 **Note:**

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

Figure 7-13 Review Tab - Example

Updating the Information Tab

For Step 5 under the section [Creating Offers](#) update the Information Tab and return to Step 6.

Figure 7-14 Information Tab

The Information tab has these components:

- [Type Pane](#)
- [Description Pane](#)
- [Options Pane](#)
- [Time Rules](#)
- Offer Information Panel

 **Note:**

The read-only Offer Information Panel displays details throughout all tabs of the wizard.

Type Pane

Select the type of offer from the available options.

- Transaction Discount
- Line Item Discount
- Fixed Quantity/Price

- Kit
- Gift with Purchase
- Buy X Get X
- Buy X Get Y
- Tiered Discount
- Buy X Get Points
- Marketing Engagements

Description Pane

Update the fields in the Description Pane. Required fields are noted by an asterisk.

- **Offer Name (Required)** – Enter a name for the offer.
- **POS Name** – Enter the name for the Offer to be displayed in the POS system.
- **Intended Use (Required)** – Select the type of Promotion in which the Offer is to be used.
 - Any (Default)
 - Coupon
 - Product
 - Entitlement

 **Note:**

By Default, Loyalty is the only Intended Use available when creating Buy X Get Points. For Marketing Engagement Offers the only intended use is Loyalty Marketing Engagement.

- **Comments** – Enter any comments about the Offer in the text box.
- **Shipping Award** – If available, toggle the switch to activate the offer for shipping awards.

Options Pane

Select any available options to be applied to the Offer.

- **Include Non-Merchandise Charges** – This Check Box determines whether non-merchandise charges are included in the Offer (The default is a clear check box that indicates No)).
- **Allow Items to be used in other Offers** – This check box indicates whether the items used in the Offer can be used again in other Offers applied to a transaction. If clear (default), the items can only be used in one offer per transaction. If checked, the items can be used in more than one offer per transaction.
- **Include Redlines** – This check box determines whether Redlines are included in the Offer (The default is a clear check box that indicates No).
- **Allow Zero Price** – This check box determines whether zero-priced items are included in the Offer (The default is a clear check box that indicates No).

Time Rules

Time Rules are unavailable if **Entitlement** is selected for **Intended Use** in the Description Pane.

Adding Time Rules

Multiple Time Rules can be added to Offers. Perform the following steps to add Time Rules to Offers.

1. There are two methods to add Time Rules to an Offer, either:
 - Click **+Add Time Rule**.
 - Select the **Quick Add** option and enter a known **Time Rule ID** which you wish to associate with this new Offer.
2. Click **Add** to add that time rule to the Offer.

Creating New Time Rules

Perform the following steps to create a new Time Rule.

1. Click **+ Add Time Rule**.
2. Select the **Create New** option.

Figure 7-15 Add Time Rule (Create New)

Day	Start	End	Action
Sunday <input type="checkbox"/>	12:00 AM	11:59 PM	Copy to All
Monday <input type="checkbox"/>	12:00 AM	11:59 PM	Copy to All
Tuesday <input type="checkbox"/>	12:00 AM	11:59 PM	Copy to All
Wednesday <input type="checkbox"/>	12:00 AM	11:59 PM	Copy to All
Thursday <input type="checkbox"/>	12:00 AM	11:59 PM	Copy to All
Friday <input type="checkbox"/>	12:00 AM	11:59 PM	Copy to All
Saturday <input type="checkbox"/>	12:00 AM	11:59 PM	Copy to All

3. Update the following fields

- Enter a **Time Rule Name** (required).
 - Select the **Day of the Week** for which the time rules will apply for this Offer.
 - Enter a **Start Time** for each day selected.
 - Enter an **End Time** for each day selected.
4. **Optional:** Click **Copy To All** to copy the settings (Start and End times) from the Day you select, to all days.
 5. Click **OK** to accept the new time rule, or **Cancel** to close without saving.

Adding an Existing Time Rule

Perform the following steps to add an existing Time Rule.

1. Click **+ Add Time Rule**.
2. Select the **Add Existing** option.

Figure 7-16 Add Time Rule (Add Existing)

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add Time Rule" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Below the title, there are two radio buttons: "Create New" (unselected) and "Add Existing" (selected). Below this is a search bar with the placeholder text "Search for Time Rule" and a search button. The search bar contains the text "Search by Name or ID" and a clear button (X). Below the search bar is a table with the following columns: "Name and ID", "Time Rule In", "Day and Time", and "Add Time Rule". The table contains four rows of data, each with an "Add" button in the "Add Time Rule" column.

Name and ID	Time Rule In	Day and Time	Add Time Rule
Saturday Only (ID 1)	90 offer(s)	Saturday 12:00 AM 11:59 PM	Add
Automation Created Time Rule (ID 2)	4 offer(s)	Wednesday 12:00 AM 11:59 PM	Add
Automation Created Time Rule (ID 3)	1 offer(s)	Wednesday 12:00 AM 11:59 PM	Add
Automation Created Time Rule (ID 4)	2 offer(s)	Wednesday 12:00 AM 11:59 PM	Add

At the bottom right of the dialog box is a "Done" button.

3. Enter a **Time Rule Name** or **ID** and click **Search**, or click **Search** to retrieve all existing Time Rules from which to select.
4. The [Figure 7-16](#) window displays the available time rules to add to an existing offer. Information for each existing time rule includes:
 - **Name and ID** – The name and ID of the Time Rule
 - **Time Rule In** – The number of offers the Time Rule is already associated with.
 - **Days** – The days of the week the Time Rule is active.
 - **Start** – The Start time for each corresponding day.

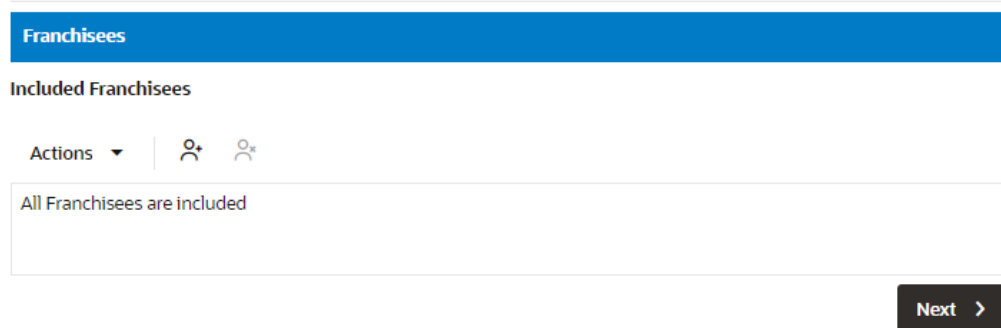
- **End** – The End time for each corresponding day.
 - **Add** – Adds a Time Rule.
5. Click **Add** for the desired Time Rule you wish to add to the Offer.
 6. Click **Done**.

Updating the Franchisees Assignment Tab

For Step 6 under the section [Creating Offers](#) update the Franchisees Assignment tab and return to Step 7.

The Franchisees Assignment tab allows you to view or change the Franchisees to which an Offer is assigned. The Franchisee tab is only visible if the `EnableFranchiseSupport` configuration is enabled, and Franchisees are defined. By default, all franchisees are included on the Offer. If you are assigned to specific franchisees, only those franchisees you are associated with are shown.

Figure 7-17 Franchisee Tab



Assigning a Franchisee

Perform the following steps to assign a franchisee.

1. Click the **Action Menu**, and click **Assign**, or click the **Add (+)** icon. The [Figure 7-18](#) window opens.

Figure 7-18 Assign Franchisee

Assign Franchisee ×

Search for Franchisee

Search by Franchisee ID or Name or Description ×

Search Results

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations
-----------------	------------------------	-----------

No Franchisees to display

2. Enter part or all of the **Franchisee Name**, **Franchisee Description**, or **Location**.

 **Note:**

You also have the option to enter no search criteria and click **Search** to retrieve all available franchisees from which to select for assignment.

3. Click **Search**.
4. Click **Assign All** to assign all the search results, or click **Assign** for a specific franchisee.
5. Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the Franchisees has been assigned.

After a Franchisee is assigned, it appears at the top of the list. The rest of the Franchisees are ordered by ID.

Unassigning a Franchisee

Perform the following steps to unassign a franchisee.

1. There are two ways to unassign a Franchisee assigned to an Offer.
 - a. In the [Figure 7-18](#) window, click **Unassign** on any Franchisees currently assigned to the Offer.

Figure 7-19 Assign Franchisee (Using the Unassign Button)

Assign Franchisee ✕

Search for Franchisee

Search by Franchisee ID or Name or Description ✕ Search

Search Results

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations	Assign All
D [redacted] Penn (ID 6)	[redacted] Franchisee - PA	1	Unassign
F Franchisee001 (ID 17)	Franch001	1	Unassign
F FrancDelete (ID 19)		0	Assign
D [redacted] Illinois (ID 20)	[redacted] Franchisee - Illinois	1	Unassign
D [redacted] Utah (ID 45)		0	Assign
D [redacted] outlet (ID 46)		0	Assign
P Portland Franchisee (ID 47)		1	Assign
A Austin (ID 49)	VB-Austin Franchisee	4	Assign

Cancel **OK**

- b. If Franchisees are listed on the Franchisee tab in the Included Franchisees table, highlight the **row**, and then select the **Action Menu**, and click **Unassign**, or click the **Unassign X** icon to remove the associated Franchisee.
2. A confirmation notification appears that confirms the Franchisees are deleted.

Updating the Attributes Tab

For Step 7 under the section [Creating Offers](#) update the Attributes tab and return to Step 8.

Figure 7-20 Attributes Tab

Attributes		
Offer Attributes		
Name	Value	Description
CREATED BY*	Character + Add Another	Deal Created By
DEAL COST?	Currency + Add Another	Estimated Deal Cost
Deal Logical Attributes	(Please select) ▼	Deal Logical Attributes
DEAL SEASON	(Please select) ▼ + Add Another	Deal Time of year
DEAL TYPE?	(Please select) ▼ + Add Another	Deal Type

Next >

Perform the following steps to update the Attributes tab.

- Enter the following for the Attributes Tab. Attributes can be added to the Offer to further distinguish qualifications for the Offer.
 - Select or enter the Values for each of the required attributes (indicated by an asterisk*).
 - Add Values for any optional attributes.
 - Select or enter the configuration value for the Attribute.

 **Note:**

Repeat this step for all optional Attributes you wish to add to the Offer.

- When finished defining any attributes for the Offer, click **Next**.

Updating the Qualifying Items Tab

For Step 8 under the section [Creating Offers](#) update the Qualifying Items and return to Step 9.

The Qualifying Items tab parameters are dynamic and vary based on the type of offer selected as listed in [Table 7-5](#).



Note:

This tab does not apply to the offer type, Marketing Engagements. Continue to [Updating Award Points for Marketing Engagements](#) for this offer type.

Table 7-5 Qualifying Items by Offer Type

Offer Type	Define Qualifying Items Section
Transaction Discount	Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1
Line Item Discount	
Fixed Quantity/Price	
Gift with Purchase	
Buy X Get X	
Buy X Get Points	
Kit	
Buy X Get Y	
Tiered Discount	Define Qualifying Items for Offer Tiered Discount

Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1

Follow the procedures in this section to update the [Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1](#). Use this window to define which items are included and excluded in the Offer.

Update the [Figure 7-21](#) for these type of offers:

- Transaction Discount
- Line Item Discount
- Fixed Quantity/Price
- Gift with Purchase
- Buy X Get X
- Buy X Get Points

Figure 7-21 Define Qualifying Items Window for Group 1

Update the Parameters Pane for Group 1

The following parameters are dynamic and vary based on the type of offer selected.

- **Subtotal Minimum** – The minimum subtotal required for the transaction to be eligible for the discount.
- **Subtotal Maximum** – The maximum subtotal required for the transaction to be eligible for the discount.
- **Threshold Style** – The style of threshold to be set.

Note:

A threshold is the amount or quantity of qualifying items that are required to purchase in order to be eligible for this offer.

Note:

The available options vary, depending upon the Offer Type selected.

- Exact
- Minimum
- **Threshold Type** – The type of threshold.
 - Amount
 - Quantity

- **Threshold (Required)** – The amount of the threshold

Import Items for Group 1

Import items into the Define Qualifying Items window by either:

- [Import Items from Existing Offers](#)
- [Import Items from a CSV file](#)

Import Items from Existing Offers

1. Click **Import From Existing Offers** then enter the following information:
 - a. Enter some or all of the **Offer Name**, or **Offer Type** in the Search for Offer field. When searching by Offer ID the user must enter the **exact ID**.
 - b. Click one or more of the **Import check boxes** for the Offers you would like to import.
 - c. Click **OK** to import the Offer.

Import Items from a CSV file



Note:

Import from CSV is only available for the Offer Type of Buy X Get Y.

There are two methods to import items in a CSV file, either:

- Use the Action Menu.
 1. Click the **Actions Menu** and select **Import from CSV**.
 2. **Drag and Drop the File**
 3. Click **OK**
- Use File Explorer.
 1. Click **Upload**. This displays the file selection menu where you can import a set of items in a comma-separated values (CSV) format.
 2. Select a file from File Explorer.
 3. Click **Open**.
 4. Click **OK**.



Note:

When the file has been uploaded, the name of the file displays an **X** icon that allows you to remove the file.

Define Qualifying Items Pane for Group 1

There are three methods to define Qualifying Items, either:

- Use the **Quick Add** option to enter a known **Item ID** which you wish to associate with this new Offer.

Click **Add**.

- Click the **Actions Menu** and select **Add Item Rule**.
- Click **+Add Item Rule**.

The [Figure 7-22](#) window opens.

Figure 7-22 Add Item Rule

Add Item Rule (Include) X

Include All Items Include By Hierarchy Specific Items

Assign Attribute Filters to All Items

Match Any **Match All**

Brand
Include All (24)

Size
Include All (12)

Pricing
Include All

Color
Include All (1041)

CLEARANCE?

None

Color

All Colors

1000

1001

1002

1003

1004

1005

1006

Cancel OK **OK and Add Another**

You can Add Item Rules by selecting either:

- [Include All Items](#)
- [Include by Hierarchy](#)
- [Specific Items](#)

Include All Items

Perform the following steps to add Item Rules by including all items

1. Select **Include All Items**. This enables you to use Attribute Filters for all items.

Figure 7-23 Add Item Rule (Include All Items)

Add Item Rule (Include) X

Include All Items Include By Hierarchy Specific Items

Assign Attribute Filters to All Items

Match Any Match All

Brand
Include All (24)

Size
Include All (12)

Pricing
Include All

Color
Include All (1041)

CLEARANCE? ⓘ

None

Color

All Colors

1000

1001

1002

1003

1004

1005

1006

Cancel OK **OK and Add Another**

2. Click either **Match Any** or **Match All**.
3. In the left pane, select the desired attribute filter from the list of available choices. Once selected, any associated values for the attribute appear in the right pane.
4. In the right pane, select or clear values of the selected attribute filter. Attributes like Season, Color, or Brand default to All selected. You can clear all values for that attribute by clearing the check mark in the top check box. Then you can sort through the list and choose specific value by selecting the associated check box.
5. Click **OK** to add the item rule to the Offer or click **OK and Add Another** to add another attribute and values. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item rule.

Include by Hierarchy

Perform the following steps to add Item Rules by hierarchy.

1. Select **Include By Hierarchy**. The [Figure 7-24](#) window opens.

Figure 7-24 Add Item Rule (Include by Hierarchy)

Add Item Rule (Include) X

Include All Items
 Include By Hierarchy
 Specific Items

Select Items By Hierarchy

DEPT (1)	SUB_DEPT	CLASS	SUB_CLASS	STYLE_ID
Search by ID or Name or Description <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>				
<input type="checkbox"/>	DEPT Name, ID and Description			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Accessory Department (ID 925) Accessory Department			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Appliance Department (ID 800) Appliance Department			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Beauty/Fragrance Department (ID 975) Beauty/Fragrance Department			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bridal Department (ID 850) Bridal Department			

Assign Attribute Filters to 1 Selected Hierarchies

Match Any Match All

Brand
Include All (8)

Size
Include All (5)

Pricing
Include All

Color
Include All (13)

CLEARANCE?

None

Color

All Colors

Beige

Black

Blue

Bronze

Brown

Fuchsia

Gold

2. There are two ways to search for items in the Include by Hierarchy window, either for:
 - All items -select one of the **Hierarchy** tabs such as (**Department** or **Class**, and click **Search** to retrieve all associated items for the hierarchy.
 - Specific items -select the check box for each item you want to add to the Offer.
3. Select **Match Any** or **Match All**.
4. In the center pane, select the desired Attribute Filter from the available choices. Once selected, any associated values for the attribute appear in the right pane.
5. In the right pane, select or clear values of the selected attribute filter. Attributes like Season, Color, or Brand default to All selected. You can clear all values for that attribute by clearing the check mark in the top check box. Then you can sort through the list and choose specific values by selecting the associated check box.
6. Click **OK** to add the item rule to the Offer or click **OK and Add Another** to add another attribute and values. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item rule.

Specific Items

Perform the following steps to include Item Rules by specific items.

1. Select **Specific Items**. The [Figure 7-25](#) window opens.

Figure 7-25 Add Item Rule (Specific Items)

Add Item Rule (Include) X

Include All Items Include By Hierarchy Specific Items

0 Items Selected

Argyle X Search

Item Description and ID

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210009985)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010026)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010089)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010090)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010153)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010154)

Cancel OK OK and Add Another

2. Search for Specific Items.

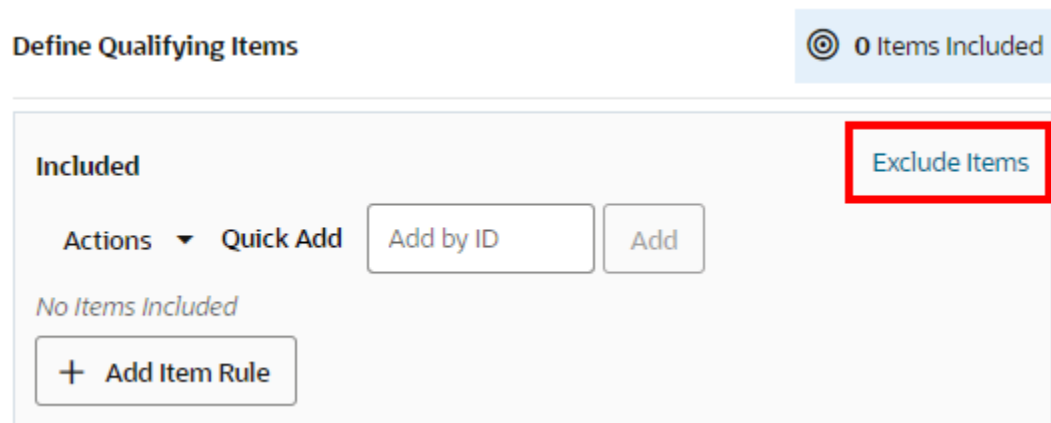
In the Search box enter the **ID** or **Description** of the Item and click **Search**. A list of Items appear underneath the Search box.

3. Select Items. You can select either:
 - All Items by selecting the **Item Description and ID** check box.
 - Specific Items by selecting the check box for each item you want to add to the Offer.
4. Click **OK** to add the item rule to the Offer or click **OK and Add Another** to add another attribute and values, or click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item rule.

Exclude Items

From the [Figure 7-21](#), click the **Exclude Items** link.

Figure 7-26 Exclude Items



Excluding Items follows the same processes as:

- [Include All Items](#)
- [Include by Hierarchy](#)
- [Specific Items](#)

Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 2

Follow the procedures in this section to update the [Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 2](#). Use this window to define which Items are included and excluded in the Offer.

Update the [Figure 7-27](#) for these type of offers:

- Kit
- Buy X Get Y

Figure 7-27 Define Qualifying Items Window for Offer Group 2

Update the Parameters Pane for Group 2

The following parameters are dynamic and vary based on the type of offer selected.

- **Subtotal Minimum** – The minimum subtotal required for the transaction to be eligible for the discount.
- **Subtotal Maximum** The maximum subtotal required for the transaction to be eligible for the discount.
- **Threshold Style** – The style of threshold to be set.

Note:

The available options vary, depending upon the Offer Type selected.

- Exact
- Minimum
- **Threshold Type** – The type of threshold.
 - Amount
 - Quantity
- **Threshold (Required)** – The amount of the threshold

 **Note:**

For KIT and BUY X Get Y offers, the Threshold Style, Threshold Type, and Threshold fields will appear in the Define Qualifying Items section. In these Offer Types, qualifying Items are organized in **Sets**. Each Set has an Include Item and Exclude Item section which contains one or more Items.

Import Items for Group 2

Import items into the Define Qualifying Items window by either:

- [Import Items from Existing Offers](#)
- [Import Items from a CSV file](#)

Import Items from Existing Offers

1. Click **Import From Existing Offers** then enter the following information:
 - a. Enter some or all of the **Offer Name**, or **Offer Type** in the Search for Offer field. When searching by Offer ID the user must enter the **exact ID**.
 - b. Click one or more of the **Import check boxes** for the Offers you would like to import.
 - c. Click **OK** to import the Offer.

Import Items from a CSV file

There are two methods to import items in a CSV file, either:

- Use the Action Menu.
 1. Click the **Actions Menu** and select **Import from CSV**.
 2. **Drag and Drop the File**
 3. Click **OK**
- Use File Explorer.
 1. Click **Upload**. This displays the file selection menu where you can import a set of items in a comma-separated values (CSV) format.
 2. Select a file from File Explorer.
 3. Click **Open**.
 4. Click **OK**.

 **Note:**

When the file has been uploaded, the name of the file displays a close icon **X** that allows you to remove the file.

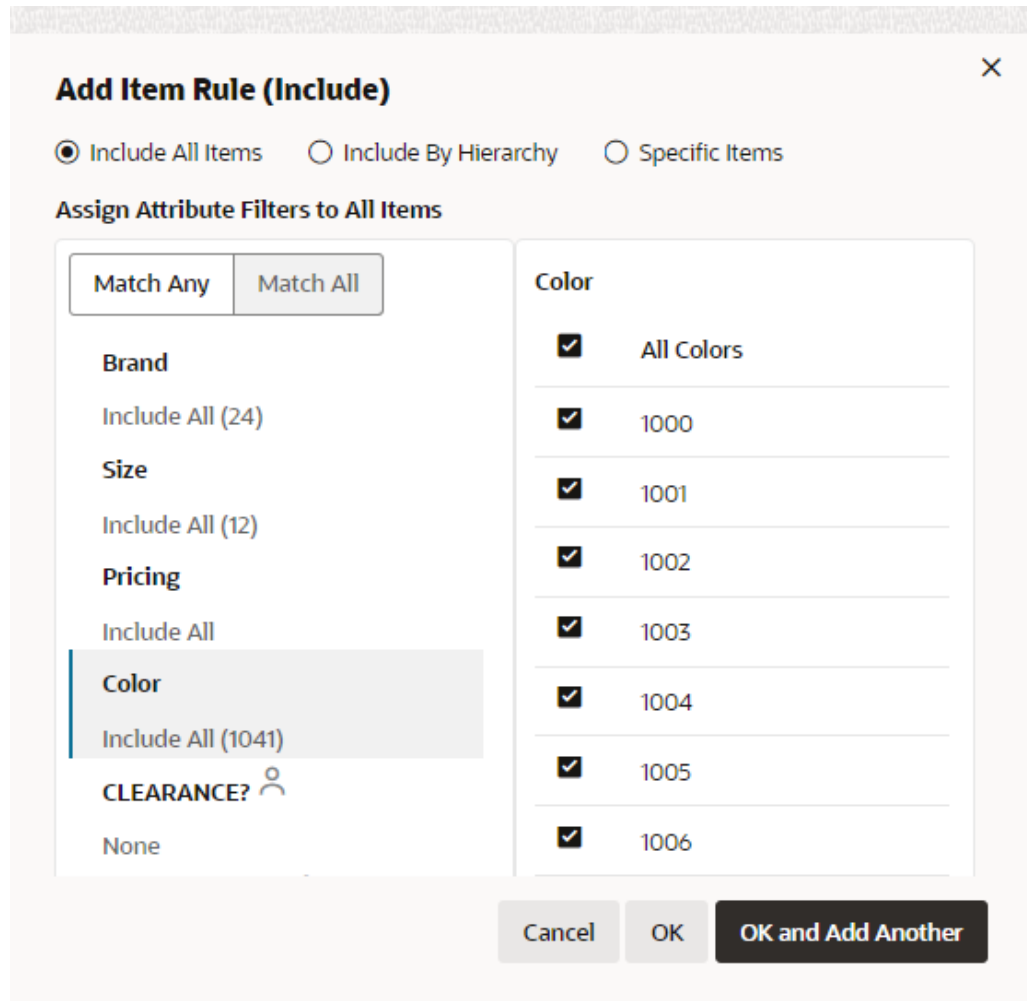
Define Qualifying Items Pane for Group 2

There are three methods to define Qualifying Items, either:

- Use the **Quick Add** option to enter a known **Item ID** which you wish to associate with this new Offer.
Click **Add**.
- Click the **Actions Menu** and select **Add Item Rule**.
- Click **+Add Item Rule**.

The [Figure 7-28](#) window opens.

Figure 7-28 Add Item Rule



You can Add Item Rules by selecting either:

- [Include All Items](#)
- [Include by Hierarchy](#)
- [Specific Items](#)

Include All Items

Perform the following steps to add Item Rules by including all items

1. Select **Include All Items**. This enables you to use Attribute Filters for all items.

Figure 7-29 Add Item Rule (Include All Items)

2. Click either **Match Any** or **Match All**.
3. In the left pane, select the desired attribute filter from the list of available choices. Once selected, any associated values for the attribute appear in the right pane.
4. In the right pane, select or clear values of the selected attribute filter. Attributes like Season, Color, or Brand default to All selected. You can clear all values for that attribute by clearing the check mark in the top check box. Then you can sort through the list and choose specific value by selecting the associated check box.
5. Click **OK** to add the item rule to the Offer or click **OK and Add Another** to add another attribute and values. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item rule.

Include by Hierarchy

Perform the following steps to add Item Rules by hierarchy.

1. Select **Include By Hierarchy**. The [Figure 7-30](#) window opens.

Figure 7-30 Add Item Rule (Include by Hierarchy)

Add Item Rule (Include)

Include All Items
 Include By Hierarchy
 Specific Items

Select Items By Hierarchy

DEPT (1)	SUB_DEPT	CLASS	SUB_CLASS	STYLE_ID
Search by ID or Name or Description <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>				
<input type="checkbox"/>	DEPT Name, ID and Description			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Accessory Department (ID 925) Accessory Department			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Appliance Department (ID 800) Appliance Department			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Beauty/Fragrance Department (ID 975) Beauty/Fragrance Department			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bridal Department (ID 850) Bridal Department			

Assign Attribute Filters to 1 Selected Hierarchies

Match Any | Match All

Brand
Include All (8)

Size
Include All (5)

Pricing
Include All

Color
Include All (13)

CLEARANCE?

None

Color

- All Colors
- Beige
- Black
- Blue
- Bronze
- Brown
- Fuchsia
- Gold

- There are two ways to search for items in the Include by Hierarchy window, either for:
 - All items - select one of the **Hierarchy** tabs such as (**Department** or **Class**, and click **Search** to retrieve all associated items for the hierarchy.
 - Specific items - select the check box for each item you want to add to the Offer.
- Select **Match Any** or **Match All**.
- In the center pane, select the desired Attribute Filter from the available choices. Once selected, any associated values for the attribute appear in the right pane.
- In the right pane, select or clear values of the selected attribute filter. Attributes like Season, Color, or Brand default to All selected. You can clear all values for that attribute by clearing the check mark in the top check box. Then you can sort through the list and choose specific values by selecting the associated check box.
- Click **OK** to add the item rule to the Offer or click **OK and Add Another** to add another attribute and values. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item rule.

Specific Items

Perform the following steps to include Item Rules by specific items.

- Select **Specific Items**. The [Figure 7-31](#) window opens.

Figure 7-31 Add Item Rule (Specific Items)

Add Item Rule (Include) X

Include All Items Include By Hierarchy Specific Items

0 Items Selected

Argyle X Search

Item Description and ID

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210009985)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010026)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010089)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010090)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010153)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010154)

Cancel OK OK and Add Another

2. Search for Specific Items.

In the Search box enter the **ID** or **Description** of the Item and click **Search**. A list of Items appear underneath the Search box.

3. Select Items. You can select either:
 - All Items by selecting the **Item Description and ID** check box.
 - Specific Items by selecting the check box for each item you want to add to the Offer.
4. Click **OK** to add the item rule to the Offer or click **OK and Add Another** to add another attribute and values, or click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item rule.

Exclude Items

From the [Figure 7-27](#) window, click the **Exclude Items** link.

Figure 7-32 Exclude Items

The screenshot shows the 'Define Qualifying Items' window. At the top right, there is a status indicator '0 Items Included'. The main area is titled 'Included' and contains a dropdown menu for 'Actions' with 'Quick Add' selected. Below this are two buttons: 'Add by ID' and 'Add'. A message 'No Items Included' is displayed, with a '+ Add Item Rule' button below it. In the top right corner of the main area, the 'Exclude Items' button is highlighted with a red rectangular box.

Excluding Items follows the same processes as:

- [Include All Items](#)
- [Include by Hierarchy](#)
- [Specific Items](#)

Define Qualifying Items for Offer Tiered Discount

Follow the procedures in this section to update the [Figure 7-33](#). Use this window to define which Items are included and excluded in the Tiered Discount offer.

Figure 7-33 Define Qualifying Items Window for the Offer Tiered Discount

The screenshot shows the 'Define Qualifying Items' window for a Tiered Discount offer. The title bar is blue and says 'Define Qualifying Items'. Below the title bar is a 'Parameters' section with an 'Import From Existing Offers' button. The parameters are: 'Subtotal Minimum' (empty text box), 'Subtotal Maximum' (empty text box), 'Threshold Style' (dropdown menu set to 'Tiered'), 'Threshold Type' (dropdown menu set to 'Quantity'), and 'Discount Type' (dropdown menu set to 'Percent Off'). Below the parameters is the 'Define Qualifying Items' section, which has a status indicator '0 Items Included'. The main area is titled 'Included' and contains a dropdown menu for 'Actions' with 'Quick Add' selected. Below this are two buttons: 'Add by ID' and 'Add'. A message 'No Items Included' is displayed, with a '+ Add Item Rule' button below it. In the top right corner of the main area, the 'Exclude Items' button is visible. At the bottom right of the window, there is a 'Next >' button.

Update the Parameters Pane for Tiered Discount

The following parameters are dynamic and vary based on the type of offer selected.

- **Subtotal Minimum** – The minimum subtotal required for the transaction to be eligible for the discount.
- **Subtotal Maximum** The maximum subtotal required for the transaction to be eligible for the discount.
- **Threshold Style** – The style of threshold to be set.
 - Tiered
- **Threshold Type** – The type of threshold.
 - Amount
 - Quantity
- **Discount Type** – The type of discount.
 - **Percent Off** – The discount is a certain percentage off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the percentage.
 - **Amount Off** – The discount is a fixed amount off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the amount.
 - **Override Price** – The new price for the qualifying item. The Discount Value field determines the new price.

Import Items for Tiered Discount

Import items into the Define Qualifying Items window by either:

- [Import Items from Existing Offers](#)
- [Import Items from a CSV file](#)
- [CSV File Format](#)

Import Items from Existing Offers

1. Click **Import From Existing Offers** then enter the following information:
 - a. Enter some or all of the **Offer Name**, or **Offer Type** in the Search for Offer field. When searching by Offer ID the user must enter the **exact ID**.
 - b. Click one or more of the **Import check boxes** for the Offers you would like to import.
 - c. Click **OK** to import the Offer.

Import Items from a CSV file

There are two methods to import items in a CSV file, either:

- Use the Action Menu.
 1. Click the **Actions Menu** and select **Import from CSV**.
 2. **Drag and Drop the File**
 3. Click **OK**
- Use File Explorer.
 1. Click **Upload**. This displays the file selection menu where you can import a set of items in a comma-separated values (CSV) format.
 2. Select a file from File Explorer.
 3. Click **Open**.

4. Click **OK**.

CSV File Format

When importing items into an Item Eligibility rule, the CSV file listing the items must have the following fields for each line.

- HIERARCHY LEVEL [required]
 - If the Hierarchy level is item, use the value `_ITEM_ID_` for this field.
 - For a non-item Hierarchy level, use the value configured in System Configuration.

For information about System Configuration and configuring the names of Hierarchy levels, see the *Oracle Retail customer Engagement Implementation Guide*.

- HIERARCHY VALUE [required]
- BRAND [optional]
- SEASON [optional]
- COLOR [optional]
- MIN PRICE [optional]
- MAX PRICE [optional]

Each line in the CSV file corresponds to one Hierarchy level being imported.

A placeholder must be used for all fields. For example, to include an item with an ID of 343, from the Acme brand, colored brown, with a minimum price of 13.50, with no season, and with no maximum price, the following line would be included in the CSV file:

```
_ITEM_ID_,343,Acme,,brown,13.50,
```

Note the empty SEASON and MAX PRICE fields in the example.



Note:

When the file has been uploaded, the name of the file displays a close icon **X** that allows you to remove the file.

Define Qualifying Items Pane for Tiered Discount

There are three methods to define Qualifying Items, either:

- Use the **Quick Add** option to enter a known **Item ID** which you wish to associate with this new Offer.
Click **Add**.
- Click the **Actions Menu** and select **Add Item Rule**.
- Click **+Add Item Rule**.

The [Figure 7-34](#) window opens.

Figure 7-34 Add Item Rule

Add Item Rule (Include) ✕

Include All Items Include By Hierarchy Specific Items

Assign Attribute Filters to All Items

Match Any Match All

Brand
Include All (24)

Size
Include All (12)

Pricing
Include All

Color
Include All (1041)

CLEARANCE?

None

Color

All Colors

1000

1001

1002

1003

1004

1005

1006

Cancel OK **OK and Add Another**

You can Add Item Rules by selecting either:

- [Include All Items](#)
- [Include by Hierarchy](#)
- [Specific Items](#)

Include All Items

Perform the following steps to add Item Rules by including all items

1. Select **Include All Items**. This enables you to use Attribute Filters for all items.

Figure 7-35 Add Item Rule (Include All Items)

2. Click either **Match Any** or **Match All**.
3. In the left pane, select the desired attribute filter from the list of available choices. Once selected, any associated values for the attribute appear in the right pane.
4. In the right pane, select or clear values of the selected attribute filter. Attributes like Season, Color, or Brand default to All selected. You can clear all values for that attribute by clearing the check mark in the top check box. Then you can sort through the list and choose specific value by selecting the associated check box.
5. Click **OK** to add the item rule to the Offer or click **OK and Add Another** to add another attribute and values. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item rule.

Include by Hierarchy

Perform the following steps to add Item Rules by hierarchy.

1. Select **Include By Hierarchy**. The [Figure 7-36](#) window opens.

Figure 7-36 Add Item Rule (Include by Hierarchy)

2. There are two ways to search for items in the Include by Hierarchy window, either for:
 - All items - select one of the **Hierarchy** tabs such as (**Department** or **Class**, and click **Search** to retrieve all associated items for the hierarchy.
 - Specific items - select the check box for each item you want to add to the Offer.
3. Select **Match Any** or **Match All**.
4. In the center pane, select the desired Attribute Filter from the available choices. Once selected, any associated values for the attribute appear in the right pane.
5. In the right pane, select or clear values of the selected attribute filter. Attributes like Season, Color, or Brand default to All selected. You can clear all values for that attribute by clearing the check mark in the top check box. Then you can sort through the list and choose specific values by selecting the associated check box.
6. Click **OK** to add the item rule to the Offer or click **OK and Add Another** to add another attribute and values. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item rule.

Specific Items

Perform the following steps to include Item Rules by specific items.

1. Select **Specific Items**. The [Figure 7-37](#) window opens.

Figure 7-37 Add Item Rule (Specific Items)

Add Item Rule (Include) X

Include All Items Include By Hierarchy Specific Items

0 Items Selected

Argyle X Search

Item Description and ID

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210009985)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010026)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010089)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010090)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010153)

Boys **Argyle** Sweater (ID 210010154)

Cancel OK OK and Add Another

2. Search for Specific Items.

In the Search box enter the **ID** or **Description** of the Item and click **Search**. A list of Items appear underneath the Search box.

3. Select Items. You can select either:
 - All Items by selecting the **Item Description and ID** check box.
 - Specific Items by selecting the check box for each item you want to add to the Offer.
4. Click **OK** to add the item rule to the Offer or click **OK and Add Another** to add another attribute and values, or click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item rule.

Exclude Items

From the [Figure 7-33](#), click the **Exclude Items** link.

Figure 7-38 Exclude Items

Excluding Items follows the same processes as:

- [Include All Items](#)
- [Include by Hierarchy](#)
- [Specific Items](#)

Update Award Items Tab

For Step 9 under the section [Creating Offers](#) update the Award Items tab and return to Step 10.

The Award Items tab defines which Items are included and excluded in the Offer, as well as to define the rules for the Award type and amount.

Table 7-6 Define Award Items by Offer Type

Offer Type	Define Award Items Section
Transaction Discount	Update Award Items for Group A
Line Item Discount	
Fixed Quantity/Price	
Gift with Purchase	Update Award Items for Gift with Purchase
Buy X Get X	Update Award Items for Buy X Get X
Buy X Get Points	Update Award Points for Buy X Get Points
Kit	Update Award Items for Offer Type Kit
Buy X Get Y	Update Award Items for Buy X Get Y
Tiered Discount	Define Tiered Discount

Update Award Items for Group A

The [Figure 7-39](#) defines award items for these type offers:

- Transaction Discount
- Line Item Discount

- Fixed Quantity/Price

Figure 7-39 Define Award Items Tab Group A

Define Award Items

Parameters

Priority: 1 | Maximum Award Amount: | Offer Count Limit: 0 | Discount Type: Percent Off | Discount Value: | Maximum Quantity: |

Prorate award value across qualifying items | Issue award to each qualifying item

Define Award Items 0 Items Included

Included

All Items That Match Pricing: 10

Next >

Update the Parameters Pane for Group A

The following parameters are dynamic and vary based on the type of offer selected.

- **Priority** – If more than one Offer can be applied to a Transaction, this selection menu determines the priority given to the Offer.
- **Maximum Award Amount** – The maximum currency amount of the award.
- **Offer Count Limit** – The maximum number of times the Offer can be applied to the same transaction. Available only if the Intended Use for the Offer is not Entitlement. Set to 0 (default) for no limit.
- **Discount Type** – The type of discount.
 - **Percent Off** – The discount is a certain percentage off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the percentage.
 - **Amount Off** – The discount is a fixed amount off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the amount.
- **Discount Value** – The amount of the discount.
- **Maximum Quantity** – Maximum quantity of the matching items that can be used to satisfy the item rule.
- **Award application method** – Determines how a discount is applied to the award Items. These options are only enabled for Amount Off discount types, and only if the Intended Use for the Offer is not Entitlement. This method has the following options:
 - **Prorate award value across qualifying items** - The amount of the discount is divided by the number of items and then that amount is applied to each Item.
 - **Issue award to each qualifying items** - The amount of the discount is applied to each Item.

Define Award Items for Group A

This pane lists Award items that were selected in [Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1](#)

- **Included Items** - Lists the items that are included as Award Items.
- **Excluded Items** - Lists the items that are excluded as Award Items.

Update Award Items for Offer Type Kit

The [Figure 7-40](#) defines award items when the offer type is Kit

- Kit

Figure 7-40 Define Award Items Tab for Offer Type Kit

Shipping Awards

Shipping Method	Ship To Country	Qualifying Pay Type
<input type="checkbox"/> Select All	<input type="checkbox"/> Select All	<input type="checkbox"/> Select All
<input type="checkbox"/> UPS- Ground	<input type="checkbox"/> USA	<input type="checkbox"/> PayPal
<input type="checkbox"/> Fedex- Next Morning 10am	<input type="checkbox"/> CA	<input type="checkbox"/> ApplePay
<input type="checkbox"/> UPS - Next Day		<input type="checkbox"/> Cash
<input type="checkbox"/> USPS- Priority Mail		<input type="checkbox"/> Check
		<input type="checkbox"/> Discover

Continental USA Only

Sectional Center Facility

From

To

Awards

Shipping Charge Type

Override Shipping Method

Discount

Charge Code

Next >

Update the Parameters Pane for Offer Type Kit

The following parameters are dynamic and vary based on the type of offer selected.

- **Priority** – If more than one Offer can be applied to a Transaction, this selection menu determines the priority given to the Offer.
- **Maximum Award Amount** – The maximum currency amount of the award.
- **Offer Count Limit** – The maximum number of times the Offer can be applied to the same transaction. Available only if the Intended Use for the Offer is not Entitlement. Set to 0 (default) for no limit.

Define Award Items

Update the following items:

- **Discount Type** – From the list, select a type of discount, either:
 - Percent Off – The discount is a certain percentage off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the percentage.
 - Amount Off – The discount is a fixed amount off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the amount.
 - Override Price - The new price for the qualifying item. The Discount Value field determines the new price.
- **Discount Value** – Enter the amount of the discount.
- **Maximum Quantity** – Select the maximum quantity of the matching items that can be used to satisfy the item rule.
- **Award application method** – Determines how a discount is applied to the award items.

 **Note:**

These options are only available when:

- Amount Off is the discount type
- the Intended Use for the Offer is not Entitlement

You can select from the following options:

- **Prorate award value across qualifying items** - The amount of the discount is divided by the number of items and then that amount is applied to each item.
- **Issue award to each qualifying items** - The amount of the discount is applied to each item.

This pane lists Award items that were selected in [Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 2](#).

- **Included Items** - Lists the items that are included as Award Items.
- **Excluded Items** - Lists the items that are excluded as Award Items.

Update Award Items for Gift with Purchase

The [Figure 7-41](#) defines award items when the offer type is Gift with Purchase.

Figure 7-41 Define Award Items Tab for Gift with Purchase

Define Award Items

Parameters

Priority: 1 | Maximum Award Amount: | Offer Count Limit: 0 | Discount Type: Percent Off | Discount Value: Required

Maximum Quantity: |

Prorate award value across qualifying items Issue award to each qualifying item

Define Gift Item 0 Items Included

Included

Actions: Quick Add | Add by ID | Add

No Items Included

+ Add Gift Item

Next >

Update the Parameters Pane for Gift with Purchase

The following parameters are dynamic and vary based on the type of offer selected.

- **Priority** – If more than one Offer can be applied to a Transaction, this selection menu determines the priority given to the Offer.
- **Maximum Award Amount** – The maximum currency amount of the award.
- **Offer Count Limit** – The maximum number of times the Offer can be applied to the same transaction. Available only if the Intended Use for the Offer is not Entitlement. Set to 0 (default) for no limit.
- **Discount Type** – The type of discount.
 - Percent Off – The discount is a certain percentage off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the percentage.
 - Amount Off – The discount is a fixed amount off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the amount.
 - Override Price - The new price for the qualifying item. The Discount Value field determines the new price.
- **Discount Value** – The amount of the discount.
- **Maximum Quantity** – Maximum quantity of the matching items that can be used to satisfy the item rule.
- **Award application method** – Determines how a discount is applied to the award Items.

 **Note:**

These options are only available when:

- Amount Off is the discount type
- the Intended Use for the Offer is not Entitlement

You can select from the following options:

- **Prorate award value across qualifying items** - The amount of the discount is divided by the number of items and then that amount is applied to each Item.
- **Issue award to each qualifying items** - The amount of the discount is applied to each Item.

Adding Gift Items to an Offer

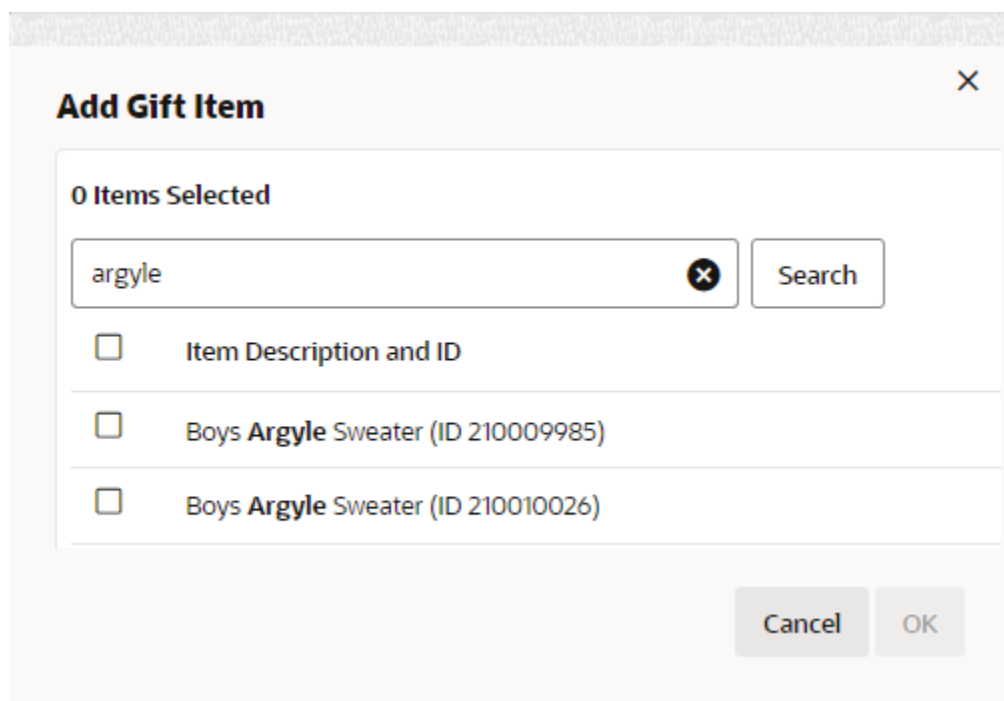
Perform the following steps to add Gift Items to an offer from the [Figure 7-41](#) window.

1. Select a method from the [Figure 7-41](#) window to add gift items.
 - a. Enter the exact item ID in the **Quick Add** field and then click **Add**.
 - b. Click **+ Add Gift Item** to open the [Figure 7-42](#) window where you can search for items.
 - c. Click the **Actions Menu** and then select **+Add Gift Item** to open the [Figure 7-42](#) window.

 **Note:**

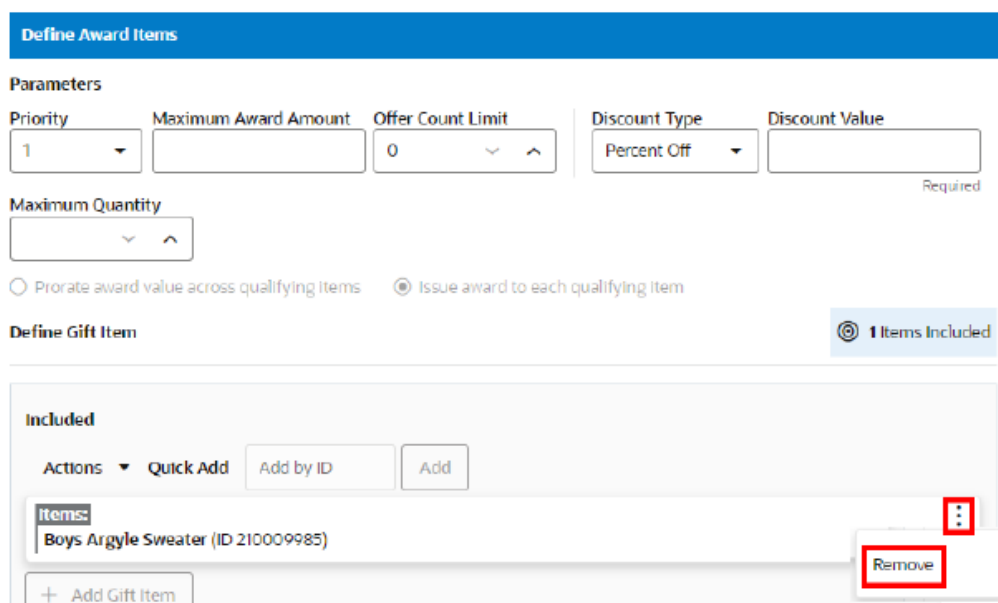
You may only add one Gift Item to the offer.

Figure 7-42 Add Gift Item



2. Select one check box to the left of the individual item you wish to add to the Offer.
 - a. **Optional:** Click the **Overflow Menu**, then click **Remove** to remove a Gift Item and search for a different Gift Item.

Figure 7-43 Included Gift Item Overflow Menu (Remove)



3. Click **OK** to add the Gift Item to the Offer, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Update Award Items for Buy X Get X

The [Figure 7-44](#) defines award items when the offer type is Buy X Get X

Figure 7-44 Define Award Items Tab Buy X Get X

Define Award Items

Parameters

Priority: 1
 Maximum Award Amount:
 Offer Count Limit: 0
 Award Quantity: 1

Discount Type: Percent Off
 Discount Value:
 Maximum Quantity:

Required

Prorate award value across qualifying items Issue award to each qualifying item

Define Award Items 3 Items Included

Included

Items:
 Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010026)
 Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010089)
 Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010090)

Next >

Update the Parameters Pane for Buy X Get X

The following parameters are dynamic and vary based on the type of offer selected.

- **Priority** – If more than one Offer can be applied to a Transaction, this selection menu determines the priority given to the Offer.
- **Maximum Award Amount** – The maximum currency amount of the award.
- **Offer Count Limit** – The maximum number of times the Offer can be applied to the same transaction. Available only if the Intended Use for the Offer is not Entitlement. Set to 0 (default) for no limit.
- **Discount Type** – The type of discount.
 - Percent Off – The discount is a certain percentage off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the percentage.
 - Amount Off – The discount is a fixed amount off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the amount.
 - Override Price - The new price for the qualifying item. The Discount Value field determines the new price.

- **Discount Value** – The amount of the discount.
- **Maximum Quantity** – Maximum quantity of the matching items that can be used to satisfy the item rule.
- **Award application method** – Determines how a discount is applied to the award Items.

 **Note:**

These options are only available when:

- Amount Off is the discount type
- the Intended Use for the Offer is not Entitlement

You can select from the following options:

- **Prorate award value across qualifying items** - The amount of the discount is divided by the number of items and then that amount is applied to each Item.
- **Issue award to each qualifying items** - The amount of the discount is applied to each Item.

Define Award Items

This pane lists Award items that were selected in [Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 1](#).

- **Included Items** - Lists the items that are included as Award Items.
- **Excluded Items** - Lists the items that are excluded as Award Items.

Update Award Items for Buy X Get Y

The [Figure 7-45](#) defines award items when the offer type is Buy X Get Y.

Figure 7-45 Define Award Items Tab for Buy X Get Y

Define Award Items

Parameters

Priority <input type="text" value="1"/>	Maximum Award Amount <input type="text"/>	Offer Count Limit <input type="text" value="0"/>	Award Quantity <input type="text" value="1"/>
Discount Type <input type="text" value="Percent Off"/>	Discount Value <input type="text"/>	Maximum Quantity <input type="text"/>	

Required

Prorate award value across qualifying items Issue award to each qualifying item

Define Award Items 📌 0 Items Included

Included Exclude Items

Actions ▾ Quick Add

No Items Included

Update the Parameters Pane for Buy X Get Y

The following parameters are dynamic and vary based on the type of offer selected.

- **Priority** – If more than one Offer can be applied to a Transaction, this selection menu determines the priority given to the Offer.
- **Maximum Award Amount** – The maximum currency amount of the award.
- **Offer Count Limit** – The maximum number of times the Offer can be applied to the same transaction. Available only if the Intended Use for the Offer is not Entitlement. Set to 0 (default) for no limit.
- **Discount Type** – The type of discount.
 - Percent Off – The discount is a certain percentage off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the percentage.
 - Amount Off – The discount is a fixed amount off of the qualifying items. The Discount Value field determines the amount.
 - Override Price - The new price for the qualifying item. The Discount Value field determines the new price.
- **Discount Value** – The amount of the discount.
- **Maximum Quantity** – Maximum quantity of the matching items that can be used to satisfy the item rule.

- **Award application method** – Determines how a discount is applied to the award Items.

 **Note:**

These options are only available when:

- Amount Off is the discount type
- the Intended Use for the Offer is not Entitlement

You can select from the following options:

- **Prorate award value across qualifying items** - The amount of the discount is divided by the number of items and then that amount is applied to each Item.
- **Issue award to each qualifying items** - The amount of the discount is applied to each Item.

Define Award Items

This pane lists Award items that were selected in [Define Qualifying Items for Offer Group 2](#).

- **Included Items** - Lists the items that are included as Award Items.
- **Excluded Items** - Lists the items that are excluded as Award Items.

Update Award Points for Buy X Get Points

The [Figure 7-46](#) defines award points when the offer type is Buy X Get Points

Figure 7-46 Define Award Points Tab for Buy X Get Points

Define Award Points

Points Details

Calculation Type

Bonus Points

Fixed Amount

Points Multiplier

Maximum Transactions Per Day

Transaction Minimum Value

Next >

Define Award Points Buy X Get Points

The Award Points tab defines the points in the Offer, as well as to define the rules for the Calculation type and amounts.

Perform the following steps.

1. Update the items in the Points Detail pane.
 - Select the **Calculation Type**. Values include:
 - The value of each item purchased - The sale amount of each item purchased in the transaction.
 - The quantity of each item purchased - The quantity of each item purchased in the transaction.
 - The number of qualifying transactions - The number of qualifying transactions made by the Customer.

- **Bonus Points** - Indicates whether this Issue Rule stipulates that the Loyalty Program issues points as Bonus Points. Toggle the switch to activate.
 - **Fixed Amount** - The Fixed Amount, if any, assigned to each transaction.
 - **Points Multiplier** - The number multiplied by the value indicated in the Calculation Type field. This field is active when the selected Calculation Type is either **The value of each item purchased** or **The quantity of each item purchased**.
 - **Maximum Transactions Per Day** - The maximum number of sales transactions in a single day that will be used to calculate Loyalty points.
 - **Transaction Minimum Value** - Minimum amount of a transaction for it to be applied to a Loyalty account.
2. When finished entering parameters for the Award Points, click **Next** to continue to [Define Tender Type for Buy X Get Points](#).

Define Tender Type for Buy X Get Points

Tender eligibility rules determine whether a Customer Engagement element is enabled for a transaction, depending upon the tender used in a transaction.

Figure 7-47 Tender Type

Tender Type

21 Tenders Selected

Filter by Name or ID ✕ Filter

Enable all tenders types. (No restrictions will be placed on the eligibility rule.)

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CASH	CASH
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CHECK	CHECK
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	COUPON	COUPON
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	GIFTCARD	GIFTCARD

Next >

Perform the following steps.

1. At the top of the window, in the Filter box enter filter criteria such as Name or ID. A list of tender types matching the filter criteria displays. Select one or more tender types to activate eligibility for this Issue rule.

 **Note:**

Select the **Enable all tender types** check box to indicate that all tenders are eligible for the Issue rule.

 **Note:**

If a customer uses a tender that is unchecked, that transaction will not qualify for points issued by the Issue rule.

- When finished selecting Tender Types, click **Next**. Continue to the [Buy X Get Points Review](#) tab.

Define Tiered Discount

When the offer type is Tiered Discount, use the [Figure 7-48](#) window.

A discount is applied to a defined set of items, where the amount or percent of the discount depends on the quantity or amount of the items defined in the threshold.

 **Note:**

At least two tiers must be defined for Tiered Discount Offer.

Figure 7-48 Define Tiered Discount

Define Tiered Discount

Parameters

Prorate award value across qualifying items
 Issue award to each qualifying item

Define Tiered Discount

Tier	Threshold Quantity	Discount Percent
1	Buy <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="1"/>	Get <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="2"/>
2	Buy <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="3"/>	Get <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="5"/>

[+ Add Another](#)

Next >

Perform the following steps to update the [Figure 7-48](#) window

1. Enter the following information.

Parameters

- Prorate award value across qualifying items - The amount of the discount is divided by the number of items and then that amount is applied to each Item.
- Issue award to each qualifying items - The amount of the discount is applied to each Item.

For each Tier, enter the following information:

- **Buy** - The quantity threshold that must be met or exceeded to qualify for the Tier-level discount.
 - **Get** - The discount applied to the Items in the Buy field. This field is only displayed when the discount type previously selected is Percent Off or Amount Off.
 - **For** - The price applied to the items in the Buy field. This field is only displayed if the discount type previously selected is Price Override.
2. Click + **Add Another** to add another tier or click the **Remove Tier** icon to remove a tier from the offer.
 3. When finished defining Tiered Discounts for the Offer, click **Next** and advance to the [Tiered Discount Review](#) tab.

Updating Award Points for Marketing Engagements

The [Figure 7-49](#) defines the points in the Offer, as well as to define the rules for the Calculation type and amounts.

Figure 7-49 Award Points Tab for Offer Type Marketing Engagements

Define Award Points

Points Details

Calculation Type: The number of marketing engagements

Bonus Points:

Fixed Amount: 0

Issuance Rules

Frequency Period: (Please select) Required

Issues Per Period:

Unlimited Issuance:

Rule Count Limit:

Next >

Perform the following steps to update the [Figure 7-49](#) window.

1. Enter the following for the **Award Points** tab.

Points Details

- **Calculation Type: The number of marketing engagements** - The number of times the customer interacts with marketing media, such as watching a video online. (default).
- **Bonus Points** - Indicates whether this Issue Rule stipulates that the Loyalty Program issues points as Bonus Points (inactive).
- **Fixed Amount** - The Fixed Amount, if any, assigned to each transaction.

Issuance Rules

- **Frequency Period** - This field determines the time period used to control the frequency with which a Customer can earn points through marketing engagements. Options include:
 - One time only
 - Daily
 - Weekly
 - Monthly
 - Yearly
 - **Issues Per Period** - The number of times a Customer can earn points through marketing engagements during the Frequency Period. Set to 1 if the Frequency Period is One-time only
 - **Unlimited Issuance** - Determines whether points can be issued an unlimited number of times during the Frequency Period. Cleared if the Frequency Period is set to One-time only.
 - **Rule Count Limit** - The total number of times a Customer can earn points through marketing engagements. Set to 1 if the Frequency Period is One-time only
2. When finished defining Awards Points, click **Next**. Continue to the [Marketing Engagements Review](#) tab.

Update Shipping Awards Tab

For Step 10 under the section [Creating Offers](#) update the Shipping Awards tab and return to Step 11.

Update the [Figure 7-50](#) when the offer type is:

- Transaction Discount
- Line Item Discount
- Fixed Quantity/Price
- Gift with Purchase
- Buy X Get X
- Kit
- Buy X Get Y

Perform the following steps to update the [Figure 7-50](#).

1. Enter the following information for the **Shipping Awards** tab.

Figure 7-50 Shipping Awards Tab

Shipping Awards

Shipping Method

- Select All
- UPS- Ground
- FedEx- Next Morning 10am
- UPS - Next Day
- USPS- Priority Mail

Ship To Country

- Select All
- USA
- CA

Qualifying Pay Type

- Select All
- PayPal
- ApplePay
- Cash
- Check
- Discover

Continental USA Only

Sectional Center Facility

From

To

Awards

Shipping Charge Type

Override Shipping Method

Discount Percent Off Required

Charge Code

Next >

- **Shipping Method** – This table lists the shipping methods that will qualify the shipping award. Select the shipping methods eligible for the Offer (Optional).
- **Ship To Country** – This table specifies the countries which make eligible the shipping award on the Offer. Select the Ship to Countries for the Offer (Optional).
- **Qualifying Pay Type** – This table lists the payment types required on the transaction to qualify for the shipping award. Select the Pay Types for the Offer (Optional).
- **Continental US Only** – If the Continental USA Only check box is checked, the Offer applies only to states in the continental USA (excluding Hawaii and Alaska).
- **Sectional Center Facility From** – This represents the first three positions of the postal code, for the sectional center facility. This will be the starting point of the range of postal code the shipment destination must fall under to qualify for the Shipping award (Optional).
- **Sectional Center Facility To** – This represents the first three positions of the postal code, for the sectional center facility. This will be the ending point of the range of postal code the shipment destination must fall under to qualify for the Shipping award (Optional).
- When finished defining the Shipping Award rules for the Offer, click Next.

Awards

- **Shipping Charge Type** – Customer defined Charge Types that qualify for the shipping award discount, such as, Base or Upgrade.
- **Override Shipping Method** – If a Shipping Method was defined, selecting this check box dictates overriding that shipping method for this new method. These codes are defined in a Configuration called Shipping Method Codes.
- **Discount** – Select the type of shipping discount to apply.

- **Percent Off** – Apply a percentage discount, specified in the Discount Value, to the shipping charge. For example, 40% off shipping.
 - **Amount Off** – Apply a discount amount, specified in the Discount Value, to the shipping charge. For example, \$5.00 off shipping.
 - **Override Price** – Override the shipping price to the Discount Value. For example, \$2.99 shipping.
 - **Charge Code** – Select from the list to select a code that will appear on the order when using the Amount off or Percent Off (Optional).
2. Continue with the Review tab by offer type in the section, [Using the Review Tab](#).

Using the Review Tab

For Step 11 under the section [Creating Offers](#) check the Review tab for your offer.

The Review tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

The following sections describe the review process for each type of offers.

- [Transaction Discount Review](#)
- [Line Item Discount Review](#)
- [Fixed Quantity/Price Review](#)
- [Gift with Purchase Review](#)
- [Buy X Get X Review](#)
- [Buy X Get Points Review](#)
- [Kit Review](#)
- [Buy X Get Y Review](#)
- [Tiered Discount Review](#)
- [Marketing Engagements Review](#)

Transaction Discount Review

The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

Perform the following steps to review and then accept or change the offer.

1. Review the [Figure 7-51](#) for the **Transaction Discount** Offer.

Figure 7-51 Review Tab - Transaction Discount

Review

Offer Name: Spring Bonus Intended Use: Any **Transaction Discount**

Settings

Options

Include Non-Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Items to be used in other Offers	No
Include Reclines	No
Allow Zero Price	No

Comments

Qualifying Items

Threshold Style: Minimum Subtotal Minimum: 1
 Threshold Type: Quantity Subtotal Maximum: 2
 Threshold: 1

Included: All Items

Excluded: No Excluded Items Defined

Award Items

Award Items

Priority	1
Maximum Award Amount	4
Offer Count Limit	1
Discount Type	Percent Off
Discount Value	10
Maximum Quantity	1
Award Value Distribution	Prorate award value across qualifying items

Included: All Items

Excluded: No Excluded Items Defined

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

- Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Note:

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

Line Item Discount Review

The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

Perform the following steps to review and then accept or change the offer.

- Review the [Figure 7-52](#) for the **Line Item Discount** Offer.

Figure 7-52 Review Tab - Line Item Discount

Review

Offer Name: Spring Bonus Intended Use: Any **Line Item Discount**

Settings

Options

Include Non-Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Items to be used in other Offers	No
Include Reclines	No
Allow Zero Price	No

Comments

Qualifying Items

Award Items

Award Items

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

- Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

 **Note:**

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

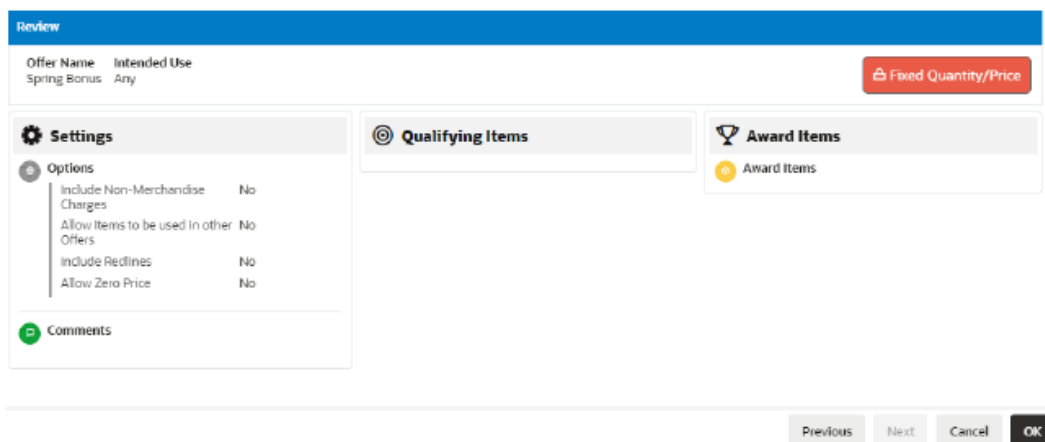
Fixed Quantity/Price Review

The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

Perform the following steps to review and then accept or change the offer.

1. Review the [Figure 7-53](#) for the **Fixed Quantity/Price** Offer.

Figure 7-53 Review Tab - Fixed Quantity/Price



2. Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

 **Note:**

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

Gift with Purchase Review

The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

Perform the following steps to review and then accept or change the offer.

1. Review the [Figure 7-54](#) for the **Gift with Purchase** Offer.

Figure 7-54 Review Tab - Gift with Purchase

Review

Offer Name: Spring Bonus | Intended Use: Any | **Gift with Purchase**

Settings

Options

Include Non-Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Items to be used in other Offers	No
Include Reclines	No
Allow Zero Price	No

Comments

Qualifying Items

Threshold Style	Minimum	Subtotal Minimum	1
Threshold Type	Quantity	Subtotal Maximum	2
Threshold	1		

Included
All Items

Excluded
No Excluded Items Defined

Award Items

Award Items

Previous | Next | Cancel | **OK**

- Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Note:

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

Buy X Get X Review

The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

Perform the following steps to review and then accept or change the offer.

- Review the [Figure 7-55](#) for the **Buy X Get X** Offer.

Figure 7-55 Review Tab - Buy X Get X

Review

Offer Name: Spring Bonus | Intended Use: Any | **Buy X Get X**

Settings

Options

Include Non-Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Items to be used in other Offers	No
Include Reclines	No
Allow Zero Price	No

Comments

Qualifying Items

Threshold Style	Minimum	Subtotal Minimum	1
Threshold Type	Quantity	Subtotal Maximum	2
Threshold	1		

Included

Items:

- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010089)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010090)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010153)

Excluded
No Excluded Items Defined

Award Items

Award Items

Priority	1
Maximum Award Amount	-
Offer Count Limit	-
Award Quantity	1
Discount Type	Percent Off
Discount Value	-
Maximum Quantity	-
Award Value Distribution	Issue award to each qualifying item

Included

Items:

- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010089)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010090)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010153)

Excluded
No Excluded Items Defined

Previous | Next | Cancel | **OK**

- Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

 **Note:**

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

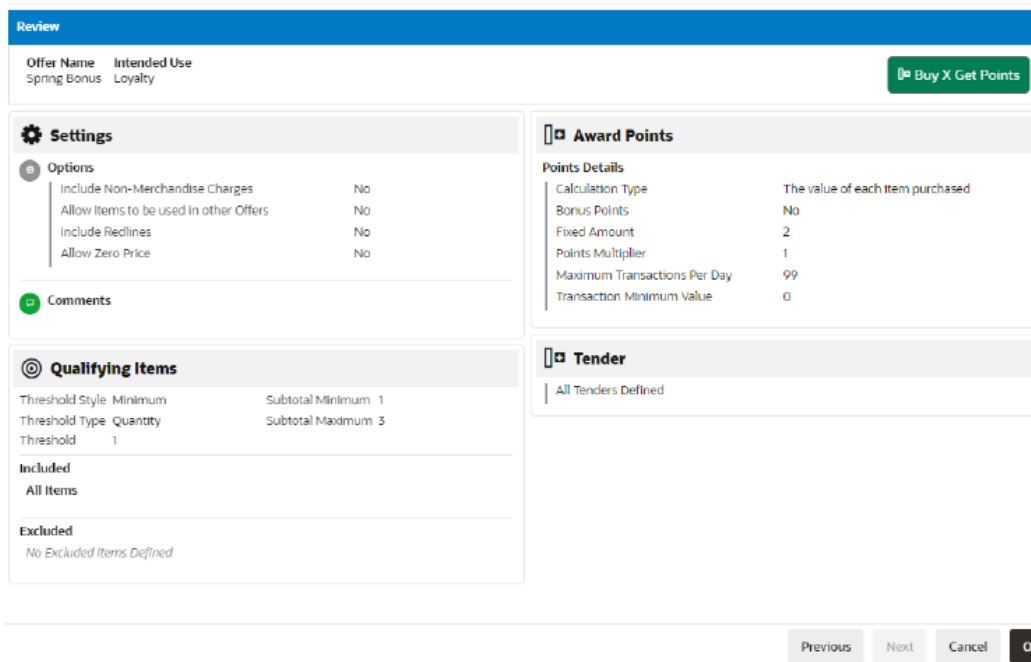
Buy X Get Points Review

The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

Perform the following steps to review and then accept or change the offer.

- Review the [Figure 7-56](#) for the **Buy X Get Points** Offer.

Figure 7-56 Review Tab - Buy X Get Points



Review

Offer Name: Spring Bonus Intended Use: Loyalty [Buy X Get Points](#)

Settings

Options

Include Non-Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Items to be used in other Offers	No
Include Redlines	No
Allow Zero Price	No

Comments

Qualifying Items

Threshold Style	Minimum	Subtotal Minimum	1
Threshold Type	Quantity	Subtotal Maximum	3
Threshold	1		

Included

All Items

Excluded

No Excluded Items Defined

Award Points

Points Details

Calculation Type	The value of each item purchased
Bonus Points	No
Fixed Amount	2
Points Multiplier	1
Maximum Transactions Per Day	99
Transaction Minimum Value	0

Tender

All Tenders Defined

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

- Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

 **Note:**

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

Kit Review

The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

Perform the following steps to review and then accept or change the offer.

1. Review the [Figure 7-57](#) for the **Kit Offer**.

Figure 7-57 Review Tab - Kit

Review

Offer Name: Spring Set Intended Use: Any Kit

Settings

Options

Include Non-Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Items to be used in other Offers	No
Include Redlines	No
Allow Zero Price	No

Comments

Qualifying Items

Set 1

Threshold Style	Minimum	Subtotal Minimum	10
Threshold Type	Quantity	Subtotal Maximum	50
Threshold			1

Included

Items:

- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010090)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010153)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010154)

Excluded

No Excluded Items Defined

Award Items

Set 1

Priority	1
Maximum Award Amount	50
Offer Count Limit	1
Discount Type	Percent Off
Discount Value	25
Maximum Quantity	1
Award Value Distribution	Issue award to each qualifying Item

Included

Items:

- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010090)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010153)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010154)

Excluded

No Excluded Items Defined

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

2. Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Note:

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

Buy X Get Y Review

The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

Perform the following steps to review and then accept or change the offer.

1. Review the [Figure 7-58](#) for the **Buy X Get Y Offer**.

Figure 7-58 Review Tab - Buy X Get Y

Review

Offer Name: Spring Bonus Intended Use: Any **Buy X Get Y**

Settings

Options

Include Non-Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Items to be used in other Offers	No
Include Redlines	No
Allow Zero Price	No

Comments

Qualifying Items

Set 1

Threshold Style	Minimum	Subtotal Minimum	1
Threshold Type	Quantity	Subtotal Maximum	3
Threshold	1		

Included

Items:

- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010089)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010090)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010153)

Excluded

No Excluded Items Defined

Award Items

Award Items

Priority	1
Maximum Award Amount	-
Offer Count Limit	0
Award Quantity	1
Discount Type	Percent Off
Discount Value	10
Maximum Quantity	2
Award Value Distribution	Issue award to each qualifying item

Included

Items:

- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010281)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010282)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010345)

Excluded

No Excluded Items Defined

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

- Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Note:

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

Tiered Discount Review

The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

Perform the following steps to review and then accept or change the offer.

- Review the [Figure 7-59](#) for the **Tiered Discount Offer**.

Figure 7-59 Review Tab - Tiered Discount

Review

Offer Name: Spring Set Intended Use: Any Tiered Discount

Settings

Options

Include Non-Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Items to be used in other Offers	No
Include Redlines	No
Allow Zero Price	No

Comments

Qualifying Items

Threshold Style: Tiered Subtotal Minimum: -
Threshold Type: Quantity Subtotal Maximum: -
Threshold: 1
Discount Type: Percent Off
Discount Value: 2

Included

Items:

- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010090)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010153)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010154)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010217)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010218)
- Boys Argyle Sweater (ID 210010281)

Excluded

No Excluded Items Defined

Discount Tiers

Tier	Threshold Quantity	Discount Percent
1	Buy 1	Get 2
2	Buy 3	Get 7

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

- Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Note:

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

Marketing Engagements Review

The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Offer Setup.

Perform the following steps to review and then accept or change the offer.

- Review the [Figure 7-60](#) for the **Marketing Engagements Offer**.

Figure 7-60 Review Tab - Marketing Engagements

Review

Offer Name	Intended Use	Marketing Engagements
Spring Bonus	Loyalty Marketing Engagement	

Settings

Options

Include Non-Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Items to be used in other Offers	No
Include Redlines	No
Allow Zero Price	No

Comments

Award Points

Points Details

Calculation Type	The number of marketing engagements
Bonus Points	Yes
Fixed Amount	2
Frequency Period	One time only

Previous
Next
Cancel
OK

2. Click **OK** to create the offer, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

 **Note:**

Before you save the offer, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create Offer process and make changes.

Deleting Offers

You can access an offer for deleting using the following methods to display the Delete option:

- Offers Search Results
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer on the Offer Advanced Search window (Offer Record Result Section).
 - Click **Delete**.

Figure 7-61 Overflow Menu Options (Offers Advanced Search)

Offers Search

Search

Offer ID:

Hierarchy Level:

Hierarchy Value:

Promotions:

Search Results Create Offer

462 Offers Found Sort By: Last Update Date

Name and Status	Type	Intended Use	Revenue LTD	Source
Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 926) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	\$0.00	Internal
Automated Transaction Discount Offer Creation (ID 925) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00	
Deal -TEST FIXED (ID 924) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	\$0.00	

Overflow menu options: Delete, Duplicate, Edit, View

- Offer Quick Search
 - Click the **Overflow Menu icon** on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer on **Offer Quick Search** window.
 - Click **Delete**.

Figure 7-62 Overflow Menu Options (Offer Quick Search)

Promotion Home

Active Promotions

61

\$300,549,369.15

Revenue LTD

Active Offers

79

\$280,442,684.69

Revenue LTD

Offer Quick Search Create Offer

Match Type Partial Exact

Search for an Offer by Hierarchy value or Offer ID or Name or Type or Intended Use

[Offer Advanced Search](#)

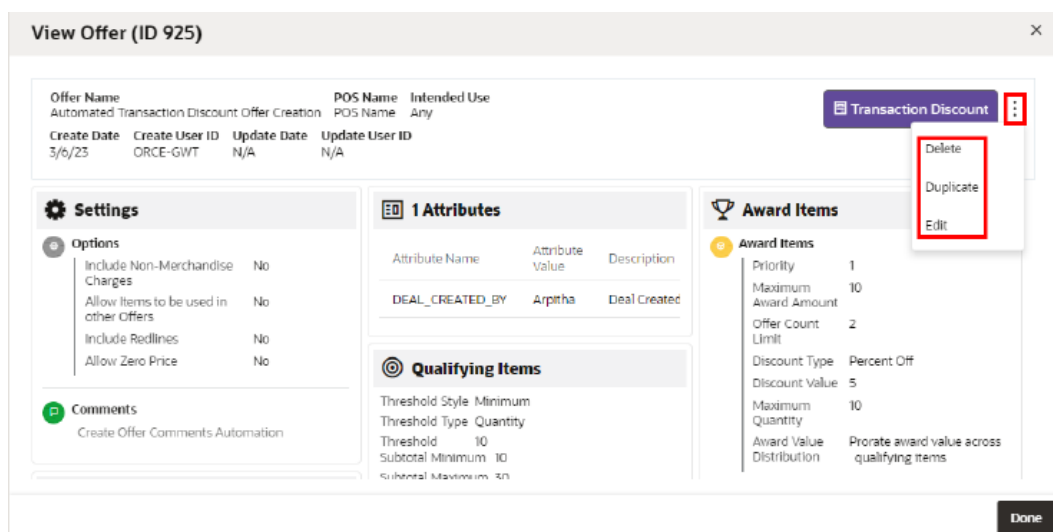
Offers

Offer Name and Status	Offer Type	Intended Use	Revenue LTD
Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 926) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	\$0.00
Automated Transaction Discount Offer Creation (ID 925) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	
Deal -TEST FIXED (ID 924) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	
Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 923) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	

Overflow menu options: Delete, Duplicate, Edit, View

- View Offer View
 - Click the **Overflow Menu icon** on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer while **Viewing Offers**.
 - Click **Delete**.

Figure 7-63 View Offer (Delete)



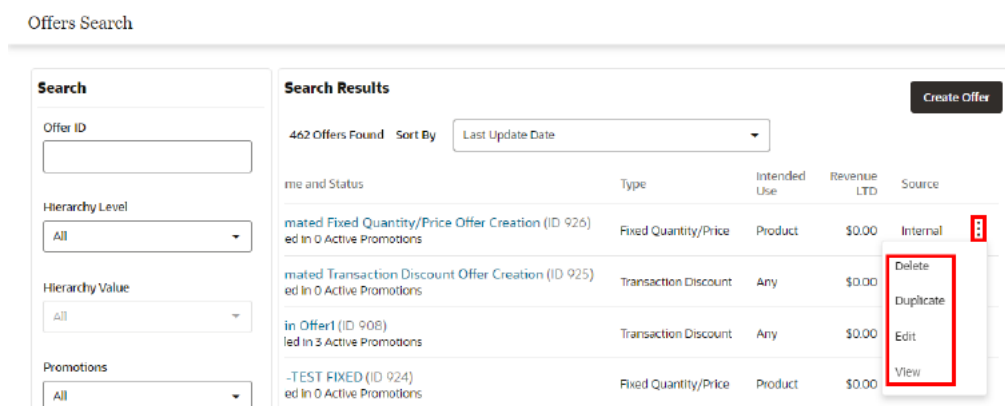
For detailed information on each section while editing an offer see [Creating Offers](#).

Editing Offers

You can access an offer for editing using the following methods to display the Edit option:

- Offers Search Results
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer on the Offer Advanced Search window (Offer Record Result Section).
 - Click **Edit**.

Figure 7-64 Overflow Menu Options (Offers Advanced Search)



- Offer Quick Search
 - Click the **Overflow Menu icon** on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer on **Offer Quick Search** window.
 - Click **Edit**.

Figure 7-65 Overflow Menu Options (Offer Quick Search)

Promotion Home

Active Promotions 61 \$300,549,369.15 Revenue LTD	Active Offers 79 \$280,442,684.69 Revenue LTD
--	--

Offer Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact Create Offer

Search for an Offer by Hierarchy value or Offer ID or Name or Type or Intended Use Offer Advanced Search

Offer Name and Status	Offer Type	Intended Use	Revenue LTD
Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 926) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	\$0.00
Automated Transaction Discount Offer Creation (ID 925) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	
Deal -TEST FIXED (ID 924) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	
Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 923) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	

Overflow menu options: Delete, Duplicate, Edit, View

- View Offer View
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer while [Viewing Offers](#).
 - Click **Edit**.

Figure 7-66 View Offer (Edit)

View Offer (ID 925)

Offer Name Automated Transaction Discount Offer Creation	POS Name POS Name	Intended Use Any
Create Date 3/6/23	Create User ID ORCE-GWT	Update Date N/A
Update User ID N/A		

Transaction Discount

Overflow menu options: Delete, Duplicate, Edit

Settings

Options

Include Non-Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Items to be used in other Offers	No
Include Redlines	No
Allow Zero Price	No

Comments

Create Offer Comments Automation

1 Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute Value	Description
DEAL_CREATED_BY	Arpitha	Deal Created

Qualifying Items

Threshold Style: Minimum
Threshold Type: Quantity
Threshold: 10
Subtotal Minimum: 10
Subtotal Maximum: 20

Award Items

Award Items

Priority	1
Maximum Award Amount	10
Offer Count Limit	2
Discount Type	Percent Off
Discount Value	5
Maximum Quantity	10
Award Value Distribution	Prorate award value across qualifying items

Done

For detailed information on each section while editing an offer see [Creating Offers](#).

Duplicating Offers

You can duplicate an offer using the following methods to display the Duplicate option:

- Offers Search Results
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer on the **Offers Advanced Search** window.

- Click **Duplicate**.

Figure 7-67 Overflow Menu Options (Offers Advanced Search)

Offers Search

Search

Offer ID

Hierarchy Level: All

Hierarchy Value: All

Promotions: All

Search Results 462 Offers Found Sort By: Last Update Date

Offer Name and Status	Type	Intended Use	Revenue LTD	Source
Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 926) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	\$0.00	Internal
Automated Transaction Discount Offer Creation (ID 925) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00	
Deal in Offer1 (ID 908) Enabled in 3 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	\$0.00	
Deal -TEST FIXED (ID 924) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	\$0.00	

Overflow Menu Options: Delete, Duplicate, Edit, View

- Offers Quick Search
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer while [Viewing Offers](#).
 - Click **Duplicate**.

Figure 7-68 Quick Offers Search Overflow Menu icon Options

Promotion Home

Active Promotions

61

\$300,549,369.15
Revenue LTD

Active Offers

79

\$280,442,684.69
Revenue LTD

Offer Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact

Search for an Offer by Hierarchy value or Offer ID or Name or Type or Intended Use

Offer Advanced Search

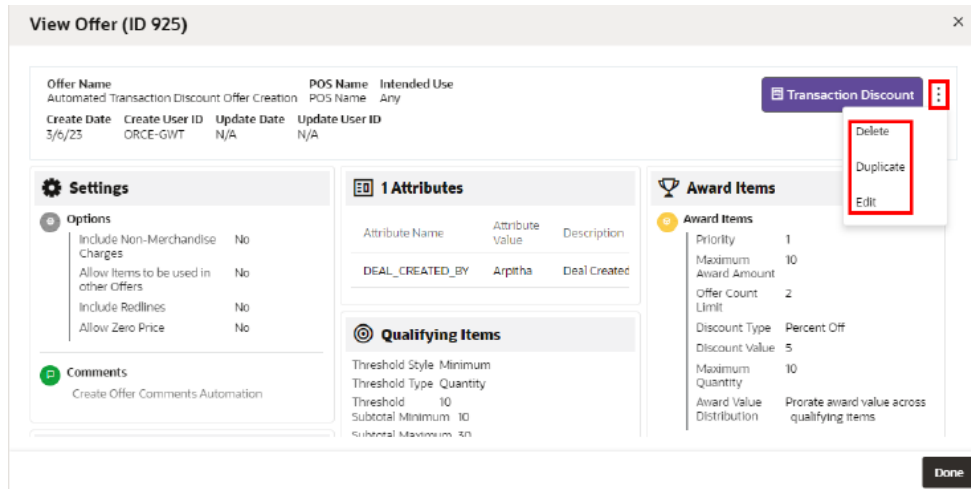
Offers

Offer Name and Status	Offer Type	Intended Use	Revenue LTD
Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 926) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	\$0.00
Automated Transaction Discount Offer Creation (ID 925) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Transaction Discount	Any	
Deal -TEST FIXED (ID 924) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	
Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 923) Enabled in 0 Active Promotions	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	

Overflow Menu Options: Delete, Duplicate, Edit, View

- View Offer View
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer while [Viewing Offers](#).
 - Click **Duplicate**.

Figure 7-69 View Offer (Duplicate)



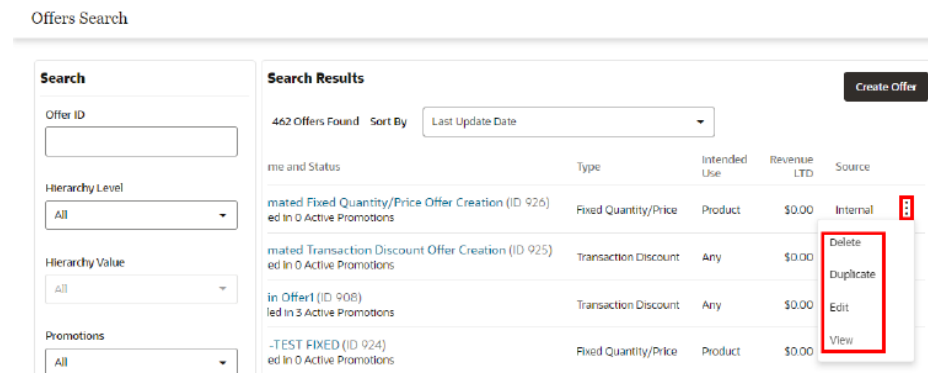
For detailed information on each section after duplicating an offer see [Creating Offers](#).

Viewing Offers

You can access an offer for viewing using the following methods to display the View option:

- Offers Search Results
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer on the Offer Advanced Search window (Offer Record Result section).
 - Click **View**.

Figure 7-70 Overflow Menu Options (Offers Advanced Search)



- Offer Quick Search
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual Offer on **Offer Quick Search** window.
 - Click **View**.

Figure 7-71 Overflow Menu Options (Offer Quick Search)

Promotion Home

Active Promotions
61

\$300,549,369.15
Revenue LTD

Active Offers
79

\$280,442,684.69
Revenue LTD

Offer Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact Create Offer

Offer Advanced Search

Offers

Offer Name and Status	Offer Type	Intended Use	Revenue LTD
<input type="radio"/> Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 926) <small>Enabled in 0 Active Promotions</small>	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	\$0.00 ⋮
<input type="radio"/> Automated Transaction Discount Offer Creation (ID 925) <small>Enabled in 0 Active Promotions</small>	Transaction Discount	Any	
<input type="radio"/> Deal -TEST FIXED (ID 924) <small>Enabled in 0 Active Promotions</small>	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	
<input type="radio"/> Automated Fixed Quantity/Price Offer Creation (ID 923) <small>Enabled in 0 Active Promotions</small>	Fixed Quantity/Price	Product	

Delete

Duplicate

Edit

View

For detailed information on each section while Viewing an offer see [Creating Offers](#).

Offer Scorecard

The Offer Scorecard displays information about the Offer response in a Promotion. You have the ability to periodically review the response data on Offers that are part of promotions. The Offer Scorecard also displays additional tiles for Loyalty related offers.

Figure 7-72 Offer Scorecard

Offer Scorecard



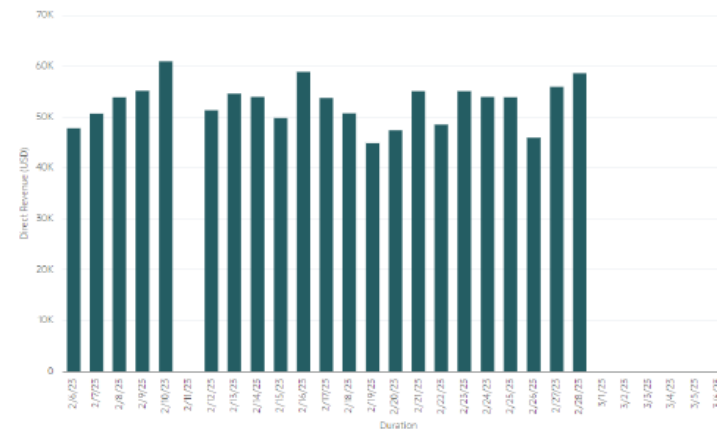
Daily-Promotion Offer (KEEP) (ID 34)

Data Updated as of 3/1/25, 2:50 PM by Job 'Aggregate Promotion Scorecards Summary'

Revenue LTD \$31,771,252.94 USD	Average Unit Retail \$69.73 USD
--	--

In Promotion: Duration:

Offer Performance

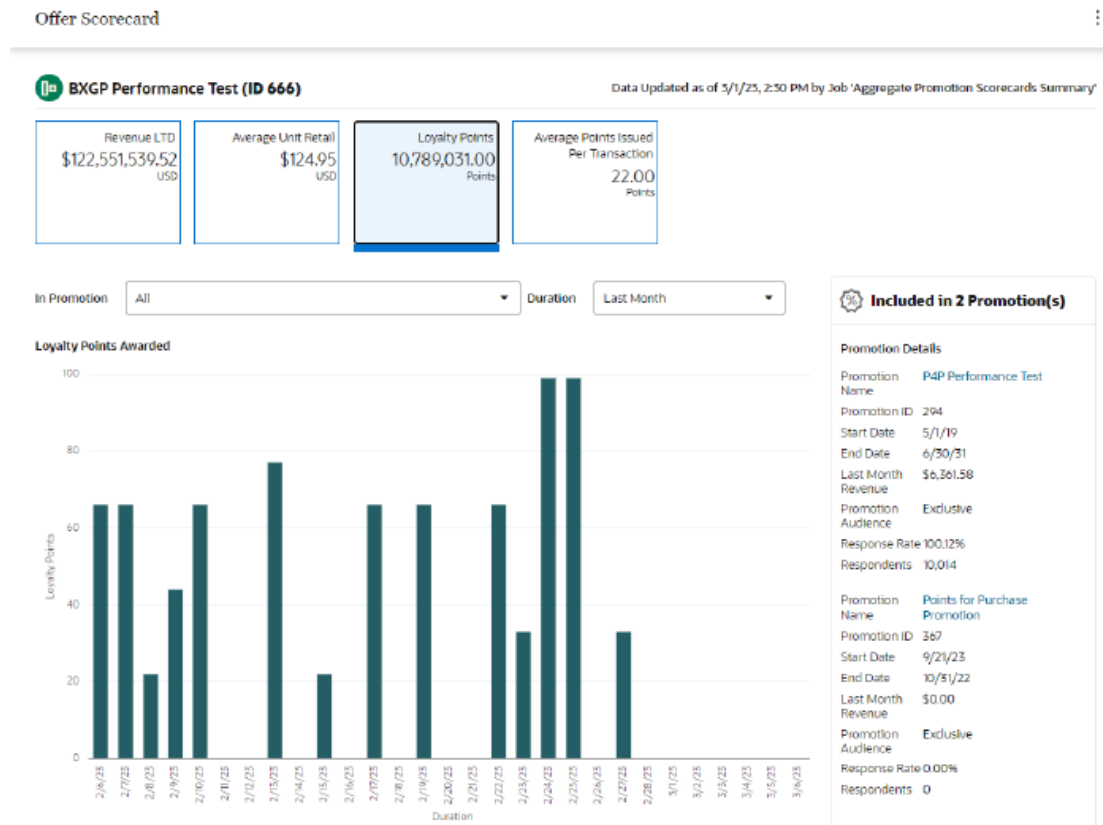


Included in 2 Promotion(s)

Promotion Details

Promotion Name	Daily-Promotion (KEEP)
Promotion ID	10
Start Date	1/1/70
End Date	12/31/24
Last Month Revenue	\$161,336.75
Promotion Audience	Non-exclusive
Response Rate	44.33%
Respondents	115,633
Promotion Name	Daily-Promotion 2 (KEEP)
Promotion ID	97
Start Date	1/1/70
End Date	12/30/24
Last Month Revenue	\$0.00
Promotion Audience	Non-exclusive
Response Rate	0.00%
Respondents	0

Figure 7-73 Offer Scorecard - Loyalty

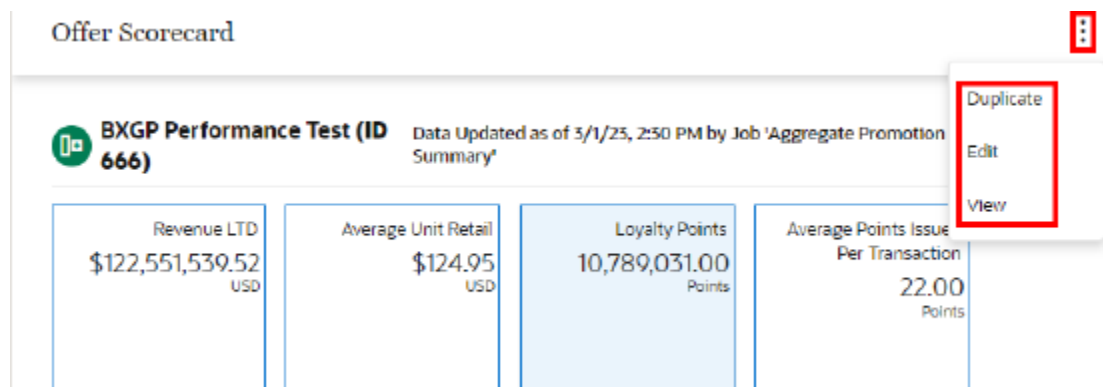


Offer Scorecard Feature Bar

The Offer Scorecard Feature Bar contains the following information:

- Title of the window.
- Action Menu with the ability to **View**, **Edit**, or **Duplicate** the Offer.

Figure 7-74 Action Menu Options



Metric Tiles

Each offer presents a different set of Metric Tiles, click each one to see more information.

Revenue LTD

The Revenue LTD Metric Tile is: Total Direct Revenue generated Lifetime to Date (LTD) from the Offer.

Offer Performance

- In Promotion Filter – List of all the Promotions that the offer is associated with.
- Duration– Durations include:
 - **Last Week** - Offer performance for Last Week (7 days (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Last Month (Default)** – Offer performance for Last Month (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Last 6 Months** – Offer performance for Last 6 Months converted into weeks (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Last Year** – Offer performance for Last 12 months (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Lifetime to Date** – Offer performance for the last 5 years (Current date (-1)) display.

Graph

- The bar graph dynamically updates the Offer performance based on the value selected for the In Promotion and Duration.
- By default the Offer performance graph displays for All the Promotions which the Offer is part of for the Last Month.
- The graph represents a plot between the Direct Revenue on Y-axis and Duration on X-axis for each individual Promotion.

Promotion Details Side Panel

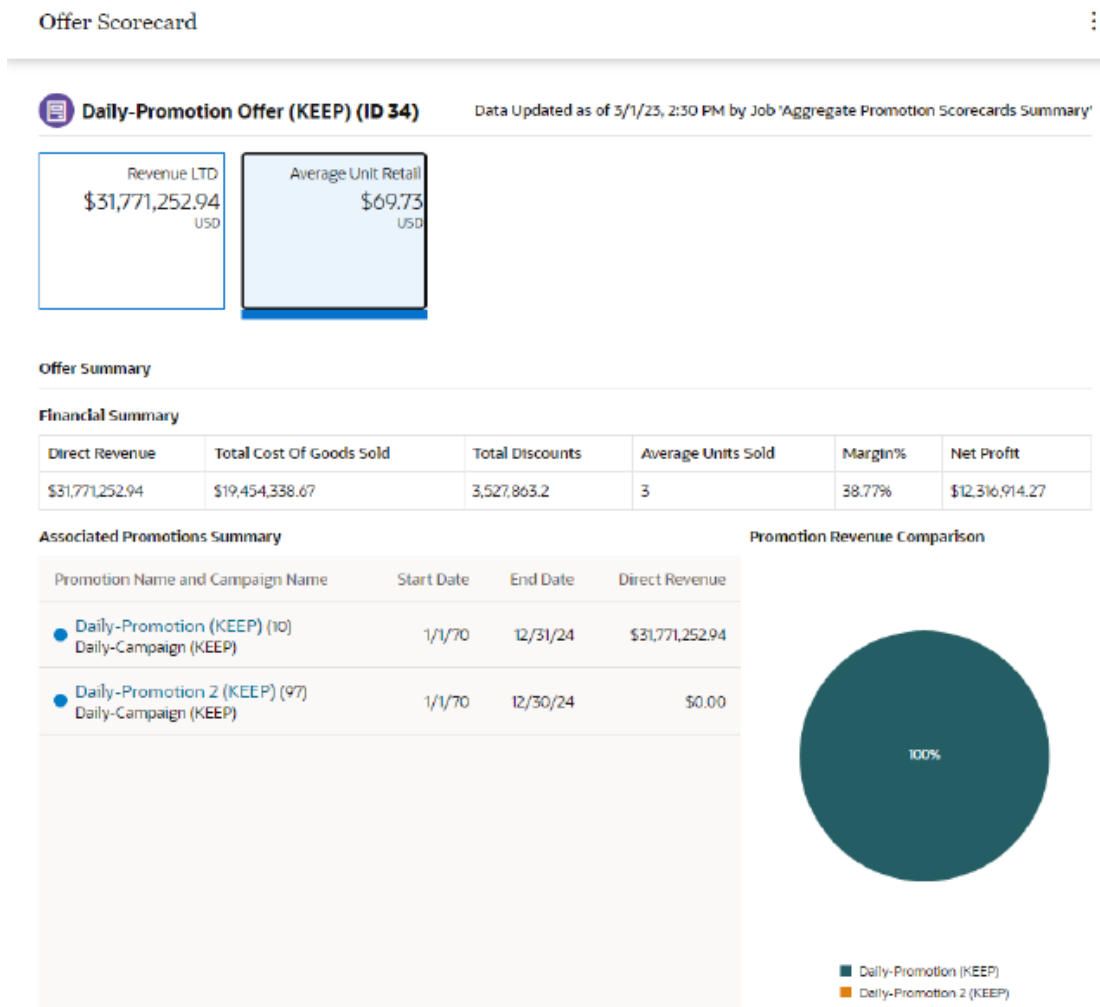
- **Promotion Name** – Name of the Promotion.
 - Click the **Promotion Name** link from the Promotion Details panel on the Offer Scorecard window to display the View Promotion window for the selected promotion on the same tab. Click **Done** to return to the Offer Scorecard.
See [Viewing a Promotion](#) to learn more about the information on that window.
- **Promotion ID** – ID of the Promotion.
- **Start Date** – The date the Promotion begins.
- **End Date** – The date the Promotion ends.

- **Revenue** – Offer's Revenue display depending on the value selected in the duration.
- **Promotion Target** – Indicates the type of targeting used by the Promotion (Nonexclusive or Exclusive).
- **Response Rate** – Calculated by dividing the total number of Respondents by the Total number targeted. Set to 100.00 for Non-Targeted customers.
- **Respondents** – Number of Customers in the Target who have responded to the Offer in the Promotion. This is the same as the Total for Non-Targeted customers.

Average Unit Retail Tile

The Average Unit Retail calculated for a given item over a select period of time. To calculate AUR, you simply take the total revenue (or net sales) divided by the number of units sold.

Figure 7-75 Average Unit Retail Tile



Financial Summary

- **Direct Revenue** – Sum Total of the Revenue generated using the offer.
- **Total Cost of Goods Sold** – The sum total of the cost of all the items sold on which the offer was applied.
- **Total Discounts** – Sum Total of the Discounts.
- **Average Units Sold** – Total Number of Items Sold /Total Number of unique Transactions.
- **Margin %** – Net Profit /Direct Revenue
- **Net Profit** – Direct Revenue minus Total Cost Of Goods Sold

Associated Promotions Summary

Data Section

- A full circle represents an Active Promotion or an Empty circle represents an Inactive Promotion.
- **Promotion Name and Campaign Name** – Name of the Promotion and Campaign.
 - When a user selects the promotion name from the list of promotions on the Offer Scorecard window, the system displays the View Promotion window for the selected promotion on the same tab. See [Viewing a Promotion](#) for more information.
- **Promotion ID** – Contains the Title ID and the Promotion ID in parenthesis.
- **Start Date** – The date the promotion begins.
- **End Date** – The date the promotion ends.
- **Direct Revenue** – Total extended price of all line items associated with the Promotion's Offers.

Promotion Revenue Comparison

Pie Chart

- The pie chart shows the pictorial representation of the direct revenue generated from the respective promotions.
- The title of the pie chart is Promotion Revenue Comparison.
- The maximum of top ten promotions by direct revenue display.
- Each sector of the pie chart represents the direct revenue earned by an individual promotion with a different color.
- A legend displays to the right of the pie chart and is linked with the information displayed in the pie chart.

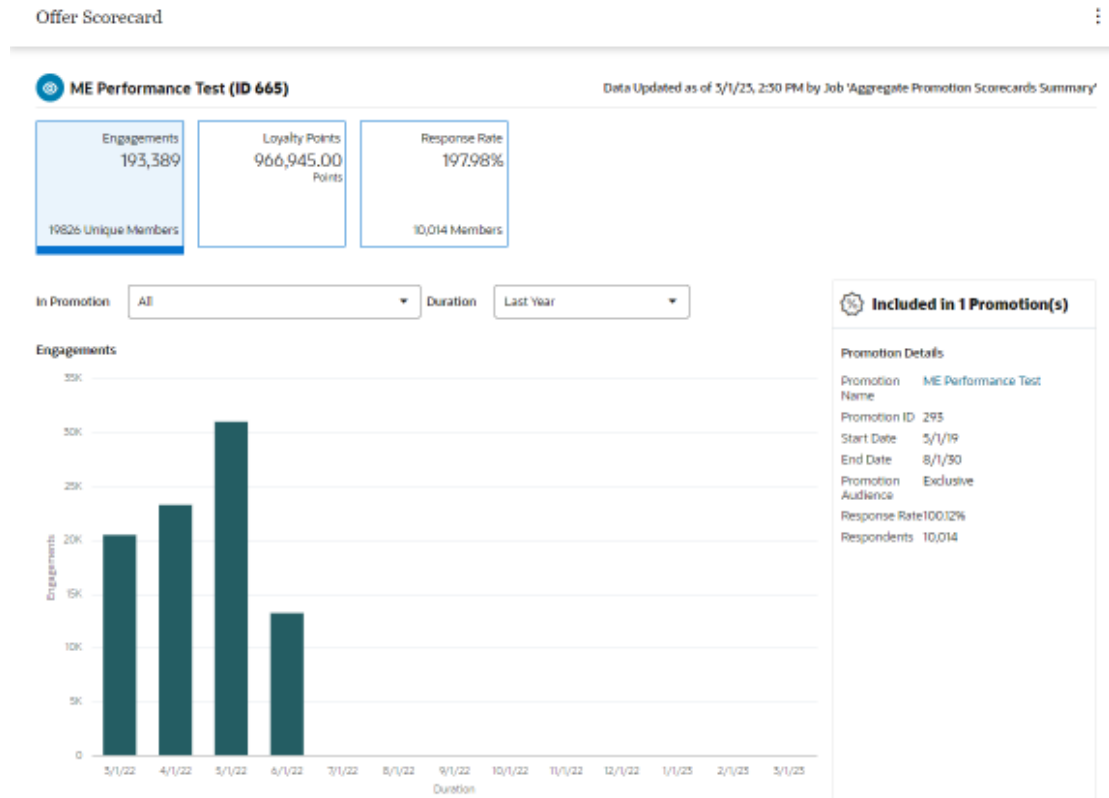
Note:

To close the Offer Scorecard, click the close icon **X** associated with the Offer Number in the Open Tasks area at the top of the window.

Engagements

The number of times customers interact with marketing media, such as watching a video online.

Figure 7-76 Engagements Metric Tile



- In Promotion - You can choose to view by All promotions (default) or select from the list of promotions associated with the offer.
- Duration– Durations include:
 - **Last Week** - Offer performance for Last Week (7 days (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Last Month (Default)** – Offer performance for Last Month (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Last 6 Months** – Offer performance for Last 6 Months converted into weeks (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Last Year** – Offer performance for Last 12 months (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Lifetime to Date** – Offer performance for the last 5 years (Current date (-1)) display.

Graph

- The bar graph will dynamically update the Offer performance based on the value selected for the In Promotion and Duration.

- By default the Offer performance graph displays for All the Promotions which the Offer is part of for the Last Month.
- The graph represents a plot between the Engagements on Y-axis and Duration on X-axis for each individual Promotion.

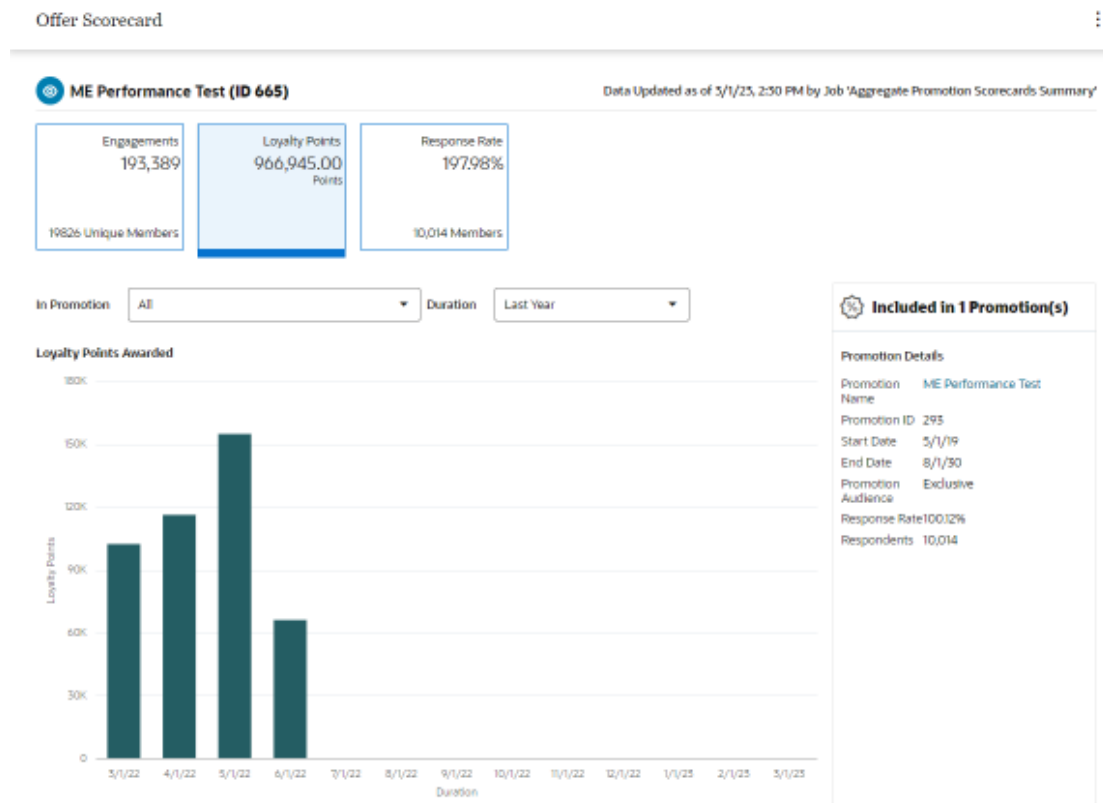
Promotion Details Side Panel

- Promotion Name – Name of the Promotion.
 - Click the **Promotion Name** link from the Promotion Details panel on the Offer Scorecard window to display the View Promotion window for the selected promotion on the same tab. Click **Done** to return to the Offer Scorecard. See [Viewing a Promotion](#) to learn more about the information on that window.
- Promotion ID – ID of the Promotion.
- Start Date – The date the Promotion begins.
- End Date – The date the Promotion ends.
- Promotion Audience – Indicates the type of targeting used by the Promotion (Nonexclusive or Exclusive).
- Response Rate – Calculated by dividing the total number of Respondents by the Total number targeted. Set to 100.00 for Non-Targeted customers.
- Respondents – Number of Customers in the Target who have responded to the Offer in the Promotion. This is the same as the Total for Non-Targeted customers.

Loyalty Points

Total points issued during the Promotion period to the members against their purchase activity. The Points are calculated as defined in the Offers which is the part of this Promotion.

Figure 7-77 Loyalty Points Metric Tile



- In Promotion - You can choose to view by All promotions (default) or select from the list of promotions associated with the offer.
- Duration– Durations include:
 - **Last Week** - Offer performance for Last Week (7 days (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Last Month (Default)** – Offer performance for Last Month (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Last 6 Months** – Offer performance for Last 6 Months converted into weeks (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Last Year** – Offer performance for Last 12 months (Current date (-1)) display.
 - **Lifetime to Date** – Offer performance for the last 5 years (Current date (-1)) display.

Graph

- The bar graph will dynamically update the Offer performance based on the value selected for the In Promotion and Duration.
- By default the Offer performance graph displays for All the Promotions which the Offer is part of for the Last Month.
- The graph represents a plot between the Loyalty Points on Y-axis and Duration on X-axis for each individual Promotion.

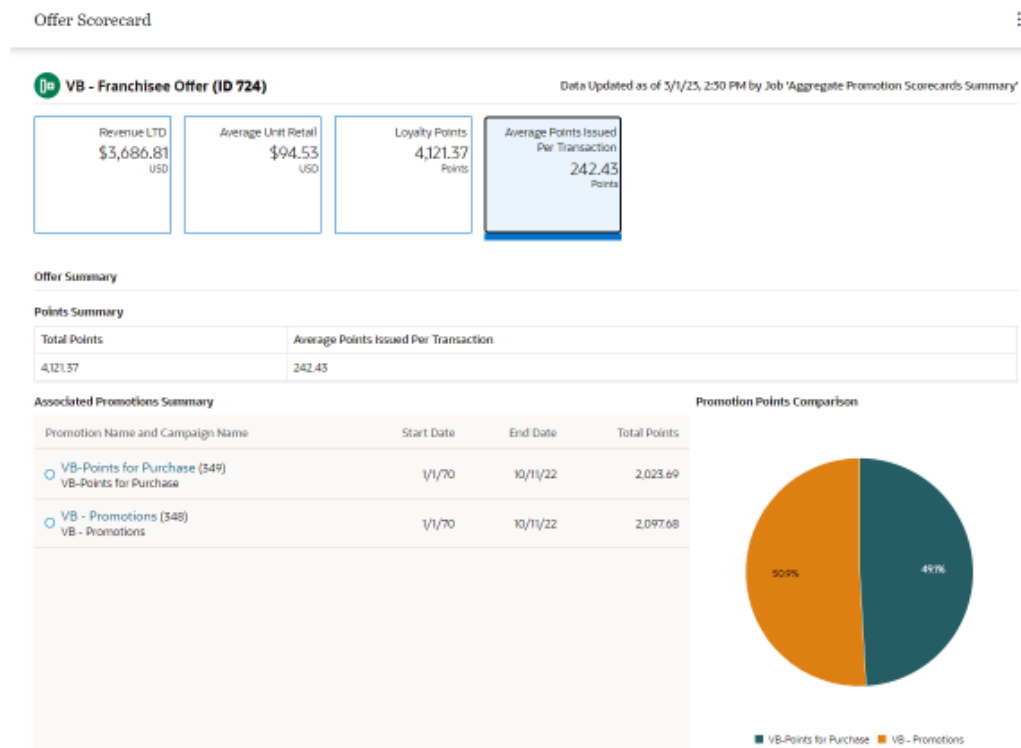
Promotion Details Side Panel

- Promotion Name – Name of the Promotion.
 - Click the **Promotion Name** link from the Promotion Details panel on the Offer Scorecard window to display the View Promotion window for the selected promotion on the same tab. Click **Done** to return to the Offer Scorecard. See [Viewing a Promotion](#) to learn more about the information on that window.
- Promotion ID – ID of the Promotion.
- Start Date – The date the Promotion begins.
- End Date – The date the Promotion ends.
- Promotion Audience – Indicates the type of targeting used by the Promotion (Nonexclusive or Exclusive).
- Response Rate – Calculated by dividing the total number of Respondents by the Total number targeted. Set to 100.00 for Non-Targeted customers.
- Respondents – Number of Customers in the Target who have responded to the Offer in the Promotion. This is the same as the Total for Non-Targeted customers.

Average Points Issued Per Transaction

Average number of points issued per Transaction during the Promotion period to the members against their purchase activity. The Average Value (Total Points issued/ Number of Transaction).

Figure 7-78 Average Points Issued Per Transaction Metric Tile



Offer Summary - Points Summary

- Total Points – Sum Total of the Points generated using the offer.
- Average Points Issued Per Transaction – Average number of points issued per Transaction during the Promotion period to the members against their purchase activity. The Average Value (Total Points issued/Number of Transaction).

Associated Promotions Summary

Data Section

- A full circle represents an Active Promotion or an empty circle represents an Inactive Promotion.
- **Promotion Name and Campaign Name** – Name of the Promotion and Campaign.
 - When a user selects the promotion name from the list of promotions on the Offer Scorecard window, the system displays the View Promotion window for the selected promotion on the same tab. See [Viewing a Promotion](#) for more information.
- **Promotion ID** – Contains the Title ID and the Promotion ID in parenthesis.
- **Start Date** – The date the promotion begins.
- **End Date** – The date the promotion ends.
- **Total Points** – Total points distributed with all the Promotion's Offers.

Promotion Points Comparison

Pie Chart

- The pie chart shows the pictorial representation of the points distributed from the respective promotions.
- The title of the pie chart is Promotion Points Comparison.
- The maximum of top ten promotions by direct revenue display.
- Each sector of the pie chart represents the points distributed by an individual promotion with a different color.
- A legend displays to the right of the pie chart and is linked with the information displayed in the pie chart.



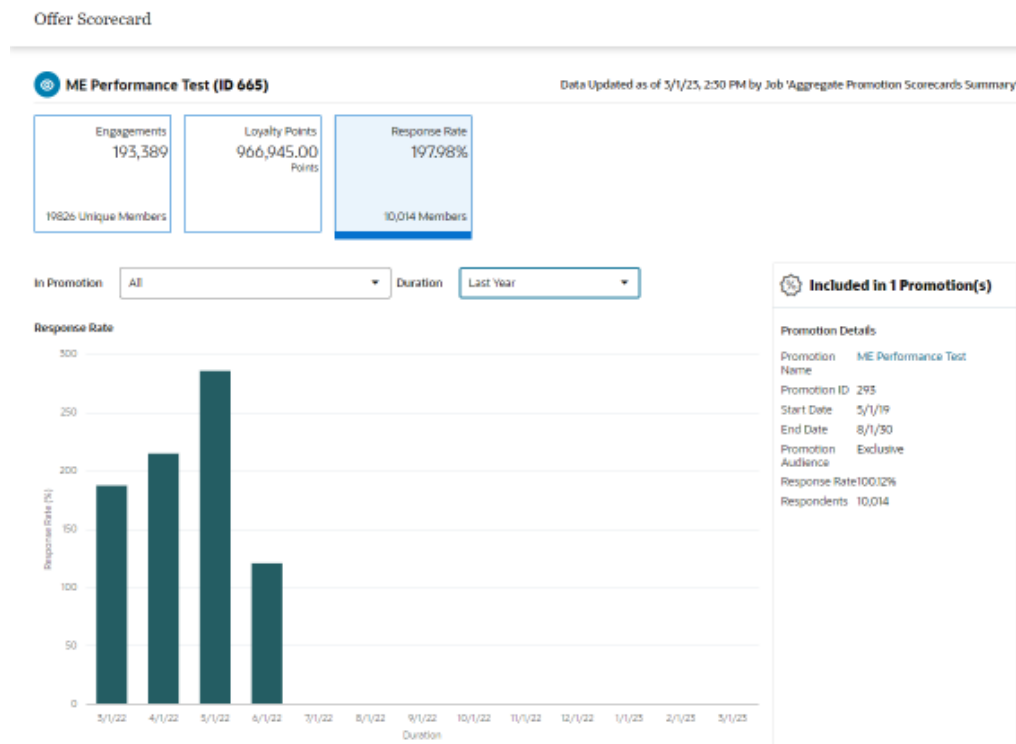
Note:

To close the Offer Scorecard, click the close icon **X** associated with the Offer Number in the Open Tasks area at the top of the window.

Response Rate

Calculated by dividing the total number of Respondents by the Total number targeted. Set to 100.00 for Non-Targeted customers.

Figure 7-79 Response Rate Metric Tile



Graph

- The bar graph will dynamically update the Offer Response Rate based on the value selected for the In Promotion and Duration.
- By default the Response Rate performance graph displays for All the Promotions which the Offer is part of for the Last Month.
- The graph represents a plot between the Response Rate on Y-axis and Duration on X-axis for each individual Promotion.

Promotion Details Side Panel

- **Promotion Name** – Name of the Promotion.
 - Click the **Promotion Name** link from the Promotion Details panel on the Offer Scorecard window to display the View Promotion window for the selected promotion on the same tab. Click **Done** to return to the Offer Scorecard. See [Viewing a Promotion](#) to learn more about the information on that window.
- **Promotion ID** – ID of the Promotion.
- **Start Date** – The date the Promotion begins.
- **End Date** – The date the Promotion ends.
- **Promotion Audience** – Indicates the type of targeting used by the Promotion (Nonexclusive or Exclusive).

- **Response Rate** – Calculated by dividing the total number of Respondents by the Total number targeted. Set to 100.00 for Non-Targeted customers.
- **Respondents** – Number of Customers in the Target who have responded to the Offer in the Promotion. This is the same as the Total for Non-Targeted customers.

8

Segments

Customer Segments organize Customers into groups related by certain, specified criteria. These Segments can be used to define the Segment/Target Eligibility rules used by various Customer Engagement elements.

There are three types of Customer Segments:

- **Stratified** - Segments in which the Customers belonging to the segment are divided into stratified subgroups (or levels) determined by certain criteria, such as year-to-date total purchases, Customer age, annual income, or some other criteria. These Segments are described in Stratified Segments.
- **Unstratified** - Segments in which Customers belonging to the segment are not subdivided into different groups; that is, the Customers within the Segment are not differentiated into subgroups by the Segment. These Segments are described in Unstratified Segments.
- **Personal Lists** - Segments created by selecting Customers one-by-one. Associates can use Personal Lists to create Favorite Customer lists. These Segments are described in Personal Lists.

About this Chapter

This chapter contains the following information:

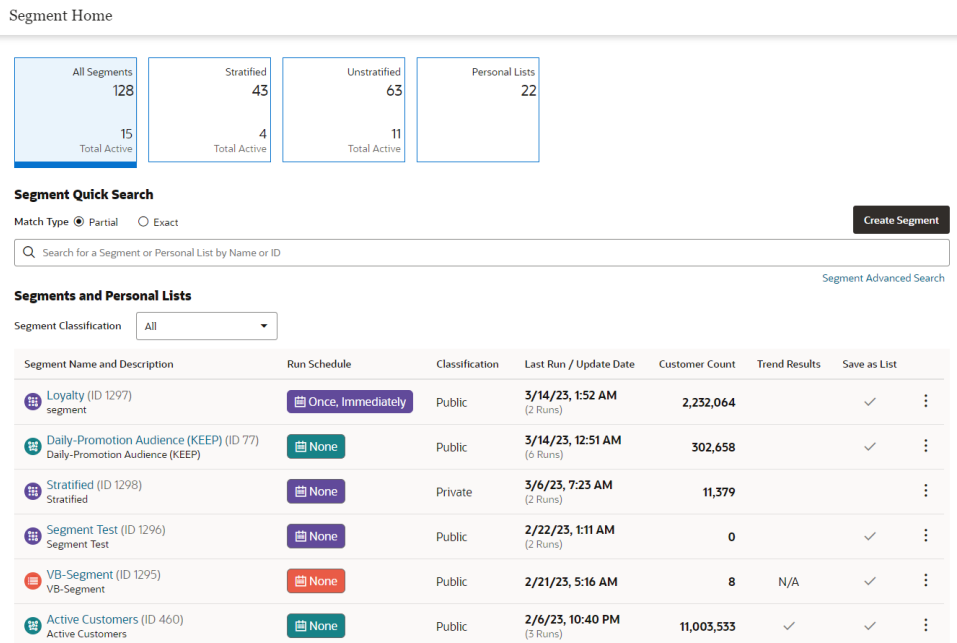
- [Segment Quick Search](#)
- [Segment Advanced Search](#)
- [Creating a Segment or Personal List](#)
- [Editing Segments/Personal Lists](#)
- [Duplicating Segments/Personal Lists](#)
- [Viewing Segments/Personal Lists](#)
- [Exporting Segments](#)
- [Deleting Segments/Personal Lists](#)
- [Segment Scorecards](#)

Segment Quick Search

Segments Quick Search displays a list of results as you type in characters in the search box. To use the Segments Quick Search do the following:

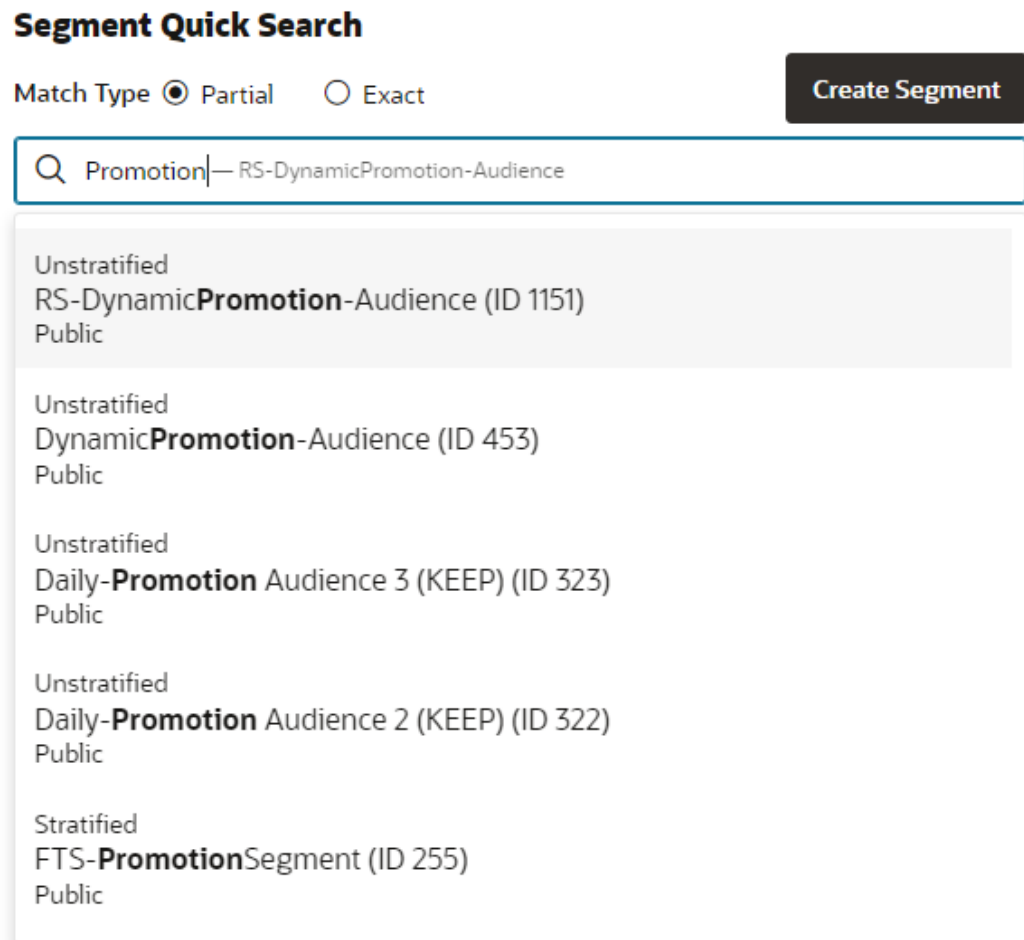
1. Click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Segment**.
3. Click **Segment Home**.

Figure 8-1 Segment Home - All Segments Metric Tile



- Select a Metric Tile, options include:
 - All Segments
 - Stratified
 - Unstratified
 - Personal Lists
- In the Search for Segments field, enter the Name or ID of the Segment or Personal List you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for Segments or Personal Lists that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.

Figure 8-2 Segments and Personal List Results

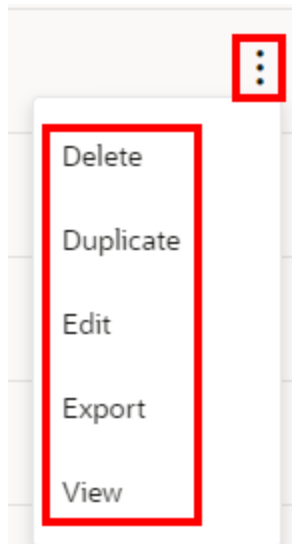


The search results display the following fields:

- Name and Description
 - Run Schedule
 - Classifications
 - Last Run
 - Customer Count
 - Trend Results
 - Save as List
6. The search results can be filtered by Segment Classification. The options include:
 - All (Default)
 - Open Access
 - Private
 - Public
 7. Hover over any Run Schedule field to see a tooltip listing the following information.

- Job ID
 - Run Interval
 - Status of Last Run
 - Duration
 - Started Date/Time
 - Ended Date/Time
 - Planned Next Run Date/Time
8. Click the **Name** which appears as a link for any Segment to open the Segment Scorecard. See [Segment Scorecards](#) for more information. Use the Overflow Menu to Delete, Duplicate, Edit, Export, or View the segment. See [Deleting Segments/Personal Lists](#), [Duplicating Segments/Personal Lists](#), [Editing Segments/Personal Lists](#), [Exporting Segments](#), or [Viewing Segments/Personal Lists](#) for more information.

Figure 8-3 Action Menu Options - Segments Quick Search



Segment Advanced Search

The Segment Advanced Search allows you to select more criteria that are not available in the Segment Quick Search box. The Segment Advanced Search is accessed by the following methods:

- Click the Advanced Search Link below the Segment Quick Search box in the Segment Home window.
- Click Segment Search in the Segment Task menu. See [Navigation](#) for more information.

Figure 8-4 Segment Advanced Search Window

Segment Search

Search

Segment ID

Segment Type

All ▼

Segment Classification

All ▼

Publish To Batch Exporter

All ▼

Save as List

All ▼

Attribute Type

All ▼

Attribute Value

Reset Search

The following Search fields are available:

- **Segment ID** - This Text Field searches all the Segments currently present in the application. The default is an empty field.
- **Segment Type** - Search by Segment Type. The default field is All.
 - All
 - Personal Lists

 **Note:**

When the selected Segment type is Personal list, the search parameter Trend Results will not display

- Stratified
- Unstratified
- **Segment Classification** - Search the Segment by the classification assigned to the Segment. The field will default to All.
 - All
 - Open Access
 - Private
 - Public
- **Publish to Batch Exporter** - The following options include:
 - All (Default)
 - Yes
 - No
- **Save as List** - The following options include:
 - All (Default)
 - Yes
 - No
- **Attribute Type** - Search for the Segment by the Attribute Type assigned to the Segment. The default is **All**.
- **Attributes Value** - Enter or select a value according to the Attribute Type selected above.
- **Publish to Clienteling** - The following options include:
 - All (Default)
 - Yes
 - No
- **Publish to Task Generator** - The following options include:
 - All (Default)
 - Yes

- No
- **Trend Results** - The following options include:
 - All (Default)
 - Yes
 - No
- **Created By** - List of users who have created segments. The default is All. Use this to search for segment types a user personally created.









 **Note:**

Only Public segments can be returned for any user other than the one logged. A user shouldn't be able to see other users private segments unless they are the user's private segments or the user has system admin privileges.

Searching Segments

Once all the desired information has been entered, click **Search** to see the results.

Figure 8-5 Segment Search Results

Search Results							Create Segment
128 Segments/Personal Lists Found. Sort By		Last Run / Update Date					
Segment Name and Description	Run Schedule	Classification	Last Run / Update Date	Customer Count	Trend Results	Save as List	
 Unstratified Segment (ID 1071) Unstratified Segment	 None	Private	3/31/23, 3:01 AM (4 Runs)	36		✓ ⋮	
 Stratified-NotPublic (ID 283) Stratified-NotPublic	 None	Private	3/27/23, 12:33 PM (2 Runs)	333		✓ ⋮	
 RS-BatchExporter-SFTP-Large2 (ID 1333) RS-BatchExporter-SFTP-Large2	 None	Public	3/16/23, 9:29 AM (1 Runs)	5,393,971		✓ ⋮	
 ResponsysExportALL (ID 1332) ResponsysExportALL	 None	Public	3/15/23, 11:16 AM (1 Runs)	11,043,733		✓ ⋮	

 **Note:**

Click **Reset** to clear all fields and return list values to the default selections. You can also click **Search** without entering any criteria to see a complete list of Segments and Personal Lists.

Sorting Segment Results

The sort options will re-sort just the current 25 segments displayed in the window. Sorting options include:

- **Last Run / Update Date** - Segment results are sorted by the Last Run (Stratified and Unstratified) or Last Update (Personal Lists) in descending order (Default).
- **Segment ID** - Segment results are sorted by Segment ID in descending order by default.
- **Segment Name** - Segment results are sorted by Segment Name in ascending order.
- **Customer Count** - Segment results are sorted by the Customer Count in descending order
- **Save as List** - Segment results are sorted by Save as List in ascending order.

 **Note:**

For Personal Lists, the **Save as List** setting is always Yes, so the sort order does not apply.

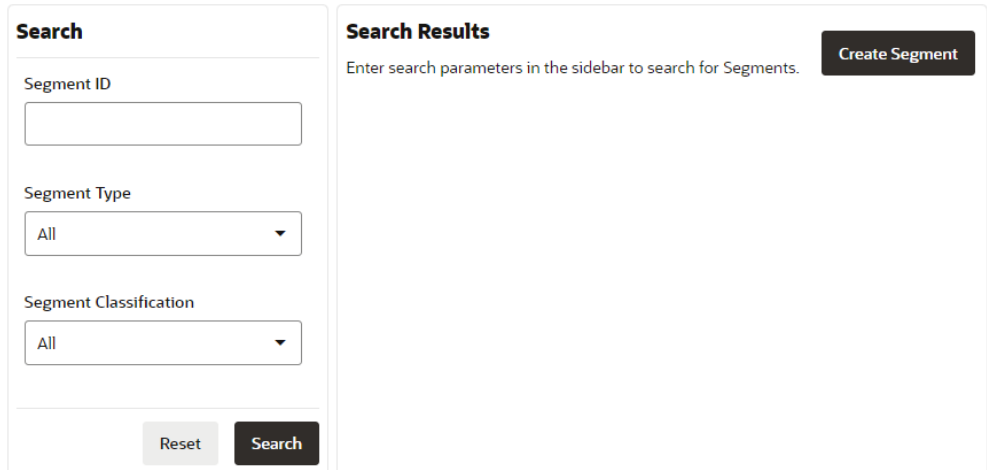
Creating a Segment or Personal List

There are a two choices available to start the process of creating a Segment or Personal List. The **Create Segment** button is available in both the Segment Home window as well as the Segment Search window.

Creating a Segment or Personal List - Segment Search

Figure 8-6 Segment Search

Segment Search



To Create a new segment from the Segment Search screen, click the **Create Segment** button, which will open the segment wizard on the Information tab. Proceed to **Step 6** in [Creating a Segment or Personal List - Segment Home](#).

Creating a Segment or Personal List - Segment Home

To create a new Segment or Personal List from the Segment Home window do the following:

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click **Segment**.
3. Click **Segment Home**. The All Segments Tile is defaulted.

Figure 8-7 Segment Home

Segment Home

Segment Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact Create Segment

Q Search for a Segment or Personal List by Name or ID Segment Advanced Search

Segments and Personal Lists

Segment Classification

Segment Name and Description	Run Schedule	Classification	Last Run / Update Date	Customer Count	Trend Results	Save as List
Loyalty (ID 1297) segment	Once, Immediately	Public	3/14/23, 1:52 AM (2 Runs)	2,232,064		✓ ⋮
Daily-Promotion Audience (KEEP) (ID 77) Daily-Promotion Audience (KEEP)	None	Public	3/14/23, 12:51 AM (6 Runs)	302,658		✓ ⋮
Stratified (ID 1298) Stratified	None	Private	3/6/23, 7:23 AM (2 Runs)	11,379		⋮
Segment Test (ID 1296) Segment Test	None	Public	2/22/23, 1:11 AM (2 Runs)	0		✓ ⋮
VB-Segment (ID 1295) VB-Segment	None	Public	2/21/23, 5:16 AM	8	N/A	✓ ⋮
Active Customers (ID 460) Active Customers	None	Public	2/6/23, 10:40 PM (3 Runs)	11,005,533	✓	✓ ⋮

4. There are two options to start the Create process:

Option 1

- a. With the All Segments Metric tile highlighted, select the Create Segment button which opens the Segment Wizard to the Information tab, with the Stratified Segment type defaulted. You can then change the Segment type, if desired.
- b. Select one of the Metric Tiles (Stratified, Unstratified, or Personal List), and from there select the Create Segment button, which will default that segment type in the Information tab of the segment wizard.

Option 2

- a. Create a new segment from the Segment Search screen: Select the Create Segment button, which will open the segment wizard on the Information tab.
5. Click **Create Segment**. The Create Segment wizard may contain any of the following tabs, depending on configuration and the selected Segment Type.
 - Information
 - Franchisees
 - Segment Query

- Stratification
 - Message
 - Strata Query
 - Attributes
 - Segment Members
 - Schedule
 - Review
6. Enter the following items for the Information Tab:

Figure 8-8 Information Tab

The screenshot shows the 'Segment Definition' form with the following sections:

- Type:** Three options are listed:
 - Stratified** (selected): Segments in which the Customers belonging to the segment are divided into stratified subgroups.
 - Unstratified**: Segments in which Customers belonging to the segment are not subdivided into different groups.
 - Personal List**: Personal Lists created by selecting Customers one-by-one. Associates can use the Personal Lists to create "Favorite Customer" lists.
- Description:** Two text input fields:
 - Segment Name** (Required)
 - Description** (Required)
- Publishing Options:** Three checkboxes:
 - Publish To Batch Exporter
 - Publish To Clienteling
 - Publish To Task Generator
- Options:** Five checkboxes:
 - Export
 - Open Access
 - Permanent
 - Public
 - Save as List

A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the form.

Note:

The read-only Segment Information Panel displays details throughout most of the tabs of the wizard.

- **Type** - Select the type of Segment from the available options:
 - **Stratified** - Segments in which the Customers belonging to the segment are divided into stratified subgroups.
 - **Unstratified** - Segments in which Customers belonging to the segment are not subdivided into different groups.
 - **Personal List** - Personal Lists created by selecting Customers one-by-one. Associates can use the Personal Lists to create "Favorite Customer" lists.

- **Description**
 - **Segment Name** - The name of the Segment (Required).
 - **Description** - Any Segment specific additional description (Required).
- **Publishing Options**
 - **Publish To Batch Exporter** - Determines whether or not the Segment is available to export to a Marketing system.

 **Note:**

If the Publish to Batch Exporter option is selected, the following options are automatically checked: **Export**, **Permanent**, **Public**, and **Save as List**. All other check boxes are unchecked and unavailable.

- **Publish To Clienteling** - Determines whether or not the Segment is available to the Clienteling module.

 **Note:**

If the Publish to Clienteling option is selected, the following options are automatically checked: **Permanent**, **Public**, and **Save as List**. All other check boxes are unchecked and unavailable.

A User must be assigned the Publish Clienteling Segment Role to see this option. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information about Roles.

- **Publish to Task Generator** - Determines whether tasks are created for this Segment.

 **Note:**

If the Publish to Task Generator option is selected, the following options are automatically checked: **Export**, **Permanent**, and **Save as List**. All other check boxes are unchecked and unavailable.

A User must be assigned the Task Manager Role to see this option. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information about Roles.

- **Options**
 - **Export** - Determines whether or not the Segment results are automatically exported after the Segment Query is run. The Export option is not available for Personal Lists.

 **Note:**

If the Export option is selected, **Save as List** is automatically checked and the **Export** and **Trend Results?** check boxes are unavailable.

- **Open Access** - Determines whether or not the Segment has Open Access.

 **Note:**

If the Open Access option is selected, **Permanent**, **Public**, and **Save as List**, are automatically checked and the check boxes are unavailable; **Export** and **Trend Results?** are automatically unchecked and the check boxes are unavailable.

- **Permanent** - Determines whether or not the Segment is kept, even if it meets the criteria for deletion by the housekeeping job.
- **Public** - Determines whether or not the Segment is Public.
- **Save as List** - Determines whether a List of matching Customer IDs are created when the segment is created. If this option is not checked, the Segment will only create a count of the Customers that meet the criteria.
- **Trend Results?** - Determines whether the results of the Segment run are kept to provide trend information about the Segment.

7. When finished entering the Segment information on the Information tab, click **Next** to continue to the **Franchisees** tab.

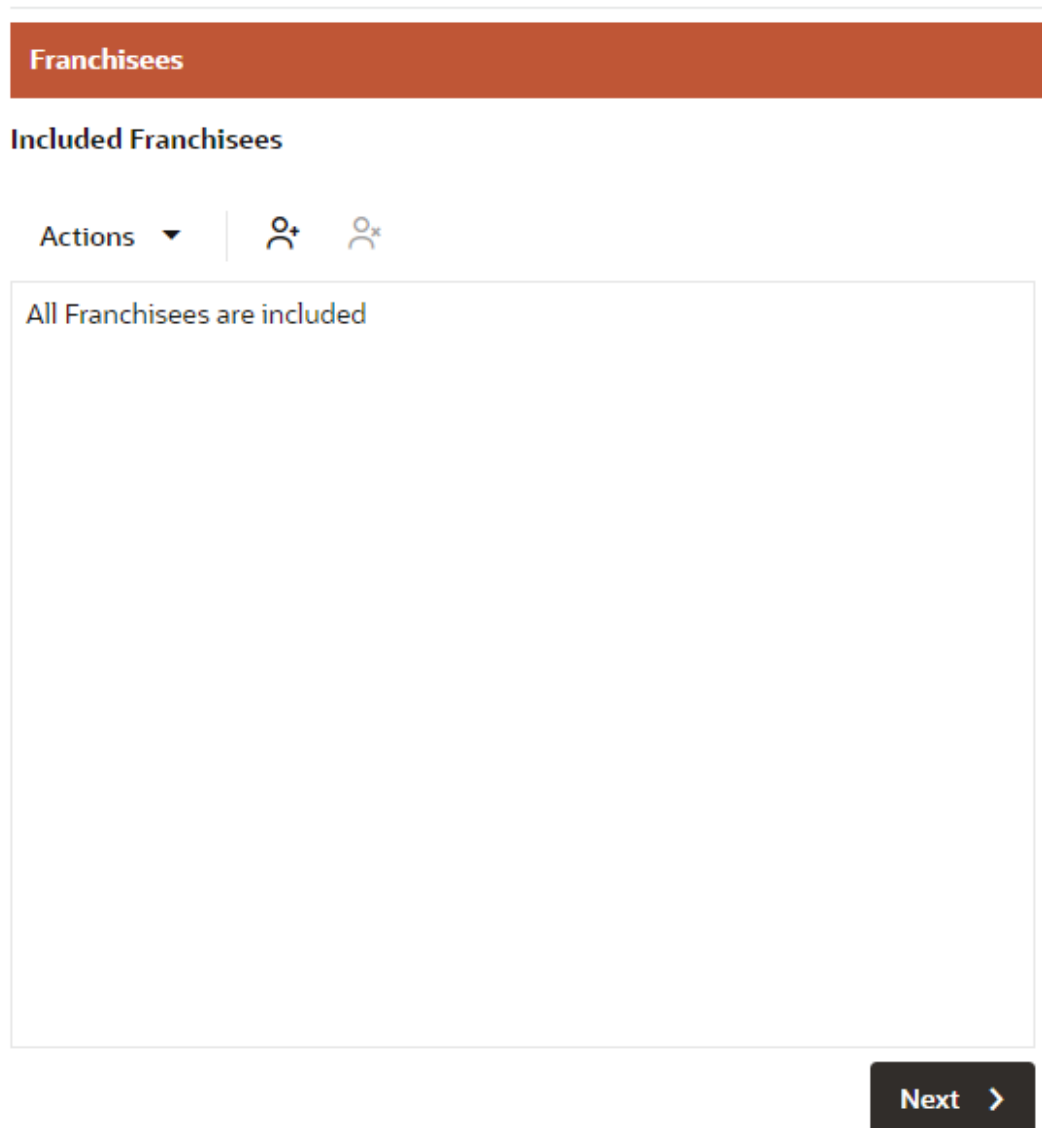
The Franchisees Assignment tab allows you to add or change the Franchisees you wish to assign to the segment.

 **Note:**

The Franchisee tab will only be visible if the `EnableFranchiseSupport` configuration is enabled, and Franchisees are defined. By default, all franchisees are included on the Segment. If you are assigned to specific franchisees, only those franchisees you are associated to are shown.

- If Franchisees are enabled in Customer Engagement, the Franchisees Tab appears. Proceed to **Step 8**.
- If Franchisees are not enabled in Customer Engagement and the Segment Type is **Stratified** or **Unstratified**, the Segment Query tab appears. Proceed to **Step 10**.
- If Franchisees are not enabled in Customer Engagement and the Segment Type is **Personal List**, the Attributes Tab appears. Proceed to **Step 18**.

Figure 8-9 Franchisee Tab



8. To assign a Franchisee:
 - Assigning a Franchisee
 - Click the **Action Menu**, and click **Assign**, or click the **Add (+)** icon. This opens the Assign Franchisee window.

Figure 8-10 Assign Franchisee

Assign Franchisee [X]

Search for Franchisee

Search by Franchisee ID or Name or Description [X] Search

Search Results

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations
-----------------	------------------------	-----------

Unassign All

No Franchisees to display

Cancel OK

- By default, all franchisees are assigned to the segment. To make changes to those assignments, you can search for specific franchisees by entering all or part the franchisee **Name**, **ID**, or **Description**. Click **Search** in the Search for Franchisee search box.

 **Note:**

You also have the option to enter no search criteria and click **Search** to retrieve all available franchisees from which to select for assignment.


- In the Included Franchisees results list, click **Assign All** to assign all the search results, or click **Assign** for a specific franchisee to add to the segment.
- Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the Franchisees has been assigned.

After a Franchisee is assigned, it appears at the top of the list. The rest of the Franchisees are ordered by ID.

Figure 8-11 Confirmation Notification

 Assigned franchisee has been successfully updated

- Unassigning a Franchisee

If you need to, there are two ways to unassign any of the assigned franchisees on the segment.

- In the Assign Franchisee window, click **Unassign** on any Franchisees currently assigned to the segment. Then click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
- If Franchisees are listed on the Franchisee tab in the Included Franchisees table, highlight the **row**, and then select the **Action Menu**, and click **Unassign**, or click the **Unassign X** icon to remove the associated Franchisee.

Figure 8-12 Assign Franchisee (Using the Unassign Button)

The screenshot shows the 'Assign Franchisee' window. At the top, there is a search bar labeled 'Search for Franchisee' with the placeholder text 'Search by Franchisee ID or Name or Description' and a 'Search' button. Below the search bar, there is a table with the following columns: Franchisee Name, Franchisee Description, Locations, and an action button. The table contains three rows of data:

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations	Action
P Portland Franchisee (ID 47)		1	Unassign
J JS-Franchisee-1 (ID 3)	Job Testing - Franchisee Assignment	1	Assign
J JS-Franchisee-2 (ID 4)	Job Testing - Franchisee Assignment 2	1	Assign

At the bottom of the window, there are 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons.

Note:

A confirmation notification appears that confirms the Franchisees are deleted.

Figure 8-13 Confirmation Notification

Assigned franchisee has been successfully updated

9. When finished selecting the franchises on the Franchisee tab, click **Next** to continue to the next tab.
 - a. If the Segment Type is **Stratified** or **Unstratified**, proceed to **Step 10**.
 - b. If the Segment Type is **Personal List**, proceed to **Step 18**.
10. The Segment Query tab, used for **Stratified** or **Unstratified** segments, provides three choices to populate the Query window. They include:

- Criteria
- Segments
- Saved Queries

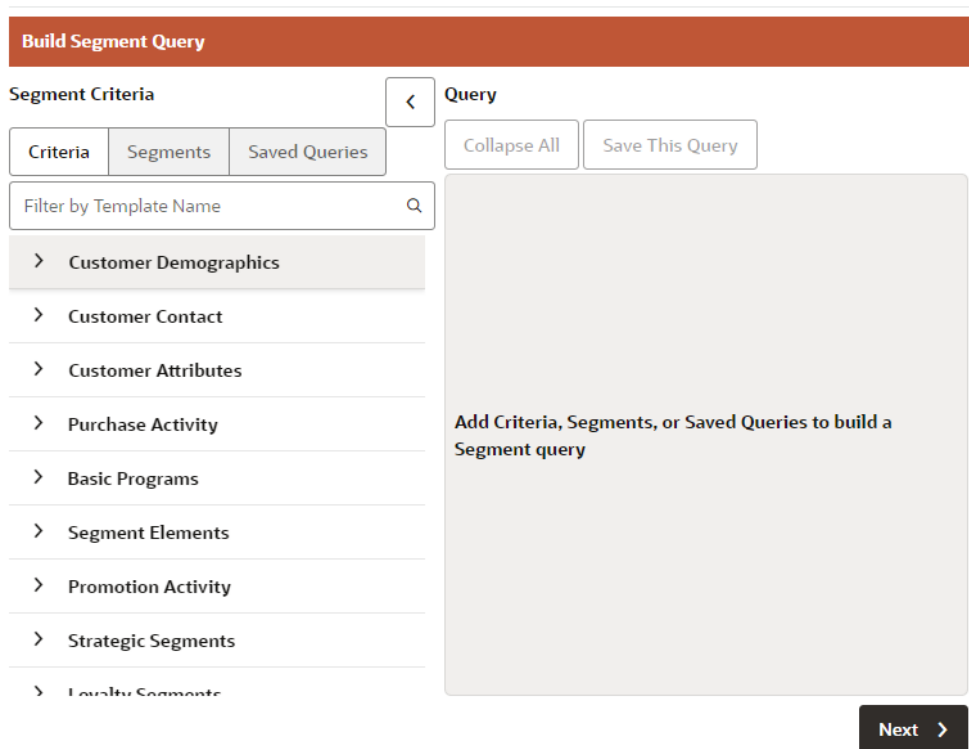
 **Note:**

The My Saved queries are private to the user that created the query or the system administrator.

 **Note:**

The query window can be populated singularly, or by using any combination of the three choices previously listed.

Figure 8-14 Build Segment Query



Building the Query

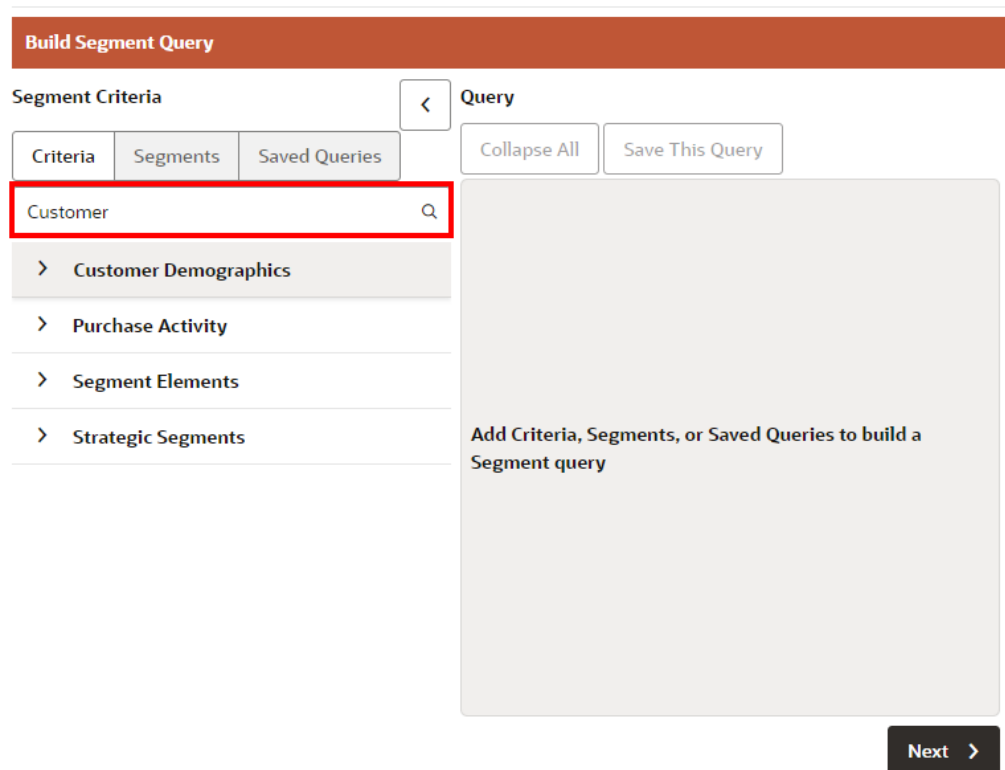
- a. To start the query criteria selection, you can either filter by Template name or you can select one of the Templates shown to expand the criteria selections.

 **Note:**

The following steps also apply when selecting Segments, or My Saved Queries in **Step 10.a**

- b. To filter by **Template Name**: In the Filter by Name box, enter part or all of a Template Name
Press **Enter**, or click the **Search** icon.

Figure 8-15 Criteria - Filtered



 **Note:**

To see the available criteria in your filtered list, expand the Template to see the available choices from which to select.

To **reset** the filter, highlight the words and press **Delete**. Then press **Enter**, or click the **Search** icon.

- c. In the Template selection list, click a template group to expand its list of query criteria options. See [Segment Queries](#) for more information about criteria group organization.

Figure 8-16 Expanded Criteria List

Segment Criteria <

Criteria Segments Saved Queries

Filter by Template Name Q

Customer Demographics

Customer ID ⓘ	⋮	Add
Customer City ⓘ	⋮	Add
Customer State ⓘ	⋮	Add
Postal Code ⓘ	⋮	Add
Postal Code Vicinity ⓘ	⋮	Add
Customer Birthdate ⓘ	⋮	Add
Customer Birth Month ⓘ	⋮	Add
Home Location ⓘ	⋮	Add
Signup Location ⓘ	⋮	Add

- d. Click the **Add** link, or drag and drop the **Criteria Name** into the Query window.

Figure 8-17 Adding Criteria to Query

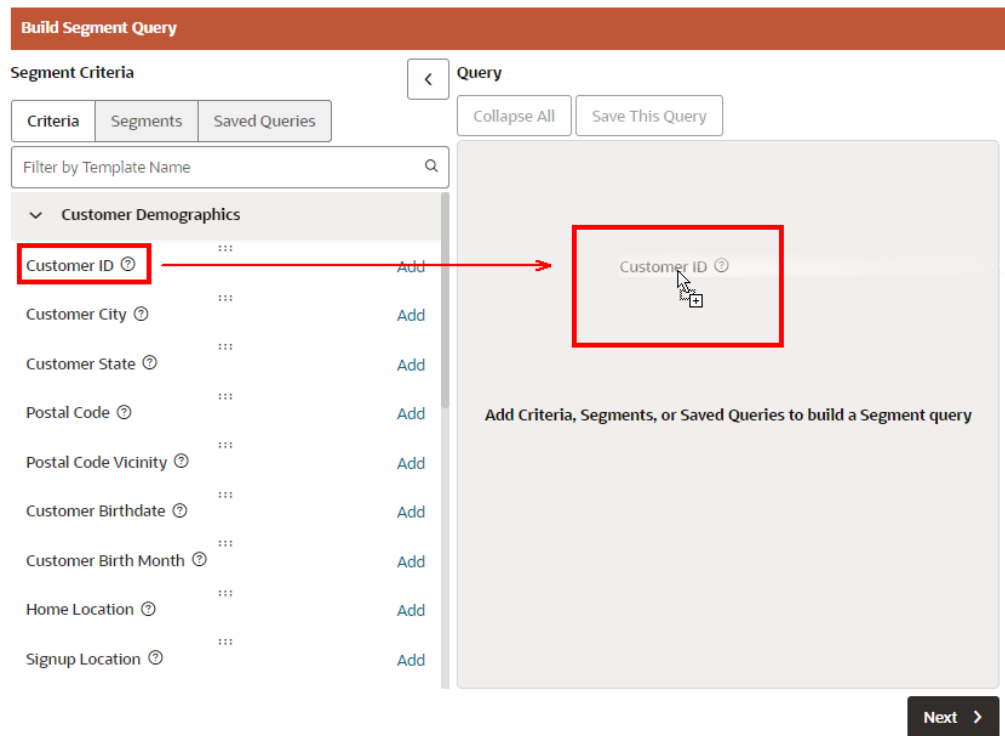
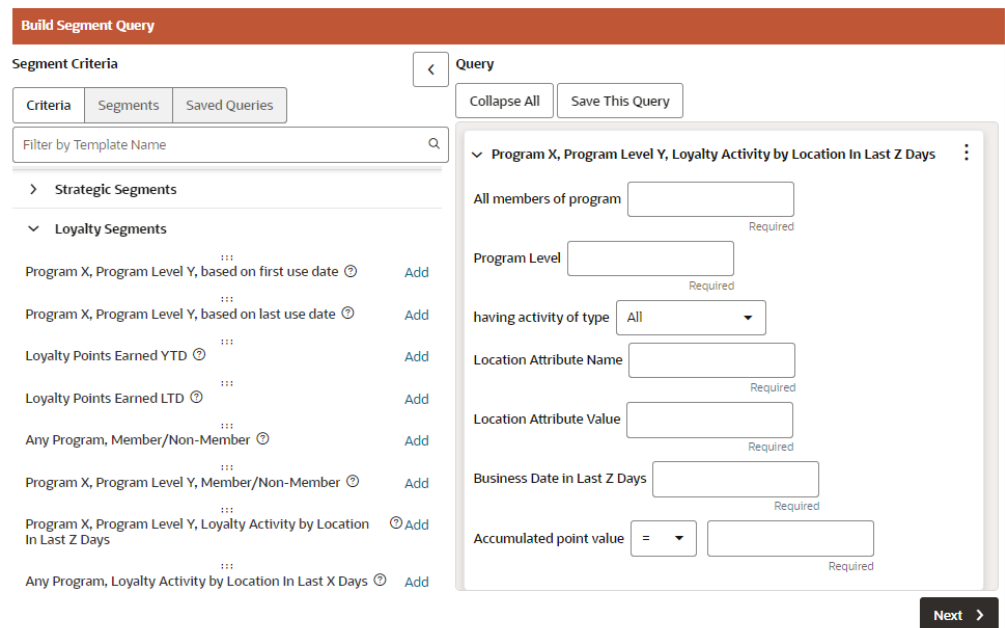


Figure 8-18 Added Criteria

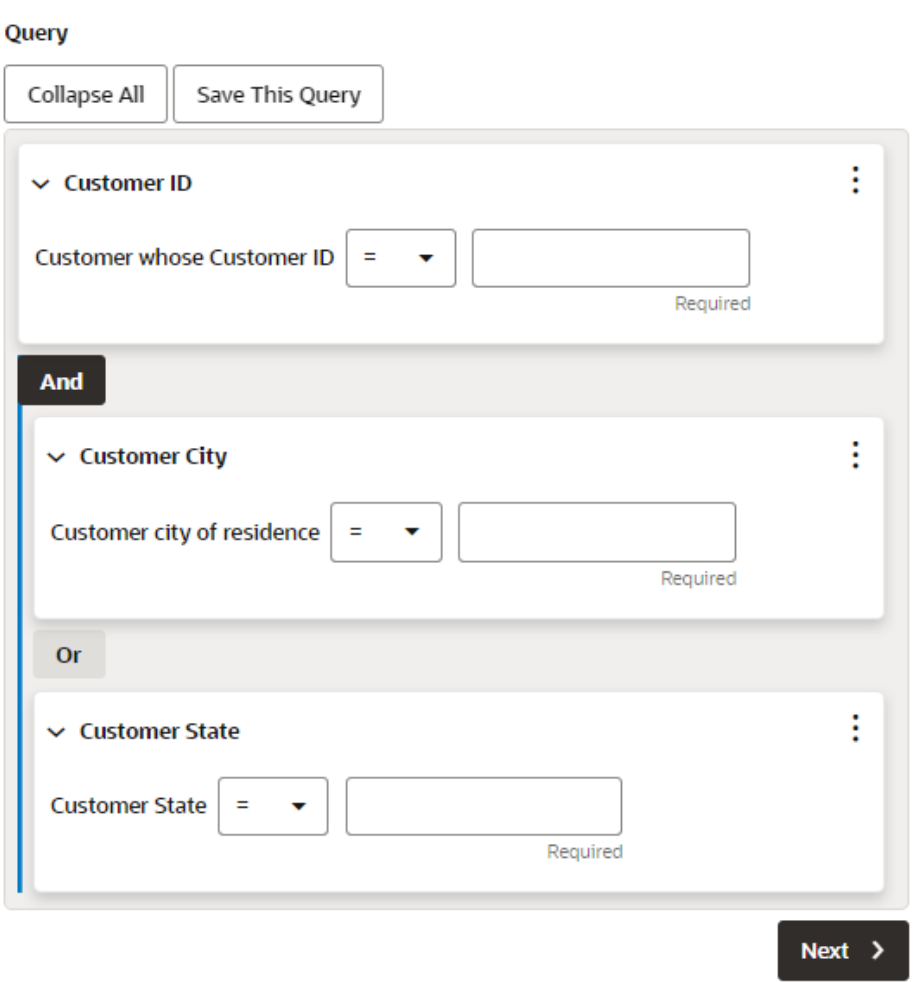


- e. Repeat the previous step until all criteria are added.

 **Note:**

As shown in **Figure Figure 8-19**, the logical conditions **And** and **Or** appear between each of the criteria.

Figure 8-19 Query Window



The screenshot shows a 'Query' window with two buttons at the top: 'Collapse All' and 'Save This Query'. Below these are three criteria sections. The first section is for 'Customer ID' with a dropdown menu set to '=' and a text input field labeled 'Required'. A black 'And' button is positioned between the first and second sections. The second section is for 'Customer City' with a dropdown menu set to '=' and a text input field labeled 'Required'. A grey 'Or' button is positioned between the second and third sections. The third section is for 'Customer State' with a dropdown menu set to '=' and a text input field labeled 'Required'. A black 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the window.

- f. To change the logical conditions, click either **And** or **Or** to switch between the two options.

 **Note:**

If you use **And**, a record will only be included in the node if it matches all of the criteria in the subnodes. If you use **Or**, a record is included in the node if it matches any of the criteria in the subnodes.

Figure 8-20 Criteria

A screenshot of a criteria field. At the top, there is a dropdown menu labeled "Customer ID" with a downward arrow and a three-dot menu icon to its right. Below this, the text "Customer whose Customer ID" is followed by an equals sign, a dropdown arrow, and an empty text input box. The word "Required" is written in small text below the input box.

- g. Enter the **Search Criteria** into the appropriate fields. See [Segment Queries](#) for more information about criteria fields.

Figure 8-21 Query Options

A screenshot of a query builder interface. At the top left, there is a "Query" section with two buttons: "Collapse All" (highlighted with a red box) and "Save This Query". Below this is a list of criteria. The first criterion is "Customer ID" with a dropdown arrow and a three-dot menu icon (highlighted with a red box). Below it is the text "Customer whose Customer ID" followed by an equals sign, a dropdown arrow, and an empty text input box. The word "Required" is written in small text below the input box. A "Remove" button is visible to the right of the input box. Below the first criterion is a section labeled "And" with a dark background and white text. Under "And" is another criterion: "Customer City" with a dropdown arrow and a three-dot menu icon. Below it is the text "Customer city of residence" followed by an equals sign, a dropdown arrow, and an empty text input box. The word "Required" is written in small text below the input box. Below the "And" section is a section labeled "Or" with a light gray background and dark text. Under "Or" is a third criterion: "Customer State" with a dropdown arrow and a three-dot menu icon. Below it is the text "Customer State" followed by an equals sign, a dropdown arrow, and an empty text input box. The word "Required" is written in small text below the input box. At the bottom right of the query builder is a "Next >" button. On the right side of the interface, there is a sidebar with various options: "Information", "Segment N", "Franchisee", "All Franchis", "State = ?)", "Stratificati", "No Stratific", "Attributes", "No Attribut", "Schedule", "No Schedul".

- h. After entering the search criteria you can collapse or expand the details at any time. To collapse a criteria in the list, click the arrow next to each criteria. To change all criteria at once, click **Collapse All/Expand All** to **Collapse/Expand**.
- i. When you need to clear a criteria from the query, click the **Action Menu** and then click **Remove**.

- j. **Optional:** Any Query can be saved for use in other Build Segment Queries, by doing the following: Click **Save this Query**. The Save this Query window appears.

Figure 8-22 Save This Query

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Save This Query" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Inside the dialog, there are two text input fields. The first is labeled "Query Name" and has the word "Required" written below it. The second is labeled "Query Description" and also has the word "Required" written below it. At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Cancel" and "OK".

- k. Type a **Query Name**.
 - l. Type a **Query Description**.
 - m. Click **OK**. The query is saved for use with other Segments/Personal Lists. See **Step 10** for information on how to access Saved Queries.
11. When finished building a query on the **Segment Query** tab, click **Next**.
 - If the Segment Type is **Stratified**, proceed to **Step 12**.
 - If the Segment Type is **Unstratified**, proceed to **Step 18**, the Attributes tab.
 12. Enter the following for the Stratification tab.

Stratification Details (Select One)

 **Note:**

The **Based on** and **Field to Stratify On** fields are dynamic and their options are based on the Strata Type selected.

Figure 8-23 Stratification Details

Stratification Details

Strata Type

Customer
Loyalty
Transaction

Based on

Customer ▼

Field To Stratify On

Annual Income ▼

Strata Format

Range Strata
Ntile Strata

Sort Order

Ascending
Descending

- Select the Strata Type: **Customer** - Customer Data
 - Based on: Customer (Default) - Field to Stratify On options include:

Field	Description
Annual Income	Customer's Annual Income
Customer Net Worth	Customer's Net Worth
Lifetime Sales	Lifetime total amount of all sales made to the Customer.
Lifetime Returns	Lifetime total amount of all returns made by the Customer.
Lifetime Transaction Count	Lifetime total number of transactions.
Lifetime Sold Item Count	Lifetime total number of items sold
Lifetime Return Item Count	Lifetime total number of items returned.
Lifetime Profit Percent	Lifetime percentage of profit on all Customer transactions.
YTD Sales	Total amount of all sales during the year to date.
YTD Returns	Total amount of all returns during the year to date.
YTD Trans Count	Total number of transactions during the year to date.
YTD Sold Item Count	Total number of items sold during the year to date.
YTD Return Item Count	Total number of items returned during the year to date.
YTD Profit Percent	Percentage of profit on all Customer transactions during the year to date.
Customer Age	Age of the Customer.
Days Since Purchase	Number of days since the Customer's last purchase.
Attributes	Attribute values.

- Select the Strata Type: **Loyalty** - Loyalty Account Information
 - Based on: **Loyalty Summary** - Field to Stratify On options include:

Field	Description
Earned Points Balance	Current balance of earned points.
YTD Points	Total number of points earned during the year to date.
LTD Points	Total number of points earned over the lifetime of the Loyalty Account.

- Based on: **Loyalty Detail** - Field to Stratify On options include:

Field	Description
Sum Number of Points	Total number of points in the Loyalty Account.
Count Number of Transactions	Total number of Loyalty transactions.
Days Since Last Activity	Days since the last Loyalty transaction.

- Select the Strata Type: **Transaction** - Transaction Information
 - Based on: **Header** - Field to Stratify On options include:

Field	Descriptions
Sum of Transaction Amount	Total amount of all transactions.
Number of Transactions	Total number of transactions.
Days Since Purchase	Number of days since the last purchase transaction.

- **Detail**: - Field to Stratify On options include:

Field	Description
Sum of Line Item	Sum of all line items in all transactions.
Days Since Purchase	Number of days since the last purchase transaction.
Sold Item Count	Total number of items sold.
Transaction Count	Total number of transactions.

- Select a Strata Format
 - **Range Strata** - Strata are determined by configured ranges.
 - **Ntile Strata** - Strata are placed into equally-sized groups of Customers.
Select the **Sort Order** for Ntile Strata:
 - **Ascending** - The Strata having the lowest values are displayed first.
 - **Descending** - The Strata having the greatest values are displayed first.

Figure 8-24 Strata Levels

Strata Levels

Number Of Strata

3

Strata Name		
1	<input type="text" value="Strata 1"/>	×
2	<input type="text" value="Strata 2"/>	×
3	<input type="text" value="Strata 3"/>	×

[+ Add Another](#)

Strata Levels

The default number of strata levels is three. You can increase or decrease the number of strata levels.

- There are two ways to increase the number of Strata Levels
 - Number of Strata: Enter a **numeric value** and press **Enter**.
 - Click the **+ Add Another** link.

Figure 8-25 Strata Levels - Ntile Strata

Strata Levels

Number Of Strata

	Strata Name	
1	<input type="text" value="Strata 1"/>	×
2	<input type="text" value="Strata 2"/>	×
3	<input type="text" value="Strata 3"/>	×

[+ Add Another](#)

- Enter a **Strata Name** for each Strata Level
- Click the **Delete** icon to remove a Strata Level.

Figure 8-26 Strata Levels - Range Strata

Strata Levels

Number Of Strata

	Strata Name	Range	
1	<input type="text" value="Strata 1"/>	From (>=) <input type="text" value="0"/> To (<) <input type="text" value="0"/>	×
2	<input type="text" value="Strata 2"/>	From (>=) <input type="text" value="0"/> To (<) <input type="text" value="0"/>	×
3	<input type="text" value="Strata 3"/>	From (>=) <input type="text" value="0"/> To (<) <input type="text" value=">"/>	×

[+ Add Another](#)

Strata Levels - Range Strata

- Enter a **Strata Name** for each Strata in the Segment.
- In the Range From (>=) fields, enter the **minimum value** of each Strata.

- If the Strata Field value for the Customer equals this value, it is included in this Strata.
- In the Range To fields, enter the **maximum value** of each Strata.
 - If the Strata Field value equals this value, it is not included in this Strata.
- When finished entering Stratification Details click **Next**.
 - If the Open Access Check Box was checked in the Information tab (see **Step 6 Options**), the Message tab displays. Proceed to **Step 14**.
 - If the **Open Access** check box was **unchecked** in the Information tab (see **Step 6 Options**), and the Strata Type: Customer was selected in Stratification Details (see **Step 12**), the Attributes Tab displays. Proceed to **Step 18**.
 - If the **Open Access** check box was **unchecked** in the Information tab (see **Step 16 Options**), and the Strata Type: Loyalty or Transaction was selected in Stratification Details (see **Step 12**), the Strata Query tab displays. Proceed to **Step 16**.
 - The Message tab enables you to add a message for displaying at the Point-of-Sale for a Customer or Receipt display for upselling or other marketing campaigns. Enter the following for the **Message** tab:

Figure 8-27 POS Message

- Highlight a **Strata Level**.
- In the Messages for Strata # section where # represents a number, select a **Language** from the options list.

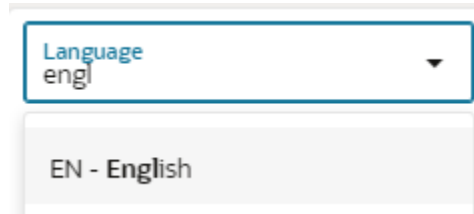
 **Note:**

A language code can only be used once, per strata.

 **Note:**

You can also enter part or all of a **Language Name** or **Language Code** in the Language selection menu. Click the desired **language** from the list of results.

Figure 8-28 Language Selection Menu



- c. In the POS Display Text Area field, enter the **text** that will be displayed to the associate using the Point-of-Sale system.
- d. In the Customer Display Text Area field, enter the **text** that will be shown on the customer-facing display and, depending on the configuration of the POS system, the signature capture device, while the transaction is being performed.
- e. In the Receipt Display Text Area field, enter the **text** that will be printed on the customer receipt.

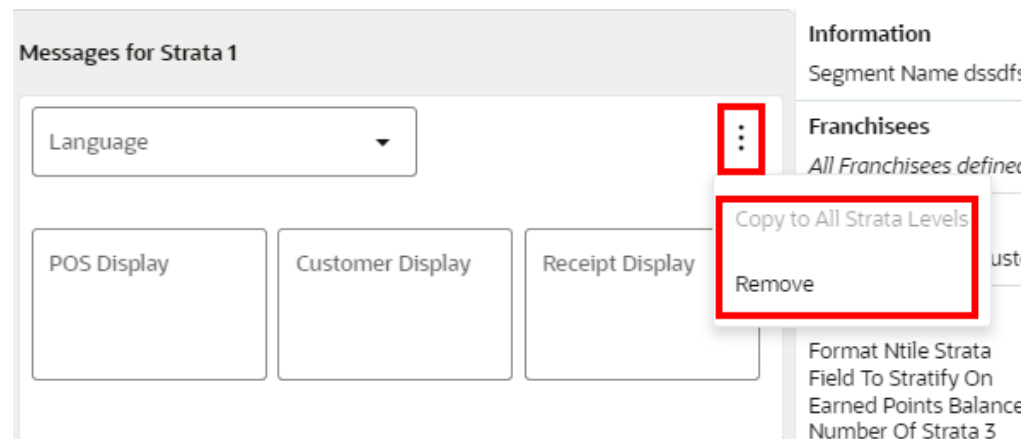
 **Note:**

For the POS, Customer, and Receipt Display messages, only one is required to have content. You can enter values in each.

 **Note:**

The Actions menu for the messages enable you to **Remove** a Strata Message or **Copy** the message to all Strata Levels.

Figure 8-29 Messages For Strata Actions Menu Options



- f. Optional: Click **+Add Another** to add an additional message in a different language to the Strata Level.
 - g. Repeat **Steps 14 a - f** for each Strata Level.
15. When finished entering all Strata Level messages on the **Message** tab, click **Next**.
- If the Strata Type: Customer was selected in Stratification Details (**see Step 12**), continue to **Step 18**, the Attributes tab.
 - If the Strata Type: Loyalty or Transaction was selected in Stratification Details (**see Step 12**), the Strata Query tab displays. Proceed to **Step 16**, the Strata Query tab.
16. The Build Strata Query appears when one of the following conditions from **Step 12** are met:
- Stratification Details: Loyalty
 - Stratification Details: Transaction
 - Stratification Details: Customer and Field To Stratify On = Attributes

Figure 8-30 Build Strata Query: Loyalty Criteria

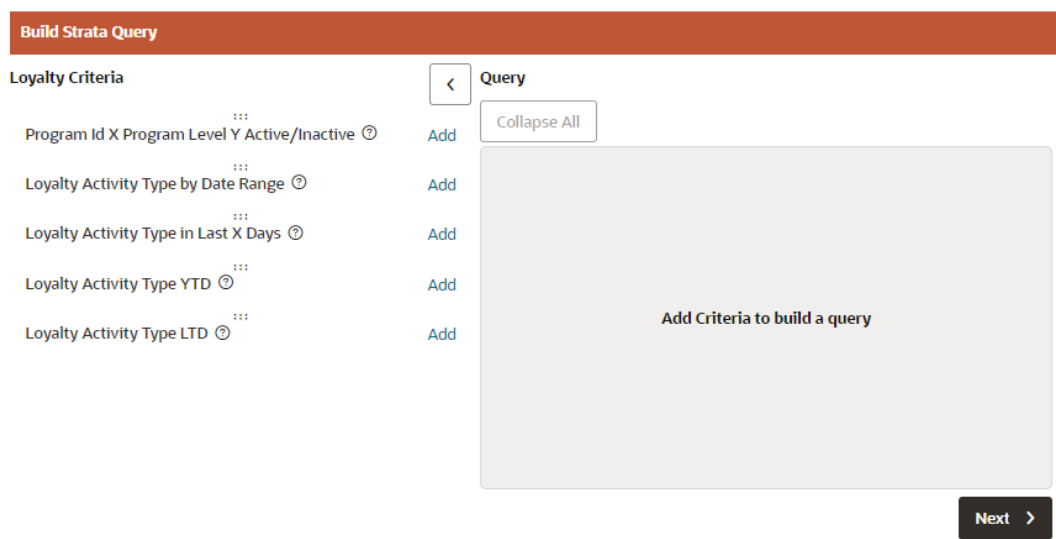


Figure 8-31 Build Strata Query: Transaction

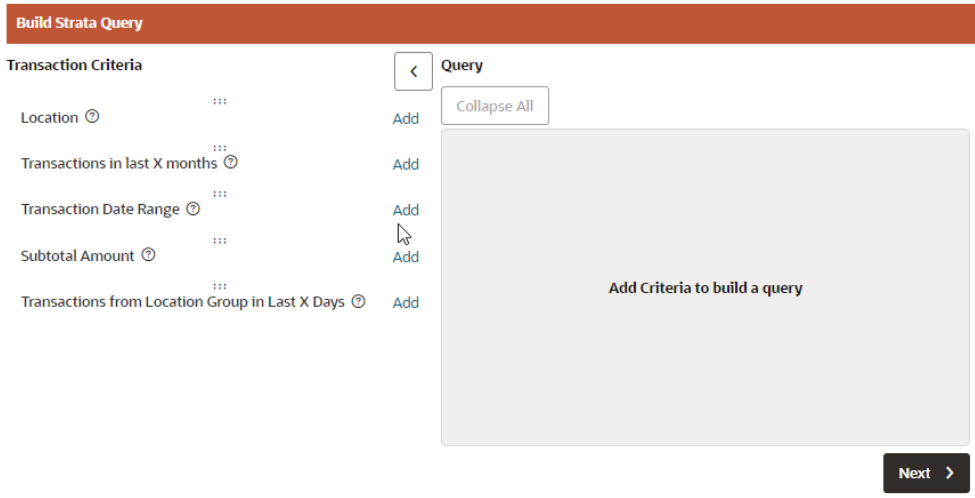
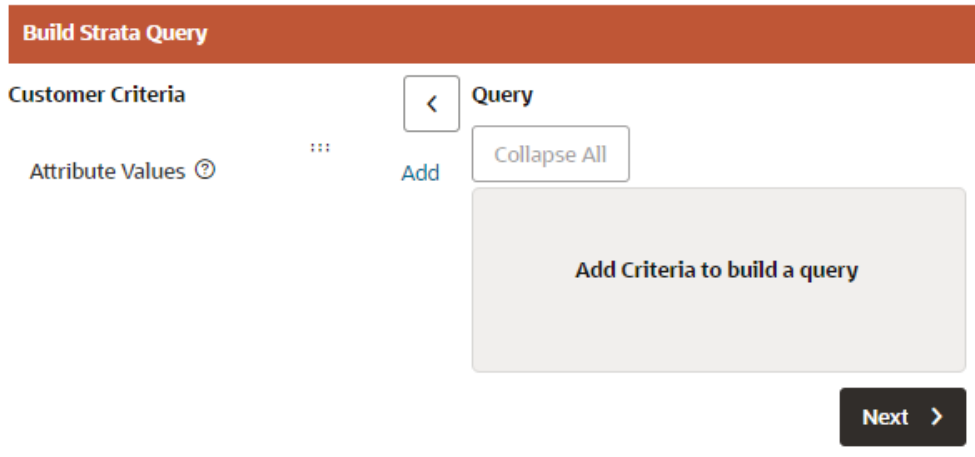


Figure 8-32 Build Strata Query: Customer - Attributes



The following steps work for any of the preceding Build Strata Query options.

- a. Click the **Add** link, or drag and drop the **Criteria Name** into the Query window.

Figure 8-33 Adding Criteria to Query

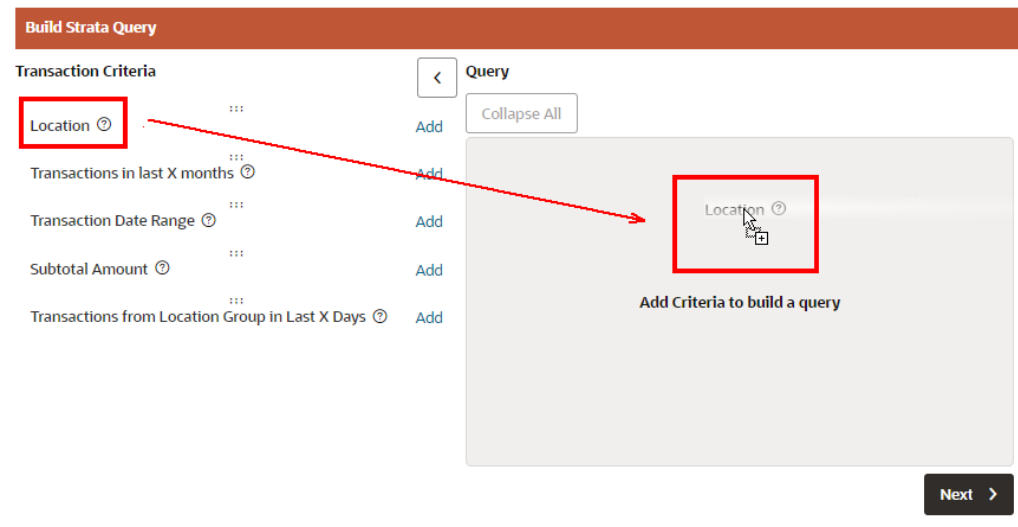
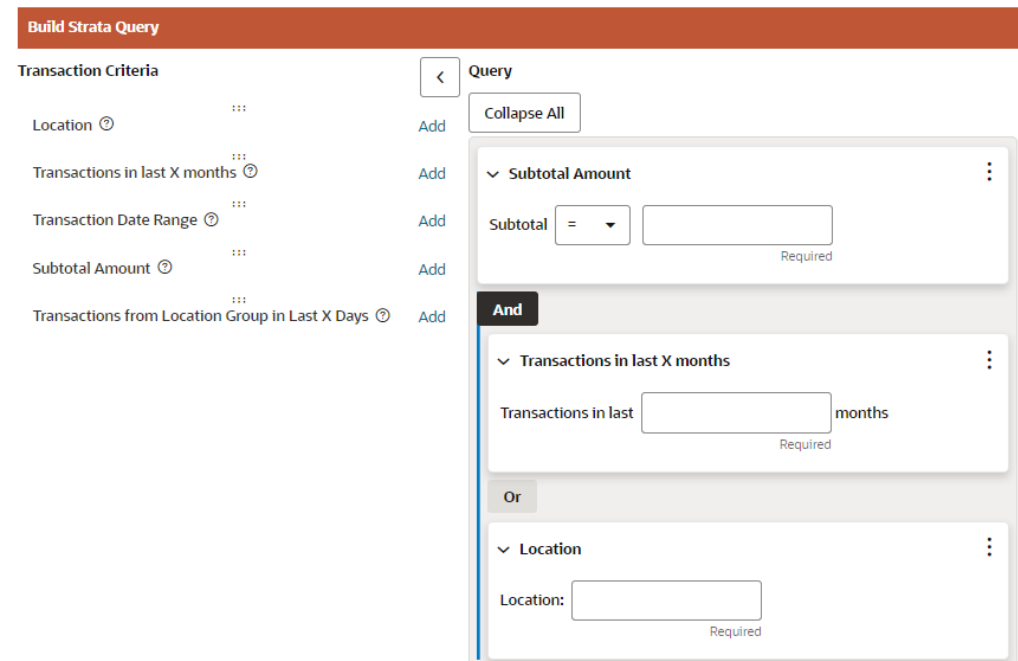


Figure 8-34 Criteria Added



- b. Repeat **Step 16.a** until all criteria are added.

 **Note:**

As shown in Figure [Figure 8-35](#), the logical conditions **And** and **Or** appears between each of the criteria.

Figure 8-35 Query Window

Query

▼ Subtotal Amount ⋮

Subtotal = Required

And

▼ Transactions in last X months ⋮

Transactions in last months Required

Or

▼ Location ⋮

Location: Required

- c. To change the logical conditions, click either **And** or **Or** to switch between the two options.

 **Note:**

If you use **And**, a record is only included in the node if it matches all of the criteria in the subnodes. If you use **Or**, a record is included in the node if it matches any of the criteria in the subnodes.

Figure 8-36 Segment

Transactions from Location Group in Last X Days ⋮

Transactions from Location Attribute Name

Required

Attribute Value
Required

in last **days**
Required

- d. Enter the **Search Criteria** into the appropriate fields. See [Segment Queries](#) for more information about criteria fields.

Figure 8-37 Query Options

Query


Collapse All

Subtotal Amount ⋮

Subtotal = **Remove**
Required

- e. After entering the search criteria you can collapse or expand criteria at any time. To Collapse a criteria click the arrow next to each criteria. To change all criteria at once, click **Collapse All/Expand All to Collapse/Expand**.
 - f. When you need to clear criteria from the query, click the **Action Menu** and then click **Remove**.
17. When finished building the strata query, click **Next** to select or enter Attributes to the segment.
 18. Attributes can be added to the Segment to further distinguish qualifications for the Segment.

Figure 8-38 Segment Attributes Tab

Attributes		
Segment Attributes		
Name	Value	Description
EXPORT-COST	Currency	Segment Export Cost
EXPORT-COUNT	Number	Segment Export Count
EXPORT-DATE	Date 	Segment Export Date
EXPORT-NOTES	Character	Segment Export Notes

- Select or enter the **configuration values** for each of the required Segment Attributes (shown with an asterisk*).
 - Add **values** for any Optional Segment Attributes.
 - Select or enter the **configuration value** for the Segment Attribute.
 - Repeat **Step 18** for all optional Attributes you wish added to the Segment.
19. When finished defining any attributes for the Segment, click **Next**.
- If the Segment Type is **Stratified** or **Unstratified** proceed to **Step 22**.
 - If the Segment Type is Personal List proceed to **Step 20**, Segment Members.

Figure 8-39 Segment Members Tab

Segment Members				
Actions ▾	+	×	🎯 0 Segment Members	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Customer Name and Address	Last Visit	Activity YTD	Average Spend LTD
No Customers Added to the Segment				

20. To Assign Segment Members do the following:
- Click the **Actions Menu**, and click **Add**, or click the **Add (+)** icon. This opens the Add Customers to Segment window.

Figure 8-40 Add Customers To Segment

Add Customers to Segment [X]

Search for Customer

Search by name or email or phone or customer ID or alternate key [X] Search Partial Exact

Search Results

Name and Address	Email Address	Phone Number	Last Transaction	Customer Since	Add To List
No customers to display.					

Cancel OK

- In the Search for Customers field, enter the **Name, ID, Email Address, or Phone Number** of the customer you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for Customers that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.

Note:

You also have the option to enter no search criteria and click **Search** to retrieve all available Customers from which to select for membership.

- Add Customer to Segment

Figure 8-41 Add Customers to Segment

Add Customers to Segment [X]

Search for Customer

[Redacted] [X] Search Partial Exact

Search Results

Name and Address	Email Address	Phone Number	Last Transaction	Customer Since	Add To List
[Redacted] (ID 7238632) GRAND RAPIDS, MI, 49546, US	[Redacted]	[Redacted]	[Redacted]	10/30/20	Add
[Redacted] (ID 6182005) MONTICELLO, ME, 04760, US	[Redacted]	[Redacted]	[Redacted]	10/30/20	Remove
[Redacted] (ID 6600866) SALT LAKE CITY, UT, 84136, US	[Redacted]	[Redacted]	[Redacted]	10/30/20	Add

Cancel OK

- Click **Add** for every customer you wish to add to the Personal List.

- Click **Remove** for every customer you wish to remove from the Personal List.
- When you are finished adding customers from each search, you can either click **OK** to close the window and save the changes or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving the changes.
- Editing Segment Members

Figure 8-42 Segment Members List

<input type="checkbox"/>	Customer Name and Address	Last Visit	Activity YTD	Average Spend LTD
<input type="checkbox"/>	AB [blurred]		\$0.00	\$0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	AS [blurred]		\$0.00	\$0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	AB [blurred]		\$0.00	\$0.00

Segment Member lists can be edited. Do the following to edit a Segment Members list.

- Select the **Customer** check box located next to each customer you wish to remove. To select all customers in the list, select the **Customer** check box at the top of the list.
 - To remove any selected names immediately, click the **Actions Menu**, and then either click **Remove** or the Remove (x) icon.
21. When finished editing the customers to the segment, click **Next**. Continue to **Step 28**, the Personal List: Review tab.
 22. Define the Schedule on which the Segment Query is run. Select one of the following Job Execution Frequencies:

Figure 8-43 Frequency: Once, Immediately

Schedule Details

Frequency

- Once** (Selected): Run the Segment one time
- Daily: Run the Segment daily at a certain time
- Weekly: Run the Segment on a certain day of the week at a certain time
- Monthly: Run the Segment on a certain day of the month at a certain time

Once

Once, Immediately Once, Later

Job Processing Window

Override Job Processing Window

Job processing window is based on server time. The current server time is 3/27/23, 7:05 PM

	5 AM	6 AM	7 AM	8 AM	9 AM	10 AM	11 AM	12 PM	1 PM	2 PM	3 PM	4 PM	5 PM	6 PM	7 PM	8 PM
Sunday	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Monday	Monday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Tuesday	Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Wednesday	Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Thursday	Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Friday	Friday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Saturday	Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours															

Next >

- **Once, Immediately** - Run the Segment Query as soon as the Segment has been completed. If you select this option, proceed to **Step 24** for **Stratified** or **Step 26** for **Unstratified**.

Note:

This option is not available if Publish to Clienteling is selected in the Segment Name step (see **Step 6**).

Figure 8-44 Frequency: Once, Later

Schedule Details

Frequency

- Once** (Selected): Run the Segment one time
- Daily: Run the Segment daily at a certain time
- Weekly: Run the Segment on a certain day of the week at a certain time
- Monthly: Run the Segment on a certain day of the month at a certain time

Once

Once, Immediately Once, Later

Start Date: 05/27/2023

Job Execution Time: 01:00 AM

Job Processing Window

Override Job Processing Window

Job processing window is based on server time. The current server time is 3/27/23, 7:05 PM

	5 AM	6 AM	7 AM	8 AM	9 AM	10 AM	11 AM	12 PM	1 PM	2 PM	3 PM	4 PM	5 PM	6 PM	7 PM	8 PM
Sunday	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Monday	Monday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Tuesday	Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Wednesday	Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Thursday	Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Friday	Friday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Saturday	Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours															

Next >

- **Once, Later** - Run the Segment Query at a later date or time. Proceed to **Step 22.a**.

Figure 8-45 Frequency: Daily

Schedule Details

Frequency

Once
Run the Segment one time

Daily ✓
Run the Segment daily at a certain time

Weekly
Run the Segment on a certain day of the week at a certain time

Monthly
Run the Segment on a certain day of the month at a certain time

Daily

Start Date: 03/27/2023

End Date: [Empty]

Disable End Date

Run on Business Days Only

Job Execution Time: 01:00 AM

+ Add Another

Job Processing Window

Override Job Processing Window

Job processing window is based on server time. The current server time is 3/27/23, 7:05 PM

	5 AM	6 AM	7 AM	8 AM	9 AM	10 AM	11 AM	12 PM	1 PM	2 PM	3 PM	4 PM	5 PM	6 PM	7 PM	8 PM
Sunday	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Monday	Monday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Tuesday	Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Wednesday	Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Thursday	Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Friday	Friday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Saturday	Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours															

Next >

- **Daily** - Run the Segment Query every day. Proceed to **Step 22.a**.
Either:
- **Daily, Business Days Only** - To run the Segment Query only on business days (For example: Monday through Friday), select the Run on Business Days Only check box. Proceed to **Step 22.a**.

Figure 8-46 Frequency: Weekly

Schedule Details

Frequency

Once
Run the Segment one time

Daily
Run the Segment daily at a certain time

Weekly ✓
Run the Segment on a certain day of the week at a certain time

Monthly
Run the Segment on a certain day of the month at a certain time

Weekly

Start Date: 03/27/2023

End Date: [Empty]

Disable End Date

Job Execution Time: 01:00 AM

Day of Week

Sun Mon Tue Wed

Thu Fri Sat

Job Processing Window

Override Job Processing Window

Job processing window is based on server time. The current server time is 3/27/23, 7:05 PM

	5 AM	6 AM	7 AM	8 AM	9 AM	10 AM	11 AM	12 PM	1 PM	2 PM	3 PM	4 PM	5 PM	6 PM	7 PM	8 PM
Sunday	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Monday	Monday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Tuesday	Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Wednesday	Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Thursday	Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Friday	Friday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Saturday	Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours															

Next >

- **Weekly** - Run the Segment Query once each week. Proceed to **Step 22.a**.

Figure 8-47 Frequency: Monthly

Schedule Details

Frequency Monthly

Once
Run the Segment one time

Daily
Run the Segment daily at a certain time

Weekly
Run the Segment on a certain day of the week at a certain time

Monthly ✓
Run the Segment on a certain day of the month at a certain time

Start Date 04/03/2023

End Date

Disable End Date

Job Execution Time 01:00 AM

Day of Month 1st

Job Processing Window
 Override Job Processing Window
Job processing window is based on server time. The current server time is 4/3/23, 12:41 PM

	5 AM	6 AM	7 AM	8 AM	9 AM	10 AM	11 AM	12 PM	1 PM	2 PM	3 PM	4 PM	5 PM	6 PM	7 PM	8 PM
Sunday	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Monday	Monday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Tuesday	Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Wednesday	Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Thursday	Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Friday	Friday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Saturday	Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours															

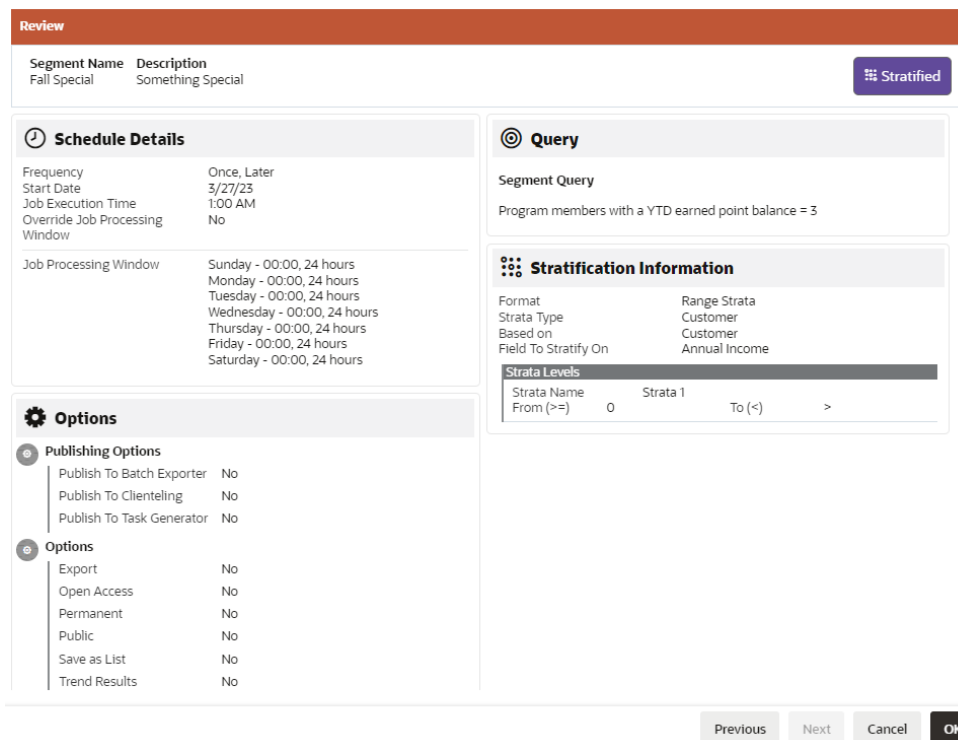
- **Monthly** - Run the Segment Query once each month. Proceed to **Step 22.a**.
 - Use the **Start Date Calendar Menu** to select the start of the time range in which the job will run.
If you selected a Job Execution Frequency of **Once, Later**, proceed to **Step 22.f**.
 - Use the End Date Calendar Menu to select the end of the time range in which the job will run.
 - If you selected a Job Execution Frequency of Daily, or Daily, Business Days Only, proceed to **Step 22.e**.
 - If you selected a Job Execution Frequency of Weekly, proceed to **Step 22.c**.
 - If you selected a Job Execution Frequency of Monthly, proceed to **Step 22.d**.
 - Use the Day of Week Selection Menu to select the day of the week on which the job will run. Proceed to **Step 22.e**.
 - Use the Day of Month Selection Menu to select the day of the month on which the job will run. Proceed to **Step 22.e**.
 - Use the **Job Execution Time Time Menus** to determine the time at which the job will run.

 **Note:**

It is recommended that you select a time that is within the Job Processing Window. If you select a time outside the Job Processing Window, the Override Job Processing Window setting (see [Step 22.f](#)) must be checked for the job to run.

- f. Use the **Override Job Processing Window** Check Box to indicate whether the job should run, even if it is scheduled outside the Job Processing Window.
23. When finished defining Schedule Details for the Segment, click **Next** and advance to the Review Tab.
- If the Segment Type is **Stratified** proceed to [Step 24](#), the Stratified: Review tab.
 - If the Segment Type is **Unstratified** proceed to [Step 26](#), the Unstratified: Review tab.
24. The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Create Segment Setup. Review the following for the **Stratified** Type.

Figure 8-48 Stratified Review Tab



Review

Segment Name	Description
Fall Special	Something Special

Schedule Details

Frequency	Once, Later
Start Date	3/27/23
Job Execution Time	1:00 AM
Override Job Processing Window	No
Job Processing Window	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours Monday - 00:00, 24 hours Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours Friday - 00:00, 24 hours Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours

Query

Segment Query
Program members with a YTD earned point balance = 3

Stratification Information

Format	Range Strata
Strata Type	Customer
Based on	Customer
Field To Stratify On	Annual Income

Strata Levels

Strata Name	Strata 1
From (>=)	To (<)
0	>

Options

Publishing Options

Publish To Batch Exporter	No
Publish To Clienteling	No
Publish To Task Generator	No

Options

Export	No
Open Access	No
Permanent	No
Public	No
Save as List	No
Trend Results	No

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

- 25. Click **OK** to create the segment, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Figure 8-49 Segment Tabs Links - Stratified

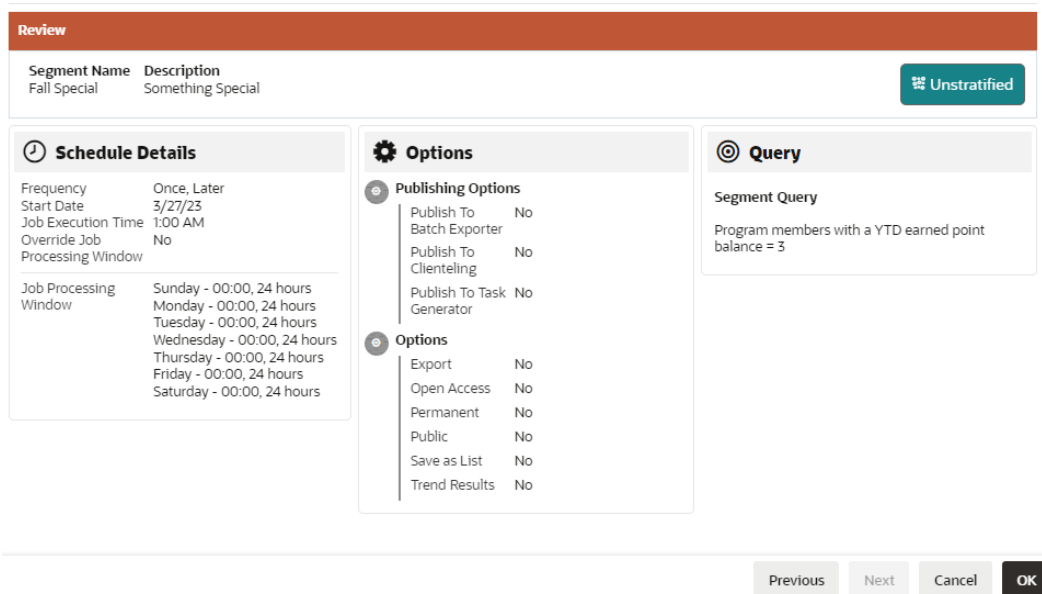


Note:

Before you save the Segment, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create segment process and make changes.

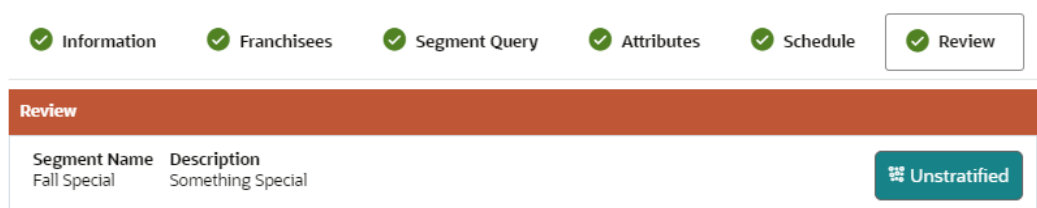
- The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Segment Setup. Review the following for the **Unstratified** Type.

Figure 8-50 Unstratified Review Tab



- Click **OK** to create the segment, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Figure 8-51 Segment Tabs Links - Unstratified

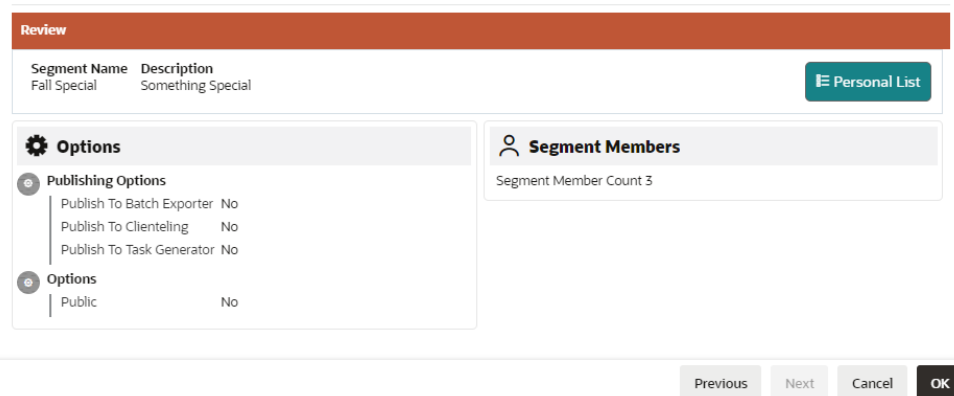


 **Note:**

Before you save the Segment, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create segment process and make changes.

- 28. The **Review** tab displays key elements in the Create Segment Setup. Review the following for the **Personal List** Type.

Figure 8-52 Personal List Review Tab



Segment Name	Description
Fall Special	Something Special

Options

Publishing Options

- Publish To Batch Exporter No
- Publish To Clienteling No
- Publish To Task Generator No

Options

- Public No

Segment Members

Segment Member Count 3

Previous Next Cancel OK

- 29. Click **OK** to create the segment, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Figure 8-53 Segment Tab Links - Personal List



Information Franchisees Attributes Segment Members **Review**

Segment Name	Description
Fall Special	Something Special

Options

Publishing Options

- Publish To Batch Exporter No
- Publish To Clienteling No
- Publish To Task Generator No

Options

- Public No

Segment Members

Segment Member Count 3

Previous Next Cancel OK

 **Note:**

Before you save the Segment, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create segment process and make changes.

Editing Segments/Personal Lists

You can access a Segment/Personal List for editing using the following methods to display the Edit option:

- Segment Search Results
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for an individual **Segment/Personal List** in the Segment Advanced Search window (**Segment/Personal List Record Result Section**).
 - Click **Edit**.

Figure 8-54 Overflow Menu Options (Segment Advanced Search)

Segment Search

Search

Segment ID:

Segment Type: All

Segment Classification: All

Publish To Batch Exporter: All

Save as List: All

Attribute Type: All

Attribute Value:

Reset Search

Search Results 165 Segments/Personal Lists Found. Sort By: Customer Count

Segment Name and Description	Run Schedule	Classification	Last Run / Update Date	Customer Count	Trend Results	Save as List
VB - Personal List (ID 1072) VB - Personal List	None	Private	6/15/22, 2:05 PM	25	N/A	✓
VB - Personal - Batch Exporter (ID 475) VB - Personal - Batch Exporter	None	Public	12/30/21, 5:04 AM	25	N/A	✓
Franchise 1,2,5,6 (ID 1141) Franchise 1,2,5,6	None	Public	8/30/22, 3:44 PM (1 Runs)	21		✓
Automation_PersonalList_Segment (ID 98) Automation_PersonalList_Segment	None	Public	6/21/21, 10:16 AM	15	N/A	✓
Manual (ID 9) Manual	None	Public	1/20/21, 7:54 AM	14	N/A	✓
Reg - My List (ID 258) Reg - My List	None	Public	7/22/21, 2:00 AM	12	N/A	✓
VB - Personal - Clienteling (ID 476) VB - Personal - Clienteling	None	Public	12/30/21, 5:05 AM	10	N/A	✓
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1356) Automation_Stratified_Segment	None	Public	3/23/23, 10:25 AM (1 Runs)	8		✓
Automation_Unstratified_Segment (ID 1351) Automation_Unstratified_Segment	None	Private	3/23/23, 9:56 AM (1 Runs)	8		✓
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1346) Automation_Stratified_Segment	None	Public	3/23/23, 3:47 AM (1 Runs)	8		✓
Automation_Unstratified_Segment (ID 1345) Automation_Unstratified_Segment	None	Private	3/23/23, 3:20 AM	8		✓

Overflow menu options: Delete, Duplicate, **Edit**, Export, View

- Segment Quick Search
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual **Segment/Personal List** in the **Segment Quick Search** window.
 - Click **Edit**.

Figure 8-55 Overflow Menu Options (Segment Quick Search)

Segment Home

All Segments: 165
Stratified: 73
Unstratified: 66
Personal Lists: 26

15 Total Active
4 Total Active
11 Total Active

Segment Quick Search

Match Type: Partial Exact

Search for a Segment or Personal List by Name or ID

Segments and Personal Lists

Segment Classification: All

Segment Name and Description	Run Schedule	Classification	Last Run / Update Date	Customer Count	Trend Results	Save as List
Segment Test (ID 1296) Segment Test	None	Public	2/22/23, 1:11 AM (2 Runs)	0		✓
VB-Segment (ID 1295) VB-Segment	None	Public	2/21/23, 5:16 AM	8	N/A	✓
Active Customers (ID 460) Active Customers	None	Public	2/6/23, 10:40 PM (3 Runs)	11,005,555	✓	✓
Stratified Segment Test (ID 1121) Desc	None	Public	12/15/22, 10:54 AM (7 Runs)	23,850		✓
XST Solon Customers (ID 1154) XST Solon Customers	None	Open Access	12/15/22, 10:49 AM (2 Runs)	349		✓
Personal List (ID 4) Personal List	None	Public	11/22/22, 12:50 AM	4	N/A	✓

Overflow menu options: Delete, Duplicate, **Edit**, Export, View

- View Segment View
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for an individual **Segment/Personal List**.

- Click **Edit**.

Figure 8-56 View Segment/Personal List (Edit)

For detailed information on each section while editing a Segment or Personal List see [Creating a Segment or Personal List](#).

Duplicating Segments/Personal Lists

You can duplicate a Segment/Personal List using the following methods to display the Duplicate option:

- Segment Search Results
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual **Segment/Personal List** in the **Segments Advanced Search** window.
 - Click **Duplicate**.

Figure 8-57 Overflow Menu Options (Segments Advanced Search)

Segment Name and Description	Run Schedule	Classification	Last Run / Update Date	Customer Count	Trend Results	Save as List
VB - Personal List (ID 1072) VB - Personal List	None	Private	6/15/22, 2:03 PM	25	N/A	✓
VB - Personal - Batch Exporter (ID 475) VB - Personal - Batch Exporter	None	Public	12/30/21, 5:04 AM	23	N/A	✓
Franchise 12.5.6 (ID 1141) Franchise 12.5.6	None	Public	8/30/22, 5:44 PM (1 Run)	21		✓
Automation_PersonalList_Segment (ID 08) Automation_PersonalList_Segment	None	Public	6/21/21, 10:16 AM	15	N/A	✓
Manual (ID 9) Manual	None	Public	1/20/21, 7:54 AM	14	N/A	✓
Big - My List (ID 258) Big - My List	None	Public	7/22/21, 2:00 AM	12	N/A	✓
VB - Personal - Clienteling (ID 476) VB - Personal - Clienteling	None	Public	12/30/21, 5:05 AM	10	N/A	✓
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1356) Automation_Stratified_Segment	None	Public	3/23/23, 10:25 AM (1 Run)	8		✓
Automation_Unstratified_Segment (ID 1351) Automation_Unstratified_Segment	None	Private	3/23/23, 9:56 AM (1 Run)	8		✓
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1346) Automation_Stratified_Segment	None	Public	3/23/23, 5:47 AM (1 Run)	8		✓
Automation_Unstratified_Segment (ID 1343) Automation_Unstratified_Segment	None	Private	3/23/23, 5:20 AM	8		✓

- Segment Quick Search
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for an individual Segment/Personal List.
 - Click **Duplicate**.

Figure 8-58 Overflow Menu Options (Segment Quick Search)

The screenshot shows the 'Segment Home' page. At the top, there are four summary boxes: 'All Segments' (165), 'Stratified' (73), 'Unstratified' (66), and 'Personal Lists' (26). Below these are 'Total Active' counts: 15 for All Segments, 4 for Stratified, and 11 for Unstratified. The main section is 'Segment Quick Search' with a search bar and a 'Create Segment' button. Below that is a table titled 'Segments and Personal Lists' with columns for Segment Name and Description, Run Schedule, Classification, Last Run / Update Date, Customer Count, Trend Results, and Save as List. The table lists several segments, including 'Active Customers (ID 460)'. An overflow menu is open for this segment, showing options: Delete, Duplicate (highlighted in red), Edit, Export, and View.

- View Segment View
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for an individual Segment/Personal List.
 - Click **Duplicate**.

Figure 8-59 View Segment List (Duplicate)

The screenshot shows the 'View Segment (ID 1071)' page. It displays the segment name 'Unstratified Segment' and description 'Unstratified Segment'. There are two main sections: 'Options' and 'Query'. The 'Options' section includes 'Publishing Options' with settings for 'Publish To Batch Exporter' (No), 'Publish To Clienteling' (No), and 'Publish To Task Generator' (Yes). The 'Query' section shows the segment query: 'Customer city of residence = Solon'. An overflow menu is open on the right, showing options: Delete, Duplicate (highlighted in red), Edit, and Export.

For detailed information on each section after duplicating an offer see [Creating a Segment or Personal List](#).

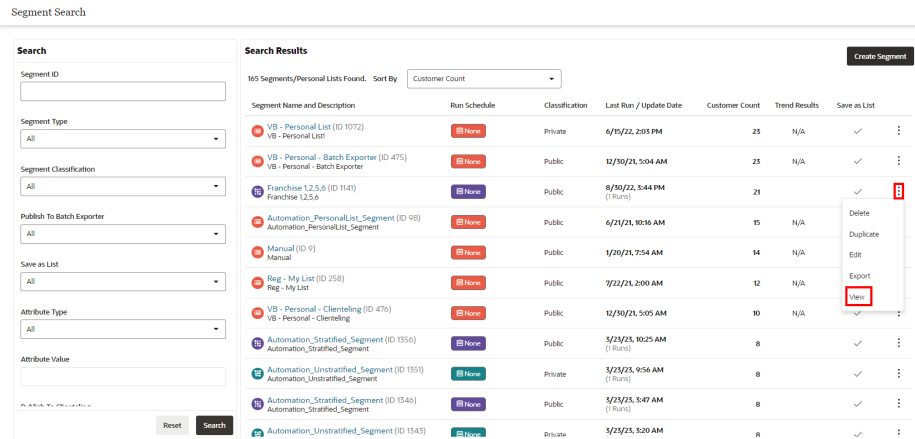
Viewing Segments/Personal Lists

You can access a Segment/Personal List for viewing using the following methods to display the View option:

- Segment/Personal List Search Results

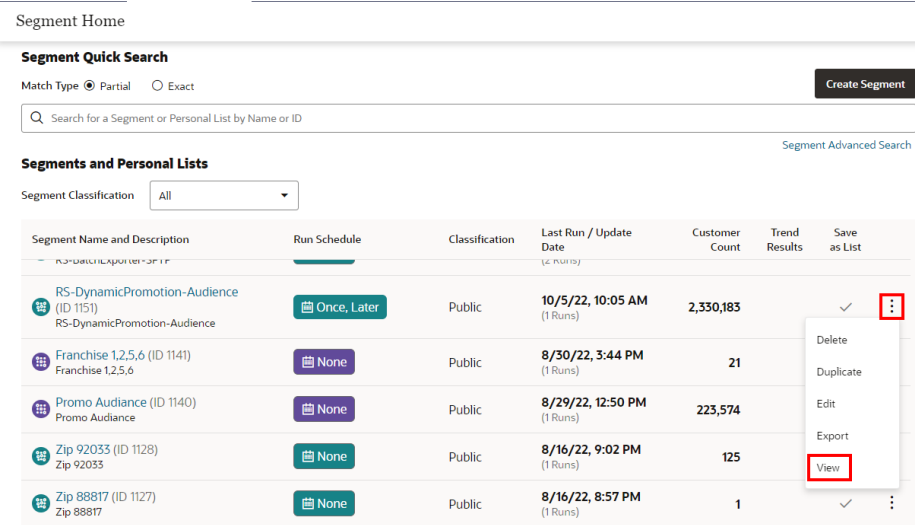
- Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual **Segment/Personal List** in the Segment/Personal List Advanced Search window (**Segment/Personal List Record Result Section**).
- Click **View**.

Figure 8-60 Overflow Menu Options (Segments Advanced Search)



- Segment/Personal List Quick Search
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual **Segment/Personal List** in the **Segment/Personal List Quick Search** window.
 - Click **View**.

Figure 8-61 Overflow Menu Options (Segments Quick Search)



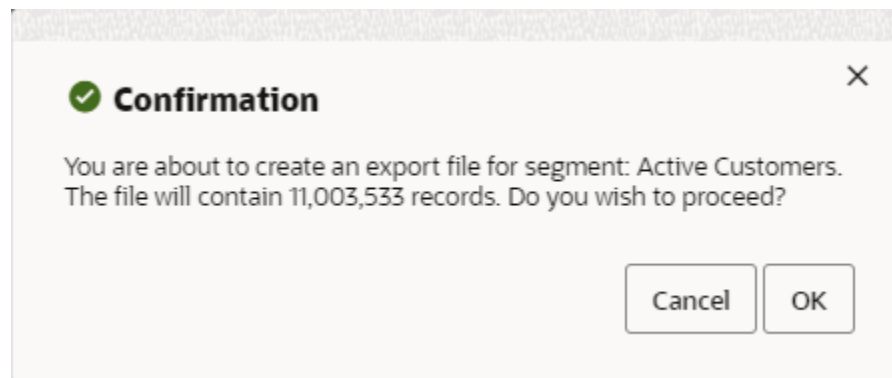
For detailed information on each section while Viewing an offer see [Creating a Segment or Personal List](#).

Exporting Segments

You can export a Segment using the following methods to display the Export option:

- Segment Search Results
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual **Segment** in the **Segments Advanced Search** window.
 - Click **Export**. A confirmation appears.

Figure 8-62 Export Confirmation



- Click **OK** to export the Segment or **Cancel** to close the confirmation without saving.

 **Note:**

A confirmation appears in the window.

Figure 8-63 Export Job Notification

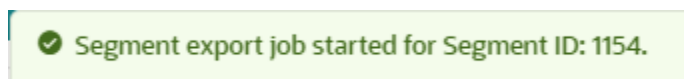


Figure 8-64 Overflow Menu Options (Segments Advanced Search)

Segment Search

Search

Segment ID

Segment Type

Segment Classification

Publish To Batch Exporter

Save as List

Attribute Type

Attribute Value

Search Results

165 Segments/Personal Lists Found. Sort By

Segment Name and Description	Run Schedule	Classification	Last Run / Update Date	Customer Count	Trend Results	Save as List
YB - Personal List (ID 1072) YB - Personal List	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Private	6/15/22, 2:05 PM	25	N/A	✓
YB - Personal - Batch Exporter (ID 475) YB - Personal - Batch Exporter	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Public	12/30/21, 5:04 AM	25	N/A	✓
Franchise 1.2.5.0 (ID 1141) Franchise 1.2.5.0	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Public	8/30/22, 5:44 PM (1 Runs)	21		✓
Automation_PersonalList_Segment (ID 98) Automation_PersonalList_Segment	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Public	6/21/21, 10:16 AM	15	N/A	✓
Manual (ID 9) Manual	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Public	1/20/21, 7:54 AM	14	N/A	✓
Reg - My List (ID 258) Reg - My List	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Public	7/22/21, 2:00 AM	12	N/A	✓
YB - Personal - Clienteling (ID 476) YB - Personal - Clienteling	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Public	12/30/21, 5:05 AM	10	N/A	✓
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1356) Automation_Stratified_Segment	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Public	3/23/23, 10:25 AM (1 Runs)	8		✓
Automation_Unstratified_Segment (ID 1351) Automation_Unstratified_Segment	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Private	3/23/23, 9:56 AM (1 Runs)	8		✓
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1346) Automation_Stratified_Segment	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Public	3/23/23, 5:47 AM (1 Runs)	8		✓
Automation_Unstratified_Segment (ID 1343) Automation_Unstratified_Segment	<input type="button" value="Name"/>	Private	3/23/23, 5:20 AM	8		✓

- Segment Quick Search
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for an individual Segment.
 - Click **Export**.
 - Click **OK** to export the Segment or **Cancel** to close the confirmation without saving.

Note:
A confirmation appears in the window.

Figure 8-65 Export Job Notification

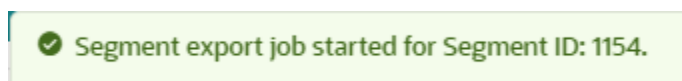


Figure 8-66 Overflow Menu Options (Segment Quick Search)

Segment Home

All Segments
165
15 Total Active

Stratified
73
4 Total Active

Unstratified
66
11 Total Active

Personal Lists
26

Segment Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact Create Segment

Segment Advanced Search

Segments and Personal Lists

Segment Classification All

Segment Name and Description	Run Schedule	Classification	Last Run / Update Date	Customer Count	Trend Results	Save as List
Automation_PersonalList_Segment (ID 1561) <small>Automation_PersonalList_Segment</small>	None	Public	3/29/23, 8:54 AM	1	N/A	✓
Stratified-NotPublic (ID 285) <small>Stratified-NotPublic</small>	None	Private	3/27/23, 12:55 PM <small>(2 Runs)</small>	353		✓
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1560) <small>Automation_Stratified_Segment</small>	None	Public	3/23/23, 10:57 AM <small>(1 Runs)</small>	0	✓	⋮
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1359) <small>Automation_Stratified_Segment</small>	None	Public	3/23/23, 10:57 AM <small>(1 Runs)</small>	0	✓	⋮
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1358) <small>Automation_Stratified_Segment</small>	None	Public	3/23/23, 10:45 AM <small>(1 Runs)</small>	7	✓	⋮
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1357) <small>Automation_Stratified_Segment</small>	None	Public	3/23/23, 10:35 AM <small>(1 Runs)</small>	0		⋮
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1356) <small>Automation_Stratified_Segment</small>	None	Public	3/23/23, 10:25 AM <small>(1 Runs)</small>	8		⋮

- View Segment View
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for an individual Segment.
 - Click **Export**.
 - Click **OK** to export the Segment or **Cancel** to close the confirmation without saving.

Note:
A confirmation appears in the window.

Figure 8-67 Export Job Notification

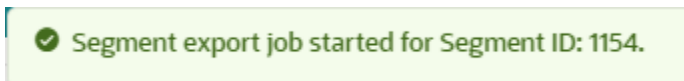
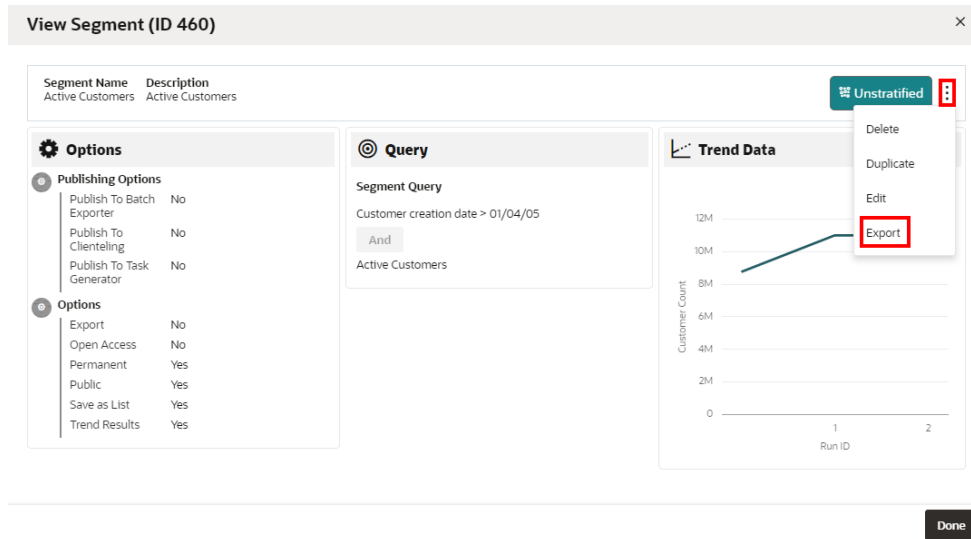


Figure 8-68 View Segment (Export)

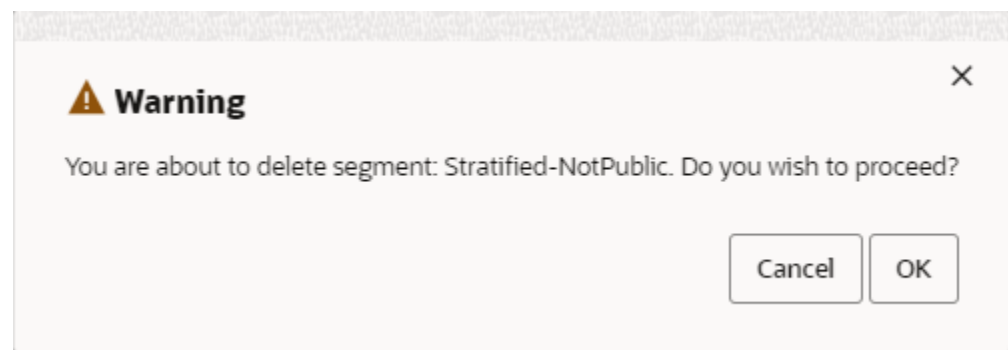


Deleting Segments/Personal Lists

You can delete a Segment/Personal List using the following methods to display the Delete option:

- Segment Search Results
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual **Segment/Personal List** in the **Segments Advanced Search** window.
 - Click **Delete**. A warning message appears.

Figure 8-69 Delete Warning



- Click **OK** to delete the Segment/Personal List or **Cancel** to close the confirmation without saving.

 **Note:**

A confirmation appears in the window.

Figure 8-70 Confirmation Message

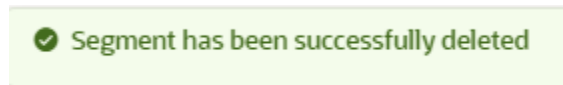


Figure 8-71 Overflow Menu Options (Segments Advanced Search)

Segment Search

Search

Segment ID

Segment Type

Segment Classification

Publish To Batch Exporter

Save as List

Attribute Type

Attribute Value

Search Results

165 Segments/Personal Lists Found. Sort By

Segment Name and Description	Run Schedule	Classification	Last Run / Update Date	Customer Count	Trend Results	Save as List
VB - Personal List (ID 1072) VB - Personal List	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Private	6/15/22, 2:05 PM	25	N/A	✓ ⋮
VB - Personal - Batch Exporter (ID 475) VB - Personal - Batch Exporter	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Public	12/30/21, 5:04 AM	25	N/A	✓ ⋮
Franchise 1,2,5,6 (ID 1141) Franchise 1,2,5,6	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Public	8/30/22, 3:44 PM (1 Runs)	21		✓ ⋮
Automation_PersonalList_Segment (ID 98) Automation_PersonalList_Segment	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Public	6/21/21, 10:16 AM	15	N/A	✓ ⋮
Manual (ID 9) Manual	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Public	1/20/21, 7:54 AM	14	N/A	✓ ⋮
Reg - My List (ID 258) Reg - My List	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Public	7/22/21, 2:00 AM	12	N/A	✓ ⋮
VB - Personal - Clienteling (ID 476) VB - Personal - Clienteling	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Public	12/30/21, 5:05 AM	10	N/A	✓ ⋮
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1356) Automation_Stratified_Segment	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Public	3/23/25, 10:25 AM (1 Runs)	8		✓ ⋮
Automation_Unstratified_Segment (ID 1351) Automation_Unstratified_Segment	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Private	3/23/25, 9:56 AM (1 Runs)	8		✓ ⋮
Automation_Stratified_Segment (ID 1346) Automation_Stratified_Segment	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Public	3/23/25, 3:47 AM (1 Runs)	8		✓ ⋮
Automation_Unstratified_Segment (ID 1343) Automation_Unstratified_Segment	<input type="button" value="None"/>	Private	3/23/25, 3:20 AM	8		✓ ⋮

- Segment Quick Search
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for an individual Segment/Personal List.
 - Click **Delete**.
 - Click **OK** to delete the Segment/Personal List or **Cancel** to close the confirmation without saving.

Note:
A confirmation appears in the window.

Figure 8-72 Confirmation Message

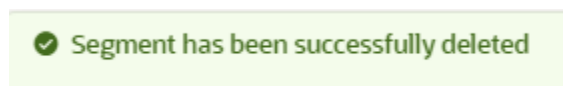


Figure 8-73 Overflow Menu Options (Segment Quick Search)







Segment Home

All Segments 165 Total Active: 15	Stratified 73 Total Active: 4	Unstratified 66 Total Active: 11	Personal Lists 26
---	-------------------------------------	--	----------------------

Segment Quick Search
Match Type: Partial Exact Create Segment

Search for a Segment or Personal List by Name or ID Segment Advanced Search

Segments and Personal Lists
Segment Classification: All

Segment Name and Description	Run Schedule	Classification	Last Run / Update Date	Customer Count	Trend Results	Save as List
Segment Test (ID 1296) Segment Test	None	Public	2/22/23, 1:11 AM (2 Runs)	0		✓ 
VB-Segment (ID 1295) VB-Segment	None	Public	2/21/23, 5:16 AM	8	N/A	✓ 
Active Customers (ID 400) Active Customers	None	Public	2/6/23, 10:40 PM (3 Runs)	11,003,533	✓	✓ 
Stratified Segment Test (ID 1121) Desc.	None	Public	12/15/22, 10:54 AM (7 Runs)	23,850		✓ 
XST Solon Customers (ID 1154) XST Solon Customers	None	Open Access	12/15/22, 10:49 AM (2 Runs)	349		✓ 
Personal List (ID 4) Personal List	None	Public	11/22/22, 12:50 AM	4	N/A	✓ 

- View Segment View
 - Click the **Overflow Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for an individual Segment/Personal List.
 - Click **Delete**.
 - Click **OK** to delete the Segment/Personal List or **Cancel** to close the confirmation without saving.


 **Note:**
A confirmation appears in the window.

Figure 8-74 Confirmation Messages


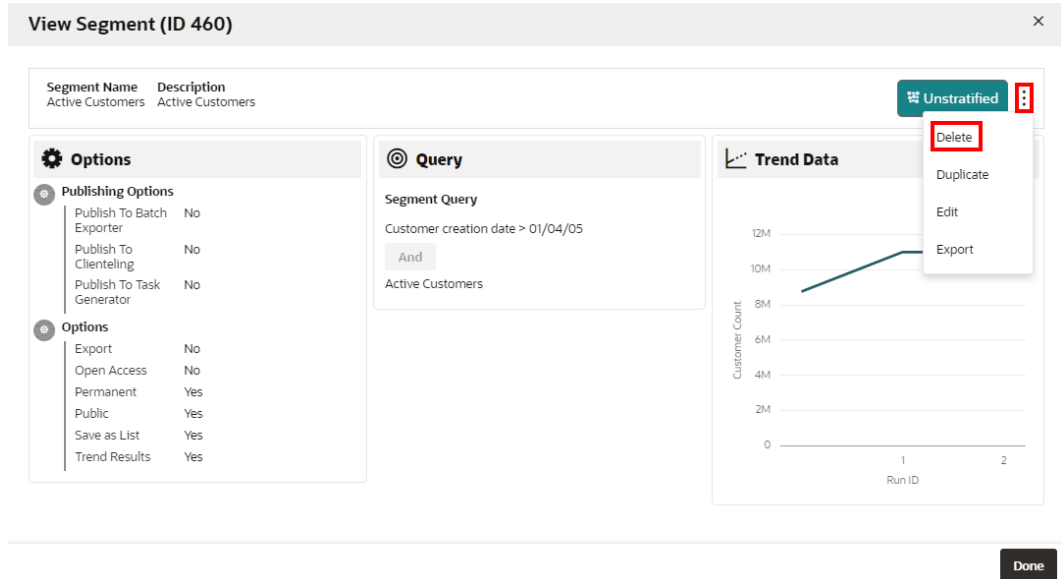
 Segment has been successfully deleted

Figure 8-75 View Segment/Personal List (Delete)

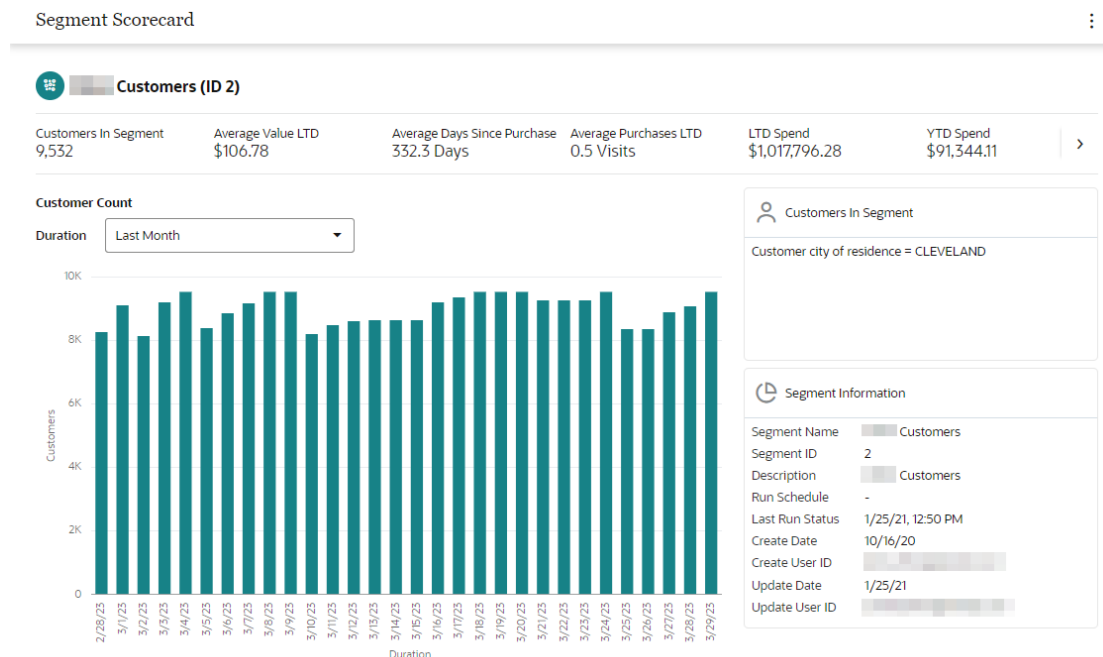


Segment Scorecards

The Segment Scorecard displays information about the Segment. You have the ability to periodically review the data on Segments. There are three types of Scorecards:

- Stratified Scorecard
- Unstratified Scorecard
- Personal List Scorecard

Figure 8-76 Stratified Segment Scorecard



**Note:**

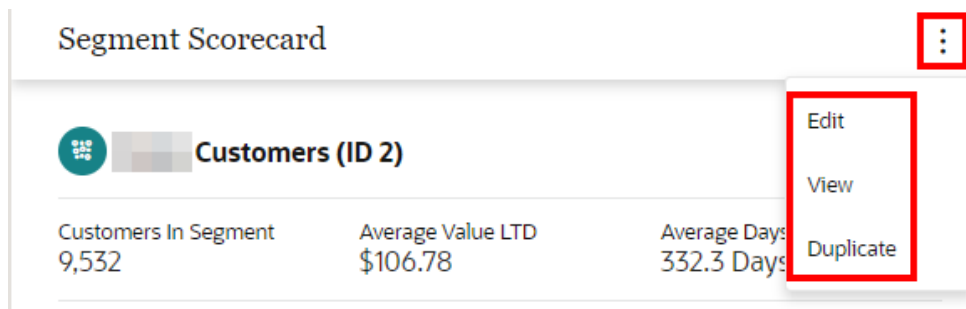
When no data is available a message appears informing you this Segment/Personal List does not contain any data.

Segment Scorecard Feature Bar

The Segment Scorecard Feature Bar contains the following information:

- Title of the window.
- Action Menu with the ability to **Edit**, **View**, or **Duplicate** the Segment/Personal List.

Figure 8-77 Action Menu Options



- The following information displays below the Feature Bar.
 - Segment Type Icon
 - Segment Name
 - Segment ID

Scorecard Analysis

Scorecards display high level metrics on customers within the segment, based on summary data.

Stratified Segment Scorecard

The Stratified Segment Scorecard provides summary data metrics on customers within the each strata of the segment. Click one of the following choices:

- **Customer Analysis**- The analysis of each Customer within the Segment based on Recency, Frequency, and Monetary Value.
- **Activity Analysis** - The analysis of each Customer on the basis of strata level within the Segment using Recency, Frequency, and Monetary Value metric.

Customer Analysis Metrics

Figure 8-78 Segment Scorecard (Stratified) - Customer Analysis



- The following metrics and their values display above a graph.
 - Customers in Segment
 - Average Value LTD
 - Average Days Since Purchase
 - Average Purchases LTD
 - LTD Spend
 - YTD Spend
- Duration:
 - **Last Week** - Customer Trend for Last Week (7 days (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
 - **Last Month (Default)** - Customer Trend for Last Month (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
 - **Last 6 Months** - Customer Trend for Last 6 Months converted into weeks (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
 - **Last Year** - Customer Trend for Last 12 months (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
 - **Lifetime to Date** - Customer Trend for the last 5 years (Current date (-1)) is displayed.

Customer Count Graph

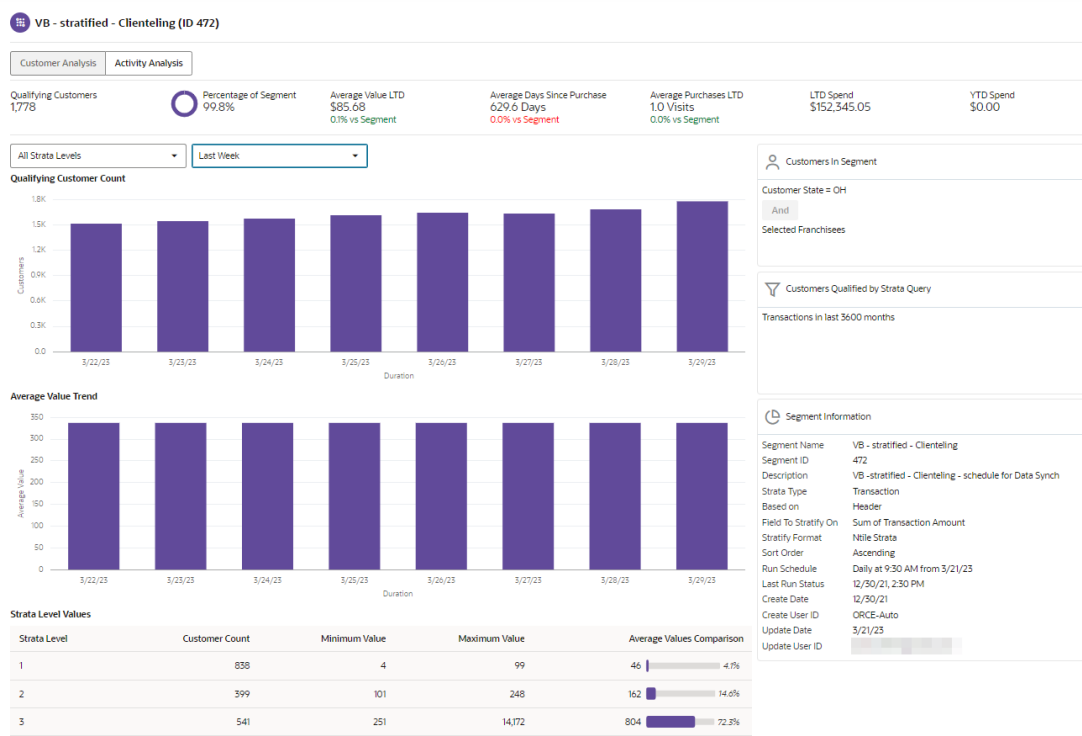
- The bar graph will dynamically update the Customer Trend based on the value selected for the Duration.
- The graph will represent a plot between the Customers Count on Y-axis and duration on X-axis for the Segment.

Segment Details Side Panel

- Customers in Segment
 - The selected templates along with their field values separated by AND/OR logic is displayed below the title.
- Segment Information
 - Segment Name
 - Segment ID
 - Description
 - Strata Type
 - Based On
 - Field to Stratify On
 - Strata Format
 - Run Schedule
 - Last Run Status
 - Create Date
 - Create User ID
 - Update Date
 - Update User ID

Activity Analysis Metrics

Figure 8-79 Segment Scorecard (Stratified) - Activity Analysis



- The following metrics and their values display above a graph.
- Qualifying Customers - The number of customers in the analysis.
- Percentage of Segment - The Percentage of Customers in the Segment is represented by Doughnut chart.
- Average Value LTD - The percentage increase will display in Green color and the percentage decrease will display in Red color.
- Average Days Since Purchase -The percentage increase will display in Green color and the percentage decrease will display in Red color.
- Average Purchases LTD - The percentage increase will display in Green color and the percentage decrease will display in Red color.
- LTD Spend
- YTD Spend

Qualifying Customer Count Graph

The Qualifying Customer Count graph dynamically updates based on the values selected for the number of Strata Levels and Duration. See [Duration](#) for duration details.

Average Value Trend Graph

The Average Value Trend graph dynamically updates based on the values selected for the number of Strata Levels and Duration. See [Duration](#) for duration details.

Strata Level Values

- A list of all the Strata Levels defined for the segment display in the Strata Level selection menu. Once a selection is made (all strata levels or an individual strata) a table displays directly below the graph and includes the following values:
 - **Strata Level** - Number of the Strata Level
 - **Customer Count** - The number of Customers in the Strata.
 - **Minimum Value** - The smallest value for the field by a Customer in the Strata (will not display for Segment type = Unstratified Segment).
 - **Maximum Value** - The largest value for the field by a Customer in the Strata (will not display for Segment type = Unstratified Segment).
 - **Average Value Comparison** - The average value for the field among the Customers in the Strata.
- Duration– Durations include:
 - **Last Week** - Customer Trend for Last Week (7 days (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
 - **Last Month (Default)** - Customer Trend for Last Month (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
 - **Last 6 Months** - Customer Trend for Last 6 Months converted into weeks (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
 - **Last Year** - Customer Trend for Last 12 months (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
 - **Lifetime to Date** - Customer Trend for the last 5 years (Current date (-1)) is displayed.

Segment Details Side Panel

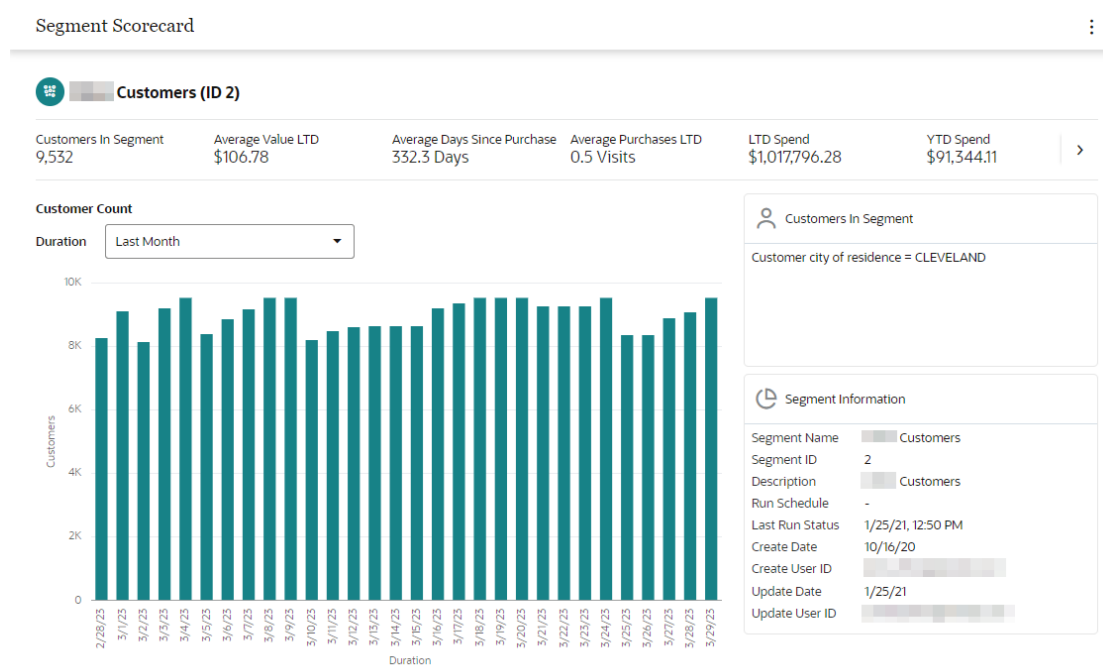
- Customers in Segment
 - The selected templates along with their field values separated by AND/OR logic is displayed below the title.
- Customers Qualified by Strata Query - The Customers Qualified by Strata Query box reflects additional strata qualifiers selected when creating a stratified segment and the Strata Type is either Loyalty or Transaction.
- Segment Information
 - Segment Name
 - Segment ID
 - Description
 - Strata Type
 - Based On
 - Field to Stratify On
 - Strata Format
 - Run Schedule

- Last Run Status
- Create Date
- Create User ID
- Update Date
- Update User ID

Unstratified Segment Scorecard

The Unstratified Segment Scorecard provides summary data metrics on customers in the segment.

Figure 8-80 Segment Scorecard - Unstratified



- The following metrics and their values display above a graph.
 - Customers in Segment
 - Average Value LTD
 - Average Days Since Purchase
 - Average Purchases LTD
 - LTD Spend
 - YTD Spend
- Duration– Durations include:
 - **Last Week** - Customer Trend for Last Week (7 days (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
 - **Last Month (Default)** - Customer Trend for Last Month (Current date (-1)) is displayed.

- **Last 6 Months** - Customer Trend for Last 6 Months converted into weeks (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
- **Last Year** - Customer Trend for Last 12 months (Current date (-1)) is displayed.
- **Lifetime to Date** - Customer Trend for the last 5 years (Current date (-1)) is displayed.

Customer Count Graph

- The bar graph will dynamically update the Customer Trend based on the value selected for the Duration.
- The graph represents a plot between the Customers Count on Y-axis and duration on X-axis for the Segment.

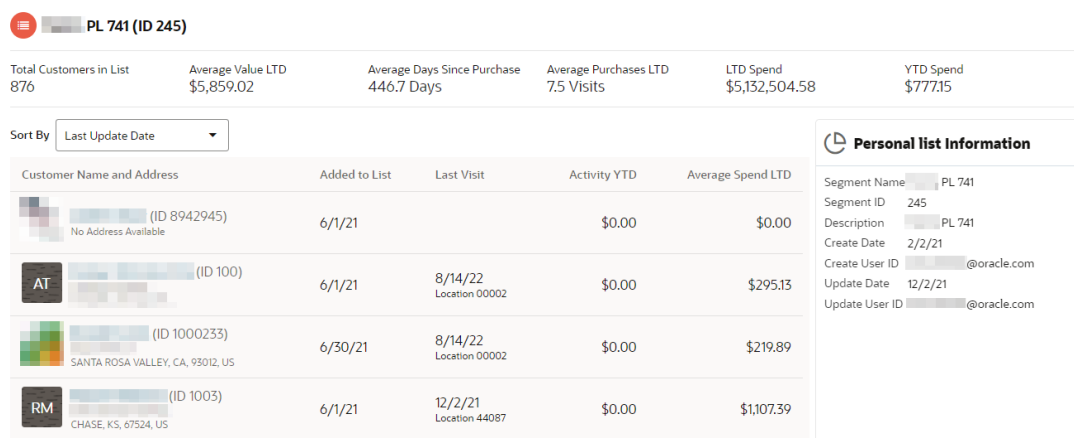
Segment Details Side Panel

- Customers in Segment
 - The selected templates along with their field values separated by AND/OR logic is displayed below the title in View only mode.
- Segment Information Panel
 - Segment Name
 - Segment ID
 - Description
 - Run Schedule
 - Last Run Status
 - Create Date
 - Create User ID
 - Update Date
 - Update User ID

Personal List Segment Scorecard

You have the ability to display the list of customers associated with the personal list, so that you can identify which customers are on the list and review their performance.

Figure 8-81 Personal List Scorecard



- The following metrics and their values display above the list of results.
 - Total Customers in List
 - Average Value LTD
 - Average Days Since Purchase
 - Average Purchases LTD
 - LTD Spend
 - YTD Spend
- Sort by - Options include:
 - Last Update Date (Customers are sorted by last updated date in descending order by default)
 - Average Spend LTD (Customers are sorted by Average Spend LTD in descending order)
 - Activity YTD (Customer are sorted by Activity YTD in descending order)
 - Last Visit (The Customer are sorted by last visit date in descending order)
 - Last Name (Customers are sorted by the Last Name in ascending order)
 - First Name (Customers are sorted by First Name in ascending order)
 - Address (Customers are sorted by Address in ascending order)
 - City (Customers are sorted by City in ascending order)
 - State (Customers are sorted by State in ascending order)
 - Added to List

Customer List



Note:

If more customers than can fit the window, a scroll bar displays. Select **Show More...** at the bottom of the page to retrieve more records.

- The Customer List will dynamically update the results based on the value selected for the Sort by selection menu. The Customer List headers include:
 - Customer Name, ID, and Address
 - Added to List
 - Last Visit
 - Activity YTD
 - Average Spend LTD

Personal List Information Panel

- Segment Name
- Segment ID
- Description
- Create Date
- Create User ID
- Update Date
- Update User ID

9

Registries

Overview

The Customer Item Registry allows you to set up two different types of registries:

- **Gift Registry:** Select the items that the recipient would like to receive - usually for a special event such as a wedding or baby shower.
- **Wish List:** Select items that the recipient would like to receive, without identifying a special event as with a Gift Registry

About this Chapter

This chapter contains the following information:

- [Looking Up an Item Registry](#) – Describes how to navigate to the Registries page and look up registries.
- [Creating a Registry](#) – Explains each of the five steps for creating a registry in the Registry Wizard:
 - [Step 1: Information](#) – Add the basic registry details, such as owner and type.
 - [Step 2: Items](#) – Add the items to the list for the Gift Registry or Wish List.
 - [Step 3: Attributes](#) – Add the registry attributes, if any.
 - [Step 4: Addresses](#) – Add event addresses. This only applies to Gift Registries.
 - [Step 5: Review](#) – Review the information that has been entered, make revisions if necessary, and save the registry.
- [Viewing a Registry](#) – Explains how to view a registry in read-only mode
- [Downloading a Registry Report](#) – Explains how you can download a report containing a registry's information in PDF format
- [Editing a Registry](#) – Explain the different ways to navigate to the Edit Registry page and how to edit the registry.
- [Deleting a Registry](#) – Explains how to delete a registry

Looking Up an Item Registry

There are two ways to look up an item registry. You can search all registries using the Registries icon on the main toolbar, or you can look up just the registries for a specific customer using Registries option on the Actions menu in the Customer Dashboard.

To look up a registry from the Customer Dashboard:

- From the Actions menu in the Customer Dashboard, choose the **Registries** option. This displays the list of Registries Found for the customer. See [Figure 9-2](#).

To look up a registry from the main toolbar:

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click **Customer**.
3. Click **Registries**. This displays the Registries page.

Figure 9-1 Registries Page

The screenshot shows the 'Registries' page interface. It features a sidebar on the left with a 'Search' section containing four input fields: 'Registry Owner Last Name', 'First Name', 'Email Address', and 'Phone Number'. Below these fields are 'Reset' and 'Search' buttons. The main content area on the right has a 'Search Results' section with a text box and a 'Create Registry' button.

4. Enter search criteria in one or more of the following fields in the Search panel:

 **Note:**

To retrieve all the active Item Registries in the system, click **Search** without entering any search criteria.

To clear the search fields and restore default selections in the search page, click **Reset**.

Registry Owner

- Last Name - Last name of the registry owner.
- First Name – First name of the registry owner.
- Email Address – Registry owner's email address.
- Phone Number – Registry owner's phone number.
- Customer ID – ID of the customer who owns the registry.
- Card Number – Number for a Card associated with the customer.

Registry

- Registry Type – Select All, Gift Registry, or Wish List from the list.
- Registry Name – Name of the registry.
- Event Type – Type of event for which the registry was created (wedding shower, for example).

 **Note:**

You should not select an Event Type when searching for a Wish List, because a Wish List is not associated with an event.

- Event Date – Use the calendar to select the date on which the event occurs.
 - Registry ID – The ID of the registry.
5. Click **Search**. This displays a list of registries that match the entered criteria. If you searched for the registries for one specific customer for example, by entering a complete Customer ID, you will see just that customer's registries. If you chose **Registries** from the Actions menu in the Customer's Dashboard, the registries for just that customer are displayed, as in the example following:

Figure 9-2 Registries Found List

Search Results Create Registry

32 Registries Found Sort By Registry Name ▼

Registry Name and Type	Date	Registry Owners
<input type="radio"/> Wedding Shower (ID 11928) Wedding Shower	9/8/21 at 2:30 PM	⋮
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Wish List (ID 11939) Wish List	6/17/22 Created	⋮
<input checked="" type="radio"/> WishList (ID 11927) Wish List	9/1/21 Created	⋮
<input checked="" type="radio"/> WishList (ID 11934) Wish List	2/10/22 Created	⋮
<input checked="" type="radio"/> test (ID 11943) Wish List	12/1/22 Created	⋮

- The number of registries that match the search criteria is shown to the left of the Sort By field.
- You can sort the registries displayed in the grid by the following options on the list:
 - Registry Name – Ascending order
 - Date Created- Descending order. This field sorts only for Wish Lists.
 - Registry Owner – Ascending order, by Last Name
 - Number of Items – Highest to lowest
- Create Registry – Displays a Create Registry window See [Creating a Registry](#) for more information.
- The registry grid displays the following information for each registry:
 - Blue dot at the left of the Wish List or Registry Name. If filled, indicates that the wish list or registry is active. If unfilled, it is inactive. Values are
 - Active** – displays from the time the registry is activated to the date and time of the event.
 - Past** – displays any time after the date and time of the event.
 - Registry Information – Shows the Registry Name and Registry Type
 - Date – The Event Date for a Registry or the Create Date for a Wish List
 - Registry Owners – The name of the Primary customer who owns the registry first, with any other owners subsequently.
- An action menu icon is displayed at the end of each row. It has these options:
 - Delete – Select to delete the registry. See [Deleting a Registry](#).
 - Download Report – Select to download a report with information about the registry. See [Downloading a Registry Report](#).

- Edit – Select to edit the registry. See [Editing a Registry](#).
- You can view registry details by clicking the name of the registry in the grid.

Creating a Registry

Step 1: Information

1. From the Actions menu on a Customer's Dashboard, choose **Registries**, or click the **Registries** icon to display the Registries window, and click Create **Registry**. Either action displays the Create Registry Wizard.

Figure 9-3 Create Registry Wizard

The screenshot shows the 'Create Registry Wizard' at the 'Registry Information' step. The main form area is titled 'Registry Information' and is divided into two main sections: 'Registry Details' and 'Registry Owners'.
Registry Details:
 - **Registry Type:** Radio buttons for 'Gift Registry' (selected) and 'Wish List'.
 - **Registry Name:** A text input field with a 'Required' label below it.
 - **Ready to Publish:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
 - **Event Type:** A dropdown menu with '(Please select)' and a 'Required' label below it.
 - **Event Date:** A date and time picker with a 'Required' label below it.
 - **Expiration Date:** A date and time picker with a 'Required' label below it.
Registry Owners:
 - A section with 'Actions' (plus, edit, delete icons) and a list area showing 'No Registry Owners to display'.
Progress and Navigation:
 - A progress bar at the top indicates 'Step 1' of 5 steps.
 - At the bottom right, there are buttons for 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.
Right Sidebar:
 - A vertical sidebar titled 'Registry Information' shows a progress bar and four sections: 'Information', 'Items', 'Attributes', and 'Addresses', each with the text 'No Information Entered' or 'No Addresses Entered'.

The progress bar at the top indicates that you are located at step 1, Information. As you progress, the Create Registry Wizard moves you through each of the five steps.

2. Under Registry Details, Select the **Registry Type**. A Gift Registry is tied to an event, while a Wish List is open-ended. This is mandatory.
3. Enter a **name** for the registry in the Registry Name field. This is mandatory.
4. If the **Ready to Publish** check box is **selected**, it indicates that the registry is available for export to a third party when the registry is saved
5. If the Registry Type is Wish List, there are no other mandatory fields under Registry Details. If the Registry Type is Gift Registry, also make selections for these mandatory fields:

Event Type – Select an Event Type from the list.

Event Date – Select the date and time of the event from the calendar.

- Expiration Date** – Select the date that the registry expires, from the calendar.
6. Optionally, you can enter **comments** about the registry in the Comments field.
 7. Optionally, you can add an **image** that represents the Gift Registry. Click **Edit** next to the logo in the Image field to display an Edit Registry Image prompt that lets you **drop or upload a new image**. This is only available for Gift Registries.
 8. Under Registry Owners, choose **Add** from the **Actions Menu**, or click the **Add Icon**. Either action displays the Add Registry Owner window:

Figure 9-4 Add Registry Owner

9. In the search field at the top of the window, enter search criteria such as customer name or ID. A list of customers matching the search criteria is displayed. Select the customer for whom you are creating the registry. This displays the Name, ID, Alternate Key, and primary contact information of the selected customer under the search field. When you select a customer, the window is populated with available information about the customer.
10. Add any details that are missing. The following information can be entered, with mandatory fields marked by asterisks (*):
 - Primary – Indicates whether this customer is the primary owner of the registry.
 - Nickname – Enter an optional nickname for the registry owner.
 - Phone – Information about the registry owner's phone number:
 - The Phone switch defaults to On. If this switch is set to Off, the following fields are not displayed.
 - Registry Phone – Select the type of phone number being used for the registry from the list, or select Create New to enter a new phone number.
 - Phone Number – The registry phone number. This field is mandatory.
 - Extension – the extension of the registry phone number, if applicable.

- User Label – Enter an optional user label for the registry phone number
 - Email – Information about the registry owner's email address:
 - The Email switch defaults to On. If this switch is set to Off, the following fields are not displayed.
 - Registry Email – Select the type of email address being used for the registry from the list, or select Create New to enter a new email address.
 - Email – The registry email address. This field is mandatory.
 - User Label – Enter an optional user label for the registry email address
 - Address – Information about the registry owner's address:
 - The Address switch defaults to On. If this switch is set to Off, the following fields are not displayed.
 - Registry Address - Select the type of address being used for the registry from the list, or select Create New to enter a new address.
 - Country – Select the country of the registry form the list.
 - Address 1-4 –The street address of the registry. Address 1 is mandatory
 - Apartment – The apartment number of the registry, if applicable.
 - City – The city of the registry. This field is mandatory.
 - State – The state or province of the registry. This field is mandatory.
 - Postal Code – The postal code of the registry. This field is mandatory.
 - County – The County of the registry.
11. Click **OK** when you are finished entering the customer details. This returns you to the Create Registry window. The customer information is displayed in the Registry Owners list. If you are done entering registry information, click **Next** to go to [Step 2: Items](#).

Step 2: Items

Figure 9-5 Create Registry Items

To add items to a Registry:

1. There are two methods for adding items to a registry, using the **Add** command to display the Add Items to Registry dialog, where you can search for items, or by entering the exact **Item ID** in the Quick Add field:
 - Under Items in Registry, choose **Add** from the Actions menu, or click the **Add Icon**. Either action displays the Add Items to Registry dialog:

Figure 9-6 Add Items to Registry





The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add Items to Registry". It features a search interface with two input fields: "Item ID" and "Description". Below these fields are "Reset" and "Search" buttons. To the right is a "Results" panel with "Actions", a plus sign, and a trash icon, currently displaying "No Items to display". The dialog has a close button (X) in the top right and "Cancel" and "OK" buttons at the bottom right.

2. In the Search panel, enter an **Item ID**, **Description**, or **both** in the provided fields and click **Search**. This displays a list of items matching the search criteria in the Results panel. If you want to clear a search, click **Reset**. Use the Search panel to add more items.
3. The Results panel displays the Image, Item ID and Description of the items in the search results:

Figure 9-7 Search Results

Results

Actions ▾ | + | 🗑️

Image	Item ID	Description	Desired Quantity
	210030505	Boys Argyle Sweater	1
	210035050	Boys Argyle Sweater	1
	210035051	Boys Argyle Sweater	1
	210017505	Boys Cashmere Sweater	1

Cancel OK

If you want to specify the desired quantity of this item, use the Increment and Decrement arrows to increase or decrease the quantity. The Desired Quantity value defaults to 1.

- If you want to add an item from the Results panel to the Registry, select the item and choose **Add** from the **Actions Menu**, or click the **Add (+) Icon**. Items that you add are displayed in an Add Items to Registry panel on the right side of the page. To remove all items from the list, choose **Remove All** from the Actions menu or click the **Remove All** icon.
- Click **OK** to add items. The selected items are added to the Items in Registry list on the Items tab.

Or use this alternate method:

- In the Quick Add field (see [Figure 9-5](#)), enter the exact **Item ID** and click **Add**. If the exact match is found, the item is added to the Items in Registry table. If the item is not found, the message `Invalid item` displays.
 - If the item is found, the Image, Item ID and Description of the item and a Desired Quantity field are displayed. The default quantity is 1. You can change the quantity using the Increment and Decrement arrows to increase or decrease the quantity.
- When you are done adding items to the registry, click **Next** to go to [Step 3: Attributes](#).

Step 3: Attributes

Figure 9-8 Registry Attributes

The screenshot shows a dialog box with two main sections: 'Attributes' and 'Registry Information'.
Attributes Section:
 - **Attribute Group:** A dropdown menu currently showing 'None'.
Registry Information Section:
 - **Information:** Spring Items OTHER on 3/15/23 at 12:00 AM Gift Registry owned by [redacted]
 - **Items:** 1 Item in Registry, 0 Purchased
 - **Attributes:** No Attributes Entered
 - **Addresses:** No Addresses Entered
 At the bottom right, there are four buttons: 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

To add attributes to a registry:

1. Select a group from the Attribute Group list. A list of attributes specific to the selected Attribute Group is displayed.

 **Note:**

This step is optional unless specific attributes are included in a group and you want to select any of them.

Figure 9-9 Attributes List

The screenshot shows the same dialog box as Figure 9-8, but with 'BABY SHOW' selected in the 'Attribute Group' dropdown.
Attributes Section:
 - **Attribute Group:** BABY SHOW
 - **Attributes List:**
 - **BABY-GENDER:** BABY-GENDER, (Please select) [dropdown]
 - **PREFERRED COLORS:** PREFERRED COLORS, Character [text input], + Add Another [link]
Registry Information Section:
 - **Information:** Spring Items OTHER on 3/15/23 at 12:00 AM Gift Registry owned by [redacted]
 - **Items:** 1 Item in Registry, 0 Purchased
 - **Attributes:** No Attributes Entered
 - **Addresses:** No Addresses Entered
 At the bottom right, there are four buttons: 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

- If you selected an Attribute Group, the attributes belonging to that group are listed in the Attributes grid. Enter values for the attributes you want applied to the registry. You must enter a value for each required attribute (indicated by an asterisk*).
 - The grid displays the name, description and value entry field for each attribute.
 - Attributes are displayed by group, with mandatory attributes displayed first.
 - Attribute value entry fields will initially indicate the type of value to enter, for example, (Please select) for a list of items.
 - If there is more than one possible value for the attribute, there is a + Add Another link under the attribute value entry field. Click the **+ Add Another** link if you have entered a value and need to add another. This displays a duplicate entry field for the attribute.
 - A value can only be removed if an **X** appears next to it. The **X** is only displayed if the value can be removed.
- If you want to add attributes not assigned to the available Attribute Groups, click the **Manage** button under Additional Attributes.

Figure 9-10 Attributes: Wish List

Attributes	Registry Information
Attribute Group <input type="text" value=""/> Required	Information Spring Items Wish List owned by <input type="text"/>
Attributes	Items 1 Item in Registry 0 Purchased
Additional Attributes <input type="button" value="Manage"/>	Attributes No Attributes Entered

Previous Next Cancel OK

Note:

This is only available for Wish Lists. This displays a Manage Attributes window:

Figure 9-11 Manage Attributes

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	NEED-BY DATE	Wish List Items Needed By
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	GIFT ITEM?	Is Wish List Item for Gift?
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	HOLIDAY GIFT	Wish List Item for which Holiday
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	MAX_AMOUNT	Wish List Items Under \$
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	WISH LIST COUNT	Wish List Item Count

4. Click the check box next to the Name and Description header row to select all of the attributes, or select the check box next to each attribute that you want to include, and click **OK**. The selected attributes are display beneath Manage.
5. If you have added attributes using the Manage Attribute window, specify values for those attributes.
6. When you are done selecting attributes and entering values, click **OK**.
7. Click **Next** to go to [Step 4: Addresses](#).

Step 4: Addresses

Figure 9-12 Addresses

Addresses

Event Venue

Before Event

After Event

**Note:**

This section only applies to Gift Registries.

To add Addresses:

1. Click the **switch** next to an address type to **On** to display a list of fields associated with that address. To hide the fields, set the **switch** to **Off**. The following example shows the fields associated with the Event Venue address. Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are mandatory:

Figure 9-13 Event Venue Address

Addresses

Event Venue

Name Required

Address 2

Address 4

City Required

Postal Code Required

Country

Address 1 Required

Address 3

Apartment

State Required

County

Before Event

After Event

2. Enter information in the fields.
 - Name – The name of the event venue. This field is mandatory.
 - Address 1-4 – The street address of the venue. Address 1 is mandatory.
 - Apartment – The apartment number, if applicable.
 - City – The city of the venue. This field is mandatory.
 - State – The state or province of the venue. This field is mandatory.
 - Postal Code – The postal code of the venue. This field is mandatory.
 - County – The County of the venue.
 - Country - The country of the venue. Choose a country from the list

If there is a Use Address field for the event, as in the following example, select a name from the list. This will populate the remaining fields:

Figure 9-14 Address Fields

Before Event

Use Address

- When you are done entering addresses, click **OK**.
- Click **Next** to go to [Step 5: Review](#). This displays a page where you can review all the information you have entered for the registry.

Step 5: Review


Figure 9-15 Review

Review

Spring Items ↓

Registry Information		Registry Comments			
Fields	Value				
Registry Type	Gift Registry				
Public Registry	No				
Event Type	OTHER				
Event Date	3/22/23, 12:00 AM				
Expiration Date	3/29/23				

Registry Owners					
Primary	Name	Nickname	Registry Phone	Registry Email	Registry Address
✓	Ken	Ken			

Items in Registry				
Image	Item ID	Description	Desired Quantity	Purchased Quantity
	210014505	Boys Argyle Sweater	1	0

Previous Next Cancel OK

To review the registry:

- Look over the information in the review page. If there is anything you want to change, click the step located in the top bar where the information was first entered. For example, click **Information** to return to the Information window. To navigate to the previous step, click **Previous**.
- Make the changes to the information. For example, if you want to publish the registry, go back to the Information window and select the **Ready to Publish** check box. This ensures that the registry is published the next time it is saved.
- Click **OK** to save your changes in each window.
- Click **Review** located in the top bar, and then click **OK** in the Review window when complete. This saves the registry, and it now appears in the list of registries for the customer.

Viewing a Registry

To View a Registry

1. In the Registries Found list (See [Figure 9-2](#)), click the **name** of the registry you want to view.

This displays the registry details in view-only mode:

Figure 9-16 View Registry

View Registry for [Customer ID 100]

Wedding Shower

Fields	Value
Registry ID	11928
Registry Type	Gift Registry
Publish Registry	Yes
Event Type	WEDDING_SHOWER
Event Date	9/8/21 2:30 PM
Expiration Date	9/30/21

Registry Comments
Wedding Shower

Primary	Name	Nickname	Registry Phone	Registry Email	Registry Address
✓					

Attribute Group	Name	Description	Value
WEDDING	WEDDING-DATE	WEDDING-DATE	9/30/21
WEDDING	GUEST-COUNT	GUEST-COUNT	100

Fields	Value

Done

2. View the items in the registry. You can use the scroll bar to view hidden information.

The following information can be displayed, depending on what has been entered and saved for the registry:

- Customer Bar
 - Title (View Registry for
 - Primary Owner Customer Name
 - Primary Owner Customer ID
- Display Bar
 - The Registry Name
 - Icons for editing the registry and downloading the registry report
- Registry Information – This table contains the following listed Fields and Values, if they have been entered

- Registry ID
- Registry Type
- Publish Registry
- Event Type – This is displayed for Gift Registries only
- Event Date – This is displayed for Gift Registries only
- Expiration Date – This is displayed for Gift Registries only
- Comments – any comments entered about the registry
- Registry Owners
 - Primary – The primary owners are displayed first, with any subsequent owners after.
 - Name
 - Nickname
 - Registry Phone
 - Registry Email
 - Registry Address – (also known as) Contact Address
- Items in Registry – For each item in the registry, this information is displayed:
 - Image
 - Item ID - The item ID has a link, that when clicked, displays a window with detail information.
 - Description
 - Desired Quantity
 - Purchased Quantity
- Attributes
 - Group
 - Name
 - Description
 - Value
- Event Venue Address – Displayed for Gift Registries only.
 - Name
 - Address 1-4
 - Apartment
 - City
 - State
 - Postal Code
 - County
 - Country
- Before Event Address – Displayed for Gift Registries only.
 - Name

- Address 1-4
 - Apartment
 - City
 - State
 - Postal Code
 - County
 - Country
 - After Event Address – Displayed for Gift Registries only.
 - Name
 - Address 1-4
 - Apartment
 - City
 - State
 - Postal Code
 - County
 - Country
3. Click **Done**. This returns you to the Registries Found list.

Downloading a Registry Report

To download a registry report either:

- In the Registries Found list (see [Figure 9-2](#)), click the Actions Menu in the row of the registry for which you want to download a report, and choose the **Download Report** option.
- In the Edit Registry Review or View Registry page, click the **Download Report** icon.

Either action displays a prompt for saving or running the report with these options:

- The steps in the prompt can vary based on the browser that is being used.
- The report is available in PDF format
- The steps in the prompt can vary based on the browser that is being used.

Registry Report Output

The following example shows the output of a downloaded registry report:

Figure 9-17 Registry Report

ORACLE		Registry Detail					Organization: 01	
Date Range: Registry ID: 9704		Customer ID: ALL						
Primary Customer ID: 64872								
Registry ID - Name	Event Date	Venue Name Venue Address	First Name Last Name	Email Address Phone Number	Address	Item ID - Name	Desired Quantity	Purchased Quantity
9704 - Birthday	N/A	N/A	Thomas Kraeger	tkraeger@oracle.com		111100026 - Mens Suit Slacks - Almond	1.00	0.00
	N/A	N/A	Thomas Kraeger	tkraeger@oracle.com		111100049 - Mens Shirt - Gucci - Short Sleeve - Almond	1.00	0.00
	N/A	N/A	Thomas Kraeger	tkraeger@oracle.com		222200002 - Mens Belt - Gucci	1.00	0.00
	N/A	N/A	Thomas Kraeger	tkraeger@oracle.com		222200025 - Hal Mens - Fendi	1.00	0.00
Totals for Registry 9704							4.00	0.00
Report Totals							4.00	0.00

The Registry Report contains the following information:

Header Information

- Organization - The code identifying your organization.
- Date Range - The date range selected when generating the report.
- Customer ID - The numeric ID for the Customers selected when generating the report. Displays ALL if there was no restriction when running the report.
- Registry ID - The numeric ID for the Registries or Wish Lists selected when generating the report. Displays ALL if there was no restriction when running the report.

Detail Information

- Primary Customer ID - The unique numeric identifier for a Customer.
- Registry ID - Name - The unique numeric identifier for a Registry or Wish List, and the Name describing the Registry or Wish List.
- Event Date - The date for an Item Registry. Set to N/A for a Wish List. Repeated for each Item for the Registry.
- Venue Name and Venue Address - The Venue Name and Address for an Item Registry. Set to N/A for a Wish List. Repeated for each Item for the Registry.
- First Name and Last Name - The primary Customer's first and last name. Repeated for each Item for the Registry or Wish List.
- Email Address and Phone Number - The primary Customer's email address and phone number, as specified for the Registry or Wish List.

- Address - The primary Customer's address, as specified for the Registry or Wish List.
- Item ID - Name - The ID and Name of the Item on the Registry or Wish List.
- Desired Quantity - The desired quantity of the Item.
- Purchased Quantity - The purchased quantity of the Item.
- Totals for Registry:
 - Desired Quantity - The total desired quantity of all Items on the Registry or Wish List that are included on the report.
 - Purchased Quantity - The total purchased quantity of all Items on the Registry or Wish List that are included on the report.
- Report Totals:
 - Desired Quantity - The total desired quantity of all Items included on the report.
 - Purchased Quantity - The total purchased quantity of all Items included on the report.

Editing a Registry

If you need to edit a Registry, click the **Edit Icon** in the View Registry window (see [Figure 9-14](#)) or, in the Registries Found list, (see [Figure 9-2](#)), or click the **Actions menu** in the row of the registry you want to edit, and choose the **Edit** option from the menu. Each action displays the registry in an editable window:

Figure 9-18 Edit Registry

The screenshot displays the 'Edit Registry' window, which is divided into several sections:

- Registry Information:** A header bar at the top.
- Registry Details:**
 - Registry Type:** Radio buttons for 'Gift Registry' (selected) and 'Wish List'.
 - Registry Name:** Text input field containing 'Ken's Birthday'.
 - Ready to Publish:** Checked checkbox.
 - Event Type:** Dropdown menu set to 'Birthday'.
 - Event Date:** Date and time picker set to '12/20/2021, 08:00 PM'.
 - Expiration Date:** Date picker set to '12/20/2071'.
 - Comments:** Text area.
 - Image:** Placeholder with a gift icon and an 'Edit' link.
- Registry Owners:**
 - Buttons for '+', edit, and delete.
 - Table with columns: Primary Owner, Name, Nickname, Registry Phone, Registry Email, Registry Address.
- Registry Information Panel (Right):**
 - Information:** Tom's Birthday, BIRTHDAY on 7/30/21 at 8:00 PM, Gift Registry owned by [redacted].
 - Items:** No Items Entered.
 - Attributes:** No Attributes Entered.
 - Addresses:** No Addresses Entered.
- Navigation:** 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK' buttons at the bottom right.

You can review registry details and edit fields that are editable. Click **Next** to progress through the Edit Registry windows, or click the **Step Icons** located in the top bar. Use **Previous** to return to the previous window.

The Edit Registry window displays the same information as that in the Create Registry window, although not all fields are editable. For more information about entering the fields in a registry, see [Creating a Registry](#).

Information in the Edit Registry windows includes that displayed in the Create Registry windows with these variations:

Information

- Title Bar
 - Title (Edit Registry for)
- Registry Details
 - Registry Type – this is not editable
 - The rest of the fields are editable
- Items
 - The Purchased Quantity for this registry is displayed on the right of the Desired Quantity field. This field is not editable
 - The rest of the fields are editable
- Attributes
 - All fields are editable
- Addresses
 - All fields are editable

Review

- Header Information
 - Displays Edit Registry for Customer name (Customer ID)
 - The Create User ID, Create Date, Update User ID, and Update Date are displayed next to the Registry Name

When you are done editing the Registry, click **OK** to save the changes.

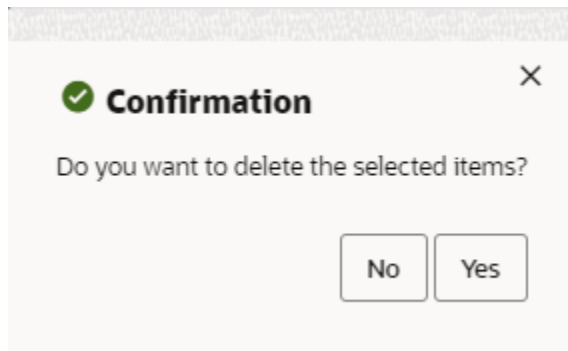
For more information about entering the fields in a registry, see [Creating a Registry](#).

Deleting a Registry

To delete a registry:

1. In the [Registries Found List](#), click the **Actions Menu** in the row of the registry you want to delete.
2. Choose **Delete** from the menu, this displays a Confirmation prompt:

Figure 9-19 Confirmation Prompt



3. Click **Yes** to delete the registry.

10

Programs

The Programs feature provides the ability to manage various programs to use in a retail environment in order to create customer loyalty. A card will be defined to hold one or more programs. The card may be a physical or electronic (used online only) card. Each defined card can associate one or more programs for the customer to use. These programs consist of three types: Tender, Award and Loyalty. Various rules and parameters can be defined for managing the program. You can use this chapter to define and manage the cards and programs used in retail locations.

Customer Engagement has the following types of Programs:

- **Tender Program** - Tender Programs define rules for gift cards or stored value cards. Only one tender program can exist on a card.
- **Award Program** - Award Programs are used to hold the awards a customer can use in the retail location. An Award Certificate can be defined with an entitlement offer that has rules on when and where the offer can be used. Additionally, an award currency value can be stored for use toward purchases in the retail store. Multiple award programs can exist on a card.
- **Loyalty Program** - Loyalty Programs are used for issuing points based on various customer activities such as purchases they make. Awards such as paper coupons, award certificates (with entitlement offer) and e-awards (with currency value) can be issued to the customer when they have earned a set amount of points. The points earned can then be used to redeem the award in a retail location. Loyalty Levels can be used to create a tiered structure to offer better benefits to the customer when they shop more frequently. An Award Program is required and used in conjunction with the loyalty program to hold the Award Certificates and the E-Award value earned based on rules defined in the loyalty program. Multiple loyalty programs can exist on a card.

About this Chapter

This chapter contains the following information:

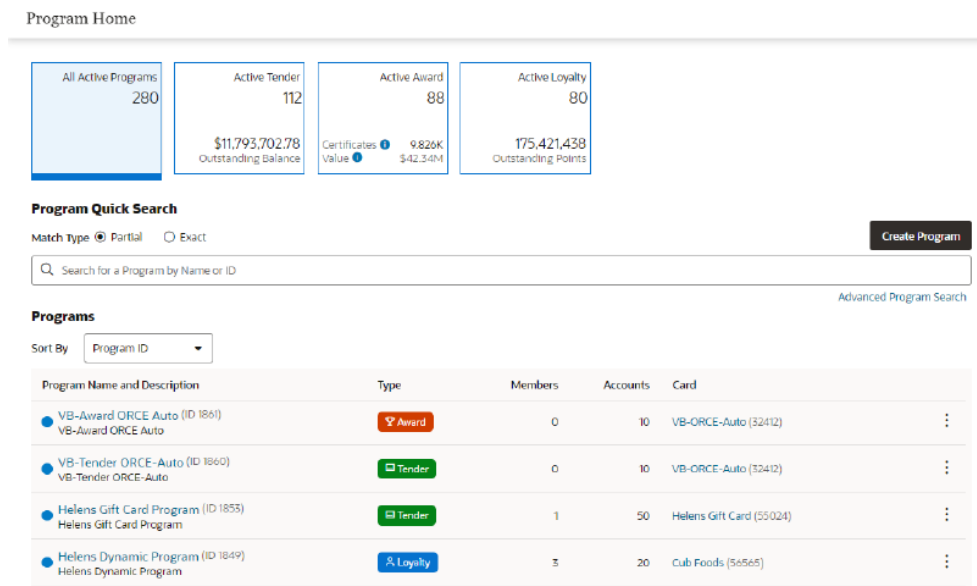
- [Program Quick Search](#)
- [Advanced Program Search](#)
- [Creating a Program](#)
- [Editing Programs](#)
- [Viewing Programs](#)
- [Cards](#)
 - [Viewing Cards](#)
 - [Editing Cards](#)

Program Quick Search

Program Quick Search displays a list of results as you type in characters in the search box. To use the Program Quick Search do the following:

1. Click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Program**.
3. Click **Program Home**.

Figure 10-1 Program Home - All Active Programs Metric Tile















4. Select a **Metric Tile**, options include:
 - All Active Programs
 - Active Tender
 - Active Award
 - Active Loyalty
5. In the Search for Program field, enter the **Name** or **ID** of the Program you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for Programs that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.

Figure 10-2 Program Results

Advanced Program Search

Programs

Sort By

Program Name and Description	Type	Members	Accounts	Card
 Award Program (ID 1819) Award Program		3	50	VB-Regression 22 New (45690) 
 Tender Program (ID 1818) Tender Program		4	100	VB-Regression 2022 (56700) 
 VB-Test Regression (ID 1799) VB-Test Regression		4	100	VB-Regression 2022 (56700) 
 MK Gift Card (ID 1798) MK Gift Card		5	24	MK Gift Card Details (12192) 








The search results display the following fields:

- Name and Description - Name and description of the program.
 - Type - Program Type
 - Members - Displays the number of registered customers in Customer Engagement.
 - Accounts - Displays the number of individual accounts created for the program. The count will include all accounts created on the card for the program. This can include registered customers, unregistered (anonymous) customers and cards that have not been issued to anyone.
 - Card - Name of Card.
6. Hover over any of the icons in the **Name and Description** column to see a tooltip listing the status of the Program as shown in [Figure 10-2](#).
 - **Active** - Filled
 - **Inactive** - Empty
 7. Click the **Card** name link for any Program to view the details. See [Viewing Cards](#) for more information. Use the Action Menu to Edit Card, Edit Program, or View Program. See [Editing Cards](#), [Editing Programs](#), or [Viewing Programs](#) for more information.

Figure 10-3 Action Menu Options - Program Quick Search

Programs

Sort By

Program Name and Description	Type	Members	Accounts	Card
 Award Program (ID 1819) Award Program		3	50	VB-Regression 22 New (45690) 
 Tender Program (ID 1818) Tender Program		4	100	VB-Regression 2022
 VB-Test Regression (ID 1799) VB-Test Regression		4	100	VB-Regression 2022

Edit Card

Edit Program

View Program

Advanced Program Search

The Advanced Program Search allows you to select more criteria that are not available in the Program Quick Search box. The Advanced Program Search is accessed by the following methods:

- Click the **Advanced Program Search** link located underneath the Program Quick Search box in the Program Home window.
- Click **Program Search** in the Program Task menu. See [Navigation](#) for more information.
- Click the **Program Search** icon in the Quick Access Menu. See [Navigation](#) for more information.

Figure 10-4 Program Search Advanced Search Window

Program Search

Search

Program ID

Program Type

Programs

Card Serial Number Prefix

Created By

The following Search fields are available:

- **Program ID** - This Text Field searches all the Programs currently present in the application. The default is an empty field.
- **Program Type** - Search by Program Type. The field defaults to All.
 - All
 - Award
 - Loyalty
 - Tender

- **Programs** - Search the Program by the status. The field defaults to All.
 - All
 - Active
 - Inactive
- **Card Serial Number Prefix** - Your entry must be exactly five characters.
- **Created By** - List of users who have created programs. The field defaults to All. Use this to search for program types a user personally created.

Searching Programs

Once all the desired information has been entered, click **Search** to see the results.

Figure 10-5 Program Search Results

Program Name and Description	Type	Members	Accounts	Card
Automation Tender Card (ID 1887) Automation Tender Card Description	Tender	0	1	Automation Tender Card (02874)
Automation Tender Card (ID 1886) Edit Automation Tender Card	Tender	0	0	Automation Tender Card (03632)
Automation Tender Card (ID 1885) Automation Tender Card Description	Tender	0	0	Automation Tender Card (42406)
Automation Tender Card (ID 1884) Automation Tender Card Description	Tender	0	0	Automation Tender Card (43077)
MK Loyalty Only (ID 1873) MK Loyalty Only	Loyalty	1	20	MK Loyalty Only (30223)
VB-Loyalty ORCE-Auto (ID 1862) VB-Loyalty ORCE-Auto	Loyalty	0	10	VB-ORCE-Auto (32412)
VB-Award ORCE Auto (ID 1861) VB-Award ORCE Auto	Award	0	10	VB-ORCE-Auto (32412)



Note:

Click **Reset** to clear all fields and return list values to the default selections. Without entering any criteria, click **Search** to see a complete list of programs.

Sorting Program Results

The sort options will re-sort just the current 25 programs displayed in the window. Sorting options include:

- **Program ID** - Program results are sorted by Program ID in descending order by default.
- **Program Name** - Program results are sorted by Program Name in ascending order.
- **Program Type** - Program results are sorted by the Program Type in ascending order

Creating a Program

There are two choices available to start the process of creating a Program. The **Create Program** button is available in both the Program Home window and the Program Search window.

Creating a Program - Program Search

Figure 10-6 Program Search

To Create a new program from the Program Search screen, click the **Create Program** button, which opens the program wizard on the Information tab. Proceed to **Step 5** in [Creating a Program - Program Home](#).

Creating a Program - Program Home

To create a new Program or Personal List from the Program Home window do the following:

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click **Program**.
3. Click **Program Home**. The Tile default is All Active Programs.

Figure 10-7 Program Home

4. Click **Create Program**. The Create Program wizard may contain any of the following tabs, depending on configuration and the selected Program Type.

- Information
 - Franchisees
 - Tender Program
 - Account Details
 - Award Program
 - Award Rules (Award Program)
 - Loyalty Program
 - Levels
 - Issue Rules
 - Award Rules (Loyalty Program)
 - Movement Rules
 - Card Definition
 - Card Series
 - Attributes
 - Review
5. Enter the following items for the Information Tab:

Figure 10-8 Information Tab

The screenshot shows the 'Program Definition' wizard, specifically the 'Information' tab. The interface is divided into three main panels:

- Program Type:** Three options are listed:
 - Tender Program:** Selected (indicated by a checkmark). Description: 'Tender programs represent a specific corporate liability with intrinsic value that can be exchanged for merchandise.'
 - Loyalty Program:** Description: 'Loyalty programs accumulate points issued for purchase activities or marketing engagements. Accumulated points can be converted into various awards including coupons, E-awards and entitlements.'
 - Award Program:** Description: 'Award programs contain certificates for monetary rewards known as E-awards and merchandise discounts referred to as Entitlements.'
- Assign To Card:** A section titled 'Type and Description' with three options:
 - Create New Card:** Selected (radio button). Description: 'Card Details will be defined in a lat...'
 - Active Cards No Customers (ID ...):** Description: 'Active Cards No Customers'
 - AV-Card (ID 66778):** Description: 'AV-card'
 - Award Card 88800 (ID 88800):** Description: 'Award Card 88800'
- Program Information:** A summary panel on the right with sections:
 - Information:** Tender Program Assigned To New Card
 - Franchisees:** All Franchisees defined
 - Tender Program:** No program defined
 - Account Details:** No information entered
 - Card Definition:** No card defined
 - Card Series:** No card series defined
 - Attributes:**
 - Card Type Attributes
 - Card Series Attributes

Navigation buttons at the bottom include 'Next >', 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

Note:

The read-only Program Information Panel displays details throughout most of the tabs of the wizard.

- **Program Type** - Select the type of Program from the available options:

- **Tender Program** - Tender programs represent a specific corporate liability with intrinsic value that can be exchanged for merchandise.

 **Note:**

When Tender Program is selected, the screen displays cards that do not already have a tender program.

- **Loyalty Program** - Loyalty programs accumulate points issued for purchase activities or marketing engagements. Accumulated points can be converted into various awards including coupons, E-awards and Award Certificates.
 - **Award Program** - Award programs contain certificates for monetary rewards known as E-awards and merchandise discounts referred to as Award Certificates.
- **Assign To Card**
 - **Create New Card** - Card Details will be defined in a later step. Proceed to **Step 6** for next steps.
 - **Existing Card** - Proceed to **Step 6** for next steps.
6. Proceed to the step based on the type of program and card configuration chosen in the previous step.
- If the Program Type is **Tender**, and you are creating a **new** card, click **Next** to proceed to **Step 7** the **Franchisees** tab.
 - If the Program Type is **Tender**, and you are assigning an **existing** card, proceed to **Step 10** the **Tender Program** tab.
 - If the Program Type is **Loyalty**, and you are creating a **new** card, click **Next** to proceed to **Step 7** the **Franchisees** tab.
 - If the Program Type is **Loyalty**, and you are assigning an **existing** card, proceed to **Step 13** the Loyalty Program.
 - If the Program Type is **Award**, and you are creating a **new** card, click **Next** to proceed to **Step 7** the **Franchisees** tab.
 - If the Program Type is **Award**, and you are assigning an **existing** card, proceed to **Step 15** the Award Program tab.
7. The **Franchisees** tab allows you to add or change the Franchisees you wish to assign to the program.

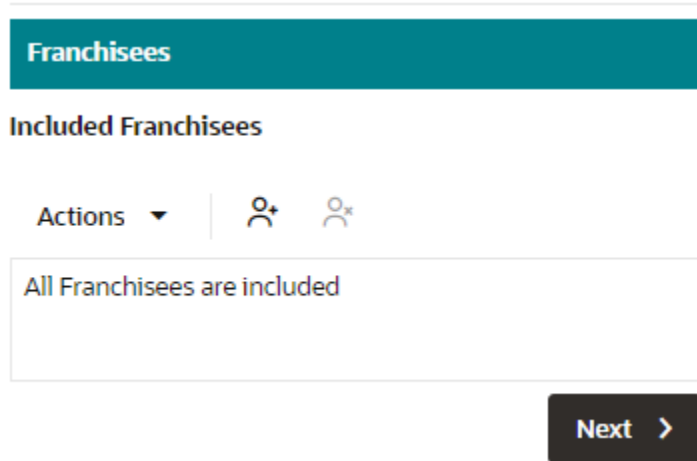
 **Note:**

The Franchisee tab is only visible if the `EnableFranchiseSupport` configuration is enabled, and Franchisees are defined. If you are assigned specific franchisees, then only those franchisees you are associated with are shown.

- If Franchisees are enabled in Customer Engagement, the Franchisees Tab appears. Proceed to **Step 8**.

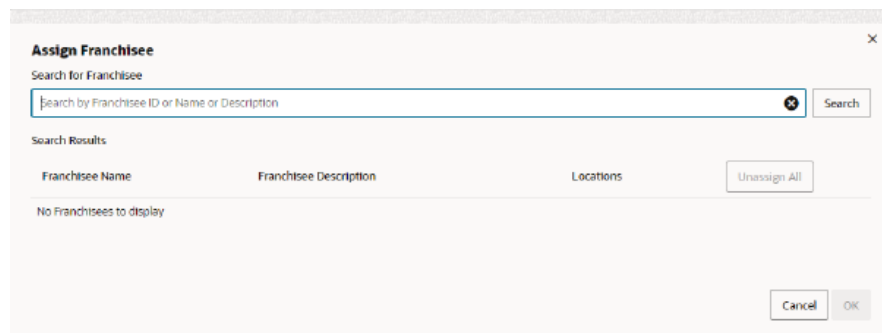
- If Franchisees are not enabled in Customer Engagement and the Program Type is **Tender**, the Tender Program tab appears. Proceed to **Step 10**.
- If Franchisees are not enabled in Customer Engagement and the Program Type is **Loyalty**, the Loyalty Program tab appears. Proceed to **Step 13**.
- If Franchisees are not enabled in Customer Engagement and the Program Type is **Award**, the Award Program tab appears. Proceed to **Step 15**.

Figure 10-9 Franchisee Tab



8. To assign a Franchisee:
 - Assigning a Franchisee
 - Either click the **Action Menu** and then click **Assign**; or click **Add (+)**. This opens the Assign Franchisee window.

Figure 10-10 Assign Franchisee



- By default, all franchisees are assigned to the program. To make changes to those assignments, you can search for specific franchisees by entering all or part the franchisee **Name**, **ID**, or **Description**. Click **Search** in the Search for Franchisee search box.

 **Note:**

You also have the option to enter no search criteria and click **Search** to retrieve all available franchisees from which to select for assignment.

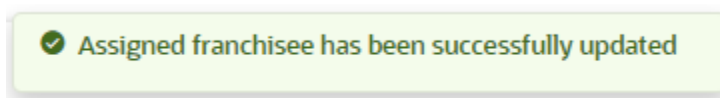
- In the Included Franchisees results list, click **Assign All** to assign all the search results, or click **Assign** for a specific franchisee to add to the program.
- Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the Franchisees has been assigned.

After a Franchisee is assigned, it appears at the top of the list. The rest of the Franchisees are ordered by ID.




Figure 10-11 Confirmation Notification



Card Administration Field

This field (unique to Programs) determines whether the franchisee will have Card Administrator privileges for the Card Definition. Select the **Card Administration** check box to enable Card Administrator privileges.

Figure 10-12 Card Administration Field

Franchisees			
Included Franchisees			
Actions ▾			
Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations	Card Administrator
 Portland Franchisee (ID 47)		1	<input type="checkbox"/>

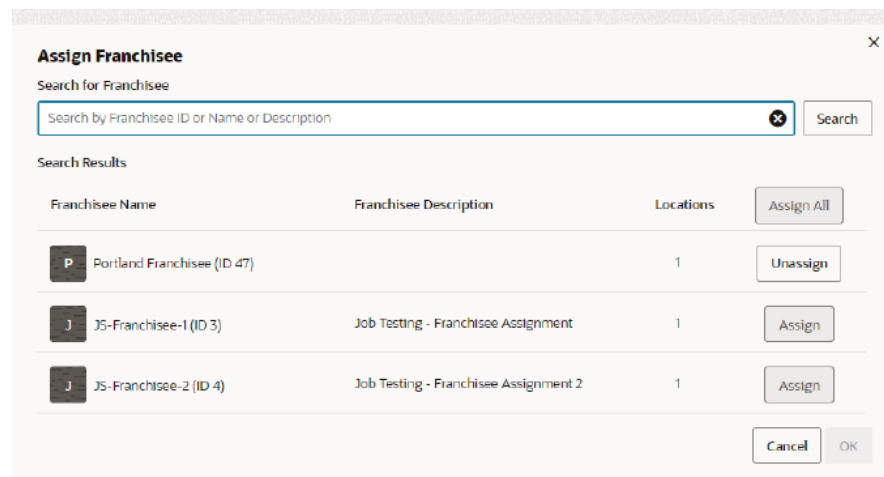
Next >

- Unassigning a Franchisee

There are two ways to unassign any of the assigned franchisees on the program.

- In the Assign Franchisee window, click **Unassign** on any Franchisees currently assigned to the program. Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
- To unassign Franchisees listed in the Included Franchisees table on the Franchisees tab, first highlight the row and then select the Action Menu. Either click Unassign or click X to remove the associated Franchisee.


Figure 10-13 Assign Franchisee (Using the Unassign Button)



 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm that the Franchisees are deleted.

Figure 10-14 Confirmation Notification

 Assigned franchisee has been successfully updated

9. When finished selecting the franchises on the Franchisee tab, click **Next** to continue to the next tab.

 **Note:**

Before you save the Program, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create program process and make changes.

- a. If the Program Type is **Tender**, proceed to **Step 10**, the **Tender Program** tab.
 - b. If the Program Type is **Loyalty**, proceed to **Step 13**, the **Loyalty Program** tab.
 - c. If the Program Type is **Award**, proceed to **Step 15**, the **Award Program** tab.
10. Enter the following information for the **Tender Program** tab:

Figure 10-15 Tender Program Tab

- **Tender Program Details**
 - **Active** - Toggle on to activate the program immediately on the Start Date.
 - **Name** - Name of the Program.
 - **Description** - Description of the Program.
 - **Start Date** - Date on which the Program starts.
 - **End Date** - Toggle on to activate the Ends On date selector.
 - **Ends On** (displays when the End Date toggle is on) - Date on which the Program ends.
 - **Currency** - The base currency for the Program.

- **Allow Foreign Currency** - Indicates whether foreign currency transactions (that is, a transaction performed in a currency other than the base currency) are applied to the Program.
 - **Card Required** - Indicates whether the customer must have the physical card present during the transaction to receive credit for the transaction.
 - **Card Merge Permitted** - Indicates whether the Card can be merged with another Card.
 - **Allow Reloads** - Indicates whether the Program allows accounts to be reloaded.
 - **Credit Reversal** - Indicate whether credit reversals can be performed.
 - **Debit Reversal** - Indicate whether debit reversals can be performed.
 - **Allow Partial Redemption** - Indicates whether a balance on a Tender Account can be partially redeemed.
 - Usage Details
 - **Maximum Value of Redemptions per Business Day** - The total amount of all redemptions that can be performed on a Tender Account in one day.
 - **Maximum Daily Usage** - The total number of times that a Tender Account can be used in one day.
 - **Maximum Lifetime Usage** - The total number of times that a Tender Account can be used over the lifetime of the account.
11. When finished entering the information on the **Tender Program** tab, click **Next**, then proceed to the **Account Details** tab.
 12. Enter the following for the **Account Details** tab.

Figure 10-16 Tender Program - Account Details

Account Details

Account Details

Minimum Activation Amount Required

Minimum Balance Required

Maximum Balance Required

Allow Cash Outs

Cash Out Limit Required

Accounts Expire

Initial Balance

Allow Pre-Authorizations

Next >

- **Minimum Activation Amount** - The minimum amount that can be in an Account for it to be activated.
- **Minimum Balance** - The minimum amount that must be kept in an Account.
- **Maximum Balance** - The maximum amount that can be put into the Account
- **Allow Cash Outs** - Toggle to on to indicate whether the account can be redeemed for cash or an equivalent tender.
 - **Cash Out Limit** - If cash out transactions are allowed, the maximum amount that can be cashed out in a transaction.
- **Accounts Expire** - Toggle to on to indicate the account expires after a certain period of time.
 - **Expire After** - Enter the number of periods (from Period Type) that passes before a Tender Account expires.

- **Period Type** - Indicates the type of period used for the Expire After field.
 - **Initial Balance** - Toggle to on to indicate there is an initial balance on each account. Enter the following:
 - **Initial Balance Amount** - The amount of the initial balance.
 - **Initial Book Value** - The initial book value of the account.
 - **Allow Pre-Authorizations** - Toggle to on to indicate that pre-authorizations are allowed for the Tender Accounts.
 - **Pre-Authorizations Expire** - Toggle to on to indicate that the pre-authorizations expire.
 - **Expire After** - Enter the number of periods (from Period Type) that will pass before a Tender Account expires.
 - **Period Type** - Indicates the type of period used for the **Expire After** field.
13. Enter the following for the **Loyalty Program** tab.

Figure 10-17 Loyalty Program Tab

Loyalty Program

Loyalty Program Details

Active

Name Required

Description Required

Start Date

End Date

Currency

Allow Foreign Currency

Accounts Create Dynamically

Card Required Credit Reversal

Card Merge Permitted Debit Reversal

Points Details

Points Name Required

POS Points Name Required

Points Currency Value Required

Decimal Precision Preview: 100 Points

Next >

- **Loyalty Program Details**
 - **Active** - Toggle on to activate the program immediately on the Start Date.
 - **Name** - Name of the Program.
 - **Description** - Description of the Program.
 - **Start Date** - Date on which the Program starts.
 - **End Date** - Toggle on to activate the Ends On date selector.
 - **Ends On** (displays when the End Date toggle is on) - Date on which the Program ends.
 - **Currency** - The base currency for the Program.
 - **Accounts** - If the check box is selected, then, a loyalty account for a card is not created until there is a POS transaction added to the card. If the check box is clear, then, the loyalty account is created when the card is generated.
 - **Allow Foreign Currency** - Indicates whether or not foreign currency transactions (that is, a transaction performed in a currency other than the base currency) are applied to the Program.
 - **Card Required** - Indicates whether or not the customer must have the physical card present during the transaction to receive credit for the transaction.
 - **Card Merge Permitted** - Indicates whether or not the Card can be merged with another Card.
 - **Credit Reversal** - Indicate whether or not credit reversals can be performed.
 - **Debit Reversal** - Indicate whether or not debit reversals can be performed.
 - **Points Details**
 - **Points Name** - Name of the points used by the Program.
 - **POS Points Name** - Name of the points displayed on the point of sale system.
 - **Points Currency Value** - Informational and reporting use only.
 - **Points Decimal Precision** - The number of decimal points used in tracking points.
14. When finished entering the information on the **Loyalty Program** tab, click **Next**, then proceed to **Step 20**, the **Levels** tab.
15. Enter the following for the **Award Program** tab.

Figure 10-18 Award Program Tab

The screenshot shows the 'Award Program' configuration interface. It is divided into two main sections: 'Award Program Details' and 'Account Details'.
Award Program Details:
 - **Active:** A toggle switch that is currently turned on (blue).
 - **Name:** A text input field containing the word 'Spring'.
 - **Description:** A text input field containing the word 'Spring'.
 - **Start Date:** A date input field showing '03/08/2023' with a calendar icon to its right.
 - **Enable End Date:** A toggle switch that is currently turned off (grey).
 - **Currency:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'United State'.
 - **Allow Foreign Currency:** A checked checkbox.
 - **Card Required:** An unchecked checkbox.
 - **Allow Reloads:** A checked checkbox.
 - **Card Merge Permitted:** A checked checkbox.
Account Details:
 - **Accounts Expire:** An unchecked toggle switch.
 - **Initial Balance:** An unchecked toggle switch.
Award Expiration:
 - **Awards Expire:** An unchecked toggle switch.
 At the bottom right of the form is a dark button labeled 'Next >'.

Award Program Details

- **Active** - Toggle on to activate the program immediately on the Start Date.
- **Name** - Name of the Program.
- **Description** - Description of the Program.
- **Start Date** - Date on which the Program starts.
- **Enable End Date** - Toggle on to activate the Ends On date selector.
- **End Date** (displays when the Enable End Date toggle is on) - Date on which the Program ends.
- **Currency** - The base currency for the Program.
- **Allow Foreign Currency** - Indicates whether or not foreign currency transactions (that is, a transaction performed in a currency other than the base currency) are applied to the Program.
- **Card Required** - Indicates whether the customer must have the physical card present during the transaction to receive credit for the transaction.
- **Card Merge Permitted** - Indicates whether or not the Card can be merged with another Card.

- **Allow Reloads** - Indicates whether or not the Program allows accounts to be reloaded.

 **Note:**

The account balance for an award account holds the value of any e-awards added to an award program. If the Allow Reloads is not checked, once the initial value is used up, the program cannot add more value to the account balance. If it is checked, E Award values can continue to be added. E Awards are created and issued from loyalty programs but the value is held in a linked award program.

Account Details

- **Accounts Expire** - Toggle on to enter the preferred time period for the account to expire.
- **Initial Balance** - This initial balance will hold a currency value that will be added automatically to an award account when it is activated on an individual card. This currency value can be used in the retail location toward a purchase.

Award Expiration

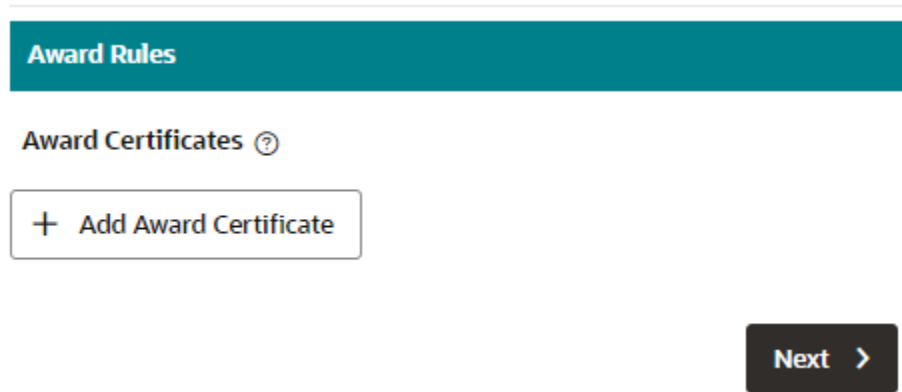
- **Award Expire** - Toggle on to enter the preferred time and period for the award to expire.
- **Extend Expiration based on Activity** (appears only when Awards Expire is toggled to on) - If the check box is clear, then the expiration date is fixed and determined by the date the coupon is issued. If the check box is selected, the expiration date is initially determined by the date the coupon is issued, but is then recalculated based on the current activity date as a courtesy to the customer when they are shopping with your company.

 **Note:**

Before you save the Program, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create program process and make changes.

16. When finished configuring the **Award Program**, Click **Next**. Proceed to **Award Rules** tab.
17. Enter the following for the **Award Rules** tab:

Figure 10-19 Award Rules Tab

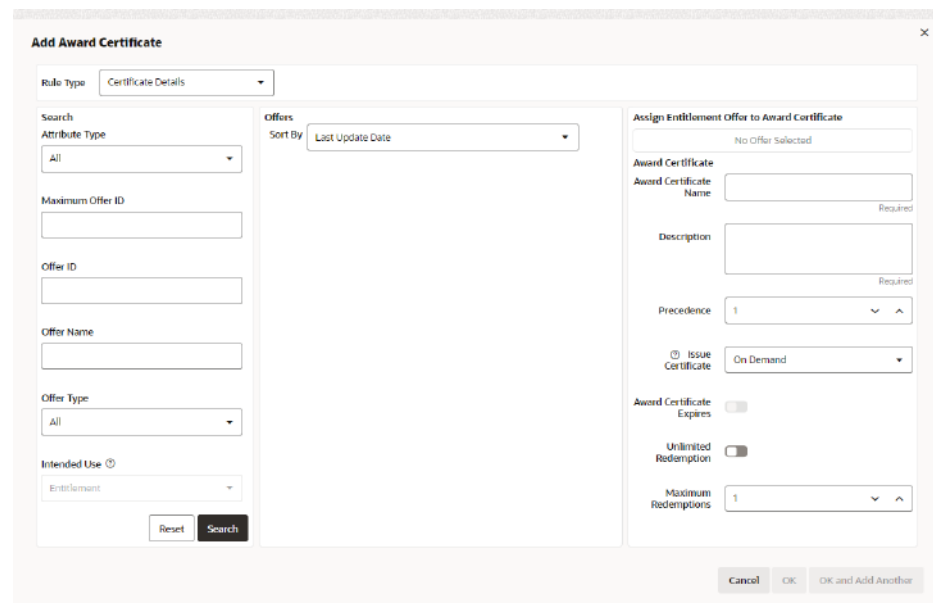


 **Note:**

The Award Rules tab in the Award Program allows the user to create an award certificate and assign time and or location rules to limit when and or where they can be redeemed.

- Click the + Add Award Certificate button.

Figure 10-20 Add Award Certificate



The Award Rules tab for the Award Program defaults the to Rule Type, Certificate Details. After the Offer is added to the Assign Entitlement Offer to Award Certificate, you are able to add additional Rule Types to this Award Certificate.

There are four sections; Search, Offers, Assign Entitlement Offer to Award Certificate, and Award Certificate.

- **Search** - Use this section to populate the Offers Section. Fields include:
 - Attribute Type
 - Maximum Offer ID
 - Offer ID
 - Offer Name
 - Offer Type
 - Intended Use

 **Note:**

The Intended Use field is disabled and uses the default value of Entitlement. Only offers with an Intended Use of Entitlement can be assigned to an award certificate.

- Click **Search** to populate the Offers Section. Click **Reset** to clear all Search fields.
- **Sort By** - Select an option to sort by the following:
 - Last Update Date
 - Offer ID
 - Offer Name
 - Offer Type
- Click **Add** to populate the Assign Entitlement Offer to Award Certificate section.
Assign Entitlement Offer to Award Certificate
- Click **Remove** to remove an offer. Return to the Offers section to select a new offer to assign.
Award Certificate
- Enter the **Award Certificate Name**.
- Enter the **Description**.
- Enter the **Precedence** (Order in which the Award Rule will be applied if more than one Award Rule is effective).
- Select **Issue Certificate** setting.
 - On Demand
 - When Account is First Activated
 - When Card is Registered to Customer

 **Note:**

When the On Demand option is selected, the award certificate can be issued manually, by a web service or by a loyalty issue rule using the Create Loyalty Award batch.

- **Award Certificate Expires** - This is a toggle switch, but it is read only. It is on or off based on the Issue Certificate setting. When Issue Certificate = On Demand, this toggle is **Off**. The expiration date is controlled by the web service or loyalty issue rule. When Issue Certificate is NOT On Demand, then the toggle is **On** (read only) and the user is required to select expiration parameters.
- To allow unlimited redemptions, toggle on **Unlimited Redemption**.
- When the Unlimited Redemption toggle is off, enter the number of **Maximum Redemptions** allowed.

Rule Types - These are the eligibility rules that will be used to determine when the award certificate is effective.

 **Note:**

The next section deals with the Rule Types available for the Award Certificate once an Entitlement Offer is assigned. Any of the Rule Types can be combined with other Rule Types.

Time Rule - Defines the time rules when the award certificate is effective.

- **Enable Time Rule** - Toggle on to activate the Time Rule Name, Description, and Time Rule Type fields, and the purpose is to define when the award certificate is effective. If it is turned off, the award certificate has no restrictions as to when it is effective.
- **Time Rule Name** - Name of the Time Rule.
- **Description** - Description of the Time Rule.
- **Time Rule Type** - Types include:
 - Eligibility Period
 - Blackout Period

Figure 10-21 Time Rule - Eligibility Period / Blackout Period

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Award Certificate" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog is divided into several sections:

- Header:** "Rule Type" is set to "Time Rule" (dropdown menu). "Award Certificate Name" is "Offline - Entitlement".
- Enable Time Rule:** A toggle switch is turned on.
- Time Rule Name:** An empty text input field with "Required" below it.
- Description:** An empty text input field with "Required" below it.
- Time Rule Type:** An empty dropdown menu with "Required" below it.
- Days of the Week:** A list of days from Sunday to Saturday, each with a toggle switch turned on.
- Start Time:** A text input field containing "12:00 AM".
- End Time:** A text input field containing "11:59 PM".
- Start Date:** A date picker field containing "03/08/2023".
- End Date:** An empty date picker field with "Required" below it.
- Buttons:** "Cancel" and "OK" buttons at the bottom right.

- Toggle on to select each day of the week for which the time rules apply for this Item Rule.
- Enter a **Start Time**.
- Enter an **End Time**.
- Enter a **Start Date**.
- Enter an **End Date**.

Location Rule (Include) or Location Rule (Exclude)

Defines which locations the award certificate is effective in, or which locations are excluded. Both Rule Types are configured in the same way.

Figure 10-22 Location Rule (Include)

Edit Award Certificate ✕

Rule Type: Location Rule (Include) ▾

Award Certificate Name: Offline - Entitlement

Specific Locations Include By Attributes and Locations

552 Locations Selected

Search by Location ID or Name ✕

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Location ID	Location Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00004	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00002	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	12501	

- To add an Award certificate by Specific Locations:

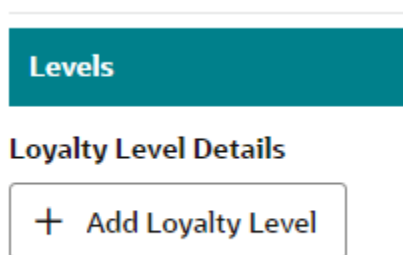
 **Note:**

The Location ID check box at the top of the list enables you to clear or select all locations. If you clear all the locations, then you can scroll through the list or search for a specific location.

- Enter part or all of a **Location ID** or **Name**.
- Click **Search**.
- Select the check box for **each** of the desired **Locations**.
- To add an Award certificate using Include By Attributes and Locations or Exclude By Attributes and Locations
 - Click **Add** to select an attribute. The By Attributes and By Location options can be collapsed or expanded.
 - After the initial selection, additional choices display in the query with the condition, **Or** (one or more of the conditions must be met). Click **Or** to change to **And** (both conditions must be met).
 - Click the **Vertical Ellipsis** and select **Remove** to clear the attribute from the query.

- Click **OK** to add the Award Certificate to the Program or click **OK and Add Another** to add another Award Certificate. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the Award Certificate.
18. When finished entering all the Award Rules to the Award Certificates, in the Award Rules tab, click **Next**.
- **Create New Card** - Proceed to **Step 29**, the **Card Definition** tab.
 - **Existing Card** - Proceed to **Step 44**, the **Review** tab.
19. When finished defining **Account Details** do the following:
- If you are creating a **new** card, click **Next** to proceed to **Step 29** the **Card Definition** tab.
 - If you are assigning an **existing** card, click **Next** to proceed to **Step 36**, the **Review** tab for the **Tender Program**.
20. The **Levels** tab displays information for each Level in the **Loyalty Program**. Enter the following information to add Loyalty Levels.

Figure 10-23 Levels Tab



Adding Initial Loyalty Level

- Click **+ Add Loyalty Level**.
- Loyalty Level Details**

Figure 10-24 Loyalty Level Details

Add Loyalty Level ×

i This is the default Loyalty Level

Loyalty Level Details

Active

Level Name Required

Description Required

Level Color Red ▾

Earning Points

Negative Balance Allowed

? Age Points

Escrow Points

Cancel OK **OK and Add Another**

- The Active toggle default is on. Click the toggle off to inactivate the Loyalty Level.
- Enter a **Level Name**.
- Enter a **Description**.
- Select a **Level Color**.

Earning Points

Figure 10-25 Earning Points

Add Loyalty Level [X]

Earning Points

Negative Balance Allowed

Age Points

Reset Type: Fixed | Relative

Reset After: 1 [v] [^] Required

Months [v]

Escrow Points

Escrow After: 30 [v] [^]

Days [v]

Cancel OK OK and Add Another

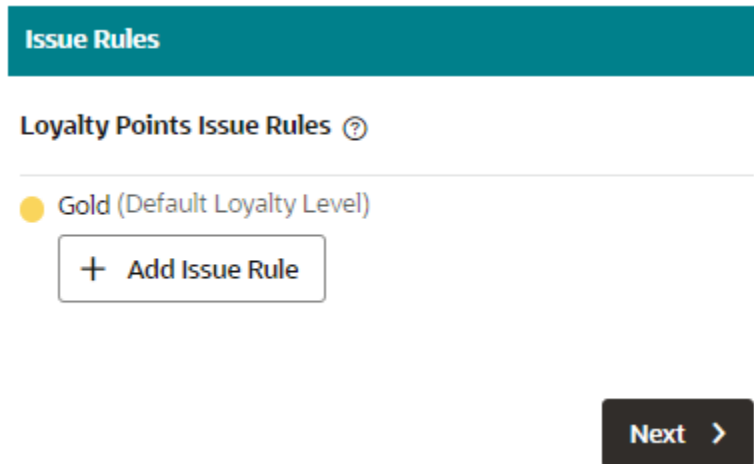
- Select the **Negative Balance Allowed** check box to indicate when the Loyalty Level allows customers to have negative point balances.
- **Age Points** (toggle on to activate) - Selecting the **Fixed** reset type expires the entire unused points balance after the account has been inactive for x periods. Selecting the **Relative** reset type expires the individual unused points x periods after each has been earned. Enter the **Reset After** number of periods then select the type of period.
- **Escrow Points** (toggle on to activate) - Determines whether points are escrowed before they become available for use as Earned Points. Enter the **Escrow After** number of periods then select the type of period.
- Click **OK** to add the Level to the Program or click **OK and Add Another** to add another Level. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the Level.

Edit/Deactivate Loyalty Levels

- Click the **Additional Options** ellipsis to **Deactivate** or **Edit** a Loyalty Level.

21. When finished entering all Loyalty Levels on the **Levels** tab, click **Next** to proceed to the **Issue Rules** tab.
22. The **Issue Rules** tab contains a Layer List of rules that determine how points are issued by the Loyalty Level. The default Rule Type is Definition.

Figure 10-26 Issue Rules Tab



Adding an Issue Rule

- Click + **Add Issue Rule**.

Note:

Issue Rules are required to use the Definition Rule Type. Once the Definition rule type has been completed and validated, you can add additional Rule Types before you click OK to save the Issue Rule. Availability of the Rule Types are determined based on the selected Calculation Type.

Issue Rule Details

Figure 10-27 Add Issue Rule to Entry

- Use the required default **Definition** Rule Type.
- Enter the **Issue Rule Name**.
- Enter the **POS Name**.
- Enter the **Description**.
- Click the **Date Selector** icon to choose a **Start Date** or enter the **date** in the Start Date text box.
- If desired, toggle off **End Date** to display the **Ends On** text box. Click the **Date Selector** icon to choose a **Ends On** date or enter the ends on date in the **Ends On** date text box.

Customer Eligibility Processing

- Select the **Use Customer Associated To The** Loyalty Card or Transaction.

Note:

When Loyalty Card is selected, the customer associated to the card is used to evaluate audience rule eligibility. When Transaction is selected, the customer associated to the transaction is used.

Points Details

- **Calculation Type** - Indicates the value that is used as the point-determination method.
 - **The value of each item purchased** - The sale amount of each item purchased in the transaction.
 - **The quantity of each item purchased** - The quantity of each item purchased in the transaction.
 - **The number of marketing engagements** - The number of times the customer interacts with marketing media, such as watching a video online.
 - **The number of qualifying transactions** - The number of qualifying transactions made by the Customer.
 - **The number of qualifying visits** - The number of qualifying visits made by the Customer
- **Bonus Points** - Indicates whether this Issue Rule stipulates that the Loyalty Program issues points as Bonus Points (defaults to ON if the Calculation Type is The number of marketing engagements) or Regular Points.
- **Fixed Amount** - The Fixed Amount, if any, assigned to each transaction or marketing engagement.
- **Points Multiplier** - The number multiplied by the value indicated in the Calculation Type field (only shown if the selected Calculation Type is either The value of each item purchased or The quantity of each item purchased).
- **Maximum Transactions Per Day** - The maximum number of sales transactions in a single day that will be used to calculate Loyalty points.
- **Transaction Minimum Value** - Minimum amount of a transaction for it to be applied to a Loyalty account.
- **Include Non-Merchandise Charges** - Determines whether points will be issued for non-merchandise charges in a transaction.
- **Allow Zero Price** - Determines whether points will be issued for zero priced items in a transaction.

Issuance Rules - Displays when the Calculation Type is, The number of marketing engagements.

- **Frequency Period** - This field determines the time period used to control the frequency with which a Customer can earn points through marketing engagements. Can be set to One-time only, Daily, Weekly, Monthly, or Yearly.
- **Issues Per Period** - The number of times a Customer can earn points through marketing engagements during the Frequency Period. Set to 1 if the Frequency Period is One-time only.
- **Unlimited Issuance** - Determines whether points can be issued an unlimited number of times during the Frequency Period.
- **Rule Count Limit** - The total number of times a Customer can earn points through marketing engagements.

Rule Types - Rules to set limits on how and when Issue Rules are applied and used.

 **Note:**

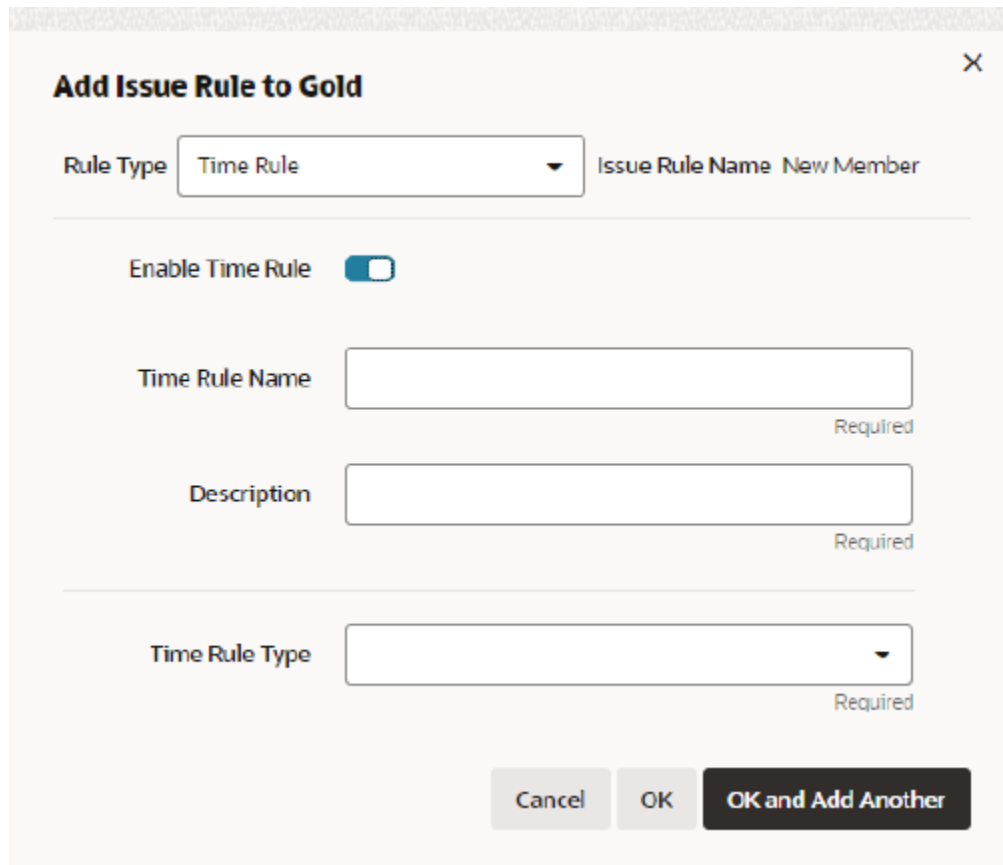
Availability of Rule types are based on a previously selected Calculation Type.

 **Note:**

The next section deals with the seven Rule Types available. They can be combined within a single Issue Rule.

Time Rule - Defines the time rules when loyalty points can be issued for a loyalty program, that rewards customers when they purchase during specific hours and date ranges.

Figure 10-28 Time Rule



Add Issue Rule to Gold ✕

Rule Type Issue Rule Name

Enable Time Rule

Time Rule Name Required

Description Required

Time Rule Type Required

- **Enable Time Rule** - Toggle to **On** to activate Time Rule Name, Description, and Time Rule Type fields.

 **Note:**

This switch can be turned off after defining the rules so there are no limitations to the time the issue rule applies.

- **Time Rule Name** - Name of the Time Rule.
- **Description** - Description of the Time Rule.
- **Time Rule Type** - Types include:
 - Birthday Anniversary
 - Signup Anniversary
 - Bonus Period
 - Blackout Period

Figure 10-29 Time Rule Type - Bonus Period/Blackout Period Options

Add Issue Rule to Gold X

Rule Type Issue Rule Name

Enable Time Rule

Time Rule Name Required

Description Required

Time Rule Type

Sunday	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Start Time	<input type="text" value="12:00 AM"/>
Monday	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	End Time	<input type="text" value="11:59 PM"/>
Tuesday	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Start Date	<input type="text" value="03/08/2023"/>
Wednesday	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	End Date	<input type="text"/> <small>Required</small>
Thursday	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Friday	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Saturday	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

Bonus/Blackout Period Time Type Configuration

- Select the **Day of the Week** for which the time rules will apply for this Item Rule.
- Enter a **Start Time**.
- Enter an **End Time**.
- Enter a **Start Date**.

- Enter an **End Date**.

 **Note:**

Each Rule Type configuration is saved during the process. To configure more Rule Types, select a Rule Type from the options list. Do not click OK until all desired Rule Types are configured.

- If no more Rule Types are desired, click **OK** to save, **Cancel** to close without saving, or click **OK and Add Another** to create additional Issue Rules for that Loyalty Level. Otherwise continue to configure additional Rule Types.

Item Rule (Include) or Item Rule (Exclude)

Defines which items are eligible to accrue loyalty points. Both Rule Types are configured in the same way by selecting either: Include All Items, Include By Hierarchy, or Specific Items

- To configure a Rule Type by using **Include All Items**:

Figure 10-30 Item Rule (Include) - Include All Items

- In the left pane, select the desired attribute filter from the list of available choices. Once selected, any associated values for the attribute appear in the right pane.
- In the right pane, select or clear values of the selected attribute filter. You can add all values for that attribute by selecting the check mark in the top check box.

- Repeat the process for any or all the available Attribute Filters in the left pane.
- To configure a Rule Type by using **Include By Hierarchy**:

Figure 10-31 Item Rule (Include) - Include By Hierarchy

Edit Issue Rule for Gold ✕

Rule Type: Issue Rule Name:

Include All Items Include By Hierarchy Specific Items

Select Items By Hierarchy

DEPT	SUB_DEPT	CLASS	SUB_CLASS	STYLE_ID
------	----------	-------	-----------	----------

✕

DEPT Name, ID and Description

Search Above to Display Hierarchies

- In the Search by ID or Name or Description field, enter any part or entire **Hierarchy ID, Name, or Description**.
- Click **Search**.
- Select or clear values of the selected attribute filter. You can add all values for that attribute by selecting the check mark in the top check box.
- To configure a Rule Type by using **Specific Items**:

Figure 10-32 Item Rule (Include) - Specific Items

Edit Issue Rule for Gold ✕

Rule Type: Issue Rule Name:

Include All Items Include By Hierarchy Specific Items

0 Items Selected

✕

Item Description and ID

Search Above to Display Items

- In the Search by ID or Description field, enter any part or entire **Item ID** or **Description**.
- Click **Search**.
- Select or clear values of the selected attribute filter. You can add all values for that attribute by selecting the check mark in the top check box.

Tender Rule

This can be used to define when the customer uses specific tender types, the customer is eligible for points to be issued.

Figure 10-33 Tender Rule

Edit Issue Rule for Gold ✕

Rule Type Tender Rule ▼ Issue Rule Name Spring

21 Tenders Selected

Filter by Name or ID ✕ Filter

Enable all tenders types. (No restrictions will be placed on the eligibility rule.)

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CASH	CASH
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CHECK	CHECK
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	COUPON	COUPON
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	GIFT_CARD	GIFT_CARD
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	GIFT_CERTIFICATE	GIFT_CERTIFICATE
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	HOUSE_ACCOUNT	HOUSE_ACCOUNT

Cancel OK

- In the Filter by Name or ID field, enter any **part** or **entire Tender Name** or **ID**.
- Click **Filter**.
- You can clear Enable All Tender Types by clearing the check mark in the top check box. Then you can look through the list and choose specific tenders by selecting the associated check box.

Location Rule (Include) or Location Rule (Exclude)

Defines which locations are eligible to accrue loyalty points. Both Rule Types are configured in the same way.

- **Specific Locations**

Figure 10-34 Location Rule (Include) - Specific Locations

Edit Issue Rule for Gold ✕

Rule Type Issue Rule Name

Specific Locations Include By Attributes and Locations

1 Locations Selected

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Location ID	Location Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00004	

Note:

The Location ID check box at the top of the list enables you to clear or select all locations. If you clear all the locations, then you can scroll through the list or search for a specific location.

- Enter **part** or **all** of a **Location ID** or **Name**.
- Click **Search**.
- Choose specific Locations by selecting the associated check box.

OR

- Include By Attributes and Locations/Exclude By Attributes and Locations

Figure 10-35 Location Rule (Include) - Include By Attributes and Locations

Edit Issue Rule for Gold [X]

Rule Type: Location Rule (Include) Issue Rule Name: Spring

Specific Locations Include By Attributes and Locations

By Attributes

Select Locations by Attribute

Search By Attribute [X] Search

Attribute	Locations
Accessibility	Add
Daily Sales Amount	Add
Number Of Employees	Add

Query 0 Locations In Query

Add Attributes to build a query

Cancel OK

- Click **Add** to select an attribute. The By Attributes and By Location options can be collapsed or expanded.
- After the initial selection, additional choices display in the query with the condition, **Or** (one or more of the conditions must be met). Click **Or** to change to **And** (both conditions must be met).
- Click the **Vertical Ellipsis** and select **Remove** to clear the attribute from the query.

Audience Rule

If an audience rule is created, only customers in the selected lists will earn points.

Figure 10-36 Audience Rule

- Select an Available List type.
 - **All** - Default
 - **Stratified** - The customers within a Stratified list are divided into levels.
 - **Unstratified** - The customers within an Unstratified list are not differentiated into separate groups.
 - **Personal** - customers maintained by the user.
- In the Search field, enter **part** or **all** of the **List Name**, **ID**, or **Strata Name**.
- Click **Search**. The results can be sorted by using the Sort by list menu with the following options:
 - Last Updated
 - Name
 - Customer Count
- Click **Add** for each Available List to add the selection to the Assigned Audience Lists.

 **Note:**

Lists with more than one group display an Expand icon. Click the **Expand** icon to see the available choices within that list.

- Click **OK** to save, click **Cancel** to close without saving, or click **OK and Add Another** to save the configured Rule Types and configure additional Issue Rules.
23. Review the Issue Review Definition area as shown in [Figure 10-37](#). Click the **Vertical Ellipsis** to **Edit** or **Remove** the Issue Rule.

Figure 10-37 Issue Rule Definition

Issue Rules

Loyalty Points Issue Rules ⓘ

● Gold (Default Loyalty Level)

+ Add Issue Rule

Issue Rule Definition

● **Spring**

Calculation Type	Points Multiplier	Additional Points
The value of each item purchased	1	0

POS Name	Spring	Bonus Points	No	Include Non Merchandise Charges	No
Effective	3/8/23 to None (Runs Indefinitely)	Maximum Transactions Per Day	99	Allow Zero Price	No
Eligibility	Use customer associated to loyalty card	Transaction Minimum Value	0	Updated By	N/A

Time Rule Definition
No Time Rules Defined

Location Rule Definition

Included

All Locations Defined

Item Rule Definition

Included

All Items

Tender Rule Definition
All Tenders Defined

Audience Rule Definition
No Audience Rules Defined

Eligibility Rules Defined ^

24. When finished entering all Issue Rules, click **Next** to go to the **Award Rules** tab.
25. Enter the following for the **Award Rules** tab. The Award Rules tab contains a Layer List of rules that determine how Coupon, E Award, or Award Certificates are issued by the Loyalty Level.
 - Click the **+ Add Award Rule** button.

 **Note:**

'The Award Rules Tab, in the Loyalty Program, defines what awards can be issued, when an award can be issued based on the loyalty points balance and the points cost to use the award. An award program is required to hold an Award Certificate or E-Award value. Therefore, when creating a new card, Coupon is the only available Award Type Rule, since an existing award program is not required.

- Select an **Award Rule Type** (Coupon -Default) and enter the following:
Coupon

Figure 10-38 Award Rule Type - Coupon

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Add Award Rule to Gold". At the top, there is a dropdown menu for "Award Rule Type" with "Coupon" selected. Below this are several input fields, each with a "Required" label to its right:

- Award Name:** A text input field.
- POS Name:** A text input field.
- Description:** A text input field.
- Precedence:** A dropdown menu with up and down arrow icons.
- Points Threshold:** A dropdown menu with up and down arrow icons. A help icon (?) is to the left of the label.
- Points Cost:** A dropdown menu with up and down arrow icons. A help icon (?) is to the left of the label.
- Start Date:** A date input field containing "03/08/2023" and a calendar icon.
- End Date:** A toggle switch that is currently turned off.

At the bottom right of the form are three buttons: "Cancel", "OK", and "OK and Add Another".

- Award Name
- POS Name
- Description
- Precedence (Order in which the Award Rule will be applied if more than one Award Rule is effective).

- Points Threshold (The customer's loyalty account balance must be equal to or greater than the number entered in this field to issue this award).
- Points Cost
- Start Date
- End Date - Toggle the End Date **On** to enter an End Date if desired.

E Award

Figure 10-39 Award Rule Type - E Award

Add Award Rule to Gold ✕

Award Rule Type: E Award

Award Rule Details	E Award Details
Points Cost Type: Fixed	Award Program: Awards
Award Name: <input type="text"/>	Award Amount: <input type="text"/>
POS Name: <input type="text"/>	Coupon Prefix: 00292
Description: <input type="text"/>	Award Expire: <input type="checkbox"/>
Precedence: <input type="text"/>	
Issue Award: When Create Loyalty Award Batch Runs	
Points Threshold: <input type="text"/>	
Points Cost: <input type="text"/>	
Start Date: 03/14/2023	
End Date: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Ends On: 03/14/2024	

Buttons: Cancel, OK, OK and Add Another

Awards Rule Details

- Enter the **Points Cost Type**. The fields in the Award Rules Details section for an E Award will change depending upon the value in the Points Cost Type Selection Menu
 - **Fixed** - E Award is a fixed amount.
 - **Cashback** - E Award value will depend upon the number of points in the Loyalty Account, which allows for full redemption.
- Enter the **Award Name**.

- Enter the **POS Name**.
- Enter the **Description**.
- Enter the **Precedence** (Order in which the Award Rule will be applied if more than one Award Rule is effective).
- Select **Issue Reward** setting.

 **Note:**

When the Issue Certificate is set to Immediately Upon Transaction Posting, the award certificate will be issued to a customer account as soon as the system processes the purchase activity. If the selection is set to When Create Loyalty Award Batch Runs, the award certificate will not be issued after the scheduled batch job runs.

- Enter the **Award Factor** (Cashback only). A multiple used to convert points to an E-Award amount (in the base currency of the Award Program).
- **Reset Balance** (Cashback only) - Indicates whether the loyalty points balance is reset when the Award is issued.
- Enter the **Points Threshold**.
- Enter the **Start Date**.
- **End Date** - Toggle the End Date to **On** to enter an End Date if desired.

E Award Details

- Select an **Award Program**.

 **Note:**

The list will display the award programs already on the selected card

- Enter the **Award Amount**.
- Enter the **Minimum Award Amount** (Cashback only).
- Enter the **Coupon Prefix**.
- **Award Expire** - Toggle on to configure expiry settings.
 - Select **Expiration Type**.
 - Relative** - Enter the Expires After value and select a Time Period.
 - Program** - E Award will use the Award Expiration defined for the award program the E Award will be held in.

Award Certificate

Figure 10-40 Award Rule Type - Award Certificate

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Add Award Rule to Gold" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The "Award Rule Type" is set to "Award Certificate".

Search Section: Includes a dropdown for "Attribute Type" (set to "All"), input fields for "Maximum Offer ID", "Offer ID", and "Offer Name", a dropdown for "Offer Type" (set to "All"), and a dropdown for "Intended Use" (set to "Entitlement"). There are "Reset" and "Search" buttons at the bottom.

Offers Section: Includes a "Sort By" dropdown menu currently set to "Last Update Date".

Assign Entitlement Offer to Award Certificate Section: Includes a "No Offer Selected" dropdown, "Award Program" (set to "Awards"), and several required fields: "Award Rule Name", "POS Name", "Description", "Precedence", "Points Threshold", "Points Cost", and "Start Date" (set to "05/14/2023"). There is also an "Issue Award" dropdown (set to "When Create Loyalty Award Batch") and an "End Date" toggle switch.

At the bottom right, there are "Cancel", "OK", and "OK and Add Another" buttons.

There are five sections; Search, Offers, Assign Entitlement Offer to Award Certificate, Award Rule Details, and Certificate Details.

- **Search** - Use this section to populate the Offers Section. Fields include:
 - Attribute Type
 - Maximum Offer ID
 - Offer ID
 - Offer Name
 - Offer Type
 - Intended Use

 **Note:**

The Intended Use field is disabled and uses the default value of Entitlement. Only offers with an Intended Use of Entitlement are assigned to an award certificate.

- Click **Search** to populate the Offers Section. Click **Reset** to clear all Search fields.
- **Sort By** - Select an option to sort by the following:
 - Last Update Date
 - Offer ID

- Offer Name
- Offer Type
- Click **Add** to populate the Assign Entitlement Offer to Award Certificate section.

Assign Entitlement Offer to Award Certificate

- Click the **X** to remove an offer. Return to the Offers section to select a new offer to assign.

Award Rule Details

- Select the **Award Program**.

Note:

An Award Certificate can be previously created in an Award Program on the same card as the Loyalty Program. Additionally, a new Award Certificate can be created from the Loyalty Program and associated with an Award Program on the same card. If an existing award certificate exists for the selected offer, the Award Program will be defaulted into the options list. If the offer is NOT associated with an existing award certificate, the first active award program on the card will display by default and the award certificate will be created from the Loyalty Program.

- Enter an **Award Rule Name**.
- Enter a **POS Name**.
- Enter a **Description**.
- Enter the **Precedence** (Order in which the Award Rule will be applied if more than one Award Rule is effective).
- Select **Issue Reward** setting.

Note:

When the Issue Certificate is set to Immediately Upon Transaction Posting, the award certificate will be issued to a customer account as soon as the system processes the purchase activity. If the selection is set to When Create Loyalty Award Job Runs, the award certificate is issued after the scheduled job runs.

- Enter the **Points Threshold**.
- Enter the **Points Cost**.
- Enter the **Start Date**.
- **End Date** - Toggle the End Date to **On** to enter an **End Date** if desired.
- Enter the **Coupon Prefix**.
- **Award Certificate Expires** - Toggle to **On** to configure the expiry settings.

- Select an **Expiration Type**.

Relative - Enter the **Expires After** value and select a **Time Period**.

Program - Award Certificate will use the Award Expiration defined for the award program the Award Certificate will be held in.

Certificate Details

 **Note:**

If the user selects an offer that is already assigned to an existing award certificate, the fields in the Certificate Details section will be populated and will be read only.

- Enter the **Award Certificate Name**.
 - Enter the **Description**.
 - Enter the **Precedence** (Order in which the Award Rule will be applied if more than one Award Rule is effective).
 - Toggle **Unlimited Redemption** to **On** to allow unlimited redemptions.
 - Enter the **number of Maximum Redemptions** (Displays when Unlimited Redemptions is OFF).
26. Either click **OK** to accept all changes for the configured Award Rules or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

 **Note:**

Before you save the Program, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create program process and make changes.

27. When finished entering all **Award Rules**, click **Next** to go to the **Movement Rules** tab. Movement Rules determine how customers are moved from one Loyalty Level to another. Movement Rules are accessed through the Loyalty Level to which they belong.

Figure 10-41 Movement Rules Tab

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring movement rules. At the top is a teal header with the text "Movement Rules". Below this is a sub-section titled "Loyalty Level Movement Rules". On the left, there is a button with a plus sign and the text "+ Add Movement Rule". To the right of this button is a light blue information box containing an information icon and the text "One or more levels do not have a movement rule.". In the bottom right corner of the interface, there is a dark grey button with the text "Next >".

- Click **+ Add Movement Rule**.
- Select a **Movement Rule Type**.
 - **Advancement** - The Customer Account is moving to a higher level.
 - **Sustain** - The move is a lateral move.
 - **Demotion** - The Customer Account is moving to a lower level.
- Select the **Levels** to configure using the **From**, **To**, or **Sustain** option list.

 **Note:**

Advancement and Demotion Movement Rule Types both use the From and To option lists. The Sustain Movement Rule Type uses the Sustain option list. All three Movement Rule Types share the same Movement Rule and Test Details.

Movement Rule Details

Figure 10-42 Movement Rule Details

Add Movement Rule

✕

Movement Rule Type Advancement

From ■ Gold (Default Loyalty Level)
To ■ Gold (Default Loyalty Level)

Movement Rule Details

Name Required

POS Name Required

Description Required

Precedence

? Change Level When Create Loyalty Awa

? Points Threshold ▼ ▲

? Points Cost ▼ ▲

? Start Date 03/08/2023

End Date

Movement Test Details

Test Type Average Points Earned Pe

Test Period 1 ▼ ▲

Cancel
OK
OK and Add Another

- Enter the **Name**.
- Enter the **POS Name**.
- Enter the **Description**.
- Enter the **Precedence** (Order in which the Award Rule will be applied if more than one Movement Rule is effective).
- Select **Change Level** setting.

 **Note:**

When the Change Level is set to Immediately Upon Transaction Posting, the movement rule will be applied to a customer account as soon as the system processes the purchase activity. If the selection is set to When Create Loyalty Award Job Runs, the movement rule will be applied when the scheduled job runs.

- Enter the **Points Threshold**.
- Enter the **Points Cost**.
- Enter the **Start Date**.
- **End Date** - Toggle the End Date to **On** to enter an **End Date** if desired.

Movement Test Details

- Select the **Test Type**. Type of test performed to determine whether a Customer should be moved. This Selection Menu has the following options:
 - **YTD Points** - Movement depends upon the number of points earned year-to-date in the Customer account.
 - **LTD Points** - Movement depends upon the number of points earned lifetime-to-date in the Customer account.
 - **Points Earned Since Last Level Move** - Movement depends upon the number of points earned since the last level move, or the creation of the Customer account.
 - **Average Points Earned Per Month** - Movement depends upon the average number of points earned per month in a defined number of months.
 - **Time Period Since Last Level Move** - Movement occurs after a defined period of time has passed since the last level move, or the creation of the Customer account.
- Enter the **Test Period**. The number of periods (from Test Period Type) used for the movement test (visible only if the Test Type is either Average Points Earned Per Month or Time Period Since Last Level Move).
- Enter the **Test Period Type**. The type of period used for the movement test (visible only if the Test Type is Time Period Since Last Level Move)
- **Extend Sustain Period** - When the toggle is on, then customers remain at the same level for an additional amount of time past the test period until the customer meets additional criteria.
 - Select the **Extension Test Type**.
 - Enter the **Extension Test Period** (only visible when the Extension Test Type is Average Points Earned Per Month).
 - Enter the **Extension Points Threshold**.
 - Enter an **Extend By** value.
 - Enter the **Period Type**.

- Click **OK** to save, click **Cancel** to close without saving, or click **OK and Add Another** to save the Movement Rule and configure additional Movement Rules.
28. When finished defining Movement Rules do the following:
- If you are creating a **new** card, click **Next** to proceed to **Step 29** the Card Definition tab.
 - If you are assigning an **existing** card, click **Next** to proceed to **Step 38**, the Review tab for the Loyalty Program.
29. The **Card Definition** tab allows you to add a card image and identify the contact details if there is a supplier for the physical cards. Enter the following information:

Figure 10-43 Card Definition Tab

Card Definition	
Card Details	Card Image (Optional)
Card Type <input type="text"/> Required	<input type="text" value="No Image"/> Add Image
Description <input type="text"/> Required	Card Supplier
Serial Number Prefix <input type="text"/> Required	From Supplier <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Card Number Length <input type="text" value="16"/>	Supplier Name <input type="text"/>
Card Number Prefix <input type="text"/>	Address Line 1 <input type="text"/>
Active <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Address Line 2 <input type="text"/>
Generate Pin <input type="checkbox"/>	Address Line 3 <input type="text"/>
	City <input type="text"/>

Card Details

- **Card Type** - Type of Card.
- **Description** - Description of Card.
- **Serial Number Prefix** - The Card Serial Number Prefix for this Card Definition.
- **Active** - Indicates whether the Card Definition is currently active.
- **Generate Pin** - Toggle on to enable Customer Engagement to generate PINs for the Cards.

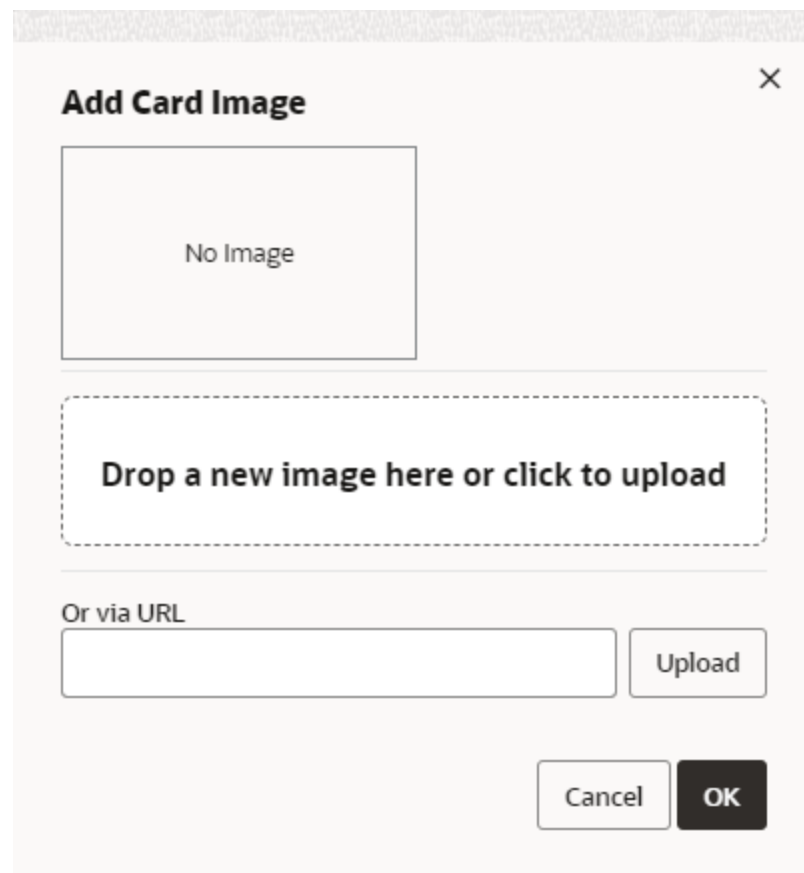
- **PIN Length** - The length of each PIN. (This field is only visible if the Generate Pin Toggle is On). Enter 0 [default] for Cards that will not have PINs.
- **PIN Required** - For each Check Box, indicate whether a PIN is required for that situation. (These fields are only visible if the Generate Pin Toggle is On.)
 - **Always** - A customer must enter a PIN every time their Card is used.
 - **Without Card** - A customer must enter a PIN if they do not have their Card.

Card Image (Optional)

You can also edit the image once it has been added.

- Click **Add Image**. The Add Card Image window opens.

Figure 10-44 Add Card Image



To add a new Card Image, either:

- **Drag and Drop** a new image as shown in [Figure 10-44](#).
- Click anywhere in the **Drop a new image here or click to upload box**.
- **Or Via URL** - Enter the **URL** of the image, then click **Upload** to complete the process.

- Either click **OK** to create the add the card image or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Card Supplier

- From Supplier - Toggle **On** to enter the following Supplier details:
 - Supplier Name
 - Address Line 1
 - Address Line 2
 - Address Line 3
 - City
 - State
 - Postal Code
 - Country
 - Phone Number
30. When finished entering the Program information on the **Card Definition** tab, click **Next** to continue to the **Card Series** tab.

Figure 10-45 Card Series Tab

Card Series

Card Series Details

+ Add Card Series | Sort By Most Recently Added ▾

Next >

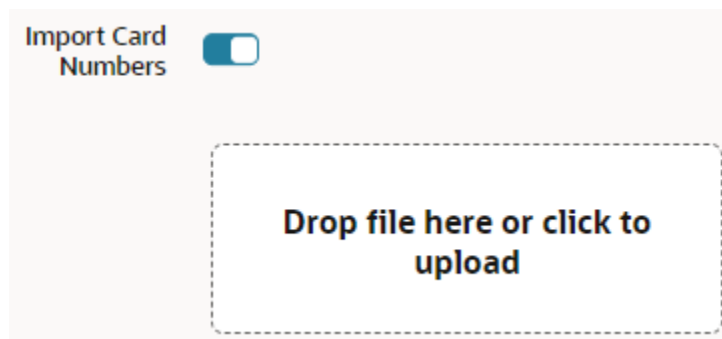
31. The **Card Series** tab enables you to setup a new card series at the same time you are defining a new card. Enter the following information:

Figure 10-46 Add Card Series

Card Series Details

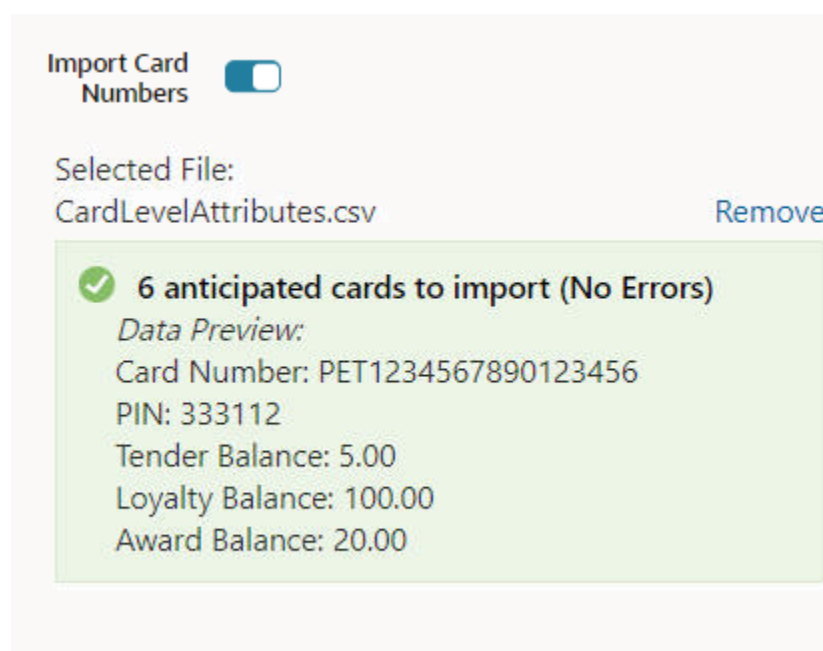
- **Series Name** - Name of the Card Series Distribution.
- **Description** - Description of the Card Series Distribution.
- **Generate Series**
 - Toggle on - When the wizard is completed, the card series is generated.
 - Toggle off (Default) - Card numbers in the series are generated individually on demand.
- **Card Series Expire** - Determines the type of expiration date to use for the Card Series Distribution. This Selection Menu has the following options:
 - **Relative** - The ending expiration date will be a certain, defined period of time after the initial activation date. If this option is selected, the Expire After section displays the Number of Periods and Period Type fields.
 - **Fixed** - Beginning and ending expiration dates are defined by the User.
- To Import Card Numbers, either:
 - **Drag and Drop** a file as shown in [Figure 10-47](#).

Figure 10-47 Import Card Numbers



- Click anywhere in the **Drop file here or click to upload** box.

Figure 10-48 Import Card Numbers



Card Import File Field Information

When importing external card numbers for a card series, the Import File listing the numbers must have the following fields for each line:

- CARD_NUMBER [required]
- CARD_PIN_NUMBER [optional]
- Tender Balance Amount [optional]
- Loyalty Balance Amount [optional]
- Award Balance Amount [optional]
- ATTRIBUTE NAME 1 [optional]
- ATTRIBUTE VALUE 1 [optional], but required if ATTRIBUTE NAME 1 specified

- ATTRIBUTE NAME 2 [optional]
- ATTRIBUTE VALUE 2 [optional], but required if ATTRIBUTE NAME 2 specified
- ATTRIBUTE NAME 3 [optional]
- ATTRIBUTE VALUE 3 [optional], but required if ATTRIBUTE NAME 3 specified
- ATTRIBUTE NAME 4 [optional]
- ATTRIBUTE VALUE 4 [optional], but required if ATTRIBUTE NAME 4 specified
- ATTRIBUTE NAME 5 [optional]
- ATTRIBUTE VALUE 5 [optional], but required if ATTRIBUTE NAME 5 specified

A placeholder must be used for all fields. For example, to include a card number of 1234567890123456 with a PIN of 123456, a Tender Balance Amount of 10, a Loyalty Balance Amount of 20, an Award Balance Amount of 30, and a CARD_REDEMPTION_INFO attribute of Redeemed Solon, OH, the following line would be included in the Import File:

```
1234567890123456,123456,10,20,30,CARD_REDEMPTION_INFO,"Redeemed Solon, OH",,,,,,
```

Note the empty fields for the remaining four attribute names and values in the example.

Card Import File Validation

- The card numbers cannot be duplicates to any cards already in the database.
- The card number prefixes must be valid for the card definition.
- The activation amounts must be valid numbers.
- The card number length does not need to match the length specified for the card definition.
- If an activation amount is provided in the import file, the card will be activated upon creation. If no amounts are provided the card will remain inactive.
- The activation amounts are in the program's base currency.

Remove an Imported File

You have the option to remove the file at any time before the wizard is completed. Click **Remove** to remove the imported file.

 **Note:**

The Import Card Numbers option is not allowed once cards have been generated for the card series.

Card Batch Details

- **Total Cards** - Total Number of cards to be generated for the Card Definition.

 **Note:**

This field is filled in automatically when card numbers are imported.

- **Number of Batches** - The number of separate Card batches included in the Card Series Distribution.

Activate Cards

When the wizard is completed, the cards in the batch set to activate will be set to active. If this is toggled off, the cards can be activated from the **Card Series** tab or from the **View Card** screen.

To activate a set of Cards within Card Series configuration:

Figure 10-49 Card Batch Details

Card Batch Details

Total Cards No cards imported

Number Of Batches 0 Cards In Each Batch

Batch	Activate	Batch Name	Batch Description
001	Activate Batch <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="[Batch-001 Name]"/>	<input type="text" value="[Batch-001 Description]"/>

[+ Add Another](#)

- **Activate** - Toggle on to activate the Cards when the wizard is completed.
- Enter a **Batch Name**.
- Enter a **Batch Description**.

 **Note:**

Click **+ Add Another** to add another batch. You can also adjust the **Number of Batches** field. Click the **X** icon next to each Batch to remove a batch from the list.

- Click **OK** to add the Card Series to the Program or click **OK and Add Another** to add another Card Series. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the Card Series.


Edit Card Series


Figure 10-50 Card Series Details

Card Series

Card Series Details

+ Add Card Series Sort By: Most Recently Added

Spring (Sequence 01) Values for Spring	Expires Never	Total Cards 2,000	Activated Cards 0.0000%	
Generate Series: Yes	First Serial Number: 19610 01 001 000001	Created By: N/A		
Import Card Numbers: No	Last Serial Number: 19610 01 004 000500	Last Updated By: N/A		

4 Batches 

To Edit an existing Card Series click the Action menu and select, **Edit**. The Edit Card Series window opens. See **Step 31**, the Card Series tab to edit the card.

Remove a Card Series

To Remove an existing Card Series, click the Action menu and select, **Remove**. The Card Series is deleted immediately.

 **Note:**

Before you save the Program, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous**, **Next**, or **Cancel** to go back to any point in the create program process and make changes.

- 32. When finished entering the Program information on the **Card Series** tab, click **Next** to continue to the **Attributes** tab.

Enter the following for the **Attributes** tab. Attributes can be added to the Card Type to further distinguish qualifications for the Offer.

Figure 10-51 Attributes - Card Type Attributes

Attributes

Card Type Attributes

Name	Value	Description
CARD CREATE DATE	<input type="text" value="Date"/> + Add Another	Card Definition Create Date
CARD PURCHASE LOCATION	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/> + Add Another	Where was card purchased?
CARD TYPE COMMENTS	<input type="text" value="Character"/> + Add Another	Card Definition Comments
CARD VALUE	<input type="text" value="Currency"/> + Add Another	Estimated Card Value
CARD-PROGRAMS	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/> + Add Another	CARD-PROGRAMS
MULTI-USE CARD?	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/>	Is this a Multi-Use Card?

Card Series Attributes

v

Next >

Figure 10-52 Attributes - Card Series Attributes

Attributes

Card Series Attributes

Spring ^

Name	Value	Description
IMAGE ON CARD SERIES *	Spring Flowers <small>+ Add Another</small>	Image Used on Card Series
CARD SERIES # OF CARDS	Number <small>+ Add Another</small>	Number of Cards in Series
CARD SERIES GENERATED?	(Please select) <small>+ Add Another</small>	Was Card Series Generated?
CARD SERIES PURPOSE	Character <small>+ Add Another</small>	Purpose of this Card Series
CARD SERIES VALUE	Currency <small>+ Add Another</small>	Activation Amount for Cards in Series
SERIES CREATE DATE	Date <small>+ Add Another</small>	Date Card Series was created

Next >

- Select or enter the **Values** for each of the required attributes (indicated by an asterisk*).
- Add **Values** for any optional attributes.
- Select or enter the **configuration value** for the Attribute.

Note:

Repeat this step for all optional Attributes you wish to add to the Card or Card Series.

33. When finished defining any attributes for the Program, click **Next** to continue to the **Review** tab (Assigned to New Card).
34. The **Review** tab (Assigned to New Card) displays key elements in the Program Setup. Review the following for the **Tender Program** Type.

Figure 10-53 Tender Program - Review Tab (Assigned to New Card)

Review

Program Name	Program Description	Assigned To New Card	
Spring Value	Value for Spring	Spring	Tender Program

Card Details

No Image	Card Type	Spring
	Description	Values for Spring

Serial Number	19610-XX-XXX-XXXXXX
Active	No
Generate Pin	No

1 Franchisees

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	
Portland Franchisee (ID 47)		1

Tender Program Details

Credit Reversal	Yes	Debit Reversal	Yes
Card Required	No	Card Merge	Yes
Reloads	Yes	Partial Redemption	Yes

Active	Yes
Start Date	3/8/23
End Date	None (Runs indefinitely)
Currency	USD
Allow Foreign Currency	Yes
Maximum Redemption Value	\$9,999.00 Per Business Day
Maximum Daily Usage	99 Uses
Maximum Lifetime Usage	99,999 Uses

Account Details

Cash Outs	Yes (Limit \$250.00)
Accounts Expire	No
Initial Balance	None
Preauthorizations	No

Activation Amount	\$10.00 Minimum
Minimum Balance	\$5.00
Maximum Balance	\$500.00

1 Card Series

Spring (Sequence 01)
Values for Spring

Card Generation and Activation Settings

Generate Series	Yes
Import Card Numbers	No
Activate Batches	Activate Batches 4 of 4 (500 cards per batch)

Card Series Details

Total Cards	2,000
First Serial Number	19610 01 001 000001
Last Serial Number	19610 01 004 000500
Card Series Expire	Expires 2 Years (Relative)
Created By	N/A
Last Updated By	N/A

Attributes

Card Type	Attribute Name	Attribute Value	Description
Spring	IMAGE ON CARD SERIES	Spring Flowers	Image Used on Card Series

Previous Next Cancel OK

35. Either click **OK** to create the Program or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Note:

Before you save the Program, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create program process and make changes.

36. The **Review** tab (Existing Card) displays key elements in the Program Setup. Review the following for the **Tender Program** Type.

Figure 10-54 Tender Program - Review Tab (Assigned to Existing Card)

Review

Program Name Spring Value	Program Description Value for Spring	Assigned to Existing Card AV-Card	Tender Program
-------------------------------------	--	---	---

Card Details

No Image

Card Type AV-Card
Description AV-Card
n

Serial Number 66778-XX-XXX-XXXXXX
Card Number 546675XXXXXXXXXX

Tender Program Details

Credit Reversal	Yes	Debit Reversal	Yes
Card Required	No	Card Merge	Yes
Reloads	Yes	Partial Redemption	Yes

Active	Yes
Start Date	3/8/23
End Date	None (Runs Indefinitely)
Currency	USD
Allow Foreign Currency	Yes
Maximum Redemption Value	\$9,999.00 Per Business Day
Maximum Daily Usage	99 Uses
Maximum Lifetime Usage	99,999 Uses

Account Details

Cash Outs	Yes (Limit \$250.00)
Accounts Expire	No
Initial Balance	None
Preauthorizations	No

Activation Amount	\$10.00 Minimum
Minimum Balance	\$5.00
Maximum Balance	\$500.00

Previous
Next
Cancel
OK

37. Either click **OK** to create the Program or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Note:

Before you save the Program, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create program process and make changes.

38. The **Review** tab (Assigned to New Card) displays key elements in the Program Setup. Review the following for the **Loyalty Program** Type.

Figure 10-55 Loyalty Program - Review Tab (Assigned to New Card)

Review

Program Name: Spring | Program Description: Spring | Assigned To New Card: New | [Loyalty Program](#)

Card Details

No Image | Card Type: New | Description: New

Serial Number: 12345-XXX-XXXX-XXXXXX
Active: Yes | Generate Pin: No

0 Card Series

Loyalty Program Details

Credit Reversal	Yes	Card Required	No
Debit Reversal	Yes	Card Merge Permitted	Yes
Active	Yes		
Available		3/8/23 to No End Date	
Currency	USD		
Allow Foreign Currency	No		
Accounts		Created Immediately	
Points Name	Spring		
POS Points Name	Spring		
Points Currency Value	50		
Decimal Precision	0		

1 Loyalty Levels

Issue Rule Details

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)

New

POS Name	New
Calculation Type	The value of each item purchased
Points Multiplier	1
Additional Points	0
Effective	3/8/23 to None (Runs Indefinitely)
Eligibility	Use customer associated to loyalty card
Bonus Points	No
Maximum	99
Transactions Per Day	
Transaction	0
Minimum Value	No
Include Non Merchandise Charges	No
Allow Zero Price	No
Updated By	N/A

0 Time Rules

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)

New

No Time Rules Defined

0 Tender Rules

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)

New

All Tenders Defined

0 Location Rules

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)

New

All Locations Defined

0 Audience Rules

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)

New

No Audience Rules Defined

1 Loyalty Awards

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)

New

POS Name	New
Award Type	Coupon
Points Cost	5
Points Threshold	3
Precedence	1
Effective	3/8/23 to None (Runs Indefinitely)
Updated By	N/A

0 Movement Rules

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

39. Either click **OK** to create the Program or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Note:

Before you save the Program, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create program process and make changes.

40. The **Review** tab (Existing Card) displays key elements in the Program Setup. Review the following for the **Loyalty Program** Type.

Figure 10-56 Loyalty Program - Review Tab (Assigned to Existing Card)

Review

Program Name: Spring | Program Description: Spring | Assigned to Existing Card: Active Cards No Customers

Card Details

Card Type: Active Cards No Customers
Description: Active Cards No Customers

Serial Number: 74110-XX-XXX-XXXXXX
Card Number: 74110XXXXXXX000000

Loyalty Program Details

Credit Reversal: Yes | Card Required: No
Debit Reversal: Yes | Card Merge Permitted: Yes

Active: Yes
Available: 3/9/23 to No End Date
Currency: USD
Allow Foreign Currency: No
Accounts: Created Immediately

Points Name: Spring
POS Points Name: Spring
Points Currency Value: \$0
Decimal Precision: 0

1 Loyalty Levels

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)

0 Time Rules

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)
New
No Time Rules Defined

0 Audience Rules

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)
New
No Audience Rules Defined

0 Tender Rules

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)
New
All Tenders Defined

0 Item Rules

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)
New
All Items Defined

0 Location Rules

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)
New
All Locations Defined

1 Loyalty Awards

Gold (Default Loyalty Level)

New

POS Name	New
Award Type	Coupon
Points Cost	3
Points Threshold	3
Precedence	1
Effective	3/9/23 to None (Runs Indefinitely)
Updated By	N/A

0 Movement Rules

Previous Next Cancel OK

41. Either click **OK** to create the Program or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Note: Before you save the Program, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create program process and make changes.

42. The **Review** tab (Assigned to New Card) displays key elements in the Program Setup. Review the following for the **Award Program** Type.

Figure 10-57 Award Program - Review Tab (Assigned to New Card)

Review

Program Name: Fall | Program Description: Fall | Assigned To New Card: fass

Card Details

Card Type: fass
Description: fass

Serial Number: 23453-XX-XXX-XXXXXX
Active: Yes
Generate Pin: No

1 Card Series

fall (Sequence 01)
fall

Card Generation and Activation Settings

Generate Series: No
Import Card Numbers: No
Activate Batches: Activate Batches 0 of 1 (100 cards per batch)

1 Awards

Award Certificates

119 Test ETL

Description: 119 Test ETL
Assigned Offer: 119 Test ETL (ID 842)
Offer Type: Line Item Discount
Precedence: 1
Redemptions: 1 Maximum
Issue Certificate: On Demand
Updated By: N/A

0 Time Rules

119 Test ETL
No Time Rules Defined

0 Location Rules

119 Test ETL
All Locations Defined

Attributes

Card Type Attributes	Attribute Name	Attribute Value	Description
	CARD PURCHASE LOCATION	WEBSITE	Where was card purchased?
Card Series Attributes			
fall	Attribute Name: IMAGE ON CARD SERIES	Attribute Value: Fall Leaves	Description: Image Used on Card Series

Previous Next Cancel OK

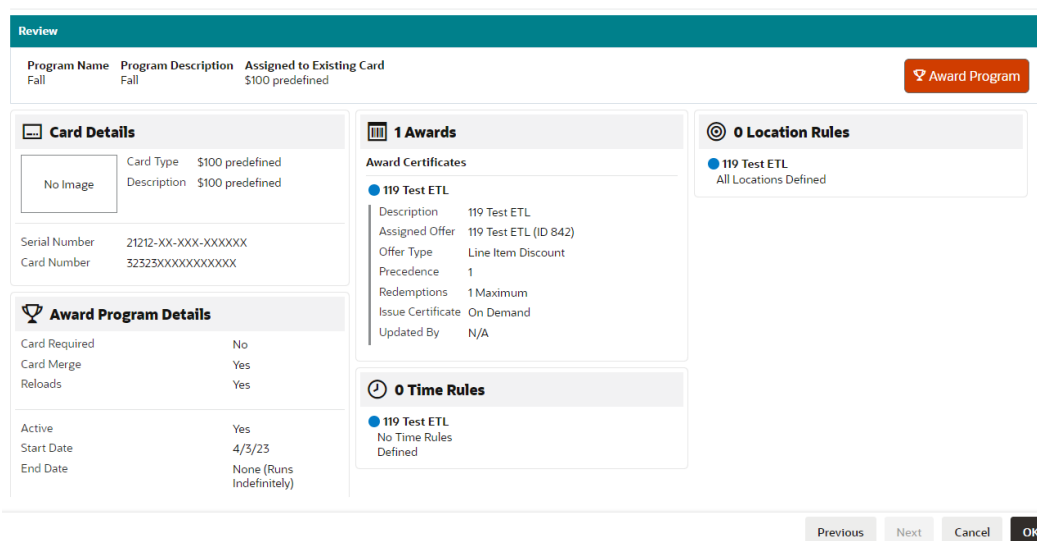
43. Either click **OK** to create the Program or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

 **Note:**

Before you save the Program, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create program process and make changes.

44. The **Review** tab (Existing Card) displays key elements in the Program Setup. Review the following for the **Award Program** Type.

Figure 10-58 Award Program - Review Tab (Assigned to Existing Card)



The screenshot displays the 'Review' tab for an Award Program. At the top, it shows 'Program Name: Fall', 'Program Description: Fall', and 'Assigned to Existing Card: \$100 predefined'. A red 'Award Program' button is visible in the top right. Below this, there are several sections:

- Card Details:** Shows 'Card Type: \$100 predefined' and 'Description: \$100 predefined'. It also lists 'Serial Number: 21212-XX-XXX-XXXXXX' and 'Card Number: 32323XXXXXXXXXX'.
- Award Program Details:** A table with the following data:

Card Required	No
Card Merge	Yes
Reloads	Yes
Active	Yes
Start Date	4/3/23
End Date	None (Runs Indefinitely)
- 1 Awards:** Shows 'Award Certificates' for '119 Test ETL'. Details include: Description: 119 Test ETL, Assigned Offer: 119 Test ETL (ID 842), Offer Type: Line Item Discount, Precedence: 1, Redemptions: 1 Maximum, Issue Certificate: On Demand, Updated By: N/A.
- 0 Location Rules:** Shows '119 Test ETL' with 'All Locations Defined'.
- 0 Time Rules:** Shows '119 Test ETL' with 'No Time Rules Defined'.

At the bottom right, there are navigation buttons: 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

45. Either click **OK** to create the Program or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

 **Note:**

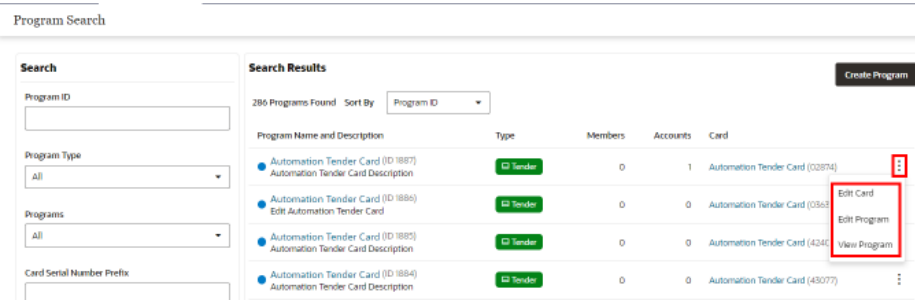
Before you save the Program, you can use the **tab links** along with **Previous** and **Next** to go back to any point in the create program process and make changes.

Editing Programs

You can access Programs for editing using the following methods to display the Edit Program option:

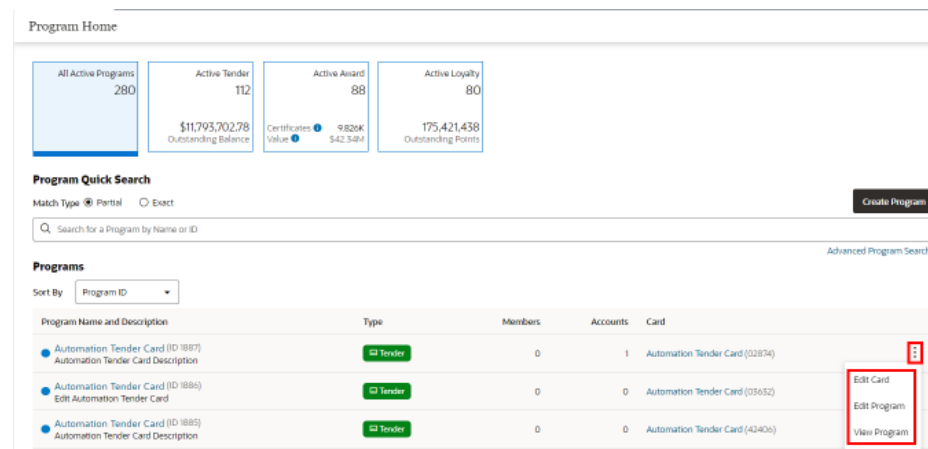
- Program Advanced Search Results
 - Click the **Action Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for an individual **Program** in the Program Advanced Search window (**Program Result Section**).
 - Click **Edit Program**.

Figure 10-59 Action Menu Options (Program Advanced Search)



- Program Home Quick Search
 - Click the **Action Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual **Program** in the **Programs Quick Search** window located in **Program Home**.
 - Click **Edit Program**.

Figure 10-60 Action Menu Options (Program Quick Search)



Click **Done** to close the Program and return to the **Search Results**.



Note:

For detailed information on each section while editing a Program, see [Creating a Program](#).

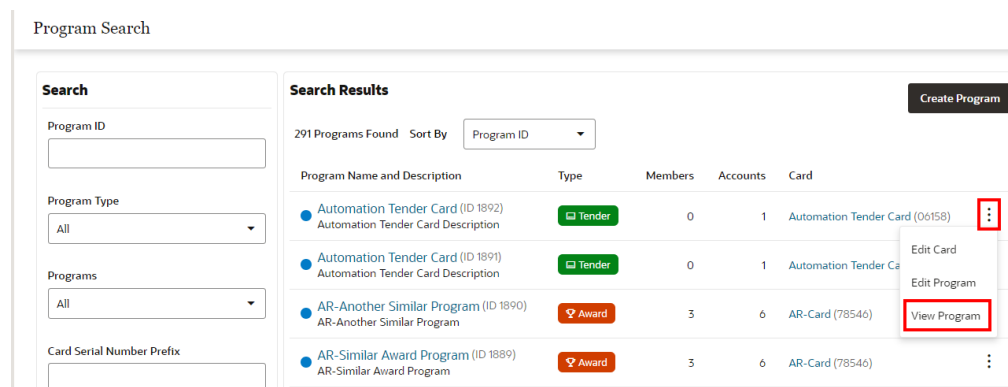
Viewing Programs

You can access a Program for viewing using the following methods to display the View Program option:

- Program Advanced Search Results
 - Click the **Action Menu** icon on the far right in the data display section for each individual **Program** in the Program Advanced Search window (**Program Search Results Section**).

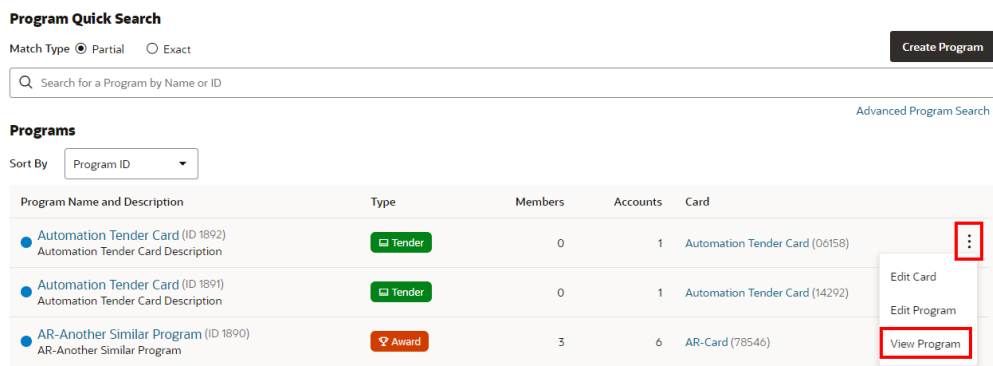
- Click **View Program**. The View Program screen displays. See [Figure 10-64](#).

Figure 10-61 Action Menu Options (Program Advanced Search) - View Program



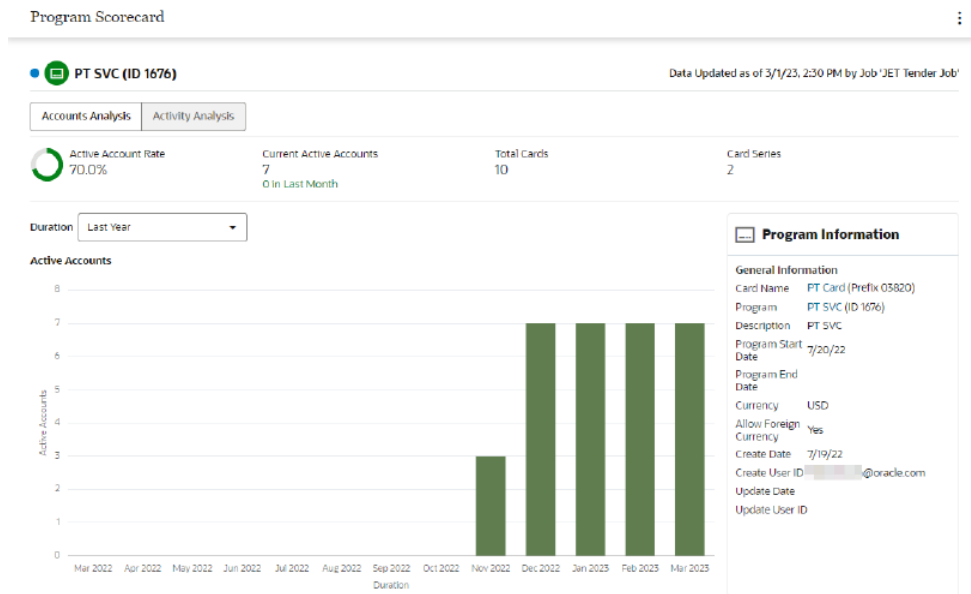
- Program Quick Search
 - Click the **Action Menu icon** on the far right in the data display section for each individual **Program** in the **Program Quick Search** window.
 - Click **View Program**. The View Program screen displays. See [Figure 10-64](#).

Figure 10-62 Action Menu Options (Program Quick Search) - View Program



- Program Scorecard - Click the **Program Name** link in the Program Information panel. The View Program screen displays. See [Figure 10-64](#).

Figure 10-63 View Program - Program Scorecard

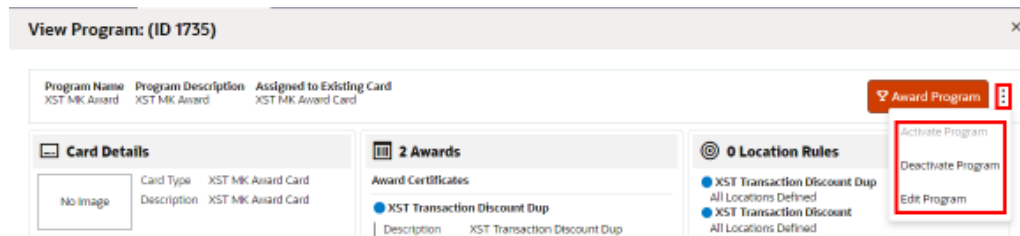


Note:

The Program Screen is a compilation of what is created during the Create Program wizard process and appears as the Review tab. See [Creating a Program](#) for more details about what each panel represents in the Program screen.

View Program - Action Menu Options

Figure 10-64 Program Screen



The Action Menu options include:

- **Activate Program** - Available when Program Status is Deactivated
- **Deactivate Program** - Available when Program Status is Activated
- **Edit Program** - See [Editing Programs](#) for details.

Click **Done** to close the Program and return to **Program Home**. For detailed information on each section see [Creating a Program](#).

Cards

Cards include information about cards held by the customer and about the programs associated with each card. Programs include Tender, Award, and Loyalty.



Note:

This section deals with Cards associated with a Program. See [Card Administration](#) for information on administering Card and Account details.

Viewing Cards

The following options enable you to view Cards already associated with a Program.

- **Program Home** - From the Card column in the Programs Quick Search results area click the Card's name link as shown in [Figure 10-62](#).
- **Program Search** - From the Card column in the Search Results area click the Card's name link as shown in [Figure 10-61](#).
- **Program Scorecard** - From the Program Information panel, click the Card's name link as show in [Figure 10-63](#).

The View Card window opens. You can select to view the Card Series or Programs.

Figure 10-65 View Card - Card Series

View Card
×

Card Type	Description	Activated Cards	Active Card Series	Active Programs
● PT Card (03820)	PT Card	35.00% (7 of 20)	2	2

Serial Number 03820-XX-XXX-XXXXXX
Card Number

Activated Cards 7
Card Supplier

Card Series (2)

Programs (2)

PT Series 02 (Sequence 02)

Activated Cards 0.00% (0 of 10)
Generated Cards 0
Cards in Series 10
Serial Number Prefix 03820

Sequence Number 02
Batch Count 1 Batches
Create Date 1/24/23

Generated No
On Demand Generation No
Card Series 1/25/23 to
Expire 1/30/23

PT Series 01 (Sequence 01)

Activated Cards 70.00% (7 of 10)
Generated Cards 10
Cards in Series 10
Serial Number Prefix 03820

Sequence Number 01
Batch Count 1 Batches
Create Date 7/20/22

Generated Yes
On Demand Generation No
Card Series Expire Never

Done

View Card - Card Series Actions

The following actions for Card Series are available from the View Card window.

- [Edit Card](#)
- [Activate Batch](#)
- [Change Batch Expiration Date](#)
- [Deactivate Card Series Batch](#)
- [Generate Card Series](#)

Edit Card

See [Editing Cards](#) for details.



Note:

The Activate Batch, Change Batch Expiration Date, Deactivate Card Series Batch will also be made available on the Card Series Tab when the user selects Edit Card.

Activate Batch

- Click the Action Menu and select **Activate Batch**. The Activate Card Series Batch window opens.

Figure 10-66 Activate Card Series Batch

Activate Card Series Batch X

Batch 001 Activating 1 Cards

Batch Name [Batch-001 Name]

Batch Description [Batch-001 Description]

Franchisee to Activate Card Swarovski Franchisee 1

Location to Activate Card 00001

Select Card Range

Enter Activation Amount

Program Tender Automat Amount USD

Cancel OK

- Enter the following information:
 - **Batch** - Batch Number
 - **Batch Name** - Name of the Batch
 - **Batch Description** - Description of the Batch
 - **Franchisee to Activate Card** - The Franchisee that activated the card.
 - **Location to Activate Card** - The location where the cards are active.
 - **Select Card Range** - Toggle to **On** to enter a specific Card Range.
 - **Enter Activation Amount** - When this option is toggled to **On**, the initial amount set up for the program can be overridden when activating the card. If an amount is not selected, the amount defined for the program will be used.
- Either click **OK** to accept the changes and activate the Card Series Batch or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Change Batch Expiration Date

- Click the Action Menu and select **Change Batch Expiration Date**. The Change Batch Expiration Date window opens.

Figure 10-67 Change Batch Expiration Date

Change Batch Expiration Date [X]

Batch: 001

Change Expiration Date on 1 Cards

Batch Name: [Batch-001 Name]

Batch Description: [Batch-001 Description]

Change Expiration Date to: 03/09/2028

Select Card Range:

From 0287401001 * To 0287401001 *

Cancel OK

- Enter the following information:
 - **Batch** - Batch Number
 - **Batch Name** - Name of the Batch
 - **Batch Description** - Description of the Batch
 - **Change Expiration Date to** - The new expiration date.
 - **Select Card Range** - Toggle to **On** to enter a specific Card Range.
- Either click **OK** to accept the changes or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

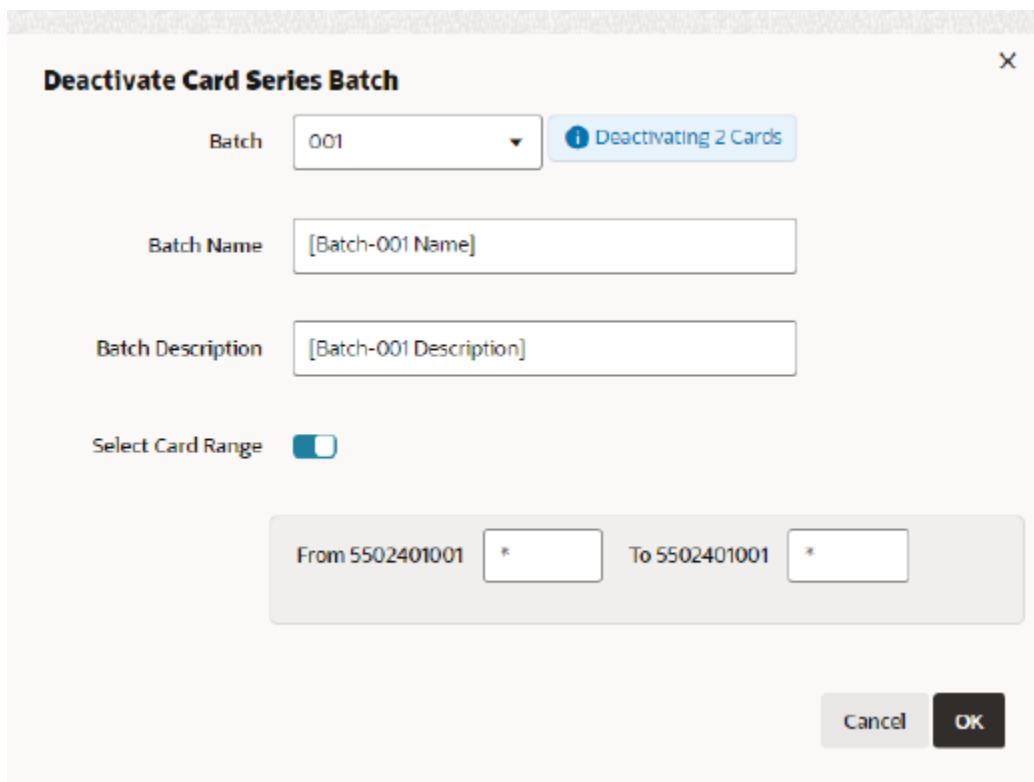
 **Note:**

The information box displays the number of cards impacted by the approval of the action.

Deactivate Card Series Batch

- Click the Action Menu and select **Deactivate Batch**. The Deactivate Card Series Batch window opens.

Figure 10-68 Deactivate Card Series Batch



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Deactivate Card Series Batch" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog contains the following fields and controls:

- Batch:** A dropdown menu showing "001". To its right is a blue button with an information icon and the text "Deactivating 2 Cards".
- Batch Name:** A text input field containing "[Batch-001 Name]".
- Batch Description:** A text input field containing "[Batch-001 Description]".
- Select Card Range:** A toggle switch currently in the "Off" position.
- Card Range:** A section with a light gray background containing two input fields. The first is labeled "From 5502401001" and the second is labeled "To 5502401001". Both fields contain an asterisk (*).
- Buttons:** "Cancel" and "OK" buttons are located at the bottom right of the dialog.

- Enter the following information:
 - **Batch** - Batch Number
 - **Batch Name** - Name of the Batch
 - **Batch Description** - Description of the Batch
 - **Select Card Range** - Toggle to **On** to enter a specific Card Range.
- Either click **OK** to accept the changes and Deactivate the Card Series Batch or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

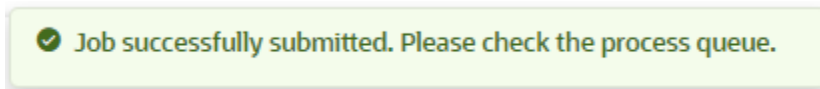
 **Note:**

The information box displays the number of cards impacted by the approval of the action.

Generate Card Series

Click the **Action Menu** and select, **Generate Card Series**. A notification indicates the successful job submission.

Figure 10-69 Job Submission Notification



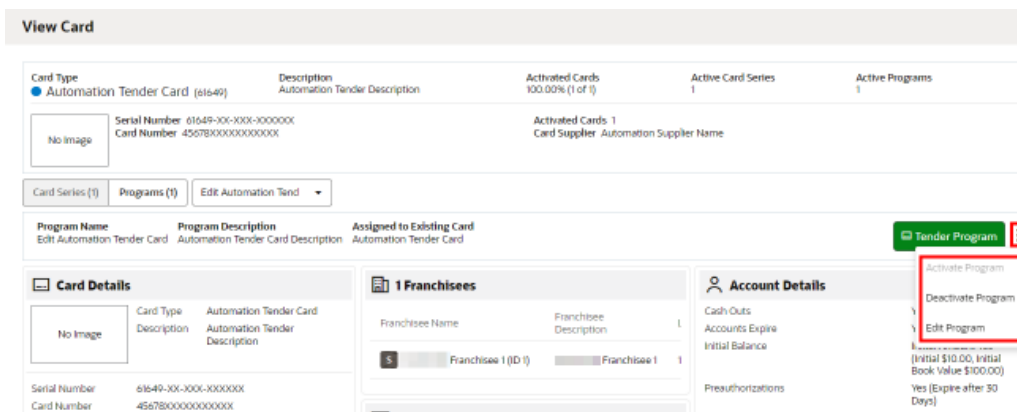
View Card - Programs Actions

The following actions for Card Series are available from the View Card window.

Note:

If more than one Program is associated with a Card, a selection list enables you to select a Program.

Figure 10-70 View Card – Program Action Menu

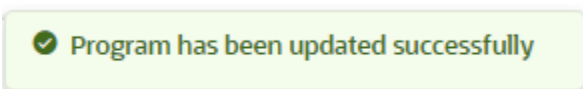


- Activate Program - Click the Action Menu icon, then select Activate Program.
- Deactivate Program - Click the Action Menu icon, then select Deactivate Program.

Note:

For Activate and Deactivate Programs a notification appears.

Figure 10-71 Activate/Deactivate Notification



- Edit Program - See [Creating a Program](#) for details.

Editing Cards

Once a program has been created, you can edit the card associated with the program. You have the ability to edit certain information in the Franchisees, Card Definition, Card Series and Attributes tab. Once changes are made you can save the edited card.

There are a few places you can find the Edit Card option in order to edit a Card associated with a Program:

- Select **Edit Card** in the Action Menu (also known as the Overflow Menu) icon for each individual Program on the Program Advanced Search window.
- Select **Edit Card** in the Action Menu (also known as the Overflow Menu) icon for each individual Program on the Program Quick Search window.

Figure 10-72 Action Menu - Edit Card

The screenshot shows the 'Program Home' dashboard with four summary cards: All Active Programs (280), Active Tender (112), Active Award (88), and Active Loyalty (80). Below these is the 'Program Quick Search' section with a search bar and a 'Create Program' button. The 'Programs' table is displayed with columns for Program Name and Description, Type, Members, Accounts, and Card. Three rows of 'Automation Tender Card' are shown, each with a green 'Tender' icon. The 'Edit Card' option in the action menu for the first row is highlighted with a red box.

Program Name and Description	Type	Members	Accounts	Card
Automation Tender Card (ID 1887) Automation Tender Card Description	Tender	0	1	Automation Tender Card (02874)
Automation Tender Card (ID 1886) Edit Automation Tender Card	Tender	0	0	Automation Tender Card (03652)
Automation Tender Card (ID 1885) Automation Tender Card Description	Tender	0	0	Automation Tender Card (42406)

- Select **Edit Card** in the Action Menu (also known as the Overflow Menu) icon in the View Card window.

During the editing process the Franchisees, Card Definition, Card Series and Attributes tabs available for editing. See [Creating a Program](#) for more information.

Program Scorecards

The Program Scorecard provides statistical analysis about an individual Tender, Award, or Loyalty Program. The scorecard displays the number of accounts and activity for the program in order to see how much the program is being used, including outstanding balances.

Viewing the Tender Program Scorecard

The Program Scorecard provides a snapshot of how a Tender Program is doing.

To access the Program Scorecard for analysis on a Tender Program, the user can select the Tender Program name link on either the Programs List or the Programs Advanced Search results windows.

To access the Programs List:

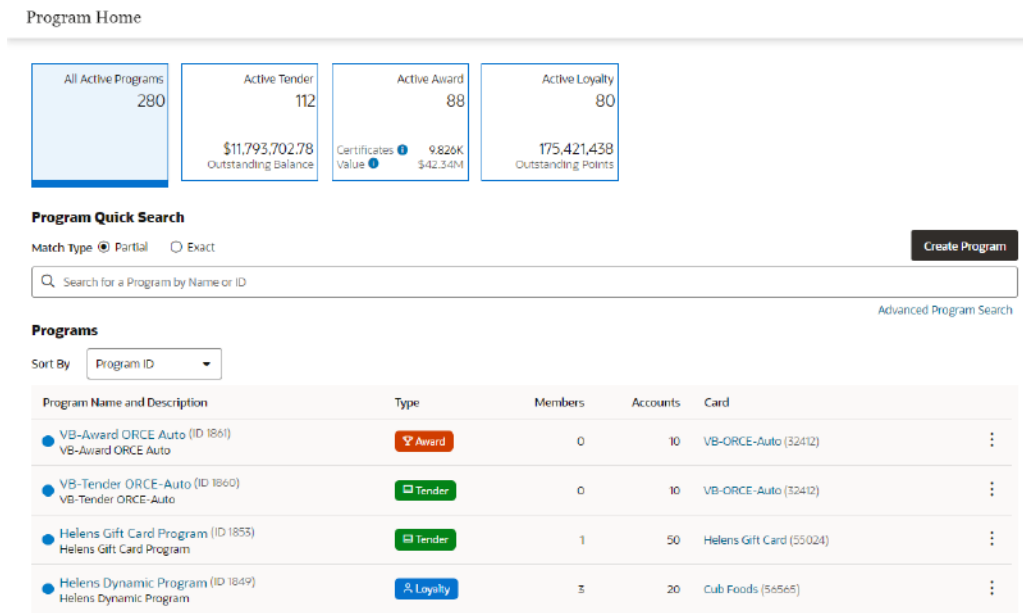
1. From the **Main** menu, click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Program**.
3. Click **Program Home**. This displays the Program Home tab which contains the Program List.



Note:

You will need the Program Home role in order to see this menu option.

Figure 10-73 Program Home



To access Program Advanced Search:

1. From the **Main** menu, click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Program Search**.
3. Enter **criteria** in the Search panel where you can search for a unique program, or click **Search** to retrieve all programs.

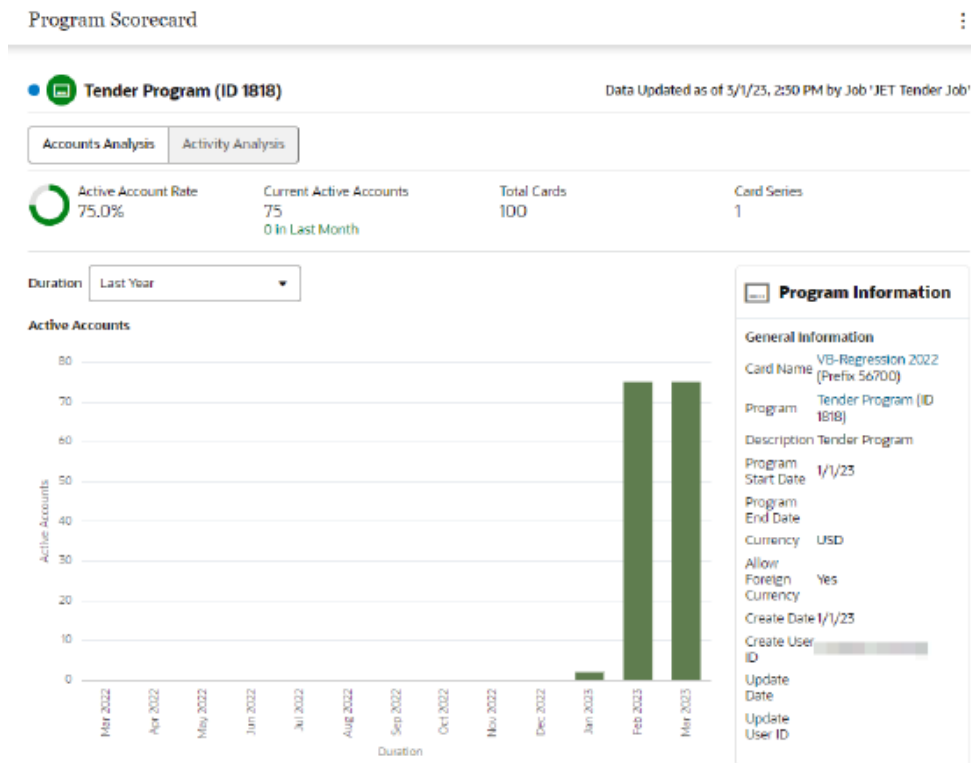
Figure 10-74 Advanced Program Search

Program Search

The screenshot displays a web interface for program search. On the left, a sidebar titled "Search" contains several filter fields: "Program ID" (text input), "Program Type" (dropdown menu with "All" selected), "Programs" (dropdown menu with "All" selected), "Card Serial Number Prefix" (text input), and "Created By" (dropdown menu with "Everyone" selected). At the bottom of the sidebar are "Reset" and "Search" buttons. On the right, the "Search Results" section contains the text "Enter search parameters in the sidebar to search for Programs." and a "Create Program" button.

4. Select the **link** on a **Tender Program Name**, which then opens the Program Scorecard for that Tender Program.

Figure 10-75 Program Scorecard: Tender Program



5. The Program Scorecard window displays the following sections:

- **Title** (displays on all windows) - Displays the Name and ID of the Tender Program as well as an indicator of whether the program is currently active or inactive (a solid Blue Dot represents an Active Program while an Empty Dot represents an Inactive Program).

Note:

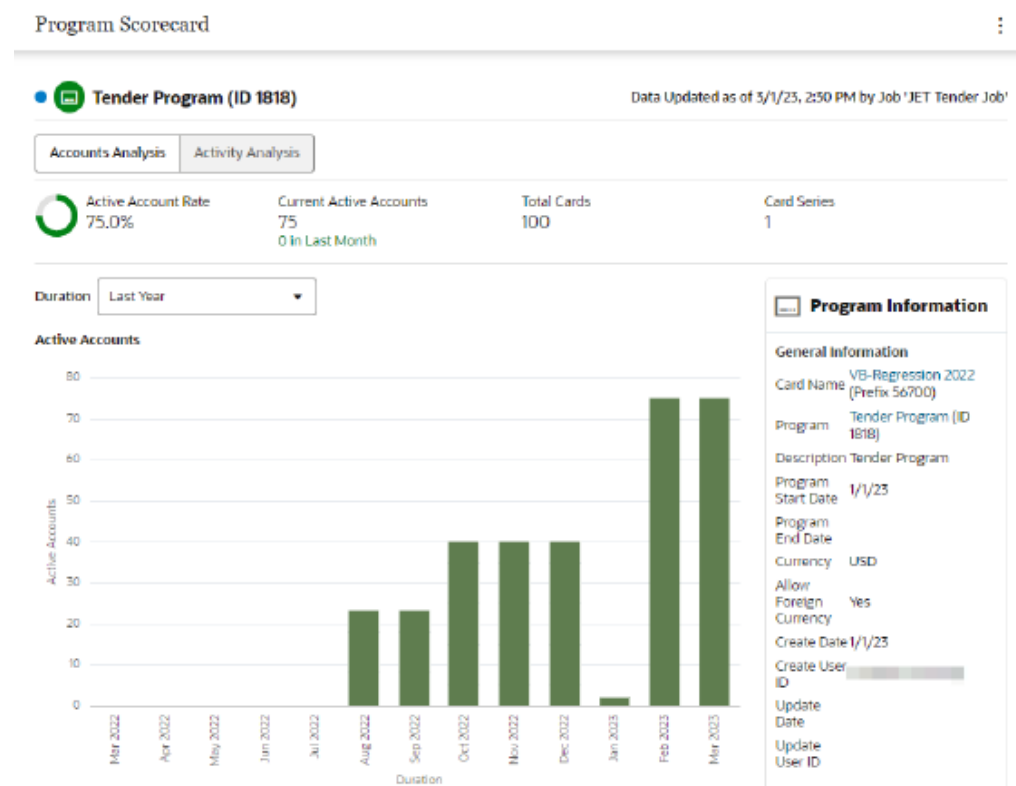
When the aggregate job for a Program Scorecard has not yet run for the month, there is no column in the graph for the new month. A message appears to the right of the Name and ID of the Tender Program with the aggregate job identified to let you know why that column is not there, and shows you the job name so you can research the job if several days have gone by and the column is not appearing.

Note:

The Title section also displays a vertical ellipse. Click the vertical ellipse to either Edit or View the Program. See [Editing Programs](#) or [Viewing Programs](#) for more information.

- **Analysis Toggles** - (chart displays on all windows) The following Analysis toggles are included for the Tender Program Scorecard:
- **Accounts Analysis**
 - Active Account Rate - The percentage of currently Activated Accounts that have been activated out of the total.
 - Current Active Accounts - The total number of accounts currently active for the selected program.
 - Total Cards - Total number of cards in all series.
 - Card Series - Number of card series.
- **Accounts Analysis Chart** - Displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date analysis of the Active Accounts.

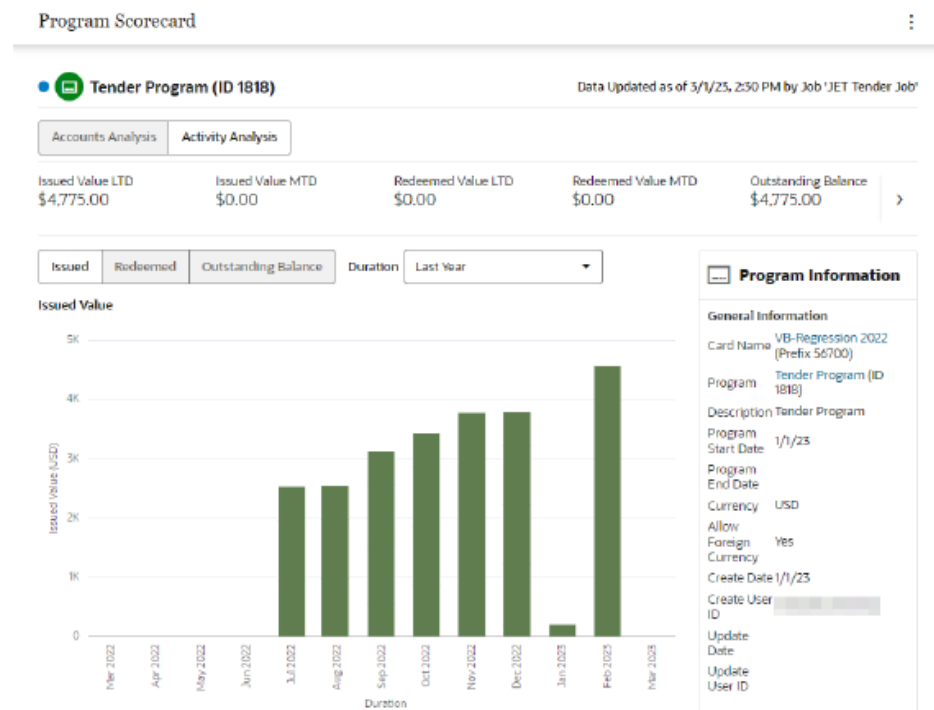
Figure 10-76 Accounts Analysis Chart



- **Activity Analysis**
 - Issued Value LTD - The total value issued lifetime to date to all active account holders. This includes the activation amount, recharge amount and any amounts returned to the account.
 - Issued Value MTD - The total value issued month to date to all active account holders. This includes the activation amount, recharge amount and any amounts returned to the account.
 - Redeemed Value LTD - The total value redeemed lifetime to date for all active account holders. This includes the cash out amount, post authorize amount, redeemed amount and service charge amount.

- Redeemed Value MTD - The total value redeemed month to date for all active account holders. This includes the cash out amount, post authorize amount, redeemed amount and service charge amount.
- Outstanding Balance - The total value issued that has not yet been redeemed for all active account holders.
- Average Balance Per Account - The average balance held on account for all active account holders. This is calculated by dividing the total outstanding balance divided by the total number of active accounts.
- **Activity Analysis Charts** - Displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date analysis of the Tender.

Figure 10-77 Activity Analysis - Issued

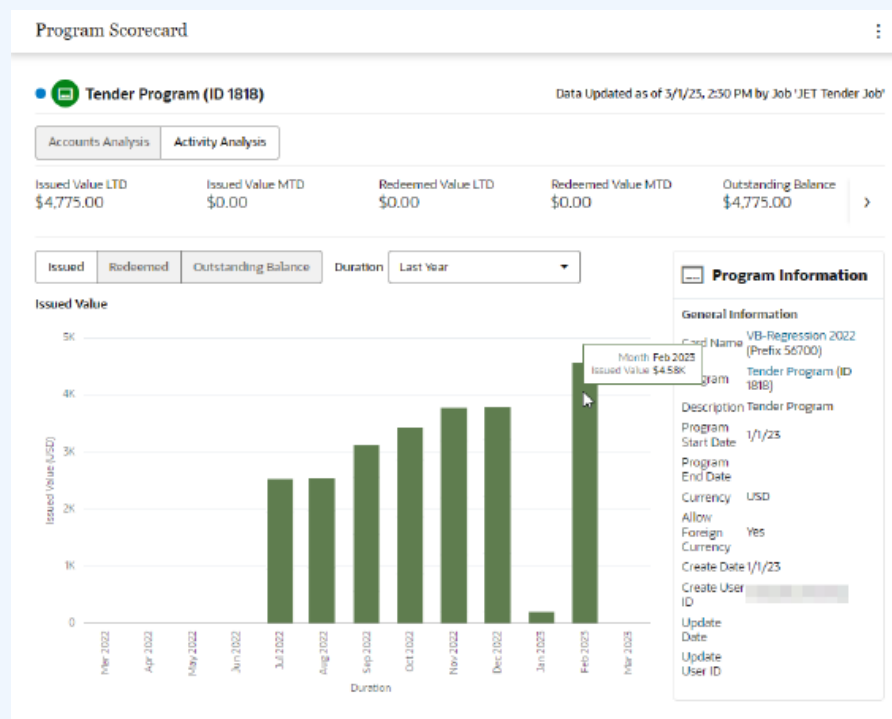


- Issued Value
- Redeemed
- Outstanding Balance

 **Note:**

Hovering the mouse over any bar in the graph displays the information for that bar.

Figure 10-78 Chart Tooltip



- Program Information - (displays on all windows) Lists the General Information including:
 - Card Name - Click the link to open the [View Card](#) screen.
 - Program - Click the link to open the [View Program](#) screen.
 - Description
 - Program Start Date
 - Program End Date
 - Currency
 - Allow Foreign Currency
 - Create Date
 - Create User ID
 - Update Date
 - Update User ID
6. When finished viewing the Program Scorecard, click the **X** in the Program Title tab to close the window.

Viewing the Loyalty Program Scorecard

The Program Scorecard provides a snapshot of how a Loyalty Program is doing.

To access the Program Scorecard for analysis on a Loyalty Program, the user can select the Loyalty Program name link on either the Programs List or the Programs Advanced Search results windows.

To access the Programs List:

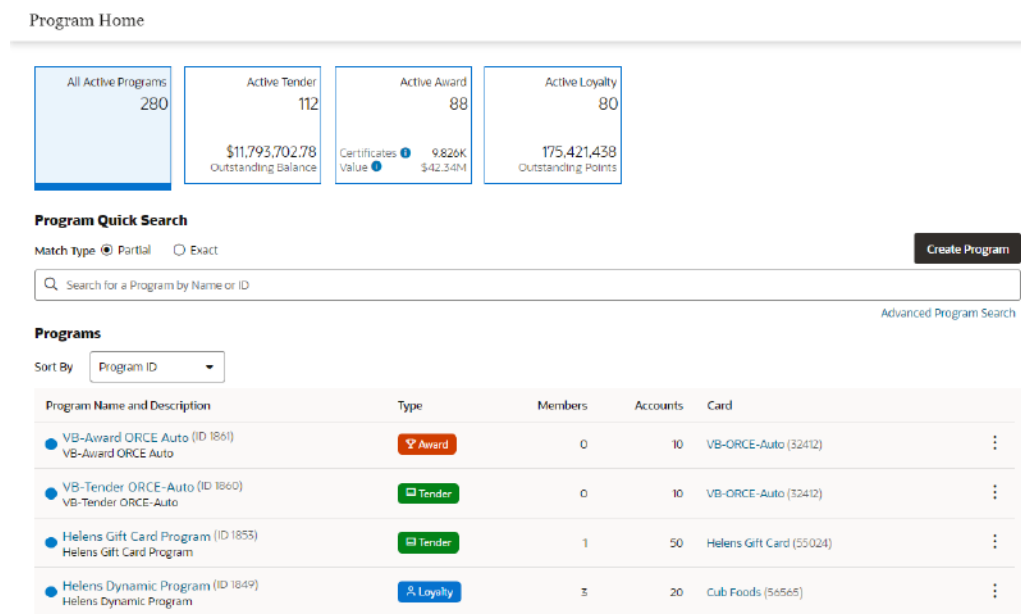
1. From the **Main** menu, click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Program**.
3. Click **Program Home**. This displays the Program Home tab which contains the Program List.



Note:

You will need the Program Home role in order to see this menu option.

Figure 10-79 Program Home



To access Program Advanced Search:

1. From the **Main** menu, click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Program Search**.
3. Enter **criteria** in the Search panel where you can search for a unique promotion, or click **Search** to retrieve all promotions.

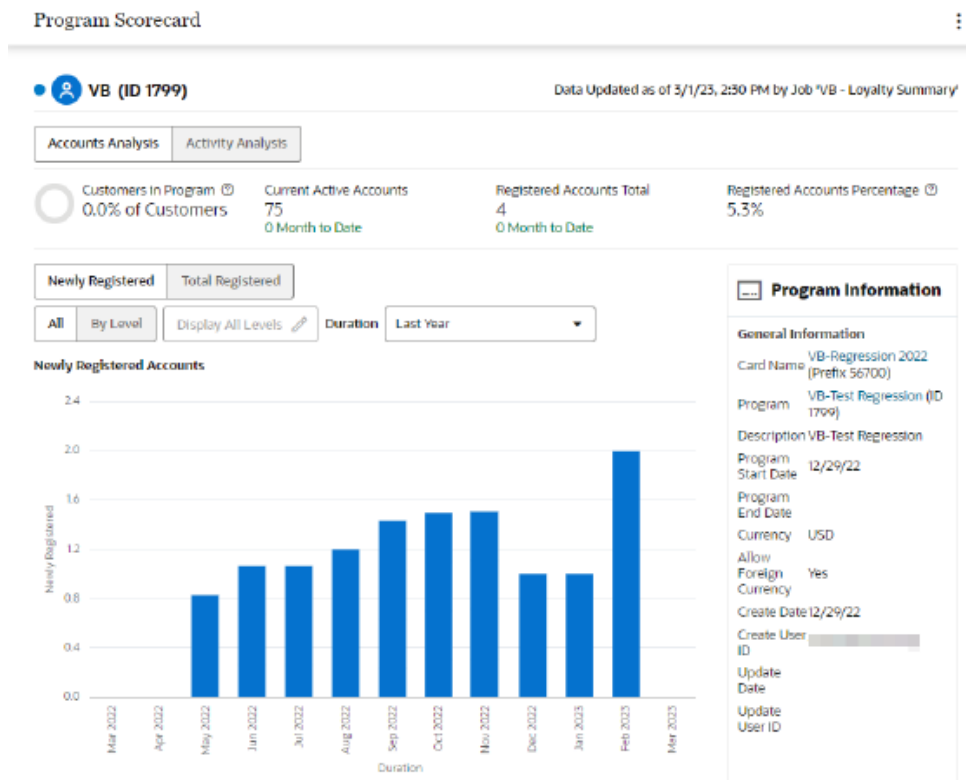
Figure 10-80 Advanced Program Search

Program Search

The screenshot displays a 'Program Search' interface. On the left, a sidebar titled 'Search' contains several filters: 'Program ID' (text input), 'Program Type' (dropdown menu with 'All' selected), 'Programs' (dropdown menu with 'All' selected), 'Card Serial Number Prefix' (text input), and 'Created By' (dropdown menu with 'Everyone' selected). At the bottom of the sidebar are 'Reset' and 'Search' buttons. The main area is titled 'Search Results' and contains the text 'Enter search parameters in the sidebar to search for Programs.' and a 'Create Program' button.

4. Select the **link** on a **Loyalty Program Name**, which then opens the Program Scorecard for that Loyalty Program.

Figure 10-81 Program Scorecard: Loyalty Program



- The Program Scorecard window displays the following sections:
 - Title** (displays on all windows) - Displays the Name and ID of the Loyalty Program as well as an indicator of whether the program is currently active or inactive (a solid Blue Dot represents an Active Program while an Empty Dot represents an Inactive Program).

Note:

When the aggregate job for a Program Scorecard has not yet run for the month, there is no column in the graph for the new month. A message appears to the right of the Name and ID of the Loyalty Program with the aggregate job identified to let you know why that column is not there, and shows you the job name so you can research the job if several days have gone by and the column is not appearing.

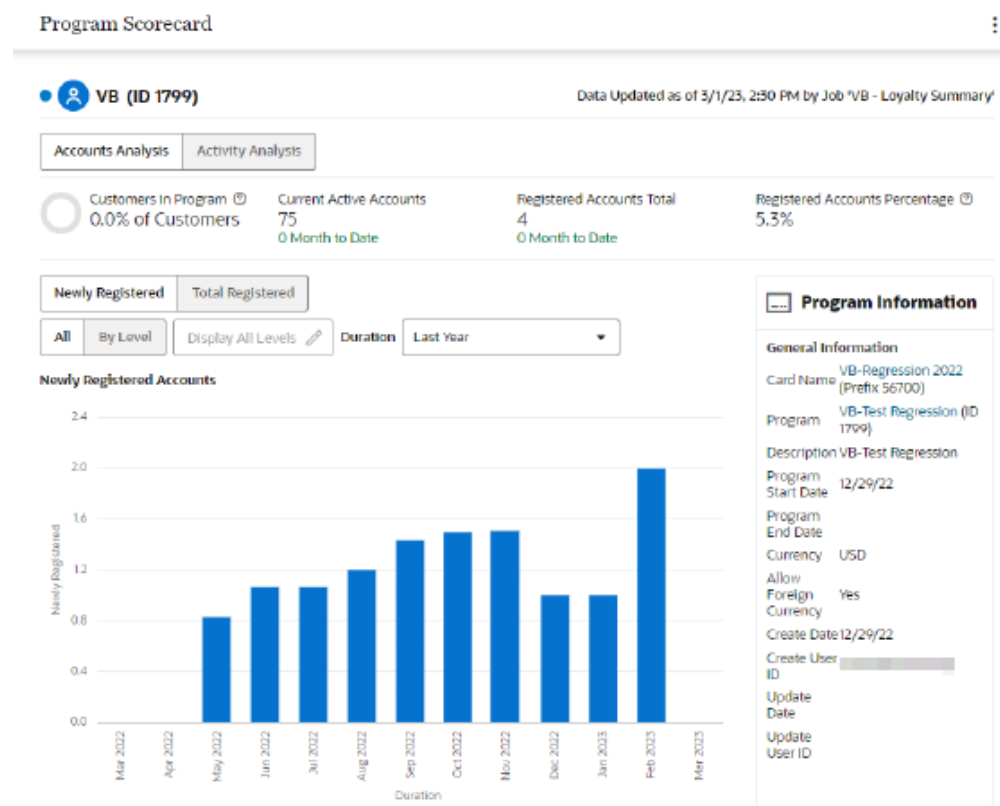
Note:

The Title section also displays a vertical ellipse. Click the vertical ellipse to either Edit or View the Program. See [Editing Programs](#) or [Viewing Programs](#) for more information.

Analysis Toggles - (chart displays on all windows) The following Analysis toggles are included for the Loyalty Program Scorecard:

- **Accounts Analysis**
 - Customers in Program - The percentage of customers that are active members of the selected program. This includes both primary and secondary account holders.
 - Current Active Accounts - The total number of accounts currently active for the selected program.
 - Registered Accounts Total - The total number of accounts that are registered to customers and are not anonymous for the program.
 - Registered Accounts Percentage - The percentage of active accounts that are registered to customers compared to all accounts (registered plus anonymous) for the program.
- **Accounts Analysis Chart** - Displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date analysis of the Active Accounts by using the Newly Registered or Total Registered toggles.

Figure 10-82 Accounts Analysis Chart



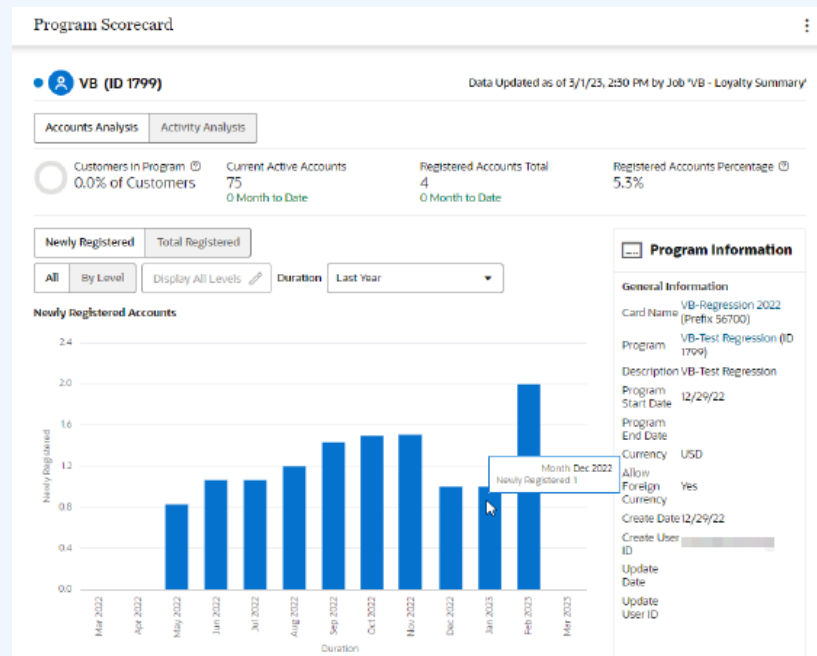
- Newly Registered
 - * All - Displays all levels.
 - * By Level - Activates the Display All Levels button as shown in . **Click** to open the Filter Levels to Display window and select the desired levels. Click **OK** to confirm selections.

- * Duration - Used for all Newly Registered options and displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date information.
- Total Registered
 - * All - Displays all levels
 - * By Level - Activates the Display All Levels button as shown in . **Click** to open the Filter Levels to Display window and select the desired levels. Click **OK** to confirm selections.
 - * Duration - Used for all Total Registered options and displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date information

 **Note:**

Hovering the mouse over any bar in the graph displays the information for that bar.

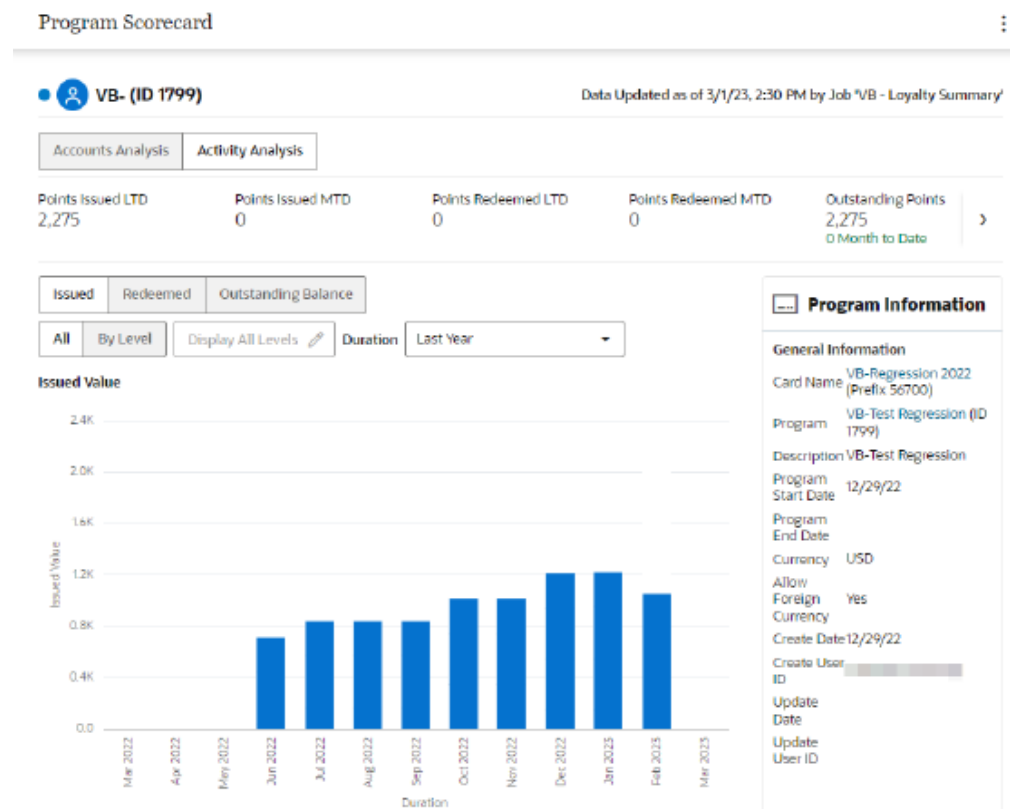
Figure 10-83 Chart Tooltip



- **Activity Analysis**
 - Points Issued LTD - The total number of lifetime to date points issued to all active account holders. This includes both earned and bonus points. Escrow points are excluded.
 - Points Issued MTD - The total number of month to date points issued to all active account holders. This includes both earned and bonus points. Escrow points are excluded.
 - Points Redeemed LTD - The total number of lifetime to date points redeemed by active account holders for the program.

- Points Redeemed Month MTD - The total number of month to date points redeemed by active account holders for the program.
- Outstanding Points - The total number of points issued that have not yet been redeemed. This includes both earned and bonus points. Escrow points are excluded.
- Average Balance Per Account - The average points balance for all active accounts for the loyalty program. This includes both registered and anonymous account holders. This is calculated by dividing the total earned points balance by the total number of active accounts.
- **Activity Analysis Charts** - Displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date analysis of the points by using the Issued, Redeemed, or Outstanding Balance toggles.

Figure 10-84 Activity Analysis Chart



- **Issued**

- * All - Displays all levels
- * By Level - Activates the Display All Levels button as shown in . **Click** to open the Filter Levels to Display window and select the desired levels. Click **OK** to confirm selections.
- * Duration - Used for all Issued Value options and displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date information

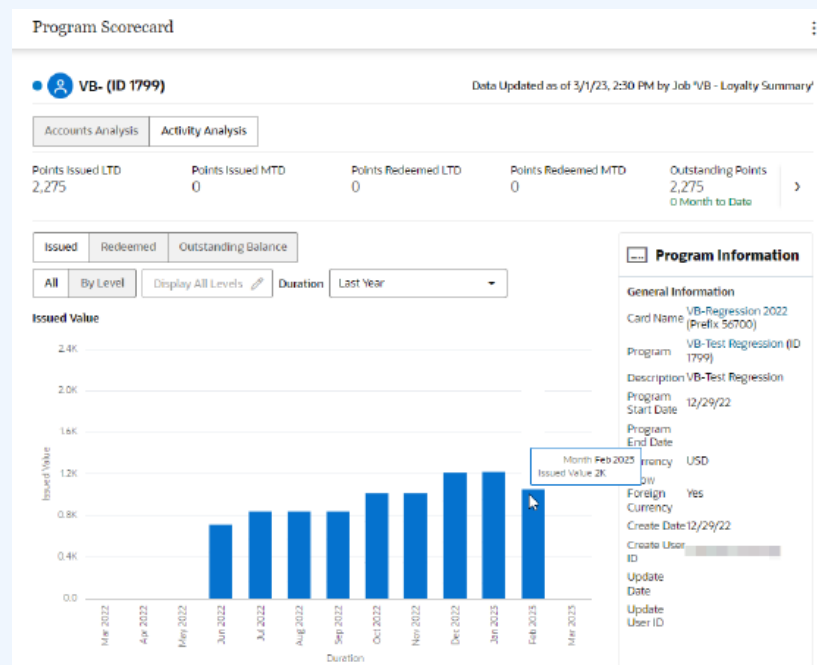
- **Redeemed**

- * All - Displays all levels
 - * By Level - Activates the Display All Levels button as shown in . **Click** to open the Filter Levels to Display window and select the desired levels. Click **OK** to confirm selections.
 - * Duration - Used for all Redeemed Value options and displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date information
- **Outstanding Balance**
- * All - Displays all levels
 - * By Level - Activates the Display All Levels button as shown in . **Click** to open the Filter Levels to Display window and select the desired levels. Click **OK** to confirm selections.
 - * Duration - Used for all Outstanding E-Award Balance options and displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date information

 **Note:**

Hovering the mouse over any bar in the graph displays the information for that bar.

Figure 10-85 Chart Tooltip



- Accounts Summary - (displays on all windows) Summarized the following information:
 - Loyalty Program Levels - Lists the Loyalty Program Total and then lists each level created within that Loyalty Program

- Percent of Program - The percentage of all active accounts in the loyalty program level compared to the entire program. This includes both registered and anonymous account holders.
 - Points Issued - The total number of lifetime to date points issued to all active account holders for the loyalty level. This includes both earned and bonus points. Escrow points are excluded.
 - Points Redeemed - The total number of lifetime to date points redeemed by active account holders for the loyalty level.
 - Members Who Received Points - The total number of unique customer ID's associated with a points issue transaction for the loyalty program level. This includes both primary and secondary account holders.
 - Average Points Balance - The average points balance for all active accounts for the loyalty program level. This includes both registered and anonymous account holders. This is calculated by dividing the total earned points balance by the total number of active accounts.
 - Program Information - (displays on all windows) Lists the General Information including:
 - Card Name - Click the link to open the [View Card](#) screen.
 - Program - Click the link to open the [View Program](#) screen.
 - Description
 - Program Start Date
 - Program End Date
 - Currency
 - Allow Foreign Currency
 - Create Date
 - Create User ID
 - Update Date
 - Update User ID
6. When finished viewing the Program Scorecard, click the **X** in the Program Title tab to close the window.

Viewing the Award Program Scorecard

The Program Scorecard provides a snapshot of how an Award Program is doing.

To access the Program Scorecard for analysis on an Award Program, the user can select the Award Program name link on either the Programs List or the Programs Advanced Search results windows.

To access the Programs List:

1. From the **Main** menu, click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Program**.
3. Click **Program Home**. This displays the Program Home tab which contains the Program List.



Note:

You will need the Program Home role in order to see this menu option.

Figure 10-86 Program Home

Program Home

All Active Programs
285

Active Tender
115

\$11,968,979.78
Outstanding Balance

Active Award
90

Certificates 9.826K
Value \$42.43M

Active Loyalty
80

251,847,684
Outstanding Points

Program Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact Create Program

[Advanced Program Search](#)

Programs

Sort By Program ID

Program Name and Description	Type	Members	Accounts	Card
● Automation Tender Card (ID 1892) Automation Tender Card Description	Tender	0	1	Automation Tender Card (06158)
● Automation Tender Card (ID 1891) Automation Tender Card Description	Tender	0	1	Automation Tender Card (14292)

To access Program Advanced Search:

1. From the **Main** menu, click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Program Search**.
3. Enter **criteria** in the Search panel where you can search for a unique promotion, or click **Search** to retrieve all promotions.

Figure 10-87 Advanced Program Search

Program Search

Search

Program ID

Program Type

Programs

Card Serial Number Prefix

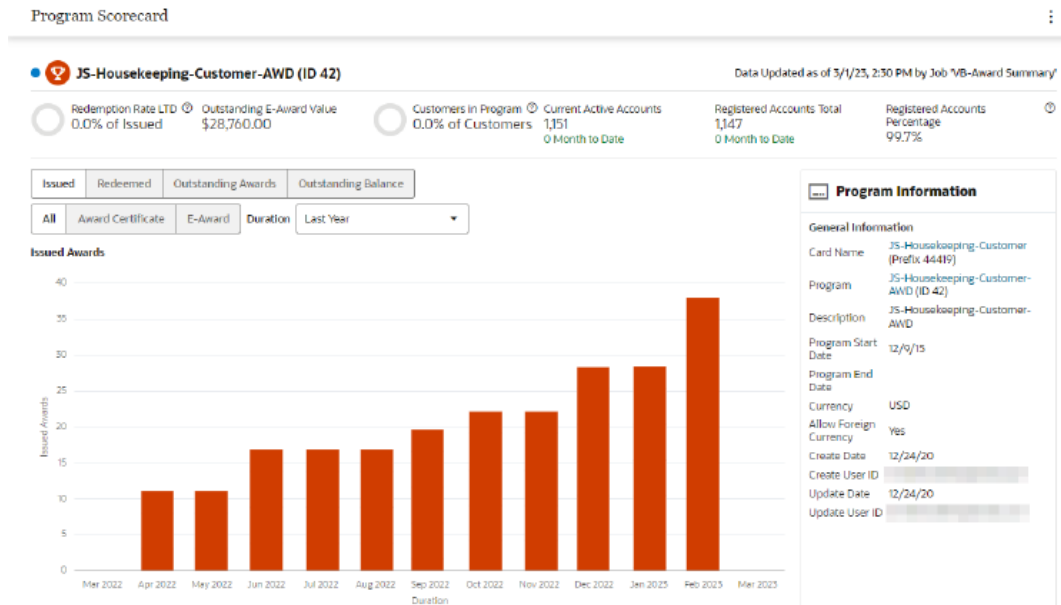
Created By

Search Results

Enter search parameters in the sidebar to search for Programs.

- Select the **link** on an **Award Program Name**, which then opens the Program Scorecard for that Award Program.

Figure 10-88 Program Scorecard: Award Program



5. The Program Scorecard window displays the following sections:

- **Title** (displays on all windows) - Displays the Name and ID of the Award Program as well as an indicator of whether the program is currently active or inactive (a solid Blue Dot represents an Active Program while an Empty Dot represents an Inactive Program).

 **Note:**

When the aggregate job for a Program Scorecard has not yet run for the month, there is no column in the graph for the new month. A message appears to the right of the Name and ID of the Award Program with the aggregate job identified to let you know why that column is not there, and shows you the job name so you can research the job if several days have gone by and the column is not appearing.

 **Note:**

The Title section also displays a vertical ellipse. Click the vertical ellipse to either Edit or View the Program. See [Editing Programs](#) or [Viewing Programs](#) for more information.

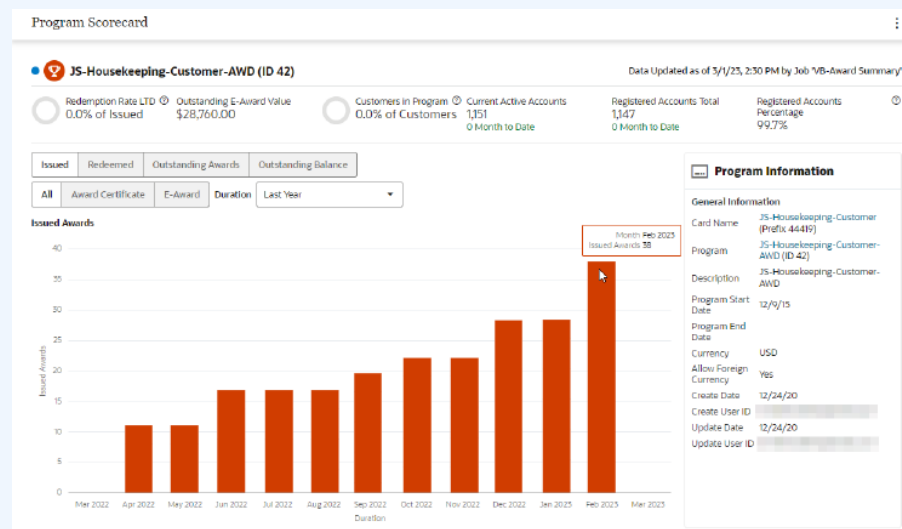
- **Metrics** (displays on all windows)
 - Redemption Rate LTD - The percentage of lifetime to date awards redeemed from those that have been issued.
 - Outstanding E-Award Value - The total value of e-awards available for redemption.
 - Customers in Program - The percentage of customers that are active members of the selected program out of all customers. This includes both primary and secondary account holders.
 - Current Active Accounts - The total number of active accounts. This includes registered and anonymous accounts.
 - Registered Accounts Total - The total number of accounts that are registered to customers and are not anonymous for the program.
 - Registered Accounts Percentage - The percentage of active accounts that are registered to customers compared to all accounts (registered plus anonymous) for the program.
- **Award Analysis Graphs**
 - Issued
 - * All - Plots all Issued Awards
 - * Award Certificate - Plots only Issued Award Certificates
 - * E-Award - Plots only Issued E-Awards
 - * Duration - Used for all Issued Award options and displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date information

- Redeemed
 - * All - Plots all Redeemed Awards
 - * Award Certificate - Plots only Redeemed Award Certificates
 - * E-Award - Plots only Redeemed E-Awards
 - * Duration - Used for all Redeemed Award options and displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date information
- Outstanding Awards
 - * All - Plots all Outstanding Awards
 - * Award Certificate - Plots only Outstanding Award Certificates
 - * E-Award - Plots only Outstanding E-Awards
 - * Duration - Used for all Outstanding Award options and displays Last Year or Lifetime to Date information
- Outstanding Balance - Graphs the outstanding E-Award balances by Last Year or Lifetime to Date durations

 **Note:**

Hovering the mouse over any bar in the graph displays the information for that bar.

Figure 10-89 Chart Tooltip



- **Program Information** - (displays on all windows) Lists the General Information including:
 - Card Name - Click the link to open the [View Card](#) screen.
 - Program - Click the link to open the [View Program](#) screen.

- Description
 - Program Start Date
 - Program End Date
 - Currency
 - Allow Foreign Currency
 - Create Date
 - Create User ID
 - Update Date
 - Update User ID
6. When finished viewing the Program Scorecard, click the **X** in the Program Title tab to close the window.

11

Card Administration

The Card Administration page provides Users with access to Cards issued to Customers, and the Accounts associated with those Cards. Users can then view information about that Card or Account, or make any necessary changes to that Card or Account. You can use this page to work with Tender Accounts, Award Accounts, and Loyalty Accounts.

Overview

This chapter contains the following:

- [Overview](#)
- [Card Search](#)
- [Card and Account Details](#)
 - [Basic Card Information](#)
- [Actions Menu](#)
 - [Activate Card](#)
 - [Add Account](#)
 - [Card Attributes](#)
 - [Deactivate Card](#)
 - [Merge Card](#)
 - [Reset Card Expiration Date](#)
 - [Unblock Card](#)
 - [View Card Details](#)
- [Tender Account](#)
- [Award Account](#)
- [Loyalty Account](#)

Card Search

The Card Search page uses Card-specific or Account-specific information to locate a Card to open in Card Administration.

To perform a Card search:

1. Either select Task>Program>Card Search or select the Card Search icon on the Menu Bar.

The Card Search page opens.

Figure 11-1 Card Search

Card Search

Search

Match Type Exact Partial

Required

Search Results

Card Image	Card Number	Serial Number	Card Holder	Contact Information
No cards to display.				

- In the Search for Card field, enter the **Card Number** or **Serial Number** of the Card you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for Cards that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.
 - Card Number - Card Number for the Card.
 - Serial Number - Serial Number for the Card.
 - Account Number - Account Number for an Account associated with a Card.
- Click the **Search** button, or press **Enter**. The Search Results window appears,.













Figure 11-2 Search Results

Card Search

Search

Match Type Exact Partial

Search Results

Card Image	Card Number	Serial Number	Card Holder	Contact Information
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 000155550867406	1000101001145712		
	<input type="radio"/> 0003052555547489	4415901001240414		
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 0003081107548893	1000401001035555		
	<input type="radio"/> 0005928935555132	9966602004018010		

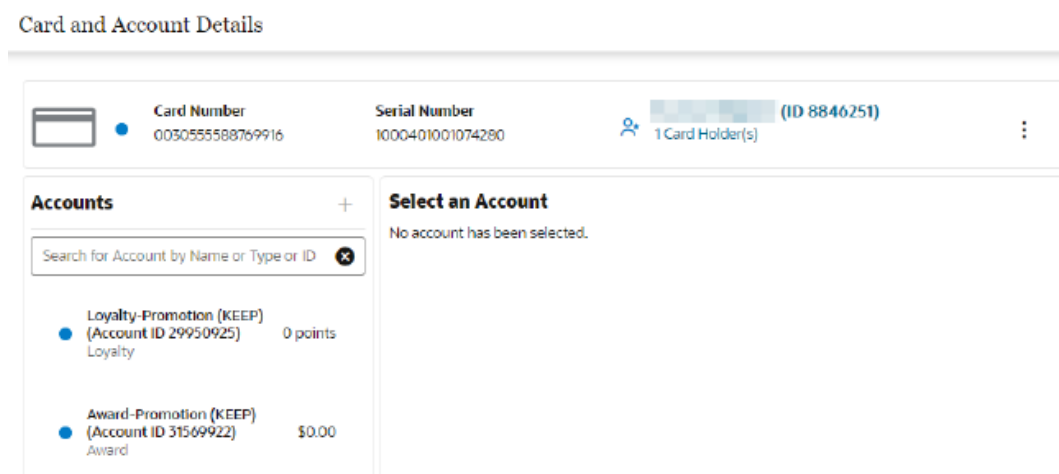
- The search results display the following fields:
- Card Image
- Card Number
- Serial Number

- Card Holder
 - Contact Information
 - If no Card is found matching the entered criteria, an error message displays.
4. Hover over any of the icons in the **Card Number** column (as shown in [Figure 11-2](#)) to see a tooltip listing the status of the Program.
 - **Active** - Filled
 - **Inactive** - Empty
 5. Click the **Card Number** which appears as a link to view the details. The Card and Account Details window appears.

 **Note:**

You can also arrive at this screen by clicking on the card number in the Customer Dashboard screen. See [Cards and Programs](#) for more information.

Figure 11-3 Card and Account Details



Card and Account Details

Card Number: 0030555588769916 Serial Number: 1000401001074280 (ID 8846251) 1 Card Holder(s)

Accounts +

Select an Account

No account has been selected.

Search for Account by Name or Type or ID

- Loyalty-Promotion (KEEP) (Account ID 29950925) 0 points Loyalty
- Award-Promotion (KEEP) (Account ID 31569922) \$0.00 Award

See [Card and Account Details](#) for more information.

Card and Account Details

The Card and Account Details page displays information about individual Cards and provides access to functions that can be performed on the Card and its associated Accounts, including:

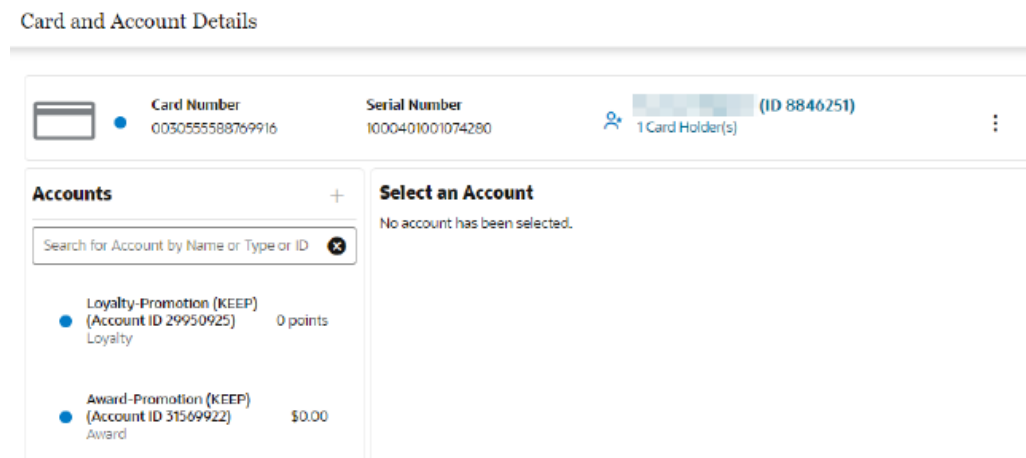
- Activate Card
- Add Account
- Card Attributes
- Deactivate Card
- Merge Card

- Reset Card Expiration Date
- Unblock Card
- View Card Details

Basic Card Information

The upper portion of the Card Administration page displays basic information about the Card and the Accounts associated with the Card. This information is always displayed in Card Administration.

Figure 11-4 Basic Card Information



This area displays the following information:

- Card Information - Basic information about the Card. This includes the following information:
 - Card Number - Card Number for the Card.
 - Serial Number - Serial Number for the Card.
 - Primary holder - Name of Customer designated as the primary holder of the Card. Click the name to open Customer Record of the primary holder in the Customer Dashboard.
 - Card Status - Current status of the Card.
 - Card Holders - Total number of Customers assigned to this Card. This includes a link that will display all cardholders in a mini popup and will allow the user to click on a name which will open the customer dashboard for the selected customer.
- Accounts Panel - Displays the Accounts associated with the Card.
 - Account Name - Name of the Account.
 - Account Number - Account Number for the Account.
 - Account Type - Type of Account (Tender, Award, or Loyalty).
 - Value
 - Tender - Current balance in the tender account.

Award - Current E-Award balance for Award Accounts.

Loyalty - Current Points balance for Loyalty Accounts

-
-
- Select an Account Panel - This section lists the accounts associated with the Card. Select an **Account** listed in the Accounts Panel to populate the Account Details and Activity.

Figure 11-5 Account Details and Activity

Level	Balance	Escrow	YTD	LTD	Currency	First Used	Last Used
Loyalty-Promotion (KEEP)	0 points	0 points	0 points	0 points	USD	1/28/22	1/28/22

Activity ID	Voided	Activity Type	Value	Date and Time	Location
1745235		Activate	0 points	1/28/22, 2:46 PM	99901

The fields are based on the type of program selected.

- Filter By - Options are based on the type of program selected.
- Sort By - Options are based on the type of program selected.
- Account Activity List
 - Activity ID - The ID of the Activity. Click the **Activity ID** to see the Activity Details. Click **Done** to close the Activity Details and return to the Activity List.
 - Voided - Indicates whether or not the activity was voided.
 - Activity Type - Type of activity performed.
 - Value
 - Tender - Displays the activity amount.
 - Award - Displays the e-award value or the entitlement offer name. A link will display for an entitlement offer that will open the View Offer screen.
 - Loyalty - Displays the points associated with the activity.
 - Date and Time - Date and Time of the activity.
 - Location - Location where the activity occurred. Click on the Location ID to view details.
 - Coupon ID - The ID of the Coupon (visible for Award Program only).

Actions Menu

The Actions Menu for the Card Administration page (without selecting a specific Account, such as an Award Account) has the following options:

Figure 11-6 Card Actions Menu

Card and Account Details

The screenshot shows the 'Card and Account Details' interface. At the top, it displays the card number (003055588769916), serial number (1000401001074280), and cardholder name (Karina Migliore (ID 8846251)). Below this, there are sections for 'Accounts' and 'Loyalty-Promotion (KEEP) (Account ID 29950925)'. The 'Accounts' section lists 'Loyalty-Promotion (KEEP) (Account ID 29950925)' with 0 points and 'Award-Promotion (KEEP) (Account ID 31569922)' with \$0.00. The 'Loyalty-Promotion' section includes a table with columns: Level, Balance, Escrow, YTD, LTD, Curr, and Used. Below this is an 'Account Activity' section with a filter set to 'All' and a table with columns: Activity ID, Voided, Activity Type, Value, and Location. A red box highlights the 'Card Actions Menu' in the top right corner, which contains the following options: Activate Card, Add Account, Card Attributes, Deactivate Card, Merge Card, Reset Card Expiration Date, Unblock Card, and View Card Details.

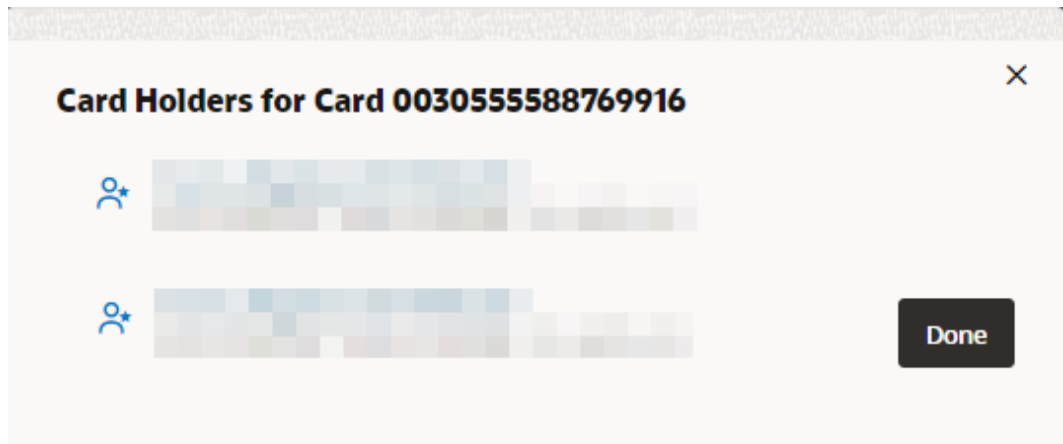
- **Activate Card** - Activate an inactive Card (only shown for inactive Cards). See [Activate Card](#).
- **Add Account** - Add a Loyalty Account to the Card. This option is available only if there is a Loyalty Account that has not been applied to the Card, when the Card was generated for a Program that has the Dynamically Create Accounts option selected. Also, the DynamicProgramAccountAdmin role controls access to this option. See [Add Account](#).
- **Card Attributes** - The details of the card attributes. See [Card Attributes](#).
- **Deactivate Card** - Deactivate an active Card (only shown for active Cards). See [Deactivate Card](#).
- **Merge Card** - Merge the Card with another Card. See [Merge Card](#).
- **Reset Card Expiration Date** - Set a new expiration date for the Card. See [Reset Card Expiration Date](#).
- **Unblock Card** - Enables you to unblock a card that has been blocked from deactivating or merging a card with a tender account. See [Unblock Card](#).
- **View Card Details** - Displays the details for the selected card. See [View Card Details](#).

Open Customer Record

To open the Customer Record for the Customer associated with the Card, see [Figure 11-4](#) and do one of the following:

- Click the **name** of the Primary holder. The Customer Record of the primary holder opens in the Customer Dashboard.
- Click the **number** of Card Holders to open a menu containing a menu of all of the Customers associated with the Card. Click the **name** in the menu to open the Customer Record in the Customer Dashboard.

Figure 11-7 Card Holders

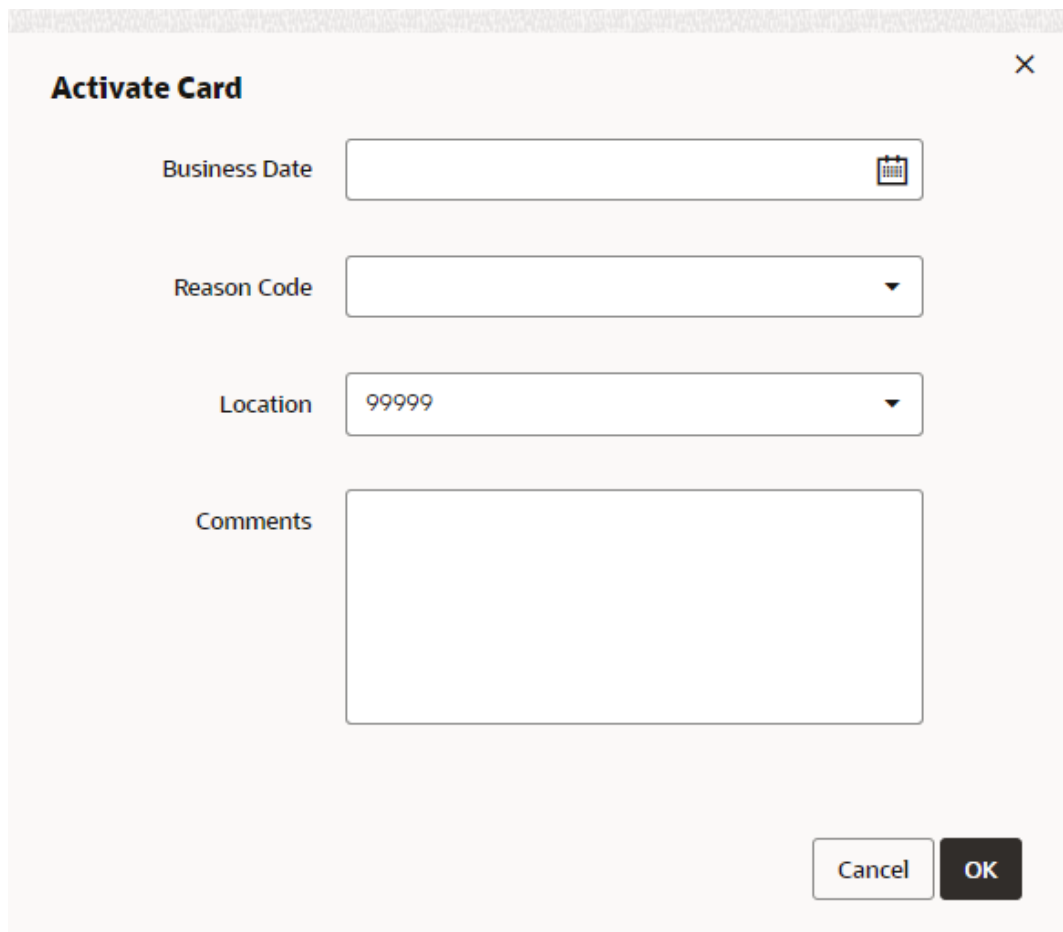


Activate Card

To activate a card do the following:

1. Click **Activate Card** in the Actions Menu. The Activate Card Window opens.

Figure 11-8 Activate Card Window



2. Select the **Business Date**.
3. Select the **Reason Code**.
4. Select the **Location** where the activation is being performed.
5. Enter **Comments** describing the reason for activating the Card.
6. Either click **OK** to close the Window and activate the Card or click **Cancel** to close the Window and keep the Card inactive.

Add Account

Use this window to add a Loyalty Account to an activated Card.



Note:

This option is available only if there is Loyalty Account that has not been applied to the Card, when the Card was generated for a Program that has the Dynamically Create Accounts option selected. Also, the DynamicProgramAccountAdmin role controls access to this option.

1. Click **Add Account** in the Actions Menu, or click the **+ (Plus)** icon in the Accounts panel. The Add Account Window opens.

Figure 11-9 Add Account

Add Account ✕

Programs (Please select) Required

Program Description

Loyalty Activation Points

Reason Code

Location 99999

Comments

Cancel OK

2. Select the **Loyalty Program** to add an Account. Only Loyalty Programs that have the Dynamically Create Accounts option selected are available for selection. Also, if the Card is already associated with a Loyalty Account, it is not listed.
When you select a Loyalty Program, the associated Program Description is displayed.
3. Optionally, enter the **Loyalty Activation Points** to issue at Account activation.
4. Select the **Reason Code** that indicates why you are creating the Account.
5. Select the **Location** identifying the location associated with the Account creation.
6. Optionally, enter any **Comments** related to the Account creation.
7. Either click **OK** to create the Account or click **Cancel** to close without saving.



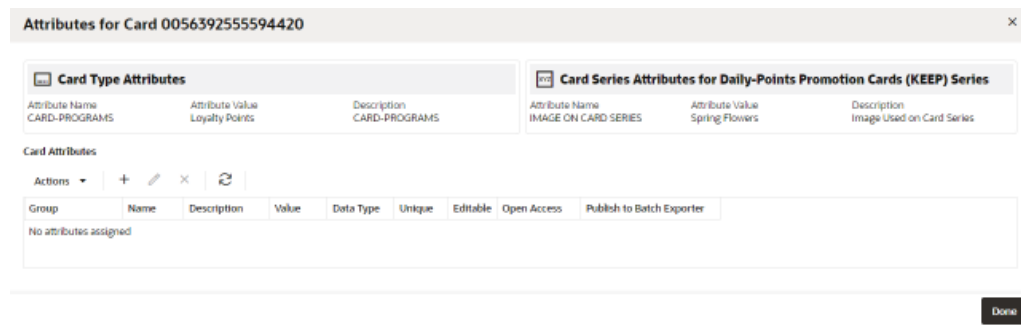
Note:

If the card is not already activated, the window is different. You can select the Program, but there is no option to enter or select Loyalty Activation Points, Reason Code, Location ID, or Comments.

Card Attributes

Click **Card Attributes** to display Attributes for the Card, its Series, and its Type, and optionally to add or modify Attributes for the Card.

Figure 11-10 Card Attributes



Card Type Attributes

Card Type Attributes include the following:

- Attribute Name
- Attribute Value
- Description

Card Series Attributes

Card Series Attributes include the following:

- Attribute Name
- Attribute Value
- Description

Card Attributes

Card Attributes - A List of Card Attributes currently assigned to the Card. Information displayed for each Card Attribute:

- Group- The group associated with the attribute.
- Name - The Name of the Card Attribute.
- Description - The Description of the Card Attribute

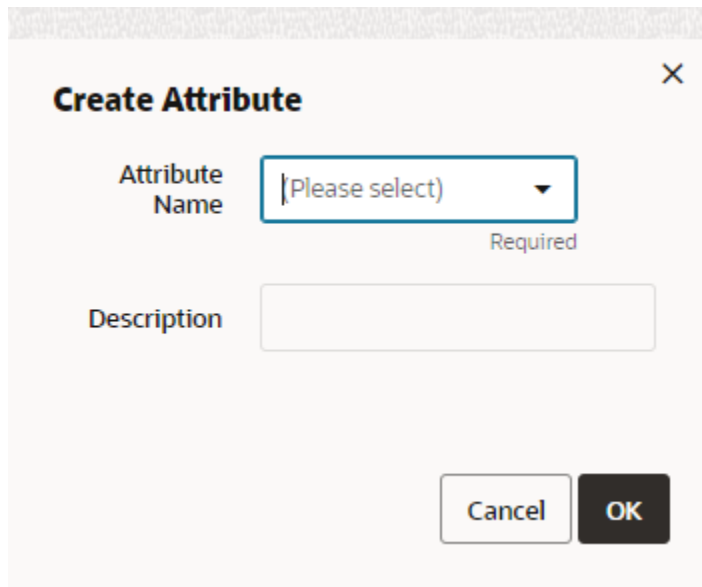
- Value - The current Value of the Card Attribute
- Data Type - The Card Attribute Data Type. Possible Data Types are:
 - Character - A string of characters entered through a Text Field
 - Number - A number value entered through a Text Field
 - Currency - A currency amount entered through a Text Field.
 - Date - A date entered through a Calendar Menu
 - Logical - A true or false value entered through a Selection Menu
 - List - One of a number of defined values selected through a Selection Menu
- Unique - Indicates whether the Attribute can be assigned more than once:
 - Yes - The Attribute can only be assigned to a Card once
 - No - The Attribute can be assigned to a Card multiple times.
- Editable - Indicates the permissions required for a user to edit this attribute value in a customer record.
 - Yes - This attribute can edited by any user with permission to edit customer records.
 - No - This attribute can only be edited by a user with system administration permissions.
- Open Access - Indicates whether there is Open Access to this attribute.
 - Yes - This Attribute has Open Access.
 - No - This Attribute does not have Open Access.
- Publish to Batch Exporter - Indicates whether each Attribute value can be included in batch export to a Marketing system.

Add Card Attribute

To add a Card Attribute to a Card:

1. Click the **Actions Menu**, then, click **Add**, or click the **Add (+)** icon. This opens Create Attribute.

Figure 11-11 Create Attribute



Create Attribute X

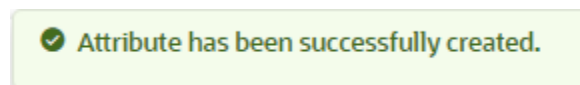
Attribute Name (Please select) Required

Description

Cancel OK

2. Select the **Attribute Name**.
3. Enter or select the **Value** for the Attribute.
4. Either click **OK** to save the Attribute or **Cancel** to close without saving.

Figure 11-12 Confirmation Notification



 **Note:**

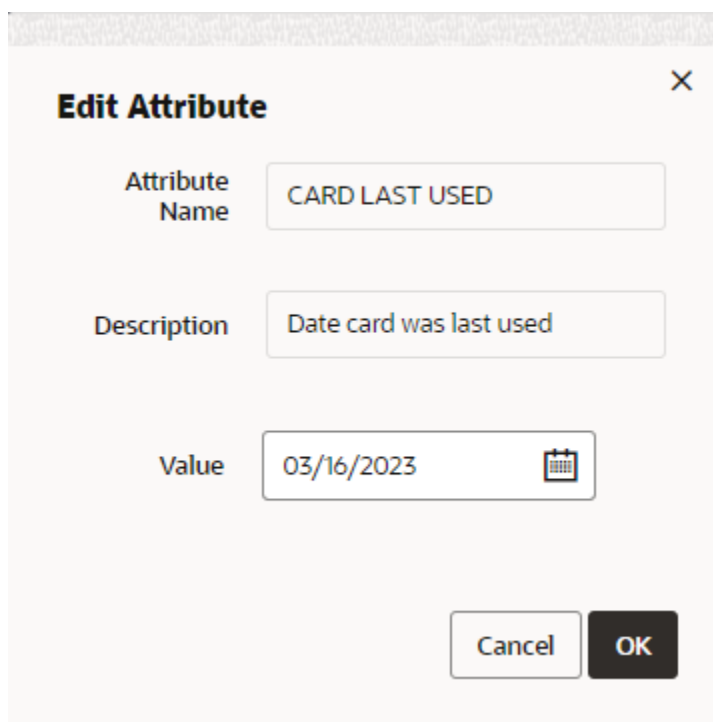
A confirmation notification appears to confirm the Attribute has been successfully created.

Editing Card Attributes

To edit an existing Card Attribute for a Card:

1. Click the **Actions Menu**, then, click **Edit**, or click the **Pencil** icon. This opens Edit Attribute.

Figure 11-13 Edit Attribute



Edit Attribute [X]

Attribute Name: CARD LAST USED

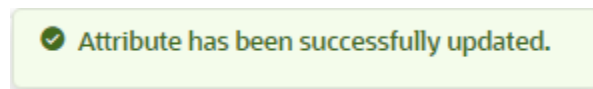
Description: Date card was last used

Value: 03/16/2023 [Calendar Icon]

Buttons: Cancel, OK

2. To edit the Card Attribute value, select or enter the new values. Click **OK** to save the changes, or **Cancel** to close without saving.

Figure 11-14 Confirmation Notification



 **Note:**

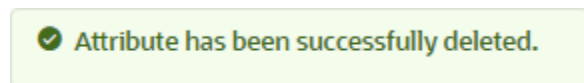
A confirmation notification appears to confirm the Attribute has been successfully updated.

Deleting a Card Attribute

To delete an existing Card Attribute for a Card:

1. Click the **Actions Menu**, then, click **Delete**, or click the **X** icon.
2. Click **OK** to delete the Attribute, or **Cancel** to close without saving.

Figure 11-15 Confirmation Notification





Note:

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the Attribute has been successfully deleted.

Deactivate Card

1. Click **Deactivate Card** in the Actions Menu. A Perform Action: Deactivate Card Window opens.

Figure 11-16 Deactivate Card Window

Deactivate Card [X]

Franchisee [Blurred Selection]

Reason Code [Dropdown]

Location 99999 [Dropdown]

Comments [Text Area]

[Cancel] [OK]

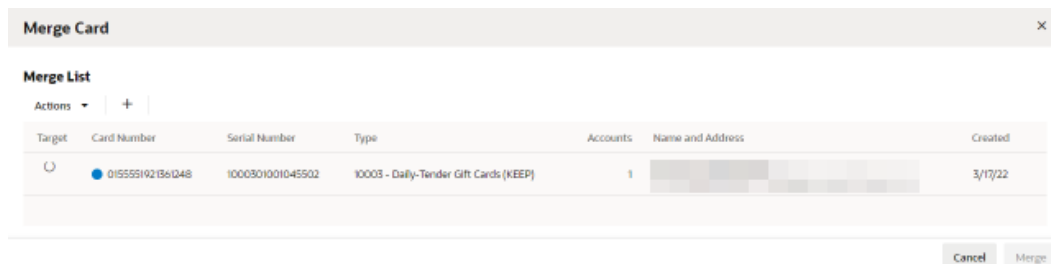
2. Select the **Franchisee** associated with the Card, if Franchises are enabled.
3. Select the **Reason Code**. Options include:
 - Client Request
 - Mgmt Decision
4. Select the **Location** where the deactivation is being performed.
5. Enter **Comments** describing the reason for deactivating the Card.
6. Either click **OK** to close the Window and deactivate the Card or click **Cancel** to close the Window and keep the Card active.

Merge Card

You can merge the Card with another Card as long as the Card Merge Permitted flag is not selected for a Program. To merge a Card with another Card:

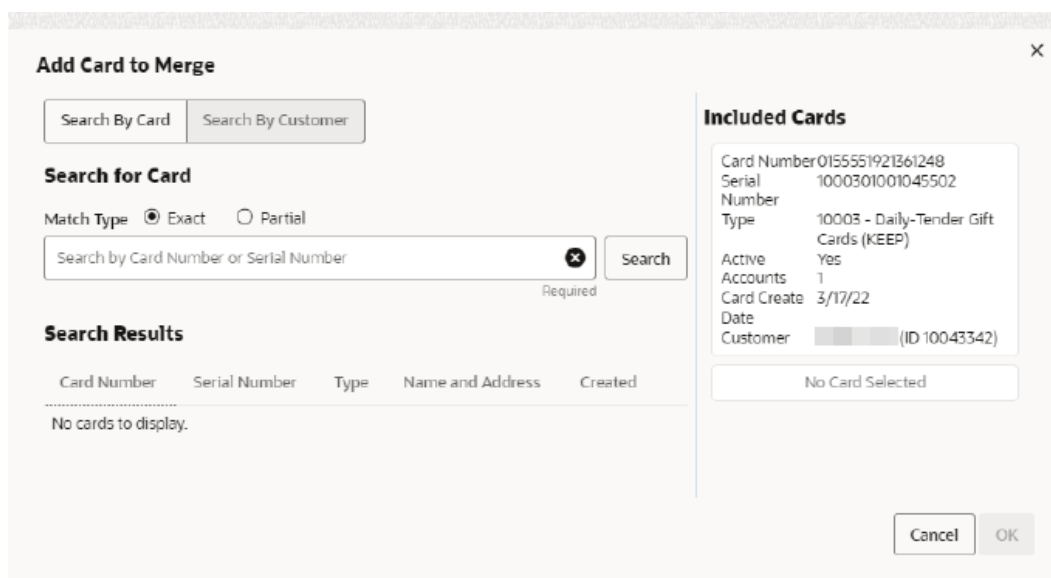
1. Click the **Actions Menu**, then, click **Merge Card**. A Merge Card Window opens.

Figure 11-17 Merge Card



2. Click the **Actions Menu**, then, click **Add Card to Merge**, or click the **+ (Plus)** icon. An Add Card to Merge Window opens.

Figure 11-18 Add Card to Merge



3. Use one of the following methods to search for a card to add to the merge.

To add a card using Search By Card

- In the Search for Card field, enter the **Card Number** or **Serial Number** of the Card you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for Cards that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.

To add a card using Search By Customer

- In the Search By Customer field, enter the **Customer Name**, **ID**, **Email Address**, or **Serial Number** of the Customer you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for

Customers that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.

4. Click **Search**. The Search Results list displays the cards or customers matching the criteria.

Figure 11-19 Search Results: Add Card to Merge

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add Card to Merge". It has two tabs: "Search By Card" and "Search By Customer". Under "Search for Card", there are radio buttons for "Exact" and "Partial" (selected), and a search input field containing "5555". A "Search" button is to the right. Below is a "Search Results" table:

Number	Serial Number	Type	Name and Address	Created	
15955080706	1000100101145712	10001 - Daily-Loyalty/Reward (KEEP)	[Redacted]	12/22/20	Select
852205547889	4418901010240414	44189 - Salon Card		1/7/21	Select

On the right, the "Included Cards" section shows details for a selected card:

```

Card Number: 0153551921340248
Serial Number: 10001001001045503
Type: 10005 - Daily-Tender Gift Cards (KEEP)
Active: Yes
Accounts: 1
Card Create Date: 3/17/22
Customer: [Redacted] (ID 10043342)
    
```

Below this is a "No Card Selected" message and "Cancel" and "OK" buttons at the bottom right.

5. Click **Select** to add the card to the merge.
6. Click **OK**. The Merge List appears.

Figure 11-20 Merge List

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Merge Card". It contains a "Merge List" section with a table:

Target	Card Number	Serial Number	Type	Accounts	Name and Address	Created	
<input type="radio"/>	5656410346899403	5656501001000003	56565 - [Redacted]	2	[Redacted]	6/8/21	
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	5656688819395490	5656501001000001	56565 - [Redacted]	2	[Redacted]	6/8/21	Remove

At the bottom right are "Cancel" and "Merge" buttons.

7. To complete the merge, select the **Target** card, then click **Merge**. The Cards are merged and the Window closes.

Note:

If you flag Loyalty Programs to Dynamically Create Accounts, it is possible that two Cards you are merging do not share the same Accounts. For example, Card A has Accounts for Programs 1 and 2, and Card B has Accounts for Programs 2 and 3. The merge will dynamically create the Accounts that do not already exist for Card A. After the merge, Card A has Accounts for Programs 1, 2, and 3, and Card B has deactivated Accounts for Programs 2 and 3.

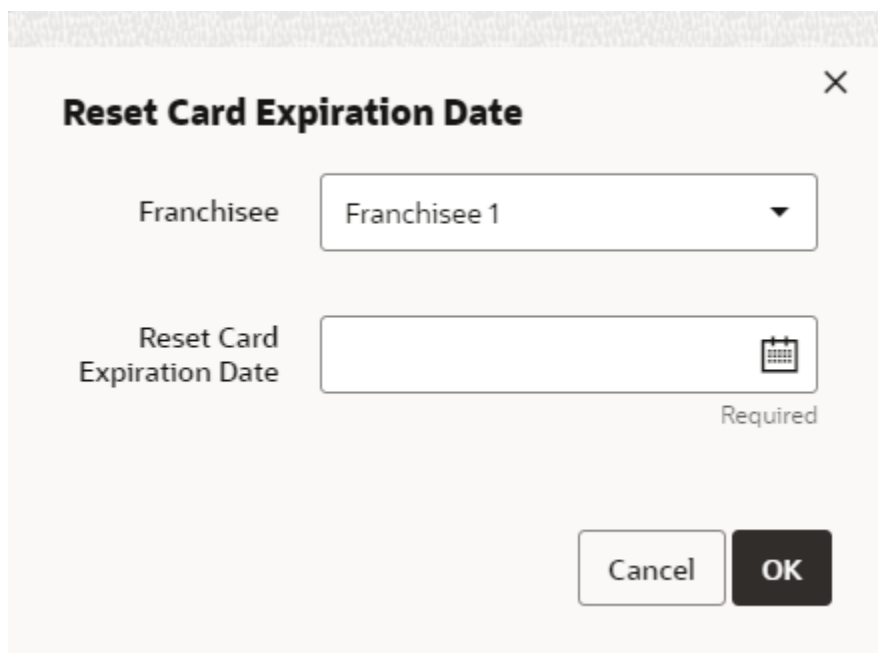
To exit the Window without merging the Cards, click **Cancel**.

Reset Card Expiration Date

Expiration dates can be set on individual Cards in Customer Engagement. To set a new expiration date for an individual Card:

1. Click **Reset Card Expiration Date** in the Actions Menu. A Reset Card Expiration Date Window opens.

Figure 11-21 Reset Card Expiration Date Window



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Reset Card Expiration Date". It features a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog contains two input fields: "Franchisee" with a dropdown menu currently showing "Franchisee 1", and "Reset Card Expiration Date" which is empty and has a calendar icon to its right. Below the "Reset Card Expiration Date" field is the word "Required". At the bottom right of the dialog are two buttons: "Cancel" and "OK".


2. Select a **Franchisee**, if Franchisees are available.
3. Use the Reset Card Expiration Date Calendar Menu, select the **new expiration date** for the Card.
4. Either click **OK** to change the Card Expiration Date to the new value and close the Window or click **Cancel** to close the Window without saving.

Unblock Card

Typically a card will be blocked when the card has been deactivated and has a tender account on the card as shown in [Figure 11-22](#). To unblock a card:

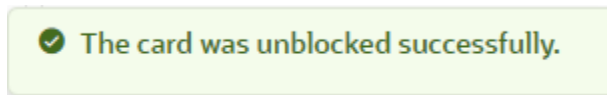
Figure 11-22 Blocked Card

Card and Account Details

	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Card Number 5507337024358037	Serial Number 5502401001000001
---	-----------------------	-------------------------------------	--	--

1. Click **Unblock Card** in the Actions Menu.
2. Select a **Reason Code**.
3. Select a **Location**.
4. Enter **Comments**.
5. Click **OK** to unblock a card, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Figure 11-23 Confirmation Notification



Note:

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the card was unblocked successfully.

View Card Details

Click **View Card Details** to open the details for a card. Click **Done** to close the window.

Figure 11-24 Card Details

Details for Card 0001555550867406

<p>Card Number 0001555550867406</p> <p>Card Prefix 10001</p> <p>Serial Number 1000101001145712</p> <p>Series Sequence 01</p> <p>Series Batch 001</p> <p>Series Name Daily-Loyalty/Award Cards (KEEP)</p> <p>Card Origin Customer Engagement</p>	<p>Card Type Daily-Loyalty/Award (KEEP)</p> <p>Card Holders 1</p> <p>Primary Card Holder Lois Morse (ID 10190613)</p> <p>Activated 5/31/22</p> <p>Expiration None</p> <p>First Used 5/31/22</p> <p>Last Used 3/9/23</p>
--	--

Done

Account Information

Click the Account Number Link to view information about a specific Account. The information displayed for each Account depends upon its Account type: Tender Account, Award Account, or Loyalty Account.

Tender Account

The following information is displayed for each Tender Account:

Figure 11-25 Tender Account Information

Accounts +

Search for Account by Name or ID

Gift Card Program (Account ID 35585425) \$1.00
Tender

Gift Card Program (Account ID 35585425)

Balance	\$1.00	Frozen Balance	\$0.00	Program Activation Amount	\$50.00	Currency	USD	Last Used	3/6/23	Account Expiration	2/7/25
----------------	--------	-----------------------	--------	----------------------------------	---------	-----------------	-----	------------------	--------	---------------------------	--------

Account Activity

Filter by: All Sort By: Date

Activity ID	Voided	Activity Type	Value	Date and Time	Location	
2315649		Redeem	\$20.75	3/6/23, 3:25 PM	99741	⋮
2257372		Settle	\$23.25	2/7/23, 1:42 PM	00005	⋮
2257371		Pre Authorize	\$0.00	2/7/23, 1:42 PM	00005	⋮
2257370		Release	\$25.00	2/7/23, 1:39 PM	00005	⋮

ORACLE

11-19

- Tender Account Administration - Displays information about the Tender Account. This area includes the following information:
 - Program Name - Name of the Program to which the Account belongs.
 - Account ID - ID number for the Account.
 - Balance - Current tender balance of the Account.
 - Frozen Balance - Balance of the Account that is currently frozen.
 - Program Activation Amount - Amount the account will be activated for when there is no activation amount specified in the transaction. The original balance on the card could be different from this program activation amount.
 - Currency - Base currency for the Program.
 - Last Used Date - Date of the most recent activity on the Account.
 - Account Expiration - Date when the Account expires

 **Note:**

Note that if the Tender Account was merged with another Account, Customer Engagement will display the message "Account has been merged" below the Tender Account Administration area.

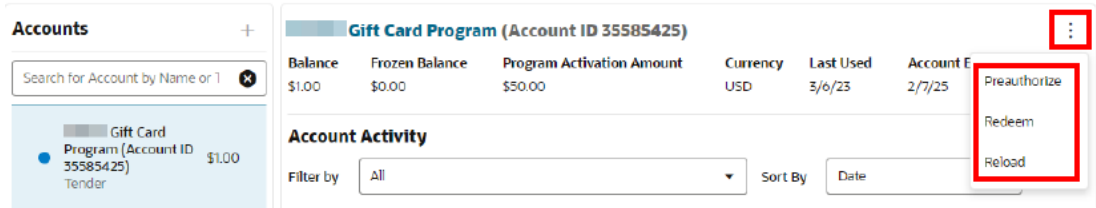
- Tender Account Activity - A List displaying each action performed on the Account. The information in the List is determined by the Filter Activity Menu. The following information is displayed for each Account action:
 - Activity ID - ID of the activity on the Account.
 - Voided - Indicates whether the activity was voided.
 - Activity Type - Type of activity performed.
 - Value - Value applied to the Account by the activity.
 - Date and Time - Date and time of the activity.
 - Location - ID of the location where the activity occurred.

Filter Activity Menu

The Filter Activity menu is a Filter for the Tender Account Activity List. This Selection Menu filters the Tender Account Activity List by Activity Type, such as Deactivate. The default setting is All.

Tender Account Actions Menu

Figure 11-26 Tender Account Actions Menu



The Actions Menu for Tender Accounts displays the following options:

- Preauthorize - Preauthorize an amount on the Card. See Pre-Authorize an Amount.
- Redeem - Redeem an existing amount from the balance on the Card. See Redeem an Amount.
- Reload - Reload the Card with an additional amount. See Reload a Card.

Preauthorize an Amount

To preauthorize an amount on a Card:

1. Click **Preauthorize** in the Tender Account Actions Menu for a Tender Account. A Perform Action: Preauthorize Window opens.

Figure 11-27 Preauthorize Window

Perform Action: Preauthorize X

Amount Required

Reason Code

Currency

Location

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

2. Enter the information for the pre-authorization:
 - **Amount** - The amount to be pre-authorized for the Card.
 - **Reason Code** - Use the Selection Menu to select the reason for the pre-authorization.
 - **Currency** - Use the Selection Menu to select the currency in which to pre-authorize the amount, or select Use Program [default] to use the base currency for the Program. This option is only available for Tender Programs that allow foreign currencies.
 - **Location** - Use the Selection Menu to select the location where the pre-authorization is being performed.
 - **Comments** - Enter any comments describing the pre-authorization.

3. Either click **OK** to perform the pre-authorization and close the Window or click **Cancel** to close the Window without pre-authorizing an amount.

Redeem an Amount

To redeem an amount from a Card:

1. Click Redeem in the Tender Account Actions Menu for a Tender Account. A Perform Action: Redeem Window opens.

Figure 11-28 Perform Action: Redeem

Perform Action: Redeem ×

Amount Required

Business Date

Reason Code ▼

Currency ▼

Location ▼

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

2. Enter the information for the redemption:
 - **Amount** - The amount to be redeemed.
 - **Reason Code** - Use the Selection Menu to select the reason for the redemption.

- **Currency** - Use the Selection Menu to select the currency in which to redeem the amount, or select Use Program [default] to use the base currency for the Program. This field can only be changed in Tender Programs that allow foreign currencies.
 - **Location** - Use the Selection Menu to select the location where the redemption is being performed.
 - **Comments** - Enter any comments describing the redemption.
3. Either click **OK** to perform the redemption and close the Window or click **Cancel** to close the Window without redeeming an amount.

Reload a Card

To reload a Card with an amount:

1. Click Reload in the Tender Account Actions Menu for a Tender Account. A Perform Action: Reload Window opens.

Figure 11-29 Perform Action: Reload

Perform Action: Reload X

Amount Required

Reason Code

Currency

Location

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

2. Enter the information for the reload:
 - **Amount** - The amount to be loaded onto the Card.
 - **Reason Code** - Use the Selection Menu to select the reason for the reload.
 - **Currency** - Use the Selection Menu to select the currency in which to reload the amount, or select Use Program [default] to use the base currency for the Program. This option can only be changed in Tender Programs that allow foreign currencies.
 - **Location** - Use the Selection Menu to select the location where the reload is being performed.
 - **Comments** - Enter any comments describing the reload.
3. Either click **OK** to perform the reload and close the Window or click **Cancel** to close the Window without reloading the Card.

Account Activity Actions Menu

The Actions Menu for Tender Accounts Account Activity List displays the following options:

- **Release Authorization** - Releases the Authorization so that you can resolve an issue with the card.
- **Reverse Activity** - Reverses the selected activity
- **Settle Authorization** - Settles a preauthorization for a card, so that you can resolve an issue with the card.
- **View Activity Details** - Views the details of the selected activity.
- **Void Activity** - Voids the selected activity

Release Authorization

To Release Authorization:

1. Select **Release Authorization** in the Actions Menu. A Release Authorization Window opens.

Figure 11-30 Release Authorization

Release Authorization X

Amount 10.00

Reason Code (Please select) ▼

Location 99999 ▼

Comments

Current User ID [redacted]@oracle.com - Ken Ramoska

Cancel OK

2. Select the **Reason Code**.
3. Select the **Location**.
4. Enter **Comments**.
5. Either click the **OK** button to release the authorization and close the Window or click the **Cancel** button to close the window without saving.

Reverse Activity

To Reverse Activity:

1. Select **Reverse** in the Actions Menu. A Reverse Activity Window opens.

Figure 11-31 Reverse Activity

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Reverse Activity" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog contains the following fields and controls:

- Amount:** A text input field containing the value "23.25".
- Reason Code:** A dropdown menu with the text "(Please select)" and a downward arrow.
- Currency:** A text input field containing the value "USD".
- Location:** A dropdown menu with the value "99999" and a downward arrow.
- Comments:** A large, empty text area for entering details.
- Current User ID:** A text input field containing a blurred, masked user ID.
- Buttons:** "Cancel" and "OK" buttons are located at the bottom right of the dialog.

2. Select the **Reason Code** for the Reverse in the Selection Menu.
3. Select the **Location** to be used for the Reverse in the Selection Menu.
4. Enter **Comments** describing the reasons for the Reverse.
5. Either click the **OK** button to reverse the activity and close the Window or click the **Cancel** button to close the Window without reversing the activity.

Settle Authorization

To Settle Authorization:

1. Select **Settle Authorization** in the Actions Menu. A Settle Authorization window opens.

Figure 11-32 Settle Authorization

Settle Authorization ×

Amount

Reason Code

Currency

Location

Comments

Current User ID

2. Enter the **Amount**.
3. Select the **Reason Code** for the Reverse in the Selection Menu.
4. Select the **Location**.
5. Enter **Comments**.
6. Either click the **OK** button to settle the authorization and close the Window or click the **Cancel** button to close the window without saving.

View Activity Details

Click an activity to view detailed information about an activity in the List of activities displayed for a Tender Account. The activity displays in the Activity Detail Window.

Figure 11-33 Activity Details Window - Tender Account

Activity Details	
Account ID 35585425	Referenced Activity ID 0
Activity ID 2315649	Referenced Authorization Code
Activity Type Redeem	Merged From Account 0
Activity Date/Time 3/6/23, 3:25 PM	Location 99741-Austin-TX (ID 99741)
Authorization Code 0002315649000556	Business Date 11/4/22
Amount 20.75	Retail Transaction Sequence 1
Currency USD	Workstation ID 1
Exchange Rate 1	Operator ID tom.a.lewis@oracle.com
Requested Amount 175.00	Retail Transaction ID 99741000012022110400000001
Requested Currency USD	Create Date 3/6/23, 3:25 PM
Void Flag No	Create User ID tom.a.lewis@oracle.com
Error Description	Update Date
Franchisee	Update User ID
Reason Code	
Comments	

Done

The Activity Detail Window displays the following information for the selected activity:

- Account ID - ID number for the Account associated with the activity.
- Activity ID - ID of the activity on the Account.
- Activity Type - Type of activity performed.
- Activity Date/Time - Date and time of the activity.
- Authorization Code - Authorization Code used by the activity.
- Amount - Amount applied to the Card by the activity.
- Currency - Currency used for the amount, if different from the base currency.
- Exchange Rate - If the transaction was performed in a foreign currency, the exchange rate between the foreign currency and the Account's base currency.
- Requested Amount - Requested currency amount.
- Requested Currency - Currency used for the requested amount, if different from the base currency.

- Void Flag - Indicates whether the activity was voided.
- Error Description - If an error occurred during the activity, a description of the error.
- Franchisee - Franchisee associated with the activity.
- Reason Code - Reason for the activity.
- New Expiration Date - The date the card expires.
- Referenced Activity ID - ID of an activity to which this activity refers.
- Referenced Authorization Code - Authorization Code used by the Referenced Activity.
- Merged From Account - If the Account was moved from another Account by a Card Merge, the ID number of the Account previously associated with the activity.
- Location ID - ID of the Location where the activity was performed.
- Location Name - Name of the Location where the activity was performed.
- Business Date - Business date of the activity.
- Retail Transaction ID - ID number of the activity within a retail transaction.
- Workstation ID - ID of the workstation (within the Location) where the activity was performed.
- Retail Tran ID - ID of the retail transaction of the activity. This field provides a Link to the Transaction in the Customer's Transaction History.
- Create Date - Date when the activity was created.
- Create User ID - ID of the user who created the activity.
- Update Date - Date when the activity was most recently updated.
- Update User ID - ID of the last user to update the activity.
- Comments - Additional comments entered about the activity.

Void Activity

To void an activity on an Account:

1. Open the activity in the Activity Detail Window.
2. In the Activity Detail Window, select Void in the Actions Menu. A Perform Action: Void Window opens.

Figure 11-34 Void Activity

The screenshot shows a 'Void Activity' dialog box with the following fields and values:

- Amount:** 175.00
- Reason Code:** (Please select)
- Currency:** USD
- Location:** 99999
- Comments:** (Empty text area)
- Current User ID:** (Blurred)

Buttons: Cancel, OK

3. Select the Reason Code for the Void in the Selection Menu.
4. Select the Location to be used for the Void in the Selection Menu.
5. Enter Comments describing the reasons for the Void.
6. Either click **OK** to void the activity and close the Window or click **Cancel** to close the window without voiding the activity.

Award Account

The following information is displayed for each Award Account.

Figure 11-35 Award Account Information

Food Awards (Account ID 28999980) ⋮						
Balance	Currency	First Used	Last Used	Account Expiration		
\$5.00	USD	2/7/23	2/7/23	2/29/24		
Account Activity						
Filter by				Sort By		
All ▼				Date ▼		
Activity ID	Voided	Activity Type	Value	Date and Time	Location	Coupon ID
S6624751		Reset Expiration Date		2/7/23, 8:38 AM	99999	
S6624750		Issue Coupon	\$5.00	2/7/23, 8:23 AM	99999	000000000
S6624749		Activate		2/7/23, 8:23 AM	99999	

- Award Account Administration - Displays information about the Award Account. This area includes the following information:
 - Program Name - Name of the Program to which the Account belongs. Click the **Program Name** to open the View Program window.
 - Account ID - ID number for the Account.
 - Balance - Current award balance of the Account.
 - First Used - Date of the first activity on the Account.
 - Last Used - Date of the most recent activity on the Account.
 - Account Expiration - Date when the Account expires.

 **Note:**

If the Award Account was merged with another Account, Customer Engagement displays the message "Account has been merged" below the Award Account Administration area.

- Award Account Activity - A List displaying each action performed on the Account. The information in the List is determined by the Filter Activity Menu. The following information is displayed for each Account action:
 - Activity ID - ID number of the activity within the transaction.
 - Voided - Indicates whether the activity was voided.

- Activity Type - Type of activity performed.
- Value - Displays the E-award value or the entitlement offer name. A link will display for an entitlement offer that will open the View Offer screen.
- Tender - Displays the activity amount.
- Award - Displays the e-award value or the entitlement offer name. A link will display for an entitlement offer that will open the View Offer screen.
- Loyalty - Displays the points associated with the activity.
- Date and Time - Date and time of the activity.
- Location - Location where the activity took place. Click the **Location** to view the Location Details.
- Coupon ID - ID number for the coupon (if any) created or redeemed by the activity.

Filter Activity Menu

The Filter Activity menu is a Filter for the Award Account Activity List. This Selection Menu filters the Award Account Activity List by Activity Type, such as Activate or Issue Coupon. The default setting is All.

Award Account Actions Menu

The Actions Menu for the Award Account will display the following options.

Figure 11-36 Award Account Actions Menu

Food Awards (Account ID 28999980)

Balance	Currency	First Used	Last Used	Account Expiration
\$5.00	USD	2/7/23	2/7/23	2/29/24

Account Activity

Filter by: Sort By:

Activity ID	Voided	Activity Type	Value	Date and Time	Location	Coupon ID
S6624751		Reset Expiration Date		2/7/23, 8:38 AM	99999	
S6624750		Issue Coupon	\$5.00	2/7/23, 8:23 AM	99999	000000000
S6624749		Activate		2/7/23, 8:23 AM	99999	

- Award Transfer - Transfer one or more E Awards or Award Certificate Coupons to another Award Account for the same Program. This option is available only if the Card is linked to an active Customer. See Transfer Award.
- Expire Coupon - Expire an E-Award or Award Certificate Coupon so that it can no longer be redeemed. See Expire Coupon.
- Issue Coupon - Issue a Coupon to the Customer. See Issue a Coupon.
- View Coupons - View the Coupons that have been issued by the Award Account to the Customer. See View Coupons.

Award Transfer

To transfer one or more E-Awards or Award Certificate Coupons to another Award Account for the same Program, select Award Transfer from the Award Account Actions Menu. The Award Transfer page opens.

Process

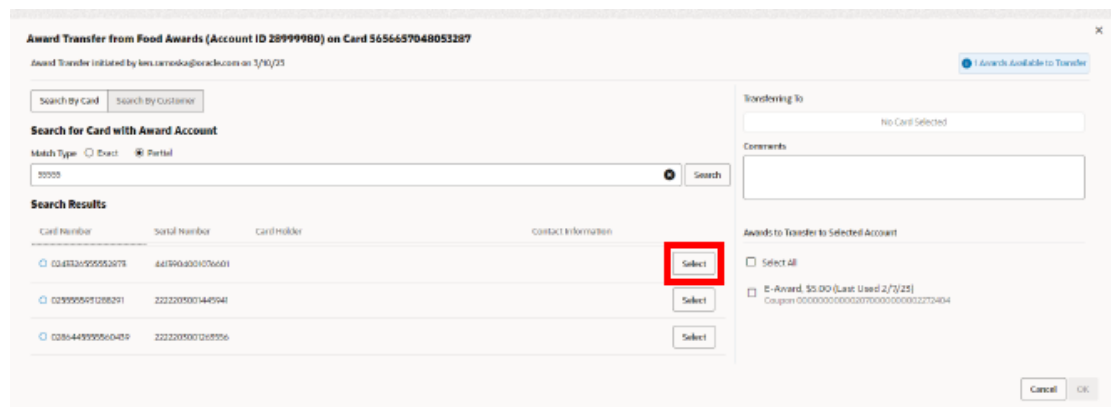
To add a card using Search By Card

- In the Search for Card with Award Account, enter the **Card Number** or **Serial Number** of the Card you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for Cards that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.

To add a card using Search By Customer

- In the Search By Customer field, enter the **Customer Name, ID, Email Address,** or **Phone Number** of the Customer you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for Customers that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.

Figure 11-37 Award Transfer - Search Results



1. Click Select to populate the Transferring To area of the window.

Figure 11-38 Transferring To

Award Transfer from [redacted] Awards (Account ID 28999983) on Card 5656688819395490

Award Transfer initiated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 4/3/23 1 Awards Available to Transfer

Search By Card | Search By Customer

Search for Card with Award Account

Match Type Exact Partial

9351242314528350

Search Results

Card Number	Serial Number	Card Holder
9351242314528350	1000401001942793	[redacted] (ID 9428636)

Transferring To

Card Number 9351242314528350
 Serial Number 1000401001942793
 Number Primary [redacted] (ID 9428636)
 Card Holder [redacted] (ID 9428636)
 Selected Card Holder 9428636

Comments

Awards to Transfer to Selected Account

Select All

E-Award, \$5.00 (Last Used 6/21/21)
 Coupon 00000000000621000000000705147

2. Select the Awards to Transfer to Selected Account.

Figure 11-39 Awards to Transfer to Selected Account

Award Transfer from [redacted] Awards (Account ID 28999983) on Card 5656688819395490

Award Transfer initiated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 4/3/23 1 Awards Available to Transfer

Search By Card | Search By Customer

Search for Card with Award Account

Match Type Exact Partial

2423147643293776

Search Results

Card Number	Serial Number	Card Holder
2423147643293776	8897702001000002	[redacted] (ID 1005312)

Transferring To

No Card Selected

Comments

Awards to Transfer to Selected Account

Select All

E-Award, \$5.00 (Last Used 6/21/21)
 Coupon 00000000000621000000000705147

The Account must be within the same Program, and the Customer must be the primary card holder.

The Transferring To area includes the following information:

- Program Name - Name of the Program
- Card Number - Card Number for the Card selected for award transfer.
- Serial Number - Serial Number for the Card selected for award transfer.
- Primary Card Holder - Customer number and name of the primary account holder.
- Selected Card Holder - Indicates the Customer associated with the Card.
- Current Balance - Current award balance of the Account.
- Comments

The Awards to Transfer to Selected Account includes the following information:

- Coupon Type - E-Award or Award Certificate Coupon.
- Balance - The value of the E-Award.
- Last Used Date - The date and time of the most recent activity for the Coupon.
- Coupon ID - Unique identifier for the Award Coupon.

3. Click **OK** to transfer the award, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

The E-Award or Award Certificate Coupon is transferred to the Destination Account. A Transfer In Activity Detail record is created for the Destination Account, and a Transfer Out Activity Detail record is created for the Source Account.

Expire Coupon

To expire an E-Award or Award Certificate Coupon for a Customer that was issued through an Award Account:

1. Click Expire Coupon in the Award Account Actions Menu. A Perform Action: Expire Coupon Window opens.

Figure 11-40 Perform Action: Expire Coupon

Perform Action: Expire Coupon X

Certificate Type (Please select) Required

Reason Code (Please select)

Location 99999

Activity Date/Time 03/10/2023, 11:32 AM

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

2. Enter the information for the Coupon:
 - Certificate Type - Use the Selection Menu to select either E-Award or Award Certificate Coupon.
 - Reason Code - Use the Selection Menu to select the reason for expiring the Coupon.
 - Location - Use the Selection Menu to select the location where the Coupon is being issued.
 - Comments - Enter any comments describing the Coupon expiration.

Either click **OK** to expire the Coupon and close the Window or click **Cancel** to close the Window without expiring the Coupon.

Issue a Coupon

To issue a Coupon to a Customer through an Award Account:

1. Click Issue Coupon in the Award Account Actions Menu. A Perform Action: Issue Coupon Window opens.

Figure 11-41 Perform Action: Issue Coupon

Perform Action: Issue Coupon ×

Certificate Type (Please select) Required

Reason Code (Please select)

Location 99999

Activity Date/Time 03/10/2023, 11:33 AM

Expiration Type (Please select) Required

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

2. Enter the information for the Coupon:

- Certificate Type - Use the Selection Menu to select either E-Award or Award Certificate Coupon.
 - Reason Code - Use the Selection Menu to select the reason for issuing the Coupon.
 - Location - Use the Selection Menu to select the location where the Coupon is being issued.
 - Expiration Type - Use the Selection Menu to select the type of expiration of the Coupon. This has the following options:
 - Use Program - Coupon expires when the Program expires.
 - Specify - Select a specific date when the Coupon expires.
 - None - No expiration date,.
 - Expiration Date - Use the Calendar Menu to select the date when the Coupon will expire (only visible if the Expiration Date is Specify).
 - Comments - Enter any comments describing the Coupon issue.
3. Either click **OK** to issue the Coupon and close the Window or click **Cancel** to close the Window without issuing a Coupon.

View Coupons

To view all of the Coupons issued to a Customer, select View Coupons in the Award Account Actions Menu to open a Coupons Window displaying a List of E-Award and Award Certificate Coupons issued through the Account.

Figure 11-42 View Coupon

The screenshot shows a window titled "View Coupons" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The window is divided into two sections: "E Award Coupons" and "Entitlement Coupons".

E Award Coupons

Coupon ID	Amount	Expiration Date	Create Date
0000000000207000000002272404	\$5.00	None	2/7/23

Entitlement Coupons

Coupon ID	Offer Name	Expiration Date	Create Date
No Entitlement Coupons			

A "Done" button is located at the bottom right of the window.

E-Award Coupons: The following information is displayed for each E-Award Coupon issued and not expired:

- Coupon ID - The ID number for the Coupon.
- Amount - The amount of the Coupon (in the base currency of the Program).

- Expiration Date - The expiration date of the Coupon.
- Create Date - Date the Coupon was created.

Award Certificate Coupons: The following information is displayed for each Award Certificate Coupon issued and not expired:

- Coupon ID - The ID number for the Coupon.
- Offer Name - The name of the Offer associated with the Coupon.
- Expiration Date - The expiration date of the Coupon.
- Create Date - Date the Coupon was created.

Account Activity Actions Menu

The Actions Menu in the Award Account Activity Detail Window for the issue of an e-award or entitlement coupon has the following options.

- **View Activity Details** - Displays the Activity Details.
- **View Promotion Details** - Views the details of the promotion associated to the activity. This menu option will only display when there is an associated promotion.
- **View Offer Details** - Views the details of the offer associated to the activity. This menu option will only display when there is an associated offer.
- **Void Activity** - Voids the open activity.

View Activity Details

Click an activity to view detailed information about an activity in the List of activities displayed for an Award Account. The activity will be displayed in the Activity Detail Window.

- Account ID - ID number for the Account associated with the activity.
- Activity ID - ID of the activity on the Account.
- Activity Sequence - Sequence number of the activity within a transaction.
- Coupon ID - ID number for the coupon (if any) created or redeemed by the activity.
- Activity Type - Type of activity performed.
- Issue Type - Type of benefit issued.
- Campaign - If the activity was associated to an award in a campaign, this field will be displayed and is the Name and ID of the campaign the award was from.
- Promotion - If the activity was associated to an award in a promotion, this field will be displayed and is the Name and ID of the promotion the award was from.
- Offer - If the activity was associated to an award in an offer, this field will be displayed and is the Name and ID of the offer the award was from.
- Activity Date/Time - Date and time of the activity.
- Amount - Amount applied to the Account by the activity, or removed from the Account in the case of a Transfer Out.
- Exchange Rate - If the transaction was performed in a foreign currency, the exchange rate between the foreign currency and the Account's base currency.
- Requested Amount - Requested currency amount.

- Requested Currency - Currency used for the requested amount, if different from the base currency.
- Void Flag - Indicates whether the activity was voided.
- Error Description - If an error occurred during the activity, a description of the error.
- Franchisee - Name of the Franchisee.
- Reason Code - Reason for the activity.
- Referenced Activity ID - ID of an activity to which this activity refers.
- Merged From Account - If the Account was moved from another Account by a Card Merge, the ID number of the Account previously associated with the activity.
- Location ID - ID of the Location where the activity was performed.
- Location Name - Name of the Location.
- Business Date - Business date of the activity.
- Retail Transaction Sequence - Sequence number of the activity within a retail transaction.
- Workstation ID - ID of the workstation (within the Location) where the activity was performed.
- Retail Tran ID - ID of the retail transaction where the activity was performed.
- Operator ID - ID of the employee who performed the transaction.
- Create Date - Date and time when the activity took place.
- Create User ID - ID of the user who created the activity.
- Update Date - Date when the activity was most recently updated.
- Update User ID - ID of the last user to update the activity.
- Coupon Effective Date - The date when the coupon becomes effective.
- Coupon Expiration Date - The date when the coupon expires.
- Comments - Additional comments entered about the activity.

Figure 11-43 Activity Details - Award Account

Activity Details ✕

Account ID 32559110	Reason Code SYSTEM
Activity ID S3891233	Referenced Activity ID
Activity Sequence 0	Merged From Account 0
Coupon ID 000000000002090000000000907466	Location (ID 99901)
Activity Type Issue Coupon	Business Date 1/28/22
Issue Type Award	Retail Transaction Sequence 22000000
Activity Date/Time 2/9/22, 1:40 AM	Workstation ID 10
Amount 15.00	Operator ID 10
Exchange Rate 1	Retail Transaction ID 99901000102022012822000000
Requested Amount 15.00	Create Date 2/9/22, 1:40 AM
Requested Currency USD	Create User ID TestUserName
Void Flag No	Update Date
Error Description	Update User ID
Franchisee	Coupon Effective Date 12/1/21

Comments

Done

Click **Done** to close the window.

Void Activity

To void an activity on an Account:

1. Open the activity in the Activity Detail Window.
2. In the Activity Detail Window, select Void in the Actions Menu. A Perform Action: Void Window opens.

Figure 11-44 Void Activity

Void Activity ×

Reason Code (Please select) ▾

Location 99999 ▾

Activity Date/Time 2/9/22, 1:40 AM

Comments

Current User ID [redacted]@oracle.com - Ken Ramoska

Cancel OK

3. Select the Reason Code for the Void in the Selection Menu.
4. Select the Location to be used for the Void in the Selection Menu.
5. Enter Comments describing the reasons for the Void.
6. Either click **OK** to void the activity and close the Window or click **Cancel** to close the Window without voiding the activity.

Loyalty Account

The following information is displayed for each Loyalty Account:

Figure 11-45 Loyalty Account Card and Account Details

Level	Balance	Escrow	YTD	LTD	Currency	First Used	Last Used	Account Expiration
Silver	50 points	0 points	10 points	10 points	USD	2/7/23	2/7/23	2/29/24

Activity ID	Voided	Activity Type	Value	Date and Time	Location
8632617		Transfer In	50 points	2/7/23, 3:04 PM	
8632636		Change Level	-5 points	2/7/23, 2:42 PM	12504

- Loyalty Account Administration. Displays information about the Loyalty Account. This area includes the following information.
 - Program Name - Name of the Program to which the Account belongs. Click the **Program Name** to view the View Program window.
 - Account ID - ID number for the Account.
 - Level - Name of the Loyalty Level to which the Account currently belongs.
 - Balance - Current points balance of the Account.
 - Escrow - Number of points currently escrowed in the Account.
 - YTD - Number of points earned by the Account in the current year to date.
 - LTD - Number of points earned by the Account during the lifetime of the Account.
 - First Used - Date of the first activity on the Account.
 - Last Used - Date of the most recent activity on the Account.
 - Account Expiration - Date when the Account expires.
- Loyalty Account Activity

A List displaying each action performed on the Account.

The information in the List is determined by the Filter Activity Menu.

This List uses Page Navigation to organize the actions.

The following information is displayed for each Account action:

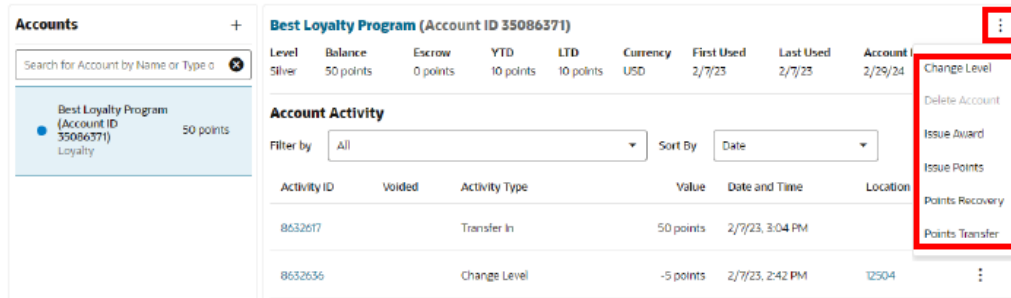
 - Activity ID - ID of the activity on the Account.
 - Voided - Indicates whether the activity was voided.
 - Activity Type - Type of activity performed.
 - Value - Number of Points applied to the Account by the activity.
 - Date and Time - Date and time of the activity.
 - Location - Location of the activity. Click the **Location ID** to view the location details.

Filter Activity Menu

The Filter Activity menu is a Filter for the Loyalty Account Activity List. This Selection Menu filters the Loyalty Account Activity List by Activity Type, such as Change Level or Award. The default setting is All.

Loyalty Account Actions Menu

Figure 11-46 Loyalty Account Actions Menu



The Actions Menu for a Loyalty Account displays the following options.

- **Change Level** - Change the Loyalty Level of the Loyalty Account. See [Change Level](#).
- **Delete Account** - Delete a Loyalty Account that has been added to the Card. This option is available only for a Loyalty Account that was applied to the Card, because the Card was generated for a Program that has the Dynamically Create Accounts option selected. Also, the DynamicProgramAccountAdmin role controls access to this option. See [Delete Account](#).
- **Issue Award** - Issue an award to a Customer. See [Issue Award](#).
- **Issue Points** - Issue points to a Loyalty Account. See [Issue Points](#).
- **Point Recovery** - Issue points that were not issued to a Customer in a previous transaction. See [Recover Points](#).
- **Points Transfer** - Transfer points to another Loyalty Account for the same Program. This option is available only if the Card is linked to an active Customer. See [Points Transfer](#).

Change Level

To change the Loyalty Level for a Customer:

1. Click **Change Level** in the Loyalty Account Actions Menu for a Loyalty Account. A Perform Action: Change Level Window opens.

Figure 11-47 Perform Action: Change Level

Perform Action: Change Level X

Loyalty Program Level

New Level Required

Points Cost Required

Reason Code

Location

Comments

Current User ID

2. Enter the information for changing the Loyalty Level.
 - New Level - Use the Selection Menu to select the new Loyalty Level for the Account. The menu includes the Levels in the Loyalty Program.
 - Points Cost - The number of points to remove from the Loyalty Account for changing the Loyalty Level.
 - Reason Code - Use the Selection Menu to select the reason for changing the level.
 - Location - Use the Selection Menu to select the location where the Loyalty Level change is being performed.
 - Comments - Enter any comments describing the change in Loyalty Level.
3. Click **OK** to change the Loyalty Level and close the Window, or click **Cancel** to close the Window without change the Loyalty Level of the Account.

Delete Account

Select this option to delete a Loyalty Account that has been added to the Card. This option is available only for a Loyalty Account that was applied to the Card, because the Card was generated for a Program that has the Dynamically Create Accounts option selected. Also, the DynamicProgramAccountAdmin role controls access to this option.

Click **Delete Account** in the Loyalty Account Actions Menu for a Loyalty Account. The Delete Account window opens.

Figure 11-48 Delete Account

Account ID	35673475	Loyalty Program Level	One
Program Name	Dynamic Program	Earned Points	10.00
Program Currency	USD	Lifetime To Date Points	10.00
Escrow Points	0.00	Last Used Date	4/4/23
Year to Date Points	10.00	Expiration Date	2/29/24
First Activity Date	4/4/23		

Warning: Deleting an account will immediately and irreversibly purge account detail and history. Continue with Dynamic Account deletion?

Select to Confirm

Cancel OK

This window displays the following information about the Loyalty Account.

- Account ID - ID number for the Account associated with the activity.
- Program Name - Name of the Program to which the Account belongs.
- Program Currency - ID of the currency used for the Loyalty Program.
- Escrow Points - Number of points currently escrowed in the Account.
- Year to Date Points - Number of points earned by the Account in the current year to date.
- First Activity Date - Date of the first activity on the Account.
- Expiration Date - Date when the Account expires.
- Loyalty Program Level - Name of the Loyalty Level to which the Account currently belongs.
- Earned Points - Current points balance of the Account.

- Lifetime To Date Points - Number of points earned by the Account during the lifetime of the Account.
- Last Used Date - Date of the most recent activity on the Account.

Click **Select to Confirm** and then click **OK** to delete the Loyalty Account.

Note that when you delete a Loyalty Account, this information is not included in the Batch Export.

Issue Award

To issue an Award to an Account:

1. Click Award in the Loyalty Account Actions Menu for a Loyalty Account. A Perform Action: Issue Award Window opens.

Figure 11-49 Perform Action: Issue Award

Perform Action: Issue Award X

Award Rule (Please select) Required

Points Cost Required

Reason Code None

Location 99999

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

2. Enter the information for issuing the award.

- Award Rule - Use the Selection Menu to select the Award Rule to use for issuing the Coupon for the Loyalty Account. The menu includes those Award Rules that belong to the Loyalty Program and Level the account is currently assigned to.

 **Note:**

Only the award rules for the 'paper' coupons will be listed. The rules created for e-awards and award certificates will not be displayed

- Points Cost - The number of points to remove from the Loyalty Account as part of issuing the Coupon.
 - Reason Code - Use the Selection Menu to select the reason for awarding the points.
 - Location - Use the Selection Menu to select the location where the Award is being issued.
 - Comments - Enter any comments describing the issuance of the Award.
3. Click **OK** to issue the Award and close the Window, or click **Cancel** to close the Window without issuing an Award.

Issue Points

To issue points to a Loyalty Account:

1. Click Issue in the Loyalty Account Actions Menu for a Loyalty Account. A Perform Action: Issue Window opens.

Figure 11-50 Perform Action: Issue Points

Perform Action: Issue Points X

Issue Rule (Please select) Required

Number of Points Required

Reason Code None

Location 99999

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

2. Enter the information for issuing points:
 - Issue Rule - Use the Selection Menu to select the Loyalty Level Issue Rule to use for issuing the points. The menu includes those rules that belong to the Loyalty Program and Level the account is assigned to.
 - Number of Points - The number of points to issue. For an Issue Rule whose Calculation Type is set to The number of marketing engagements, the Number of Points defaults from the Fixed Amount defined for the rule, but it can be overridden. See Issue Rule of the Programs chapter for background.
 - Reason Code - Use the Selection Menu to select the reason for issuing the points.
 - Location - Use the Selection Menu to select the location where the points are being issued.
 - Comments - Enter any comments describing the points issued.
3. Click **OK** to issue the points and close the Window, or click **Cancel** to close the Window without issuing points.

This window does not prevent you from issuing points more often than specified for the Issue Rule when the Calculation Type is set to The number of marketing engagements. See Issue Rule of the Programs chapter for background.

Recover Points

To issue loyalty points that were earned, but not issued to a Customer for a specific transaction:

1. Click **Point Recovery** in the Loyalty Account Actions Menu for a Loyalty Account. A Perform Action: Search for Retail Transaction Window opens.

Figure 11-51 Perform Action: Points Recovery

Perform Action: Points Recovery X

Location Number

Required

Register ID

Required

Business Date

Required

Sequence Number

Required

Reset Search

Retail Transaction ID

Reason Code
None ▼

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

2. Enter the transaction search information.
 - Location Number - ID number for the location where the transaction was performed.
 - Register ID - ID number for the register where the transaction was performed.
 - Business Date - Use the Calendar Menu to select business date when the transaction was performed.

- Sequence Number - The purchase number for the transaction.

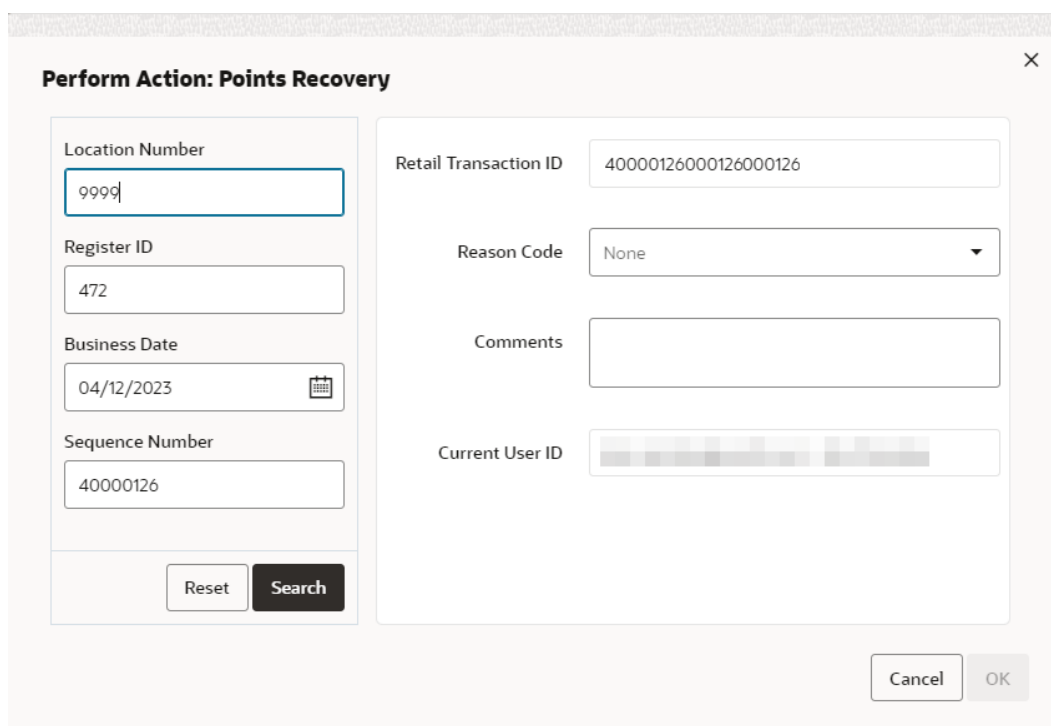
 **Note:**

Refer to [Figure 11-60](#) to see the 'Purchase' number that should be used for this field. In a future release, we will likely rename this field to match so there will be no confusion.

3. Click **OK** to search for the transaction and close the window, or click **Cancel** to close the window without searching for the transaction.

If the transaction is found and the loyalty points have not been processed for that line item, a Perform Action: Point Recovery Window opens.

Figure 11-52 Perform Action: Point Recovery Search Result



Perform Action: Points Recovery X

Location Number
9999

Register ID
472

Business Date
04/12/2023

Sequence Number
40000126

Reset Search

Retail Transaction ID
40000126000126000126

Reason Code
None

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

If the transaction is not found, or if the transaction was found, but the loyalty points have already been processed for the transaction, the window will close and an error message will be displayed.

4. Enter the Point Recovery information:
 - Reason Code - Use the Selection Menu to select the reason for performing the point recovery.
 - Comments - Enter any comments describing the point recovery.
5. Click **OK** to recover the points and close the Window, or click **Cancel** to close the Window without recovering the points.

Points Transfer

To transfer points to another Loyalty Account for the same Program, select **Points Transfer** from the Loyalty Account Actions Menu. The Points Transfer page opens.

Figure 11-53 Points Transfer

The information on the Points Transfer page includes.

- Transfer Source Account:
 - Card Number - Card Number for the Card selected for points transfer.
 - Serial Number - Serial Number for the Card selected for points transfer.
 - Card Holder - Customer number and name of the a secondary card holder can also be displayed when searching by customer. If the primary cardholder is displayed, a primary cardholder icon will display next to the name. Click the name to open Customer Record of the card holder in the Customer Dashboard.
 - Card Status - Indicates whether the Card is currently active.
 - Card Holders - Indicates the number of Customers associated with the Card. Click the number of Card Holders to open a menu containing a menu of all of the Customers associated with the Card. Click the name in the menu to open the Customer Record in the Customer Dashboard.
- Loyalty Account Administration
 - Account id - ID number for the Account.
 - Program Name - Name of the Program to which the Account belongs.
 - Loyalty Program Level - The current level of the Loyalty Account.
 - Escrow Points - Number of points currently escrowed in the Account.
 - Earned Points - Current points balance of the Account.

- Program Currency - Base currency for the Program.
- Year To Date Points - Number of points earned by the Account in the current year to date.
- Lifetime Points - Number of points earned by the Account during the lifetime of the Account.
- First Used Date - Date of the first activity for the Loyalty Account.
- Last Activity Date - Date of the most recent activity for the Loyalty Account.
- Expiration Date - Date, if any, when the Loyalty Account is scheduled to expire.
- Customer Contact Permissions: The originating Customer can be notified of the transfer by an email or SMS message generated by an integrated marketing system, such as Responsys, if the Customer's contact permissions allow email or phone contact and if the marketing system supports it. See Points/Awards Transfer Notification Export for background.
 - Contact Preference - Indicates the preferred means for contact for the Customer, such as Email or Phone.
 - Email - The Customer's primary email address. Included if email is a preferred means of contact.
 - Phone - The Customer's primary phone number. Included if phone is a preferred means of contact.
 - The Email or Phone listed is None if the contact information is not available, indicating that no email or SMS message can be generated. Also, even when the Customer has provided the email address or phone number, the Email Address or Phone is listed as None if the Contact Permission is set to No.

Process

1. To add a card do the following:
 - Using Search by Card
 - In the Search for Card with Loyalty Account, enter the **Card Number** or **Serial Number** of the Card you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for Cards that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.
 - Using Search By Customer
 - In the Search By Customer field, enter the **Customer Name, ID, Email Address,** or **Phone Number** of the Customer you want to search for. Click **Partial** to search for Customers that partially match the search text, or click **Exact**, to search for an exact match.
2. Click **Search**. The Search Results appear.

Figure 11-54 Search Results

Points Transfer from Best Loyalty Program (Account ID 35086363) on 5656688819395490

Points transfer initiated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 4/3/23 449 Points Available to Transfer

Search By Card | Search By Customer

Search for Card with Loyalty Account

Match Type Exact Partial

[redacted] Search

Search Results

Card Number	Serial Number	Card Holder
0994782301874830	1000402001670013	[redacted] (ID 6600866) [redacted] SALT LAKE CITY, UT, 84116, US

Transferring To

No Card Selected

Transfer Points Required

(449 Points Available)

Comments

Cancel OK

The Account must be within the same Program, and the Customer must be the primary card holder. Only active Cards can receive points.

3. Click **Select** to populate the Transferring To section.

Figure 11-55 Transferring To

Points Transfer from Best Loyalty Program (Account ID 35086363) on 5656688819395490

Points transfer initiated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 4/3/23 449 Points Available to Transfer

Search By Card | Search By Customer

Search for Card with Loyalty Account

Match Type Exact Partial

[redacted] Search

Search Results

Card Number	Serial Number	Card Holder
0994782301874830	1000402001670013	[redacted] (ID 6600866) [redacted] SALT LAKE CITY, UT, 84116, US

Transferring To

Card 0994782301874830
Serial Number 1000402001670013
Expiration Date
Selected Card Holder [redacted]

Transfer Points Required

(449 Points Available)

Comments

Cancel OK

- Card - Card Number for the Card. If the selected Customer has more than one Card in the Program, the most recently used Card is selected and displayed.
- Serial Number - Serial Number for the Card.
- Primary Card Holder - Customer name of the primary account holder.
- Selected Card Holder - Customer name of the selected card holder.

- Loyalty Level - The current loyalty level.
 - Current Balance - Current balance on the card.
4. Enter the Number of points to transfer. Your entry cannot exceed the Earned Points balance for the Transfer Source Account.
 5. Enter any **Comments**.
 6. Click **OK** to transfer the points, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

The Points are transferred to the Destination Account. A Transfer In Activity Detail record is created for the Destination Account, and a Transfer Out Activity Detail record is created for the Source Account.

Loyalty Account Activity Actions Menu

Figure 11-56 Loyalty Account Activity Actions Menu

Level	Balance	Escrow	YTD	LTD	Currency	First Used	Last Used
Initial Level	979.56 points	0.00 points	0.00 points	979.56 points	USD	8/12/21	9/23/22

Activity ID	Voided	Activity Type	Value	Date and Time	Location
8234851		Issue	449.39 points	9/23/22, 12:50 AM	62101
8234850		Issue	449.39 points	9/23/22, 12:50 AM	
8234849		Return	-349.39 points	9/23/22, 12:50 AM	
8234848		Return	-349.39 points	9/23/22, 12:50 AM	
8234846		Issue	449.39 points	9/23/22, 12:50 AM	
8234844		Return	-349.39 points	9/23/22, 12:50 AM	
8234827		Issue	449.39 points	9/22/22, 5:16 AM	62101

The Actions Menu for Loyalty Accounts Account Activity List displays the following options:

- **Change Earn Date** - Changes the date the escrowed points will be moved to earned.
- **View Activity Details** - Views the details of the selected activity.
- **View Customer Details** - Views the details of the selected customer.
- **View Promotion Details** - Views the details of the promotion associated to the activity. This menu option will only display when there is an associated promotion.

- **View Offer Details** - Views the details of the offer associated to the activity. This menu option will only display when there is an associated offer.
- **View Transaction Details** - Views the details of the selected transaction.
- **Void Activity** - Voids the selected activity

Change Earn Date

Perform the following actions to change the date the escrowed points will be moved to earned.

1. In the Account Activity area, click the **Action** menu for the desired activity.
2. Click Change Earn Date. The Change Earn Date window displays.

Figure 11-57 Change Earn Date

Change Earn Date [X]

Earn Date

Reason Code

Currency

Location

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

3. Enter the following information:
 - Earn Date
 - Reason Code
 - Location

- Comments
4. Click **OK** to change the earn date, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

 **Note:**

A notification appears indicating the request was a success.

View Activity Details

Do the following to view detailed information about an activity in the list of activities displayed for a Loyalty Account:

1. In the Account Activity area, click the **Action** menu for the desired activity.
2. Click **View Activity Details**. The Activity Details display.

Figure 11-58 Activity Details - Loyalty Account

Activity Details	
Account ID 29651358	Void Flag No
Activity ID 8234851	Customer ID 1005312
Activity Type Issue	Referenced Activity ID 0
Activity Date/Time 9/23/22, 12:50 AM	Referenced Account ID 0
Number of Points 449.39	Merged From Account 0
Issue Type Promotion Offer	Location (ID 62101)
Exchange Rate 1	Business Date 9/22/22
Requested Amount 449.39	Retail Transaction Sequence 47710064
Requested Currency USD	Workstation ID 10
Converted Amount 449.39	Retail Transaction ID 62101000102022092247710064
Campaign VB - Promotions (ID 323)	Create Date 9/23/22, 12:50 AM
Promotion VB - Promotions (ID 348)	Create User ID POS
Offer VB - Franchisee Offer (ID 724)	Update Date
Pending Flag Yes	Update User ID
Earn Date	Error Description
Pending Points Balance 0.00	Franchisee JS-Franchisee-1 (ID 3)
Earned Points Balance 979.56	Reason Code
Comments	
<input type="text"/>	
Done	

3. The Activity Detail Window displays the following information for the selected activity:
 - Account ID - ID number for the Account associated with the activity.
 - Activity ID - ID of the activity on the Account.
 - Activity Type - Type of activity performed.
 - Activity Date/Time - Date and time of the activity.

- Number of Points - Number of points applied to the points balance, or subtracted in the case of an activity such as Change Level or Transfer Out.
 - Issue Type - The issue type of the tender.
 - Exchange Rate - If the transaction was performed in a foreign currency, the exchange rate between the foreign currency and the Account's base currency.
 - Requested Amount - Requested currency amount.
 - Requested Currency - Currency used for the requested amount, if different from the base currency.
 - Converted Amount - Amount of the request in the system's base currency
 - Campaign - If the activity was associated to points awarded in a campaign, this field will be displayed and is the Name and ID of the campaign the award was from.
 - Promotion - If the activity was associated to points awarded in a promotion, this field will be displayed and is the Name and ID of the promotion the award was from.
 - Offer - If the activity was associated to points awarded in an offer, this field will be displayed and is the Name and ID of the offer the award was from.
 - Earn Date - Date a pending activity will complete.
 - Pending Points Balance - Number of points pending at the time of the activity.
 - Earned Points Balance - Earned points balance at the time of the activity
 - Void Flag - Indicates whether the activity was voided.
 - Referenced Activity ID - ID of an activity to which this activity refers.
 - Referenced Account ID - ID of the Loyalty Account used by the Referenced Activity
 - Merge From Account - If two cards have been merged, the originating source account is displayed.
 - Location ID - ID of the Location where the activity was performed.
 - Location Name - Name of the Location where the activity was performed.
 - Business Date - Business date of the activity.
 - Retail Transaction Sequence - Sequence number of the activity on the retail transaction
 - Workstation ID - ID of the workstation (within the Location) where the activity was performed.
 - Retail Transaction ID - ID number of the activity within a retail transaction.
 - Create Date - Date when the activity was created.
 - Create User ID - ID of the user who created the activity.
 - Update Date - Date when the activity was most recently updated.
 - Update User ID - ID of the last user to update the activity.
 - Error Description - If an error occurred during the activity, a description of the error.
 - Franchisee - Franchisee associated with the activity.
 - Reason Code - Reason for the activity.
 - Comments - Additional comments entered about the activity.
4. Click **Done** to close the window.

View Customer Details

Do the following to view the customer details.

1. In the Account Activity area, click the **Action** menu for the desired activity.
2. Click View Customer Details. The Customer Dashboard displays in a new tab. See [Customer Dashboard](#) to see more information.
3. Click **x** to close the Customer Dashboard.

View Transaction Details

Do the following to view the transaction details.



1. In the Account Activity area, click the **Action** menu for the desired activity.
2. Click **View Transaction Details**. The Item Purchase History for the transaction displays.

Note:

This is in the Customer Feature as well and can be accessed from the Customer Dashboard. See [Item Purchase History](#) for more information.

Figure 11-59 Item Purchase History

Item Purchase History for ██████████ (Customer ID 1005312)

Filters	Item Purchase History
<p>Item Keyword</p> <input type="text"/>	<p>Item Purchase History</p> <div>  (10065) Purchased on 1/1/70 at 12:00 AM Transaction ID 62101000102022092247710064 SKU: 10065 </div> <div>  (10065) Returned on 1/1/70 at 12:00 AM Transaction ID 62101000102022092247710064 SKU: 10065 </div>
<p>Transaction ID</p> <input type="text" value="62101000102022092247710064"/>	
<p>Unit Price</p> <p>Minimum <input type="text"/></p> <p>Maximum <input type="text"/></p>	
<p>DEPT</p> <input type="text"/>	
<p><input type="button" value="Reset"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/></p>	
	<p>Ⓢ Purchased 1 at \$449.39 each (+179717 points)</p> <p>Ⓢ Returned 1 at \$349.39 each (-139717 points)</p>

3. The Item Purchase History can be filtered using the following options:
 - Item Keyword - Enter any part of the Item name.
 - Unit Price Min - Enter the Min Unit Price
 - Unit Price Max - Enter the Max Unit Price
 - Department - Enter any part of a department name. The list updates automatically with the matching departments.

4. Click the **Item Name** to view the Item Details.
5. Click **Done** to close the Item Details window.
6. Click the **Transaction ID** to view the Purchase Details as shown in [Figure 11-60](#), [Figure 11-61](#), and [Figure 11-62](#).

Figure 11-60 Purchase Information

Purchase Detail for Transaction ID <62101000102022092247710064> ✕

Purchase Information Line Items Line Item Modifiers

Purchase Details

Purchase	47710064	Exchange Rate	1
Grand Total	-\$100.00	Net Amount	-\$100.00
Location	62101	Status	DELIVERED
Business Date	9/22/22	Start Time	9/22/22, 1:33 PM
Void Flag	No	End Time	9/22/22, 1:38 PM
Register	10	Tax Amount	\$0.00
Cashier	100	Points Earned	1,000
Currency	USD	Linked Purchase	N/A
Original Currency	USD		

Purchase Properties

Code	Value
Transaction_Originated_From	WEBSITE

Done

Figure 11-61 Line Items

Purchase Detail for Transaction ID <62101000102022092247710064> ✕

Purchase Information Line Items Line Item Modifiers

Sales Line Items

Void Flag	Sequence	Item ID	Actual Price	Quantity	Extended Amount	Regular Price	Unit Cost	Item Type	Scan ID	DEPT	SUB_DEPT	CLASS	SUB_CLASS	STYLE_ID	Points Earned
No	1	10065	\$449.39	1	\$449.39	\$475.99	\$349.99	Stock	0085						1797

Returns Line Items

Void Flag	Sequence	Returns Reason	Returns Type	Returns Quantity	Item ID	Actual Price	Quantity	Extended Amount	Original Transaction Sequence	Original Location	Original Register	Regular Price	Unit Cost	Item Type	Points Earned
No	2			1	10065	-\$349.39	1	-\$349.39	0	0	0	\$475.99	-\$349.99	Stock	-1387

Tax Line Items

Void Flag	Sequence	Tax Amount	Taxable Amount	Exempt Amount	Exempt ID	Override Amount	Override Flag	Override Percentage	Override Reason
No	3	\$0.00	\$0.00				No		

Done

Figure 11-62 Line Item Modifiers

Purchase Detail for Transaction ID <62101000102022092247710064> ✕

Purchase Information Line Items Line Item Modifiers

Commission Line Item Modifiers

Void Flag	Sequence	Commission Amount	Commission Percent	Commission Percent Of Item	Commissioned Employee ID
No	1			1 100	
No	2			1 100	

Price Line Item Modifiers

Void Flag	Sequence	Price Change Amount	Price Modifier Type	Price Change Reason	Promotion ID
No	1	-\$24.60	Subtract	Summer Clearance	150:37:
No	2	-\$24.60	Subtract	Summer Clearance	150:37:

Done

7. Click **Done** to close the Transaction ID views.
8. Click **x** to close the Customer Dashboard.

Void Activity

To void an activity do the following:

1. In the Account Activity area, click the **Action** menu for the desired activity.
2. Click **Void Activity**. The Void Activity window displays.

Figure 11-63 Void Activity

Void Activity X

Amount 175.00

Reason Code (Please select) ▼

Currency USD

Location 99999 ▼

Comments

Current User ID

Cancel OK

3. Enter the following information:
 - Reason Code
 - Location
 - Comments
4. Click **OK** to void the activity, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

12

Job Management

In Customer Engagement, Job Management is used to view and edit Jobs scheduled to be run in Customer Engagement.

About this Chapter

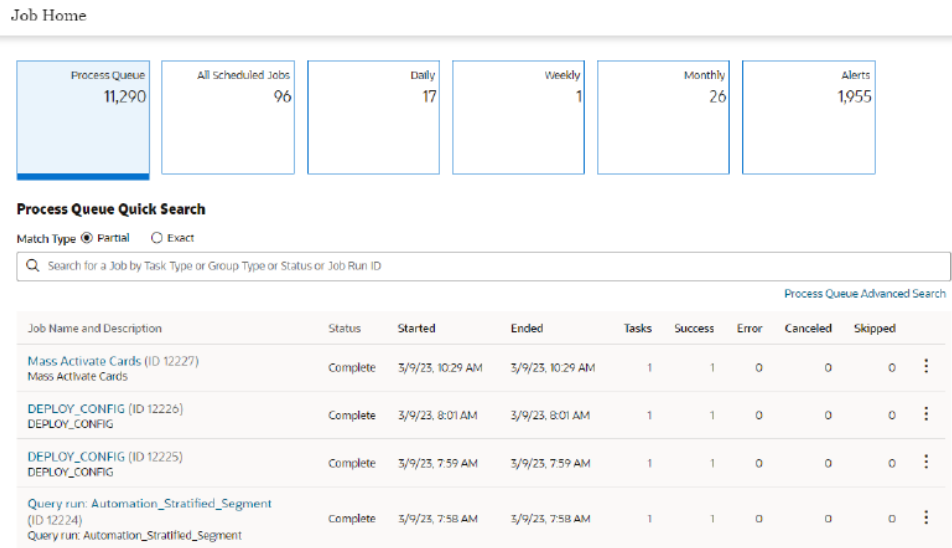
This chapter contains the following information:

- [Job Quick Search](#)
- [Job Advanced Search](#)
- [Viewing a Scheduled Job](#)
- [Creating a Scheduled Job](#)
- [Editing a Job](#)
- [Deleting a Job](#)
- [Disabling a Job](#)
- [Enabling a Job](#)
- [Running a Job Immediately](#)
- [Viewing a Job in Process Queue](#)
- [Jobs and Tasks](#)
- [Configure Job Parameters](#)

Job Quick Search

Job Quick Search displays a list of results as you type in characters in the search box. To use the Job Quick Search do the following:

1. Click the **Menu** icon.
2. Click **Job Management**.
3. Click **Job Home**. The Job Management window opens.

Figure 12-1 Job Management - Process Queue Tile

4. Select a Metric Tile, options include:

- Process Queue
- All Scheduled Jobs
- Daily
- Weekly
- Monthly
- Alerts

Job Quick Search - Process Queue and Alerts Tiles

These tiles display the following information for each job.

- Name and Description - Name and Description of the Job.
- Job Run ID - ID Number of the Job.
- Status - Current status of the Job.
- Started - The date and time at which the Job started running.
- Ended - The date and time at which the Job stopped running.
- Tasks - The number of Tasks performed by the Job.
- Success - The number of Tasks completed successfully by the Job.
- Error - The number of Tasks in the Job that resulted in an Error.
- Canceled - The number of Tasks in the Job that were canceled.
- Skipped - The number of Tasks in the Job that were skipped, possibly because an error occurred in a previous task.

Perform the following steps to search for a Job:

1. Click the **Process Queue** or **Alerts** tile.

- In the Search for a Job field, enter the **Task Type**, **Group Type**, **Status** or **Job ID** of the Job you want to search for. Select **Partial** to search for Jobs that partially match the search text, or select **Exact**, to search for an exact match.

Figure 12-2 Process Queue Quick Search Results

Process Queue Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact

Search for a Job by Task Type or Group Type or Status or Job Run ID

[Process Queue Advanced Search](#)

Job Name and Description	Status
Mass De-Activate Cards (ID 12220) Mass De-Activate Cards	Complete

- Click the **Name** which appears as a link for any Job to open the Job Details. See [Viewing a Job in Process Queue](#) for more information. Click the **Action Menu** to Refresh the Task Run details.

Figure 12-3 Action Menu Options - Quick Search

View Job ×

ID	Job Description	Job Status
12220	Mass De-Activate Cards	Complete

⋮

Task Run Refresh

Task Sequence	Task Type	Task Status	Started Time	Stopped Time	Progress
▶ 0	Batch Mass De-activate Cards	Success	3/8/23, 3:38 PM	3/8/23, 3:38 PM	

Done

Job Quick Search - Job Scheduling Tiles

Scheduled Jobs are a list of Jobs that are configured to be run by the system. They include the following tiles:

- All Scheduled Jobs
- Daily
- Weekly
- Monthly

Figure 12-4 Job Home - All Scheduled Jobs Tile

Job Home

Process Queue
11,290

All Scheduled Jobs
96

Daily
17

Weekly
1

Monthly
26

Alerts
1,955

Scheduled Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact Create Scheduled Job

Scheduled Job Advanced Search

Job Name and Description	Frequency	Next Run Time	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Batch Import Review (ID 3884) Batch Import Review	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Daily	3/11/23, 2:00 AM	⋮
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Small FTP file (ID 3634) Small FTP file	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Monthly	1/1/32, 1:00 AM	⋮
<input checked="" type="radio"/> RCRMCS-13086 (ID 3535) RCRMCS-13086	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Once, Later	12/31/31, 12:00 AM	⋮

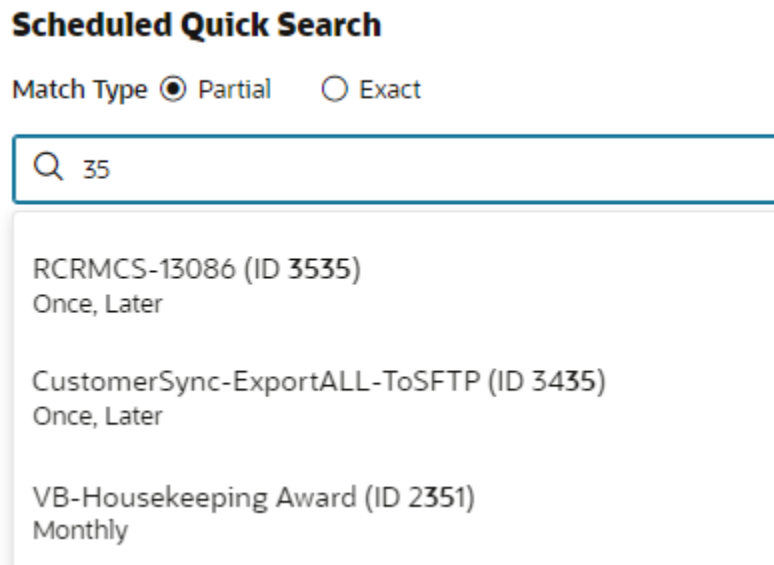
The Job Scheduling Tiles displays the following information for each Job:

- Job Status - Indicates whether the Job is currently enabled. A full circle indicates the Job is active. An empty circle indicates the job is inactive.
- Name and Description - Name and Description of the Job.
- ID - ID Number of the Job.
- Frequency - The frequency at which the Job is performed.
- Next Run Time - The Time at which the Job is run next.

Perform the following steps to search for a Job.

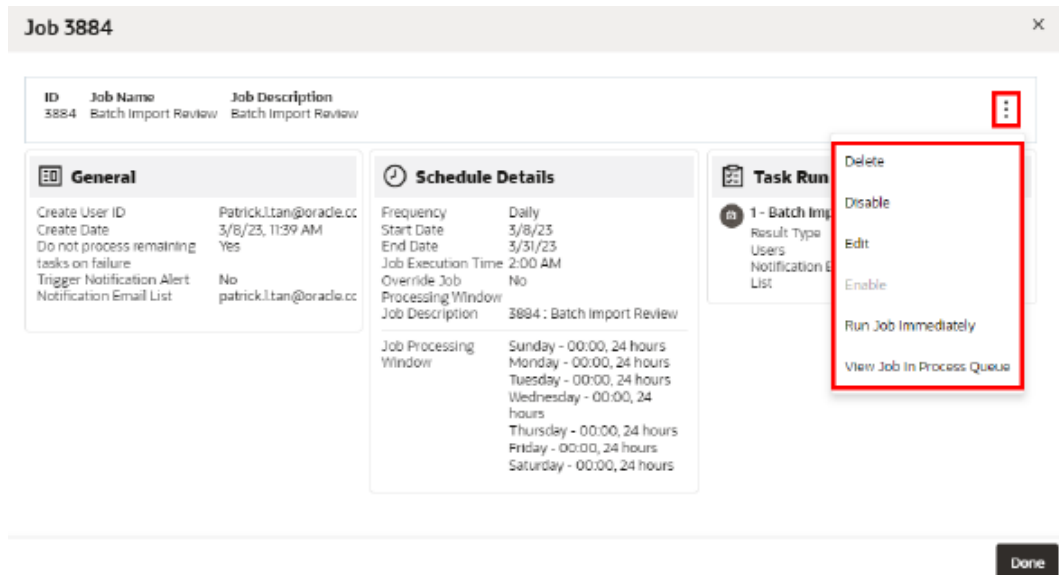
1. Click the **All Scheduled Jobs**, **Daily**, **Weekly**, or **Monthly** tile.
2. In the Search for a Job field, enter the **Name**, **Frequency**, or [Viewing a Job in Process Queue](#) of the Job you want to search for. Select **Partial** to search for Jobs that partially match the search text, or select **Exact**, to search for an exact match.

Figure 12-5 Jobs Scheduling Quick Search Results



3. Click the **Name** which appears as a link for any Job to open the Job Details. See [Viewing a Scheduled Job](#) for more information. Click the **Action Menu** to Delete, Disable, Edit, Enable, Run Job Immediately, or View Job in Process Queue.

Figure 12-6 Action Menu Options - Quick Search



Job Advanced Search

The Job Advanced Search allows you to select more criteria that are not available in the Job Quick Search box. The Job Advanced Search is accessed by the following methods:

- Click the **Advanced Search** link underneath the Job Quick Search box in the Job Home window.

- Click **Job Search** in the Job Management menu. See [Navigation](#) for more information.

Job Advanced Search - Process Queue

Figure 12-7 Job Advanced Search - Process Queue

Job Search

Search

Job Management
Process Queue ▼



Job Run ID

Job Name

Task Type
All ▼

Job Status
All ▼

Scheduled Jobs
All ▼

Date Range
From 
To 

The following search fields are available when **Job Management** is set to **Process Queue**:

- Job Run ID
- Job Name
- Task Type - The type of task. The values in this Selection menu depend upon configuration. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for information about configuring custom task types.
- Job Status
 - All Default
 - Pending
 - Running
 - Complete
 - Failed
 - Skipped
 - Abnormal Termination
- Scheduled Jobs
- Date Range
 - From - Click the Calendar icon to select the beginning Month and Day of the date range
 - To - Click the Calendar icon to select the ending Month and Day of the date range

Job Advanced Search - Scheduled Jobs

Figure 12-8 Job Advanced Search - Scheduled Jobs

Job Search

Search

Job Management

Job ID

Job Name

Enabled

Frequency

Task Type

The following search fields are available when **Job Management** is set to **Scheduled Jobs**:

- Job ID
- Job Name
- Enabled
 - All - Default
 - Yes
 - No
- Frequency
 - All - Default
 - Once, Immediately
 - Once, Later
 - Daily
 - Daily, Business Days Only
 - Weekly
 - Monthly
- Task Type - The type of task. The values in this Selection menu depend upon configuration. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for information about configuring custom task types.

Searching Jobs

Once all the desired information has been entered, click **Search** to see the results.

Figure 12-9 Advanced Search Results - Process Queue

Search Results									
11,290 Jobs Found Sort By Job Run ID ▾									
Job Name and Description	Status	Started	Ended	Tasks	Success	Error	Canceled	Skipped	
Query run: VB-Stratified (Franchisee) (ID 12240) Query run: VB-Stratified (Franchisee)	Skipped	3/10/23, 2:30 PM	3/10/23, 2:30 PM	1	0	0	0	1	⋮
Query run: VB-Unstratified (Franchisee) (ID 12239) Query run: VB-Unstratified (Franchisee)	Skipped	3/10/23, 2:30 PM	3/10/23, 2:30 PM	1	0	0	0	1	⋮
Query run: VB - Unstratified - Clienteling (ID 12238) Query run: VB - Unstratified - Clienteling	Skipped	3/10/23, 2:30 PM	3/10/23, 2:30 PM	1	0	0	0	1	⋮

Figure 12-10 Advanced Search Results - Scheduled Jobs

Search Results			Create Scheduled Job
96 Scheduled Jobs Found	Sort By	Job ID	
Job Name and Description	Frequency	Next Run Time	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Query run: Unstratified-LS-Test3 (ID 1415) Query run: Unstratified-LS-Test3	Once, Later	10/31/26, 1:00 AM	⋮
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Housekeeping Stored Files (ID 1388) Housekeeping Stored Files	Weekly	3/12/23, 12:00 AM	⋮
<input type="radio"/> LS-Email Notifications-Regression (ID 1342) LS-Email Notifications-Regression	Daily	12/31/22, 1:30 PM	⋮

Note:

Click **Reset** to clear all fields and return list values to the default selections. You can also click **Search** without entering any criteria to see a complete list of Jobs.

Sorting Job Results

The sort options will re-sort just the current 25 jobs displayed in the window. Sorting options include:

Process Queue

- Job Run ID - Default
- Last Run
- Status
- Tasks
- Success
- Error
- Canceled
- Skipped

Scheduled Jobs

- Job ID - Default
- Job Name
- Frequency
- Next Run Time

Viewing a Scheduled Job

To view a scheduled job:

1. Search for a **Job**. See [Job Quick Search](#) or [Job Advanced Search](#).
2. For the Job you want to view, click the **Action Menu**.
3. Click **View**. The Job opens.

Figure 12-11 Job View

Job 1413

ID	Job Name	Job Description
1413	Query run: Unstratified-LS-Test3	Query run: Unstratified-LS-Test3

General	
Create User ID	lorraine.steiner@oracl
Create Date	10/20/21, 10:56 AM
Do not process remaining tasks on failure	No
Trigger Notification Alert	No
Notification Email List	None

Schedule Details	
Frequency	Once, Later
Start Date	10/31/26
Job Execution Time	12:00 AM
Override Job	No
Processing Window	1413 : Query run: Unstratified-LS-Test3
Job Processing Window	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours Monday - 00:00, 24 hours Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours Friday - 00:00, 24 hours Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours

Task Run	
1 - Unstratified Segment	Unstratified-LS-Test3 - 459

Done

4. Click **Done** to return to the Scheduled Job List.

Note:

To use the available options in the Action Menu, see [Deleting a Job](#), [Disabling a Job](#), [Editing a Job](#), [Enabling a Job](#), [Running a Job Immediately](#), or [Viewing a Job in Process Queue](#).

Creating a Scheduled Job

There are a two choices available to start the process of creating a Scheduled Job. Access the Create Scheduled Job button from either:

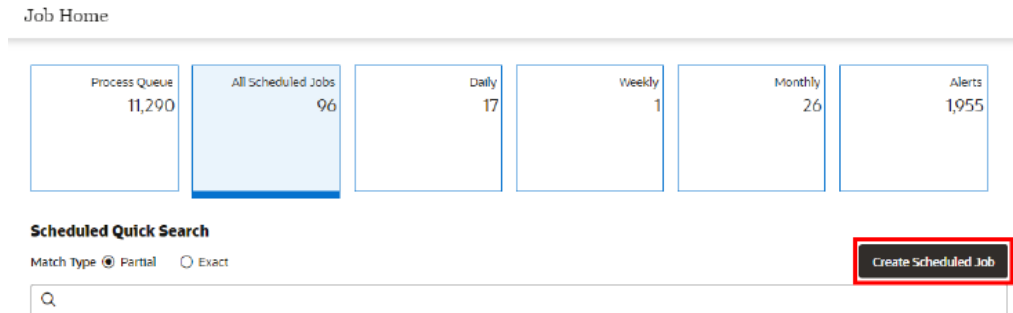
- Job Home
 - Job Search
1. To access the Create Scheduled Job wizard: Proceed to **Step 2**.

Or use this alternate method:

To Create a new Scheduled Job from Job Search: Click the **Create Scheduled Job** button, which will open the Scheduled Job wizard on the Information tab. .

- a. From Job Home, click **Create Scheduled Job** which opens the Schedule Job Wizard on the information tab. Proceed to **Step 2**

Figure 12-12 Job Home

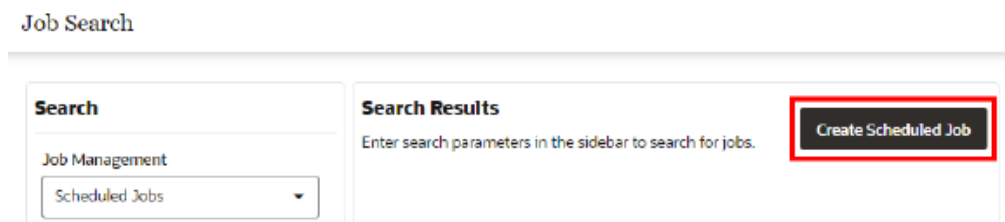


 **Note:**

To access the Create Scheduled Job button, you must select either the All Scheduled Jobs, Daily, Weekly, or Monthly tile.

- b. From Job Search, click **Create Scheduled Job** which opens the Scheduled Job wizard on the Information tab. Proceed to **Step 2**

Figure 12-13 Job Search



2. Enter the following for the **Information** tab.

Figure 12-14 Information Tab

Create Scheduled Job [X]

1 Information 2 Task Configuration 3 Schedule Definition 4 Review

Job Definition

Information

Job Name Required

Job Description Required

Do not process remaining tasks on failure

Trigger Notification Alert

Email Notification

Notify Email Address

+

Notification Email List

Information

Do not process remaining tasks on failure: Yes
Trigger Notification Alert: No
Notification Email List: None

Task Configuration

No Task Configurations to display

Schedule Definition

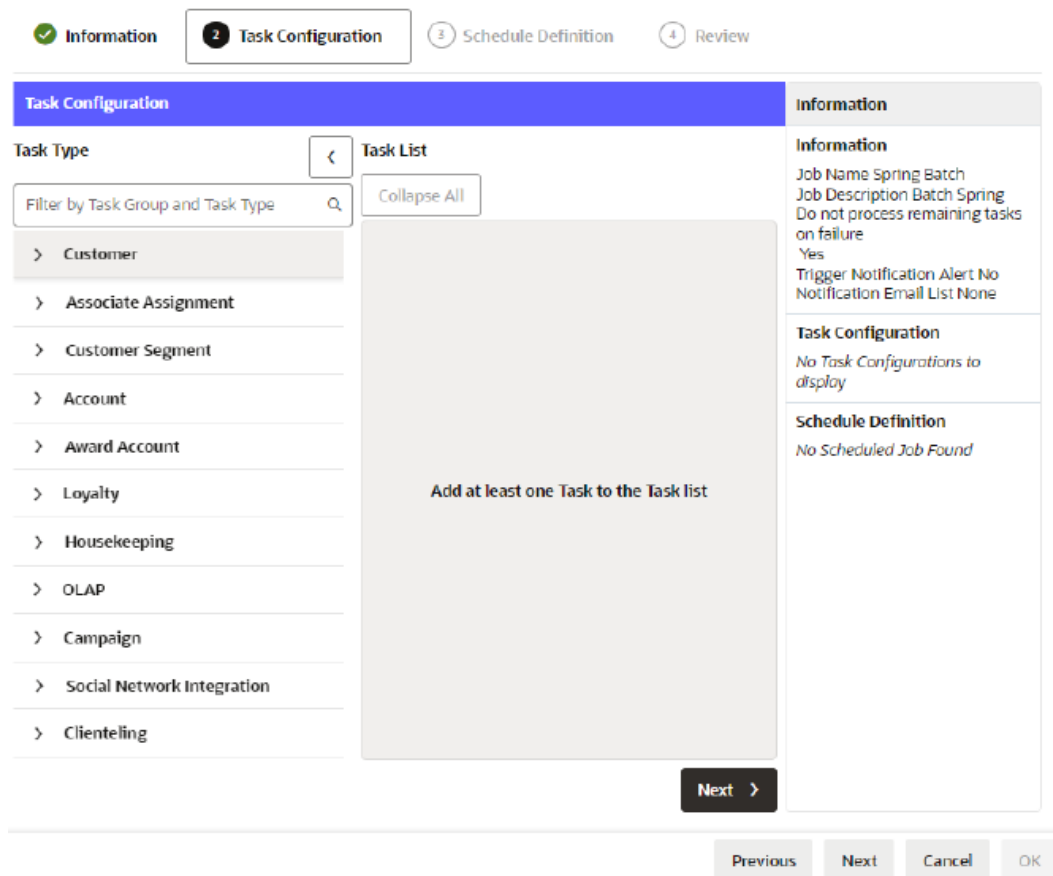
No Scheduled Job Found

Next >

Previous Next Cancel OK

- Job Name (required)
 - Job Description (required)
 - Do Not Process Remaining Tasks on Failure - Default is **ON**.
 - Trigger Notification Alert - Toggle to **ON** to set up an alert that notifies users to items needing their attention when creating a scheduled job to be run in Customer Engagement. See [Notifications](#) for more information.
 - Notify Email Address - Enter one or more email addresses using the **Plus** icon to move each email address to the Notification Email List.
 - Notification Email List - This field populates as email addresses are entered.
3. Click **Next** to continue to the **Task Configuration** tab.

Figure 12-15 Task Configuration



Building the Task List

- a. To start the Task List selection, you can either filter by **Task Group and Task Type** or you can select one of the **Templates** to expand the **Task Type** selections.
- b. To filter by **Task Group and Task Type**: In the Filter by Task Group and Task Type box, enter part or all of a **Task Group** or **Task Type**.
- c. Press **Enter**, or click the **Search** icon.

Figure 12-16 Task Type - Filtered

Task Configuration

Task Type <

Customer Q

> Customer Segment

∨ Award Account

⋮

Update Award Program Customer Map Ⓢ Add

∨ Loyalty

⋮

Update Loyalty Program Level Customer Map Ⓢ Add

∨ Housekeeping

⋮

Delete Customers Add

⋮

Delete Inactive Customers Add

⋮

Delete Inactive Customer Addresses Ⓢ Add

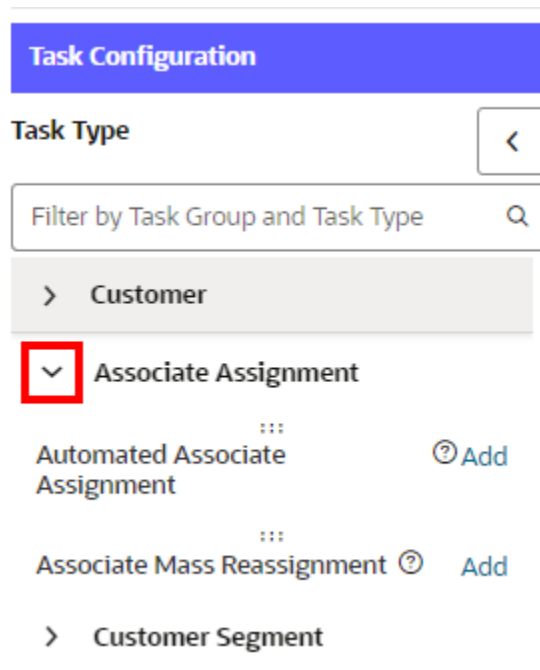
 **Note:**

To see the available tasks in your filtered list, expand the **Template** to see the available choices from which to select.

To **reset** the filter, highlight the words and press **Delete**. Then press **Enter**, or click the **Search** icon.

- d. In the Task Type selection list, click a **Template Group** to expand its list of Task List options. See [Jobs and Tasks](#) for more information about Task Type group organization.

Figure 12-17 Expanded Task Type List



- e. Click the **Add** link, or drag and drop the **Task Type Name** into the Task List window.

Figure 12-18 Adding Task Types to Task List

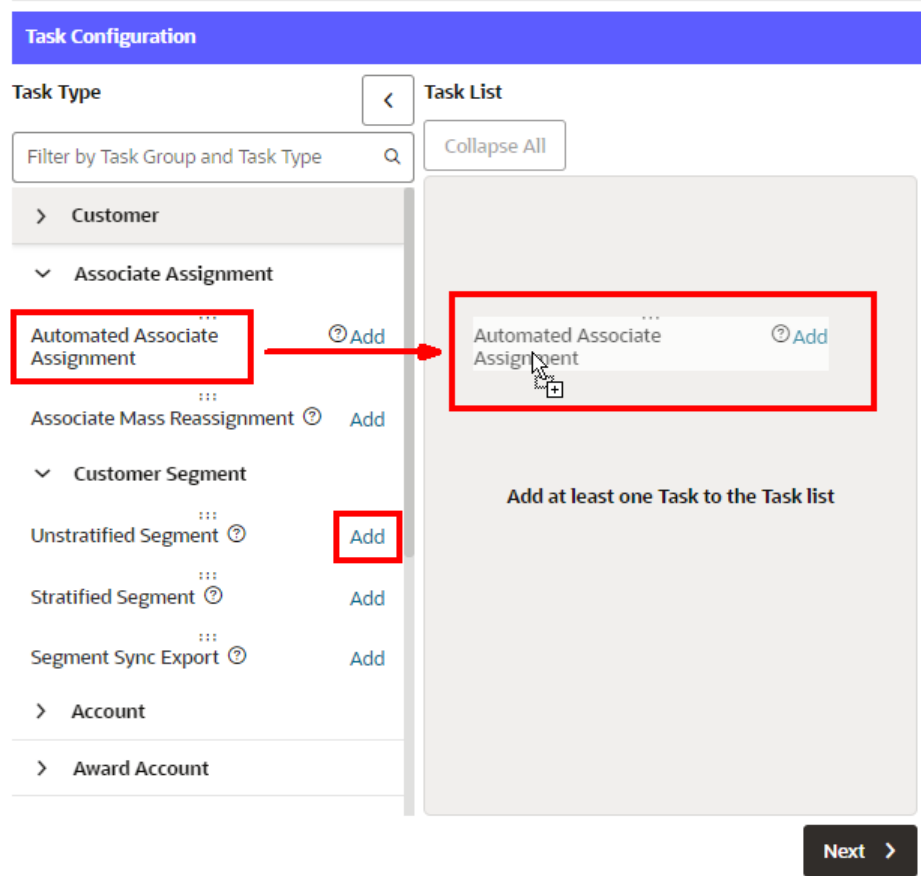


Figure 12-19 Added Task Types

The screenshot displays the 'Task Configuration' interface. On the left, under 'Task Type', there is a search bar 'Filter by Task Group and Task Type' and a list of tasks under the 'Customer' group. Each task has a three-dot menu icon and an 'Add' button. The tasks listed are: Location Mass Assignment, Duplicate Search, Duplicate Merge, Household Identification, Home Location Reassignment, Franchisee Assignment, Customer Sync Export, Customer Activity Sync Export, and Customer Attributes Sync Export. On the right, the 'Task List' panel shows a 'Collapse All' button and two task configurations. The first is 'Unstratified Segment (Customer Segment)' with a 'Customer Segment' dropdown menu set to '(Please select)' and a 'Required' label. The second is 'Franchisee Assignment (Customer)' with an 'Assignment Method' section containing radio buttons for 'Basic Assignment' (selected) and 'Franchisee Group', and a 'Lock Until' dropdown menu set to 'None'. A 'Next >' button is located at the bottom right of the configuration panel.

- f. Repeat **Step 3.e** until all tasks are added.
- g. Enter the **Task List Criteria** into the appropriate fields. See [Jobs and Tasks](#) for more information about Task List fields.

Figure 12-20 Tasks

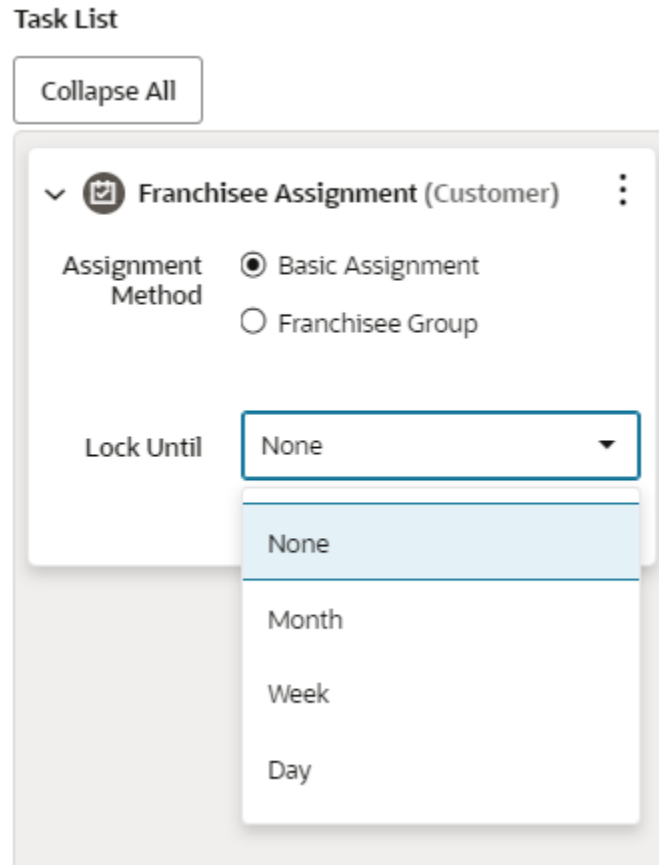
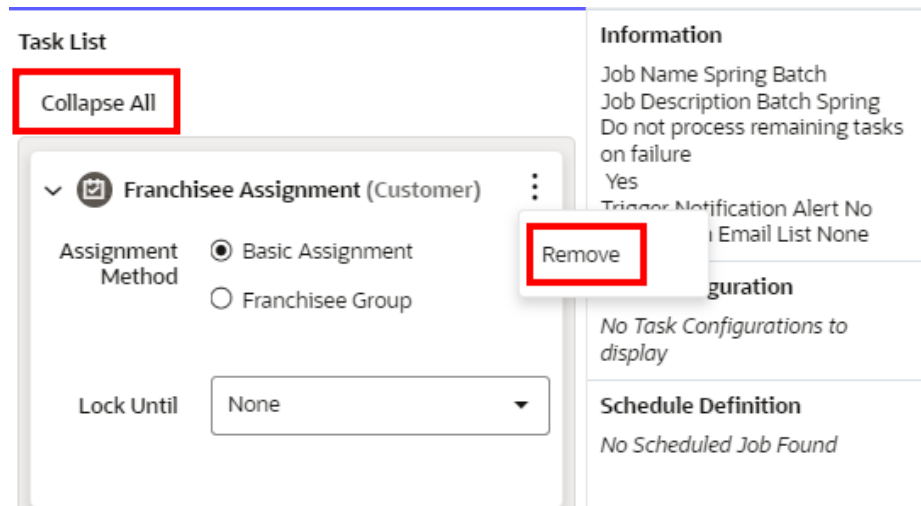


Figure 12-21 Task List Options



- h. After entering the search criteria you can collapse or expand the details at any time. To collapse a task in the list, click the arrow next to each task. To change all tasks at once, click **Collapse All/Expand All** to **Collapse/Expand**.

- i. When you need to clear a task from the Task List, click the **Action Menu** and then click **Remove**.
4. Click **Next** to go to the **Schedule Definition** tab.
5. Enter the following for the **Schedule Definition** tab:

Figure 12-22 Schedule Definition Tab

Create Scheduled Job

Information Task Configuration **Schedule Definition** Review

Schedule Definition

Frequency

- Once** (Selected) - Run the Job one time
- Daily - Run the Job daily at a certain time
- Weekly - Run the Job on a certain day of the week at a certain time
- Monthly - Run the Job on a certain day of the month at a certain time

Once

Once, Immediately Once, Later

Job Processing Window

Override Job Processing Window

Job processing window is based on server time. The current server time is 3/10/23, 8:16 PM

	5 AM	6 AM	7 AM	8 AM	9 AM	10 AM	11 AM	12 PM	1 PM	2 PM	3 PM	4 PM	5 PM	6 PM	7 PM	8 PM
Sunday	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Monday	Monday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Tuesday	Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Wednesday	Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Thursday	Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Friday	Friday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Saturday	Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours															

Next >

Note:

As shown in **Figure Figure 12-22**, hovering the mouse over the Job Processing Window enables the Zoom in and Zoom out icons. Click these icons to better view the days and times.

6. Select one of the following Job Execution Frequencies:
 - **Once, Immediately** to run the Job immediately, once you have finished creating/saving this job. If you select this option, continue with **Step 6.f**.
 - **Once, Later** to run the Job at a later date. If you select this option, continue with **Step 6.a**.
 - **Daily** to run the Job every day. If you select this option, continue with **Step 6.a**.
 - **Daily, Business Days Only** to run the Job only on business days (that is, Monday through Friday). If you select this option, continue with **Step 6.a**.

- **Weekly** to run the Job once each week. If you select this option, continue with **Step 6.a**.
- **Monthly** to run the Job once each month. If you select this option, continue with **Step 6.a**.
- a. Use the **Start Date Calendar Menu** to select the start of the date range in which the Job will run. If you selected a Job Execution Frequency of Once, Later, continue with **Step 6.e**.
- b. Use the **End Date Calendar Menu** to select the end of the date range in which the Job will run.

 **Note:**

For Daily, Daily, Business Days Only, Weekly, and Monthly, if **Disable End Date** is **selected**, the End Date configuration is deactivated, leaving the Job in effect, forever. To enable the End Date Calendar Menu, clear the check box.

If you selected a Job Execution Frequency of **Daily**, or **Daily, Business Days Only**, continue with **Step 6.e**.

If you selected a Job Execution Frequency of **Weekly**, continue with **Step 6.c**.

If you selected a Job Execution Frequency of **Monthly**, continue with **Step 6.d**.

- c. Use the Day of Week Selection check boxes to select the days of the week that you want the Job to run. Continue with **Step 6.e**.
- d. Use the Day of Month Selection Menu to select the day of the month on which the Job will run.
- e. Use the Job Execution Time Menus to determine the time at which the Job will run.

It is recommended that you select a time that is within the Job Processing Window. If you select a time outside the Job Processing Window, the Override Job Processing Window setting (**see Step 6.f**) must be checked for the Job to run.

- f. Use the Override Job Processing Window Check Box to indicate whether the Job should run, even if it is scheduled outside the Job Processing Window. See the [Job Processing Window](#) for more information on how the Job Processing Window works.
7. After defining the schedule, click **Next** to proceed to the **Review** tab.

Figure 12-23 Review Tab

Create Scheduled Job [X]

Information Task Configuration Schedule Definition **Review**

Review

Job Name	Job Description
Spring Batch	Batch Spring

General

Do not process remaining tasks on failure	Yes
Trigger Notification Alert	No
Notification Email List	None

Schedule Details

Frequency	Once, Immediately
Override Job Processing Window	No
Job Processing Window	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours Monday - 00:00, 24 hours Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours Friday - 00:00, 24 hours Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours

Task Run

1 - Franchisee Assignment

Assignment Method	Basic Assignment
Period Type	None

Previous Next Cancel **OK**

Note:

Before you can submit certain jobs, you need to acknowledge any warning in the Review step.

Figure 12-24 Review Tab - Confirm Choice Warning

The screenshot shows the 'Create Scheduled Job' dialog box in the 'Review' tab. The dialog is divided into several sections:

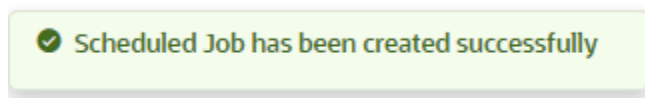
- Job Information:** Job Name: Spring Batch, Job Description: Batch Spring.
- General:** Do not process remaining tasks on failure: Yes, Trigger Notification Alert: No, Notification Email List: None.
- Schedule Details:** Frequency: Once, Immediately; Override Job Processing Window: No; Job Processing Window: Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours; Monday - 00:00, 24 hours; Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours; Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours; Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours; Friday - 00:00, 24 hours; Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours.
- Task Run:** Task Name: 1 - Delete Gift Registries; Number of Days: 0; Based on Report Only: No; Expiration Date: No; Warning: this task will permanently delete the specified data. This cannot be undone! (highlighted in red); Required Acknowledge warning: (highlighted in red).

At the bottom, a red box highlights a warning message: "Please acknowledge all warnings before saving." Below this are buttons for Previous, Next, Cancel, and OK.

- Review the entered information to ensure that it is correct. Click **OK** to save the Job, or click **Cancel** to close the Job without saving. Click **Previous** or any **Tab** to return to any point of the Create Scheduled Job process.

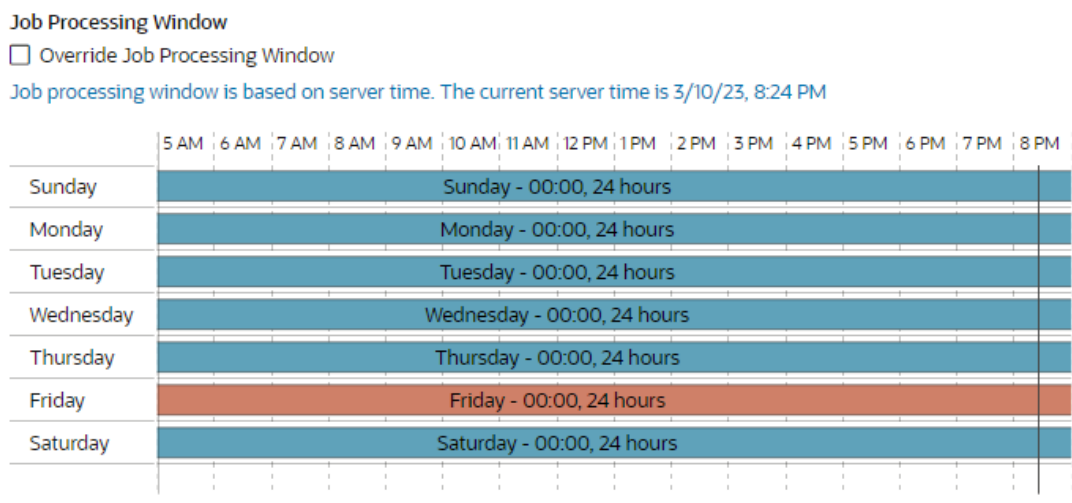
Note: Clicking **OK** triggers a confirmation notification to confirm the job has been created successfully.

Figure 12-25 Confirmation Notification



Job Processing Window

The Job Processing Window field displays the times at which scheduled jobs should run. The Window is intended to indicate times when there is little processing load on the system, so that Jobs will not interfere with transaction processing.

Figure 12-26 Job Processing Window

Editing a Job

To edit an existing Job:

1. Navigate to Job Home. See [Job Quick Search](#).
2. Click the **All Scheduled Jobs** tile.
The Scheduled Jobs list appears.
3. Search for the Job. See [Job Quick Search - Job Scheduling Tiles](#) or [Job Advanced Search](#).
4. For the Job you want to edit, click the **Action Menu**.
5. Click **Edit**. The Job Create Wizard opens with all fields populated with the current configuration information.

Figure 12-27 Edit Job

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Job (ID 3535)' wizard with the 'Information' tab selected. The wizard has four steps: 1. Information, 2. Task Configuration, 3. Schedule Definition, and 4. Review. The 'Information' section includes fields for Job Name (RCRMCS-13086), Job Description (RCRMCS-13086), a toggle for 'Do not process remaining tasks on failure' (checked), a toggle for 'Trigger Notification Alert' (unchecked), and an 'Email Notification' section with a 'Notify Email Address' field (containing 'Enter Email Address') and a 'Notification Email List' field (containing 'Email Addresses to use'). A 'Next >' button is at the bottom right. A summary pane on the right shows the current configuration: Job Name RCRMCS-13086, Job Description RCRMCS-13086, Do not process remaining tasks on failure Yes, Trigger Notification Alert No, Notification Email List None, Task Configuration Task Name (#1) Customer Sync Export, and Schedule Definition Job Execution Frequency Once, Later. At the bottom, there are 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'OK' buttons.

6. Use Wizard Navigation to make any necessary changes. See [Creating a Scheduled Job](#) for a description of the fields and information.
7. When you are finished making changes to the Job, do one of the following, either:
 - Click **Save** to save the Job with the current settings and return to the Scheduled Jobs List or
 - Click **Cancel** to delete all changes and return to the Scheduled Jobs List.

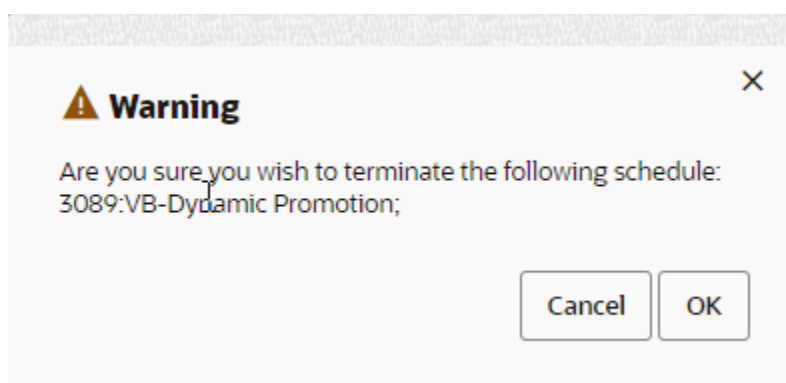
Deleting a Job

To delete an existing job:

1. View a Job. See [Viewing a Scheduled Job](#).
2. Click the **Action Menu**.
3. Click **Delete**.

A warning message appears.

Figure 12-28 Warning Message



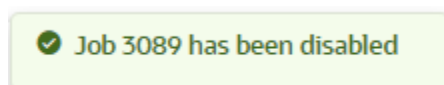
4. Click **Ok** to delete the job or **Cancel** to return to the Job.

Disabling a Job

To disable an existing job:

1. View a Job. See [Viewing a Scheduled Job](#).
2. Click the **Action Menu**.
3. Click **Disable**.

Figure 12-29 Confirmation Notification



Note:

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the job has been disabled.

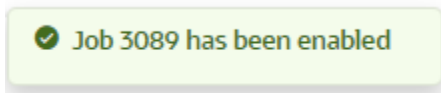
4. Click **Done** to close the job and return to the Job list.
An empty circle before the Job Name indicates the job is disabled.

Enabling a Job

To enable a previously disabled job:

1. View a Job. See [Viewing a Scheduled Job](#).
2. Click the **Action Menu**.
3. Click **Enable**. A confirmation notification appears to confirm the job is enabled.

Figure 12-30 Confirmation Notification



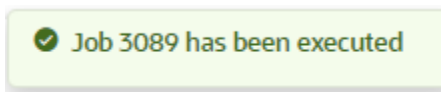
4. Click **Done** to close the job and return to the Job List.
A filled circle before the Job Name indicates the job is enabled.

Running a Job Immediately

To run an existing job immediately:

1. View a Job. See [Viewing a Scheduled Job](#).
2. Click the **Action Menu**.
3. Click **Run Job Immediately**.

Figure 12-31 Confirmation Notification



Note:

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the job has been run.

4. Click **Done** to close the job and return to the Job List.

Viewing a Job in Process Queue

To view a job in the Process Queue:

1. View a Job. See [Viewing a Scheduled Job](#).
2. Click the **Action Menu**.
3. Click **View Job in Process Queue**. The Process Queue opens with all of the previous runs of the selected Job in the Process Queue.

Figure 12-32 View Job in Process Queue

Process Queue 11,353 Alerts 1,956

Process Queue Quick Search

Match Type Partial Exact

Search for a Job by Task Type or Group Type or Status or Job Run ID

Process Queue Advanced Search

Job Name and Description	Status	Started	Ended	Tasks	Success	Error	Canceled	Skipped	
Batch Import Review (ID 12286) Batch Import Review	Complete	3/14/23, 3:00 AM	3/14/23, 3:00 AM	1	1	0	0	0	⋮
Batch Import Review (ID 12257) Batch Import Review	Complete	3/13/23, 3:00 AM	3/13/23, 3:00 AM	1	1	0	0	0	⋮
Batch Import Review (ID 12251) Batch Import Review	Complete	3/12/23, 3:00 AM	3/12/23, 3:00 AM	1	1	0	0	0	⋮
Batch Import Review (ID 12244) Batch Import Review	Complete	3/11/23, 2:00 AM	3/11/23, 2:00 AM	1	1	0	0	0	⋮
Batch Import Review (ID 12237) Batch Import Review	Complete	3/10/23, 2:00 AM	3/10/23, 2:00 AM	1	1	0	0	0	⋮
Batch Import Review (ID 12223) Batch Import Review	Complete	3/9/23, 2:00 AM	3/9/23, 2:00 AM	1	1	0	0	0	⋮

- For the run you want to view details for, click the **Action Menu**.
- Click **View**. The specific Job Run appears.

Figure 12-33 Job Run Details

View Job ×

ID	Job Name	Job Description	Job Status	
12286	Batch Import Review	Batch Import Review	Complete	⋮

Task Run

Task Sequence	Task Type	Task Status	Started Time	Stopped Time	Progress
▶ 0	Batch Import Review	Success	3/14/23, 3:00 AM	3/14/23, 3:00 AM	

Done

- Click the **Action Menu** and then click **Refresh** to update the Task Run fields.
- Click **Done** to close the job and return to the Process Queue for that job.

Jobs and Tasks

Jobs include one or more tasks that are chained together to run sequentially.

Each Job has additional parameters that must be configured. For information about these parameters, see *Configure Job Parameters*. The type of tasks that can be scheduled within a job are described in this section.

Customer Tasks

This section describes customer tasks.

Location Mass Assignment

This task searches Customer transaction histories in a selected date range and assigns each Customer to a Home Location, based on where the Customer shopped most frequently over the chosen date range.

In the database, there are two location fields: Home Location and Sign-Up Location. The system expects to see the Sign-Up Location populated from the POS or other data entry client. This field is static.

The Home Location field is intended to be the location to which the Customer is assigned as their primary location. As an example; it is possible that a Customer signs up in a location during a trip. However, there is a location in the Customer's neighborhood and subsequent to sign up, the Customer is seen to shop there regularly. As a basic management function, the administrator wants to assign the Customer to this location.

As Customers move around and as a retailer opens and closes locations it is a common, on-going requirement to assign and re-assign Customers to a home location. The Location Mass Assignment task will re-assign Customers to the home location where they shopped most frequently during the selected date range.

See [Location Mass Assignment](#) for job scheduling details.

Duplicate Search

This process allows you to schedule a search for duplicate Customer records. The search will identify potential duplicate Customer records by comparing information in each record and grouping them into Duplicate Sets.

See [Duplicate Search](#) for job scheduling details.

Duplicate Merge

This task performs the process of actually merging duplicate Customer records identified by the Duplicate Search job.

The Merge process that runs on this schedule will merge all duplicate sets that are marked as Approved regardless of the search strategy used to find them. After the merge, Customer Engagement will clean out all duplicate sets (Approved, Not Approved, and Merged) from the database.

Duplicates can be approved through a Duplicate Search job using the Automatic Approval option (see [Duplicate Search](#)), or in the Customer Merge Review procedure.

See [Duplicate Merge](#) for job scheduling details.

Household Identification

The Household Identification task determines which Customers belong to the same household. This is useful when creating mailing lists, as this allows you to limit the

number of mailings sent out to one per household. Only primary home addresses are evaluated.

See [Household Identification](#) for job scheduling details.

Home Location Reassignment

The Home Location Reassignment task changes the Home Locations assigned to Customers.

See [Home Location Reassignment](#) for job scheduling details.

Franchisee Assignment

The Franchisee Assignment task assigns Franchisees to Customers.

See [Franchisee Assignment](#) for job scheduling details.

Customer Sync Export

Creates a file of customer data for export to a marketing system or a business intelligence/analytics system. The data includes the customers name, address, email address, phone number, and additional information.

Depending on the selected batch export type, the export task may also generate a listing of customer records that have been deleted as a result of Customer Housekeeping or Customer Merge, or include deleted customer records in a single customer export file.

See [Customer Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Customer Activity Sync Export

Creates a file for export to a marketing system. The data includes details on customer transactions.

See [Customer Activity Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Customer Attributes Sync Export

Create a file for export to a marketing system or a business intelligence/analytics system. The data includes details on customer attributes.

See [Customer Attributes Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Customer Address Sync Export

Create a file for export to a business intelligence/analytics system. The data includes details on the customer, the address.

See [Customer Address Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and the generated address file.

Customer Household Sync Export

Create a file for export to a business intelligence/analytics system. The data includes details on the association of a customer with a household.

See [Customer Household Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Rebuild Category Totals

Recalculate the totals in the CST_DEPARTMENT_TOTALS tables for all customers active within a specified number of days, months, or years, for example: rebuild totals for customers active within the last 4 weeks. The maximum period of time is up to three years.

See [Rebuild Category Totals](#) for job scheduling details.

BI/Analytics Package Exporter

The BI/Analytics Package Exporter task enables you to package the export files into a zip file for export to the business intelligence/analytics system. This task should be the last task performed for a single job, running after the individual exports.

See [BI/Analytics Package Exporter](#) for job scheduling details.

Reset Customer YTD Totals

Resets the YTD totals for all Customers to zero.

See [Reset Customer YTD Totals](#) for job scheduling details.

Associate Assignment Tasks

This section describes associate assignment tasks.

Automated Associate Assignment

This task automatically assigns Associates to Customers, based on a set of selected criteria.

See [Automated Associate Assignment](#) for job scheduling details.

Associate Mass Reassignment

This task automatically reassigns the Customers assigned to a selected Associate to one or more new Associates.

See [Associate Mass Reassignment](#) for job scheduling details.

Customer Segment Tasks

This section describes customer segment tasks.

Unstratified Segment

This task finds Customers to be entered into an Unstratified Segment and counts the number of Customers in the Segment. For more information on Unstratified Segments, see Unstratified Segments.

See [Unstratified Segment](#) for job scheduling details.

Stratified Segment

This task organizes Customers into user-defined levels and counts the number of Customers in each strata level. For more information on Stratified Segments, see [Stratified Segments](#).

See [Stratified Segment](#) for job scheduling details.

Segment Sync Export

This task generates a CSV file of customers within a stratified, unstratified, or manual segment for export to a marketing system or a business intelligence/analytics system.

See [Segment Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Account Tasks

This section describes account tasks.

Export Card Series

This task creates an export file for Cards created using a SOAP Message or batch file.

When a Generate Card message is processed, individual Cards are created and, depending on configuration, assigned to Customers; however, the Card and Customer information is not exported to an XML file. This job will create an export file that includes the Customer Engagement-generated Card numbers and the Customer assigned to each Card.



Note:

The export file for this type of job is not compressed.

See [Export Card Series](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Release Expired PreAuthorizations

This task releases (removes) expired pre-authorization amounts that have not been settled or post-authorized. It searches Tender Accounts for PreAuth amounts that are older than their configured expiration time and removes them from the associated Tender Account.

See [Release Expired PreAuth](#) for job scheduling details.

Points/Awards Transfer Notification Export

This task creates CSV files for notifications about points transfers and/or award transfers. A separate file is generated for each type of transfer, and information is included to notify both the source (originating) Customer for the transfer and the target (recipient) Customer.

The integrated system, such as Responsys, can use the information to generate transfer notification emails to the originator and recipient of the award or points transfer, based on each Customer's Contact Permissions. SMS messages can also be generated if the integrated system supports it.

The Enable Responsys Transfer Notification configuration property controls whether to send the notification in real time, or capture the data in a separate table and generate notifications through a batch export file. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information about System Configuration.

When interactive notification requests are sent through a web service message, use of the export file occurs only if an interactive request to generate the notification did not succeed. In this case, the details of the transfer are retained in the database until a scheduled notification export job runs.

See [Points/Awards Transfer Notifications Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files. The Marketing Integration Properties chapter of the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* describes the configuration required for transfer notification integration with a marketing system such as Responsys.

Notify Card Renewal

This task notifies Customers that they need to renew Cards that are set to expire within a certain, defined period of time.

See [Notify Card Renewal](#) for job scheduling details.

Tender Sync Export

This task generates a file of tender accounts and tender account activity for export to an external system.

See [Tender Account Sync](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Award Account Tasks

This section describes award account tasks

Issue Anniversary Awards

This task searches for Customers who have a birthday or signup date anniversary within the time frame specified and issues an eAward.

This process schedules the Issue Anniversary Awards process.

This task will look behind and ahead of the run date for Customers who have birthdays or signup anniversaries within the time period. The Customers that are found will receive an award coupon as created in this process. When this task is run, an export file (birthday or signup anniversary) is created.

See [Issue Anniversary Awards](#) for job scheduling details.

Notify Awards Expire

This task searches for Customers whose awards are scheduled to expire within a defined time window, and creates an export file containing award expiration notification information for those Customers.

See [Notify Awards Expire](#) for job scheduling details.

Award Sync Export

This task generates a file of award accounts and a file of award coupons for export to a marketing system.

See [Award Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Update Award Program Customer Map

This task will update the list of customers, accounts and cards associated with award programs. This task is useful for increasing performance when obtaining member counts on various screens.

See [Update Award Program Customer Map](#) for job scheduling details.

Loyalty Tasks

This section describes loyalty tasks.

Distribute Loyalty Awards

This task creates an export file for all pending awards.

See [Distribute Loyalty Awards](#) for job scheduling details.

Create Loyalty Awards

This task converts loyalty points into awards, based on the parameters set for the program and program level.

See [Create Loyalty Awards](#) for job scheduling details.

Earn Loyalty Points

This task converts pending (escrow) loyalty points into earned loyalty points.

See [Earn Loyalty Points](#) for job scheduling details.

Expire Loyalty Points

This task expires (deletes) loyalty points based upon parameters in the Program/Level.

See [Expire Loyalty Points](#) for job scheduling details.

Reset Loyalty YTD Points

This task resets the YTD points earned by each Customer. This task should be run at the end of each calendar/fiscal year to reset YTD Points balances to zero. This task is used for reporting purposes only; it does not affect the actual loyalty points on an account. Life-to-date (LTD) points are not affected by this process.

See [Reset Loyalty YTD Points](#) for job scheduling details.

Loyalty Account Sync Export

This task generates a file of customer loyalty data for export to a marketing system or a BI/analytics system.

See [Loyalty Account Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Loyalty Account Activity Sync Export

This task generates a file of customer loyalty account activity to a BI/analytics system.

See [Loyalty Account Activity Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Loyalty Program Sync Export

This task generates a file of loyalty programs to a BI/analytics system.

See [Loyalty Program Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Loyalty Award Transaction Sync Export

This task generates a file of loyalty award transactions to a BI/analytics system. See [Loyalty Award Transaction Sync Export](#) for job scheduling details and generated files.

Update Loyalty Program Level Customer Map

This task will update the list of customers, accounts and cards associated with loyalty programs and levels. This task is useful for increasing performance when obtaining member counts on various screens.

See [Update Loyalty Program Level Customer Map](#) for job scheduling details.

Housekeeping Tasks

This section describes housekeeping tasks.

When a database contains large amounts of old data, database performance and response may be slowed. To prevent the overburdening of the database with old, unneeded information, housekeeping tasks can be performed to remove old information.

Delete Award Inquiry Activities

This task deletes old award inquiry activities.

See [Delete Award Inquiry Activities](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Batch Process Tracking

This task deletes old Batch Process Tracking records. Consolidated daily, weekly, and monthly records are stored in XMLAPI record tables in the database, and used to display information at the Batch Process Tracking pages.

See [Delete Batch Process Tracking](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Customers

The Delete Customers task removes old Customer records that are no longer needed.

See [Delete Customers](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Gift Registries

This task deletes all database information for Gift Registries that expired prior to a certain, defined period of time in the past.

See [Delete Gift Registries](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Inactive Customer Addresses

This task deletes Customer addresses that are flagged as inactive.

See [Delete Inactive Customer Addresses](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Inactive Customer Email Addresses

This task deletes Customer email addresses that are flagged as inactive.

See [Delete Inactive Customer Email Addresses](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Inactive Customer Phone Numbers

This task deletes Customer phone numbers that are flagged as inactive. See [Delete Inactive Customer Phone Numbers](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Inactive Customers

This task deletes old Customer records that are inactive. See [Delete Inactive Customers](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Inactive Item Registries

This task deletes all database information for inactive Wish Lists that have not been updated within a certain, defined period of time. See [Delete Inactive Item Registries](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Inactive Segment

This task deletes all database information for inactive segments.

See [Delete Inactive Segment](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Job History

This task deletes old job history information.

See [Delete Job History](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Loyalty Accounts and Activities

This task deletes old loyalty accounts and activities.

See [Delete Loyalty Accounts and Activities](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Loyalty Inquiry Activities

This task deletes old loyalty inquiry activities.

See [Delete Loyalty Inquiry Activities](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Loyalty Program Summary

This task clears down the Loyalty aggregation tables based on the YEAR and MONTH values and the "Number of Months" parameter value.

See [Delete Loyalty Program Summary](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Merged/Archived Customers

This task deletes old Customer records that have been merged into other Customer records and archived.

See [Delete Merged/Archived Customers](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Promotion

This task deletes old promotions. It also has the ability to delete an Offer that is associated with the Promotion which is being deleted.



Note:

This method deletes an Offer, provided it is not associated with any other Promotion and if it is associated with any other promotion, the Offer will not be deleted.

See [Delete Promotion](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Segment History

This task deletes old segment history information.

See [Delete Segment History](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Segments

This task deletes old segments.

See [Delete Segments](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Social Activity

This task deletes all social activities from the database that were posted before a certain number of days in the past.

See [Delete Social Activity](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Tasks

This configuration is for a job that deletes tasks from the system. Users can select either or both the **Status** and **Last Update** check boxes to close all tasks based on a status only, status and time period, or only a time period. The default option for status is closed.

See [Delete Tasks](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Stored Files

This task deletes old transfer files.

See [Delete Stored Files](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Transaction History

This task deletes old transaction information.

See [Delete Transaction History](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Web Service Tracking

This task deletes old Web Service Tracking records.

See [Delete Web Service Tracking](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Import Files

The Delete Import Files task removes files in import directories that have not been modified in a specified number of days.

See [Delete Import Files](#) for job scheduling details.

Delete Batch Import History

This task deletes old records from the XMLAPI_PROCESSED_RECORD table. This information is displayed at the Batch Import Review screen.

See [Delete Batch Import History](#) for job scheduling details.

OLAP Tasks

This section describes OLAP tasks.

Aggregate Award Program Summary

As part of the Online Analytical Processing (OLAP), this task summarizes data by program and month for award activity and account data for the Award Program Scorecard.

See [Aggregate Award Program Summary](#) for job scheduling details.

Aggregate Loyalty Program Summary

As part of the Online Analytical Processing (OLAP), this task summarizes data by program and month for loyalty activity and account data for the Loyalty Program Scorecard.

See [Aggregate Loyalty Program Summary](#) for job scheduling details.

Aggregate Promotion Scorecard Summary

As part of the Online Analytical Processing (OLAP), this task summarizes data by offer and month for targeted and untargeted audiences for the Promotion Scorecard.

See [Aggregate Promotion Scorecard Summary](#) for job scheduling details.

Aggregate Tender Program Summary

As part of the Online Analytical Processing (OLAP), this task summarizes data by program and month for tender activity and account data for the Tender Program Scorecard.

See [Aggregate Tender Program Summary](#) for job scheduling details.

Aggregate Loyalty Facts

As part of Online Analytical Processing (OLAP), information about the loyalty program must be aggregated into a summary that can then be retrieved. This task aggregates loyalty information into a summary that can be used by OLAP processes.

See [Aggregate Loyalty Facts](#) for job scheduling details.

Aggregate Tender Facts

As part of Online Analytical Processing (OLAP), information about Tender Accounts must be aggregated into a summary that can then be retrieved. This task aggregates Tender Account information into a summary that can be used by OLAP processes.

See [Aggregate Tender Facts](#) for job scheduling details.

Campaign Tasks

This section describes campaign tasks.

Dynamic and Recurring Promotions

This task updates the Targets for all Dynamic and Recurring Promotions.

See [Dynamic and Recurring Promotions](#) for job scheduling details.

Promotion Response Data Import

This task imports customer event data from a marketing system such as Responsys.

See [Promotion Response Data Import](#) for job scheduling details and import file formats.

Social Network Integration Tasks

This section describes social network integration tasks.

Social Network Listener

This task searches social networks for Customer posts that meet search criteria defined by Social Listeners.

See [Social Network Listener](#) for job scheduling details.

Social Network Update

This task checks for new Social Profiles to add to Customer records.

See [Social Network Update](#) for job scheduling details.

Clienteling Tasks

This section describes clienteling tasks.

Task Generator

Generate tasks for Segments with Task Generation enabled. See Segments.

See [Task Generator](#) for job scheduling details.

Email Notification Tasks

This section describes email notification tasks.

Batch Import Review

Allows the Batch Import Review settings to be maintained.

See [Batch Import Review](#) for job scheduling details.

System Tasks

This section describes system notification tasks.

OCDS Sync

This task generates requests to the Omnichannel Cloud Data Service (OCDS) for updates on item and merchandise hierarchy data as well as location and franchise data.

See [ODCS Sync](#) for job scheduling details.

Data Sync

This task is responsible for moving data from the multiple pending Queues to the InProgress Queue in batches. Once the movement of each batch is complete, the records are deleted from the respective Pending Queue. After the data is transferred into the InProgress Queue, the job creates a message based on the operation and the object Name associated with each record. Next, one by one, each message is transferred to the third party application.

See [Data Sync](#) for job scheduling details.

ORPE Sync

This task is used to load existing item hierarchy and location data in ORCE to the Promotion Engine (ORPE). This task will first delete all the deal product attributes and deal store attributes from the Promotion Engine and then reload the attributes from ORCE.

See [ORPE Sync](#) for job scheduling details.

Configure Job Parameters

The parameters that must be configured for a given task depend upon the task being defined.

The processes performed by these jobs are described above in Jobs and Tasks.

The following sections describe the fields that configure each task.

Location Mass Assignment

This Task has the following parameters:

- Date Range Type - This Selection Menu determines the Date Range used.
- Start Date - This Calendar Menu determines the first date of the Date Range (only available if Date Range Type is set to Specific Date Range).
- End Date - This Calendar Menu determines the final date of the Date Range (only available if Date Range Type is set to Specific Date Range).

Duplicate Search

This task has the following parameters:

- Search Strategy - This Selection Menu determines the strategy used to search for duplicate Customers. See [Search Strategy Field Comparisons](#) for a description of search strategies.
- Valid Data Only - This toggle determines whether the search strategy will only look at addresses, phone number, and/or email addresses that have been validated (see Customer Validation for more information). If the toggle is off, Customer Engagement will look at all addresses, phone number, and email addresses.

- Automatic Approval - This toggle determines whether the Duplicate Sets found by the search process is automatically approved for merging on the next scheduled merge.

Search Strategy Field Comparisons

The following table shows which fields are compared for the search strategy selected.

Table 12-1 Search Strategy Fields Comparison

Field	Name Address	Name Phone	Name Email	Name Address Phone Email
First Name	X	X	X	X
Middle Name	X	X	X	X
Second First Name	X	X	X	X
Second Last Name	X	X	X	X
Last Name	X	X	X	X
Suffix	X	X	X	X
Address 1	X			X
Address 2	X			X
City	X			X
State	X			X
Postal Code	X			X
Area Code		X		X
Phone Number		X		X
Email Address			X	X

Duplicate Merge

This task has the following parameter:

- Generate customer note - This toggle determines whether a Customer note is generated when duplicate Customers are merged.

Merge Behavior

The merge behavior described in this section can be overridden through the use of configuration settings. Contact your Project Manager for more information.

When a duplicate set is merged, there are certain checks that are made on each Customer record in the set and specific actions taken based on the results of that check. These duplicate checks are configured through System Configuration. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information about configuring duplicate checks.

Merge Records Logic

This section describes the new Customer record that results from the merge process. The following table lists information categories and where the information for the new record comes from.

Table 12-2 Merge Records Logic

Category	Comes From
Customer ID	New
Home Location	Source
Personal Preferences	Source
Name	Source
Address(es)	Source
Email Address(es)	Source
Telephone Number(s)	Source
Personal Summary	Source
Socioeconomic Profile	Source
Alternate IDs	All Duplicate records
Customer Attributes	All Duplicate records
Transactions	All Duplicate records
Effective Date	Maximum of all Duplicate Records
Expiry Date	Maximum of all Duplicate Records
Create Date	Maximum of all Duplicate Records
First Transaction Date	Maximum of all Duplicate Records
Last Transaction Date	Maximum of all Duplicate Records
Total Values	Sum of all Duplicate Records
YTD Values	Sum of all Duplicate Records
Signup Date/Location	Minimum of duplicate records that have both, or source if has both, or minimum date of duplicate records and any location.
Birthday	Source or any if source is empty.
Update Date	Current Date
Card Associations	All Cards associated with new Customer ID.

Household Identification

- Identify Household Strategy - This Selection Menu determines the search method used to organize Customers into Households.
 - PRIMARY HOME ADDRESS - Customers with the same primary home address is organized into a Household.
 - LAST NAME PRIMARY HOME ADDRESS - Customers with both the same last name and the same primary home address is organized into a Household.
 Business addresses are not evaluated.
- Valid Data Only - This toggle determines whether the search strategy will only look at addresses and names that have been validated (see [Customer Validation](#) for more information). If the toggle is off, Customer Engagement will look at all addresses and names.
- Reset Prior Run Data - This toggle determines how existing Households are treated by the Task.

- On - Existing Households are ignored and the Households are created anew each time the Task runs.
- Off - [default] Existing Households are kept in place.

Home Location Reassignment

This task has the following parameters:

- Assignment Method - These Radio Buttons determine how Customers are assigned to Locations.
 - Reassign - [default] Check all Customers for reassignment.
 - Distribute among - Assign Customers from one Home Location among a set of Locations.
- Currently Assigned To - This Selection Menu determines which Location's Customers are reassigned. This field is only shown when Distribute among is selected in the Assignment Method Radio Buttons.
- Reassign to - The area displays the set of Locations among which the Customers are reassigned. This field is only shown when Distribute among is selected in the Assignment Method Radio Buttons.

To add a Location:

1. Click the Click here to select Link. A Search Home Location Window opens.
2. Select the Location in the Selection Menu.
3. Click the OK button. The Search Home Location Window closes and the Location is added to the Reassign to area.

To delete a Location:

1. Click to select the Location in the Reassign to area.
 2. Click the Delete Link. The Location is removed.
- Lock Until - After a Customer is assigned to a Home Location by this task, that Customer cannot be assigned to a new Home Location during the period of time determined by this Selection Menu.

Franchisee Assignment

This task has the following parameters:

- Assignment Method - These Radio Buttons determine how Customers are assigned to Franchisees.
 - Basic Assignment - [default] Check whether the Franchisee Assignment for each Customer record needs to be changed.
 - Franchisee Group - Assign Customers from one Franchisee among a set of Franchisees.
- Currently Assigned To - This Selection Menu determines which Franchisee's Customers are reassigned. This field is only shown when Franchisee Group is selected in the Assignment Method Radio Buttons.

- Franchisee Group - The area displays the set of Franchisees among which the Customers are reassigned. This field is only shown when Franchisee Group is selected in the Assignment Method Radio Buttons.
- Lock Until - After a Customer is assigned to a Franchisee by this task, that Customer cannot be assigned to a new Franchisee during the period of time determined by this Selection Menu.

Customer Sync Export

Before you submit this task, you must select an export target system of either Marketing for a system such as Responsys, or BI/Analytics for a system such as Retail Insights. The Supported Batch Exporter Types property controls which of these options are available.

See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information about System Configuration.

Customer Sync Export - Marketing

If you select an export target system of Marketing, the following options are displayed.

With a selection of Marketing as the export target system, this task has the following parameters:

- Export type - Controls which records to include in the export file:
 - Export all active records - Include all active customer records with email addresses.
 - Export updated records only - Include customer records only if they have changed since the last export. With this selection, the Once Immediately and Once Later options for scheduling the job are not available.

Note that, regardless of your selection here, the first time you run the export all active customer records are included.

- Specify export filename - These fields control the creation of the CSV file containing new or updated customer records.

At least one entry (prefix, static name, or suffix) is required:

- Prefix - The date and time stamp format to use as a prefix for naming the export file.
 - * no prefix - Do not use a date and time stamp prefix on the file name.
 - * yyyyMMdd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 20160630_123456 where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
 - * yyyy-MM-dd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 2016-06-30-123456, where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).

The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Prefix property defaults.

- Static Name - The text string to include in the file name between the prefix and suffix, if any. The setting of the Responsys Customer Sync Default Filename property defaults.

- Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above. The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Suffix property defaults.
- Filename - Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any. This field is blank if you have not yet selected a prefix format, suffix format, or static name.
- Specify deletes export filename - These fields control the creation of the CSV file listing the customer IDs of customer records that have been deleted through a housekeeping job or a customer merge since the last time you ran the export. At least one entry (prefix, static name, or suffix) is required.
 - Prefix - The date and time stamp format to use as a prefix for naming the deletes export file:
 - * no prefix - Do not use a date and time stamp prefix on the file name.
 - * yyyyMMdd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 20160630_123456 where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
 - * yyyy-MM-dd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 2016-06-30-123456, where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).

The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Prefix property defaults.

- Static Name - The text string to include in the file name between the prefix and suffix, if any. The setting of the Responsys Customer Deletes Sync Default Filename property defaults.
- Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the deletes export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above, with a default of no suffix. The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Suffix property defaults.
- Filename - Displays an example of the deletes export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any. This field is blank if you have not yet selected a prefix format, suffix format, or static name.

Customer Export File - Marketing

The customer export file is a comma-separated values file containing the following information:

- Customer ID and home store code.
- Customer name, including salutation, first name, second first name, middle name, last name, second last name, and suffix.
- Active flag (set to 1 if active).
- Primary address, including address lines 1 through 4, city, state, postal code, and country code.
- Primary email address, including email type code.
- Primary phone number, including phone type code.
- Customer's mail, email, and phone contact flags, set to 1 if selected and 0 if unselected.

Only customer records with email addresses are included in the export.

Customer ,Delete Export File - Marketing

The customer export file is a comma-separated values file containing the customer ID of each deleted customer, and the active flag setting of 0.

Customer Sync Export - BI/Analytics

If you select an export target system of BI/Analytics, the following options are displayed.

With a selection of BI/Analytics as the export target system, this task has the following parameters:

- Export type - Controls which records to include in the export file:
 - Export all active records - Include all active customer records.
 - Export updated records only - Include customer records only if they have changed since the last export. With this selection, the Once Immediately and Once Later options for scheduling the job are not available.

Note that, regardless of your selection here, the first time you run the export all active customer records are included.
- Specify export filename - If you selected an Export type of BI/Analytics, the setting of the Retail Insights Customer Sync Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.

Customer Export File - BI/Analytics

The customer export file is a pipe-delimited values file that typically contains the following information:

- Customer ID.
- Postal code.
- City.
- State.
- Country.
- Active flag for the customer.
- Prospect flag indicating if the customer is a prospect.
- Gender.
- Ethnicity.
- Marital status.
- Educational level.
- Effective date for the address.
- Annual income.
- Contact flag setting.
- Organization name, if the customer is an organization.
- Date when customer was added to the system.

- Flag indicating if the customer is an organization.
- Phone contact flag setting.
- Email contact flag setting.
- Fax contact flag setting.
- Mail contact flag setting.
- Birth month.
- Birth date.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the customer sync export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the customer sync export file name is W_PARTY_PER_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_PARTY_PER_DS.ctx.

Any customers that have been deleted are included in the customer export file. The only information included for deleted customers is the customer ID, active flag, prospect flag, call flag, delete flag, organization flag, and the contact flag settings.

Customer Address Sync Export

This task has the following parameters:

- Batch Exporter Type - Defaults to BI/Analytics and cannot be changed.
- Export type - Defaults to Export all active records and cannot be changed.
- Specify export filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Customer Activities Sync Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.

Customer Address Export File - BI/Analytics

The customer address export file is pipe-delimited, and typically contains the following information:

- Customer ID.
- Sequence number identifying the order in which the customer's addresses were added to the database.
- Primary address flag setting.
- Date when the address became effective.
- Date when the address expired.
- First, second, and third lines of the customer's street address.
- City.
- State.
- Country.
- Postal code.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the customer address export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the customer address export file name

is W_RTL_CUST_ADDRESS_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_CUST_ADDRESS_DS.dat.ctx.

Customer Activity Sync Export

This task has the following parameters:

- Select target batch exporter system - Select Marketing.
- Export type - Controls which records to include in the export file:
 - Export all active records - Include activity for all active customer records.
 - Export updated records only - Include activity for customer records only if the activity occurred since the last export. With this selection, the Once Immediately and Once Later options for scheduling the job are not available.

Note that, regardless of your selection here, the first time you run the export, activity for all active customer records is included.

- Specify export filename - These fields are displayed only if you selected an Export type of Marketing, and control the creation of the CSV file containing new or updated customer records.

At least one entry (prefix, static name, or suffix) is required:

- Prefix - The date and time stamp format to use as a prefix for naming the export file:
 - * no prefix - Do not use a date and time stamp prefix on the file name.
 - * yyyyMMdd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 20170830_123456 where the year is 2017, the month is August, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
 - * yyyy-MM-dd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 2017-08-30-123456, where the year is 2017, the month is August, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).

The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Prefix property defaults.

- Static Name - The text string to include in the file name between the prefix and suffix, if any. The setting of the Responsys Customer Activities Sync Default Filename property defaults.
- Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above. The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Suffix property defaults.
- Filename - Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any.

Customer Activity Export File

The customer activity export file contains the following information for each transaction it includes:

- Customer ID.
- Year when the activity occurred.

- Item hierarchy levels 1, 2, and 3; for example, this might be DEPT, SUB_DEPT, and CLASS, with the Hierarchy ID for each level indicated for each record. The level is 0 if there is no hierarchy definition for that level.
- The total count of the item for the activity. The count is 0 if the activity did not involve an item quantity.
- The monetary value of the activity, based on the price of the item. Includes up to two decimal positions if the amount is not a whole number.
- The code identifying the location, if any, associated with the activity. Blank if the activity was not associated with a location.
- The latest business date when the activity occurred.
- The latest business date when the activity was updated.

Customer Attributes Sync Export

This task has the following parameter:

- Batch Exporter Type - Select either Marketing or BI/Analytics.

Customer Attributes Sync Export - Marketing

If you select a Batch Exporter Type of Marketing, complete the following parameters:

- Specify export filename - These fields control the creation of the CSV file containing new or updated customer attribute records. At least one entry (prefix, static name, or suffix) is required:
 - Prefix - The date and time stamp format to use as a prefix for naming the export file:
 - * no prefix - Do not use a date and time stamp prefix on the file name.
 - * yyyyMMdd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 20160630_123456 where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
 - * yyyy-MM-dd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 2016-06-30-123456, where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Prefix property defaults.
 - Static Name - The text string to include in the file name between the prefix and suffix, if any. The setting of the Responsys Customer Attributes Sync Default Filename property defaults.
 - Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above. The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Suffix property defaults.
 - Filename - Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any. This field is blank if you have not yet selected a prefix format, suffix format, or static name.
- Seq and Attribute - Use the drop-down list to select each attribute to include in the export file. Only attributes that have the Publish To Batch Exporter and Open Access flags selected are available for selection from the drop-down.

Customer Attribute Export File - Marketing

The customer attribute export file is comma-separated, and typically contains the following information:

- Customer ID.
- Customer primary email address.
- A column for each attribute selected for inclusion in the export file, and the current setting of that attribute for the customer.

The file includes a header row with the name of each column. The column for each attribute is indicated by the attribute name and ID.

Customer Attributes Sync Export - BI/Analytics

If you select a Batch Exporter Type of BI/Analytics, complete the following parameters:

- Customer Attributes Filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Customer Attributes Sync Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.
- Attribute Metadata Filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Attribute Metadata Sync Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.
- Seq and Attribute - Use the drop-down list to select each attribute to include in the export file. Only attributes that have the Publish To Batch Exporter and Open Access flags selected are available for selection from the drop-down. Select from the following types of attributes:
 - Varchar Type Attribute - The Retail Insights Varchar Type Attribute Allowed Count property controls the number of varchar type attributes you can select for export.
 - Numeric Type Attribute - The Retail Insights Numeric Type Attribute Allowed Count property controls the number of numeric type attributes you can select for export.
 - Data Type Attribute - The Retail Insights Date Type Attribute Allowed Count property controls the number of data type attributes you can select for export.

Customer Attribute Metadata Export File - BI/Analytics

The customer attribute export metadata file is pipe-delimited, and indicates how to map the Customer Attribute data from Customer Engagement to the target BI/Analytics system.

For example, a record in the metadata file might be:

```
RING_SIZE|CE|PARTY_ATTR1_NAME|W_PARTY_ATTR_DS|Customer Ring Size|VARCHAR|1|
RING_SIZE~CE~PARTY_ATTR1_NAME~W_PARTY_ATTR_DS|
```

Where:

- RING_SIZE = The attribute's Name, from the DTV_ATTRIBUTE_TYPE table
- CE = Hard-coded to CE
- A physical column name such as:
 - PARTY_ATTR[N]_NUM_VALUE = the [N] numeric attribute passed, or

- PARTY_ATTR[N]_NAME_VALUE = the [N] name attribute passed, or
- PARTY_ATTR[N]_DATE_VALUE = the [N] date attribute passed

Where

- PARTY_ATTR is hard-coded
- [N] indicates the column number for that datatype, and
- VALUE is the type of column (NUMBER, NAME, or DATE)

Since there can be multiple attributes of the same data type passed, such as two date attributes, it is necessary to number the attributes with the same data type.

- W_PARTY_ATTR_DS = the target table in the BI/Analytics system
- Customer's Ring Size = the attribute, 's Description, from the DTV_ATTRIBUTE_TYPE table
- VARCHAR = the data type of the attribute in the BI/Analytics system; displayed as Character at the Attribute Definition list page
- 1 = Hard-coded to 1
- RING_SIZE~CE~PARTY_ATTR1_NAME~W_PARTY_ATTR_DS = concatenation of the attribute name + CE + ~ + the physical column name + ~ + the target table name

The metadata file name is from the Retail Insights Customer Attribute Metadata Batch Exporter Templates property.

When you use the BI/Analytics Package Exporter to create a zip file containing the files for export to the BI/Analytics system, the attribute metadata file is merged with the metadata file from the Segment Sync Export.

Customer Attribute Export File - BI/Analytics

The customer attribute export file is pipe-delimited, and typically contains the following information:

- Customer ID.
- Category hard-coded to RETAIL
- Supplier flag hard-coded to N.
- Attribute value setting.

A column for each attribute selected for inclusion in the export file, and the current setting of that attribute for the customer.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the customer attribute export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the customer attribute export file name is W_RTL_PARTY_PER_ATTR_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_PARTY_PER_ATTR_DS.dat.ctx.

Customer Household Sync Export

This task has the following parameters:

- Batch Exporter Type - Defaults to BI/Analytics and cannot be changed.
- Export type - Defaults to Export all active records and cannot be changed.

- Specify export filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Household Sync Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.
- Specify customer-household association export filename: The setting of the Retail Insights Household Customer Association Sync Default Filename is displayed and cannot be changed.

Household Export File - BI/Analytics

The household export file is pipe-delimited, and typically contains the unique identifier for each household, as well as some hard-coded fields that are required by the BI/Analytics system.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the household sync export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the household sync export file name is W_HOUSEHOLD_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_HOUSEHOLD_DS.dat.ctx.

Household Customer Association Export File - BI/Analytics

The household customer association export file is pipe-delimited, and typically contains the unique identifier for each household and the customer ID for each customer associated with the household. It also typically contains some hard-coded fields that are required by the BI/Analytics system.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the household customer association file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the household customer association export file name is W_RTL_CUST_HOUSEHOLD_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_CUST_HOUSEHOLD_DS.dat.ctx.

The information in these files is formatted as binary data.

Rebuild Category Totals

This task has the following parameters:

Customer Department Totals Rebuild Period:

- Select whether to recalculate totals based on activity within the most recent number of days, months, or years.
- Enter the number of days, months, or years to include. You can enter a maximum of 3 years, 36 months, or 1095 days.

Before you can submit the job, you need to acknowledge the warning at the bottom area of the Review step, indicating that the task will recalculate customer department totals, and that this step cannot be undone.

When the job runs, the records in the CST_DEPARTMENT_TOTALS table are cleared for all Customer activity during the specified rebuild period, and then rebuilt. The CREATE_DATE is set to the date when the job is run, and the CREATE_USER is set to ORCE. Return transactions are not included in the category totals.

BI/Analytics Package Exporter

This task has no additional parameters.

This task packages the export files to the BI/Analytics system, and must be the last task in a single job that includes all other exports to the BI/Analytics system.

The package exporter creates a zip file that includes the export files from the sync tasks run within the job, so that the zip file is ready for the BI/Analytics system.

The zip file name is from the Retail Insights Zip Package Default Filename property.

For more information on the export tasks and the generated export files, see [Customer Sync Export](#), [Customer Address Sync Export](#), [Customer Attributes Sync Export](#), [Customer Household Sync Export](#), and [Segment Sync Export](#).

Reset Customer YTD Totals

This task has the following parameter.

- Year of data being reset - This Selection Menu determines the year for which the YTD data is reset.

Automated Associate Assignment

This task has the following parameters:

- Date Range Type - This Selection Menu determines the Date Range used.
- Start Date - This Calendar Menu determines the first date of the Date Range (only available if Date Range Type is set to Specific Date Range).
- End Date - This Calendar Menu determines the final date of the Date Range (only available if Date Range Type is set to Specific Date Range).
- Assignment Method - These Radio Buttons determine the selection method used to assign an Associate to a Customer. These Radio Buttons have the following options:
 - Sold most frequently - The Associate who performed the most sales to each Customer.
 - Sold largest total amount - The Associate who sold the largest total amount to each Customer.
- Assignment Interval - Number of days between Associate reassignments for a Customer. After the Job assigns an Associate to a Customer, this is the number of days the Job will wait before changing that assignment.
- Assignment Role - This Selection Menu determines the Associate Role used for the Associate assignment.
- Criteria specification - Additional criteria to use when assigning the Associate. This Selection Menu has the following options:
 - No additional criteria - This Job will not require any additional criteria.
 - Select criteria from list - Add Item or Location criteria to the Job. A transaction must match one of the entered criteria to be used in determining the Associate to be assigned to the Customer.

- When Select criteria from list is selected, the Item and Location Criteria appear. To configure Item Criteria, perform one of the following options:
 - Use the **Quick Add** option to enter a known **ID** which you wish to associate with this task. Click **Add**.
 - Click the **Actions Menu** and select **Add Item Criteria**.
 - Click **+Add Item Criteria**.

Include by Hierarchy

There are two ways to search for items in the Include by Hierarchy option, either:

- Select one of the **Hierarchy** choices (**Department** or **Class**, for example) and click **Search** to retrieve all associated hierarchies.
- Select one of the **Hierarchy** choices and enter part or all of the **ID**, **Name**, or **Description** in the field, and click **Search** to retrieve your refined search criteria.
- After locating the items, then **select** or **clear** the check boxes from the list.

Figure 12-34 Item Criteria - Include By Hierarchy

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Item Criteria" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Below the title, there are two radio buttons: "Include By Hierarchy" (which is selected) and "Specific Items".

Under "Include By Hierarchy", there is a section titled "Select Items By Hierarchy" containing a table with columns: DEPT, SUB_DEPT, CLASS, SUB_CLASS, and STYLE_ID. Below this table is a search input field with the placeholder text "Search by ID or Name or Description" and a "Search" button. There is also a small "X" icon in the search field.

Below the search field, there is a list of items, each with a checkbox and a label:

- CLASS Name, ID and Description
- CLASS 400200220 (ID 400200200)
CLASS 400200220
- CLASS 5000 (ID 5000)
CLASS 5000
- CLASS 5001 (ID 5001)
CLASS 5001
- CLASS 500800100 (ID 500800100)
CLASS 500800100
- CLASS 510300300 (ID 510300300)
CLASS 510300300
- CLASS 730100100 (ID 730100100)
CLASS 730100100

At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "Cancel", "OK", and "OK and Add Another".

- Click **OK** to add the item to the Task or click **OK and Add Another** to add another item. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item.
- Click **X** to remove added items.

Specific Items

To search for items by specific items:

- Enter the **ID** or **Description** of the Item.
- Click **Search**.

Figure 12-35 Item Criteria - Specific Items

Item Criteria X

Include By Hierarchy Specific Items

0 Items Selected

Blouse X Search

Item Description and ID

Girls **Blouse** - Long Sleeve (ID 210010039)

Girls **Blouse** - Long Sleeve (ID 210010040)

Girls **Blouse** - Long Sleeve (ID 210010103)

Girls **Blouse** - Long Sleeve (ID 210010104)

Girls **Blouse** - Long Sleeve (ID 210010167)

Girls **Blouse** - Long Sleeve (ID 210010168)

Girls **Blouse** - Long Sleeve (ID 210010231)

Girls **Blouse** - Long Sleeve (ID 210010232)

Girls **Blouse** - Long Sleeve (ID 210010295)

Cancel OK OK and Add Another

- **Select** or **clear** the check boxes from the list.
- Click **OK** to add the item to the Task or click **OK and Add Another** to add another item. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the item.
- Click **X** to remove items.
- When Select criteria from list is selected, the Item and Location Criteria appear. To configure Location Criteria do the following:
 - Click **+Add Location Criteria**.

Figure 12-36 Add Location Criteria

Add Location Criteria X

Filter Type: Location ID Filter Criteria: Search

<input type="checkbox"/>	Location ID ↕	Name ↕
<input type="checkbox"/>	12502	12502-Silverton-WA
<input type="checkbox"/>	12503	12503-Mason-TX
<input type="checkbox"/>	12504	12504-Austin-TX
<input type="checkbox"/>	12507	12507-SouthPark-MN
<input type="checkbox"/>	1250A	1250A-SouthState-OH
<input type="checkbox"/>	1250B	1250B-Silverton-WA

Cancel Add

- Click the list arrow to select a **Filter Type**.
- Click **Search** to return all Locations that meet the Filter Type Criteria.
- You can use the Filter Criteria field before or after a search. The Filter Criteria is determined by your implementer.

Note:

The Filter Criteria field accepts partial input.

- **Select** or **clear** the check boxes from the list.
- Click **Add** to add the location to the task. Click **Cancel** to close the window without adding the location.
- Click **X** to remove added locations.

Associate Mass Reassignment

This task has the following parameters:

- Assignment Method - Method used for reassigning the Customers. These Radio Buttons have the following options:
 - Reassign - Assign all Customers to one Associate.
 - Distribute among - Distribute Customers among all Associates at the current Associate's location.
- Currently assigned to - Displays the Associate who is having their Customers reassigned. Perform a Change/Add Associate procedures to change the Associate.
- Selection Menu for the Associate Role that is used for the new Associates.

- Reassign to - Displays the User ID(s) of the Associate(s) to whom the Customers are reassigned. Perform a Change/Add Associate procedures to add an Associate to the field. Only displayed if the Assignment Method is set to Reassign.

Associate reassignment selections have the following rules:

- This field is only displayed when Reassign is selected as the Assignment Method.
- The Associates must all belong to the same Location.
- If a new Associate does not belong to the same Location as previously selected Associates, the previously selected Associates are removed and the new Associate is entered.
- If the Associate selected does not belong to the Location to which the currently assigned Associate, a confirmation response is displayed.

Unstratified Segment

This Task has the following parameter:

- Customer Segment - This Selection Menu determines the Unstratified Segment that is counted.

Stratified Segment

This Task has the following parameter:

- Customer Segment - This Selection Menu determines the Stratified Segment that is organized and counted.

Segment Sync Export

Before you submit this task, you must select an export target system of either Marketing for a system such as Responsys, or BI/Analytics for a system such as Retail Insights. The Supported Batch Exporter Types property controls which of these options are available. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information about System Configuration.

Segment Sync Export - Marketing

If you select an export target system of Marketing, the following options are displayed:

- Specify export filename - These fields control the creation of the CSV file containing new or updated segment records. At least one entry (prefix, static name, or suffix) is required:
 - Prefix - The date and time stamp format to use as a prefix for naming the export file:
 - * no prefix - Do not use a date and time stamp prefix on the file name.
 - * yyyyMMdd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 20160630_123456 where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
 - * yyyy-MM-dd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 2016-06-30-123456, where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).

The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Prefix property defaults.

- Static Name - The text string to include in the file name between the prefix and suffix, if any. The setting of the Responsys Segment Sync Default Filename defaults.

You can include multiple segments in the same task. However, if you include multiple segment sync tasks to Marketing in the same job, you need to specify a unique static name for each to avoid overwriting one export sync file with another.
- Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above. The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Suffix property defaults.
- Filename - Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any. This field is blank if you have not yet selected a prefix format, suffix format, or static name.
- Strata Type - Defines the type of Segments that can be included in the export file:
 - Unstratified Segment - Unstratified Segments and Manual Segments are available for selection in the dropdown list.
 - Stratified Segment - Stratified Segments are available for selection in the dropdown list.

 **Note:**

A single Job Definition can include either Unstratified/Manual Segments or Stratified Segments, but not both. If you have selected one or more Segments and then change the setting of the Strata Type, the previously selected Segments are cleared from the listing for the Job Definition.

- Seq N Segment = Use the drop-down list to select each Segment to include in the export file. Only Segments that have the Publish To Batch Exporter flag selected and that match the selected Strata Type are available for selection from the drop-down. As you select each Segment, it is added to the Seq. and Attribute listing between the Strata Type and the Seq N Segment drop-down.
- Seq and Attribute - Use the drop-down list to select each attribute to include in the export file. Only attributes that have the Publish To Batch Exporter and Open Access flags selected are available for selection from the drop-down.

Customer Segment File for Marketing: Stratified Segments

The customer segment export file for one or more stratified segments contains the following information:

- Customer ID.
- Customer primary email address.
- For each Segment included in the Job Definition:
 - A column with a setting of 1 if the customer is included in the Segment, or a setting of 0 if the customer is not included in the Segment.
 - The Segment stratification format (RANGE or NTILE).

- The Segment strata type (Customer, Loyalty, or Transaction).
- The data that the strata is based on (Customer for a Customer strata type; Loyalty Summary or Loyalty Detail for a Loyalty strata type; Header or Detail for a Transaction strata type).
- The field to stratify on. See [Creating a Segment or Personal List](#) in the Segments chapter for a list of possible fields based on the selected strata type.
- The strata ID.
- The strata value.

Customer Segment Export File for Marketing: Unstratified Segments

The customer segment export file for one or more unstratified or manual segments contains the following information:

- Customer ID.
- Customer primary email address.
- Segment name.
- A column for each Segment included in the Job Definition, with a setting of 1 if the customer is included in the Segment or a setting of 0 if the customer is not included in the Segment.

Segment Sync Export - BI/Analytics

If you select a Batch Exporter Type of BI/Analytics, the following parameters are displayed:

- Segment Filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Segment Sync Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.
- Segment Attributes Filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Segment Attributes Sync Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.
- Customer Segment Association Filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Segment Customer Association Sync Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.
- Attribute Metadata Filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Attribute Metadata Sync Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.
- Customer Segment Category Filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Customer Segment Category Sync Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.
- Seq N Segment = Use the drop-down list to select each Segment to include in the export file. Only Segments that have the Publish To Batch Exporter flag selected are available for selection from the drop-down. As you select each Segment, it is added to the Seq. and Attribute listing.
- Seq and Attribute - Use the drop-down list to select each attribute to include in the export file. Only attributes that have the Publish To Batch Exporter and Open Access flags selected are available for selection from the drop-down. Select from the following types of attributes:
 - Varchar Type Attribute - The Retail Insights Varchar Type Attribute Allowed Count property controls the number of varchar type attributes you can select for export.
 - Numeric Type Attribute - The Retail Insights Numeric Type Attribute Allowed Count property controls the number of numeric type attributes you can select for export.

- Data Type Attribute - The Retail Insights Date Type Attribute Allowed Count property controls the number of data type attributes you can select for export.
- Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above, with a default of no suffix.

Segment Export File - BI/Analytics

The customer segment export file contains the following information:

- Segment ID.
- Segment name.
- Datasource, which is hard-coded to 1.

The file also includes the values for attributes whose names match the following, if they exist:

- CUSTSEG_TYPE (if this attribute is not defined, a cluster type of Rule Based is passed)
- AGE_RANGE
- SEX_MF_CODE
- FAMILY_SIZE
- OCCUPATION_CODE
- EDUCATION_BCKGND_CODE
- ETHNICITY_CODE
- NATIONALITY_CODE
- RELIGION_CODE
- SOCIAL_CLASS_CODE
- FAMILY_LIFE_CYCL_CODE
- REGION_CODE
- METRO_AREA_SIZE
- POPULATION_DENSITY
- CLIMATE_CODE
- BENEFIT_SOUGHT_CODE
- USAGE_RATE
- READINESS_TO_BUY_CODE
- OCCASION_CODE
- ACTIVITY_CODE
- INTEREST_CODE
- OPINION_CODE
- ATTITUDE_CODE
- VALUE_CODE

- EFFECTIVE_START
- EFFECTIVE_END
- CUSTSEG_SRC_TYPE
- ANNL_INCOME_RANGE
- CUSTSEG_DESC

The above attributes in Customer Engagement map to segment properties in Retail Insights.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the segment export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the segment export file name is W_RTL_CUSTSEG_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_CUSTSEG_DS.dat.ctx.

Segment Attributes Export File - BI/Analytics

The customer segment attributes export file contains the following information:

- Segment ID.
- The CUSTSEG_TYPE attribute value. If this attribute is not defined, a cluster type of Rule Based is passed.
- The CUSTSEG_SRC_TYPE attribute value, if any. Typically set to CUSTOMER.
- The value for each attribute assigned to the segment and selected for export.
- Datasource, which is hard-coded to 1.

The attribute mapping is defined in the generated metadata file. The file name for the metadata file is defined in the Retail Insights Attribute Metadata Sync Default Filename property.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the segment attributes export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the segment attributes export file name is W_RTL_LYL_TRANS_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_LYL_TRANS_DS.dat.ctx.

Customer Segment Association Export File - BI/Analytics

The segment customer association export file contains the following information for the customers included in a segment:

- Segment ID.
- Customer ID.
- Datasource, which is hard-coded to 1.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the segment association export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the segment association export file name is W_RTL_CUST_CUSTSEG_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_CUST_CUSTSEG_DS.dat.ctx.

Attribute Metadata Export File - BI/Analytics

This export file defines mapping for attributes. See the [Customer Attribute Metadata Export File - BI/Analytics](#) for an example of attribute mapping.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the attribute metadata export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the attribute metadata export file name is W_RTL_INT_METADATA_G.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_INT_METADATA_G.dat.ctx.

Customer Segment Category - BI/Analytics

Currently, an empty customer segment category export file is created.

Points/Awards Transfer Notifications Export

See [Points/Awards Transfer Notification Export](#) for background on this job. This task has the following parameters:

- Please select transfer notification type - Indicates the type of transfer notifications to export: All, Awards Only, or Points Only.
- Specify Awards Transfer Export Filename - These fields control the creation of the CSV file containing contact information for Customers originating or receiving Award Coupon transfers. At least one entry (prefix, static name, or suffix) is required:
 - Prefix - The date and time stamp format to use as a prefix for naming the export file:
 - * no prefix - Do not use a date and time stamp prefix on the file name.
 - * yyyyMMdd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 20170830_123456 where the year is 2017, the month is August, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
 - * yyyy-MM-dd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 2017-08-30-123456, where the year is 2017, the month is August, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
 - The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Prefix property defaults.
 - Static Name - The text string to include in the file name between the prefix and suffix, if any. The setting of the Responsys Awards Transfer Sync Default Filename defaults.
 - Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above. The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Suffix property defaults.
 - Filename - Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any. This field is blank if you have not selected a prefix format, suffix format, or static name.
- Specify Points Transfer Export Filename - These fields control the creation of the CSV file containing contact information for Customers originating or receiving

Loyalty Points transfers. At least one entry (prefix, static name, or suffix) is required:

- Prefix - The date and time stamp format to use as a prefix for naming the export file:
 - * no prefix - Do not use a date and time stamp prefix on the file name.
 - * yyyyMMdd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 20170830_123456 where the year is 2017, the month is August, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
 - * yyyy-MM-dd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 2017-08-30-123456, where the year is 2017, the month is August, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).

The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Prefix property defaults.

- Static Name - The text string to include in the file name between the prefix and suffix, if any. The setting of the Responsys Awards Transfer Sync Default Filename defaults.
- Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above. The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Suffix property defaults.
- Filename - Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any. This field is blank if you have not selected a prefix format, suffix format, or static name.

Award Transfer Notifications Sync Export File

The Award Transfer Notification sync export file contains the following information:

- From Card Number - The Card number originating the transfer. The number is partially masked with X's.
- To Card Number - The Card number receiving the transfer. The number is partially masked with X's.
- From email address - The primary email address of the Customer originating the transfer. Included only if the Customer's contact permissions allow it.
- From phone number - The primary phone number of the Customer originating the transfer. Included only if the Customer's contact permissions allow it.
- To email address - The primary email address of the Customer receiving the transfer. Included only if the Customer's contact permissions allow it.
- To phone number - The primary phone number of the Customer receiving the transfer. Included only if the Customer's contact permissions allow it.
- Date and time when the transfer took place.
- The amount of the Award Coupon. Might be 0 for an Entitlement Coupon.

An entry for a transfer is included in the file only if there is phone or email contact information for either the originator of the transfer or the recipient, and if an interactive notification request was not successfully sent.

Points Transfer Notifications Sync Export File

The Award Transfer sync export file contains the following information:

- From Card Number - The Card number originating the transfer. The number is partially masked with X's.
- To Card Number - The Card number receiving the transfer. The number is partially masked with X,Ãs.
- From email address - The primary email address of the Customer originating the transfer. Included only if the Customer's contact permissions allow it.
- From phone number - The primary phone number of the Customer originating the transfer. Included only if the Customer's contact permissions allow it.
- To email address - The primary email address of the Customer receiving the transfer. Included only if the Customer's contact permissions allow it.
- To phone number - The primary phone number of the Customer receiving the transfer. Included only if the Customer's contact permissions allow it.
- Date and time when the transfer took place.
- The number of points transferred.

An entry for a transfer is included in the file only if there is phone or email contact information for either the originator of the transfer or the recipient, and if an interactive notification request was not successfully sent.

Export Card Series

This Task has the following parameters:

- Card Prefix - This Text Field indicates the Card Prefix of the Card Definition to be exported.
- Card Series - This Text Field indicates the Card Series of the Card Definition to be exported.

Release Expired PreAuth

This Task has no additional parameters:

Notify Card Renewal

This Task has the following parameters:

- Card Program - This Selection Menu determines the Card Program for which to notify Customers.
- Period Type - This Selection Menu determines the type of time period used to determine the notification time frame.
- Number of Periods - This Text Field defines the number of periods (from Period Type) before the Card expiration date that a Customer is notified of their Card's coming expiration.

Tender Account Sync

This Task has the following parameter:

- Tender Program - The Tender Program to include in the export files. The Task generates an export file of Tender Accounts and an export file of Tender Account Activity.

Tender Account Export File

The tender account export file contains the following information for each Tender account:

- Tender account ID.
- Last activity date.
- Effective date.
- Account expiry date.
- Card serial number.
- Card number.
- Card activation date.
- Date when card was first used.
- Date when card was last used.
- Card expiry date.
- Date when the card was associated with the customer.
- Start date, if any.
- End date., if any
- Customer ID.
- Primary flag, set to 1 if the customer is the primary account holder.
- Status indicator if Active or Inactive.
- Current balance on the account.
- Book balance for accounting purposes.
- Amount of balance that is frozen or unusable.
- Program ID to uniquely identify the tender program.
- Currency typecode.
- Usage count indicating the total number of times the tender account has been accessed for a transaction.
- Total number of lifetime credits for the account.
- Total number of lifetime debits for the account.
- Date created.
- User who created the account.
- Date updated.
- Use who updated the account.

Tender Account Activity Export File

The tender account activity export files contains the following information:

- Tender account ID.

- Program ID to uniquely identify the tender program.
- Unique identifier for the account activity record.
- Authorization code.
- Customer ID.
- Card number.
- Flag indicating whether the transaction was voided.
- Code to categorize the type of transaction or activity.
- Date and time when the activity took place.
- Amount of the activity or transaction.
- Currency typecode.
- Operator ID from the POS.
- Transaction ID from the POS.
- Transaction ID generated by Customer Engagement.
- Retail location where the activity took place.
- ID or serial number identifying the workstation where the activity took place.
- Date that corresponds to an accounting period fiscal day at the retail store.
- Account ID affected by the activity.
- ID of the activity.
- Flag indicating if the card was swiped during the activity.
- Error code, if any.
- User comments on the activity, if any.
- Code identifying the currency requested for the activity.
- Amount of currency being exchanged.
- Currency exchange rate.
- If the activity was a Card Merge, the unique ID for the source account of the merge.
- Unique identifier for the franchisee, if any.
- Account adjustment reason code, if any.
- Expiration date for the activity.
- Date created.
- User who created the activity.
- Date updated.
- User who updated the activity.

OCDS Sync

This Task requires SystemConfig or SystemAdmin authority, and has the following parameters:

- Item and Merchandise Hierarchy - Select this option to request item and merchandise hierarchy data from the Omnichannel Cloud Data Service, including:
 - Merchandise Hierarchy
 - Item Header
 - Item Image
 - Item Price
- Location and Franchise - Select this option to request location and franchise data from the Omnichannel Cloud Data Service, including:
 - Store Location
 - Organizational Hierarchy/Franchise
- Reset Last Run Date - Select this option to retrieve all data, regardless of date created or updated; otherwise, leave this option unselected to request only data that has been created or updated since the last time you ran the OCDS data sync.

See Bulk Imports through Oracle Cloud Data Service (OCDS) in the *Batch Processing and Web Services Guide* for more information on the integration and the data received.

Issue Anniversary Awards

This Task has the following parameters:

- Award Program - This Selection Menu determines the Award Program to use for the Anniversary Awards.
- Coupon Prefix - This Text Field indicates the Coupon Prefix for the Coupons generated.
- Amount - This Text Field defines the amount for the Coupons generated.
- Expiration Period Type - This Selection Menu indicates the type of period used in determining when the Coupons will expire.
- Expiration Number of periods - This Selection Menu determines the number of periods (from Expiration Period Type) that will pass before the Coupons expire (not displayed if Expiration Period Type is set to Use Program).
- The Expiration Date is Based On - This Selection Menu determines how the Coupon expiration dates are determined. This Selection Menu has the following options:
 - Run Date - The Coupon expiration dates are calculated from the date the Task runs.
 - Customer Date - The Coupon expiration dates are calculated from the anniversary date.
- Anniversary Award Type - This Selection Menu determines the type of anniversary for which Awards are issued.
 - Birthday - Customer birthday.
 - Signup - Customer signup.
- Generate customer note - This toggle determines whether a Customer note is generated when a Coupon is generated for a Customer.
- Period Type - This Selection Menu indicates the type of period used in determining the window of dates for which Awards are issued.
- Num of Periods Before Run Date - This Text Field defines the number of periods (from Period Type) before the run date for which Awards are issued.

- Num of Periods After Run Date - This Text Field defines the number of periods (from Period Type) after the run date for which Awards are issued.

Export File

The export file for either a birthday or sign-up anniversary contains the following information:

- Award Account information including account number, Card number, and Card serial number.
- Customer information including name, address, email, phone, and anniversary date.
- Award information including the amount of coupon, coupon number, and the coupon expiration date. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information on export templates.

Notify Awards Expire

This Task has the following parameters:

- Award Program - This Selection Menu determines the Award Program for which notifications are sent.
- Period Type - This Selection Menu indicates the type of period used for determining the award expiration notification window.
- Number of Periods - Defines the number of periods (from Period Type) of the notification window.

Award Sync Export

This task has the following parameters:

- Select target batch exporter system - Set to Marketing by default.
- Export type - Controls which records to include in the export file:
 - Export all active records - Include all active award account and award coupon records.
 - Export updated records only - Include award account and award coupon records only if they have changed since the last export. With this selection, the Once Immediately and Once Later options for scheduling the job are not available

Note that, regardless of your selection here, the first time you run the export all, active award account and award coupon records are included.

- Specify export filename - These fields control the creation of the file containing new or updated award account records.

At least one entry (prefix, static name, or suffix) is required:

- Prefix - The date and time stamp format to use as a prefix for naming the export file.
 - * no prefix - Do not use a date and time stamp prefix on the file name.

- * yyyyMMdd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 20160630_123456 where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
- * yyyy-MM-dd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 2016-06-30-123456, where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).

The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Prefix property defaults.

- Static Name - The text string to include in the file name between the prefix and suffix, if any. The setting of the Responsys Award Account Sync Default Filename property defaults.
 - Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above. The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Suffix property defaults.
 - Filename - Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any. This field is blank if you have not yet selected a prefix format, suffix format, or static name.
- Specify export filename - These fields control the creation of the file containing new or updated award coupon records.

At least one entry (prefix, static name, or suffix) is required:

- Prefix - The date and time stamp format to use as a prefix for naming the export file.
 - * no prefix - Do not use a date and time stamp prefix on the file name.
 - * yyyyMMdd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 20160630_123456 where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
 - * yyyy-MM-dd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 2016-06-30-123456, where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).

The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Prefix property defaults.

- Static Name - The text string to include in the file name between the prefix and suffix, if any. The setting of the Responsys Award Account Sync Default Filename property defaults.
 - Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above. The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Suffix property defaults.
 - Filename - Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any. This field is blank if you have not yet selected a prefix format, suffix format, or static name.
- Award Program = Use the drop-down list to select an award program to include in the export files.

Award Account Export File

The award account export file contains the following information:

- Customer ID.

- Card number.
- Card active flag (set to 1 if active; if not active, indicates a deactivation or merge).
- Card expiration date.
- First used date.
- Last used date.
- Program name.
- Program ID.
- Update date.
- Currency code.
- Account expiration date.
- Account ID.
- Award balance.
- E-award count.
- Entitlement count.

Award Coupon Export File

The award coupon export file contains the following information:

- Customer ID.
- Card number.
- Account ID.
- Program ID.
- Coupon typecode (e-award or entitlement).
- Coupon ID.
- Coupon balance, if any; for example, an entitlement for a line item discount would not have a balance.
- Currency code.
- Deal name, if any; for example, a deal name is specified for an entitlement.
- Deal ID, if any; for example, a deal ID is specified for an entitlement.
- Expiration date.
- Update date.

Update Award Program Customer Map Parameters

This task has no additional parameters.

Distribute Loyalty Awards

This Task has the following parameter:

- Export File - This Text Field defines the name of the export file created by the Task.

Note that the Create Loyalty Awards process should be run before this process.

Export File

The export file contains information about the Award issued, the Account through which the Award was earned, and the Customer to whom the Award is being issued. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information on export templates.

Create Loyalty Awards

This Task has the following parameters:

- Generate customer note - This toggle indicates whether a Customer note is generated when a Loyalty Award is generated for a Customer.
- Each Check Box in the List indicates whether the associated Loyalty Program or Program Level is included in the Task:
 - To select all programs and all levels [default], click the Top Level check box.
 - To deselect all programs and all levels, Clear the Top Level check box.
 - To select or deselect individual program levels, click the Enabled Check Box for the level. If there is a check mark in the box, the level is included in the task.

Export Files

When the award(s) are exported, three files are created: an E-Award Export File, an Entitlement Coupons File, and a Loyalty Level Movement Export File. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information on export templates.

Earn Loyalty Points

This Task has no additional parameters.

Expire Loyalty Points

This Task has no additional parameters.

Reset Loyalty YTD Points

This task has no additional parameters.

Loyalty Account Sync Export

Before you submit this task, you must select an export target system of either Marketing for a system such as Responsys, or BI/Analytics for a system such as Retail Insights. The Supported Batch Exporter Types property controls which of these options are available. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information about System Configuration.

Loyalty Account Sync Export - BI/Analytics

If you select BI/Analytics as the export target system, the following options are displayed:

- Export type - Controls which records to include in the export file:
 - Export all active records - Include all active loyalty account records.
 - Export updated records only - Include loyalty account records only if they have changed since the last export. With this selection, the Once Immediately and Once Later options for scheduling the job are not available.

Note that, regardless of your selection here, the first time you run the export all active loyalty account records are included.

- Specify export filename - If you selected an Export type of BI/Analytics, the setting of the Retail Insights Loyalty Account Sync Export Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.

Loyalty Account Sync Export File - BI/Analytics

The customer export file is a pipe-delimited values file that typically contains the following information:

- Loyalty Account Id
- Card Serial Number - Sixteen-digit number embossed on the card
- Primary Customer Number
- Loyalty Program Id
- Loyalty Program Level Id
- Account Active Flag
- Account Expiry Flag
- Earned Points Balance
- Escrow Points Balance
- Last Award Processed Date
- Last Accrual Date
- Last Program Level Change Date
- Last Transaction Date

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the loyalty account sync export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the loyalty account sync export file name is W_RTL_LYL_ACCOUNT_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_LYL_ACCOUNT_DS.ctx.

Loyalty Account Sync Export - Marketing

If you select an export target system of Marketing, the following options are displayed:

- Select target batch exporter system - Set to Marketing by default.

- Export type - Controls which records to include in the export file:
 - Export all active records - Include all active loyalty records.
 - Export updated records only - Include loyalty records only if they have changed since the last export. With this selection, the Once Immediately and Once Later options for scheduling the job are not available.

Note that, regardless of your selection here, the first time you run the export all active loyalty records are included.

- Specify export filename - These fields control the creation of the CSV file containing new or updated loyalty records. At least one entry (prefix, static name, or suffix) is required:
 - Prefix - The date and time stamp format to use as a prefix for naming the export file:
 - * None - Do not use a date and time stamp prefix on the file name.
 - * yyyyMMdd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 20160630_123456 where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).
 - * yyyy-MM-dd_HHmss - Use a date and time stamp prefix in this format (for example, 2016-06-30-123456, where the year is 2016, the month is June, the date is 30, and the time is 12:34:56).

The setting of the Responsys Export Filename Default Prefix property defaults.

- Static Name - The text string to include in the file name between the prefix and suffix, if any. The setting of the Responsys Loyalty Account Sync Default Filename property defaults.
 - Suffix - The date and time stamp format to use as a suffix for naming the export file. The date and time stamp format options for the suffix are the same as for the prefix, described above, with a default of no suffix.
 - Filename - Displays an example of the export file name with the prefix and suffix format, if any. This field is blank if you have not yet selected a prefix format, suffix format, or static name.
- Loyalty Program - Select a single loyalty program to include in the export file.

Loyalty Account Sync Export File - Marketing

The customer export CSV file contains the following information:

- Customer ID.
- Card number.
- Card active flag (set to 1 if active; if not active, indicates a deactivation or merge).
- Card expiration date.
- First use date.
- Last use date.
- Life-to-date balance.
- Year-to-date balance.
- Earned point balance.
- Escrow point balance.
- Program name.

- Level ID.
- Level name.
- Account expiration date.
- Update date.
- Account ID.

Loyalty Account Activity Sync Export

This task has the following parameters:

- Batch Exporter Type - Defaults to BI/Analytics and cannot be changed.
- Export Type - Controls which records to include in the export file:
 - Export all active records - Include all active loyalty account records.
 - Export updated records only - Include loyalty account records only if they have changed since the last export. With this selection, the Once Immediately and Once Later options for scheduling the job are not available

Note that, regardless of your selection here, the first time you run the export all active loyalty account records are included.

- Specify export filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Loyalty Transaction Data Sync Export Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.

Loyalty Account Activity Export File - BI/Analytics

The export file is pipe-delimited, and typically contains the following information:

- Loyalty Transaction ID - Main identifier of the loyalty account activity.
- Loyalty Program ID - Unique identifier of the loyalty program.
- Loyalty Program Level ID - Unique identifier of the loyalty program level.
- Loyalty Account ID - Main identifier of the loyalty account associated with the transaction.
- Card Serial Number - The card associated with the loyalty account.
- Customer Number - Unique identifier of the primary customer associated with the card.
- Transaction Date - Date when the loyalty transaction took place.
- Transaction Type Code - Includes Activate, Deactivate, Issue, PointRecovery, Return, Award, Expire, ChangeLevel, SustainExtension, AccountMerge, ResetExpirationDate, TransferOut, and TransferIn. Inquiries are not included.
- Transaction Trigger Type - System where the transaction was triggered from, such as POS, CRM server, or loyalty admin module.
- Retail Transaction ID - Unique identifier of the transaction, provided by the POS System.
- Points Accrued - Number of points accrued for an Issue, Point Recovery, Earn, or Return. For a return, this is a negative number.
- Points Redeemed - Number of Points Redeemed for an Award.

- Bonus Points - Number of points issued as bonus points for an Issue, Point Recovery, Earn, or Return. For a return, this is a negative number.
- Points Expired - Number of points expired as a part of this transaction.
- Transaction Amount - The sale transaction amount that has earned the given points in original currency for an Issue, Point Recovery, Earn, or Return. For a return, this is a negative number.
- Original Currency Code - The currency code of the transaction amount.
- Converted Amount - The sale transaction amount that has earned the given points in program currency for an Issue, Point Recovery, Earn, or Return. For a return, this is a negative number.
- Program Currency Code - The currency code of the program.
- Location ID - Retail location ID where the transaction occurred.
- Points Transferred Out - The total number of points transferred out for the transaction. Included as a negative number when the transaction type is Transfer Out.
- Points Transferred In - The total number of points transferred in for the transaction. Included as a positive number when the transaction type is Transfer In.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the loyalty account activity export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the loyalty account activity export file name is W_RTL_LYL_TRANS_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_LYL_TRANS_DS.dat.ctx.

Loyalty Program Sync Export

This task has the following parameters:

- Batch Exporter Type - Defaults to BI/Analytics and cannot be changed.
- Export Type - Controls which records to include in the export file:
 - Export all active records - Include all active loyalty programs.
 - Export updated records only - Include loyalty programs only if they have changed since the last export.

Note that, regardless of your selection here, the first time you run the export all active loyalty programs are included.

- Specify export filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Loyalty Program Data Sync Export Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.

Loyalty Program Data Export File - BI/Analytics

The export file is pipe-delimited, and typically contains the following information:

- Loyalty Program Id
- Loyalty Program Name
- Points Name
- Points Currency Value
- Loyalty Program Active Flag

- Loyalty Program Start Date
- Loyalty Program End Date
- Loyalty Program Level Id
- Loyal Program Level Name
- Loyalty Program Level Active Flag
- Default Program Level flag
- Program Currency

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the loyalty program data export file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the loyalty program data export file name is W_RTL_LYL_PROG_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_LYL_PROG_DS.dat.ctx.

Loyalty Award Transaction Sync Export

This task has the following parameters:

- Batch Exporter Type - Defaults to BI/Analytics and cannot be changed.
- Export Type - Controls which records to include in the export file:
 - Export all active records - Include all award transactions for all active loyalty programs.
 - Export updated records only - Include award transactions only if they have occurred since the last export.

Note that, regardless of your selection here, the first time you run the export all award transactions for all active loyalty programs are included.

- Specify export filename - The setting of the Retail Insights Loyalty Award Transaction Data Sync Export Default Filename property is displayed and cannot be changed.

Loyalty Award Transaction Data Export File - BI/Analytics

The export file is pipe-delimited, and typically contains the following information:

- Award Transaction ID- The unique numeric identifier of the transaction.
- Award Account ID - The unique numeric identifier of the award account.
- Award Program ID - The unique numeric identifier of the award program.
- Card Serial Number - The serial number for the account.
- Customer Number - The unique numeric identifier of the customer.
- Award Type - E-Award or Entitlement Coupon.
- Award Transaction Type code - IssueCoupon, IssueEntitlementCoupon, Redeem, AutomaticRedeem, TransferIn, TransferOut, VoidAwardTransaction, NotifyCouponExpire, ActivateAccount, DeactivateAccount, and AccountMerge.
- Coupon ID - The unique numeric identifier for the award coupon.
- Coupon Effective Date - The date when the coupon becomes effective.

- Coupon Expiry Date - The date when the coupon expires.
- Issue Amount - Amount awarded in award currency during a E-Award issue. Populated when the transaction type is IssueCoupon or IssuePromoAwardCoupon.
- Redeem Amount - Amount redeemed in award currency during an E- Award redemption. Populated when the transaction type is Redeem or AutomaticRedeem.
- Balance Amount - Balance of an E-Award coupon.
- Deal ID - Deal associated to the given Coupon for an entitlement deal award. Deal Name - The name of an entitlement deal.
- External Deal ID - Promote-side Deal ID that is used to trigger the deal at POS for an entitlement coupon. The external deal ID and the Deal ID can be the same.
- Max Redeem Count - The maximum redeemable count for the deal. Included only for an Entitlement Deal.
- Redeemed Count - The redeemed count for this specific entitlement coupon record. Included only for an Entitlement Deal.
- Redemption Balance - The total count eligible for redemption. Calculated by subtracting the Redeemed Count from the Max Redeem Count. Included only for an Entitlement Deal.
- Award Currency - The currency defined for the award program.
- Award Transaction Date - The date when the transaction took place.
- Coupon Fully Redeemed Flag - Flag indicating if the given coupon has been fully redeemed. For an E-Award, this is the Issue Amount = Redeem Amount. For an Entitlement Deal, this is the Max Redeem Count = Redeemed Count.
- Coupon Expiry Flag - Flag indicating if the Expiry Date for the coupon has passed.
- Transfer Out Amount - The amount transferred out to another account.
- Transfer In Amount - The amount transferred in from another account.

The export file does not include a header row. Instead, there is a separate file with the same name as the loyalty award transaction data file, but with an extension of .ctx, that includes the titles of each column in the export file. For example, if the loyalty award transaction data file name is W_RTL_LYL_AWD_DS.dat, the file containing the header row names is W_RTL_LYL_AWD_DS.dat.ctx.

Update Loyalty Program Level Customer Map Parameters

This task has no additional parameters.

Delete Customers

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Customer's Last Purchase Date on which a Customer is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Customers that would be deleted, or if the Customers are deleted.
 - On () - Only a count of the Customers are reported.

- Off () - The Customers are deleted.

Delete Inactive Customers

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Customer's Last Update Date on which a Customer is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Customers that would be deleted, or if the Customers are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Customers are reported.
 - Off - The Customers are deleted.

Purged data includes:

- The customer ID is set to null in the following tables:
 - TRN_LINE_ITEM
 - TRN_LINE_ITEM_MODIFIER
 - TRN_TRANSACTION
 - AWD_ACCT_ACTIVITY
 - LYL_LOYALTY_ACCT_ACT
 - SVC_TENDER_ACCT_ACT
- Archived customer data is deleted from the following tables:
 - ARCH_CST_CUST_PHONE
 - ARCH_CST_ADDRESS
 - ARCH_CST_CUST_ATTRIBUTES
 - ARCH_CST_CUST_ALT_KEY
 - ARCH_TRN_CUST_HISTORY
 - ARCH_CST_DEPARTMENT_TOTALS
 - ARCH_CST_CUSTOMER
 - ARCH_CST_CUST_NOTES
 - ARCH_CST_PREFERENCE_CENTER
 - ARCH_CST_CUST_SOCIAL_PROFILE
 - ARCH_CST_CUST_SOCIAL_ACTIVITY
 - ARCH_CST_CUST_FRANCHISEE_MAP
 - ARCH_CMP_SOCIAL_RESULT_MAP

Also, any Item Registry that includes only the inactive Customer is deleted, regardless of whether the inactive Customer is the primary Customer for the Registry.

Oracle recommends scheduling this Task to run weekly.

Delete Inactive Customer Addresses

This Task has the following parameters. The deletion is always based on the setting of the Active flag. Customer addresses are flagged as inactive when you select the Delete option for the address.

- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Customer addresses that would be deleted, or if the Customer addresses will actually be deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Customer addresses are reported. The listing displayed at the Job Details Window indicates the total number of inactive addresses that would be deleted for all Customers, and the total number of Customers that would have inactive addresses deleted. These numbers might be different, for example, if you deleted two addresses for the same Customer.
 - Off - The Customer addresses are deleted. The listing displayed at the Job Details Window indicates the total number of inactive addresses that were deleted for all Customers, and the total number of Customers that had inactive addresses deleted. These numbers might be different, for example, if you deleted two addresses for the same Customer.

Delete Inactive Customer Phone Numbers

This Task has the following parameters. The deletion is always based on the setting of the Active flag. Customer phone numbers are flagged as inactive when you select the Delete option for the phone number.

- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Customer phone numbers that are deleted, or if the Customer numbers are actually deleted.
 - On - Only provides a count of the Customer phone numbers that are reported as inactive. The count at the Job Details Window indicates the total number of inactive phone numbers that will be deleted for all Customers and the total number of Customers that will have inactive phone numbers deleted. These numbers might be different, for example, if you deleted two phone numbers for the same Customer.
 - Off - The Customer phone numbers are deleted. The listing displayed at the Job Details Window indicates the total number of inactive phone numbers that were deleted for all Customers, and the total number of Customers that had inactive phone numbers deleted. These numbers might be different, for example, if you deleted two phone numbers for the same Customer.

Delete Inactive Customer Email Addresses

This Task has the following parameters. The deletion is always based on the setting of the Active flag. Customer email addresses are flagged as inactive when you select the Delete option for the email address.

- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Customer email addresses that are deleted, or if the Customer email addresses are actually deleted.
 - On - Only provides a count of the Customer email addresses that are reported as inactive. The count at the Job Details Window indicates the total number of inactive

emails that will be deleted for all Customers and the total number of Customers that will have inactive emails deleted. These numbers might be different, for example, if you deleted two phone numbers for the same Customer.

- Off - The Customer email addresses are deleted. The listing displayed at the Job Details Window indicates the total number of inactive email addresses that were deleted for all Customers and the total number of Customers that had inactive email addresses deleted. These numbers might be different, for example, if you deleted two email addresses for the same Customer.

Delete Transaction History

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Transaction Business Date on which a Transaction is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Transactions that are to be deleted, or if the Transactions will be deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Transactions are reported.
 - Off - The Transactions are deleted.

Delete Promotion

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Promotion's End Date on which a Promotion is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Promotions that would be deleted, or if the Promotions are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Promotions are reported.
 - Off - The Promotions are deleted.

Delete Merged/Archived Customers

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a merged Customer record's Create Date on which the merged Customer records are deleted. Any Customer record that was merged and archived before that date is removed from the system
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Customers that would be deleted, or if the Customers are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Customers are reported.
 - Off - The Customers are deleted.

Oracle recommends that you schedule this task to run every week.

Delete Loyalty Accounts and Activities

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Loyalty Account's Last Update Date on which a Loyalty Account and its activities are deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Loyalty Accounts that would be deleted, or if the Loyalty Accounts are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Loyalty Accounts are reported.
 - Off - The Loyalty Accounts and activities are deleted.

Delete Loyalty Inquiry Activities

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Loyalty Inquiry's Last Activity Date on which a Loyalty Inquiry is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Loyalty Inquiries that would be deleted, or if the Loyalty Inquiries are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Loyalty Inquiries are reported.
 - Off - The Loyalty Inquiries are deleted.

Delete Loyalty Program Summary

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Months - Set the number of months after which data from the Loyalty Summary Aggregate tables will be deleted based on the Year and Month fields. If 0 is entered, all data will be deleted. If 1 is entered, only one month (the latest) will be kept and all previous data deleted. If 2 is entered, only the latest and previous month will remain and so on.
- Report Only -
 - On - The data will not be deleted, a count of the rows to delete from each table will be shown in the job processing output when the job is complete.
 - Off - The data will be deleted and a summary will be shown in the job processing output.

Delete Segments

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Segment's Last Run Date on which a Segment is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.

- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Segments that would be deleted, or if the Segments are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Segments are reported.
 - Off - The Segments are deleted.

Delete Segment History

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Segment's Last Run Date on which the History for the Segment is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Segment Histories that would be deleted, or if the Segment Histories are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Segment Histories are reported.
 - Off - The Segment Histories are deleted.

Delete Job History

This Task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Job's End Date on which the History for the Job is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Job Histories that would be deleted, or if the Job Histories are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Job Histories are reported.
 - Off - The Job Histories are deleted.

Delete Export Files

This Task has the following parameter:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days to retain files in export directories before they are eligible to be deleted. The Task uses the date when a file was most recently modified to determine whether it is eligible for deletion.

Once an export file has been deleted, the Job Details Window for the export job displays a message: File no longer available.

Oracle recommends scheduling this Task to run weekly.

The following configuration properties define the export directories where files are created for export that are subject to deletion through this task.

- Account Batch Exporter Export Directory
- Award Export Directory
- Card Export Directory
- Card Series Export Directory

- Customer Batch Exporter Export Directory
- Customer Segment Export Directory
- Directory For Promotion Batch Export Files
- Directory For Segment Batch Export Files
- Location Specific Transform Export Directory
- Loyalty Export Directory
- Promote Transforms Export Directory
- Promotion Transforms Export Directory
- Promotion Export Directory
- Promotion Transforms Export Directory
- Retail Insights Batch Exporter Export Directory
- Tender Activity Report Export Directory

See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for information on setting up configuration properties.

Delete Import Files

This Task has the following parameter:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days to retain files in import directories before they are eligible to be deleted. The Task uses the date when a file was most recently modified to determine whether it is eligible for deletion.

Oracle recommends scheduling this Task to run weekly.

The following configuration properties define the import directories where files are deleted.

- Card Series Import Upload Directory
- Batch File Input Directory

See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for information on setting up configuration properties.

Delete Gift Registries

This task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Gift Registry's Expiration Date on which the Gift Registry is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Gift Registries that would be deleted, or if the Gift Registries are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Gift Registries are reported.
 - Off - The Gift Registries are deleted.

Delete Inactive Item Registries

This task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after an Inactive Wish List's or Gift Registry's Last Update Date on which the Wish List is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Gift Registries that would be deleted, or if the Wish Lists are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Wish Lists are reported.
 - Off - The Wish Lists are deleted.

Delete Inactive Segment

This task has no additional parameters.

Delete Social Activity

This task has the following parameters:

- Search Strategy - This Selection Menu determines the social network for which the Social Activity is being deleted.
- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Social Activity item's Last Activity Date on which the item is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Social Activity items that would be deleted, or if the Social Activity is deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Social Activity items that are reported.
 - Off - The Social Activity is deleted.

Delete Tasks

This task has the following parameters:

- Task Status - This Selection Menu includes the following options.
 - All (Default)
 - Open
 - In Progress
 - Cancelled
 - Closed
- Number of Days - Set the number of days after a Task's Update/Create Date on which the Task is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the tasks that would be deleted, or if the tasks are deleted.
 - toggle Right - Only a count of the tasks that are reported.
 - toggle Left - The Tasks that are deleted.

Delete Award Inquiry Activities

This task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after a Award Inquiry's Last Activity Date on which a Award Inquiry is deleted.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Award Inquiries that would be deleted, or if the Award Inquiries are deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Award Inquiries are reported.
 - Off - The Award Inquiries are deleted.

Delete Web Service Tracking

This task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after which tracked Web Service activity is deleted, based on the date when the record in the database was most recently updated.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Web Service Tracking records that would be deleted, or if the Web Service Tracking records would be deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the consolidated daily, weekly, and monthly Web Service Tracking records are reported.
 - Off - The consolidated Web Service Tracking records are deleted.

Delete Batch Import History

This task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after which batch import history is deleted, based on the END_DATE in the XMLAPI_PROCESSED_RECORD table.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Batch Import History records that would be deleted, or if the Batch Import History records would actually be deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the Batch Import History records are reported.
 - Off - The Batch Import History records are deleted.

Delete Batch Process Tracking

This task has the following parameters:

- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of months after which tracked Batch Process activity is deleted, based on the date when processing ended. If this field is set

to 0, all existing consolidated daily, weekly, and monthly Batch Processing data is eligible for deletion.

- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.
- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of Batch Process Tracking records that would be deleted, or if the Batch Process Tracking records would be deleted.
 - On - Only a count of the consolidated daily, weekly, and monthly Batch Process Tracking records are reported.
 - Off - The consolidated Batch Process Tracking records are deleted.

Delete Stored Files

Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days after which transfer file data currently stored in the database is deleted, based on each file's Create Date.

Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.

Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of stored file records that would be deleted, or if the stored file records would be deleted.

- ON - Only a count of the stored transfer files records are reported.
- OFF - The stored transfer file records are deleted.

Data stored in the database on failed transfer files is deleted automatically based on the Delete Failed Transfer in X Days system configuration property.

Aggregate Loyalty Facts

This task has the following parameters:

- Number of prior years to begin aggregation of loyalty data - This Text Field determines the number of years prior to the current date that is included in the aggregation.
- Maximum number of months to collect data - This Text Field defines the number of months for which data is aggregated.

If this field is left blank [default], the system will aggregate all the data included in the indicated number of years.

- Reset Prior Run Data - This toggle indicates whether the task will delete the previously aggregated loyalty information and create an entirely new summary, or if the summary information from previous aggregations are kept.
 - On - The task will remove all of the currently existing summary information and create an entirely new summary.
 - Off - The task will keep the previously collected summary information.

Aggregate Tender Facts

This task has no additional parameters.

Aggregate Award Program Summary

This task has no additional parameters.

Aggregate Loyalty Program Summary

This task has no additional parameters.

Aggregate Promotion Scorecard Summary

This task has no additional parameters.

Aggregate Tender Program Summary

This task has no additional parameters.

Dynamic and Recurring Promotions

This task has no additional parameters.

This job should be scheduled for the very early morning, before users generate Promotions. This allows the Job to run before any Dynamic and Recurring Promotions are generated.

If a Dynamic and Recurring Promotion was generated earlier in the day, do not run this job on the same day.

Do not run this job more than once per day.

Promotion Response Data Import

This task has no additional parameters.

This task processes the following import files to create Customer Notes recording each of the specific customer events. These files are typically submitted by a marketing system such as Responsys.

SENT_EMAILS Promotion Import File

This import file includes the following information:

- Campaign ID.
- Promotion ID.
- Event Type of 1 (sent email).
- Customer ID.
- Event Captured Date.

Each processed record in the import file creates a Customer Note:

- Type - EMAIL_SENT.
- User - OMC.
- Location - The organization's default location.

- Note contents:
 - Campaign ID.
 - Promotion ID.
 - Event Type ID.

CLICK_EMAILS Promotion Import File

This import file includes the following information:

- Event Type of 5 (click email).
- Customer ID.
- Event Captured Date.
- Campaign ID.
- Promotion ID.
- Offer Name (the name from the marketing system, such as Responsys).
- Offer Category (the category from the marketing system, such as Responsys).
- Offer URL.

Each processed record in the import file creates a Customer Note:

- Type - EMAIL_CLICKED.
- User - OMC.
- Location - The organization's default location.
- Note contents:
 - Campaign ID.
 - Promotion ID.
 - Event Type ID.
 - Offer Name.
 - Offer Number.
 - Offer Category.
 - Offer URL.

OPEN_EMAILS Promotion Import File

This import file includes the following information:

- Event Type of 4 (open email).
- Account ID.
- List ID (the list ID from the marketing system, such as Responsys).
- RIID (ID code from the marketing system, such as Responsys).Customer ID.
- Event Captured Date.
- Campaign ID.
- Promotion ID.

Each processed record in the import file creates a Customer Note:

- Type - EMAIL_OPENED
- User - OMC.
- Location - The organization's default location.
- Note contents:
 - Campaign ID.
 - Promotion ID.
 - Event Type ID.

FAIL_EMAILS Promotion Import File

This import file includes the following information:

- Customer ID.
- Event Type of 8 (failed email).
- Event Captured Date.
- Campaign ID.
- Promotion ID.

Each processed record in the import file creates a Customer Note:

- Type - EMAIL_FAILED
- User - OMC.
- Location - The organization's default location.
- Note contents:
 - Campaign ID.
 - Promotion ID.
 - Event Type ID.

Social Network Listener

This task has the following parameter:

- Social Network - This Selection Menu determines the social network to search for social activity matching the entered criteria.

Social Network Update

This task has the following parameters:

- Search Strategy - This Selection Menu determines the social network for which the Social Activity is being deleted.
- Number of Days - This Text Field defines the number of days in the past for which to search for updates.
- Based On - A field that describes what the Number of Days field is determined by.

- Report Only - This toggle indicates whether the Task only reports the number of updates available, or if the Social Profiles are updated.
 - On - Only a count of the updates that are reported.
 - Off - Social Profiles are updated.

Task Generator

This task has the following parameters:

- Select Segment For Task Generator - This Selection Menu determines the Segment for which tasks are generated.
- Task Type - This field cannot be edited.
- Subject - [required] This Text Field defines the subject line for the tasks.
- End after X days - This Text Field defines the number of days from the present day that the task will end.
- Skip if issued within X days - This Text Field defines a number of days before the present date in which, if the customer had a task created within those days, the job will not generate a task for that customer.
- Status - This field cannot be edited.
- Priority - This Selection Menu defines the priority for the created tasks.
- Associate Assignment Detail - These Radio Buttons determine the associate role for the associate who is assigned each task.
 - Assign to Primary - Assign each task to the customer's primary associate.
 - Assign to Role - Assign each task to the associate assigned to a specified role.
 - * If Assign to Role is selected, a Selection Menu is enabled for determining the associate role to use when assigning the tasks.
 - Note Type - This Selection Menu determines the type of note (if any) to add to each task.
 - Note - This Text Area Field is used to enter the text of a note (if any) to add to each task.

Batch Import Review

This task has the following parameters:

- Select processed file result type: - These options determine the result types to include in the generated email:
 - All - Include all results in the generated email.
 - Error/Warning [default] - Include only errors or warnings in the generated email.

See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Batch Processing and Web Services Guide* for more information.
- List of Users - Select one or more Users to receive the email from the Selected Users Selection Search window.

1. Click the Selected Users **Plus** icon to open a search window and search for the User to receive the email.
 2. Click Select. The User is added to the Selected Users List.
 3. Repeat step 2 for each User to be added to the Users list.
 4. To remove a User from the Users list, click the **X** icon. The User is removed from the Users list.
- List of Email Addresses - Enter one or more emails to add to the Notification Email List.
 1. Enter the email address in the Notify Email Address field.
 2. Click the **Plus** icon. The email address is added to the Notification Email List.

 **Note:**

Validation is performed on the email address.

3. Repeat steps 1-2 for each email address to be added to the Notification Email List.
4. To remove an email address from the Notification Email List, click the **X** icon. The email address is removed from the Notification Email List.

ODCS Sync

This task generates requests to the Omnichannel Cloud Data Service (OCDS) for updates on item and merchandise hierarchy data as well as location and franchise data. The three toggles are set to OFF by default and require SystemConfig or SystemAdmin authority, and have the following parameters:

- Item and Merchandise Hierarchy - Select this option to request item and merchandise hierarchy data from the Omnichannel Cloud Data Service, including:
 - Merchandise Hierarchy
 - Item Header
 - Item Image
 - Item Price
- Location and Franchise - Select this option to request location and franchise data from the Omnichannel Cloud Data Service, including:
 - Store Location
 - Organizational Hierarchy/Franchise
- Reset Last Run Date - Select this option to retrieve all data, regardless of date created or updated; otherwise, leave this option OFF to request only data that has been created or updated since the last time you ran the OCDS data sync.

See Bulk Imports through Oracle Cloud Data Service (OCDS) in the *Batch Processing and Web Services Guide* for more information on the integration and the data received.

Data Sync

This task has the following parameters:

- Click **Send Sample Message** to test the connection to a third party application. A confirmation appears indicating the message was sent successfully. If the connection is not working contact your application administrator.
- Enter the **Client ID**.
- Enter the **Secret** credential.

 **Note:**

The Client ID and Secret are provided by the third party application that integrates with Customer Engagement.

- Click **Save**.

ORPE Sync

This task has no additional parameters.

This task cannot have any other tasks running with it. The ORPE Sync job is meant to only be run once and therefore can only be scheduled Once, Immediately or Once, Later. The size of the batch can be configured through System Configuration Promote Batch Size. See the *Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Implementation Guide* for more information.

The Process Queue can be used to view the run history for the ORPE task and will provide a breakdown of the number of records retrieved/processed for each service.

13

Reports

Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Cloud Services provides a set of pre-defined reports that cover all aspects of the application. The results can be modified through sorting and filtering.

To access the Reports panel, click the **Reports** icon from the main toolbar.

About this Chapter

This chapter contains the following information:

- [Report Categories and Report Descriptions](#)
 - [Account Management](#)
 - [Award Management](#)
 - [Campaign Management](#)
 - [Card Management](#)
 - [Customer Management](#)
 - [Item Management](#)
 - [Location Operations](#)
 - [Loyalty Management](#)
 - [Segment Management](#)
 - [Tender Account Management](#)
 - [Registry Management](#)
 - [Task Management](#)
- [Displaying Reports](#)
 - [Running Reports](#)
 - [BI Publisher Toolbar](#)
 - [View Report Options](#)
 - [BI Publisher Actions](#)
- [Report Generation Options and Contents](#)

Report Categories and Report Descriptions

Almost all reports require additional configuration information that limit the results returned. Most fields allow the user to create Lists of multiple items to be included on the report.

 **Note:**

In most cases, if no information is entered for a configuration field, all results for that field are included on the report (up to the defined Limit Records setting).

The reports available for generation are listed in the following sections.

Account Management

Account Activity Summary - This report presents transaction count and value summary information about the program activities, segregated by activity typecode, user, and reason code. See [Account Activity Summary Report](#) for more information.

Award Management

- **Award Account Activity Details** - This report presents detailed information about activities performed on one or more given Award Accounts. See [Award Account Activity Details Report](#) for more information.
- **Award Account Activity Errors** - This report presents detailed information about transaction errors associated with Award Accounts. See [Award Account Activity Errors Report](#) for more information.
- **Award Account Activity Trend** - This report presents daily counts of Award Transactions, organized by Activity type, within a Program, and includes charts illustrating award account activity. See [Award Account Activity Trend Report](#) for more information.
- **Award Account Balance** - This report presents the Account balance available at run time for each Account. See [Award Account Balance Report](#) for more information.
- **Award Account Error Trend** - This report presents information about the number of times transaction errors occurred, by date, for each Program, and includes a chart illustrating error incidence. See [Award Account Error Trend Report](#) for more information.
- **Award Account Last Use** - This report presents counts of Accounts within an Award Program, grouped by the number of days between last use date and system date at run time. See [Award Account Last Use Report](#) for more information.
- **Award Activity By Location** - This report presents Award activity within a Program, by Location, for a selected date range. See [Award Activity by Location Report](#) for more information.
- **Award Activity By Program** - This report presents a summary of Account activities, listed by type, for each Program. See [Award Activity by Program Report](#) for more information.
- **Award Entitlement Expiration** - This report presents a listing of the expiration dates of issued Entitlement Coupons, providing information on how many are due to expire or have expired. See [Award Entitlement Expiration Report](#) for more information.

- Award Entitlement Redemption - This report presents a count of redeemed Entitlement Coupons for each Entitlement Offer, and includes charts illustrating entitlement redemption activity. See [Award Entitlement Redemption \(Trend\) Report](#) for more information.
- Award Entitlement Summary - This report displays the number of Issued Coupons for each Offer within an Entitlement program. See [Award Entitlement Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Award Program Balance Summary - This report presents summary statistics about current Account balances within each Award Program. See [Award Program Balance Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Award Program Definitions - This report presents details about each Award Program definition. See [Award Program Definition Report](#) for more information.
- Award Redemption Rate - This report presents information about the number of Award certificates issued & redeemed for each Card Prefix and Card Series by Program. See [Award Redemption Rate Report](#) for more information.

Campaign Management

- Promotion Response By Category - This report presents the event response, by Product Hierarchy, for the selected Promotion events, including items purchased. See [Promotion Response by Category Report](#) for more information.
- Promotion Response By Date - This report summarizes the value of the response, by business date, to the selected Promotion events. See [Promotion Response by Date Report](#) for more information.
- Promotion Response By Deal - This report summarizes the value of the response, by Deal, to the selected Promotion events. See [Promotion Response by Deal Report](#) for more information.
- Promotion Response By Location - This report summarizes the value of the response, by Location, to the selected Promotion events. See [Promotion Response by Location Report](#) for more information.
- Promotion Response By Target - This report presents response data, by Segment Target, for selected Promotion events. See [Promotion Response by Target Report](#) for more information.
- Promotion Response Detail - This report displays information about the Transactions created in response to each Promotion. See [Promotion Response Detail Report](#) for more information.
- Promotion Target Detail - This report displays Customer information for the segment targeted in each Promotion. See [Promotion Target Details Report](#) for more information.
- Promotion Target List - This report presents information about the Segment Targets associated with each Promotion within a Campaign. See [Promotion Target List Report](#) for more information.
- Promotion Target Segment List - This report displays a list of each Target Segment associated with each Promotion within a Campaign. See [Promotion Target List Report](#) for more information.

Card Management

- Card Batch Activation Rate - This report displays the activation rate for each Batch within each Card Series on the Card Prefix. See [Card Batch Activation Rate Report](#) for more information.
- Card Detail - This report presents detailed information about individual Cards defined in the system. See [Card Detail Report](#) for more information.
- Card Series Activation Rate - This report presents the activation rate for each Card Series created for each Card Type. See [Card Series Activation Rate Report](#) for more information.

Customer Management

- Address Summary - This report presents a count of Customers by address type, grouped by whether they are primary or valid. See [Address Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Birthday Summary - This report presents Customer counts by birth month. See [Birthday Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Customer Alt Key Summary - This report presents counts of the number of Customers by Alternate Key Type. See [Customer Alt Key Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Customer Assoc Assign By Assoc Role - This report displays contact information for Customers associated to a particular Associate Role. See [Customer Associate Assignment by Associate and Role Report](#) for more information.
- Customer Contact Email List - This report presents a listing of Customer names, addresses, and primary emails by Signup Location. See [Customer Contact Email List Report](#) for more information.
- Customer Contact Phone List - This report presents a listing of Customer names, addresses, and phone numbers by Signup Location. See [Customer Contact Phone List Report](#) for more information.
- Customer Purch By Dept By Year - This report presents a summary of Customer purchase activity by Department and year. See [Customer Purchase by Department by Year Report](#) for more information.
- Customer Status Summary - This report presents the number of Customer records grouped by Identified/Unidentified (Anonymous Flag) within Active/Inactive (Status Flag). See [Customer Status Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Gender Summary - This report presents the count of Customers grouped by gender. See [Gender Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Location Capture Rate - This report presents a count of Customers, by Anonymous Flag, for each signup Location. See [Location \(Store\) Capture Rate Report](#) for more information.
- Postal Code Summary - This report presents a count of Customers by Postal Code, filtered on only primary, active, home addresses. See [Postal Code Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Social Network Summary - This report displays a count of Customers by Social Network, grouped by the Customer's Home Store. See [Social Network Summary Report](#) for more information.

- State Summary - This report presents a count of active primary address records grouped by state. See [State Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Summary Report - This report presents totals and percentages of types of addresses, email addresses, and phone numbers for Customers who signed up within a specified date range. See [Summary Detail Report](#) for more information.

Item Management

- Item Attribute Summary - This report provides a count of Items that are associated with each given Item Attribute and Attribute value. See [Item Attribute Summary Report](#) for more information.

Location Operations

- Capture Quality Report - This report presents the percentage of validated Customer data, organized by Operator ID, within each Location. See [Capture Quality Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Customers by Home Location - This report presents a count of Customers for each Home Location. See [Customer by Home Location Report](#) for more information.
- Shoppers By Location - This report presents Customer count and purchase statistics for each Location. See [Shoppers by Location Report](#) for more information.
- Sign Up Location by Postal Code - This report presents the number of Customers, by Zip Code (or Postal Code) and on a given date, who signed up at the Location. See [Signup Location \(Store\) by Postal Code Report](#) for more information.
- Sign Up Location By State - This report presents the number of Customers by state, grouped by signup Location. See [Signup Location by State Report](#) for more information.
- Signup Location - This report presents the number of Customers by signup Location. See [Signup Location Report](#) for more information.
- Signup Location Daily Trend - This report presents Customer counts by signup date and signup Location, and includes a chart illustrating Customer signups by date. See [Signup Location Daily Trend Report](#) for more information.

Loyalty Management

- Loyalty Account Detail - This report presents details of the activities performed on each Loyalty Account. See [Loyalty Account Detail Report](#) for more information.
- Loyalty Acct Activity Errors - This report presents details of errors for Loyalty Accounts by Program ID. See [Loyalty Account Activity Errors Report](#) for more information.
- Loyalty Acct Level Summary - This report presents account level summaries for Loyalty accounts by Program ID. See [Loyalty Account Level Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Loyalty Activity Type Summary - This report presents summary information on accounts and Loyalty activity types associated with Program Levels on Loyalty Programs. See [Loyalty Activity Type Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Loyalty Activity Type Trend - This report presents summary information on Accounts by Activity Type by business date, organized by Loyalty Program Level and includes charts summarizing Loyalty activity. See [Loyalty Activity Type Trend Report](#) for more information.

- Loyalty Issue Rule Impact - This report displays transaction level counts of merchandise associated with purchases against a Loyalty Issue Rule. See [Loyalty Issue Rule Impact Report](#) for more information.
- Loyalty Rules Results Summary - This reports displays summary account information by Activity Type for each Loyalty Rule. It is organized by Program levels within the Loyalty Programs. See [Loyalty Rules Results Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Loyalty Rules Results Trend - This report presents summary information on accounts by Activity Type by Activity Date for each Loyalty Rule. It is organized by Loyalty Program Level for each Loyalty Program and also includes summary level charts. See [Loyalty Rules Results Trend Report](#) for more information.
- Loyalty Accounts - Balance Summary - This report presents summary information about the Loyalty Account balances, by Program Level, within each Program. See [Loyalty Account Balance Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Lyl Accounts - Last Use - This report presents Loyalty Account summary information within a Loyalty Program Level, grouped by the number of months since last use date and system date. See [Loyalty Account Last Use Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Lyl Accounts - Lifecycle - This report presents Loyalty Account summary information within a Loyalty Program Level, grouped by the number of months the accounts have been in use. See [Loyalty Account Life Cycle Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Lyl Acct Act Summary - Award - This report presents the earned points from Award rules, by Loyalty Account, within a given period of time. See [Loyalty Account Activity Summary Award Report](#) for more information.
- Lyl Acct Act Summary - Issue - This report presents the earned points from Issue rules, by Loyalty Account, within a given period of time. See [Loyalty Account Activity Summary Issue Report](#) for more information.
- Lyl Program Level Summary - This report presents the current balance statistics for Program Levels within Programs. See [Loyalty Program Level Summary Report](#) for more information.

Segment Management

- N-Tile / Range Strata Summary - This report presents details on Customer Segments broken out by strata. See [N-Tile / Range Strata Report](#) for more information.
- Segment By Home Location - This report presents a count of Customers, by Home Location, for Customer Segments. See [Segment by Home Location Report](#) for more information.
- Segment By State - This report presents a count of Customers, by State, for Customer Segment. See [Segment by State Report](#) for more information.
- Segment Count List - This report presents the details of each Segment run within a specified time period. See [Segment Count List Report](#) for more information.
- Segment Customer Master - This report presents a listing of information about the Customers in each Segment. See [Segment Customer Master Report](#) for more information.

- Segment Purchase Profile Report - This report presents counts, by Segment, of individual Items purchased. See [Segment Purchase Profile Report](#) for more information.
- Segment Trend Analysis - This report presents trend totals for Segments broken out by Run ID, and includes charts illustrating trend totals for Customer Segments. See [Segment Trend Analysis Report](#) for more information.

Tender Account Management

- Tender Account Activity Summary - This report displays tender summary information by Activity Type, by Program. See [Tender \(Account\) Activity Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Tender Activity Summary - This report is the same as the [Tender \(Account\) Activity Summary Report](#).
- Tender Activity Summary By Batch - This report displays tender summary information organized by Card Prefix, Series, and Batch, for Activity Types, by Program. See [Tender Activity Summary by Batch Report](#) for more information.
- Tender Activity Type Trend - This report displays tender summary information organized by Card Prefix, Series, and Batch, for Activity Types, by Program, and includes charts illustrating Tender Type activity. See [Tender Activity Type Trend Report](#) for more information.

Registry Management

- Registry Detail - This report presents detailed information for Gift Registries or Wish Lists. See [Registry Detail Report](#) for more information.

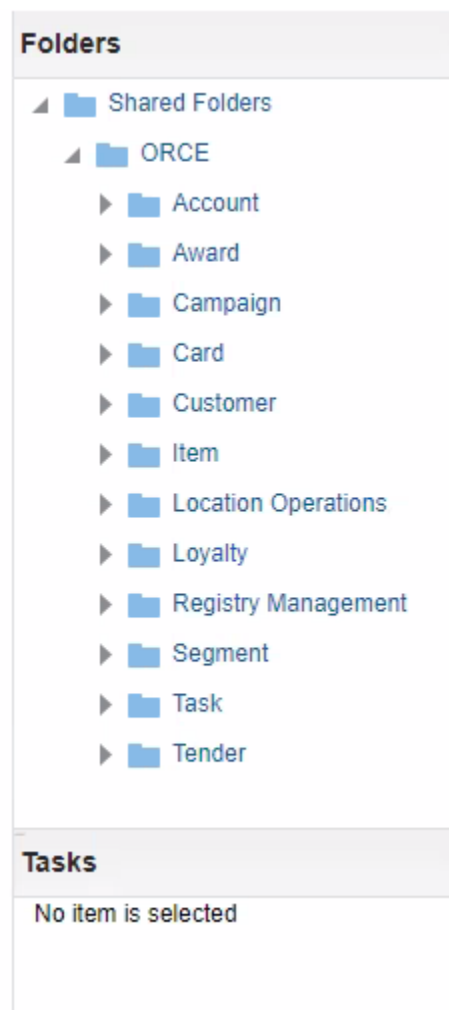
Task Management

- Associate Task Detail - This report presents details on customer targeted tasks, by the associate assigned to them. See [Associate Task Details Report](#) for more information.
- Associate Task Summary - This report presents a summary of the types of Tasks assigned to each Associate, and their current statuses. See [Associate Task Summary Report](#) for more information.
- Task Summary - This report presents a summary of types of Tasks by their current statuses. See [Task Status Summary Report](#) for more information.

Displaying Reports

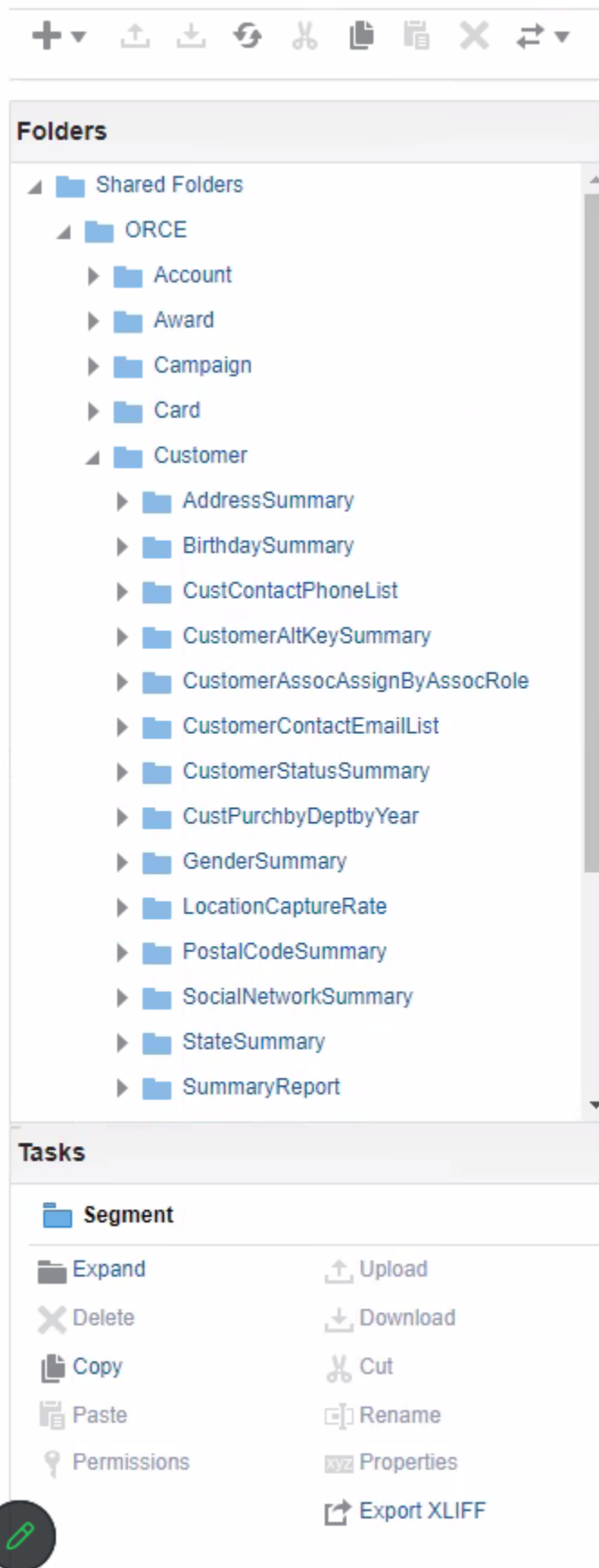
To access the Reports panel, click the **Reports** icon from the main toolbar. This displays the Reports panel, which lists all report categories and provides links to report lists and reports:

Figure 13-1 Reports Panel



Click the arrow next to a report category name to expand the report list:

Figure 13-2 Report List



Click the back arrow next to the report category name to return the Reports panel.

To search for a report:

1. Start typing the report name in the **Search for a report** prompt. As you type, a list of reports that match the text is displayed in a list.
2. Select the report that you want from the list.

This displays the Report Criteria window. See Running Reports for more information.

Running Reports

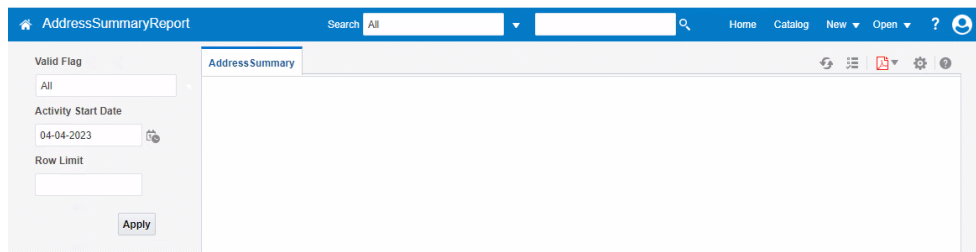
These reports are available using Oracle BI Publisher, accessed from the Customer Engagement main task bar under Reports, or by clicking the Reports icon, based on a user's privileges. To run a report:

Note:

Accessing the BI Publisher for the first time requires a login and password. Successive logins are automatic.

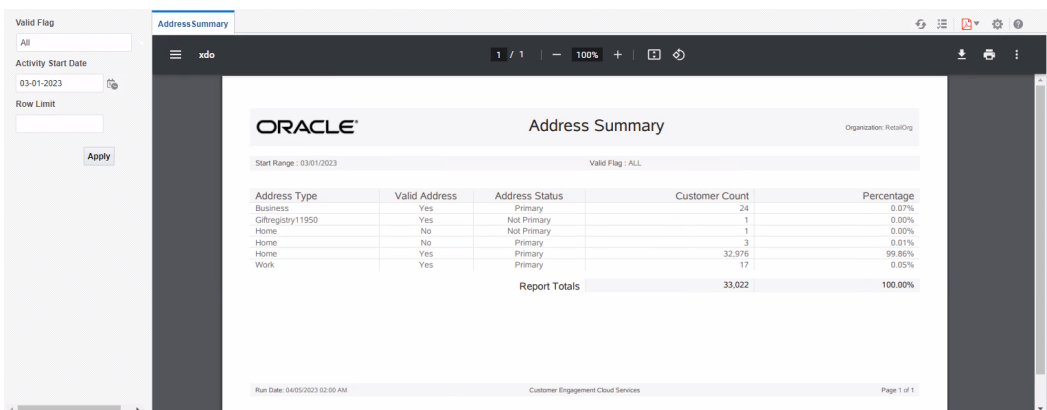
1. Click the **Reports** icon. This displays the Reports panel.
2. Expand the category of the report you want to run.
3. Select the report that you want to run from the list, or search for the report in the search prompt and select the report from the search list. Either action displays a [Figure 13-3](#):

Figure 13-3 Report Criteria Entry window

The screenshot shows the 'AddressSummaryReport' window in Oracle BI Publisher. The window has a blue header bar with a search field containing 'All' and navigation icons for Home, Catalog, New, Open, and Help. On the left side, there is a 'Parameters' panel with the following fields: 'Valid Flag' (set to 'All'), 'Activity Start Date' (set to '04-04-2023'), and 'Row Limit' (empty). An 'Apply' button is located at the bottom of this panel. The main content area on the right is titled 'AddressSummary' and is currently empty.

4. Enter the criteria for the report in the Parameters fields.
5. Click **Apply**. This runs the report. A progress indicator is displayed while the results are retrieved. The report contents are displayed when the query is finished.

Figure 13-4 Report Content



The Report entry and display window has these main components:

- Selection Criteria - The selection criteria for the displayed Report.
- Report Contents - The contents of the generated Report.
- BI Publisher Options - The options available through BI Publisher to refresh, show or hide selection criteria, export the report to different formats, schedule, review job schedules, or share the report. Use Help to open a Help window. See BI Publisher Toolbar for more information.
- PDF Options - The options available through the PDF viewer to search, zoom in or out, print, download, rotate, or view document properties. See the documentation for your PDF viewer for more information.

BI Publisher Toolbar

Table 13-1 lists the icons for the BI Publisher Toolbar.

Table 13-1 BI Publisher Toolbar Icons






Name	Description	Icon
Refresh	Refresh the data on the displayed Report.	
Parameters	Show or hide the selection criteria for the Report.	

Table 13-1 (Cont.) BI Publisher Toolbar Icons

Name	Description	Icon
View Report	Open the View Report Options list to select an output format for the Report. See View Report Options for more information.	
Actions	Select from sending, scheduling, exporting, and job options. See BI Publisher Actions .	
Help	Launches the BI Publisher online help.	

View Report Options

The View Report Options list includes the formats available for viewing or saving a Report.

Available options are:

- **HTML** - Display the Report in HTML format.
- **PDF [Default]** - Display the Report in PDF format.
- **RTF** - Display the Report in Rich Text Format.
- **Excel** - Display the Report in spreadsheet format (.xlsx).
- **PowerPoint** - Display the Report in presentation format (.pptx)

BI Publisher Actions

The BI Publisher Actions list includes the available sharing, scheduling, and publishing options.

Available actions are:

- **Export** - Opens the View Report Options list.
- **Send** - Enter selection criteria and send the Report for immediate delivery to an email address, printer, or other destination.
- **Schedule** - Schedule generation and distribution of the Report.
- **Jobs** - View and manage scheduled jobs for the Report.
- **Job History** - View and manage completed and running Report jobs.

- **Republish from History** - Select a previously scheduled, completed Report generation for viewing.
- **Share Report Link** - Generate a link to the currently displayed Report. See the BI Publisher online help for more information on these options.

Report Generation Options and Contents

The generation options and fields included on each report are described in the following sections.

- [Account Management Reports](#)
- [Award Management Reports](#)
- [Campaign Management Reports](#)
- [Card Management Reports](#)
- [Customer Management Reports](#)
- [Item Management Reports](#)
- [Location Operations Reports](#)
- [Loyalty Management Reports](#)
- [N-Tile / Range Strata Report](#)
- [Segment by Home Location Report](#)
- [Segment by State Report](#)
- [Segment Count List Report](#)
- [Segment Customer Master Report](#)
- [Segment Purchase Profile Report](#)
- [Segment Trend Analysis Report](#)
- [Tender \(Account\) Activity Summary Report](#)
- [Tender Activity Summary by Batch Report](#)
- [Tender Activity Type Trend Report](#)
- [Registry Detail Report](#)
- [Associate Task Details Report](#)
- [Associate Task Summary Report](#)
- [Task Status Summary Report](#)

Account Management Reports

The Account Management Reports include:

- [Account Activity Summary Report](#)

Account Activity Summary Report

This report presents transaction count and value summary information about the program activities, segregated by activity typecode, user, and reason code.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, then the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of individual Activity Typecodes with unique user IDs and reason codes for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Program ID** - The program IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Account Type Code** - AWARD, LOYALTY, or TENDER.
- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition.
- **Activity Typecode** - Describes the type of activity that took place for the Program during the date range. Possible types include:
 - Activate Account
 - Activate Card
 - Deactivate
 - Expire Coupon
 - Inquiry
 - Issue Award
 - Issue Coupon
 - Issue Entitlement Coupon
 - Issue Points
 - Issue Promo Award Coupon
 - Post Authorization
 - Pre Authorization
 - Redeem
 - Redemption
 - Release Authorization
 - Reload
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Return
 - Void Transaction Unblock
- **Create User** - The ID of the user who performed the activity. May also be set to SYSTEM or POS. Set to N/A if no user ID is specified.
- **Reason Code** - The reason code passed for the activity. Set to N/A if no reason code is specified. If the same activity typecode occurs for multiple activities for the same Program, user ID, and date range, but with different reason codes, each reason code is listed separately on the report.
- **Total Trans Count** - The total number of transactions for the particular activity typecode for this Program and date range, and the same user ID and reason code.
- **Total Trans Value** - The total value of the transactions for the particular activity typecode for this Program and date range, and the same user ID and reason code. Some activities, such as card activation or expiration date reset, may not have a transaction value. Other activities, such as issuing an award, can have a negative transaction value.
- Totals for Program: For all activity for the Program during the date range included on the report:
 - **Total Trans Count** - The total number of transactions for this Program and date range.
 - **Total Trans Value** - The total net value of transactions for this Program and date range.

- Totals for Typecode: For each Typecode (AWARD, LOYALTY, or TENDER) included on the report:
 - **Total Trans Count** - The total number of transactions for this Typecode and date range for all Programs included on the report.
 - **Total Trans Value** - The total net value of transactions for this Typecode and date range for all Programs included on the report.
- Report Totals:
 - **Total Trans Count** - The total number of transactions included on the report.
 - **Total Trans Value** - The total net value of transactions included on the report.

Award Management Reports

The Award Management Reports include:

- [Award Account Activity Details Report](#)
- [Award Account Activity Errors Report](#)
- [Award Account Activity Trend Report](#)
- [Award Account Balance Report](#)
- [Award Account Error Trend Report](#)
- [Award Account Last Use Report](#)
- [Award Activity by Location Report](#)
- [Award Activity by Program Report](#)
- [Award Entitlement Expiration Report](#)
- [Award Entitlement Redemption \(Trend\) Report](#)
- [Award Entitlement Summary Report](#)
- [Award Program Balance Summary Report](#)
- [Award Program Definition Report](#)
- [Award Redemption Rate Report](#)

Award Account Activity Details Report

This report presents detailed information about activities performed on one or more given Award Accounts.

Selection Criteria

- **Account ID** - The ID and Name identifying an Award Account. All Account IDs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Account IDs, search based on Account ID, or remove Account IDs from the list selected for the report.
- **Serial Number** - Optionally, enter a card's Serial Number to search for an award account by Serial Number rather than by Account ID.
- **Void Flag** - Optionally, select Yes or No to select Award Account activity based on whether the activity was voided.

- **Activity Type Code** - Codes identifying types of activity for an Account. All activity type codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Activity Type Codes, search based on Activity Type Code, or remove Activity Type Codes from the list selected for the report. Possible Activity Type Codes include:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Automatic Redeem
 - De-Activate Card
 - Expire Coupon
 - Inquiry
 - Issue Birthday Coupon
 - Issue Coupon
 - Issue Entitlement Coupon
 - Issue Promo Award Coupon
 - Issue Signup Coupon
 - Notify Coupon Expire
 - Redeem
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Void
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).

- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of activity records for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Activity Type Code** - The list of activity type codes selected for the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Void Flag** - The void flag setting selected for the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Account ID** - The Account IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Serial Number** - The Serial Numbers selected when generating the report, or set to N/A if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Account ID** - Indicates the ID number for the account. For each Account ID included on the report, there are two rows of data including the following:
- **Workst. ID** - Identifies the workstation where the activity took place.
- **Award Trans. ID** - The transaction ID of the award.
- **Void Flag** - Set to Yes if the activity was voided; otherwise, set to No.
- **Notify Expiry Flag** - Set to Yes if an award expiration notification export file has been created that includes the account. Created through the Notify Awards Expire Job.
- **Coupon Code** - The coupon code affected by the activity, such as a coupon issue or redemption; otherwise, set to N/A.
- **Serial Number** - Unique serial number for the award.
- **Exchange Rate** - The rate of exchange between the transaction's original currency and the base currency. Set to 1 if the two currencies are the same. Set to 0 if the activity does not reference a specific amount, such as a card activation.
- **Activity Type** - Describes the type of activity. Possible types:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Automatic Redeem
 - De-Activate Card
 - Expire Coupon
 - Inquiry

- Issue Birthday Coupon
- Issue Coupon
- Issue Entitlement Coupon
- Issue Promo Award Coupon
- Issue Signup Coupon
- Notify Coupon Expire - Redeem
- Reset Expiration Date
- Void
- **Business Date** - The retail business date when the activity occurred.
- **Activity Date** - The date when the activity took place.
- **Loc. ID-Name** - The numeric ID and name of the location where the activity occurred.
- **Currency Code** - The currency code for the transaction. Included only if there is an Activity Amount.
- **Ref. Activity ID** - The activity ID affected by this activity, if any; otherwise, set to N/ A.
- **Retail Trans. Seq.** - The sequential transaction ID generated by the POS system, if any; otherwise, set to 0 or 1.
- **Retail Trans ID** - A sequence ID, generated by Customer Engagement Cloud Services, indicating the retail location ID, workstation ID, and transaction sequence number.
- **Create User** - The ID of the user that created the activity record.
- **Create Date** - The date when the activity was recorded in the database.
- **Comments** - The comments entered for the activity, if any; otherwise, set to N/A.
- **Error Code** - The error code associated with the activity, if any; otherwise, set to N/A.
- **Activity Amount** - The amount of the activity. Set to 0.00 if there is no associated amount, such as for a card activation.
- **Requested Amount** - The amount of the transaction in the requested currency. Same as the Activity Amount if there is no currency conversion.
- **Totals for the Account ID:**
 - **Activity Amount** - The total amount for activities for the Account ID that are included on the report.
 - **Requested Amount** - The total requested amount for the Account ID that are included on the report. The same as the total Activity Amount unless any requested amounts were in a different currency.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Activity Amount** - The total amount for activities included on the report.
 - **Requested Amount** - The total requested amount for activities included on the report. The same as the total Activity Amount unless any requested amounts were in a different currency.

Award Account Activity Errors Report

This report presents detailed information about transaction errors associated with Award Accounts.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Serial Number** - Optionally, enter a Card's Serial Number to search for a specific Account by Serial Number rather than by Program ID.
- **Error Code** - Codes identifying types of errors. All error codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Error Codes, search based on Error Code, or remove Error Codes from the list selected for the report. Possible Error Codes include:
 - Account Already Active
 - Account Expired
 - Account Inactive
 - Award Program Expired
 - Award Program Not Effective
 - Cannot Void Trans Type
 - Card Expired
 - Card Inactive
 - Coupon ID Invalid for Expire
 - Coupon ID Invalid or Expired
 - Coupon Request Amount Invalid
 - Coupon Request Date Invalid
 - Coupon Request Exceeds Balance
 - Coupon Request Neg Amt Invalid
 - Currency Exchange Rate Not Found
 - Currency ID Missing
 - General Error
 - Invalid Entitlement Deal
 - Invalid Pin Provided
 - Loyalty Award Account Error
 - Minimum Balance Not Met
 - Missing Pin Number
 - No Physical Card
 - Original Transaction Not Found
 - Original Transaction Required
 - Original Transaction Voided
 - Reloads Not Permitted

- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of activity error records for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Error Code** - The list of error codes selected for the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Serial Number** - The serial numbers selected when generating the report. Set to N/ A if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The program ID and description.
- **Acct.ID** - Serial Number - Indicates the ID number and Serial Number for the account.

For each Account ID included on the report, there are two rows of data including the following:

- **Activity Type** - Describes the type of activity. Possible types:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Automatic Redeem
 - De-Activate Card
 - Expire Coupon - Inquiry
 - Issue Birthday Coupon
 - Issue Coupon
 - Issue Entitlement Coupon
 - Issue Promo Award Coupon
 - Issue Signup Coupon
 - Notify Coupon Expire - Redeem
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Void
- **Currency Code** - The currency code for the transaction. Included only if there is an Activity Amount; otherwise, set to N/A.
- **Workst. ID** - Identifies the workstation where the activity took place.
- **Award Trans. ID** - The transaction ID of the award.
- **Void Flag** - Set to Yes if the activity was voided; otherwise, set to No.
- **Coupon ID** - The unique identifier for the coupon affected by the activity, such as a coupon issue or redemption; otherwise, set to N/A.
- **Exchange Rate** - The rate of exchange between the transaction's original currency and the base currency. Set to 1 if the two currencies are the same. Set to 0 if the activity does not reference a specific amount, such as a card activation.
- **Retail Trans ID** - A sequence ID, generated by Customer Engagement Cloud Services, indicating the retail location ID, workstation ID, and transaction sequence number.
- **Create User** - The ID of the user that created the activity record.
- **Activity Date** - The date when the activity took place.
- **Create Date** - The date when the activity was recorded in the database.
- **Error Code** - The description of the error that occurred. Possible error codes include:
 - Account Already Active
 - Account Expired
 - Account Inactive
 - Award Program Expired
 - Award Program Not Effective

- Cannot Void Trans Type
- Card Expired
- Card Inactive
- Coupon ID Invalid for Expire
- Coupon ID Invalid or Expired
- Coupon Request Amount Invalid
- Coupon Request Date Invalid
- Coupon Request Exceeds Balance
- Coupon Request Neg Amt Invalid
- Currency Exchange Rate Not Found
- Currency ID Missing
- General Error
- Invalid Entitlement Deal
- Invalid Pin Provided
- Loyalty Award Account Error
- Minimum Balance Not Met
- Missing Pin Number
- No Physical Card
- Original Transaction Not Found
- Original Transaction Required
- Original Transaction Voided
- Reloads Not Permitted
- **Requested Amount** - The amount of the transaction in the requested currency. Same as the Activity Amount if there is no currency conversion.
- **Activity Amount** - The amount of the activity. Set to 0.00 if there is no associated amount, such as a card activation.
- **Totals for the Account ID:**
 - **Requested Amount** - The total requested amount for the Account ID included on the report. The same as the total Activity Amount unless any requested amounts were in a different currency.
 - **Activity Amount** - The total amount for activities for the Account ID included on the report.
- **Totals for the Program ID:**
 - **Requested Amount** - The total requested amount for the Program ID that were included on the report. The same as the total Activity Amount unless any requested amounts were in a different currency.
 - **Activity Amount** - The total amount for activities for the Program ID that were included on the report.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Activity Amount** - The total amount for activities included on the report.

- **Requested Amount** - The total requested amount for activities included on the report. The same as the total Activity Amount unless any requested amounts were in a different currency.

Award Account Activity Trend Report

This report presents daily counts of Award Transactions, organized by activity type, within a Program.

The report begins with two charts illustrating award account activity. One chart displays total activity counts for each date in the selected time period, while the other displays total activity amounts.

Note:

The charts on this report are useful only if you restrict the selection criteria to a single Program ID and Activity Type Code, so you can identify the totals for the type of activity. Otherwise, it would be difficult to determine the different totals for the same date but a different Program ID and Activity Type Code.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Type Code** - Codes identifying types of activity for an account. All activity type codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Activity Type Codes, search based on Activity Type Code, or remove
- **Activity Type Codes** from the list selected for the report. Possible Activity Type Codes include:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Automatic Redeem
 - De-Activate Card
 - Expire Coupon
 - Inquiry
 - Issue Birthday Coupon
 - Issue Coupon
 - Issue Entitlement Coupon
 - Issue Promo Award Coupon
 - Issue Signup Coupon
 - Notify Coupon Expire
 - Redeem

- Reset Expiration Date
- Void
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of activity records for the entire report.

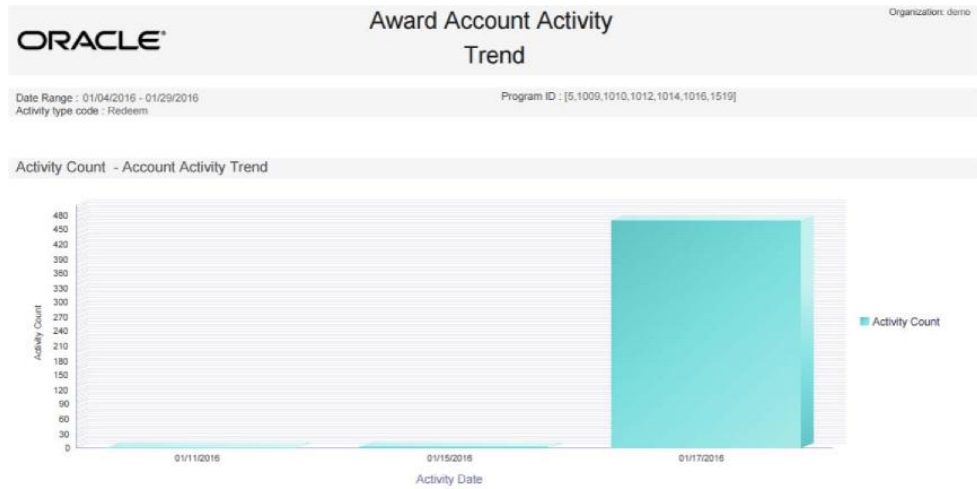
Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

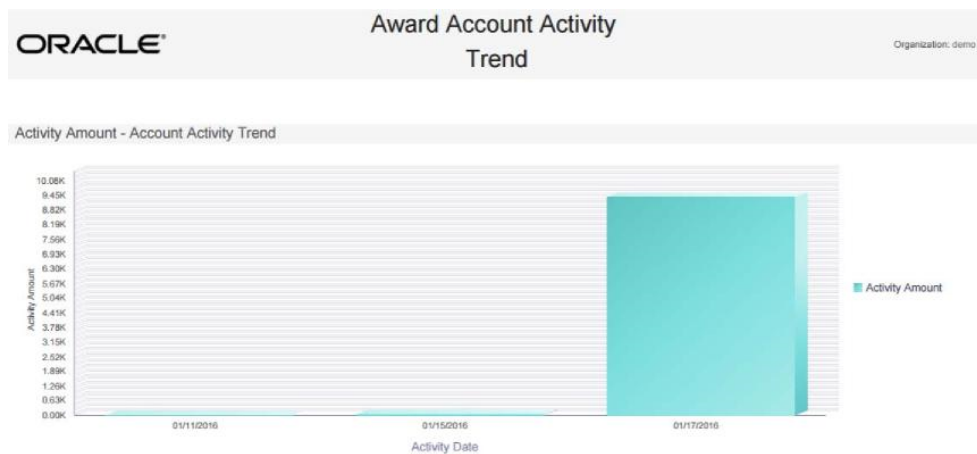
- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Activity Type Code** - The Activity Type Codes selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying the Programs selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Activity Count Chart** - Displays the total Activity Count for each Activity Type Code and Program ID by date.

Figure 13-5 Award Account Activity Trend Report – Activity Count Chart



- **Activity Amount Chart** - Displays the total Activity Amount for each Activity Type Code and Program ID by date.

Figure 13-6 Award Account Activity Trend Report - Activity Amount Chart



The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The Program ID and description. For each Program:
- **Activity Type** - An entry for each type of activity that occurred for the program in the time period specified for the report. Possible Activity Type Codes include:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Automatic Redeem
 - De-Activate Card
 - Expire Coupon
 - Inquiry
 - Issue Birthday Coupon

- Issue Coupon
- Issue Entitlement Coupon
- Issue Promo Award Coupon
- Issue Signup Coupon
- Notify Coupon Expire
- Redeem
- Reset Expiration Date
- Void
- **Activity Date** - For each date when the Activity Type took place for the program during the date range selected when generating the report:
 - **Activity Count** - The total number of times the activity took place for that program, Activity Type, and date.
 - **Activity Amount** - The total value for the activity that took place for that program, Activity Type, and date. Set to 0.00 if there is no associated amount, such as for a card activation.
- **Totals for program and Activity Type** - For each Activity Type and Program during the date range selected when generating the report:
 - Activity Count - The total number of times the activity took place for that program.
 - Activity Amount - The total value for the activity that took place for that program.
- **Totals for program** - For each program included on the report:
 - Activity Count - The total number of activities of any type that took place during the date range selected when generating the report.
 - Activity Amount - The total value of activities of any type that took place during the date range selected when generating the report.
- **Report Totals:**
 - Activity Count - The total number of activities of any type, for any program, during the date range selected when generating the report.
 - Activity Amount - The total value of activities of any type, for any program, during the date range selected when generating the report.

Award Account Balance Report

This report presents the Account balance available at run time for each Account.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Serial Number** - Optionally, enter a card's Serial Number to search for a particular Serial Number.
- **Account ID** - The ID identifying an award account. All Account IDs are selected by default. Optionally, enter an account ID to search for a particular account.

- **Include Expired Coupons?** - Indicates whether to include expired coupons on the report. Set to No by default.
- **Limit Records** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of individual Serial Number/Account ID records for the entire report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Include Expired Coupons** - Set to Yes if the Include Expired Coupons option was selected when generating the report; otherwise, set to No.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The ID identifying a Program for a Card Definition.
- **Program Name** - The name of the Program.

For each Award Account included on the report:

- **Serial Number** - Unique serial number for the Award Account.
- **Account ID** - Indicates the ID number for the Account.
- **Number of Coupons** - The number of award coupons for the account.
- **Award Balance** - The total balance of the coupons.
- **Average Coupon Value** - The average value of the coupons (Award Balance / Number of Coupons).

Program Totals - For each Program included on the report:

- **Number of Coupons** - The number of award coupons for the Program.
- **Award Balance** - The total balance of the coupons.
- **Average Coupon Value** - The average value of the coupons (Award Balance / Number of Coupons).

Report Totals - For all Award Accounts included on the report:

- **Number of Coupons** - The number of award programs included on the report.
- **Award Balance** - The total balance of the coupons.
- **Average Coupon Value** - The average value of the coupons (Award Balance / Number of Coupons).

Award Account Error Trend Report

This report presents information about the number of times transaction errors occurred, by date, for each Program.

The report begins with a chart illustrating award error frequency.

 **Note:**

The chart on this report is useful only if you restrict the selection criteria to a single Error Code, so you can identify the total for dates when this error occurred. Otherwise, it might be difficult to determine the totals for the same date but a different error.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Error Code** - Codes identifying types of errors. All error codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Error Codes, search based on Error Code, or remove Error Codes from the list selected for the report. Possible Error Codes include:
 - Account Already Active
 - Account Expired
 - Account Inactive
 - Award Program Expired
 - Award Program Not Effective
 - Cannot Void Trans Type
 - Card Expired
 - Card Inactive
 - Coupon ID Invalid for Expire
 - Coupon ID Invalid or Expired
 - Coupon Request Amount Invalid
 - Coupon Request Date Invalid
 - Coupon Request Exceeds Balance
 - Coupon Request Neg Amt Invalid
 - Currency Exchange Rate Not Found
 - Currency ID Missing
 - General Error
 - Invalid Entitlement Deal
 - Invalid Pin Provided
 - Loyalty Award Account Error
 - Minimum Balance Not Met
 - Missing Pin Number
 - No Physical Card

- Original Transaction Not Found
- Original Transaction Required
- Original Transaction Voided
- Reloads Not Permitted
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include errors that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of activity error records for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

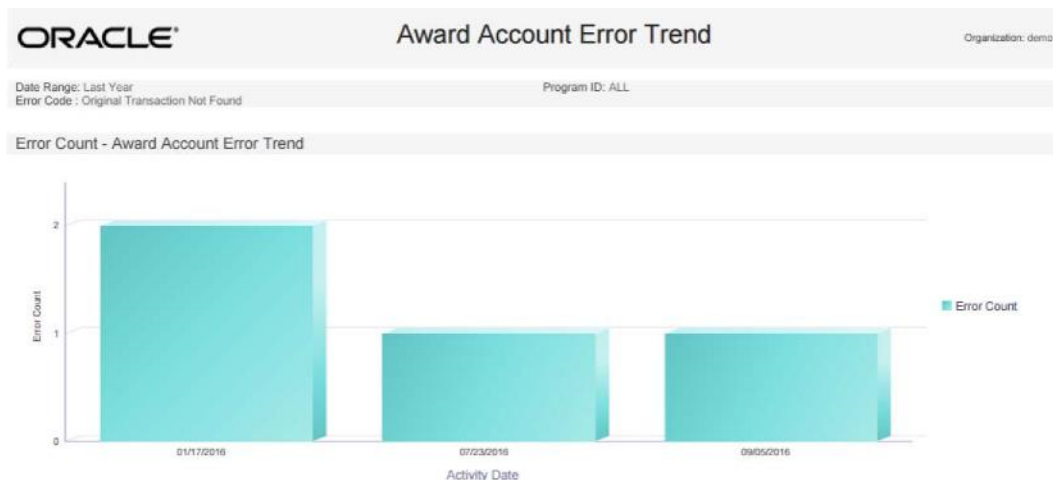
Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Error Code** - The Error Codes selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

- **Error Count Chart** - Displays the total Error Count for each Error Code and Program ID by date.

Figure 13-7 Award Error Trend Report - Error Count Chart Report Contents



The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The program ID and description.
- **Error Code** - The description of the error that occurred. Possible error codes include:
 - Account Already Active
 - Account Expired
 - Account Inactive
 - Award Program Expired
 - Award Program Not Effective
 - Cannot Void Trans Type
 - Card Expired
 - Card Inactive
 - Coupon ID Invalid for Expire
 - Coupon ID Invalid or Expired
 - Coupon Request Amount Invalid
 - Coupon Request Date Invalid
 - Coupon Request Exceeds Balance
 - Coupon Request Neg Amt Invalid
 - Currency Exchange Rate Not Found
 - Currency ID Missing
 - General Error
 - Invalid Entitlement Deal

- Invalid Pin Provided
- Loyalty Award Account Error
- Minimum Balance Not Met
- Missing Pin Number
- No Physical Card
- Original Transaction Not Found
- Original Transaction Required
- Original Transaction Voided
- Reloads Not Permitted
- For each error included on the report:
 - **Activity Date** - The date when the error occurred.
 - **Error Count** - The total number the errors occurred for that program ID and date.
- **Total for each program** - The total number of errors for the program that were included on the report.
- **Report Totals** - The total number of errors that were included on the report.

Award Account Last Use Report

This report presents counts of Accounts within an Award Program, grouped by the number of days between last use date and system date at report run time.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Limit Records** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of date intervals for the entire report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The Program ID and description. For each program included on the report:
- **Date Interval** - The range when accounts were last used. Possible ranges are Never Used, Less Than 30 Days, 31 to 60 Days, 61 to 90 Days, or Over 90 Days.

- **Number of Accounts** - The total number of Award Accounts that were used during the Date Interval.
- **Award Balance** - The total balance of Award Accounts that were used during the Date Interval.
- **Number of Coupons** - The total number of Award Coupons that were used during the Date Interval.
- **Average Coupon Value** - The average coupon value (Award Balance / Number of Coupons) used during the Date Interval.
- **Totals for Program** - For each program and date interval included on the report, the following totals are included:
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of Award Accounts for the program, including those Never Used, included on the report.
 - **Award Balance** - The total balance of Award Accounts for the Program included on the report.
 - **Number of Coupons** - The total number of coupons for the Program included on the report.
 - **Average Coupon Value** - The average coupon value (Award Balance / Number of Coupons) for the program included on the report.
- **The Report Totals** information includes:
 - Number of Accounts - The total number of Award Accounts included on the report.
 - Award Balance - The total balance of Award Accounts included on the report.
 - Number of Coupons - The total number of coupons included on the report.
 - Average Coupon Value - The average coupon value (Award Balance / Number of Coupons) included on the report.

Award Activity by Location Report

This report presents Award activity within a Program, by Location, for a selected date range.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.

The related Card is not indicated here, but is listed on the generated report.
- **Location ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a retail Location. All Locations are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location Name, or remove Locations from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Type** - Codes identifying types of activity for an Award Account. All activity type codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Activity Type Codes, search based on Activity Type Code, or remove Activity Type Codes from the list selected for the report. Possible Activity Type Codes include:
 - Account Merge

- Activate Card
 - Automatic Redeem
 - De-Activate Card
 - Expire Coupon
 - Inquiry
 - Issue Birthday Coupon
 - Issue Coupon
 - Issue Entitlement Coupon
 - Issue Promo Award Coupon
 - Issue Signup Coupon
 - Notify Coupon Expire
 - Redeem
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Void
- **Void Flag** - Optionally, select Yes or No to select award activity based on whether the activity was voided.
 - **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Void Flag** - The void flag setting selected for the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. For each Program ID included on the report:
- **Retail Location ID** - The ID of the location where the activity occurred.
- **Retail Location Name** - The name of the location where the activity occurred.
- **Activity Type** - Describes the type of activity. Possible types:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Automatic Redeem
 - De-Activate Card
 - Expire Coupon
 - Inquiry
 - Issue Birthday Coupon
 - Issue Coupon
 - Issue Entitlement Coupon
 - Issue Promo Award Coupon
 - Issue Signup Coupon
 - Notify Coupon Expire
 - Redeem
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Void
- **Void Flag** - Set to Yes if the activity was voided; otherwise, set to No.
- **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions for the activity included on the report for the Activity Type, Program ID, and Location ID.
- **Activity Amount** - The total amount of the activity included on the report for the Activity Type, Program ID, and Location ID. Set to 0.00 if there is no associated amount for the Activity Type, such as for a card activation.
- **Average Value** - The average value (total Activity Amount / Transaction Count) included on the report for the Activity Type, Program ID, and Location ID.
- **Totals for the Location ID:**

- Transaction Count - The total number of transactions included on the report for the Program ID and Location ID.
- Activity Amount - The total amount of transactions included on the report for the Program ID and Location ID.
- Average Value - The average value (total Activity Amount / Transaction Count) included on the report for the Program ID and Location ID.
- **Totals for the Program ID:**
 - Transaction Count - The total number of transactions included on the report for the Program ID.
 - Activity Amount - The total amount of transactions included on the report for the Program ID.
 - Average Value - The average value (total Activity Amount / Transaction Count) included on the report for the Program ID.
- **Report Totals:**
 - Transaction Count - The total number of transactions included on the report.
 - Activity Amount - The total amount of transactions included on the report.
 - Average Value - The average value (total Activity Amount / Transaction Count) included on the report.

Award Activity by Program Report

This report presents a summary of Account activities, listed by type, for each Program.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Type** - Codes identifying types of activity for an award account. All activity type codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Activity Type Codes, search based on Activity Type Code, or remove Activity Type Codes from the list selected for the report. Possible Activity Type Codes include:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Automatic Redeem
 - De-Activate Card
 - Expire Coupon
 - Inquiry
 - Issue Birthday Coupon
 - Issue Coupon
 - Issue Entitlement Coupon
 - Issue Promo Award Coupon

- Issue Signup Coupon
- Notify Coupon Expire
- Redeem
- Reset Expiration Date
- Void
- **Void** - Optionally, select Yes or No to select award activity based on whether the activity was voided.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of activity records for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **The Activity Type Codes** selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Void Flag** - The void flag setting selected for the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. For each Program ID included on the report:
- **Activity Type** - Describes the type of activity. Possible types:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Automatic Redeem
 - De-Activate Card
 - Expire Coupon
 - Inquiry
 - Issue Birthday Coupon
 - Issue Coupon
 - Issue Entitlement Coupon
 - Issue Promo Award Coupon
 - Issue Signup Coupon
 - Notify Coupon Expire
 - Redeem
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Void
- **Void Flag** - Set to Yes if the activity was voided; otherwise, set to No.
- **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions for the activity included on the report for the Activity Type and Program ID.
- **Activity Amount** - The total amount of the activity included on the report for the Activity Type and Program ID. Set to 0.00 if there is no associated amount for the Activity Type, such as for a card activation or expiration.
- **Average Value** - The average value (total Activity Amount / Transaction Count) included on the report for the Activity Type and Program ID.
- **Totals for the Program ID:**
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions included on the report for the Program ID.
 - **Activity Amount** - The total amount of transactions included on the report for the Program ID.
 - **Average Value** - The average value (total Activity Amount / Transaction Count) included on the report for the Program ID.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions included on the report.

- **Activity Amount** - The total amount of transactions included on the report.
- **Average Value** - The average value (total Activity Amount / Transaction Count) included on the report.

Award Entitlement Expiration Report

This report presents a listing of the expiration dates of issued Entitlement Coupons, providing information on how many are due to expire or have expired.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Include Expired Coupons?** - Optionally, select Yes or No to select Entitlement Coupons based on whether the coupons have already expired.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of Entitlement Coupons to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Include Expired Coupons** - The expiration setting selected for the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction based on whether the coupons have already expired.
- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- Offer ID - The ID identifying a Offer.
- Offer Name - The name of a Offer. For each Offer included on the report:
- Offer Typecode - Describes the type of Offer. Possible types:
 - Buy X Get Set
 - Buy X Get X
 - Buy X Get Y
 - Fixed Quantity/Price
 - Gift with Purchase
 - Item Price Override
 - Kit
 - Line Item Discount
 - Nth Item Discount
 - Transaction Discount

- Tiered Discount
- **Expiry Date** - The date when the Offer expires.
- **Coupon Count** - The total number of Coupons for the Offer with the same Expiry Date.
- Totals for the Offer ID:
 - **Coupon Count** - The total number of Coupons for the Offer.
- Report Totals:
 - Coupon Count - The total number of Coupons included on the report.

Award Entitlement Redemption (Trend) Report

This report presents a count of redeemed Entitlement Coupons for each Entitlement Offer.

The report begins with a series of charts illustrating entitlement redemption activity.



Note:

The charts on this report are useful only if you restrict the selection criteria to a single Offer, so you can identify the total dates and activities for the Offer. Otherwise, it might be difficult to determine the different totals for the same dates but for different Offers.

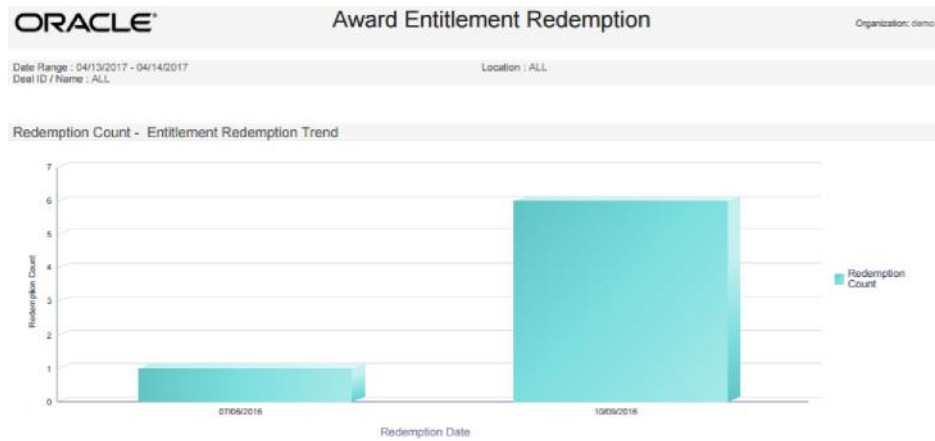
Selection Criteria

- **Offer ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying an Offer. All Offers are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Deals, search based on Offer Name, or remove Offers from the list selected for the report.
- **Location ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a retail Location. All Locations are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location Name, or remove Locations from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - This criterion is not implemented for this report. All redemptions for the selected Offer and/or Location are eligible for inclusion, regardless of activity date.
- **Activity Start Date** - This criterion is not implemented for this report.
- **Activity End Date** - This criterion is not implemented for this report.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of Offers with redemptions to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

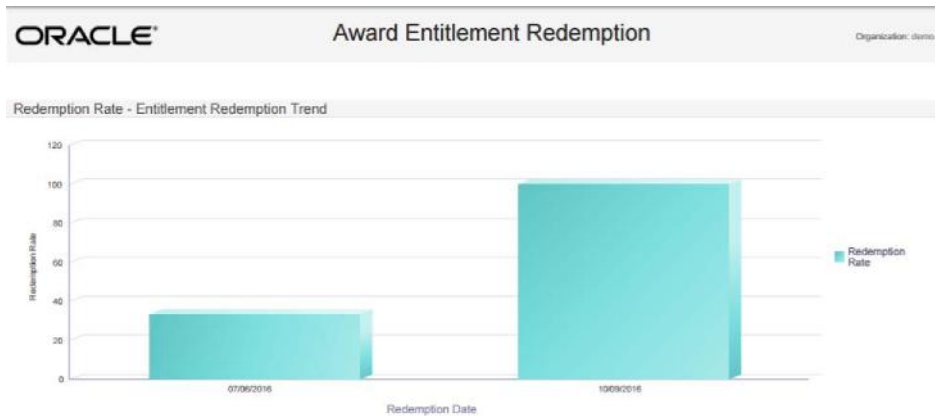
- **Entitlement Redemption Count Chart** - Displays the total redemption counts for each date.

Figure 13-8 Award Entitlement Redemption Report - Entitlement Redemption Count Chart



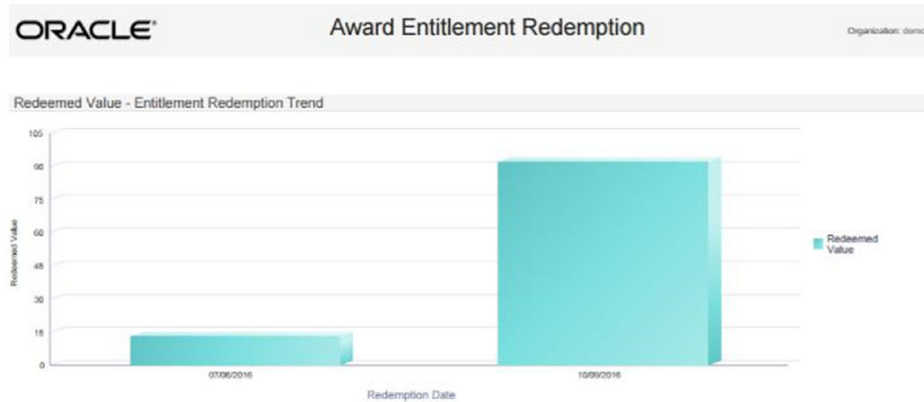
- **Entitlement Redemption Percentage Trend Chart** - Displays the percentage of the Offer redeemed for each date.

Figure 13-9 Award Entitlement Redemption Report - Entitlement Redemption Percentage Rate Chart



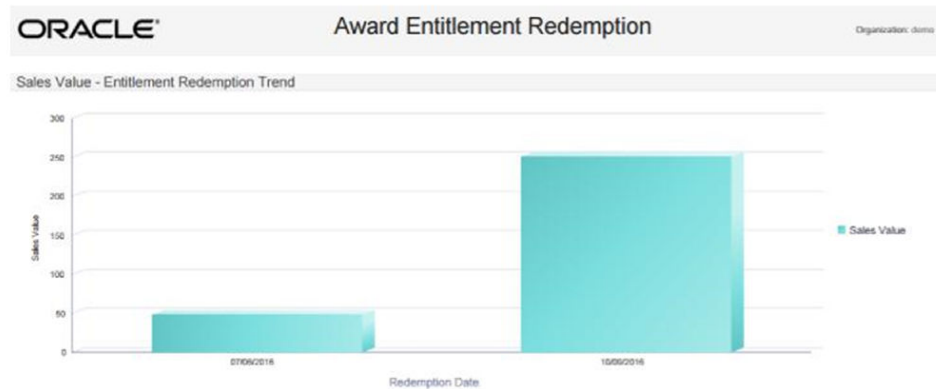
- **Entitlement Redemption Redeemed Value Trend Chart** - Displays the total redeemed value for the Offer for each date.

Figure 13-10 Award Entitlement Redemption Report - Entitlement Redemption Redeemed Value Chart



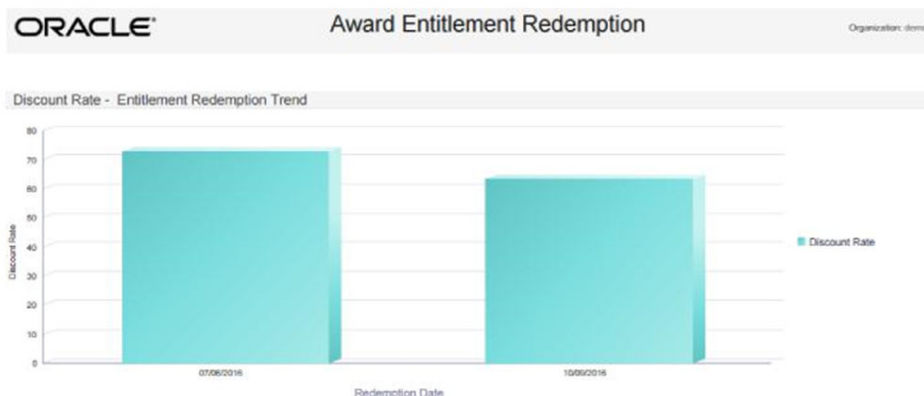
- **Entitlement Redemption Sales Value Trend Chart** - Displays the total sales value for the Offer for each date.

Figure 13-11 Award Entitlement Redemption Report - Entitlement Redemption Sales Value Chart



- **Entitlement Redemption Discount Rate Trend Chart** - Displays the discount percentage for the Offer for each date.

Figure 13-12 Award Entitlement Redemption Report - Entitlement Redemption Discount Rate Chart Report Contents



The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected for the report; however, the redemptions included on the report are not restricted by date range.
- **Location** - The ID of the Locations selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Offer ID** - The ID of the Offers selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Offer ID** - The ID identifying an Offer.
- **Offer Name** - The name of a Offer. For each Offer included on the report:
 - Offer Type** - Describes the type of Offer. Possible types:
 - Buy X Get Set
 - Buy X Get X
 - Buy X Get Y
 - Fixed Quantity/Price
 - Gift with Purchase
 - Item Price Override
 - Kit
 - Line Item Discount
 - Nth Item Discount
 - Transaction Discount
 - Tiered Discount
- **Status** - Indicates if the Offer is currently Active or Inactive.
- **Redemption Rate** - The Redemption Count / the Issue Count for the Offer on the date, presented as a percentage.
- **Discount Rate** - The average discount applied for the Offer on the date, presented as a percentage.
- **Redeemed Value** - The total value of the redemptions for the Offer on the date.
- **Sales Value** - The total value of all sales for the date.
- **Issue Count** - The number of times the Offer was issued for the date.
- **Redemption Count** - The number of times the Offer was redeemed for the date.
- Totals for the Offer Type:
 - **Redemption Rate** - The Redemption Count / the Issue Count for the Offer and Offer Type, presented as a percentage.
 - **Discount Rate** - The average discount applied for the Offer and Offer Type, presented as a percentage.
 - **Redeemed Value** - The total value of the redemptions for the Offer and Offer Type.
 - **Sales Value** - The total value of all sales for the Offer and Offer Type.

- **Issue Count** - The number of times the Offer and Offer Type was issued.
- **Redemption Count** - The number of times the Offer and Offer Type was redeemed.
- Totals for the Offer:
 - **Redemption Rate** - The Redemption Count / the Issue Count for the Offer, presented as a percentage.
 - **Discount Rate** - The average discount applied for the Offer, presented as a percentage.
 - **Redeemed Value** - The total value of the redemptions for the Offer.
 - **Sales Value** - The total value of all sales for the Offer.
 - **Issue Count** - The number of times the Offer was issued.
 - **Redemption Count** - The number of times the Offer was redeemed.
- Report Totals:
 - **Redemption Rate** - The Redemption Count / the Issue Count included on the report, presented as a percentage.
 - **Discount Rate** - The average discount applied for data included on the report, presented as a percentage.
 - **Redeemed Value** - The total value of the redemptions included on the report.
 - **Sales Value** - The total value of all sales included on the report.
 - **Issue Count** - The number of times the Offers included on the report were issued.
 - **Redemption Count** - The number of times the Offers included on the report were redeemed.

Award Entitlement Summary Report

This report displays the number of Issued Coupons for each Offer within an Entitlement program.

Selection Criteria

- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Award Entitlement Programs from this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week

- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of Award Entitlement Programs to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report. Detail Information:
- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying an Award Entitlement Program for a Card Definition.
- For each Program ID included on the report:
- **Offer ID** - The ID identifying an Offer.
- **Offer Name** - The name of an Offer. For each Offer included on the report:
- **Offer Typecode** - Describes the type of Offer. Possible types:
 - Buy X Get Set
 - Buy X Get X
 - Buy X Get Y
 - Fixed Quantity/Price
 - Gift with Purchase
 - Item Price Override
 - Kit
 - Line Item Discount
 - Nth Item Discount
 - Transaction Discount
 - Tiered Discount
- **Status** - Indicates whether the Offer is currently Active.
- **Issue Count** - The total number of transactions where the award was issued.

- **Totals for Program ID:** The total number of Issues for the Program.
- **Report Totals:** The total number of Issues included on the report.

Award Program Balance Summary Report

This report presents summary statistics about current Account balances within each Award Program.

Selection Criterion:

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criterion and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Programs** - The ID and Name identifying the Programs selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The ID identifying an Award Program for a Card Definition.
- **Program Name** - The Name identifying the Program. For each Program ID included on the report:
- **Balance Range** - The accounts are broken out into three brackets based on their current values:
 - Balance = 0
 - Between 1 and \$50
 - Greater than 50
- **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts for the Program in each balance range.
- **Total Balance** - The total current value of the accounts for the Program in each balance range.
- **Average Balance** - The average balance for the accounts for the Program in each balance range: the Total Balance / Number of Accounts. Set to 0.00 if the balance range is 0.

The Program Totals for each Program included on the report:

- **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts for the Program.
- **Total Balance** - The total current value of the accounts for the Program.
- **Average Balance** - The average balance for the accounts for the Program: the Total Balance / Number of Accounts.

Report Totals:

- **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts for the Programs included on the report.
- **Total Balance** - The total current value of the accounts for the Programs included on the report.
- **Average Balance** - The average balance for the accounts for the Programs included on the report: the Total Balance / Number of Accounts.

Award Program Definition Report

This report presents details about each Award Program definition.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Programs active during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of Programs to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Programs** - The ID and Name identifying the Programs selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Program for a Card Definition.
- **Program Description** - The Description of the program.
- **Start Date** - The start date for the card series.
- **End Date** - The End Date defined for the program.
- **Program Currency Type** - The code identifying the currency for the card.
- **Initial Balance** - The Initial Account Balance defined for the award program for the card.
- **Card Required** - Set to Yes if Card required was selected for the program; otherwise, set to No.
- **Active Flag** - Set to Yes if the program is currently active; otherwise, set to No.
- **Allow Foreign Currency** - Set to Yes if Allow Foreign Currency was selected for the program; otherwise, set to No.
- **Allow Reload** - Set to Yes if Allow Reloads is selected for the program; otherwise, set to No.
- **Account Expire** - Set to 1 if Account Level Expiration is set to Yes for the program; otherwise, set to 0.
- **No. of Periods** - The number of periods, such as months, before the accounts expire.
- **Award Expiration** - Indicates the criteria, such as Rolling, for expiring the awards for the program; otherwise, set to None.
- **No of Periods** - The number of periods, such as months, before the awards expire.
- **Create Date** - The date when the program was created.
- **Create User** - The user ID of the person who created the program.
- **Update Date** - The most recent date when the program was updated.
- **Update User** - The user ID of the person who most recently updated the program.

Award Redemption Rate Report

This report presents information about the number of Award certificates issued & redeemed for each Card Prefix and Card Series by Program.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying an Award Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of individual card series for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criterion and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Program ID** - The ID and Name identifying the Programs selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The ID identifying a Program for a Card Definition.
- **Program Name** - The Name identifying the Program. For each Program ID included on the report:
- **Card Prefix** - The five-digit prefix defined for the prefix identifying a card type.
- **Card Series Sequence** - The two-digit number identifying a series number for the Card Prefix. For each Card Series:
 - **Card Display Name** - The name defined for the Card Definition.
 - **Redemption Rate** - The total redemption rate for the Card Series, calculated as Total Redeemed Value / Total Issued Value. For example, if the Total Redeemed Value is 1000, and the Total Issued Value is 3430, the Redemption rate is .29 (1000/3430).
 - **Total Certificates Issued** - The total count of certificates issued for the Card Series.
 - **Total Issued Value** - The total value of the certificates issued for the Card Series.
 - **Total Redeemed Value** - The total value of certificates redeemed for the Card Series

The totals for each Card Prefix:

- **Total Certificates Issued** - The total count of certificates issued for the Card Prefix.
 - **Total Issued Value** - The total value of the certificates issued for the Card Prefix.
 - **Total Redeemed Value** - The total value of certificates redeemed for the Card Prefix.
- The totals for each Program:

- **Total Certificates Issued** - The total count of certificates issued for the Program.
- **Total Issued Value** - The total value of the certificates issued for the Program.
- **Total Redeemed Value** - The total value of certificates redeemed for the Program.

Report Totals:

- **Total Certificates Issued** - The total count of certificates included on the report.
- **Total Issued Value** - The total value of the issued certificates included on the report.
- **Total Redeemed Value** - The total value of redeemed certificates included on the report.

Campaign Management Reports

The Campaign Management Reports include:

- [Promotion Response by Category Report](#)
- [Promotion Response by Date Report](#)
- [Promotion Response by Deal Report](#)
- [Promotion Response by Location Report](#)
- [Promotion Response by Target Report](#)
- [Promotion Response Detail Report](#)
- [Promotion Target Details Report](#)
- [Promotion Target List Report](#)
- [Promotion Target Segment List Report](#)

Promotion Response by Category Report

This report presents the event response, by Product Hierarchy, for the selected Promotion events, including items purchased. Only promotions that have had response are included.

Selection Criteria

- **Campaign ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Campaign. All Campaigns are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Campaigns, search based on Campaign Name, or remove Campaigns from the list selected for the report.
- **Promotion ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Promotion. All Promotions are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Promotions, search based on Promotion Name, or remove Promotions from the list selected for the report.
- **Promotion Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Promotions that have Start Dates during this period on the report rather than entering a Promotion Start Date or Promotion End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month

- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Promotion Time Period, the Promotion Start Date is ignored.

- **Promotion Start Date** - The first Start Date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Promotion End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today). This criterion is not currently used.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of individual Items for the entire report. If you specify a Row Limit, any promotions that do not specify items are not included.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Campaign ID** - The Campaign IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program ID** - The program IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Campaign** - The unique number identifying the Campaign.
 - **Promotion ID** - Name - Type - For each Offer for the Promotion included on the report:
 - Promotion ID** - The unique number identifying the Promotion.
 - Name** - The name describing the Promotion.
 - Type** - Possible Promotion Types are Coupon, Product, Message, and Award.
 - **Item Dept ID** - Name - The unique number identifying and name describing the item department, if any; otherwise, set to N/A - N/A.
 - **Item Sub Dept ID** - Name - The unique number identifying and name describing the item subdepartment, if any; otherwise, set to N/A - N/A.
 - **Item Class ID** - Name - The unique number identifying and name describing the item class, if any; otherwise, set to N/A - N/A.
 - **Item Style ID** - The unique number identifying the item style, if any; otherwise, set to N/A.
 - **Start Date and End Date** - The Start Date and End Date specified for the Promotion.
 - **Purchase Quantity** - The total number of units purchased through the Promotion.

- **Purchase Total** - The total revenue (Direct + Indirect) received from the Promotion Target.
- **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who redeemed a coupon for the Promotion.
- **Average Spent** - The Customers Responded / the Purchase Quantity.
- Totals for Promotion:
 - **Purchase Quantity** - The total number of units purchased through the Promotion.
 - **Purchase Total** - The total revenue (Direct + Indirect) received from the Promotion Target.
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who redeemed a coupon for the Promotion.
 - **Average Spent** - The Customers Responded / the Purchase Quantity for the Promotion.
- Totals for Campaign:
 - **Purchase Quantity** - The total number of units purchased through the Campaign.
 - **Purchase Total** - The total revenue (Direct + Indirect) received from the Campaign.
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who redeemed a coupon for the Campaign.
 - **Average Spent** - The Customers Responded / the Purchase Quantity for the Campaign.
- Report Totals:
 - **Purchase Quantity** - The total number of units purchased through all Campaigns on the report.
 - **Purchase Total** - The total revenue (Direct + Indirect) received from all Campaigns on the report.
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who redeemed a coupon for all Campaigns on the report.
 - **Average Spent** - The Customers Responded / the Purchase Quantity for all Campaigns on the report.

Promotion Response by Date Report

This report summarizes the value of the response, by business date, to the selected Promotion events. Only promotions that have had responses are included.

Selection Criteria

- **Campaign ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Campaign. All Campaigns are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Campaigns, search based on Campaign Name, or remove Campaigns from the list selected for the report.

If you select a Campaign, one or more Promotions may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to Promotion responses that match the automatically selected criteria.

- **Promotion ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Promotion. All Promotions are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Promotions, search based on Promotion Name, or remove Promotions from the list selected for the report.
- **Promotion Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Promotions that have Start Dates during this period on the report rather than entering a Promotion Start Date or Promotion End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Promotion Time Period, the Promotion Start Date is ignored.

- **Promotion Start Date** - The first Start Date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Promotion End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today). This criterion is not currently used.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of Promotion Type rows to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Campaign ID** - The Campaign IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program ID** - The program IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Campaign** - The unique number identifying the Campaign, and the name of the Campaign.
- For each Promotion included for the Campaign:
 - **Promo ID - Name** - The unique number identifying the Promotion, and the name describing the Promotion.
 - **Promo Type** - Possible types are Award, Coupon, Message, and Product.
 - **Start Date, End Date, and Business Date** - The Promotion's Start Date, End Date, and the first Business Date when a redemption occurred.
 - **Gross Margin (%)** - Gross Profit / Revenue.
 - **Number of Responders** - The total number of customers who responded to the Promotion.
 - **Trans Total** - The Total Revenue (Direct + Indirect) received from the Target for the Promotion.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items sold for the Target that were associated with the Promotion.
 - **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.
 - **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items that were not associated with the Promotion, but included in the transactions.
 - **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Target for all line items, whether included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on the item's Unit Cost.
 - **Gross Profit** - Total Revenue - Cost Of Goods Sold.
- Totals for Promotion by Business Date:
 - **Number of Responders** - The total number of customers who redeemed a coupon for the Promotion on the Business Date.
 - **Trans Total** - The Total Revenue (Direct + Indirect) received from the Target for the Promotion on the Business Date.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items sold on the Business Date for the Target that were associated with the Promotion.
 - **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.
 - **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items that were not associated with the Promotion, but were included in the transactions.
 - **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Target for all line items, whether included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on the item's Unit Cost.
 - **Gross Profit** - Total Revenue - Cost Of Goods Sold.
- Totals for Campaign:
 - **Number of Responders** - The total number of customers who redeemed a coupon for the Campaign.
 - **Trans Total** - Total Revenue (Direct + Indirect) received from the Target for the Campaign.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items sold for the Target that were associated with the Campaign.
 - **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.

- **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items that were not associated with the Campaign.
- **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Target for all line items, whether included in Direct or Indirect Revenue.
- **Gross Profit** - Total Revenue - Cost Of Goods Sold.
- Report Totals:
 - **Number of Responders** - The total number of customers who redeemed a coupon for a Promotion included on the report.
 - **Trans Total** - The Total Revenue (Direct + Indirect) received from the Target for a Promotion included on the report.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items sold for the Target that were associated with a Promotion included on the report.
 - **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.
 - **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items that were not associated with a Promotion included on the report, but were included in the transactions.
 - **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Target for all line items, whether included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on the item's Unit Cost.
 - **Gross Profit** - Total Revenue - Cost Of Goods Sold.

Promotion Response by Deal Report

This report summarizes the value of the response, by Offer, to the selected Promotion events. Only promotions that have had responses are included.

Selection Criteria

- **Campaign ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Campaign. All Campaigns are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Campaigns, search based on Campaign Name, or remove Campaigns from the list selected for the report.
- If you select a Campaign, one or more Promotions and Offers may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to Promotion responses that match the automatically selected criteria.
- **Promotion ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Promotion. All Promotions are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Promotions, search based on Promotion Name, or remove Promotions from the list selected for the report.
- **Offer ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying an Offer. All Offers are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Offers, search based on Offer Name, or remove Offers from the list selected for the report.
- **Promotion Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Promotions that have Start Dates during this period on the report rather than entering a Promotion Start Date or Promotion End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week

- Last Month
- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Promotion Time Period, the Promotion Start Date is ignored.

- **Promotion Start Date** - The first Start Date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Promotion End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today). This criterion is not currently used.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of Offers to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Campaign ID** - The Campaign IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program ID** - The program IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Offer Name** - The Offers selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Campaign** - The unique number identifying the Campaign, and the name describing the Campaign.
- **Promo ID** - Name - The unique number identifying the Promotion, and the name describing the Promotion.
- For each Offer included for a Promotion:
 - **Start Date and End Date** - The Start Date and End Date for the Promotion.

- **Target Name** - The name describing the Target. Unidentified is displayed as the Target Name for customers who responded to the Promotion, but do not exist in Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Cloud Services.
- **Coupon Code** - The related Coupon Code.
- **Offer ID - Name** - The unique numeric identifier for the Offer and the name describing the Offer.
- **Offer Type** - Possible Offer types include:
 - Transaction Discount
 - Line Item Discount
 - Fixed Quantity/Price
 - Gift with Purchase
 - Buy X Get X
 - Buy X Get Y
 - Tiered Discount
 - Item Price Override
 - Buy X Get Set
 - Nth Item Discount
- **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who responded to the Offer.
- **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions using the Offer.
- **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items sold for the Target that were associated with the Promotion and Offer.
- **Total Discount** - Total amount of the discounts given through the Offer.
- **Average Spent** - Direct Revenue / Customers Responded.
- **Average Discount** - Total Discount / Customers Responded.
- **Average Trans** - Direct Revenue / Transaction Count.
- Totals for Promotion:
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who responded to the Promotion.
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions using the Promotion.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items sold for the Target that were associated with the Promotion.
 - **Total Discount** - Total amount of the discounts given through the Promotion.
 - **Average Spent** - Direct Revenue / Customers Responded.
 - **Average Discount** - Total Discount / Customers Responded.
 - **Average Trans** - Direct Revenue / Transaction Count.
- Totals for Campaign:
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who responded to the Campaign.
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions using the Campaign.

- **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items sold for the Target that were associated with the Campaign.
- **Total Discount** - Total amount of the discounts given through the Campaign.
- **Average Spent** - Direct Revenue / Customers Responded.
- **Average Discount** - Total Discount / Customers Responded.
- **Average Trans** - Direct Revenue / Transaction Count.
- Report Totals:
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who responded to a Promotion included on the report.
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions using a Promotion included on the report.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items sold for the Target that were associated with a Promotion included on the report.
 - **Total Discount** - Total amount of the discounts given through a Promotion included on the report.
 - **Average Spent** - Direct Revenue / Customers Responded.
 - **Average Discount** - Total Discount / Customers Responded.
 - **Average Trans** - Direct Revenue / Transaction Count.

Promotion Response by Location Report

This report summarizes the value of the response, by Location, to the selected Promotion events.

Selection Criteria

- **Campaign ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Campaign. All Campaigns are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Campaigns, search based on Campaign Name, or remove Campaigns from the list selected for the report.

If you select a Campaign, one or more Promotions may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to Promotion responses that match the automatically selected criteria.
- **Promotion ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Promotion. All Promotions are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Promotions, search based on Promotion Name, or remove Promotions from the list selected for the report.
- **Location ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Location. All Locations are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location Name, or remove Locations from the list selected for the report.
- **Promotion Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Promotions that have Start Dates during this period on the report rather than entering a Promotion Start Date or Promotion End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday

- Last Week
- Last Month
- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Promotion Time Period, the Promotion Start Date is ignored.

- **Promotion Start Date** - The first Start Date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Promotion End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today). This criterion is not currently used.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of promotion/location combinations to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Campaign ID** - The Campaign IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program ID** - The program IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Location ID** - The locations selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Campaign** - The unique number identifying the Campaign, and the name of the Campaign.
- **Promo ID** - Name - The unique number identifying the Promotion, and the name describing the Promotion.
- **Promo Type** - Possible types are Award, Coupon, and Product.
- **Loc ID** - Name - The unique number identifying the Location, and the name describing the Location.

- **Start Date** - Start Date for the Promotion.
- **End Date** - End Date for the Promotion.
- **Gross Margin (%)** - Gross Profit / Revenue for the Promotion in the Location.
- **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who responded to the Promotion at the Location.
- **Trans Count** - The total number of transactions for the Promotion at the Location.
- **Trans Total** - The Total Revenue (Direct + Indirect) received for the Promotion at the Location.
- **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items associated with the Promotion sold to the Target at the Location.
- **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.
- **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items not associated with the Promotion sold to the Target at the Location.
- **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Target for all line items at the Location, whether the items are included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on the item's Unit Cost.
- **Avg Spent** - Trans Total / Customers Responded for the Target at the Location.
- **Gross Profit** - Trans Total - Cost Of Goods Sold for the Target at the Location.
- **Totals for Promotion:**
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who responded to the Promotion at all Locations.
 - **Trans Count** - The total number of transactions for the Promotion at all Locations.
 - **Trans Total** - Total Revenue (Direct + Indirect) received for the Promotion at all Locations.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items associated with the Promotion sold to the Target at all Locations.
 - **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.
 - **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items not associated with the Promotion sold to the Target at all Locations.
 - **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Target for all line items at all Locations, whether included in Direct or Indirect Revenue.
 - **Avg Spent** - Trans Total / Customers Responded for the Target at all Locations.
 - **Gross Profit** - Trans Total - Cost Of Goods Sold for the Target at all Locations.
- **Totals for Campaign:**
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who responded to the Campaign.
 - **Trans Count** - The total number of transactions for the Campaign.
 - **Trans Total** - Total Revenue (Direct + Indirect) received for the Campaign.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items associated with the Campaign sold to the Target at all Locations.

- **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.
- **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items not associated with the Campaign sold to the Target at all Locations.
- **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Target for all line items at the Location, whether included in Direct or Indirect Revenue.
- **Avg Spent** - Trans Total / Customers Responded for the Target of the Campaign at all Locations.
- **Gross Profit** - Trans Total - Cost Of Goods Sold for the Target of the Campaign at all Locations.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers who responded to any of the Campaigns included on the report.
 - **Trans Count** - The total number of transactions for the Campaigns included on the report.
 - **Trans Total** - Total Revenue (Direct + Indirect) received for the Campaigns included on the report.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items associated with a Campaign included on the report sold to the Target at all Locations included on the report.
 - **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.
 - **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items not associated with the Campaign sold to the Target at all Locations.
 - **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Target for all line items at the Location, whether included in Direct or Indirect Revenue.
 - **Avg Spent** - Trans Total / Customers Responded for the Target of the Campaign at all Locations.
 - **Gross Profit** - Trans Total - Cost Of Goods Sold for the Target of the Campaign at all Locations.

Promotion Response by Target Report

This report includes response data, by Segment Target, for the selected Promotion events.

Selection Criteria

- **Campaign ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Campaign. All Campaigns are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Campaigns, search based on Campaign Name, or remove Campaigns from the list selected for the report.

If you select a Campaign, one or more Promotions may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to Promotion responses that match the automatically selected criteria.
- **Promotion ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Promotion. All Promotions are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Promotions, search based on Promotion Name, or remove Promotions from the list selected for the report.

- **Promotion Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Promotions that have Start Dates during this period on the report rather than entering a Promotion Start Date or Promotion End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Promotion Time Period, the Promotion Start Date is ignored.

- **Promotion Start Date** - The first Start Date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Promotion End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today). This criterion is not currently used.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of targets to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Campaign ID** - The Campaign IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program ID** - The program IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Campaign** - The unique number identifying the Campaign, and the name of the Campaign.
- **Promo ID** - Name - The unique number identifying the Promotion, and the name describing the Promotion.

- **Promo Type** - Possible types are AWARD, COUPON, MESSAGE, and PRODUCT.
- **Start - End Date** - The Start Date and End Date for the Promotion.
- **Target Name** - The name describing the customers targeted.
- **Target Count** - The total number of customers contacted.
- **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers in the Target who responded to the Promotion.
- **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions for the Promotion for the Target.
- **Promo Item Count** - The number of units sold of items that were eligible for the Promotion.
- **Revenue Total** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the Target.
- **Average Spent** - Revenue Total / Customers Responded for the Target.
- **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Target for all line items at the Location, whether the items included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on the Unit Cost.
- **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.
- **Totals for Promotion:**
 - **Target Count** - The total number of customers contacted for the Promotion.
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers in Targets who responded to the Promotion.
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions for the Promotion.
 - **Promo Item Count** - The number of units sold that were eligible for the Promotion.
 - **Revenue Total** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the Targets for the Promotion.
 - **Average Spent** - Revenue Total / Customers Responded for the Targets for the Promotion.
 - **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Targets for all line items associated with the Promotion, whether the items included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on the Unit Cost.
 - **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.
- **Totals for Campaign:**
 - **Target Count** - The total number of customers contacted for the Campaign.
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers in Targets who responded to the Campaign.
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions for the Campaign.
 - **Promo Item Count** - The number of units sold that were eligible for the Campaign.
 - **Revenue Total** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the Targets for the Campaign.
 - **Average Spent** - Revenue Total / Customers Responded for the Targets for the Campaign.
 - **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Targets for all line items associated with the Campaign, whether the items included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on the Unit Cost.

- **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.
- Report Totals:
 - **Target Count** - The total number of customers contacted for the Promotions included on the report.
 - **Customers Responded** - The total number of customers in Targets who responded to the Promotions included on the report.
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions for the Promotions included on the report.
 - **Promo Item Count** - The number of units sold that were eligible for the Promotions included on the report.
 - **Revenue Total** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the Targets for the Promotions included on the report.
 - **Average Spent** - Revenue Total / Customers Responded for the Targets for the Promotions included on the report.
 - **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold to the Targets for all line items associated with the Promotions included on the report, whether the items included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on the Unit Cost.
 - **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items.

Promotion Response Detail Report

This report includes information about the Transactions created in response to Promotions.

Selection Criteria

- **Campaign ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Campaign. All Campaigns are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Campaigns, search based on Campaign Name, or remove Campaigns from the list selected for the report.

If you select a Campaign, one or more Promotions may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to Promotion responses that match the automatically selected criteria.
- **Promotion ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Promotion. All Promotions are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Promotions, search based on Promotion Name, or remove Promotions from the list selected for the report.
- **Promotion Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Promotions that have Start Dates during this period on the report rather than entering a Promotion Start Date or Promotion End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days

- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Promotion Time Period, the Promotion Start Date is ignored.

- **Promotion Start Date** - The first Start Date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Promotion End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today). This criterion is not currently used.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report. Detail Information:
- **Campaign** - The unique number identifying the Campaign, and the name of the Campaign.
- **Promo ID - Name** - The unique number identifying the Promotion, and the name describing the Promotion.
- **Start Date** - Start Date for the Promotion.
- **End Date** - End Date for the Promotion.
- **Promo Type** - Possible types are AWARD, COUPON, MESSAGE, and PRODUCT.
- **Business Date** - The business date when the transaction took place.
- **Retail Transaction ID** - The transaction ID to reference retail location, workstation and transaction sequence number.
- **Customer ID** - Unique identifier for the customer.
- **Customer Name** - The customer's first and last name.
- **Transaction Total** - The total amount of the transaction, including the extended actual prices of items, but excluding any tax.
- **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the transaction that were associated with the Promotion.
- **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the transaction that were not associated with the Promotion.
- **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items for the transaction.

- **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold for all line items on the transaction, regardless of whether the items are included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on Unit Cost.
- **Gross Profit** - The Transaction Total - Cost of Goods Sold.
- **Gross Margin %** - The Gross Profit / Transaction Total, expressed as a percentage. For example, Gross Profit of 18.97 divided by Transaction Total of 56.93 produces a Gross Margin % of .33%.
- **Totals for Promotion:**
 - **Transaction Total** - The total amount of the transactions for the Promotion, including the extended actual prices of items, but excluding any tax.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the Transactions that were associated with the Promotion.
 - **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the transactions that were not associated with the Promotion.
 - **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items for the transactions.
 - **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold for all line items on the transactions, regardless of whether the items are included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on Unit Cost.
 - **Gross Profit** - The Promotion total of The Transaction Total - Cost of Goods Sold.
 - **Gross Margin %** - The Promotion total Gross Profit / Transaction Total, expressed as a percentage. For example, Gross Profit of 18.97 divided by Transaction Total of 56.93 produces a Gross Margin % of .33%.
- **Totals for Campaign:**
 - **Transaction Total** - The total amount of the transactions for the Campaign, including the extended actual prices of items, but excluding any tax.
 - **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the transactions that were associated with a Promotion for the Campaign.
 - **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the transactions that were not associated with a Promotion for the Campaign.
 - **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items for the transactions.
 - **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold for all line items on the transactions, regardless of whether the items are included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on Unit Cost.
 - **Gross Profit** - The Campaign total of The Transaction Total - Cost of Goods Sold.
 - **Gross Margin %** - The Campaign total Gross Profit / Transaction Total, expressed as a percentage. For example, Gross Profit of 18.97 divided by Transaction Total of 56.93 produces a Gross Margin % of .33%.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Transaction Total** - The total amount of the transactions included on the report, including the extended actual prices of items, but excluding any tax.

- **Direct Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the transactions associated with a Promotion included on the report.
- **Indirect Revenue** - The total extended selling price of all line items for the transactions that were not associated with a Promotion.
- **Markdown Total** - The total value of markdowns applied to Indirect line items for the transaction.
- **Cost of Goods Sold** - Total cost of goods sold for all line items on the transaction, regardless of whether the items are included in Direct or Indirect Revenue. Based on Unit Cost.
- **Gross Profit** - The total of The Transaction Total - Cost of Goods Sold that were included on the report.
- **Gross Margin %** - The total Gross Profit / Transaction Total included on the report, expressed as a percentage. For example, Gross Profit of 18.97 divided by Transaction Total of 56.93 produces a Gross Margin % of .33%.

Promotion Target Details Report

This report displays Customer information for the segment targeted in each Promotion.

Selection Criteria

- **Campaign ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Campaign. All Campaigns are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Campaigns, search based on Campaign Name, or remove Campaigns from the list selected for the report.
- If you select a Campaign, one or more Promotions, Targets, and Customers may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to data that match the automatically selected criteria.
- **Promotion ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Promotion. All Promotions are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Promotions, search based on Promotion Name, or remove Promotions from the list selected for the report.
- **Target Name** - The name describing the group of Customers targeted for a Promotion. All Targets associated with a selected Promotion are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Targets, search based on Target Name, or remove Targets from the list selected for the report.
- **Customer ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Customer. All Customers that have been included in a selected Target are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Customers, search based on Customer Name, or remove Customers from the list selected for the report.
- **Customer Alternate Key Types** - The Alternate Key Types identifying a Customer in an integrated system. All Alternate Key Types are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Alternate Key Types, search based on Alternate Key Type Name, or remove Alternate Key Types from the list selected for the report.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. Each row includes a Customer record and unique Alternate Key Type. For example, if a customer has three Alternate Keys, the customer is included on the report in three separate rows.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Promotion ID / Name** - The Program IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Campaign ID / Name** - The Campaign IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Customer Alt Key Type** - The Customer alt key types selected when generating the report, or set to N/A if there was no restriction.
- **Customer ID / Name** - The Customer ID / Names selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Target Name** - The Target names selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Campaign** - The unique number identifying the Campaign, and the name of the Campaign.
- For each unique Customer/Alternate Key included on the report:
 - **Promo ID - Name** - The unique number identifying the Promotion, and the name describing the Promotion.
 - **Target Name** - The name describing the customers targeted.
 - **Customer ID** - Unique identifier for the Customer.
 - **Customer Name** - Customer Last Name.
 - **Alt Key Type** - Name identifying the type of Alternate Key. Typically, identifies the integrating system assigning the Alternate Key.
 - **Alternate ID** - The unique identifier for the Customer in the integrating system.
 - **Address** - The Customer's primary street address.
 - **City** - The City for the Customer's primary address.
 - **State** - The state or province for the Customer's primary address.
 - **Postal Code** - The postal or ZIP code for the Customer's primary address.

This report does not include any totals.

Promotion Target List Report

This report displays information about the Segment Targets associated with the Promotions within a Campaign.

Selection Criteria

- **Campaign ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Campaign. All Campaigns are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible

Campaigns, search based on Campaign Name, or remove Campaigns from the list selected for the report.

If you select a Campaign, one or more Promotions and Targets may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to data that match the automatically selected criteria.

- **Promotion ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Promotion. All Promotions are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Promotions, search based on Promotion Name, or remove Promotions from the list selected for the report.
- **Target Name** - The name describing the group of Customers targeted for a Promotion. All Targets are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Targets, search based on Target Name, or remove Targets from the list selected for the report.
- **Promotion Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Promotions that have Start Dates during this period on the report rather than entering a Promotion Start Date or Promotion End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Promotion Time Period, the Promotion Start Date is ignored.

- **Promotion Start Date** - The first Start Date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Promotion End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today). This criterion is not currently used.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of targets to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

Organization - The code identifying your organization.

- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report. Detail Information:
- **Campaign** - The unique number identifying the Campaign, and the name of the Campaign.
- **Promotion** - The unique number identifying the Promotion, and the name describing the Promotion.
- **Start Date** - The Promotion's Start Date.
- **End Date** - The Promotion's End Date.
- **For each Target included on the report:**
 - **Target Name** - The name describing the customers targeted.
 - **Base Target Count** - The total number of customers in the Target.
 - **Household Filter?** - Set to Yes if Customer Household Consolidation was selected for the Target in the Promotion.
 - **Household Count** - The total number of households in the Target. May be lower than the Base Target Count if Customer Household Consolidation took place for the Target in the Promotion.
 - **Filtered?** - Set to Yes if filtering took place when selecting members of the Target for the Promotion.
 - **Filtered Count** - The total number of Customer records from the Target that were selected for the Promotion after filtering.
 - **Filter Type** - The type of filtering applied, if any. Possible types are Top Sales and Random.
 - **Control Group Count** - The total number of Customer records from the Target, if any, that were assigned to the Control Group for the Promotion.
 - **Control Group Type** - The Control Group Type selected, if any. Possible types are Promotion Level and Target Level.
- **Totals for Promotion:**
 - **Base Target Count** - The total number of customers for the Promotion.
 - **Household Count** - The total number of households for the Promotion. May be lower than the Base Target Count if Customer Household Consolidation took place for a Target in the Promotion.
 - **Filtered Count** - The total number of Customer records that were selected for the Promotion after filtering any of the Targets.
 - **Control Group Count** - The total number of Customer records that were assigned to a Control Group for the Promotion.
- **Totals for Campaign:**
 - **Base Target Count** - The total number of customers for the Campaign.
 - **Household Count** - The total number of households for the Campaign. May be lower than the Base Target Count if Customer Household Consolidation took place for a Target in the Campaign.
 - **Filtered Count** - The total number of Customer records that were selected for the Promotions in the Campaign after filtering any of the Targets.

- **Control Group Count** - The total number of Customer records that were assigned to a Control Group for the Campaign.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Base Target Count** - The total number of customers for the Targets included on the report.
 - **Household Count** - The total number of households for the Targets included on the report. May be lower than the Base Target Count if Customer Household Consolidation took place for a Target.
 - **Filtered Count** - The total number of Customer records that were selected for the Promotions included on the report after filtering any of the Targets.
 - **Control Group Count** - The total number of Customer records that were assigned to a Control Group for a Target included on the report.

Promotion Target Segment List Report

This report presents the Target Segments associated with Promotions within a Campaign.

Selection Criteria

- **Campaign ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Campaign. All Campaigns are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Campaigns, search based on Campaign Name, or remove Campaigns from the list selected for the report.
- If you select a Campaign, one or more Promotions may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to data that match the automatically selected criteria.
- **Promotion ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Promotion. All Promotions are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Promotions, search based on Promotion Name, or remove Promotions from the list selected for the report.
- **Promotion Status** - The Promotion status to include on the report. All statuses are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible statuses, search based on status name, or remove statuses from the list selected for the report.
- **Promotion Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Promotions that have Start Dates during this period on the report rather than entering a Promotion Start Date or Promotion End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month

- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Promotion Time Period, the Promotion Start Date is ignored.

- **Promotion Start Date** - The first Start Date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Promotion End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today). This criterion is not currently used.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report. Detail Information:
- **Campaign** - The unique number identifying the Campaign, and the name describing the Campaign.
- **Promo ID** - The unique number identifying the Promotion.
- **Promotion Name** - The name describing the Promotion.
- **Promotion Type** - The type of Promotion. Possible types are AWARD, COUPON, MESSAGE, and PRODUCT.
- **Status** - The current status of the Promotion. Possible statuses are Approved, Clear, Conflict, Saved, and Terminated.
- **Start Date** - The Start Date for the Promotion.
- **End Date** - The End Date for the Promotion.
- **For each Target:**
 - **Target Name** - The Name describing the Target.
 - **Segment ID** - A unique numeric identifier for the Segment used as the Target.
 - **Segment Name** - The Name describing the Segment used as the Target.

This report does not include any totals.

Card Management Reports

The Card Management Reports include:

- [Card Batch Activation Rate Report](#)
- [Card Detail Report](#)
- [Card Series Activation Rate Report](#)

Card Batch Activation Rate Report

This report displays the activation rate for each Batch within each Card Series on the Card Prefix.

Selection Criteria

- **Card Prefix** - The numeric prefix identifying a Card program. All Card Prefixes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Card Prefixes, search based on Card Prefix, or remove Card Prefixes from the list selected for the report.

If you select a Card Prefix, one or more Card Series Sequences may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to Card Series Sequences that match the automatically selected criteria.

- **Card Series Sequence** - The sequence number identifying a generated Card Series.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Card Prefix** - The Card Prefixes selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Card Series Sequence** - The Card Series Sequence numbers selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Card Prefix** - The numeric prefix identifying a Card program.
- **Card Series Sequence** - The sequence number identifying a generated Card Series.
- **Card Series Description** - The name describing the Card Series.
- **For each Batch in the Card Series Sequence:**
 - **Batch Number** - Batch Name - The unique number identifying a batch, and the name describing the batch.
 - **Batch Size** - The number of Cards generated in the Batch.
 - **Active Flag** - Always set to Yes. Batches that are not fully active are not included on the report.
 - **Activation Rate** - The percentage of the Cards in the Batch that are currently active. For example, if the Batch includes 1000 cards, and 150 are currently active, the Activation Rate is 15%.
 - **Card Count** - The number of currently active Cards in the Batch.
- **Totals for Card Series** - The number of currently active Cards in the Series.
- **Total for Card Prefix** - The number of currently active Cards for the Card Prefix.
- **Report Totals** - The number of activated Cards for all Card Prefixes on the report.

Card Detail Report

This report presents detailed information about individual Cards defined in the system.

Selection Criteria

- **Card Prefix** - The numeric prefix identifying a Card program. All Card Prefixes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Card Prefixes, search based on Card Prefix, or remove Card Prefixes from the list selected for the report.

If you select a Card Prefix, the remaining criteria may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to Cards that match the automatically selected criteria.

- **Card Series Sequence** - The sequence number identifying a generated Card Series. All Card Series Sequences are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Card Series Sequences, search based on Card Series Sequence, or remove Card Series Sequences from the list selected for the report.
- **Batch Number** - The system-assigned number identifying a batch for a Card Series. All Batch Numbers are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Batch Numbers, search based on Batch Number, or remove Batch Numbers from the list selected for the report.
- **Serial Number** - The system-assigned number identifying a card, where the first five positions is the Card Prefix, the next two positions are the Card Series Sequence, the next three positions are the Batch Number, and the remaining positions uniquely identify the Card within the Prefix, Sequence, and Batch. All Serial Numbers are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Serial Numbers, search based on Serial Number, or remove Serial Numbers from the list selected for the report.
- **Card Activation Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Cards that have been activated during this period on the report rather than entering a Card Activation Start Date or Card Activation End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Card Activation Time Period, the Card Activation Start Date is ignored.

- **Card Activation Start Date** - The first Card Activation Date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Card Activation End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today). This criterion is not currently used.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of batches to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Card Prefix** - The Card Prefixes selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Card Series Sequence** - The Card Series Sequence numbers selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Serial Number** - The Serial Numbers selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Batch Number** - The Batch Numbers selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Card Prefix** - The numeric prefix identifying a Card program.
- **Card Series Sequence** - Card Name - Card Series Description:
 - **Card Series Sequence** - The sequence number identifying a generated Card Series.
 - **Card Name** - The name describing the Series.
 - **Card Series Description** - The description of the Card Series.
- **Batch Number - Batch Display Name** - The unique number identifying a batch, and the name describing the batch. The Batch Number defaults to 001, and the Batch Name defaults to [Batch-001].
- **Serial Number** - The system-assigned number identifying a Card, where the first five positions is the Card Prefix, the next two positions is the Card Series Sequence, the next three positions is the Batch Number, and the remaining positions uniquely identify the Card within the Prefix, Sequence, and Batch.
- **Card Number** - The unique card number identifying a Card.
- **Active Flag** - Set to Yes if the Card is currently active, or set to No if the Card has been deactivated. Only Cards that have been activated are included on the report.

- **Activation Date** - The date when the Card was first activated. If the Card has been deactivated and then reactivated, the original activation date is displayed.
- **First Use Date** - The first date when there was any activity on the Card.
- **Last Use Date** - The most recent date when there was any activity on the Card. There are no totals on the report.

Card Series Activation Rate Report

This report presents the activation rate for each Card Series created for each Card Type.

Selection Criteria

- **Card Prefix** - The numeric prefix identifying a Card program. All Card Prefixes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Card Prefixes, search based on Card Prefix, or remove Card Prefixes from the list selected for the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criterion and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Card Prefix** - The Card Prefixes selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Card Prefix** - The numeric prefix identifying a Card program.
- **Card Series** - The sequence number identifying a generated Card Series.
- **Card Name** - The name describing the Card.
- **Card Series Description** - The description of the Card Series.
- **Active Series Flag** - Always set to Yes. Series are included on the report only if at least some of the generated cards are active.
- **Number of Batches** - The total number of batches generated for the Card Series that is at least partially active.
- **Total Card Count** - The total number of cards generated for a Card Series that is at least partially active.
- **Active Card Count** - The total number of currently active Cards in the Series.
- **Activation Rate** - The percentage of Cards in the Series that are currently active: Active Card Count / Total Card Count.
- **Total for Card Prefix** - The totals for the Card Series and Card Prefix. Repeats the Number of Batches, Total Card Count, and Active Card Count from the previous line on the report.
- **Report Totals:**

- **Number of Batches** - The total number of batches for all Card Prefixes included on the report.
- **Total Card Count** - The total number of Cards in all batches that are at least partially active for all Card Prefixes included on the report.
- **Active Card Count** - The total number of currently active Cards included on the report.

Customer Management Reports

The Customer Management Reports include:

- [Address Summary Report](#)
- [Birthday Summary Report](#)
- [Customer Alt Key Summary Report](#)
- [Customer Associate Assignment by Associate and Role Report](#)
- [Customer Contact Email List Report](#)
- [Customer Contact Phone List Report](#)
- [Customer Purchase by Department by Year Report](#)
- [Customer Status Summary Report](#)
- [Gender Summary Report](#)
- [Location \(Store\) Capture Rate Report](#)
- [Postal Code Summary Report](#)
- [Social Network Summary Report](#)
- [State Summary Report](#)
- [Summary Detail Report](#)

Address Summary Report

This report presents a count of Customers by address type, grouped by whether they are primary or valid.

Selection Criteria

- **Valid Flag** - Indicates whether an address has failed validation. Set to All by default. Optionally, select All to display options, including Yes for only Valid addresses or No for only invalid addresses to include in the totals on the report.
- **Activity Start Date** - Select the first date to include on the report.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of unique categories, based on combination of Address Type, Valid Address setting, and Address Status, to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Start Range** - The Activity Start Date selected when generating the report.
- **Valid Flag Setting** - The selected setting of the Valid Flag: Yes, No, or ALL.

The Report Contents detail information includes:



Note:

For each Address Type, Valid Address setting, and Address Status combination for which any addresses were created since the Activity Start Date.

- **Address Type** - The user-defined address type that was created.
- **Valid Address** - If Customer Validation is enabled, set to No for any addresses that failed validation; otherwise, set to Yes.
- **Address Status** - Indicates if the addresses are flagged as Primary or Not Primary.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of customer records that had an address created matching the category of Address Type, Valid Address setting, and Address Status.
- **Percentage** - The percentage of all customer address activity on the report that is represented by the category of Address Type, Valid Address setting, and Address Status: Customer Count for the category / Customer Count for the entire report.
- **Report Totals:**
 - Customer Count - The total number of customers who had addresses created since the Activity Start Date.
 - Percentage - Set to 100%.

Birthday Summary Report

This report presents a count of Customers by birth month. Customers are included in the totals only if their birthday months are known.

Selection Criteria

- **Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were created during this period on the report rather than entering a Customer Sign Up Date From or Customer Sign Up Date To. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Customer Sign Up Date To, are included in the totals, even if their birthdays were not specified until after this range of dates. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month

- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Customer Sign Up Date From and Customer Sign Up Date To criteria are ignored.

- **Customer Sign Up Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Customer Sign Up Date To, are included in the totals, even if their birthdays were not specified until after this range of dates. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Customer Sign Up Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of months, starting with January, to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Customer Sign Up Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report. Detail Information:
 - **Birth Month** - The month when the Customers' birthday occurs.
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customer records created during the specified date range that have birthdays during this month.
 - **Percent** - The percentage of all Customer records included on the report with birthdays during this month: Customer Count for the month / Customer Count for the entire report.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers whose birthdays are known that are included on the report.
 - **Percentage** - Set to 100%.

Customer Alt Key Summary Report

This report presents counts of Customers by Alternate Key Type. Customers are included in the counts on the report only if they are assigned Alternate Keys.

Selection Criteria

- **Alt Key Type Code** - The code identifying an alternate key used to identify a customer in a different system. All Alt Key Type Codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Alt Key Type Codes, search based on Alt Key Type Code, or remove Alt Key Type Codes from the list selected for the report.
- **Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were created during this period on the report rather than entering an Customer Sign Up Date From or Customer Sign Up Date To, even if their Alt Key Type Codes were not specified during this range of dates. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Customer Sign Up Date From and Customer Sign Up Date To criteria are ignored.

- **Customer Sign Up Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Customer Sign Up Date To, are included in the totals, even if their Alt Key Type Codes were not specified during this range of dates. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Customer Sign Up Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum Alt Key Type Codes to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

- **Alt Key Type Code** - The Alt Key Type Codes specified when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Alt Key Typecode** - The key identifying a Customer in another system.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customer records created during the specified date range that have this type of Alt Key assigned.
- **Key Count** - The total number of Alt Keys that are assigned to Customers created during the specified date range. This number might be higher than the Customer Count if, for example, a single Customer was assigned multiple Alt Keys for the same external system.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customer records created during the specified date range that are assigned to any type of Alt Key that are included on the report.
 - **Key Count** - The total number of Alt Keys assigned to Customers that are included in the totals on the report.

Customer Associate Assignment by Associate and Role Report

This report displays contact information for Customers associated to a particular Associate Role.

Selection Criteria

- **Associate** - The code identifying a Customer Associate. All Associates are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Associates, search based on Associate Name, or remove Associates from the list selected for the report.
- **Associate Role** - The code and name identifying the role that an Associate performs for Customers. All Associate Roles are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Roles, search based on Role Name, or remove Roles from the list selected for the report.
- **Customer ID** - The numeric ID uniquely identifying a customer. Optionally, enter a single Customer ID to generate the report for this Customer. Searching for a Customer here is not supported.
- **Limit Records** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of Customer Associate assignments to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization. Selected search criteria are not included in the report header area. Detail Information:
- **Associate** - The Name identifying an Associate.
- **Role** - The Role in which the Associate is assigned to the Customer. If the Associate is assigned through multiple Roles, the Customer is listed additional times for the Associate

under the most recently assigned Role. For example, an Associate was first assigned to the Customer as a Sales Associate, and then assigned to the same Customer as Suit Buyer. The Associate is listed on the report with a Role of Suit Buyer, with the Customer listed twice under this Role.

For each Associate and Role:

- **Customer ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Customer.
- **First Name** - The Customer's first name.
- **Last Name** - The Customer's last name.
- **Address** - The first street address line for the Customer's primary address. All address information is blank if there is no primary address identified for the Customer.
- **City** - The city for the Customer's primary address.
- **State** - The state for the Customer's primary address.
- **Country** - The country for the Customer's primary address.
- **Phone** - The Customer's primary phone number. Blank if no primary phone number is identified for the Customer.
- **Email** - The Customer's primary email address. Blank if no primary email address is identified for the Customer.

There are no totals on this report.

Customer Contact Email List Report

This report presents a listing of Customer names, addresses, and primary emails by Signup Location.

Selection Criteria

- **Sign Up Location** - The location where the Customer was enrolled. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location Name, or remove Locations from the list selected for the report.
- **Customer ID** - The numeric ID uniquely identifying a customer. Optionally, enter a single Customer ID to generate the report for this Customer. Searching for a Customer here is not supported.
- **Sign Up Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were created during this period on the report rather than entering a Sign Up Date From or Sign Up Date To. The dates when email addresses were created are not used as criteria. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days

- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Sign Up Date From and Sign Up Date To criteria are ignored.

- **Sign Up Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Sign Up Date To, are included in the totals, even if their primary email addresses were not created or updated during this range of dates. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Sign Up Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Limit Records** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of records to include on the report. There is a separate entry on the report for each mailing address for a customer, including deleted mailing addresses, if the customer has a primary email address.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Customer Sign Up Date** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.

Any additional selection criteria are not included in the report header area.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

 **Note:**

For each mailing address created for a Customer with a primary email address, including non-primary mailing addresses and deleted mailing addresses

- **Sign Up Location** - The Location where the Customer record was created.
- **Customer ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Customer.
- **Customer Name** - The Customer's first and last name.
- **Address** - The Address Line 1 for the mailing address.
- **City and State** - The city and state for the Customer's address.
- **Postal Code** - The postal code for the Customer's address.
- **Email Address** - The Customer's current primary email address. The same primary email address is listed for each mailing address listed for the Customer.

- **Total Sales Amount** - The total extended amount of items and miscellaneous charges in the Customer's transaction history.

There are no totals on the report.

Customer Contact Phone List Report

This report presents a listing of Customer names, addresses, and phone numbers by Signup Location.

Selection Criteria

- **Customer ID** - The numeric ID uniquely identifying a customer. Optionally, enter a single Customer ID to generate the report for this Customer. Searching for a Customer here is not supported.
- **Sign Up Location** - The location where the Customer was enrolled. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location Name, or remove Locations from the list selected for the report.
- **Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were created during this period on the report rather than entering a Customer Sign Up Date From or Customer Sign Up Date To. The dates when phone numbers were created are not used as criteria. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Customer Sign Up Date From and Customer Sign Up Date To criteria are ignored.

- **Customer Sign Up Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Sign Up Date To, are included in the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Customer Sign Up Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Limit Records** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of records to include on the report. There is a separate entry on the report for each

mailing address for a customer, including deleted mailing addresses, regardless of whether the customer has a phone number. If the customer does have a phone number, there is a separate entry on the report for each mailing address/phone number combination. For example, if the customer has two mailing addresses and two phone numbers, there are four entries on the report for the customer.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.
- **Customer ID** - The customer ID selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.
- **Sign Up Location** - The Sign Up Locations selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

Note:

There is a separate entry on the report for each mailing address for a customer, including deleted mailing addresses, regardless of whether the customer has a phone number. If the customer does have a phone number, there is a separate entry on the report for each mailing address/phone number combination. For example, if the customer has two mailing addresses and two phone numbers, there are four entries on the report for the customer.

- **Sign Up Location** - The Location where the Customer record was created. For each Sign Up Location:
 - **Customer ID** - Name:
 - Customer ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Customer.
 - Customer Name** - The Customer's first and last name.
 - **Address** - The Address Line 1 for the mailing address.
 - **City and State** - The city and state for the Customer's address.
 - **Postal Code** - The postal code for the Customer's address.
 - **Phone** - The phone number for the Customer.
 - **Total Sales Amount** - The total extended amount of items and miscellaneous charges in the Customer's transaction history.

There are no totals on the report.

Customer Purchase by Department by Year Report

This report presents a summary of Customer purchase activity by Department and year. Customers are included on the report only if they have purchase activity.

Selection Criteria

- **Customer ID** - The numeric ID uniquely identifying a customer. Optionally, enter a single Customer ID to generate the report for this Customer. Searching for a Customer here is not supported.
- **Department ID / Name** - The Department associated with items purchased by Customers. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Departments, search based on Department Name, or remove Departments from the list selected for the report.
- **Year** - The year when purchases occurred. Optionally, enter a single year to generate the report for purchases that occurred in this year. Searching for a year here is not supported.
- **Customer Sign Up Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were created during this period on the report rather than entering a Customer Sign Up Date From or Customer Sign Up Date To. Customers are included on the report only if they have purchase activity. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Customer Sign Up Date From and Customer Sign Up Date To criteria are ignored.

- **Customer Sign Up Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Sign Up Date To, are included in the totals. Only Customers with purchase activity are included on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Customer Sign Up Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Only Customers with purchase activity are included on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Limit Records** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of records to include on the report. There is a separate entry on the report for each Customer, Department, and year. For example, if a Customer has purchases in

one Department in 2016 and 2017, and purchases in a different Department in 2017, there are three rows for the Customer on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.
- **Customer ID** - The customer ID specified for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.
- **Department ID** - The Department IDs specified for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Customer** - The Customer ID and Name. For the Customer:
 - **Item Dept ID** - The unique numeric identifier for a Department.
 - **Department Description** - The description of the Department.
 - **Year** - The year when the purchase activity occurred for the Customer in the Department.
 - **Total Purchase Amount** - The total extended amount of items purchased in the Customer's transaction history.
- **Totals for Customer** - The Total Purchase Amount for the Customer included on the report.
- **Report Totals** - The Total Purchase Amount included on the report for all Customers.

Customer Status Summary Report

This report presents a summary of Customers grouped whether they are active or inactive, and identified or unidentified.

Selection Criteria

- **Active** - Indicates whether the Customer is Active, or has been flagged as Inactive. A customer might be inactive through a customer merge, dynamic target job processing, or customer deletes. Optionally, remove one of the Active Flag settings.
- **Anonymous Flag** - A Customer submitted by an integrating system is flagged as anonymous when there is no identifying information such as name, address, phone number, or email address. Optionally, remove one of the Anonymous Flag settings.
- **Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were created during this period on the report rather than entering a Customer Sign Up Date From or Customer Sign Up Date To. Customers are included on the report only if they have purchase activity. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week

- Last Month
- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Customer Sign Up Date From and Customer Sign Up Date To criteria are ignored.

- **Customer Sign Up Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Sign Up Date To, are included in the totals. Only Customers with purchase activity are included on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Customer Sign Up Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Only Customers with purchase activity are included on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Limit Records** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of records to include on the report. There is a separate entry on the report for each combination of Active flag setting / Customer Status setting.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Active** - Set to Yes if the totals are for active Customers, or set to No if the totals are for inactive Customers. A Customer might be flagged as inactive through a customer merge, dynamic target job processing, or customer deletes.
- **Customer Status** - Possible settings:
 - Identified** - The Customer's identity is known.
 - Unidentified** - The Customer is anonymous. A Customer submitted by an integrating system is flagged as anonymous when there is no identifying information such as name, address, phone number, or email address.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customer records included on the report with the same Active flag and Status settings.

- **Percent** - The percentage of the Customers included in the totals on the report represented by the Customer Count for this Status and Active flag.
- **Status Totals:**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customer records included on the report with the same Status.
 - **Percent** - The percentage of the Customers included in the totals on the report represented by the Customer Count for this Status.
- **Report Totals**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers included in the totals on the report.
 - **Percent** - Set to 100.00%.

Gender Summary Report

This report presents a summary of Customers grouped by gender.

Selection Criteria

- **Customer Sign Up Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Customer Sign Up Date To, are included in the totals.
- **Customer Sign Up Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of gender categories to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Gender** - The gender identified for a Customer. N/A indicates that no gender was identified.
- **Gender Percentage** - The percentage of all Customer records, regardless of when they were created, that have been identified as this gender.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customer records identified as this gender created within the date range selected for the report, even if their gender was identified after this date range.
- **Report Totals** - The total number of Customers included in the report.

Location (Store) Capture Rate Report

This report presents a count of Customers, by Anonymous Flag, for each Sign Up Location. A Customer submitted by an integrating system is flagged as anonymous when there is no identifying information such as name, address, phone number, or email address.

Selection Criteria

- **Location ID / Name** - The location where the Customer was enrolled. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location Name, or remove Locations from the list selected for the report.
- **Customer Sign Up Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were created during this period on the report rather than entering a Customer Sign Up Date From or Customer Sign Up Date To. Only Customers with purchase activity are included on the report. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Customer Sign Up Date From and Customer Sign Up Date To criteria are ignored.

- **Customer Sign Up Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Customer Sign Up Date To, are included in the totals.
- **Customer Sign Up Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. Each Location/Anonymous Status counts as a row.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range**- The date range selected for inclusion on the report.
- **Location ID** - The Location IDs selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Sign Up Store** - The numeric code identifying the Location that originated Customers.
- **Store Name** - The name describing the Location.
- **Anonymous Status** - Set to No for the total number of Customers created by the Location with identifying information, such as the Customers' names, addresses, phone numbers, and email addresses; otherwise, set to Yes for the total number of Customers created without this identifying information.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers created at the Location with the indicated Anonymous Status during the Date Range selected for the report.
- **Percent** - The percentage of Customers included on the report that are represented by this Customer Count.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers included on the report.
 - **Percent** - Set to 100.00%.

Postal Code Summary Report

This report presents a count of Customers by Postal Code, filtered on only primary, active, home addresses.

Selection Criteria

- **Postal Code** - The Postal Code for a Customer's primary address. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Postal Codes, search based on Postal Code, or remove Postal Codes from the list selected for the report.
- **Address Effective Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose primary addresses became effective during this period on the report rather than entering an Address Effective Date From or Address Effective Date To. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month

- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Address Effective Date From and Address Effective Date To criteria are ignored.

- **Address Effective Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Primary Customer addresses created on or after this date, and on or before the Address Effective Date To, are included in the totals.
- **Address Effective Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of Postal Codes to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Address Effective Date Range** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.
- **Postal Code** - The Postal Codes selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Postal Code** - The Postal Code for a Customer's primary address. A blank Postal Code might be used to summarize anonymous Customer records.
- **Customer Count** - The number of Customers who were created or updated with a primary address in this Postal Code during the date range.
- **Percent** - The percentage of Customers included on the report who were created or updated with a primary address in this Postal Code.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers included on the report.
 - **Percent** - Set to 100.00%.

Social Network Summary Report

This report displays a count of Customers by Social Network, grouped by the Customer's Home Store.

Click **Apply** to generate the report. There are no selection criteria.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization. Detail Information:
- **Anonymous Flag** - The totals are separate based on whether the Anonymous Flag for the Customer is set to Yes or No. A Customer submitted by an integrating system is flagged as anonymous when there is no identifying information such as name, address, phone number, or email address.
- **Home Store** - The numeric code identifying the Location where the Customer record was created.
- **Social Media** - The Social Media type, such as FACEBOOK, TWITTER, or LINKEDIN, associated with the Customer through a message from an integrating system.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers from this Location that are associated with this Social Media type. For example, the report can include a Customer Count of the total number of Customers originating from a specific store Location, associated with TWITTER, that have the Anonymous flag set to No.
- **Totals for Anonymous Flag** - The total number of Customers from all Locations, associated with all Social Media types, with the same Anonymous Flag setting.

State Summary Report

This report presents a count of active primary address records grouped by state.

Selection Criteria

- **Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose primary addresses became effective during this period on the report rather than entering a Customer Address Date From or Customer Address Date To. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Address Effective Date From and Address Effective Date To criteria are ignored.

- **Customer Address Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Primary Customer addresses created on or after this date, and on or before the Address Effective Date To, are included in the totals.

- **Customer Address Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of states to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **State** - The U.S. state for a Customer's primary address.
- **Customer Count** - The number of Customers who were created or updated with a primary address in this state during the date range.
- **Percent** - The percentage of Customers included on the report who were created or updated with a primary address in this state.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers included on the report.
 - **Percent** - Set to 100.00%.

Summary Detail Report

This report presents totals and percentages of types of addresses, email addresses, and phone numbers for Customers who signed up within a specified date range.

Selection Criteria

- **Summary Type** - The type of information to summarize: Address, E-mail, or Telephone. Optionally, remove one or more summary types.
- **Valid Flag** - Indicates whether the mailing address, email address, or telephone number was flagged as valid or invalid. Optionally, remove one of the Valid Flag settings.
- **Address Type** - The address types, such as Home, Business, Not Defined, or Work. Applies to mailing address, email, and telephone totals included on the report. Optionally, remove one or more address types. Note that all address types used for your organization might not be included in this list.
- **Customer Signup Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were created during this period on the report rather than entering a Customer Signup Date From or Customer Signup Date To. Only Customers with active mailing addresses, email addresses, or telephone numbers are included in the totals on the report. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week

- Last Month
- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Customer Signup Date From and Customer Signup Date To criteria are ignored.

- **Customer Signup Date From** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Signup Date To, are included in the totals. Only Customers with mailing addresses, email addresses, or telephone numbers are included in the report totals. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Customer Signup Date To** - The last date to include on the report. Only Customers with mailing addresses, email addresses, or telephone numbers are included in the report totals. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Limit Records** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. There is a separate row on the report for each combination of mailing address, email, or telephone type and valid flag setting.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.
- **Summary Type** - The summary types selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.
- **Valid Flag** - The Valid Flag setting selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.
- **Type** - The mailing address, email, and telephone Types selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

For each Summary Type (Address, Email, and Telephone):

- **Type** - The type of record, such as Home, Business, or Vacation.
 - **Valid** - Set to Yes if the Customer Count includes valid address, email, or telephone records; otherwise, set to No.

- **Percent** - The percentage of the Summary Type represented by the Customer Count. For example, if the Summary Type is Address, the Total for the Summary Type is 100, and the Customer Count for valid Work addresses is 20, the Percent is 20%.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of current primary mailing addresses, email addresses, or telephone numbers of this Type and Valid setting.
- Totals for Summary Type - The total number of current, primary mailing addresses, email addresses, or telephone numbers included on the report.

Item Management Reports

The Item Management Reports include:

- [Item Attribute Summary Report](#)

Item Attribute Summary Report

This report provides a count of items that are associated with each given Item Attribute and Attribute value.

Selection Criteria

- **Attribute** - An Attribute assigned to one or more items. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Attributes, search based on Attribute, or select all Attributes for the report.
- **Value** - An Attribute Value setting. Optionally, enter a single Value to generate the report for this Attribute Value. Searching for a Value here is not supported.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Attribute Code** - The ID and Name for an Item Attribute. For each Attribute Code:
 - **Attribute Value** - A Value assigned to one or more items for an Attribute.
 - **Item Count** - The total number of items assigned this Attribute Value.
 - **Total Item Count** - The total number of items assigned a Value for this Attribute.

Location Operations Reports

The Location Operations Reports include:

- [Capture Quality Summary Report](#)
- [Customer by Home Location Report](#)
- [Shoppers by Location Report](#)

- [Signup Location \(Store\) by Postal Code Report](#)
- [Signup Location by State Report](#)
- [Signup Location Report](#)
- [Signup Location Daily Trend Report](#)

Capture Quality Summary Report

This report presents the percentage of validated Customer data, organized by Operator ID, within each Location.

This report includes Customer records created by receiving transactions through an integration. Customer records created through Customer Engagement Cloud Services windows are not included in these totals.

Selection Criteria

- **Location** - A Location in your organization. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location, or select all Locations for the report.
- **Operator ID** - A unique number identifying an employee. Optionally, enter a single Operator ID to generate the report for this Operator. Searching for an Operator here is not supported.
- **Business Date** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers created during this period on the report rather than entering a Business Start Date or Business End Date. Only Customers created by receiving transactions through an integration are included in the totals on the report. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Business Start Date and Business End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Business Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Business End Date, are included in the totals. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).

- **Business End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Location** - The ID and Name for a Location. For each Location:
 - **Operator ID** - A code identifying an employee.
 - **Total Trans** - The total number of Transactions submitted by the Operator and Location during the date range.
 - **Address Valid** - The total number of valid addresses for the Total Trans.
 - **Address Invalid** - The total number of invalid addresses for the Total Trans.
 - **Address None** - The total number of transactions submitted without addresses.
 - **Address % Valid** - The Address Valid total / the Total Trans, formatted as a percentage.
 - **Phone Valid** - The total number of valid phone numbers for the Total Trans.
 - **Phone Invalid** - The total number of invalid phone numbers for the Total Trans.
 - **Phone None** - The total number of transactions submitted without phone numbers.
 - **Phone % Valid** - The Phone Valid total / the Total Trans, formatted as a percentage.
 - **Email Valid** - The total number of valid email addresses for the Total Trans.
 - **Email Invalid** - The total number of invalid email addresses for the Total Trans.
 - **Email None** - The total number of transactions submitted without email addresses.
 - **Email % Valid** - The Email Valid / the Total Trans, formatted as a percentage.
- **Location Totals:**
 - **Total Trans** - The total number of Transactions submitted for the Location during the date range.
 - **Address Valid** - The total number of valid addresses for the Total Trans.
 - **Address Invalid** - The total number of invalid addresses for the Total Trans.
 - **Address None** - The total number of transactions submitted without addresses.
 - **Address % Valid** - The Address Valid total / the Total Trans, formatted as a percentage.

- **Phone Valid** - The total number of valid phone numbers for the Total Trans.
- **Phone Invalid** - The total number of invalid phone numbers for the Total Trans.
- **Phone None** - The total number of transactions submitted without phone numbers.
- **Phone % Valid** - The Phone Valid total / the Total Trans, formatted as a percentage.
- **Email Valid** - The total number of valid email addresses for the Total Trans.
- **Email Invalid** - The total number of invalid email addresses for the Total Trans.
- **Email None** - The total number of transactions submitted without email addresses.
- **Email % Valid** - The Email Valid / the Total Trans, formatted as a percentage.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Total Trans** - The total number of Transactions included on the report.
 - **Address Valid** - The total number of valid addresses for the Total Trans.
 - **Address Invalid** - The total number of invalid addresses for the Total Trans.
 - **Address None** - The total number of transactions submitted without addresses.
 - **Address % Valid** - The Address Valid total / the Total Trans, formatted as a percentage.
 - **Phone Valid** - The total number of valid phone numbers for the Total Trans.
 - **Phone Invalid** - The total number of invalid phone numbers for the Total Trans.
 - **Phone None** - The total number of transactions submitted without phone numbers.
 - **Phone % Valid** - The Phone Valid total / the Total Trans, formatted as a percentage.
 - **Email Valid** - The total number of valid email addresses for the Total Trans.
 - **Email Invalid** - The total number of invalid email addresses for the Total Trans.
 - **Email None** - The total number of transactions submitted without email addresses.
 - **Email % Valid** - The Email Valid / the Total Trans, formatted as a percentage.

Customer by Home Location Report

This report presents a count of Customers for each Home Location.

This report includes Customer records created by transactions received through an integration. Customer records created through Customer Engagement Cloud Services windows are not included in these totals.

Selection Criteria

- **Location** - A Location in your organization. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location, or select all Locations for the report.
- **Signup Date Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers created during this period on the report rather than entering a Signup Start Date or Signup End Date. Only Customers created by receiving transactions through an integration are included in the totals on the report. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week

- Last Month
- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Signup Start Date and Signup End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Signup Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Signup End Date, are included in the totals. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Signup End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Customer Signup Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Home Location** - The unique numeric identifier for the Location.
- **Location Name** - The Name describing the Location.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers created for the Location through transactions receiving during the date range.
- **Report Totals** - The total number of Customers included on the report.

Shoppers by Location Report

This report presents Customer count and purchase statistics for each Location.

This report includes Customer records created by transactions received through an integration. Customer records created through Customer Engagement Cloud Services windows are not included in these totals.

Selection Criteria

- **Location** - A Location in your organization. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location, or select all Locations for the report.
- **Business Date** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers created during this period on the report rather than entering a Business Start Date or Business End Date. Only Customers created during this time period on transactions received through an integration are included in the totals on the report. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Time Period, the Business Start Date and Business End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Business Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Business End Date, are included in the totals. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Business End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Business Date** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Location** - The ID and Name for a Location.
- **Location Name** - The Name describing the Location.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers created for the Location through transactions received during the date range.
- **Total Spent** - The total extended amount of items and miscellaneous charges for transactions.

- **Number of Transactions** - The total number of separate transactions.
- **Average Purchase** - The Total Spent / the Number of Transactions, presented as a percentage.
- **Percent of Total** - The Total Spent for the Location / the Total Spent for the report, presented as a percentage.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers created for the Locations and date range included on the report.
 - **Total Spent** - The total extended amount of items and miscellaneous charges for transactions included on the report.
 - **Number of Transactions** - The total number of separate transactions included on the report.
 - **Average Purchase** - The Total Spent for the report / the Number of Transactions on the report, presented as a percentage.
 - **Percent of Total** - Set to 100.00%.

Signup Location (Store) by Postal Code Report

This report presents the number of Customers, by date, who signed up at Locations, organized by Postal Code or Zip Code.

If you change a Customer's Signup Location, the Customer is included in the totals for the new Signup Location rather than the original Location, but included in the Date Range for the Customer's original signup date.

Selection Criteria

- **Location ID / Name** - A Location in your organization. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location, or select all Locations for the report.
- **Postal Code** - A postal or Zip code for a Location. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible postal codes, search based on postal code, or select all postal codes for the report.
- **Signup Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were created during this period on the report rather than entering a Signup Start Date or Signup End Date. Only Customers with active primary addresses are included in the totals on the report. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days

- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Signup Time Period, the Signup Start Date and Signup End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Signup Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Signup End Date, are included in the totals. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Signup End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. There is a separate row on the report for each Store and Signup Date.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

 **Note:**

The title listed on the report is Signup Store by Postal Code.

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.
- **Location ID** - The Locations selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.
- **Postal Code** - The Postal or Zip Codes selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Store Name** - The Location ID and the Name of the Location. The first Store Name listed might be blank if there were Customers created without assignment to a Location.
- **Postal Code** - The Postal Code or Zip Code for the Location. Blank if no Postal or ZIP Code is specified for the Location.
- **Signup Date** - The date when one or more Customer records were created with this store specified as the Signup Location.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers created for the Store Location on this Signup Date.
- **Totals for Location** - The total number of Customers created for the Store Location during the date range included on the report.

- **Report Totals** - The total number of Customers created for the Store Locations and date range included on the report.

Signup Location by State Report

This report presents the number of Customers, by the state or province of the Customers' primary addresses, who signed up at the Location.

If you change a Customer's Signup Location, the Customer is included in the totals for the new Signup Location rather than the original Location, but included in the Date Range for the Customer's original signup date.

Selection Criteria

- **Location ID / Name** - A Location in your organization. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location, or select all Locations for the report.
- **State** - The state or province for a Customer's primary address. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible states or provinces, search based on state or province, or select all states or provinces for the report.
- **Signup Date Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were originally created during this period on the report rather than entering a Signup Start Date or Signup End Date.

Only Customers with active primary addresses are included in the totals on the report, regardless of whether the active primary addresses were defined during the date range. For example, a Customer signs up last month, and a primary address for the Customer is identified this month. When the report is run for last month, the state for the Customer's primary address is included in the report totals. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:

- Yesterday
- Last Week
- Last Month
- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Signup Date Period, the Signup Start Date and Signup End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Signup Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Signup End Date, are included in the totals. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Signup End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. There is a separate row on the report for each Store and State.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Sign Up Date Range** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.
- **Location ID** - The Locations selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.
- **State** - The state or provinces selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Sign Up Store** - The unique numeric identifier for the originating Store Location. The first Sign Up Store listed might be blank if there were Customers created without assignment to a Location.
- **Store Name** - The name identifying the originating Store Location.
- **State** - The state or province for one or more Customers' current primary addresses. A blank State might indicate that a Customer's primary address was created without a state or province.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers originating at this Store Location during the date range with active primary addresses in this State.
- **Report Totals** - The total number of Customers created for the Store Locations during the date range included on the report that have active primary addresses.

Signup Location Report

This report presents a list of Customer totals by Signup Location.

If you change a Customer's Signup Location, the Customer is included in the totals for the new Signup Location rather than the original Location, but included in the Date Range for the Customer's original signup date.

Selection Criteria

- **Location ID / Name** - A Location in your organization. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location, or select all Locations for the report.
- **Signup Date Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were originally created during this period on the report rather than entering a Signup Start Date or Signup End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:

- Yesterday
- Last Week
- Last Month
- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Signup Date Period, the Signup Start Date and Signup End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Signup Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Signup End Date, are included in the totals. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Signup End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. There is a separate row on the report for each Signup Location.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Signup Date Period** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.
- **Location** - The Locations selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Signup Location** - The ID and Name identifying an originating Store Location.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers created during the date range and assigned to this Signup Location.
- **Signup Percentage** - The Customer Count for the Signup Location / the Customer Count for the entire report, presented as a percentage.

The Report Totals includes:

- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers created during the date range included on the report.
- **Signup Percentage** - Set to 100.00%.

Signup Location Daily Trend Report

This report presents Customer counts by signup date and Location, and includes a chart depicting the signup trend over the selected date range.



Note:

The chart on this report is useful only if you restrict the selection criteria to a single Location, so you can identify the total signups for these dates for the Location. Otherwise, it might be difficult to determine the totals for the same date but a different Location.

If you change a Customer's Signup Location, the Customer is included in the totals for the new Signup Location rather than the original Location, but included in the Date Range for the Customer's original signup date.

Selection Criteria

- **Location ID / Name** - A Location in your organization. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location, or select all Locations for the report.
- **Signup Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Customers whose records were originally created during this period on the report rather than entering a Signup Start Date or Signup End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select a Signup Time Period, the Signup Start Date and Signup End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Signup Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Customer records created on or after this date, and on or before the Signup End Date, are included in the totals. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Signup End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. There is a separate row on the report for each Signup Location and Signup Date.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

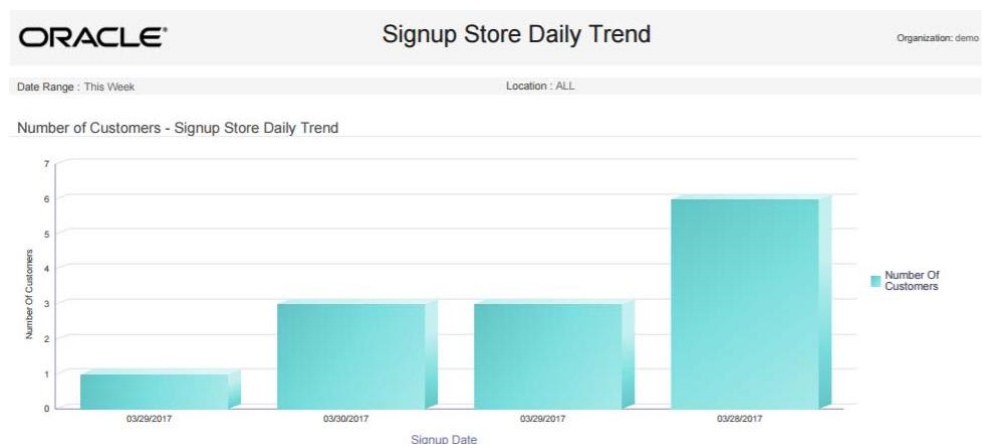
 **Note:**

The title listed on the report is Signup Store Daily Trend.

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected for inclusion on the report.
- **Location** - The Locations selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.
- **Number of Customers** - Signup Store Daily Trend: Displays the total count of new Customers for each date and Location.

Figure 13-13 Signup Store Daily Trend Report - Number of Customers



The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Signup Location** - The Location ID and Name for a Signup Location for one or more Customers. For each Signup Location:
- **Signup Date** - The date when one or more Customer records were created.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers created on that date and assigned to the Signup Location.
- **Totals for Location** - The total number of Customers created during the date range and assigned to the Signup Location.
- **Report Totals** - The total number of Customers created during the date range and included on the report.

Loyalty Management Reports

The Loyalty Management Reports include:

- [Loyalty Account Detail Report](#)
- [Loyalty Account Activity Errors Report](#)
- [Loyalty Account Level Summary Report](#)
- [Loyalty Activity Type Summary Report](#)
- [Loyalty Activity Type Trend Report](#)
- [Loyalty Issue Rule Impact Report](#)
- [Loyalty Rules Results Summary Report](#)
- [Loyalty Rules Results Trend Report](#)
- [Loyalty Account Balance Summary Report](#)
- [Loyalty Account Last Use Summary Report](#)
- [Loyalty Account Life Cycle Summary Report](#)
- [Loyalty Account Activity Summary Award Report](#)
- [Loyalty Account Activity Summary Issue Report](#)
- [Loyalty Program Level Summary Report](#)

Loyalty Account Detail Report

This report presents details of the activities performed for individual Loyalty Accounts.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program ID, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.

- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.

- **Account ID** - Optionally, enter an Account ID to include a specific Loyalty Account on the report based on Account ID. Searching for an Account ID here is not supported.
- **Serial Number** - Optionally, enter a card's Serial Number to include a specific Loyalty Account on the report based on Serial Number. Searching for a Serial Number here is not supported.
- **Void Flag** - Optionally, select Yes or No to select Loyalty Account activity based on whether the activity was voided.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of activity records for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Account ID** - The unique identifier for the account associated with the card.
- **Serial Number** - The unique serial number for the card.
- **Loyalty Program** - The Loyalty Program for the card.
For each activity included for an Account ID, Serial Number, and Loyalty Program:
 - **Activity ID** - A unique identifier for the activity.
 - **Activity Type** - The type of activity performed. Possible types include:
 - Account Merge**
 - Activate Account**
 - Change Level**
 - Deactivate**
 - Issue Award**
 - Issue Points**
 - Point Recovery**
 - **Activity Date** - The date when the activity took place.
 - **Void** - Set to Yes if the activity has been voided.
 - **Escrow Xfer** - Set to Yes if the points are escrowed.
 - **Escrow Xfer Date** - The date, if any, when escrowed points are converted to earned points.
 - **Prog Lvl ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program level.
 - **Prog Lvl Name** - The name describing the Loyalty Program level.
 - **New Prog Lvl ID** - The unique numeric identifier of the new Loyalty Program level assigned, if any.
 - **Loyalty Rule ID** - The unique numeric identifier of the Loyalty rule applied.
 - **Loyalty Rule Name** - The name describing the Loyalty rule.
 - **Business Date** - The business date of the activity.
 - **Location ID** - The unique numeric identifier of the Location where the activity took place.
 - **Sequence ID** - The unique numeric sequence identifier, if any, for the activity.
 - **Comments** - The comments, if any, describing the activity.
 - **Error Codes** - The error codes, if any, associated with the activity.
 - **Register ID** - The unique numeric identifier of the register, if any, where the transaction took place.
 - **Create Date** - The date when the activity record was created.
 - **Create User** - The user ID that created the activity record.
 - **Loyalty Points** - The points earned, awarded, or subtracted through the activity.
- **Totals for Account** - The total net points earned, awarded, or subtracted for the account during the date range included on the report.
- **Report Totals** - The total net points earned, awarded, or subtracted for all activity included on the report.

Loyalty Account Activity Errors Report

This report presents details of errors for Loyalty Accounts by Program ID.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program ID, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Serial Number** - Optionally, enter a card's Serial Number to include a specific Loyalty Account on the report based on Serial Number. Searching for a Serial Number here is not supported.
- **Error Code** - The code identifying the type of error that occurred. All error codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible error codes, search based on error code, or remove error codes from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include errors that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).

Row Limit - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of errors for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Error Code** - The error codes selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.
- **Program ID** - The program IDs selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to ALL.
- **Serial Number** - The serial numbers selected for inclusion on the report; otherwise, set to N/A.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program** - The ID and Name of the Loyalty Program.
- **Acct ID** - The unique identifier for the account associated with the card.
- **Program Level ID** - Name - The ID and Name of the Loyalty Program level.
- **Serial Number** - The unique serial number for the card.
- **Activity ID** - Type - The unique numeric identifier for the type of activity, and the name of the type. Examples of activity types are Activate or Issue Points.
- **Activity Date** - The date when the activity took place.
- **Business Date** - The business date when the activity took place.
- **Create Date** - The date when the activity record was created.
- **Void Flag** - Set to Yes if the transaction was voided.
- **Error Code** - The description of the error that occurred.
- **Comments** - Any comments entered for the activity.
- **Create User** - The user ID that created the activity producing the error.
- **Trans. ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the transaction.
- **Loc. ID** - The unique identifier for the Location where the activity took place.
- **Number of Points** - The number of points associated with the activity.
- **Totals for Account** - The total net points earned, awarded, or subtracted for activities in error for the account during the date range included on the report.
- **Report Totals** - The total net points earned, awarded, or subtracted for activities in error included on the report.

Loyalty Account Level Summary Report

This report presents account level summaries for Loyalty accounts by Program ID.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program ID, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.

- **Program Level ID** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.
- **Account** - Optionally, enter an account number to include a specific Loyalty account on the report. Searching for an account here is not supported.
- **Serial Number** - Optionally, enter a card's Serial Number to include a specific Loyalty Account on the report based on Serial Number. Searching for a Serial Number here is not supported.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include totals for cards created during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of accounts for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Program.
- **Program Name** - The Name describing the Program. For each account included on the report:
- **Program Level** - The unique numeric identifier for the current Program level for the account.
- **Program Level Name** - The Name describing the current Program level for the account.
- **Account ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the account.
- **Serial Number** - The unique serial number for the account.
- **Earned Points Balance** - The current total net earned points balance for the account.
- **Bonus Points Balance** - The current total net bonus points balance for the account.
- **Escrow Points Balance** - The current total net escrow points balance for the account.
- **Program Totals:**
 - **Earned Points Balance** - The current total net earned points balance for the accounts listed on the report for the Program.
 - **Bonus Points Balance** - The current total net bonus points balance for the accounts listed on the report for the Program.
 - **Escrow Points Balance** - The current total net escrow points balance for the accounts listed on the report for the Program.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Earned Points Balance** - The current total net earned points balance for the accounts listed on the report.
 - **Bonus Points Balance** - The current total net bonus points balance for the accounts listed on the report.
 - **Escrow Points Balance** - The current total net escrow points balance for the accounts listed on the report.

Loyalty Activity Type Summary Report

This report presents summary information on accounts and Loyalty activity types associated with Program Levels on Loyalty Programs.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program ID, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.
- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.

- **Activity Type** - The type of activity performed for a Loyalty account. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible types, search based on type, or remove types from the list selected for the report. Possible Activity Types are:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Award
 - Balance Transfer
 - Change Earn Date
 - Change Level
 - Deactivate Card
 - Earn Points
 - Expire Points - Inquiry
 - Point Recovery
 - Reset Expiration Date - Return
 - Sustain Extension
 - Void Transaction
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include totals for activities performed during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).

- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of activities performed across all Programs and Levels included on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Program.
- **Program Name** - The Name describing the Program.
- For each activity type and Level included on the report:
 - **Program Level ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Program Level.
 - **Program Level Name** - The Name describing the Program Level.
- **Activity Type** - The type of activity performed. Possible activity types include:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Award
 - Balance Transfer
 - Change Earn Date
 - Deactivate Card
 - Earn Points
 - Expire Points
 - Inquiry
 - Issue
 - Point Recovery
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Return
 - Sustain Extension
 - Void Transaction
- **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts that had this type of activity for the Program Level during the date range.
- **Number of Points** - The total number of points for the activity type. Can be a negative number, such as for an award, or can be 0.00, such as for an inquiry.
- **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Program Totals:**

- **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts that had this type of activity for all Program Levels
- **Number of Points** - The total number of points for all included activities for the Program.
- **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts included on the report.
 - **Number of Points** - The total number of points for all activities included on the report.
 - **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.

Loyalty Activity Type Trend Report

This report presents summary information on Accounts by Activity Type by business date, organized by Loyalty Program Level.

The report begins with three charts summarizing loyalty activity. One chart displays total activity counts for each date in the selected time period, another displays the number of points involved in the activities for each date, and the third displays average points for each date.



Note:

The charts on this report are useful only if you restrict the selection criteria to a single Program ID, Program Level ID, and Activity Type, so you can identify the totals for the type of activity. Otherwise, it would be difficult to determine the different totals for the same date but a different Program ID, Program Level ID, and Activity Type.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program for a Card Definition. All Loyalty Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Loyalty Programs, search based on Loyalty Program Name, or remove Loyalty Programs from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.
- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Type** - Codes identifying types of activity for a Loyalty account. All activity types are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Activity Types, search based on Activity Type, or remove Activity Types from the list selected for the report. Possible Activity Types are:
 - Account Merge

- Activate Card
- Award
- Balance Transfer
- Change Earn Date
- Change Level
- Deactivate Card
- Earn Points
- Expire Points - Inquiry
- Point Recovery
- Reset Expiration Date - Return
- Sustain Extension
- Void Transaction
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of records by Business Date, Program Level, Activity Type, and Activity Date for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Program ID** - The numeric ID for a Loyalty Program selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program Level** - The numeric ID for a Loyalty Level selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Activity Type** - The Activity Types selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Number of Accounts Chart** - Displays the total number of Loyalty accounts for which there was activity for each date.

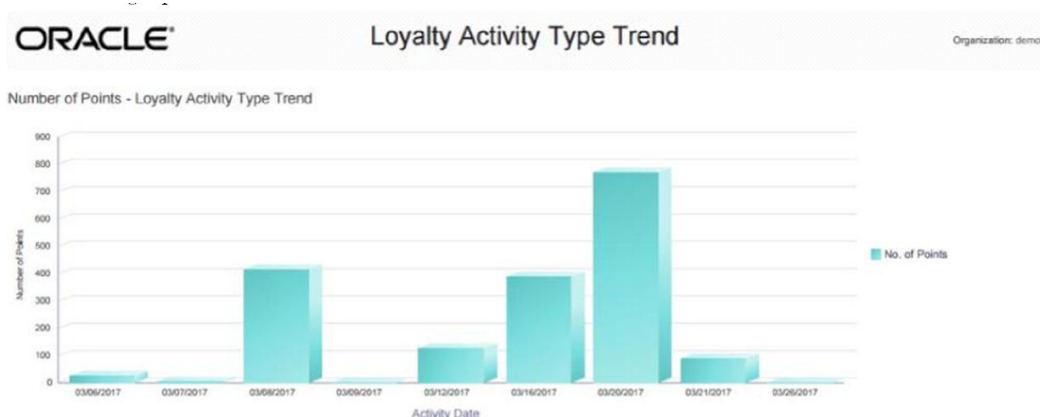
Figure 13-14 Loyalty Activity Type Trend Report - Number of Accounts Chart



- **Number of Points Chart** - Displays the total number of points involved in activities for each date.

Negative numbers are presented as absolute values. For example, if the Activity Type is Award, and the amount of Points deducted is 500, the number of points depicted on this graph is 500 rather than -500.

Figure 13-15 Loyalty Activity Type Trend Report - Number of Points Chart



- **Average Points Chart** - Displays the average number of points involved in activities for each date.

Negative numbers are presented as absolute values. For example, if the Activity Type is Award, and the average amount of Points deducted is 100, the average amount of points depicted on this graph is 100 rather than -100.

Figure 13-16 Loyalty Activity Type Trend Report - Average Points Chart



The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program.

For each activity type and Level included on the report:

- **Program Level ID - Name** - The unique numeric identifier for the Program Level, and the Name describing the Program Level.
- **Activity Type** - The type of activity performed. Possible activity types include:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Award
 - Balance Transfer

- Change Earn Date
- Deactivate Card
- Earn Points
- Expire Points
- Inquiry
- Issue
- Point Recovery
- Reset Expiration Date
- Return
- Sustain Extension
- Void Transaction
- **Business Date** - The business date when the activity type occurred for the Loyalty Program and Level.
- **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts that had this type of activity for the Program Level on this date.
- **Number of Points** - The total number of points for the activity type on this date. A negative number, such as for an award, is expressed as an absolute value.
- **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Activity Type:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts that had this type of activity for the Program Level during this date range.
 - **Number of Points** - The total number of points for the activity type for this Program Level during this date range. A negative number, such as for an award, is expressed as an absolute value.
 - **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Program Level:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts that had activity for the Program Level during this date range.
 - **Number of Points** - The total number of points for this Program Level during this date range. A negative number, such as for an award, is expressed as an absolute value.
 - **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Program:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts that had activity for the Program.
 - **Number of Points** - The total number of points for all included activities for the Program.
 - **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts included on the report.

- **Number of Points** - The total number of points for all activities included on the report. Calculated by adding absolute values.
- **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.

Loyalty Issue Rule Impact Report

This report displays transaction level counts of merchandise associated with purchases against a Loyalty Issue Rule.

Selection Criteria

- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Loyalty Rule ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Loyalty Rule IDs as needed.

- **Loyalty Rule ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Rule that controls issuing points for a Loyalty Level. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Rules, search based on Rule ID and Name, or remove Rules from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).

- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of transactions that triggered the application of a Rule included on the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Program Level ID** - The numeric IDs for Loyalty Levels selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Loyalty Rule ID** - The numeric IDs for Rules selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program Level ID** - The unique identifier for a Loyalty Program Level.
- **Loyalty Rule ID - Description** - The unique identifier for a Loyalty Rule that controls issuing points, and the Description of the Rule.
- **Item Dept ID** - The unique identifier for the Department associated with the Item on the transaction.
- **Item Class ID** - The unique identifier of the Item Class that further defines the Item on the transaction.
- **RTL Trans ID** - A unique identifier for the retail transaction, referencing the Location and Workstation as well as the transaction sequence number.
- **Number of Accounts** - The number of Accounts associated with the transaction ID. Typically set to 1.
- **Transaction Count** - The number of transactions associated with the transaction ID. Typically set to 1.
- **Item Extended Amount** - The extended selling price of the items on the transaction.
- **Totals for Rule:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The number of Accounts associated with the transactions where the Rule was applied.
 - **Transaction Count** - The number of transactions where the Rule was applied.
 - **Item Extended Amount** - The total extended selling price of the items on the transactions.
- **Totals for Program Level ID:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The number of Accounts associated with the transactions where a Rule for the Program Level was applied. If an Account was associated with multiple transactions for the Program, it is included for each transaction.
 - **Transaction Count** - The number of transactions where a Rule for the Program was applied.

- **Item Extended Amount** - The total extended selling price of the items on the transactions.
- Report Total:
 - **Number of Accounts** - The number of Accounts for all transactions included on the report. If an Account was associated with multiple transactions on the report, it is included for each transaction.
 - **Transaction Count** - The number of transactions included on the report.
 - **Item Extended Amount** - The total extended selling price of the items on the transactions.

Loyalty Rules Results Summary Report

This reports displays summary account information by Activity Type for each Loyalty Rule. It is organized by Program levels within the Loyalty Programs

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program for a Card Definition. All Loyalty Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Loyalty Programs, search based on Loyalty Program Name, or remove Loyalty Programs from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.
- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.
- **Rule ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Rule that controls issuing points for a Loyalty Level. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Rules, search based on Rule ID and Name, or remove Rules from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of activity types that triggered the application of a Rule included on the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program.
- **Program Name** - The Name describing the Loyalty Program.
- **Program Level ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program Level.
- **Program Level Name** - The name describing the Loyalty Program Level.
- **Loyalty Rule ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program Rule.
- **Loyalty Rule Name** - The name describing the Loyalty Program Rule.
- **Activity Type** - The type of activity that triggered the application of the Rule.
- **Number Of Accounts** - The number of Accounts for which the Rule was applied for the Activity Type.
- **Number of Points** - The total number of points applied through the Rule.
- **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Program Totals:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The number of Accounts for which the Rule was applied for the Program.
 - **Number Of Points** - The total number of points applied for the Program.
 - **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The number of Accounts for all activities included on the report.
 - **Number Of Points** - The number of points for all Accounts and activities included on the report.

- **Average Points** - The total Number of Points / the total Number of Accounts.

Loyalty Rules Results Trend Report

This report presents summary information on accounts by Activity Type by Activity Date for each Loyalty Rule. It is organized by Loyalty Program Level for each Loyalty Program.

The report begins with three charts illustrating loyalty rules results activity. One chart displays total number of accounts with rules activity for each date in the selected time period, another displays the number of points involved in the rules results activities for each date, and the third displays average points used for rules results for each date.

Note:

The charts on this report are useful only if you restrict the selection criteria to a single Program ID, Program Level ID, and Activity Type, so you can identify the totals for the type of activity. Otherwise, it would be difficult to determine the different totals for the same date but a different Program ID, Program Level ID, and Activity Type.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program for a Card Definition. All Loyalty Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Loyalty Programs, search based on Loyalty Program Name, or remove Loyalty Programs from the list selected for the report.
After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.
- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Type** - Codes identifying types of activity for a Loyalty account. All activity types are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Activity Types, search based on Activity Type, or remove Activity Types from the list selected for the report. Possible Activity Types are:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Award
 - Balance Transfer
 - Change Earn Date
 - Change Level
 - Deactivate Card
 - Earn Points
 - Expire Points
 - Inquiry

- Issue
- Point Recovery
- Reset Expiration Date - Return
- Sustain Extension
- Void Transaction
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of rules applied for all Program Levels, Activity Types, and Activity Dates for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Program** - The numeric ID for a Loyalty Program selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program Level** - The numeric ID for a Loyalty Level selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

- **Activity Type** - The Activity Types selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Number of Accounts Chart** - Displays the total number of Loyalty accounts for which rules were applied for each date.

Figure 13-17 Loyalty Rules Results Trend Report - Number of Accounts Chart



- **Number of Points Chart** - Displays the total number of points involved in rules results for each date.

Negative numbers are presented as absolute values. For example, if the Activity Type is Award, and the amount of Points deducted is 500, the number of points depicted on this graph is 500 rather than -500.

Figure 13-18 Loyalty Rules Results Trend Report - Number of Points Chart



- **Average Points Chart** - Displays the average number of points involved in rules results for each date.

Negative numbers are presented as absolute values. For example, if the Activity Type is Award, and the average amount of Points deducted is 100, the average amount of points depicted on this graph is 100 rather than -100.

Figure 13-19 Loyalty Rules Results Trend Report - Average Points Chart



The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program.

For each Program Level:

- **Program Level ID** - Name - The unique numeric identifier for the Program Level, and the Name describing the Level.
- **Loyalty Rule ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Rule.
- **Description** - The name describing the Rule.
- **Activity Type** - The activity associated with the rule result. Possible Activity Types are:
 - Account Merge
 - Activate Card
 - Award
 - Balance Transfer
 - Change Earn Date
 - Change Level
 - Deactivate Card
 - Earn Points
 - Expire Points
 - Inquiry
 - Issue
 - Point Recovery
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Return
 - Sustain Extension
 - Void Transaction
- **Activity Date** - The date when the activities took place.

- **Number of Accounts** - The number of Accounts involved in the rule results for the date, activity, and rule.
- **Number of Points** - The net total number of points involved in the rule results for the date, activity, and rule. Expressed as an absolute value.
- **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Rule:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The number of Accounts involved in rule results for the rule.
 - **Number of Points** - The number of points involved in rule results for the rule.
 - **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Program Level:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The number of Accounts involved in rule results for the Program Level.
 - **Number of Points** - The number of points involved in rule results for the Program Level.
 - **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Program:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The number of Accounts involved in rule results for the Program.
 - **Number of Points** - The number of points involved in rule results for the Program.
 - **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of Accounts involved in rule results on the report.
 - **Number of Points** - The total number of points involved in rule results on the report.
 - **Average Points** - The Number of Points / the Number of Accounts.

An account can be included in the Number of Accounts totals more than once if, for example, multiple rules were applied for the account during the date range on the report.

Loyalty Account Balance Summary Report

This report presents summary information about the Loyalty Account balances, by Program Level, within each Program.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program for a Card Definition. All Loyalty Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Loyalty Programs, search based on Loyalty Program Name, or remove Loyalty Programs from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.

- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Loyalty Cards generated during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program.
- **Program Level ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program Level.
- **Program Level Name** - The Name describing the Loyalty Program Level.
- **Balance Range** - The range of balance totals categorizing the Loyalty Accounts for all generated Cards, including Cards not yet activated and Cards that have been activated and then deactivated. Possible ranges are:

- **Balance Less Than 0** - Includes Accounts with negative balances.
- **Balance Equals 0** - Includes Accounts whose balances are exactly 0.00.
- **Balance Greater Than .01** - Includes Accounts whose balances are greater than 0.00, including Accounts with balances of .01.
- **Rolled-Up Earned Points Balance** - The total points balance for all Accounts included in the Balance Range.
- **Number Of Accounts** - The total number of Loyalty Accounts for all generated Cards in the Balance Range, including Cards not yet activated and Cards that have been activated and then deactivated.
- **Totals for Program Level:**
 - **Rolled-Up Earned Points Balance** - The total points balance for all Accounts for the Level.
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of Loyalty Accounts for all generated Cards for the Program Level, including Cards not yet activated and Cards that have been activated and then deactivated.
- **Totals for Program:**
 - **Rolled-Up Earned Points Balance** - The total points balance for all Accounts for the Program.
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of Loyalty Accounts for all generated Cards for the Program, including Cards not yet activated and Cards that have been deactivated.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Rolled-Up Earned Points Balance** - The total points balance for all Accounts included in the totals on the report.
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of Loyalty Accounts for all generated Cards included in the totals on the report.

Loyalty Account Last Use Summary Report

This report presents Loyalty Account summary information within Loyalty Program Level, grouped by the number of months since last use date.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program for a Card Definition. All Loyalty Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Loyalty Programs, search based on Loyalty Program Name, or remove Loyalty Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Loyalty Cards generated during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week

- Last Month
- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program.
- **Program Level ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program Level.
- **Program Level Name** - The Name describing the Loyalty Program Level.
- **Last Use Interval** - The range of dates when there was most recently any activity for the Accounts. Possible intervals are:
 - Less Than 30 Days - Includes Cards that have not yet been activated.
 - 31 to 60 Days
 - 61 to 90 Days
 - Over 90 Days - Includes Cards that have been deactivated.
 - Never Used
- **Number Of Accounts** - The total number of Loyalty Accounts for all generated Cards for this Level in the Last Use Interval, including Cards not yet activated and Cards that have been deactivated.

- **Earned Points Balance** - The total points balance for all Accounts included in the Last Use Interval.
- **Average Earned Points Balance** - The Earned Points Balance / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Program Level:**
 - **Number Of Accounts** - The total number of Loyalty Accounts for all generated Cards in the Program Level, including Cards not yet activated and Cards that have been deactivated.
 - **Earned Points Balance** - The total points balance for all Accounts for the Program Level.
 - **Average Earned Points Balance** - The Earned Points Balance / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Program:**
 - **Number Of Accounts** - The total number of Loyalty Accounts for all generated Cards in the Program, including Cards not yet activated and Cards that have been deactivated.
 - **Earned Points Balance** - The total points balance for all Accounts for the Program.
 - **Average Earned Points Balance** - The Earned Points Balance / the Number of Accounts.
- Report Totals:
 - **Number Of Accounts** - The total number of Loyalty Accounts for all generated Cards included in the report totals.
 - **Earned Points Balance** - The total points balance for all Accounts included in the report totals.
 - **Average Earned Points Balance** - The Earned Points Balance / the Number of Accounts.

Loyalty Account Life Cycle Summary Report

This report presents summary information within a Loyalty Program Level, grouped by the number of months that the Accounts have been in use.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program for a Card Definition. All Loyalty Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Loyalty Programs, search based on Loyalty Program Name, or remove Loyalty Programs from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.
- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Loyalty Cards with activity or transactions during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:

- Yesterday
- Last Week
- Last Month
- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of Activation Intervals for all Programs and Program Levels for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program.
- **Program Level ID** - Name - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program Level, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program Level.
- **Activation Interval** - The time frame when the accounts were created. Possible time frames are:
 - Less Than 30 Days
 - 31 to 60 Days
 - 61 to 90 Days
 - Over 90 Days

- **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts for the Level and Activation Interval that have been activated. Includes accounts that have been activated and then deactivated.
- **Earned Points Balance** - The total balance of points for the accounts.
- **Average Earned Points Balance** - The Earned Points Balance / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Program Level:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts for the Program Level that have been activated. Includes accounts that have been activated and then deactivated.
 - **Earned Points Balance** - The total number of points for the accounts.
 - **Average Earned Points Balance** - The Earned Points Balance / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Program:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts for the Program that have been activated. Includes accounts that have been activated and then deactivated.
 - **Earned Points Balance** - The total number of points for the accounts.
 - **Average Earned Points Balance** - The Earned Points Balance / the Number of Accounts.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of accounts included on the report that have been activated. Includes accounts that have been activated and then deactivated.
 - **Earned Points Balance** - The total number of points for the accounts.
 - **Average Earned Points Balance** - The Earned Points Balance / the Number of Accounts.

Loyalty Account Activity Summary Award Report

This report presents the earned points from Award rules, or paid points for Awards, by Loyalty Account, within a given period of time.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program for a Card Definition. All Loyalty Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Loyalty Programs, search based on Loyalty Program Name, or remove Loyalty Programs from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.
- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Loyalty Cards with award transaction dates during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:

- Yesterday
- Last Week
- Last Month
- Last Year
- Last 30 Days
- Last 60 Days
- Last 90 Days
- This Week
- This Month
- This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of Account IDs for all Programs and Program Levels for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Program ID** - The numeric ID for the Loyalty Programs selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program Level** - The numeric ID for the Loyalty Levels selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program.
- **Program Level ID** - Name - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program Level, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program Level.
- **Account ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the account.
- **Earned Points** - The current total earned points balance for the account during the activity period, net of points used for awards.

- **Totals for Program Level** - The total Earned Points for the Program Level during the activity period.
- **Totals for Program** - The total Earned Points included on the report for the Program during the activity period.
- **Report Totals** - The total Earned Points included on the report for the activity period.

Loyalty Account Activity Summary Issue Report


This report presents the earned points from Issue rules, by Loyalty Account, within a given period of time.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program for a Card Definition. All Loyalty Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Loyalty Programs, search based on Loyalty Program Name, or remove Loyalty Programs from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.

- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Loyalty Cards with issue transaction dates during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).

- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of Account IDs for all Programs and Program Levels for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Program ID** - The numeric ID for the Loyalty Programs selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program Level** - The numeric ID for the Loyalty Levels selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID - Name** - The unique identifier for the Loyalty Program, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program.
- **Program Level ID - Name** - The unique identifier for the Loyalty Program Level, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program Level.
- **Account ID** - The unique numeric identifier for an account associated with any issue activity.
- **Activity Type** - Set to Issue.
- **Earned Points** - The total points issued for the account for the date range. Not net of points used for level changes or awards.
- **Totals for Program Level** - The total Earned Points for the Program Level for the date range. Not net of points used for level changes or awards.
- **Totals for Program** - The total Earned Points included on the report for the Program for the date range. Not net of points used for level changes or awards.
- **Report Totals** - The total Earned Points included on the report. Not net of points used for level changes or awards.

Loyalty Program Level Summary Report

This report presents the current balance statistics for Program Levels within Programs.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Loyalty Program for a Card Definition. All Loyalty Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Loyalty Programs, search based on Loyalty Program Name, or remove Loyalty Programs from the list selected for the report.

After you make a Program ID / Name selection, clear the Program Level ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.

- **Program Level ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Level for a Loyalty Program. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Levels, search based on Level ID and Name, or remove Levels from the list selected for the report.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Loyalty Cards that were generated during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of Program Levels for all Programs for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program** - The unique identifier for the Loyalty Program, and the Name describing the Loyalty Program.
- **Program Level ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Loyalty Program Level.
- **Program Level Name** - The Name describing the Loyalty Program Level.

- **Number of Accounts** - The total number of cards generated during the date range that are currently at this Program Level.
- **Total Earned Point Balance** - The total current net earned points for all accounts generated during the date range that are currently at this Program Level.
- **Total Bonus Point Balance** - The total current net bonus points applied for all accounts generated during the date range that are currently at this Program Level.
- **Total Escrow Point Balance** - The total current net escrow points for all accounts generated during the date range that are currently at this Program Level.
- **Average Earned Balance** - The Total Earned Point Balance / the Number of Accounts.
- **Average Bonus Balance** - The Total Bonus Point Balance / the Number of Accounts.
- **Average Escrow Balance** - The Total Escrow Point Balance / the Number of Accounts.
- **Totals for Program:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of cards generated during the date range for the Program.
 - **Total Earned Point Balance** - The total current net earned points for all accounts generated during the date range for the Program.
 - **Total Bonus Point Balance** - The total current net bonus points applied for all accounts generated during the date range for the Program.
 - **Total Escrow Point Balance** - The total current net escrow points for all accounts generated during the date range for the Program.
 - **Average Earned Balance** - The Total Earned Point Balance / the Number of Accounts.
 - **Average Bonus Balance** - The Total Bonus Point Balance / the Number of Accounts.
 - **Average Escrow Balance** - The Total Escrow Point Balance / the Number of Accounts.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Number of Accounts** - The total number of cards included on the report.
 - **Total Earned Point Balance** - The total current net earned points for all accounts included on the report.
 - **Total Bonus Point Balance** - The total current net bonus points applied for all accounts included on the report.
 - **Total Escrow Point Balance** - The total current net escrow points for all accounts included on the report.
 - **Average Earned Balance** - The Total Earned Point Balance / the Number of Accounts.
 - **Average Bonus Balance** - The Total Bonus Point Balance / the Number of Accounts.
 - **Average Escrow Balance** - The Total Escrow Point Balance / the Number of Accounts.

Segment Management Reports

The Segment Management Reports include:

- [N-Tile / Range Strata Report](#)
- [Segment by Home Location Report](#)
- [Segment by State Report](#)
- [Segment Count List Report](#)
- [Segment Customer Master Report](#)
- [Segment Purchase Profile Report](#)
- [Segment Trend Analysis Report](#)

N-Tile / Range Strata Report

This report presents details on Customer Segments broken out by strata.

Selection Criteria

- **Segment ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Customer Segment. All eligible Segments are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Segments, search based on Segment Name, or remove Segments from the list selected for the report. Only Public Stratified Segments with a Customer Count > 0 are eligible for selection.
- **Save List Flag** - Optionally, select Yes or No to have the report include Segments based on whether the Save as List flag was selected at Segment creation. Set to All by default.
- **Trended Flag** - Optionally, select Yes or No to have the report include Segments based on whether the Trend Results? flag was selected at Segment creation.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Segments run during this period on the report rather than entering a Start Segment Run Date or End Segment Run Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Start Segment Run Date and End Segment Run Date criteria are ignored.

- **Start Segment Run Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **End Segment Run Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of levels for all runs of all Segment Strata for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Segment ID** - The numeric ID for the Segments selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Save List Flag** - Indicates if a Save List Flag setting of Yes or No was selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Trended Flag** - Indicates if a Trended Flag setting of Yes or No was selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Segment** - The unique numeric identifier for the Segment and the Name describing the Segment.
- **Run ID** - The unique numeric identifier for a run of the Segment. Each Run is numbered sequentially, starting with a Run ID of 0.
- **Strata Type** - Either Range Strata or N-Tile.
- **Segment Count** - The number of Customer records included in the Segment.
- **Strata Level ID - Name** - The unique numeric identifier of the stratum and the Name describing the stratum.
- **Save List Flag and Trended Flag** - Indicates the settings of the Save as List flag and the Trend Results? flag specified at Segment creation.
- **Min Value and Max Value** - Depending on whether this is an N-Tile or Range Strata Segment:
 - **N-Tile** - The minimum and maximum values determined by the system when splitting the Segment into strata.
 - **Range Strata** - The Range From and Range To values specified when the Segment was created.

For example, if the Segment is stratified based on Annual Income, these are the minimum and maximum Annual Income totals qualifying Customers for assignment to this stratum.

- **Percent Total** - The percentage of the Segment Count that consists of the Customers in this stratum: Stratified Customer Count / Segment Count, presented as a percentage.
- **Run Date** - The date when the Run took place.
- **Stratified Customer Count** - The total number of Customer records in the stratum.
- **Totals for Run** - The total Segment Count for the Run included on the report.
- **Totals for Segment** - The total Segment Count included on the report.
- **Report Totals** - The total Segment Count for all Segments included on the report.

Segment by Home Location Report

This report presents a count of Customers, by their Home Locations, for Customer Segments.

Customers who are not assigned to a Home Location are not included in the totals on the report.

Selection Criteria

- **Segment ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Customer Segment. All eligible Segments are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Segments, search based on Segment Name, or remove Segments from the list selected for the report. Only Segments that have at least one Customer with an address are eligible for selection.
- **Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Segments run during this period on the report rather than entering a Start Segment Run Date or End Segment Run Date. For manual Segments, the time period applies to when the Customers were added to the Segments. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Start Segment Run Date and End Segment Run Date criteria are ignored.

- **Start Segment Run Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **End Segment Run Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of home location/segment combinations for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Segment Name** - The numeric ID for the Segments selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Segment ID - Name** - The unique numeric identifier for the Segment and the Name describing the Segment.
- **Home Location** - The Home Location specified for any Customers in the Segment, prefixed by Store Location.
- **Location Name** - The Name describing the Home Location.
- **Customer Count** - The number of Customers assigned to this Home Location for the Segment.
- **Totals for Segment** - The total number of Customers in the Segment assigned to Home Locations.
- **Report Totals** - The total Customer Count for all Segments included on the report.

Segment by State Report

This report presents a count of Customers, by the states or provinces for each primary or non-primary address, for each Customer Segment.

Customers who are not assigned to any address are not included in the totals on the report.

Selection Criteria

- **Segment ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Customer Segment. All eligible Segments are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with

the list of eligible Segments, search based on Segment Name, or remove Segments from the list selected for the report. Only Segments that have at least one Customer with an address are eligible for selection.

- **Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Segments run during this period on the report rather than entering a Start Segment Run Date or End Segment Run Date. For manual Segments, the time period applies to when the Customers were added to the Segments. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Start Segment Run Date and End Segment Run Date criteria are ignored.

- **Start Segment Run Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **End Segment Run Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of states or provinces for all Segments for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Segment Name** - The numeric ID for the Segments selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Segment ID - Name** - The unique numeric identifier of the Segment and the Name describing the Segment.

- **State** - The name of the state or province where Customers in the Segment have addresses.
- **Customer Count** - The number of Customer addresses in this state for the Segment. Includes both primary and non-primary addresses.
- **Totals for Segment** - The total number of Customer addresses for the Segment.
- **Report Totals** - The total Customer Count for all Segments included on the report.

Segment Count List Report

This report presents the details of each Segment run within a specified time period.

Stratified and unstratified Segments that have not been run during the selected time period are not included on the report.

Selection Criteria

- **Segment ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Customer Segment. All eligible Segments are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Segments, search based on Segment Name, or remove Segments from the list selected for the report. Only Segments that have at least one Customer with an address are eligible for selection.
- **Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Segments run during this period on the report rather than entering a Start Segment Run Date or End Segment Run Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Start Segment Run Date and End Segment Run Date criteria are ignored.

- **Start Segment Run Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **End Segment Run Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Segment ID** - The numeric ID for the Segments selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Segment ID - Name** - The unique numeric identifier for the Segment and the Name describing the Segment.
- **Save List Option** - Indicates the settings of the Save as List flag specified at Segment creation.
- **Trended Flag** - Indicates the settings of the Trend Results? flag specified at Segment creation.
- **Last Run Date** - The last date when the Segment was run. Set to N/A for manual Segments.
- **Run Count** - The number of times when a segment was run. This count does not apply for a manual Segment, although a Run Count might be listed.
- **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers in the Segment.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Run Count** - The total Run Count for all Segments listed on the report.
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers in all Segments listed on the report.

Segment Customer Master Report

This report presents a listing of information about the Customers in each Segment. Only Customers that have primary email, phone, and mailing addresses are included on the report.

Selection Criteria

- **Segment ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Customer Segment. All Segments that include at least one Customer are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of Segments, search based on Segment Name, or remove Segments from the list selected for the report. Only Segments that have at least one Customer are eligible for selection.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of Customers for all Segments for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Segment ID** - The numeric ID for the Segments selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Segment ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Segment and the Name describing the Segment.
- **Run ID** - This field is not currently implemented.
- **Cust ID** - Name - The unique numeric identifier for the Customer, and the Customer's first and last name.
- **Gender** - The Customer's gender, if known; otherwise, set to N/A.
- **Active Flag** - Set to Yes unless the Customer has been flagged as inactive.
- **Street, City, State** - The street address, city, and state or province for the Customer's primary mailing address.
- **Postal Code** - The postal or Zip code for the Customer's primary mailing address.
- **Phone Number** - The Customer's primary phone number.
- **Email** - The Customer's primary email address.
- **Home Location** - The unique numeric code for the Customer's Home Location, if any.
- **Birth Date** - The Customer's birth date, if known.
- **SignUp Date** - The date when the Customer record was created.
- **First Trans Date** - The date of the Customer's first recorded transaction, if any; otherwise, set to N/A.
- **Last Trans Date** - The date of the Customer's most recently recorded transaction, if any; otherwise, set to N/A.
- **Total Return Item Count Dollars** - The total extended merchandise value of returned items from the Customer's transaction history. Rounded to the nearest whole number.
- **Total Sale Item Count Dollars** - The total extended merchandise value of sold items from the Customer's transaction history. Rounded to the nearest whole number.
- **Total Trans Count** - The total number of individual transactions from the Customer's transaction history. Each transaction can include multiple items.
- **Total Profit Percent** - The total Sale Item Count Dollars - the total extended Unit Cost of the items on the transactions / the total Sale Item Count Dollars. Presented as a percentage with a two-position decimal.
- **YTD Return Item Count Dollars** - The total extended merchandise value of returned items for the Customer's transactions during the current year. Rounded to the nearest whole number.
- **YTD Sale Item Count Dollars** - The total extended merchandise value of sold items from the Customer's transactions during the current year. Rounded to the nearest whole number.

- **YTD Profit Percent** - The total YTD Sale Item Count Dollars - the total extended unit cost of the items on the transactions / the total YTD Sale Item count Dollars. Presented as a percentage with a two-position decimal.

Segment Purchase Profile Report

This report presents counts, by Segment, of individual items purchased.

Segments that have not had purchases during the selected time period are not included on the report.

Selection Criteria

- **Segment ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Customer Segment. All eligible Segments are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Segments, search based on Segment Name, or remove Segments from the list selected for the report.
- **Purchase Activity Time Period** - This criterion is not implemented for this report. All purchases for the selected Segment are eligible for inclusion, regardless of activity date.
- **Purchase Activity Start Date** - This criterion is not implemented for this report.
- **Purchase Activity End Date** - This criterion is not implemented for this report.
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of items for all Segments for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Segment ID** - The numeric ID for the Segments selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Segment ID - Name** - The unique numeric identifier of the Segment and the Name describing the Segment.
- **Item Class** - The code identifying the Class for the item.
- **Item Sub Class** - The code identifying the Sub Class for the item.
- **Item ID** - The unique identifier for the item.
- **Item Description** - The description of the item.
- **Customer Count** - The number of Customers within the Segment that purchased the item.
- **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions in which Customers in the Segment purchased the item.
- **Item Quantity** - The total quantity of the item purchased by Customers in the Segment.

- **Item Extended Amount** - The total extended amount paid for all units of the item sold to Customers in the Segment.
- **Units per Transaction** - The average number of units of the item purchased in a transaction by a Customer in the Segment.
- **Totals for Item Class:**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers within the Segment that purchased any items in the Item Class.
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions in which Customers in the Segment purchased items in the Item Class.
 - **Item Quantity** - The total quantity of items in the Item Class purchased by Customers in the Segment.
 - **Item Extended Amount** - The total extended amount paid for all items in the Item Class sold to Customers in the Segment.
 - **Units per Transaction** - The average number of units in the Item Class purchased in a transaction by a Customer in the Segment. Rounded to the nearest whole number.
- **Totals for Segment:**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers within the Segment that purchased any items.
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions in which Customers in the Segment purchased items.
 - **Item Quantity** - The total quantity of items purchased by Customers in the Segment.
 - **Item Extended Amount** - The total extended amount paid for all items sold to Customers in the Segment.
 - **Units per Transaction** - The average number of units in purchased in a transaction by a Customer in the Segment. Rounded to the nearest whole number.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Customer Count** - The total number of Customers included on the report.
 - **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions included on the report.
 - **Item Quantity** - The total quantity of purchased items included on the report.
 - **Item Extended Amount** - The total extended amount paid for all items included on the report.
 - **Units per Transaction** - The average number of units purchased in a transaction. Rounded to the nearest whole number.

Segment Trend Analysis Report

This report presents trend totals for Customer Segments broken out by Run ID.

The report includes two charts illustrating trend totals for Customer Segments. One chart displays total Customer counts for each Run ID for a Segment, while the other displays total Customer counts for the strata within a Segment.

 **Note:**

The charts on this report are useful only if you restrict the selection criteria to a single Customer Segment, so you can identify the totals for the Segment Run IDs and strata. Otherwise, it would be difficult to determine the different totals for multiple Customer Segments.

Selection Criteria

- **Segment ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Customer Segment. All eligible Segments are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Segments, search based on Segment Name, or remove Segments from the list selected for the report. Only Stratified Segments that have Trend Results? selected and have a Customer Count > 0 are eligible for selection.
- **Save List Flag** - Optionally, select Yes or No to have the report include Segments based on whether the Save as List flag was selected at Segment creation. Set to All by default.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Segments run during this period on the report rather than entering a Start Segment Run Date or End Segment Run Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Start Segment Run Date and End Segment Run Date criteria are ignored.

- **Start Segment Run Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **End Segment Run Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of Run IDs for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

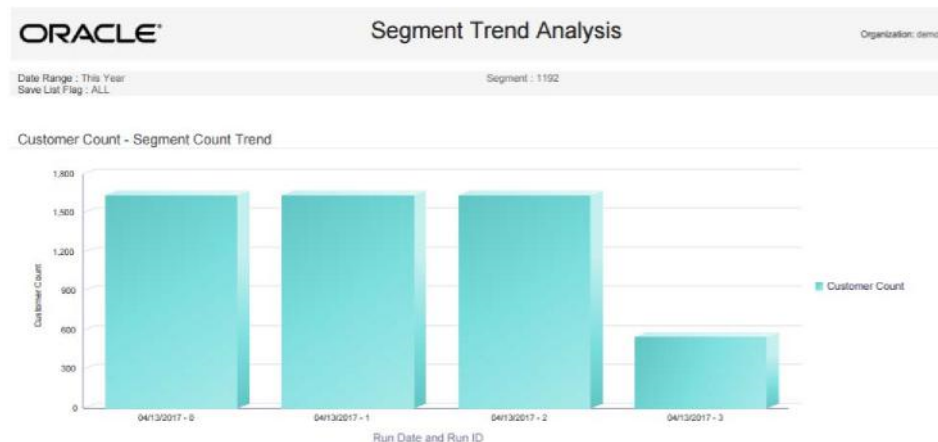
The report does not include any content for Customer Segments that do not have the Save as List flag selected.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Segment ID** - The numeric ID for the Segments selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Save List Flag** - Indicates if a Save List Flag setting of Yes or No was selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Customer Count** - Segment Count Trend Chart - Displays the total number of Customers included in the Segment for each Run ID. The date and Run ID are indicated as shown in [Figure 13-20](#).

Figure 13-20 Segment Trend Analysis Report - Customer Count - Segment Count Trend Chart



An additional chart follows the Detail Information for the Segment Count Trend chart.

The Segment Count Trend chart detail information includes:

- **Segment ID - Name** - The unique numeric identifier for and the Name describing the Segment.

For each Run ID:

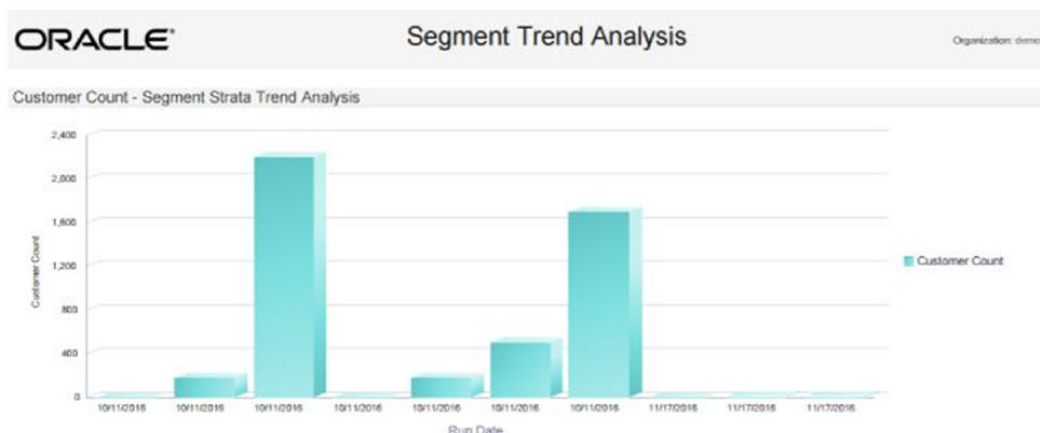
- **Save List Flag** - The setting of the Save List flag for the Segment. Always set to Yes for all Run IDs. The report does not include any data for a Segment that does not have the Save List flag selected.
- **Run ID** - A sequence number identifying the Run for the Segment. Each Run is numbered sequentially, starting with a Run ID of 0.
- **Run Date** - The date when the Run was generated.
- **Customer Count** - The number of Customers in the Segment after processing the Run.

- **Totals for Segment** - The total number of Customers for all Runs.
- **Report Totals** - The total number of Customers for all Runs of all Segments included on the report.

An additional chart follows this detail information.

- **Customer Count** - Segment Strata Trend Analysis Chart - Displays the total number of Customers included in each stratum for the Segment for each Run ID. The date and Run ID are indicated in [Figure 13-21](#).

Figure 13-21 Segment Trend Analysis Report - Customer Count - Segment Strata Trend Analysis Chart



The Segment Strata Trend Analysis chart detail information for each Run ID includes:

- **Segment ID - Name** - The unique numeric identifier for and the Name describing the Segment.
- **Save List Flag** - The setting of the Save List flag for the Segment. Always set to Yes. The report does not include any data for a Segment that does not have the Save List flag selected.
- **Run ID** - A sequence number identifying the Run for the Segment. Each Run is numbered sequentially, starting with a Run ID of 0.

For each stratum in the Segment from the Run ID:

- **Run Date** - The date when the Run was generated. The same date is listed for all strata in the Run.
- **Strata Min Value** - The minimum value for a Customer to be included in the stratum. Based on the Field to Stratify On selected for the Segment.
- **Strata Max Value** - The maximum value for a Customer to be included in the stratum. Based on the Field to Stratify On selected for the Segment.
- **Strata Average Value** - The average value for all Customers in the stratum: the total Value / the Stratified Customer Count.
- **Stratified Customer Count** - The total number of Customers in the stratum.

The report may include an extra stratum with a Strata Min Value, Strata Max Value, Strata Average Value, and Stratified Customer Count of 0.

- **Totals for Run** - The total number of Customers for all Strata in the Run.

- **Totals for Segment** - The total number of Customers for all Runs for the Segment included on the report.
- **Report Totals** - The total number of Customers for all Runs for all Segments included on the report.

Tender Account Management Reports

The Tender Account Management Reports include:

- [Tender \(Account\) Activity Summary Report](#)
- [Tender Activity Summary by Batch Report](#)
- [Tender Activity Type Trend Report](#)

Tender (Account) Activity Summary Report

This report displays tender summary information by Activity Type, by Program.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Tender Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Transaction Type** - Codes identifying types of activity for a Tender account. All Transaction Type codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Transaction Type Codes, search based on Transaction Type Code, or remove Transaction Type Codes from the list selected for the report. Possible Transaction Type Codes include:
 - Activate Card
 - Card Merge
 - Cash Out
 - Change Acct Expiration Date
 - Change Pin Authentication
 - Deactivate
 - Errors
 - Inquiry
 - Post Authorization
 - Pre Authorization
 - Redemption
 - Release Authorization
 - Reload
 - Replace
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Return

- Reverse Transaction
- Service Charge
- Unblock
- Verify Pin Authentication
- Void Transaction
- **Void Flag** - Optionally, select Yes or No to select Tender account activity based on whether the activity was voided.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of Transaction Types and Void Flag settings for any Program ID for the entire report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Tender Program.

- **Program Name** - The Name describing the Tender Program. For each Transaction Type that occurred for the Program:
- **Transaction Type** - The type of Transaction performed. Possible Transaction Type Codes:
 - Activate Card
 - Card Merge
 - Cash Out
 - Change Acct Expiration Date
 - Change Pin Authentication
 - Deactivate
 - Errors
 - Inquiry
 - Post Authorization
 - Pre Authorization
 - Redemption
 - Release Authorization
 - Reload
 - Replace
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Return
 - Reverse Transaction
 - Service Charge
 - Unblock
 - Verify Pin Authentication
 - Void Transaction
- **Void Flag** - Indicates that a transaction has been voided. The record for the original transaction remains, and separate voided and unvoided totals are listed. For example, if a Card Reload is voided, the totals for unvoided Card Reloads are not increased, but the totals for voided Card Reloads are increased.
- **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions for the Transaction Type.
- **Activity Amount** - The total value of transactions for the Transaction Type.
- **Average Amount** - The Activity Amount / the Transaction Count.
- **Program Totals:**
 - **Transaction Count** - The total of the Transaction Counts for the Program.
 - **Activity Amount** - The total value of Activity Amounts for the Program.
 - **Average Amount** - The total Activity Amount / the total Transaction Count for the Program.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Transaction Count** - The total value of Transaction Counts on the report.

- **Activity Amount** - The total value of Activity Amounts on the report.
- **Average Amount** - The total Activity Amount / the total Transaction Count on the report.

Tender Activity Summary by Batch Report

This report displays tender summary information organized by Card Prefix, Series, and Batch, for Activity Types, by Program.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Tender Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Transaction Type** - Codes identifying types of activity for a Tender account. All Transaction Type codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Transaction Type Codes, search based on Transaction Type Code, or remove Transaction Type Codes from the list selected for the report. Possible Transaction Type Codes include:
 - Activate Card
 - Card Merge
 - Cash Out
 - Change Acct Expiration Date
 - Change Pin Authentication
 - Deactivate
 - Errors
 - Inquiry
 - Post Authorization
 - Pre Authorization - Redemption
 - Release Authorization
 - Reload
 - Replace
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Return
 - Reverse Transaction
 - Service Charge - Unblock
 - Verify Pin Authentication
 - Void Transaction
- **Card Prefix** - The prefix number defined for a Card Definition. All Prefixes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Prefixes, search based on Prefixes, or remove Prefixes from the list selected for the report.

- **Card Series Sequence** - The Card Series Sequence defined for a Card Series. All Sequence numbers are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Sequence numbers, search based on Sequence numbers, or remove Sequence numbers from the list selected for the report.
- **Batch Number** - The Card Generation Batch Number defined for a batch. All Batch Numbers are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Batch Numbers, search based on Batch Numbers, or remove Batch Numbers from the list selected for the report.
- **Void Flag** - Optionally, select Yes or No to select Tender account activity based on whether the activity was voided.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of Transaction Types for any Program ID, Series, and Batch, for the entire report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Tender Program.
- **Program Name** - The Name describing the Tender Program.
- **Card Prefix** - The Prefix number defined for the Card.
- **Card Series** - The number identifying the Card Series.
- **Card Batch** - The number identifying the Card Batch.
- For each Transaction Type that occurred for the Program, Card Prefix, Series, and Batch:
Transaction Type - The type of Transaction performed. Possible Transaction Type Codes:
 - Activate Card
 - Card Merge
 - Cash Out
 - Change Acct Expiration Date
 - Change Pin Authentication
 - Deactivate
 - Errors
 - Inquiry
 - Post Authorization
 - Pre Authorization - Redemption
 - Release Authorization
 - Reload
 - Replace
 - Reset Expiration Date - Return
 - Reverse Transaction
 - Service Charge - Unblock
 - Verify Pin Authentication
 - Void Transaction
- **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions for the Transaction Type.
- **Activity Amount** - The total value of transactions for the Transaction Type.
- **Average Amount** - The Activity Amount / the Transaction Count.
- **Program Totals:**
 - **Transaction Count** - The total of the Transaction Counts for the Program.
 - **Activity Amount** - The total value of Activity Amounts for the Program.
 - **Average Amount** - The total Activity Amount / the total Transaction Count for the Program.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Transaction Count** - The total value of Transaction Counts on the report.
 - **Activity Amount** - The total value of Activity Amounts on the report.

- **Average Amount** - The total Activity Amount / the total Transaction Count on the report.

Tender Activity Type Trend Report

This report displays tender summary information organized by Card Prefix, Series, and Batch, for Activity Types, by Program.

The totals for all Tender Programs with the same Activity Type, Void Flag setting, and Business Date are combined in the charts at the beginning of the report.

The report begins with three charts illustrating tender type activity. Each chart is described in the following sections.

Note:

The charts on this report are useful only if you restrict the selection criteria to a single Transaction Type and Void Flag setting, so you can identify the totals for Transaction Type activity. Otherwise, it would be difficult to determine the different totals for the same date but a different Transaction Type or Void Flag setting. You can also restrict the report by Program ID.

Selection Criteria

- **Program ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Tender Program for a Card Definition. All Programs are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Programs, search based on Program Name, or remove Programs from the list selected for the report.
- **Transaction Type** - Codes identifying types of activity for a Tender account. All Transaction Type codes are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Transaction Type Codes, search based on Transaction Type Code, or remove Transaction Type Codes from the list selected for the report. Possible Transaction Type Codes include:
 - Activate Card
 - Card Merge
 - Cash Out
 - Change Acct Expiration Date
 - Change Pin Authentication
 - Deactivate
 - Errors
 - Inquiry
 - Post Authorization
 - Pre Authorization
 - Redemption
 - Release Authorization

- Reload
- Replace
- Reset Expiration Date - Return
- Reverse Transaction
- Service Charge
- Unblock
- Verify Pin Authentication
- Void Transaction
- **Void Flag** - Optionally, select Yes or No to select Tender account activity based on whether the activity was voided.
- **Activity Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include activities that occurred during this period on the report rather than entering an Activity Start Date or Activity End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

If you select an Activity Time Period, the Activity Start Date and Activity End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Activity Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Activity End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of Transaction Types, Void Flag settings, and activity dates for the entire report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.

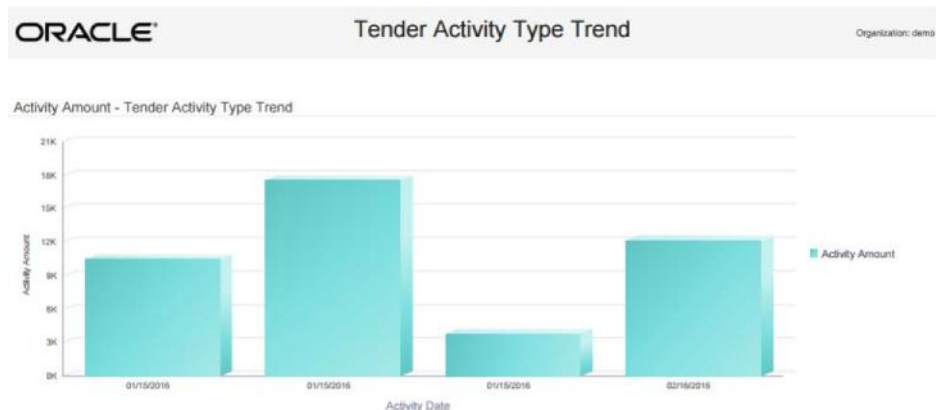
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Transaction Type** - The transaction types selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Program ID** - The program IDs selected when generating the report, or set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Void Flag** - The void flag setting selected for the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Transaction Count Chart** - Displays the total Transaction Count for each Business Date where the Transaction Type and Void Flag setting are the same.

Figure 13-22 Transaction Count - Tender Activity Type Trend Chart

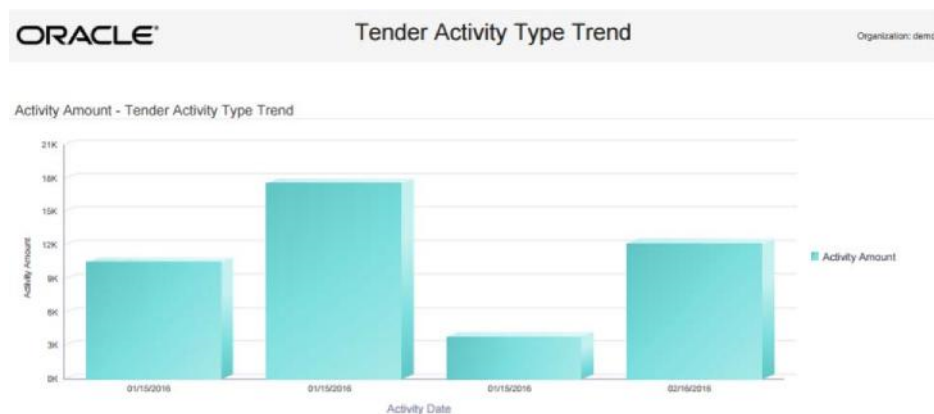


- **Activity Amount Chart** - Displays the total Activity Amount for each Business Date where the Transaction Type and Void Flag setting are the same

Figure 13-23 Activity Amount - Tender Activity Type Trend Chart



- **Average Amount Chart** - Displays the Average Amount for each Business Date where the Transaction Type and Void Flag setting are the same.

Figure 13-24 Average Amount - Tender Activity Type Trend Chart

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Program** - The unique numeric identifier for the Tender Program, and the Name describing the Tender Program.
- **Transaction Type** - The type of Transaction performed. Possible Transaction Type Codes:
 - Activate Card
 - Card Merge
 - Cash Out
 - Change Acct Expiration Date
 - Change Pin Authentication
 - Deactivate
 - Errors
 - Inquiry
 - Post Authorization
 - Pre Authorization - Redemption
 - Release Authorization
 - Reload
 - Replace
 - Reset Expiration Date
 - Return
 - Reverse Transaction
 - Service Charge
 - Unblock
 - Verify Pin Authentication
 - Void Transaction
- **Void Flag** - Indicates that a transaction has been voided.
- **Business Date** - The Business Date when the activity occurred.

- **Transaction Count** - The total number of transactions for the Transaction Type on the Business Date and the same Void Flag setting.
- **Activity Amount** - The total value of transactions for the Transaction Type on the Business Date and the same Void Flag setting.
- **Average Amount** - The Activity Amount / the Transaction Count.
- **Totals for Transaction Type:**
 - **Transaction Count** - The total of the Transaction Counts for the Transaction Type.
 - **Activity Amount** - The total value of Activity Amounts for the Transaction Type.
 - **Average Amount** - The total Activity Amount / the total Transaction Count for the Transaction Type.
- **Totals for Program:**
 - **Transaction Count** - The total of the Transaction Counts for the Program.
 - **Activity Amount** - The total value of Activity Amounts for the Program.
 - **Average Amount** - The total Activity Amount / the total Transaction Count for the Program.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Transaction Count** - The total value of Transaction Counts on the report.
 - **Activity Amount** - The total value of Activity Amounts on the report.
 - **Average Amount** - The total Activity Amount / the total Transaction Count on the report.

Registry Management Reports

The Registry Management Reports include:

- [Registry Detail Report](#)

Registry Detail Report

This report presents detailed information for Gift Registries or Wish Lists.

Selection Criteria

- **Customer ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Customer. All Customers are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Customers, search based on Customer Name, or remove Customers from the list selected for the report. Only Customers selected with a Gift Registry or Wish List are available for selection.

After you make a Customer ID / Name selection, clear the Registry ID that is automatically selected as a result and reset Program Level IDs as needed.
- **Registry Type** - The type of Registry: Gift Registry or Wish List. Both types are selected by default. Optionally, remove a type or Registry to exclude it from the report.

After you make a Registry Type selection, clear the Registry ID / Name that is automatically selected as a result and reset Registry IDs as needed.

- **Registry ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a Gift Registry or Wish List. All Registries and Wish Lists are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of Registries and Wish Lists, search based on Registry or Wish List Name, or remove Registries or Wish Lists from the list selected for the report.
- **Registry Event Date Range** - Optionally, select a time period to include Gift Registries scheduled during this period or Wish Lists created during this period on the report rather than entering an Registry Event Start Date or Registry Event End Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week
 - This Month
 - This Year

 **Note:**

Gift Registries scheduled for future dates are not included in any of these time periods. To include Gift Registries for future dates, use the Registry Event Start Date and Registry Event End Date options to select a date range that includes the scheduled date for the future Gift Registry.

If you select a Registry Event Time Period, the Registry Event Start Date and Registry Event End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Registry Event Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Registry Event End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. This limit applies to the total number of items for all Registries for the entire report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.

- **Customer ID** - The numeric ID for the Customers selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Registry ID** - The numeric ID for the Registries or Wish Lists selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Primary Customer ID** - The unique numeric identifier for a Customer.
- **Registry ID - Name** - The unique numeric identifier for a Registry or Wish List, and the Name describing the Registry or Wish List.
- **Event Date** - The date for an Item Registry. Set to N/A for a Wish List. Repeated for each Item for the Registry.
- **Venue Name and Venue Address** - The Venue Name and Address for an Item Registry. Set to N/A for a Wish List. Repeated for each Item for the Registry.
- **First Name and Last Name** - The primary Customer's first and last name. Repeated for each Item for the Registry or Wish List.
- **Email Address and Phone Number** - The primary Customer's email address and phone number, as specified for the Registry or Wish List. Not from the current primary email address and phone from the Customer record. Set to N/A if not specified.
- **Address** - The primary Customer's address, as specified for the Registry or Wish List. Not from the current primary address from the Customer record. Set to N/A if not specified.
- **Item ID - Name** - The ID and Name of the Item on the Registry or Wish List.
- **Desired Quantity** - The desired quantity of the Item.
- **Purchased Quantity** - The purchased quantity of the Item.
- **Totals for Registry:**
 - **Desired Quantity** - The total desired quantity of all Items on the Registry or Wish List that are included on the report.
 - **Purchased Quantity** - The total purchased quantity of all Items on the Registry or Wish List that are included on the report.
- **Report Totals:**
 - **Desired Quantity** - The total desired quantity of all Items included on the report.
 - **Purchased Quantity** - The total purchased quantity of all Items included on the report.

Task Management Reports

The Task Management Reports include:

- [Associate Task Details Report](#)
- [Associate Task Summary Report](#)
- [Task Status Summary Report](#)

Associate Task Details Report

This report presents details on customer targeted tasks, by the associate assigned to them.

Selection Criteria

- **Location ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a retail Location where Tasks might be assigned. All Locations are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location Name, or remove Locations from the list selected for the report.

If you select a Location ID, additional criteria may be selected automatically. If needed, set any remaining criteria to All to avoid restricting the report results to those that match the automatically selected criteria.
- **Task Type** - Codes identifying types of Tasks. All Task Types are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Task Types, search based on Task Type, or remove Task Types from the list selected for the report. Task Types include:
 - ADMIN
 - APPOINTMENT
 - EVENT
 - TASK
 - TODO
- **Associate ID / Name** - The user ID and name of the Associate assigned to the Task. All Associates are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Associates, search based on Associate Name, or remove Associates from the list selected for the report.
- **Task Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Tasks scheduled for dates in this period on the report rather than entering a Start Segment Run Date or End Segment Run Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week (excludes future dates)
 - This Month (excludes future dates)
 - This Year (excludes future dates)

 **Note:**

If you select a Task Time Period, the Task Start Date and Task End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Task Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Task End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of Tasks to include on the report.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Location ID** - The Location IDs, if any, selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Task Type** - The Task Types, if any, selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Associate ID** - The Associate IDs, if any, selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Task ID** - A unique numeric identifier for the Task.
- **Task Status** - The current status of the Task. Possible statuses are:
 - Open
 - In Progress
 - Cancelled
 - Closed
- **Task Priority** - The priority of the Task. Possible priorities are:
 - Low
 - Medium
 - High
- **Task Loc ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Location, if any, associated with the Task. Otherwise, set to N/A.
- **Task Subject** - The Subject entered to describe the Task.
- **Task Start Date** - The Start Date specified for the Task.
- **Task End Date** - The End Date specified for the Task.

- **Customer ID** - The unique numeric identifier for the Customer. Set to N/A if there is no Customer associated with the Task.
- **Create Date** - The date when the Task was created.
- **Update Date** - The date when the Task was most recently updated. Set to N/A if the Task has not been updated.
- **Create User** - The user ID of the User who created the Task.
- **Update User** - The user ID of the User who most recently updated the Task. Set to N/A if the Task has not been updated.

Associate Task Summary Report

This report presents a summary of the types of Tasks assigned to each Associate, and their current statuses.

Selection Criteria

- **Location ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a retail Location that might be associated with assigned Tasks. All Locations are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location Name, or remove Locations from the list selected for the report.
- **Task Type** - Codes identifying types of Tasks. All Task Types are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Task Types, search based on Task Type, or remove Task Types from the list selected for the report. Task Types include:
 - ADMIN
 - APPOINTMENT
 - EVENT
 - TASK
 - TODO
- **Associate ID / Name** - The user ID and name of the Associate assigned to the Task. All Associates are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Associates, search based on Associate Name, or remove Associates from the list selected for the report.
- **Task Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Tasks scheduled for dates in this period on the report rather than entering a Start Segment Run Date or End Segment Run Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week (excludes future dates)
 - This Month (excludes future dates)

- This Year (excludes future dates)

 **Note:**

If you select a Task Time Period, the Task Start Date and Task End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Task Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Task End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. Each row represents a unique combination of Task Type, Associate ID, and Task Status.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Location ID** - The Location IDs, if any, selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Task Type** - The Task Types, if any, selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Associate ID** - The Associate IDs, if any, selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Task Type** - The type of Task. Possible Types are:
 - Admin
 - Appointment
 - Event
 - Task
 - To do
- **Associate ID** - The identifier of the Associate assigned to the Task. Set to N/A if no Associate is assigned.
- **Associate Name** - The name of the Associate assigned to the Task. Set to N/A if no Associate is assigned.
- **Task Status** - The current status of the Task. Possible statuses are:
 - Open
 - In Progress
 - Cancelled

- Closed
- **Task Count** - The total number of Tasks of this Type, assigned to this Associate (or unassigned), and in the same status, included on the report.
- **Totals for Task Type** - The total number of Tasks of this Type included on the report.
- **Report Totals** - The total number of Tasks included on the report.

Task Status Summary Report

This report presents a summary of types of Tasks by their current statuses.

Selection Criteria

- **Location ID / Name** - The ID and Name identifying a retail Location that might be associated with assigned Tasks. All Locations are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Locations, search based on Location Name, or remove Locations from the list selected for the report.
- **Task Type** - Codes identifying types of Tasks. All Task Types are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Task Types, search based on Task Type, or remove Task Types from the list selected for the report. Task Types include:
 - ADMIN
 - APPOINTMENT
 - EVENT
 - TASK
 - TODO
- **Associate ID / Name** - The user ID and name of the Associate assigned to the Task. All Associates are selected by default. Optionally, select Search to work with the list of eligible Associates, search based on Associate Name, or remove Associates from the list selected for the report.
- **Task Time Period** - Optionally, select a time period to include Tasks scheduled for dates in this period on the report rather than entering a Start Segment Run Date or End Segment Run Date. Set to None by default. Available time periods are:
 - Yesterday
 - Last Week
 - Last Month
 - Last Year
 - Last 30 Days
 - Last 60 Days
 - Last 90 Days
 - This Week (excludes future dates)
 - This Month (excludes future dates)
 - This Year (excludes future dates)

 **Note:**

If you select a Task Time Period, the Task Start Date and Task End Date criteria are ignored.

- **Task Start Date** - The first date to include on the report. Defaults to the previous date (yesterday).
- **Task End Date** - The last date to include on the report. Defaults to the current date (today).
- **Row Limit** - Optionally, use this field to specify the maximum number of rows to include on the report. Each row represents a unique combination of Task Type and Task Status.

Click **Apply** to apply the selected criteria and generate the report.

Report Contents

The Report Contents header information includes:

- **Organization** - The code identifying your organization.
- **Date Range** - The date range selected when generating the report.
- **Location ID** - The Location IDs, if any, selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Associate ID** - The Associate IDs, if any, selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.
- **Task Type** - The Task Types, if any, selected when generating the report. Set to ALL if there was no restriction.

The Report Contents detail information includes:

- **Task Type** - The type of Task. Possible Types are:
 - Admin
 - Appointment
 - Event
 - Task
 - To do
- **Task Status** - The current status of the Task. Possible statuses are:
 - Open
 - In Progress
 - Cancelled
 - Closed
- **Task Count** - The total number of Tasks of this Type and status that are included on the report.
- **Totals for Task Type** - The total number of Tasks of this Type included on the report.

- **Report Totals** - The total number of Tasks included on the report.

14

Administration

About this Chapter

The Administrative options available include the following:

- Associate Role Definition
 - Adding an Associate Role
 - Editing an Associate Role
- Attribute Management
 - Creating an Attribute
 - Editing an Attribute
 - Deleting an Attribute
- Batch Import Review
- Batch Process Tracking
- Exchange Rate
- File Review
- Franchisees
- Location Management
 - Adding a Location
 - Editing a Location
- Managing External Application Access
- Preference Types
 - Sorting Preference Types
 - Adding a Preference Type
 - Editing a Preference Type
 - Viewing a Preference Type
 - Delete a Preference Type
- Role Groups
- Security Groups
- System Configuration
- System Logs
- Task Management
 - Creating a Task

- Editing a Task
- Viewing a Task
- Reassigning a Task
- Web Service Tracking
- Users

Associate Role Definition

Associate Roles are used to assign Associates to Customers. Only one Associate can be assigned to a Customer for each Associate Role, so the number of Associate Roles determines the number of Associates that can be assigned to a Customer.

Figure 14-1 Associate Role Definition

Associate Role Definition

Role ID	Role Name	Description	Active	Primary
21	Store Photographer	Store Portrait Photographer	Yes	
20	Keyboard Navigation Assistant	Keyboard navigation assistant	Yes	
19	Shift Manager	Shift Manager	Yes	
18	Seasonal Worker	Seasonal Worker	Yes	

To access the Association Role Definition window:

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click the **Admin** Task.
3. Click the **Associate Role Definition** Task.

The following information is displayed for each role:

- **Role ID** – Unique ID for the Associate Role.
- **Role Name** – Name of the Associate Role.
- **Description** – Description of the Associate Role.
- **Active** – Indicates whether the Associate Role is active.
- **Primary** – Indicates whether the Associate Role is the primary role.

Sorting Associate Role Definitions

The user can sort the list to refine the results. The following sorting options include:

The following fields can be sorted **Ascending** or **Descending**:

- **Active** – Indicates whether the Associate Role is active.
- **Description** – Description of the Associate Role.
- **Primary** – Indicates whether the Associate Role is the primary role.
- **Role ID** – Unique ID for the Associate Role.

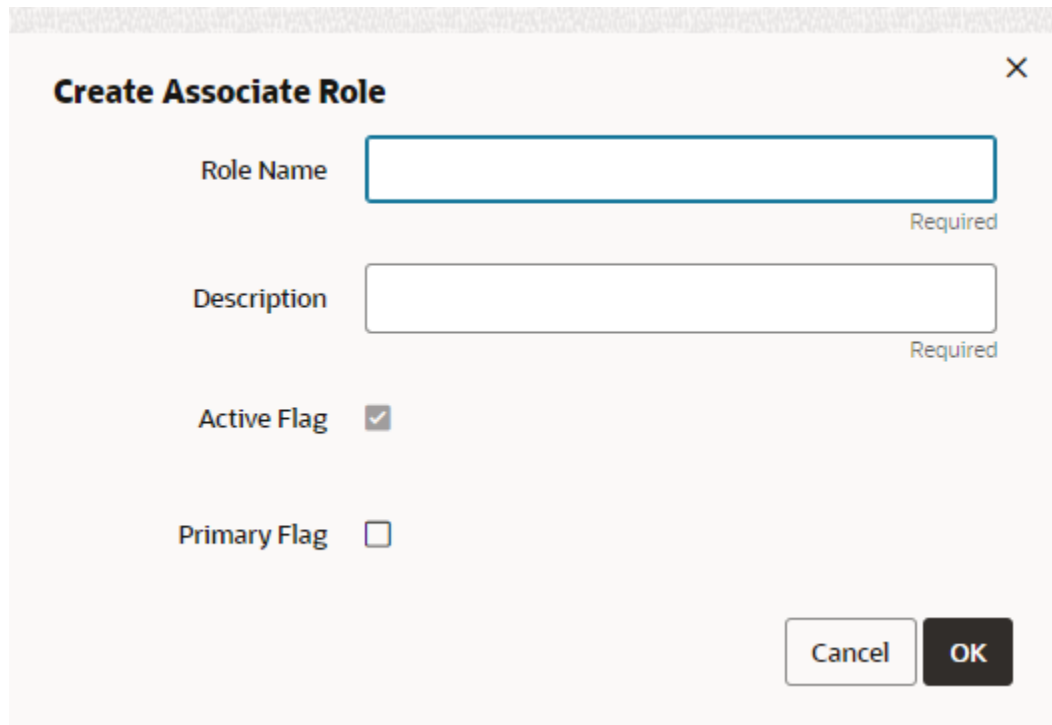
- **Role Name** – Name of the Associate Role.

Adding an Associate Role

To add an Associate Role, do the following:

1. Click the **Add (+) icon**, or choose **Add** from the **Actions** menu. This displays a Create Associate Role window where you can enter the following information:

Figure 14-2 Adding an Associate Role



Create Associate Role [X]

Role Name Required

Description Required

Active Flag

Primary Flag

Cancel OK

- **Role Name** - This field configures the name of the Associate Role.
- **Description** - This field configures a description of the Associate Role. This is a required field.
- **Active** - This check box determines whether the Associate Role is active. As a default, the check box is selected.
- **Primary** - This check box determines whether the Associate Role is the primary role.

 **Note:**

Customer Engagement only allows one Associate Role to be primary.

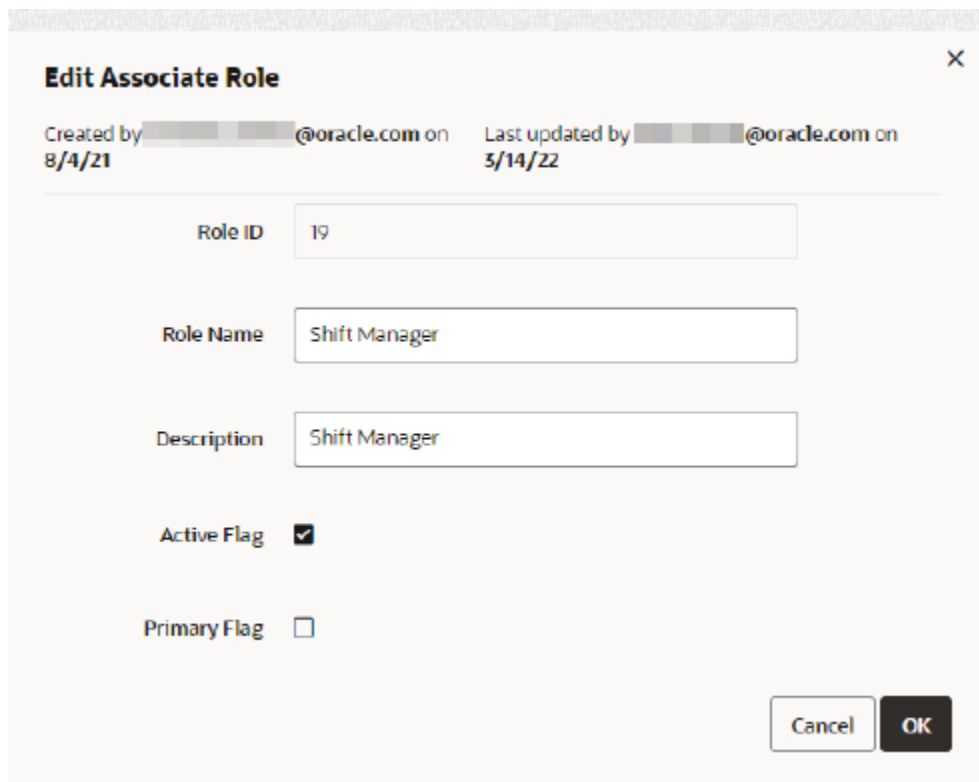
2. To add the new Associate Role to the list of definitions, click **OK**. To return to the original window without saving, click **Cancel**.

Editing an Associate Role

To edit an Associate Role, do the following:

1. Highlight the desired **Associate Role** (Only one record can be selected at a time for editing).
2. Click the **Edit** icon, or choose **Edit** from the **Actions** menu. This displays an Edit Associate Role window: This displays a window with details of the role:

Figure 14-3 Edit Associate Role



Edit Associate Role [X]

Created by [redacted]@oracle.com on 8/4/21 Last updated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 3/14/22

Role ID: 19

Role Name: Shift Manager

Description: Shift Manager

Active Flag:

Primary Flag:

Cancel OK

3. Make any necessary change to the fields.
4. Click **OK** to accept the changes. The Associate Role is displayed with the new information. Click **Cancel** to return to the original window without saving.

Attribute Management

Use the Attribute Management window to create, edit, or delete attributes.

Figure 14-4 Attribute Management

Attribute Management

Actions + ✎ ✕ Intended Use All Sort By ID Ascending

ID	Name	Unique	Description	Editable	Open Access	Data Type	Last Update	Intended Use	Attribute Group
1	EMAIL_RCPT_FLAG	Yes	Email receipt flag	Yes	Yes	Character		Customer	
2	ACTIVE_FLAG	Yes	Active flag	Yes	Yes	Character		Customer	
3	PROMPT_TO_JOIN_LOY	Yes	Prompt to join Loyalty	Yes	Yes	Character		Customer	
4	PARTY_TYPE_CODE	Yes	Party type code	Yes	Yes	Character		Customer	
5	CUSTOMER_GROUPS	Yes	Customer groups	Yes	Yes	Character		Customer	

To access the Attribution Management window:

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click the **Admin Task**.
3. Click the **Attribute Management Task**.

The following information is displayed for each attribute:

- **ID** – The ID for the attribute.
- **Name** – The name of the attribute.
- **Unique** – Only one value can be added to the attribute when it is identified as unique.
- **Description** – Description of the information provided by the attribute.
- **Editable** – Identifies whether the associate is allowed to edit the value for the attribute once it is added.
- **Open Access** – Indicates whether there is open access to this attribute.
- **Data Type** – The type of data contained in the attribute value. Possible values include: Character, Number, Currency, Date, Logical, and List.
- **Last Update** – The date last updated in the system.
- **Intended Use** – The Customer Engagement element the attribute was created for. Possible uses include: Card, Card Series, Card Type, Customer, Gift Registry, Item Location, Offer, Promo Offer, Promotion, Segment, and Wish List.
- **Attribute Group** – The group associated with the attribute.

Filtering and Sorting Attributes

The user can narrow down the list by selecting any of the Intended Use filters. The list can then be sorted by the fields as shown in [Figure 14-5](#).

Figure 14-5 Filtering and Sorting Options

Intended Use All Sort By ID Ascending

Intended Use filters include:

- All (Default)
- Card
- Card Series
- Card Type
- Customer
- Gift Registry
- Item Location
- Offer
- Promo Offer
- Promotion
- Segment
- Wish List

The following fields can be sorted **Ascending** or **Descending**:

- Attribute Group
- Data Type
- Description
- ID
- Intended Use
- Last Update
- Name

Creating an Attribute

To create an Attribute, do the following:

1. Click the **Add (+) icon**, or choose **Add** from the **Actions** menu. This displays a Create Attribute dialog, where you can enter the following information:

Figure 14-6 Create Attribute

Create Attribute ✕

Name Required

Description Required

Intended Use

Attribute Group

Data Type

Editable

Open Access

Publish to Batch Exporter

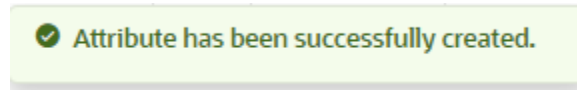
Required

Unique

- **Attribute**
 - Name** – Name of the attribute (required field).
 - **Description** – Description of the attribute (required field).
 - **Intended Use** – The Customer Engagement element the attribute was created for (required field).
 - **Attribute Group** – The group associated with the attribute. Required for Gift Registry Intended Use, otherwise, optional.
 - **Data Type** – The type of data contained in the attribute value. Possible values include:
 - Character
 - Number
 - Currency
 - Date
 - Logical
 - List (required field)
2. Depending on your previous selections the following fields are dynamic:
- **Editable** – Indicate whether the attribute is editable.
 - **Open Access** – Indicate whether the attribute has open access.

- **Publish to Batch Exporter** – A flag to indicate export to a marketing system.
 - **Required** – Adds a flag to make the attribute required
 - **Unique** – Indicates whether the attribute can be assigned to an element more than once.
3. Click **OK**. This adds the new attribute to the list of attributes. Click **Cancel** to return to the original window without saving.

Figure 14-7 Confirmation Notification



Note:

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the attribute has been created.

Editing an Attribute

To edit an Attribute, do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the desired attribute.
2. Click the **Edit** icon, or choose **Edit** from the **Actions** menu. This displays an Edit Attribute dialog that displays a window with details of the attribute:

Figure 14-8 Edit Attribute

Edit Attribute ✕

Attribute ID	<input type="text" value="2"/>	Actively Used	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Name	<input type="text" value="ACTIVE_FLAG"/>	Editable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Description	<input type="text" value="Active flag"/>	Open Access	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Intended Use	<input type="text" value="Customer"/>	Publish to Batch Exporter	<input type="checkbox"/>
Attribute Group	<input type="text"/>	Required	<input type="checkbox"/>
Data Type	<input type="text" value="Character"/>	Unique	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

 **Note:**

Attributes that are actively used (already associated to an element in Customer Engagement) are limited to what fields may be changed, such as Description.

3. Make any necessary changes to the fields.
4. Click **OK** to accept the changes. The attribute is displayed with the new information. Click **Cancel** to return to the original window without saving.

Deleting an Attribute

Use the following steps to delete an Attribute:

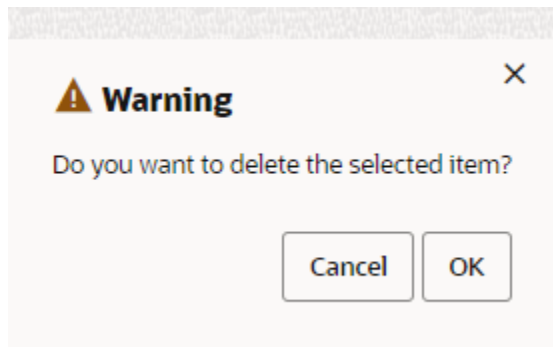
1. Highlight the row of the Attribute.

 **Note:**

Actively used attributes cannot be deleted, so highlighting such a row will not enable the delete action or the delete icon.

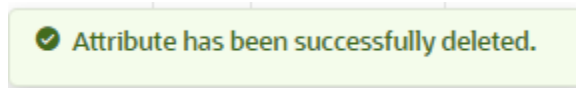
2. Click **Delete** from the **Actions** menu or the **Delete** icon. This opens the delete confirmation window.

Figure 14-9 Warning



3. Click **OK** to delete the attribute or **Cancel** to close the window without deleting the row.

Figure 14-10 Confirmation Notification



 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the attribute has been deleted.

Batch Import Review

You will have the ability to search, sort and view the details of the batch import file. Additionally, files currently being processed can also be viewed.

Searching for Batch Imports

1. Click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Admin**.
3. Click **Batch Import Review**. The Batch Import Review window opens.


Figure 14-11 Batch Import Review - Search


Batch Import Review

Search

File Name

Completed Date Range

From 

To 

Include Files With

Successes Warnings

Reposts Failures

Examined

Search Results

Enter search parameters in the sidebar to search for Batch Imports.

4. Enter the following **search parameters** to search for Batch Imports.
 - Enter any or all of a File Name.
 - Enter the From and To Completed Date Ranges.
 - Select from the following Includes Files With Options:
 - Successes
 - Reposts
 - Examined
 - Warnings
 - Failures
5. Click **Search** to find the results, or click **Reset** the search parameters.

Figure 14-12 Search Results

Batch Import Review

Search

File Name

Completed Date Range

From

To

Include Files With

Successes Warnings Reposts

Failures Examined

Actions Sort By File Name Ascending All times are in GMT.

File Name	Record Type	Repost Attempt	Successes	Warnings	Reposts	Failures	Examined	Start Time	End Time
220923-152622-574744.xml	Customer	0	1,000	0	0	0	1,000	3/3/23, 3:03 PM	3/3/23, 3:04 PM
220923-152627-478116.xml	Customer	0	1,000	0	0	0	1,000	3/3/23, 3:04 PM	3/3/23, 3:05 PM
220923-152631-754988.xml	Customer	0	1,000	0	0	0	1,000	3/3/23, 3:05 PM	3/3/23, 3:05 PM
220923-152656-290750.xml	Customer	0	1,000	0	0	0	1,000	3/3/23, 3:04 PM	3/3/23, 3:05 PM
Relate-Customer02.xml		0	0	0	0	1	0	3/2/23, 5:19 AM	3/2/23, 5:19 AM
Relate-Customer03.xml	Customer	0	1	0	0	1	2	3/2/23, 5:30 AM	3/2/23, 5:30 AM
cust-230123-123517-271573.xml	Customer	0	100	0	0	0	100	1/26/23, 4:57 PM	1/26/23, 4:57 PM
cust-230123-123518-743939.xml	Customer	0	100	0	0	0	100	1/26/23, 4:56 PM	1/26/23, 4:56 PM
cust-230123-123556-470787.xml	Customer	0	100	0	0	0	100	1/26/23, 4:56 PM	1/26/23, 4:56 PM
cust-230201-145425-407815.xml	Customer	0	10	0	0	0	10	2/1/23, 8:01 PM	2/1/23, 8:01 PM
cust-230201-145426-707151.xml	Customer	0	10	0	0	0	10	2/1/23, 8:00 PM	2/1/23, 8:00 PM
cust-230201-145428-019958.xml	Customer	0	10	0	0	0	10	2/1/23, 7:59 PM	2/1/23, 7:59 PM

Show More... 1-25 of 41 items

You can refresh the Search Results by clicking the **Refresh** icon or picking the **Refresh** option from the **Actions** menu.

Sorting Batch imports

You can sort by:

- End Time
- Examined
- Failures
- File Name (default)
- Record Type
- Repost Attempt
- Reposts
- Start Time
- Successes
- Warnings

Preference types can be sorted ascending or descending from the list.

Viewing a Batch Import

To view a Batch Import, do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the Batch Import you want to view.
2. Click the **Actions** menu or the **View icon** to open the View Report for window.

ORACLE®

14-12

Figure 14-13 View Report For File Name Selected

View Report for 220923-152622-574744.xml
✕

Report Detail

File Name	220923-152622-574744.xml	End Time	3/3/23, 3:04 PM
Record Type	Customer	Processed Files	220923-152622-574744.xml
Start Time	3/3/23, 3:03 PM	Failure Summary	

Processing Result

Total Records Found	1,000	Reposts	0
Successes	1,000	Failures	0
Warnings	0	Examined	1,000

Failures	Warnings	Reposts	
Item Number	File Name	Item Detail	Line Number
No Failure Summary Items available to display			

Done

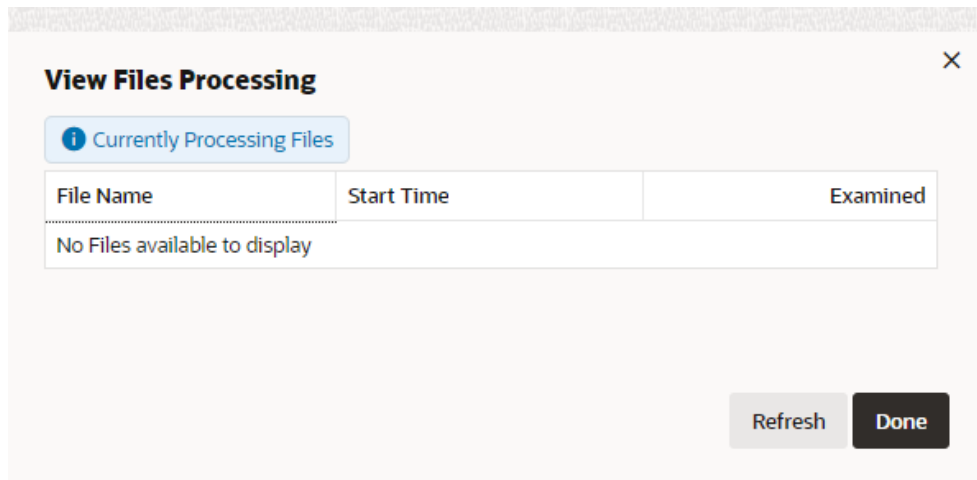
3. View the details of the Report and click **Done** to close the window.

View Files Processing

Do the following to refresh the results at any time:

1. Click the Actions menu.
2. Click View Files Processing. The View Process Files window opens.

Figure 14-14 View Files Processing



3. Click **Refresh** to update the results, or click **Done** to close the window.

Batch Process Tracking

You have the ability to view statistics for successes, warnings, and failures by batch type on a daily, weekly, and monthly basis, so that you can monitor problems with batch jobs.

To track batch processes do the following:

1. Click **Menu**.
2. Click the **Admin** task.
3. Click the **Batch Process Tracking** task. The Batch Process Tracking window displays.

Figure 14-15 Batch Process Tracking

Batch Process Tracking

Daily Activity Weekly Activity Monthly Activity

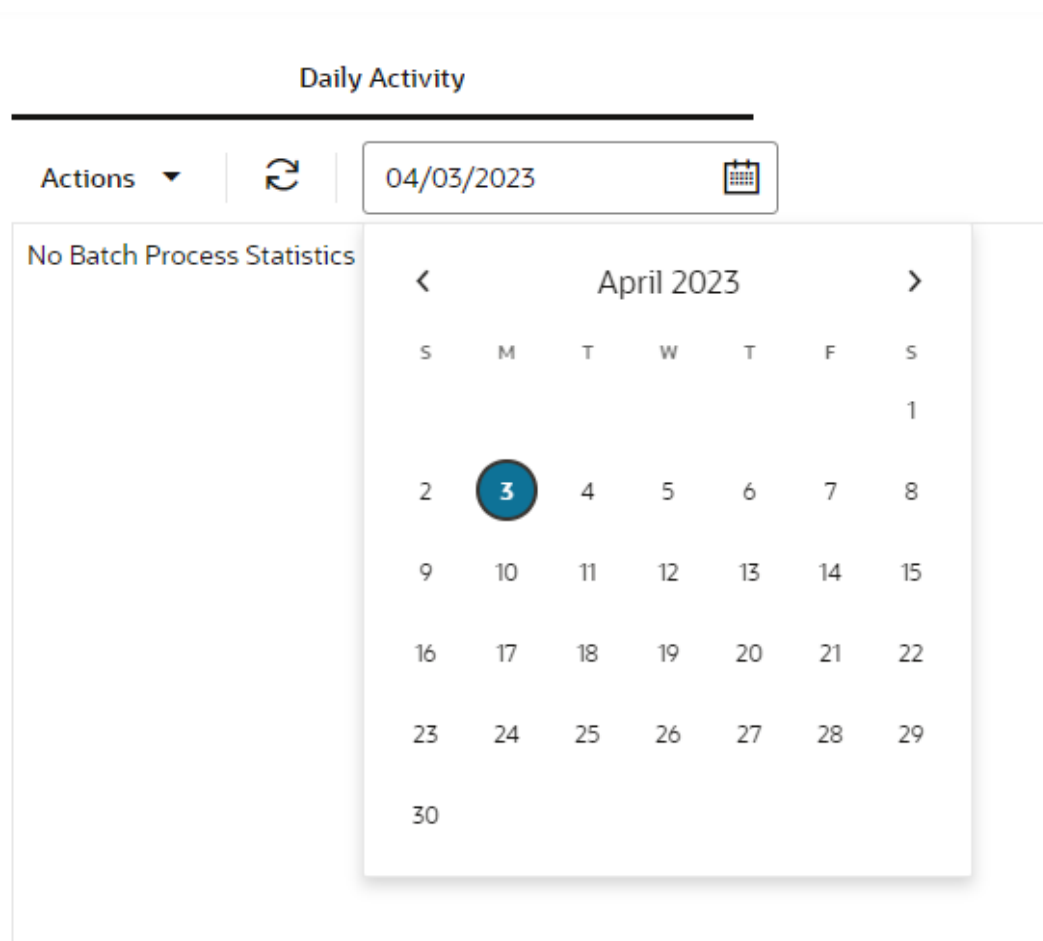
Actions All times are in GMT. Data is updated periodically.

Month	Batch Type	Batch Count	Record Count	Successes	Warnings	Failures	Average Time per 1000 (HH:MM:SS)
January	CardSeries	7	500,210	500,210	0	0	00:06:22
	Customer	31	10,201	10,200	0	1	00:02:03
	Transaction	2	10	0	0	10	00:00:00
February	AwardRequest	30	188,920	188,839	0	81	00:16:41
	CardSeries	15	815,371	702,457	0	112,914	00:05:34
	Customer	24	51,621	51,621	1	0	00:05:41
	LoyaltyRequest	2	1,001	1,000	0	1	00:08:42
March	Customer	1	1,000	1,000	0	0	00:02:24
	LoyaltyRequest	1	1,000	1,000	0	0	00:00:43
April	Customer	311	31,100	31,095	0	5	00:02:09
	Transaction	36	3,336	366	6	2,940	01:30:27
May	Customer	9	10,700	10,700	0	0	00:08:09
	Transaction	25	170,091	168,285	0	1,806	00:08:47
June	LoyaltyRequest	1	3	0	1	3	00:00:00
	Transaction	39	341,079	291,598	0	49,481	00:04:40
July	Customer	240	4,423,050	4,423,050	0	0	00:01:06
	CardSeries	7	150,003	50,000	0	100,003	00:02:34

You can refresh the list by clicking the **Refresh** icon or picking the **Refresh** option from the **Actions menu**.

4. View the Results by clicking one of the following options:
 - Daily Activity
 - Weekly Activity
 - Monthly Activity
5. To change the date range enter a date into the calendar field.

Figure 14-16 Date Selector



Exchange Rate

You can use the Exchange Rate feature to review the most current exchange rates that have been set up for currency conversions for PosLog transactions. You can also review previous Exchange Rates, as well as create new Exchange Rates.

 **Note:**

This option is available only if the user has been assigned the `SystemAdmin` role. See the [Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Cloud Service Implementation Guide](#) for more information on assigning User Roles.

Accessing the Exchange Rate Feature

To access the Exchange Rate feature do the following:

1. Click **Menu**.
2. Click the **Admin** task.
3. Click the **Exchange Rate** task. The Exchange Rate window displays.

Figure 14-17 Exchange Rate Window

Exchange Rate

Base Currency	Exchange Currency	Exchange Rate	Effective Date	Create Date	Create User ID
United Arab Emirates, Dirhams	Afghanistan, Afghanis	4.23	6/23/22, 12:00 AM	6/23/22, 2:32 PM	
United Arab Emirates, Dirhams	Indonesia, Rupiahs	14725.3	6/14/22, 2:30 PM	6/15/22, 7:41 AM	
Mexico, Pesos	Belize, Dollars	1.645	4/29/22, 12:00 AM	4/12/22, 3:21 PM	
United Arab Emirates, Dirhams	Afghanistan, Afghanis	24	12/14/21, 12:00 AM	12/14/21, 11:00 AM	
United States of America, Dollars	Canada, Dollars	1.24	12/1/21, 12:00 AM	12/1/21, 1:40 PM	

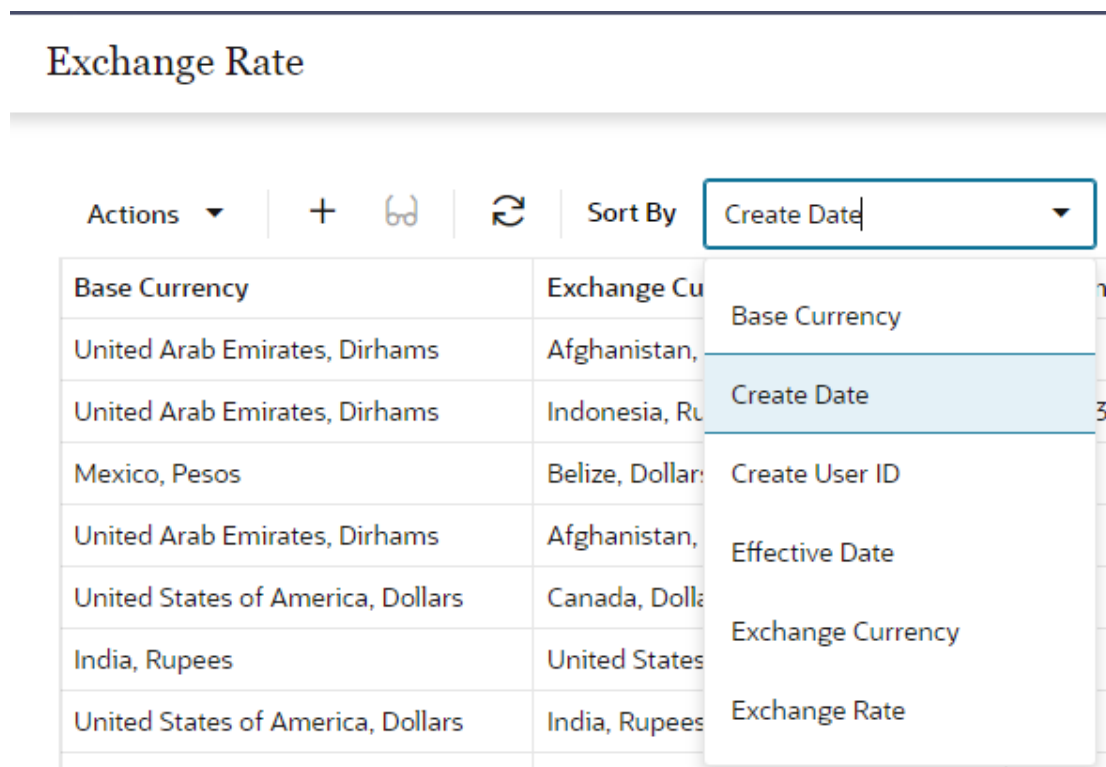
The Exchange Rate List displays the following information for each currency conversion that has a current Exchange Rate:

- **Base Currency** - The name of the currency that is being converted (the from currency).
- **Exchange Currency** - The name of the currency that is being converted to (the to currency).
- **Exchange Rate** - The most current Exchange Rate that has been defined for the currency conversion. Up to 6 decimal positions. Any future Exchange Rates are not displayed.
- **Effective Date** - The most current Exchange Rate that has been defined for the currency conversion, with the rate displaying up to 6 decimal positions. Any Exchange Rates with a future Effective Date are not displayed.
- **Create Date** - The date and time when the Exchange Rate was created.
- **Create User Id** - The user ID of the person who created the Exchange Rate.

Working with Exchange Rates

Sorting Results

Figure 14-18 Sort By Options



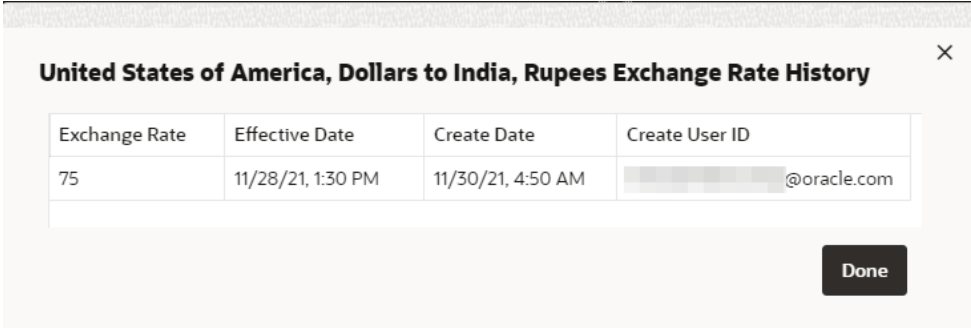
In the Exchange Rates window, the user can sort the list to refine the results. Results can be sorted Ascending or Descending using the following sorting options:

- Base Currency
- Create Date (Default)
- Create User ID
- Effective Date
- Exchange Currency
- Exchange Rate

Viewing Exchange Rate History

To view an Exchange Rate History do the following:

1. Highlight an **Exchange Rate** from the list of results.
2. Click the **Actions Menu**, and then click **View**, or click the **View** icon. The Exchange Rate History window displays the history of that Exchange Rate in descending date order.

Figure 14-19 Exchange Rate History

United States of America, Dollars to India, Rupees Exchange Rate History ×

Exchange Rate	Effective Date	Create Date	Create User ID
75	11/28/21, 1:30 PM	11/30/21, 4:50 AM	[redacted]@oracle.com

Done

- **Exchange Rate** - The Exchange Rates defined for the conversion of the Base Currency to the Exchange Currency.
 - **Exchange Rate Date** - The date and time when the Exchange Rate becomes effective.
 - **Create Date** - The date and time when the Exchange Rate was created.
 - **Create User Id** - The user ID of the person who created the Exchange Rate.
3. Click **Done** to close the window and return to the Exchange Rate Window.

Creating a New Exchange Rate

To create a new Exchange Rate for a currency conversion do the following:

1. Click the **Actions Menu**, and then click **Add**, or Click the **Add (+)** icon. The Create Exchange Rate window displays.

Figure 14-20 Create Exchange Rate

Create Exchange Rate X

Base Currency Platinum, Ounces ▼

Exchange Currency United States of Amei ▼

Exchange Rate Required

Effective Date 04/03/2023, 12:00 AM

Cancel OK

2. Enter the following information:
 - **Base Currency** - Select the basic currency from the list.
 - **Exchange Currency** - Select the Exchange Currency from the list.
 - **Exchange Rate** - Enter the Exchange Rate to use when converting the Base Currency to the Exchange Currency. The value entered can include up to 11 positions before the decimal and up to 6 after.
 - **Effective Date and Time** - Use the Calendar picker to select the date and time which the rate is effective. The date/time can be in the past or in the future. If an existing Exchange Rate for the specified date and time currently exists, the page displays an error.
3. Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the task without saving. If you select **OK**, you will receive a confirmation at the bottom of the window confirming the new exchange rate was successfully added. You are returned to the Exchange Rate window where the new exchange rate you just created now displays at the top of the list.
4. You can refresh the Exchange Rate list by clicking the **Refresh** icon or picking the **Refresh** option from the **Actions menu**.

File Review

As an Administrator, I want the ability to view files, so that I can manage downloading and transferring of files.

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.

2. Click **Admin**.
3. Click **File Review**.
4. Select either Available Files or Transfer Activity.

Searching for Available Files

In the File Review window select **Available Files**.

- Enter the following **search parameters** to search for Available Files.
 - Select a **File Type**.
 - Enter any or all of a **File Name**.
 - Enter the **From** and **To** Date Ranges.
 - Select whether or not to **Exclude Zero Length Files**.

Click **Search**.

You can refresh the Search Results by clicking the **Refresh** icon or picking the **Refresh** option from the **Actions menu**.

Sorting Available Files

The following fields can be sorted **Ascending** or **Descending**:

- Create Date
- File Length
- File Name
- File Type
- Job Run ID
- Record ID (default)

Viewing a File

To view a File, do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the File you want to view.
2. Click the **Actions** menu or the **View icon** to open the View File Details window.

Figure 14-21 View File Details

View segment_1399_run_0_2023-04-03-15-37-40.csv.gz File Details
✕

File Name	segment_1399_run_0_2023-04-03-15-37-40.csv.gz	File Length	502 B
File Type	EXPORT_SEGMENT	Transferred	Yes
Create Date	4/3/23, 3:37 PM	Transferred Date	4/3/23, 3:40 PM
Create User Id		Job Run ID	12743
		Record ID	26973

Associated Transfers

Transport	Location
OBJECT_STORAGE	exports/segments

Done

3. View the details of the file and click **Done** to close the window.

Downloading Files

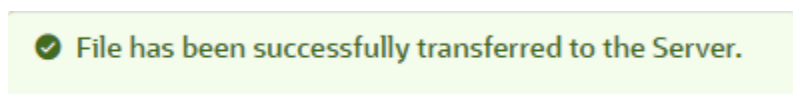
To download a file do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the File you want to download.
2. Click the **Actions** menu and select **Download**, or click the **Download icon** to download the file. The file is downloaded to a location based on your settings.

Transfer to Server

To transfer a file to the server do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the File you want to transfer to server.
2. Click the **Actions** menu and select **Transfer to Server**. A notification appears to indicate the transfer is a success.

Figure 14-22 Notification

Searching for Transfer Activity

In the File Review window select **Transfer Activity**.

- Enter the following **search parameters** to search for Transfer Activity.
 - Select a **Transfer Type**.
 - Enter any or all of a **File Name**.
 - Select a **Status**. Options include:
 - * All (default)
 - * New Entry
 - * Waiting
 - * Transfer Started
 - * Transfer Retry
 - * Transfer Failed
 - * Completed
 - * Historical
 - * Discard
 - Select a **Transport** option.

Click **Search**.

You can refresh the Search Results by clicking the **Refresh** icon or picking the **Refresh** option from the **Actions menu**.

Sorting Transfer Activity

The following fields can be sorted **Ascending** or **Descending**:

- Attempt
- File Name
- Last Updated (default)
- Message
- Retry
- Status
- Transfer Type
- Transport

Viewing a Transfer Activity

To view a Transfer Activity, do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the File you want to view.
2. Click the **Actions** menu or the **View icon** to open the View File Details window.

Figure 14-23 View File Details

View segment_1399_run_0_2023-04-03-15-37-40.csv.gz File Details
✕

File Name	<input type="text" value="segment_1399_run_0_2023-04-03-15-37-40.csv.gz"/>	File Length	<input type="text" value="502 B"/>
File Type	<input type="text" value="EXPORT_SEGMENT"/>	Transferred	<input type="text" value="Yes"/>
Create Date	<input type="text" value="4/3/23, 3:37 PM"/>	Transferred Date	<input type="text" value="4/3/23, 3:40 PM"/>
Create User Id	<input type="text"/>	Job Run ID	<input type="text" value="12743"/>
		Record ID	<input type="text" value="26973"/>

Associated Transfers

Transport	Location
OBJECT_STORAGE	exports/segments

3. View the details of the file and click **Done** to close the window.

Retry a Failed Transfer

Only files that have the status of Transfer Failed are eligible for a Retry. Do the following to Retry a Failed Transfer.

1. Highlight the **row** of the File you want to retry.
2. Click the **Actions** menu and select **Retry**, or click the **Retry icon** to retry the transfer.

Franchisees

You have the ability to view, add, edit, and delete a franchisee to be used within the system. Additionally, users and locations can be added and deleted on a franchisee as well as viewing a list of customers that are currently assigned to a franchisee. A list of Franchisees can also be imported.

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click **Admin**.
3. Click **Franchisees**.

Searching for Franchisees

Enter the following **search parameters** to search for Franchisees.

- Enter all or part of a **Franchisee ID**.
- Enter all or part of a **Name**.

- Enter all or part of a **Description**.
- Enter all or part of a **City**.
- Enter all or part of a **State**.

Click **Search**.

You can refresh the Search Results by clicking the **Refresh** icon or picking the **Refresh** option from the **Actions** menu.

Sorting Available Franchisees

The following fields can be sorted **Ascending** or **Descending**:

- City
- Description
- Franchisee ID (default)
- Name
- State

Viewing a Franchisee

To view a Franchisee, do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the Franchisee you want to view.
2. Click the **Actions** menu or the **View icon** to open the View Franchisee window.

Figure 14-24 View Franchisee

The screenshot shows a 'View Franchisee' window with the following details:

Franchisee Details					
Franchisee ID	49	Name	Austin	Description	VB-Austin Franchisee
Address Line 1		Address Line 2		Address Line 3	
Address Line 4		City		State	
Postal Code		Email		Phone Number	

Assigned Users

Actions ▾ | + | ×

No Users Assigned

Done

3. View the details of the Franchisee and click **Done** to close the window.

Adding Franchisees

Do the following to add a new Franchisee.

1. Click the **Actions** menu and select **Add**, or click the **Add** icon (+).

2. Enter the following information:
 - Franchisee ID (automatically assigned after save)
 - Name
 - Description
 - Address Line 1
 - Address Line 2
 - Address Line 3
 - Address Line 4
 - City
 - State
 - Postal Code
 - Email
 - Phone Number
3. Select **OK** to save or **Cancel** to exit. You do not at this time have to add users. If you wish to associate users to the new Franchisee at this time, then proceed to the [Assign Users](#) section.

Assign Users

4. In the Assign Users section of the Create Franchisee window, click the **Actions Menu**, and then click **Add**, or click the **Add (+)** icon. The Add Users window displays.

Figure 14-25 Add Users

Add User [X]

Search for User

Search by user ID or name or email address or loc: [X] Search Partial Exact

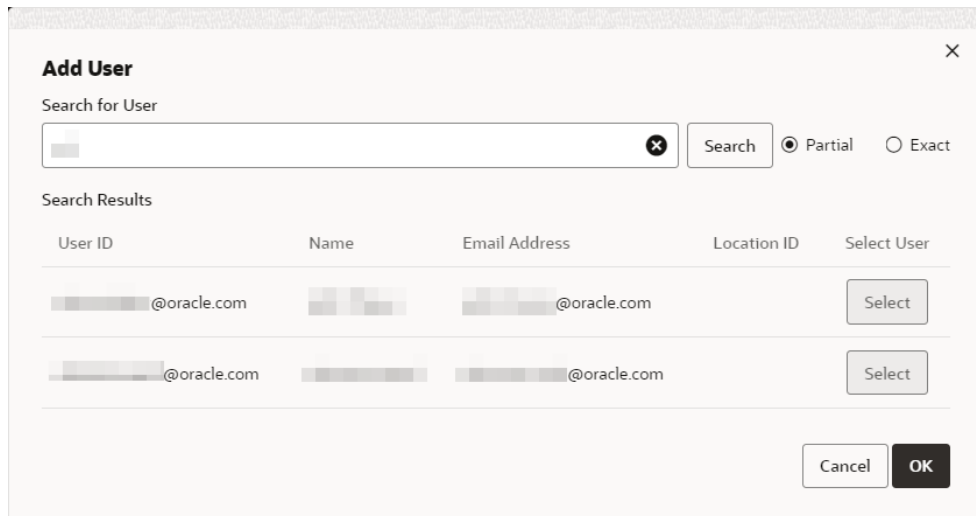
Search Results

User ID	Name	Email Address	Location ID	Select User
No users found using search criteria.				

Cancel OK

5. In the Search for User field, enter the **User ID**, **Name**, **Email Address**, or **Location** of the user you want to search for.
6. Select **Partial**, if you want to results that match part of what you enter, or select **Exact** if you only want results that are an exact match.
7. Click **Search**. A list of users matching the search text is displayed in the Search Results grid.

Figure 14-26 Search Results Grid



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add User" with a search bar and a table of search results. The search bar contains a search term and a "Search" button. Below the search bar are radio buttons for "Partial" (selected) and "Exact". The search results are displayed in a table with columns: User ID, Name, Email Address, Location ID, and Select User. There are two rows of results, each with a "Select" button. At the bottom of the dialog are "Cancel" and "OK" buttons.

User ID	Name	Email Address	Location ID	Select User
[Redacted]	[Redacted]	[Redacted]@oracle.com		Select
[Redacted]	[Redacted]	[Redacted]@oracle.com		Select

8. For each user you wish to assign, click **Select**.
9. For each user you wish to unassign, click **Unselect**.
10. Click **OK** to accept the changes, or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
11. Select **OK** to save or **Cancel** to exit. You do not at this time have to add locations. If you wish to associate locations to the new franchisee at this time, then proceed to the [Assign Locations](#) section.

Assign Locations

12. In the Assign Locations section of the Create Franchisee window, click the **Actions Menu**, and then click **Add**, or click the **Add (+)** icon. The Add Location window displays.

Figure 14-27 Add Location

Add Location ✕

Search For Locations

Search by Location ID or Name ✕ Search

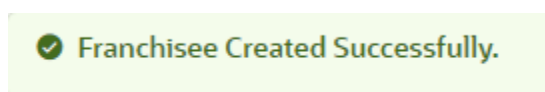
0 Locations Selected

<input type="checkbox"/>	Location ID	Location Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	00004	
<input type="checkbox"/>	00002	

Cancel OK

13. Enter **all** or **part** of a **Location ID** or **Name**.
 14. Click **Search**.
 15. Select the top **Location ID** check box to add all locations, or select each **individual Location ID** check box for each location to assign to the Franchisee.
 16. Click **OK** to accept the changes, or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
 17. Click **OK** to create the new franchisee, or click **Cancel** to close without saving.
- A notification appears to indicate the successful creation of a Franchisee.

Figure 14-28 Notification



Editing Franchisees

To edit a Franchisee do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the Franchisee.
2. Click the **Actions** menu and select **Edit**, or click the **Edit (Pencil)** icon.
3. **Edit** the Franchisee. See [Adding Franchisees](#) for more information.

Deleting a Franchisee

To delete a Franchisee do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the Franchisee.
2. Click the **Actions** menu and select **Delete**, or click the **Delete (X)** icon.

A notification appears confirming the successful deletion of the Franchisee.

Figure 14-29 Notification



✓ Franchisee Deleted Successfully.

Note:

The delete function will not process if the Franchisee is associated with one or more customers. A notification appears to indicate the process did not complete.

Viewing Assigned Customers to a Franchisee

To view the assigned customers to a franchisee do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the Franchisee.
2. Click the **Actions** menu and select **View Customers**, or click the **View Customers** icon.

The Customer Search window opens. The Search Results section lists the customers assigned to the franchisee.

Figure 14-30 Customer Search Results

Customer Search

Search

Last Name

First Name

Business Name

Address

City

Search Results

12 Customers Found Sort By

Customer Name and Address	Last Visit	Activity YTD	Average Spend LTD
<input type="button" value="VB"/> [Redacted] (ID 10959376) No Address Available	6/8/21 Location 0160	\$0.00	\$168.19
<input type="button" value="VB"/> [Redacted] (ID 10959378) No Address Available		\$0.00	\$0.00

3. Close the **Customer Search** tab to return to the Franchisees.

Import Franchisees using CSV File

You have the ability to import a csv file containing the franchisees for a client, so that they can be brought into Customer Engagement without creating them all manually.

To import by CSV do the following:

1. Click the Actions menu and select Import CSV file.

Figure 14-31 Import CSV File

Import CSV File

Drop file here or click to upload

2. To add a file either:
 - **Drag and Drop** a new file as shown in
 - Click anywhere in the **Drop file here or click to upload** box.
3. After uploading the CSV file, it will scan for viruses and validate the uploaded file's name, size, and extension. After passing the validations, the name of the file will appear on the popup and the **OK** button is enabled
4. Click **OK** to import the file or click **Cancel** the close the window without saving.

 **Note:**

The Franchisees from the CSV file will be read, validated, and saved into the database and the appropriate response message will be displayed. Failure response will also be shown on the click of OK, in case of invalid CSV file. Click **Done** to close the window and refresh the base Franchisees screen.

Location Management

Use the Location Management window to add or edit a location.

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click the **Admin Task**.
3. Click the **Location Management Task**.

The following information is displayed for each location:

- **Location ID** – Unique ID of the Location.
- **Location Name** – Name of the Location.
- **Address** –Address 1 of the Location.
- **Franchisee Location** – Indicates whether the Location is a Franchisee.
- **Active** – Indicates whether the Location is currently active.

Filter the results by completing the following steps:

Filtering the Results

1. Enter the information in any available following fields:

Figure 14-32 Filter Options

Filters

Attribute

All ▼

Attribute Value

Location ID

Location Name

Address

City

State

Postal Code

Reset Apply

- **Attribute** – Additional, descriptive information about a Customer Engagement element.
 - **Attribute Value** – This is a dynamic field based on the attribute previously selected.
 - **Location ID** – Unique ID for the Location.
 - **Location Name** – Name of the Location.
 - **Address** – Address 1 of the Location.
 - **City** – City of the Location.
 - **State** – State or Province of the Location.
 - **Postal Code** – Postal Code or Zip Code of the Location.
2. Click **Apply** to filter the results, or click **Reset** to clear the fields.



Note:

The results remain the same even if you click **Reset**. Reset only clears the previously entered filter criteria. The results will only refresh when another filter is configured.

Adding a Location

Use the following steps to add a location:

Location Information

1. Click the **Add (+) icon**, or choose **Add** from the **Action** menu. This displays a Create Location window where you can enter the following information:

Figure 14-33 Create Location

Create Location
✕

Location Information

Location ID Required

Location Name Required

Location Number

E-Mail Address

Active

Address Line 1	<input type="text"/>	State	<input type="text"/>
Address Line 2	<input type="text"/>	Postal Code	<input type="text"/>
Address Line 3	<input type="text"/>	County	<input type="text"/>
Address Line 4	<input type="text"/>	Country	<input type="text"/>
City	<input type="text"/>	Franchisee	<input type="text" value="(Please select)"/>

Location Attributes

Actions ▼ | + ✎ ✕ |

No attributes assigned

2. Enter the values for the following fields:
 - **Location ID** - Unique ID of the Location (Required field).
 - **Location Name** - Name of the Location (Required field).
 - **Active** - Indicates whether the Location is currently active. The default is checked.

- **Location Number** - Location Number of the Location.
 - **Email Address** - Email address for the Location.
 - **Address Line 1** - Line 1 of the Location's address.
 - **Address Line 2** - Line 2 of the Location's address.
 - **Address Line 3** - Line 3 of the Location's address.
 - **Address Line 4** - Line 4 of the Location's address.
 - **City** - City of the Location.
 - **State** - State or Province of the Location.
 - **Postal Code** - Postal Code or ZIP Code of the Location.
 - **County** - County of the Location.
 - **Country** - Country of the Location.
 - **Franchisee** - Name of the Franchisee to which the Location is assigned (optional).
3. Either continue to the Location Attributes section or, if no Location Attribute additions are required, Click **OK** to create the Location. Click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

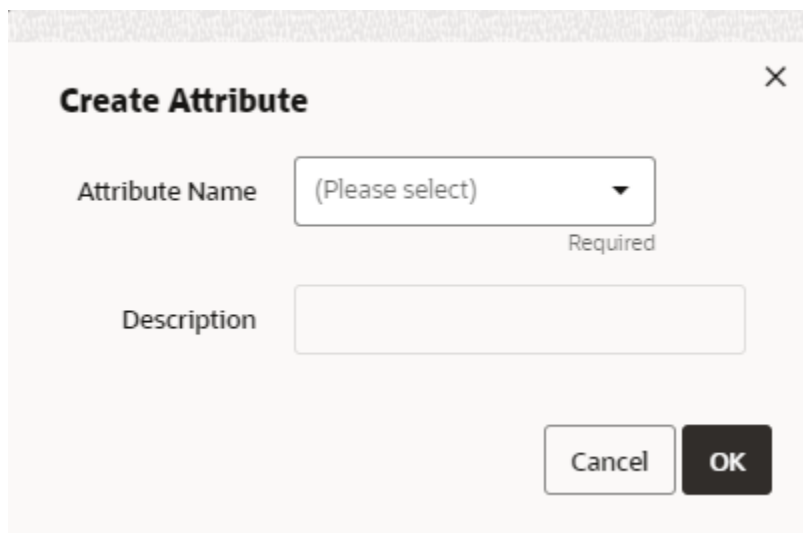
Location Attributes

If configured, the user can Add, Edit, or Delete Location Attributes.

Adding a Location Attribute

1. To add a Location attribute, click the **Action Menu** and click **Add** or click the **Add (+) icon**. This displays a Create Attribute window where you can enter the following information:

Figure 14-34 Create Location Attribute



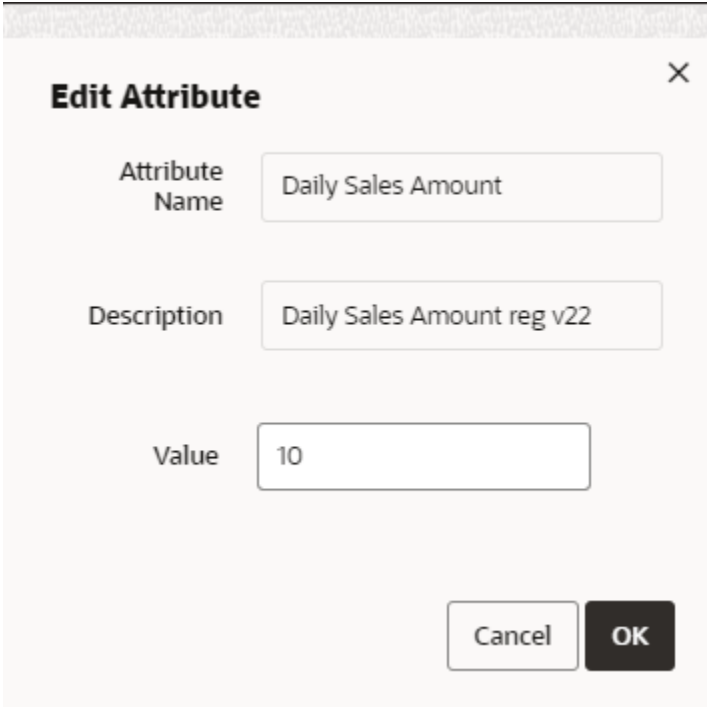
The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Create Attribute" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog contains two input fields: "Attribute Name" with a dropdown menu showing "(Please select)" and a "Required" label below it, and "Description" with a text input field. At the bottom right of the dialog are two buttons: "Cancel" and "OK".

- Click the **Attribute Name** list.
 - The Value field is dynamic and is based off of the data type of the attribute. The user either enters a value or selects a value from the list.
2. Click **OK**. This adds the new Location Attribute. Or select **Cancel** to close the window without adding the location attribute.

Editing a Location Attribute

1. To edit a Location attribute, highlight the Location Attribute and click the **Action Menu**, then click **Edit**, or click the **Edit icon**.

Figure 14-35 Edit Attribute



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Attribute" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog contains three input fields:

- Attribute Name:** A text box containing "Daily Sales Amount".
- Description:** A text box containing "Daily Sales Amount reg v22".
- Value:** A text box containing "10".

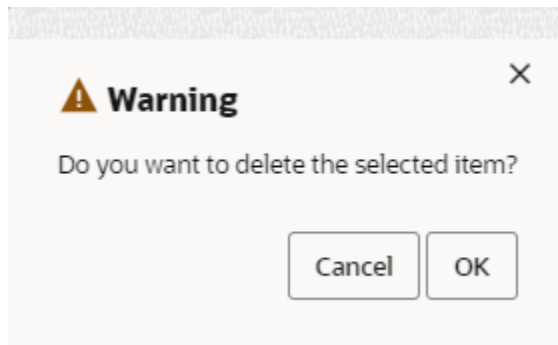
At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Cancel" and "OK".

2. Edit the location attribute value.
3. Click **Ok** to accept the change or **Cancel** to close without saving.

Deleting a Location Attribute

1. To delete a Location Attribute, highlight the **row** of the location attribute and from the Action menu, click **Delete**, or click the **Delete X icon**.

Figure 14-36 Warning



2. Click **OK** to delete the Location Attribute, or **Cancel** to return to the list of Location Attributes.
3. Once all Location Attributes are determined, click **OK** to create the location, or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Editing a Location

To edit the information in the Location Information, and/or Location Attribute sections for the Location, select the location from the Location Management window.

1. Click the **Edit** icon, or choose **Edit** from the **Actions** menu. This displays an Edit Location window which displays a window with details of the location:

Figure 14-37 Edit Location

Edit Location

Created by [redacted]@oracle.com on 10/29/20 Last updated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 2/27/23

Location Information

Location ID: 00005

Location Name: 00005-Solon-OH

Location Number: 5

E-Mail Address: Location-00005@dodgit.com

Active:

Address Line 1: [redacted] State: OH

Address Line 2: 2nd Floor Postal Code: 44139

Address Line 3: Building B Country: [redacted]

Address Line 4: [redacted] Country: USA

City: Solon Franchisee: (Please select)

Location Attributes

Actions: + ✎ ✕

No attributes assigned

Cancel OK

2. Make any necessary change to the Location Information fields, and/or the Location Attributes values.
3. Click **OK** to accept the changes. The location is displayed with the new information. Click **Cancel** to close without saving.

Managing External Application Access

As a retailer with external applications, I want a consistent view of the product integration with various application clients from Customer Engagement, so that my experience is the same regardless of the application I am in.

To view the list of application clients do the following:

1. Click **Tasks**.
2. Click **Admin**.
3. Click **Manage External Application Access**. The Manage External Application window displays.

Figure 14-38 Manage External Application Access

Manage External Application Access

Search by application Sort By Application Description Ascending + Generate Client Refresh Applications

Application Description	Client ID	Date Generated	
Bixler CE OnPrem Test	RGBU_XTROFFOP_BIX_XOFFICE_APPID (Enabled)	1/12/22	
E_COMM_TEST2	RGBU_CECS_WEDBVLXAX_APPID (Enabled)	11/23/21	⋮
External App 1	RGBU_CECS_ISEQJVJAR_APPID (Enabled)	9/27/21	⋮
Fall	RGBU_CECS_LSSKCUPD_APPID (Enabled)	9/28/21	⋮

Searching Application Clients

Enter part or all of an Application Description and press **Enter**.

Sorting Application Clients

You can Sort By the following options:

- Application Description (default)
- Client ID
- Date Generated

Applications can be sorted ascending or descending from the list.

Delete an Application Client

To delete an Application, do the following:

1. Click the **Action menu** of the Application you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete** which opens the delete confirmation window.
3. Click **OK** to delete the Application or **Cancel** to close the window without deleting the application.

Note:

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the Application is deleted.

Disable an Application Client

To disable an Application, do the following:

1. Click the **Action menu** of the Application you want to disable.
2. Click **Disable** which opens the disable confirmation window.
3. Click **OK** to disable the Application or **Cancel** to close the window without disabling the application.



Note:

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the Application is disabled.

Regenerate Secret

To regenerate secret, do the following:

1. Click the **Action menu** of the Application you want to regenerate secret.
2. Click the **Regenerate Secret** which opens the confirmation window.
3. Click **OK** to continue the process, or **Cancel** to close the window without regenerating secret. The Regenerate Application Client Secret window opens.
4. The window confirms a new secret will be generated. The Application Details display. Click Regenerate to regenerate secret or Cancel to close the window without saving. The Generated Credentials appear.

Figure 14-39 Generated Credentials

Regenerate Application Client Secret ×

Application Details

A new secret will be generated for the application.

Client ID

Application Type External

Application Description

Environment

Generated Credentials

⚠ The secret will no longer be available to copy once the Done button is selected.

Client ID

Secret

5. Click **Copy to Clipboard** to copy the **Client ID**.
6. Click **Copy to Clipboard** to copy the **Secret**.
7. Click **Done** to close the window.

 **Note:**

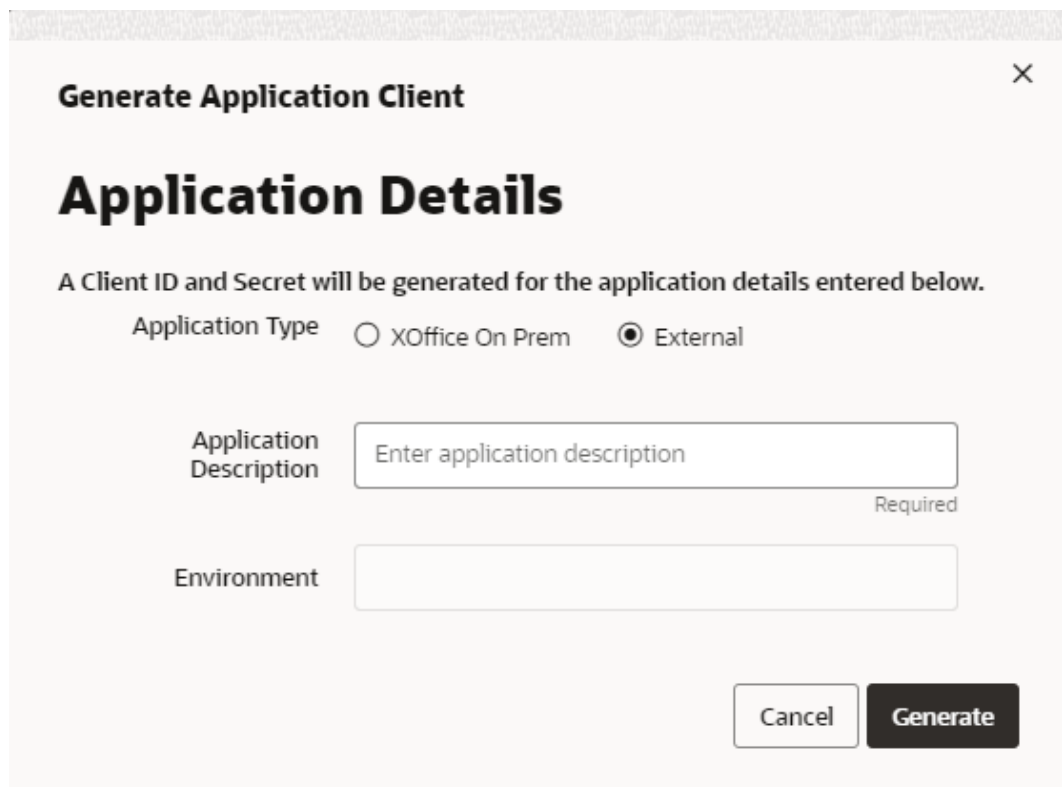
The secret will no longer be available to copy once the Done button is selected.

Generate Client

You have the ability to generate an application client for IDCS or OCI-IAM from Customer Engagement, so that my experience is the same regardless of the application I am in. To generate a client do the following:

1. From the Manage External Applications Access window, click **+ Generate Client**. The Generate Application Client window opens.

Figure 14-40 Generate Application Client



Generate Application Client ✕

Application Details

A Client ID and Secret will be generated for the application details entered below.

Application Type XOffice On Prem External

Application Description Required

Environment

2. Select an **Application Type**.
 - XOffice On Prem
 - External
3. Enter the **Application Description**.
4. Enter the **Environment**. (only available for XOffice On Prem)
5. Click **Generate**. The Generated Credentials appear.

Figure 14-41 Generated Credentials

Generate Application Client

Application Details


A Client ID and Secret will be generated for the application details entered below.

Application Type External


Application Description

Environment


Generated Credentials

 The secret will no longer be available to copy once the Done button is selected.

Client ID

 Copy to Clipboard

Secret

 Copy to Clipboard

Done

- Click **Copy to Clipboard** to copy the Client ID and Secret in order to paste into the configuration for linking applications. You will receive a notification: "Copied" for the Client ID. For Secret, a confirmation window appears if you have the Client ID still in memory. Click **OK** to copy the Client Secret or **Cancel** to close that confirmation without copying.

 **Note:**

You may also manually highlight the Client ID and Secret and use Copy/Paste.

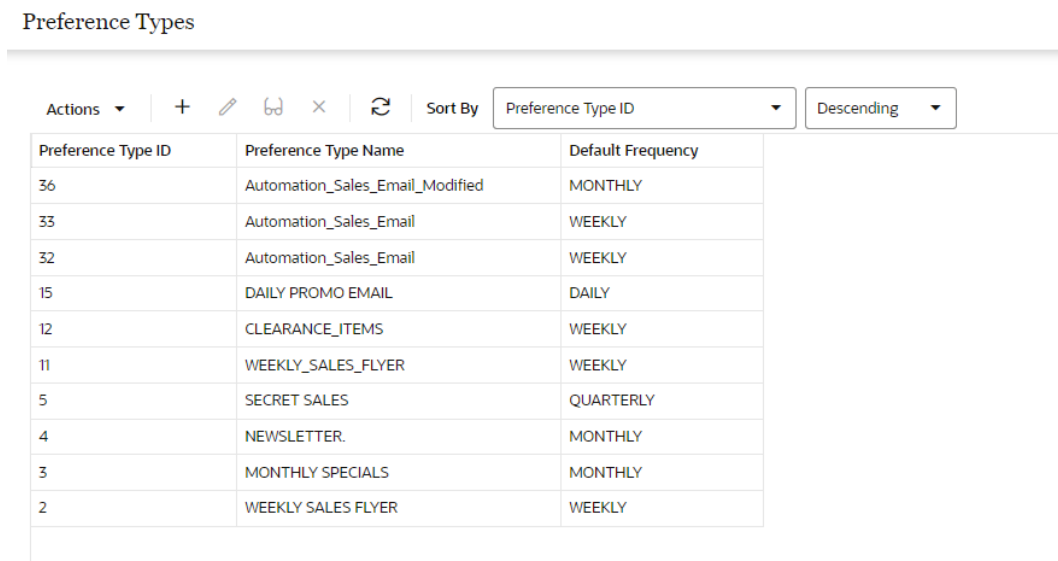
Preference Types

Preference Types are methods in which a customer can receive promotional information from the retailer. In this section, you can sort, add, edit, view, and delete preference types, so that you can setup unlimited preference types to use with the Customer Preference Center. To access Preference Types:

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click the **Admin Task**.
3. Click the **Preference Types Task**.

Figure 14-42 Preference Types

Preference Types



Preference Type ID	Preference Type Name	Default Frequency
36	Automation_Sales_Email_Modified	MONTHLY
33	Automation_Sales_Email	WEEKLY
32	Automation_Sales_Email	WEEKLY
15	DAILY PROMO EMAIL	DAILY
12	CLEARANCE_ITEMS	WEEKLY
11	WEEKLY_SALES_FLYER	WEEKLY
5	SECRET SALES	QUARTERLY
4	NEWSLETTER.	MONTHLY
3	MONTHLY SPECIALS	MONTHLY
2	WEEKLY SALES FLYER	WEEKLY

Sorting Preference Types

You can sort by:

- Default Frequency
- Preference Type ID
- Preference Type Name

Preference types can be sorted ascending or descending from the list.

Adding a Preference Type

To add a Preference Type do the following:

1. To add a Preference Type, click the **Action Menu** and click **Add**, or click the **Add (+) icon**. This displays the Create Preference Type window where you can enter the following information:

Figure 14-43 Create Preference Type

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Create Preference Type" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog contains two required fields: "Preference Type Name" (a text input field) and "Default Frequency" (a dropdown menu with "(Please select)" as the current selection). At the bottom, there are "Cancel" and "OK" buttons.

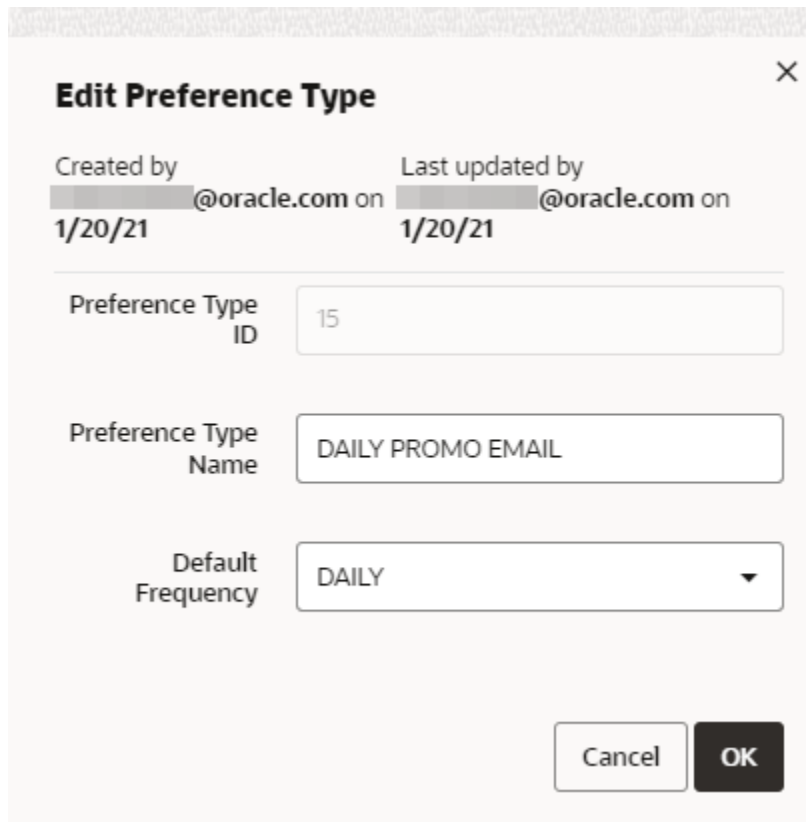
2. Type a Preference Type Name and choose one of the following default frequencies – both fields are required (these frequencies are configurable).
 - Anytime
 - Weekly
 - Monthly
 - Yearly
 - Daily
 - Quarterly
3. Click **OK** to add the new Preference Type. Click **Cancel** to close the window.

Editing a Preference Type

To edit a Preference Type, do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the Preference Type you want to edit and click the **Actions** menu or the **Edit icon** to open the Edit Preference Type window.

Figure 14-44 Edit Preference Type



Edit Preference Type [X]

Created by [redacted]@oracle.com on 1/20/21 Last updated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 1/20/21

Preference Type ID: 15

Preference Type Name: DAILY PROMO EMAIL

Default Frequency: DAILY [v]

Cancel OK

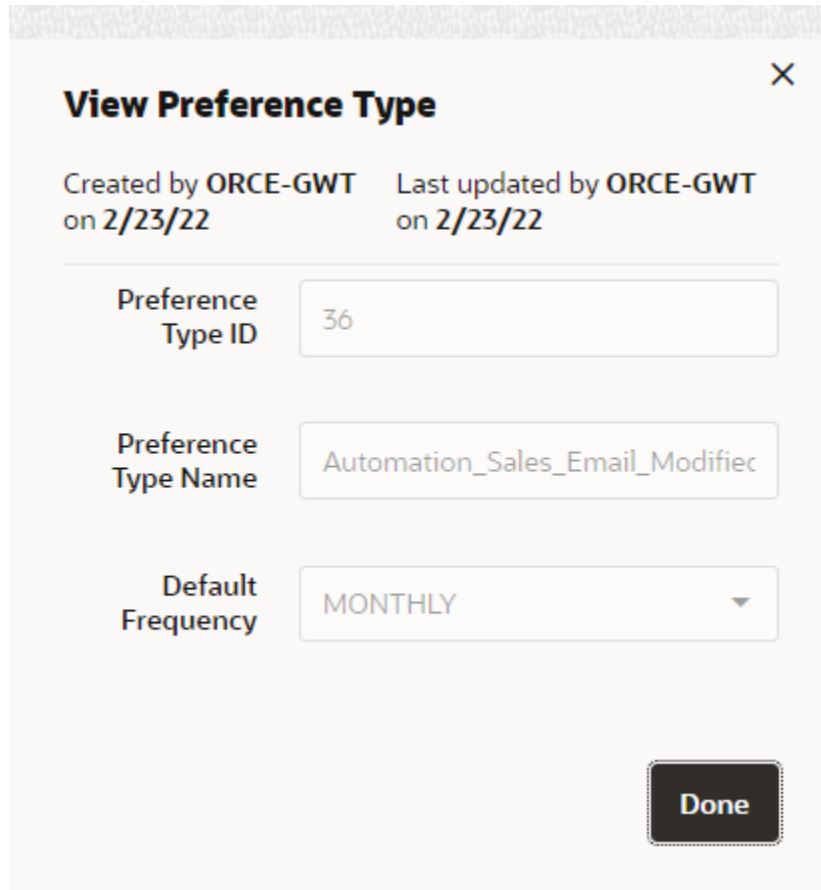
2. Edit the Preference Type Name or select a different Default Frequency and click **OK**. Click **Cancel** to close the window and discard any changes.

Viewing a Preference Type

To view a Preference Type, do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the Preference Type you want to view.
2. Click the **Actions** menu or the **View icon** to open the View Preference Type window.

Figure 14-45 View Preference Type



View Preference Type ✕

Created by ORCE-GWT on 2/23/22 Last updated by ORCE-GWT on 2/23/22

Preference Type ID: 36

Preference Type Name: Automation_Sales_Email_Modific

Default Frequency: MONTHLY

Done

3. View the details of the Preference Type and click **Done** to close the window.

Delete a Preference Type

To delete a Preference Type, do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the Preference Type you want to delete.
2. Click the **Actions** menu **Delete** option, or the **Delete icon** which opens the delete confirmation window.
3. Click **OK** to delete the Preference Type or **Cancel** to close the window without deleting the row.

 **Note:**

A confirmation notification appears to confirm the Preference Type has been deleted.

Role Groups

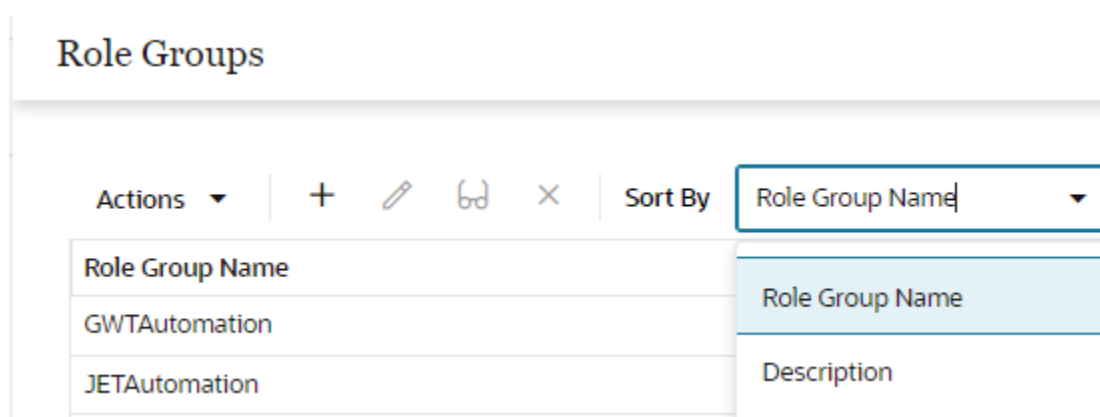
You have the ability to view, add, edit, and delete role groups, so that you can define which permissions should be granted to a role group. To access Role Groups do the following:

1. Click **Menu**.
2. Click the **Admin** task.
3. Click **Role Groups**. The Role Groups window displays.

Sorting Role Groups

Roles Groups can be sorted ascending or descending using the following Sort By options:

Figure 14-46 Sorting Role Groups



- Role Group Name (default)
- Description

Adding Role Groups

To add a Role Group do the following:

1. Click the **Actions** menu **Add** option, or the **+** icon which opens the Add Role Group window.
2. Enter a Role Group Name.
3. Enter a Description.
4. Use the **Select All** check box to select all Effective Roles or select **individual** Effective Roles using the check box **next** to the role.
5. Click **OK** to add the role group, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Editing Role Groups

To edit a Role Group do the following:

1. Highlight a **Role Group**.
2. Click the **Actions** menu **Edit** option, or the **Pencil icon** which opens the Edit Role Group window.

Figure 14-47 Edit Role Group

Edit Role Group [X]

Role Group Detail

Role Group Name
STG

Description
Security Testing Group

Effective Roles

Select All

- AccountAdmin
- AccountRedemption
- AccountReloads
- AccountReverse
- AccountVoid
- ApiAccess

Cancel OK

3. Edit the **Description**.

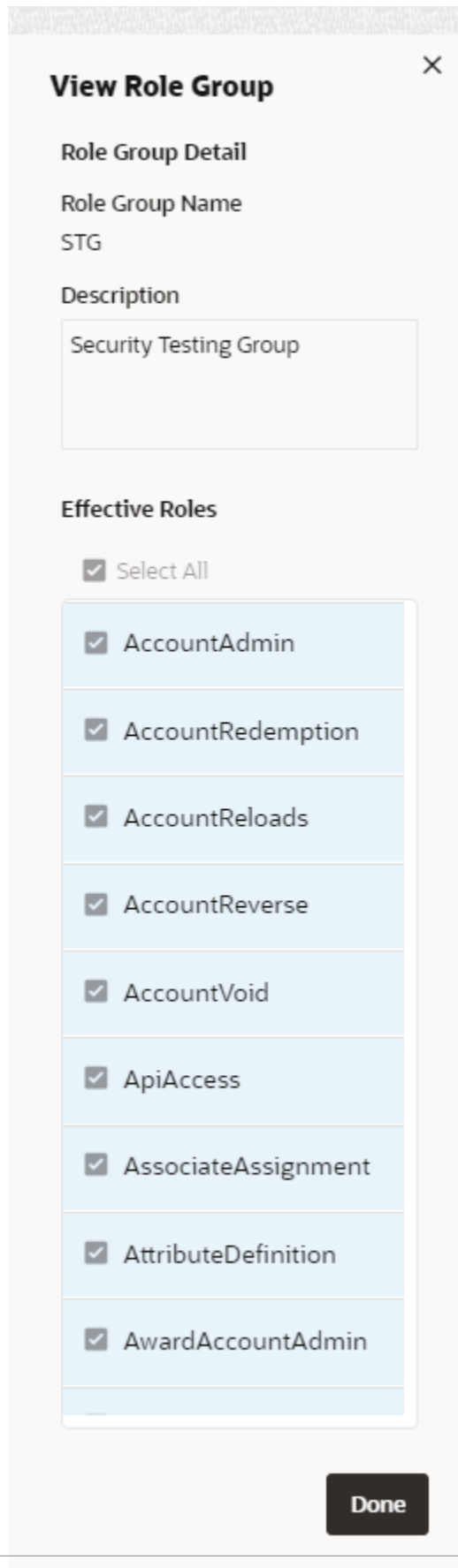
4. Edit the **Effective Roles**.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

View Role Group

To view a Role Group do the following:

1. Highlight a **Role Group**.
2. Click the **Actions** menu **View** option, or the **Eyeglasses icon**. The View Role Group window displays.

Figure 14-48 View Role Group



3. Click **Done** to close the window.

Delete Role Group

To delete a Role Group do the following:

1. Highlight a **Role Group**.
2. Click the **Actions** menu **Delete** option, or the **X icon**.
3. Click **Yes** to delete the Role Group, or click **No** to close the window without saving.

Security Groups

Security Groups determine whether Users can access and/or modify Customer information in that Security Group. Each Security Group is assigned a certain permission level for the Customers in that group. Each User assigned to a Security Group is assigned the permissions for that Security Group.



Note:

This option is available only if the user has been assigned the `SystemAdmin` role. See the [Oracle Retail Customer Engagement Cloud Service Implementation Guide](#) for more information on assigning User Roles.

Accessing Security Groups

To access the Security Groups do the following:

1. Click **Menu**.
2. Click the **Admin** task.
3. Click the **Security Groups** task. The Security Groups window displays.

Figure 14-49 Security Groups

Security Groups

Group ID	Group Name	Default Privilege	Active
1	Manager	Read/Write	✓
2	User	Read/Write	
3	Cashier!	Limited Read	✓
4	Designers	No Access	✓

The following fields are displayed:

- The following fields are displayed:

- **Group ID** – ID of the Security Group.
- **Group Name** – Name of the Security Group.
- **Default Privilege** – The access privileges given to Users in the Security Group. These access privileges are specific to the Customer. For a description of the Default Privilege Types, see , Default Privilege.
- **Active** – Indicates whether the Security Group is Active or not.

Sorting Results

In the Security Groups window, the user can sort the list to refine the results (see [Figure 14-49](#)). Results can be sorted Ascending or Descending using the following sorting options:

- Active
- Default Privilege
 - Read/Write
 - Read Only
 - Limited Read
 - No Access
- Group ID (Default)
- Group Name

Working with the Security Groups

Creating a New Security Group

To create a new Security Group do the following:

1. Click the **Actions Menu**, and then click **Add**, or Click the **Add (+)** icon. The Create Security Group window displays.

Figure 14-50 Create Security Group

2. Enter the following information:
 - Group ID – (Read Only) Automatically assigned ID of the Security Group.
 - Group Name – (Required) The name you want to give to the Security Group.
 - Active – Indicates whether the Security Group is Active or not.
 - Default Privilege – Security Groups have the following privilege types available, listed in order from most permissible to least.
 - **Read/Write** - Users in the Security Group can read and update all data for Customers who have had the Security Group applied.
 - **Read Only** - Users in the Security Group can read all data for Customers who have had the Security Group applied, but cannot make updates.
 - **Limited Read** - Users in the Security Group can read some data for Customers who have had the Security Group applied, but cannot read sensitive Customer information (such as Address, Telephone Numbers, and Email Addresses) and cannot make updates.
 - **No Access** - A User in the Security Group will not even see that the Customer exists in the system.
3. Select **OK** to save or **Cancel** to exit. You do not at this time have to add users. If you wish to associate users to the new group at this time, then proceed to the [Assign Users](#) section.

Assign Users

4. In the Assign Users section of the Create Security Group window, click the **Actions Menu**, and then click **Add**, or Click the **Add (+)** icon. The Assign Users window displays.

Figure 14-51 Assign Users

Assign Users [X]

Search for User

Search by user ID or name or email address or loca [X] Search Partial Exact

Search Results

User ID	Name	Email Address	Location ID	Assign To Security Group
No users found using search criteria.				

Cancel OK

5. In the Search for User field, enter the **User ID**, **Name**, **Email Address**, or **Location** of the user you want to search for.
6. Select **Partial**, if you want to results that match part of what you enter, or select **Exact** if you only want results that are an exact match.
7. Click **Search**. A list of users matching the search text is displayed in the Search Results grid.

Figure 14-52 Search Results Grid

Assign Users [X]

Search for User

[Redacted] [X] Search Partial Exact

Search Results

User ID	Name	Email Address	Location ID	Assign To Security Group
[Redacted]	[Redacted]	[Redacted]@oracle.com	[Redacted]	Assign
[Redacted]	[Redacted]	[Redacted]@oracle.com	[Redacted]	

Cancel OK

8. For each user you wish to assign, click **Assign**.
9. For each user you wish to unassign, click **Unassign**.
10. Click **OK** to accept the changes, or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
11. Click **OK** to save the new Security Group, or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
12. Click the **Refresh** icon to update the Security Groups results.

Viewing Security Group Details

To view Security Group Details do the following:

1. Highlight a **Security Group** from the list of results.
2. Click the **Actions Menu**, and then click **View**, or click the **View** icon. The View Security Group window displays.

Figure 14-53 View Security Group

The screenshot shows a window titled "View Security Group" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Below the title bar, it displays "Created by [redacted]@oracle.com on 10/16/20" and "Last updated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 4/12/22". The main content is divided into two sections: "Security Group Information" and "Assign Users".

Security Group Information

Group ID	<input type="text" value="1"/>	Default Privilege	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Read/Write
			<input type="radio"/> Read Only
Group Name	<input type="text" value="Manager"/>		<input type="radio"/> Limited Read
			<input type="radio"/> No Access
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

Assign Users

Actions ▾ | + | ×

No Users available to display

Done

The following information is displayed:

- **Group ID** - ID of the Security Group.
 - **Group Name** - Name of the Security Group.
 - **Active** - Indicates whether the Security Group Privilege is active or not.
 - **Privilege Type** - Determine the access privileges given to Users in the Security Group.
3. Click **Done** to close the window and return to the Security Group window.

Edit an Existing Security Group

To edit the Security Group Details do the following:

1. In the Security Group window, highlight a **Security Group** you wish to edit.
2. Click the **Actions Menu**, and then click **Edit**, or click the **Edit** icon. The Edit Security Group window displays.

Figure 14-54 Edit Security Group

Edit Security Group

Created by [redacted]@oracle.com on 10/16/20 Last updated by [redacted]@oracle.com on 4/12/22

Security Group Information

Group ID:

Group Name:

Active:

Default Privilege: Read/Write
 Read Only
 Limited Read
 No Access

Assign Users

Actions:

No Users available to display

- The following fields are editable:
 - Group Name
 - Active
 - Default Privilege
- You may edit the assigned users section to **Add** new, or **Remove**, any existing users.
- Select **OK** to save or **Cancel** to exit.

System Configuration

You have the ability to view and edit system configurations, so that the system can be configured to work in the way the business operates.



Note:

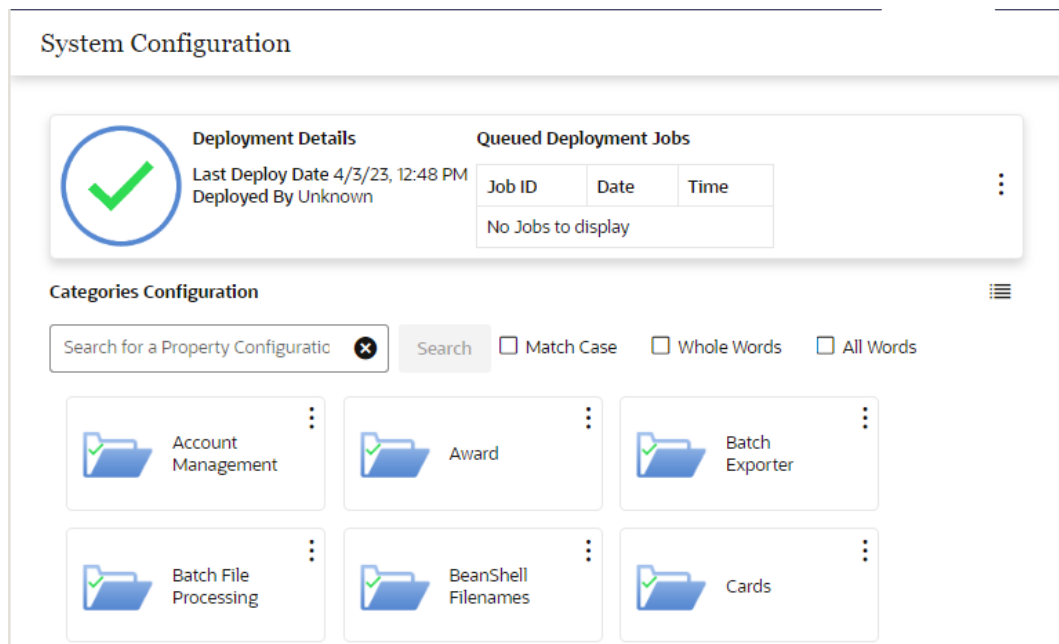
System Administration authority is required for all options in the System configuration feature.

Accessing System Configuration





To access System Configuration do the following:

- Click **Menu**.
- Click the **Admin** task.
- Click the **System Configuration** task. The System Configuration window displays.

Figure 14-55 System Configuration



The Status Indicator icons include:

Icon	Description
	All Good - The configuration is stable.
	Error - An error has been detected in one or more of the configuration settings.
	Waiting Deployment - A change has been made to one or more of the configuration settings, but has not yet been deployed.
	Deploying - The system is currently deploying or activation changes that have been made.

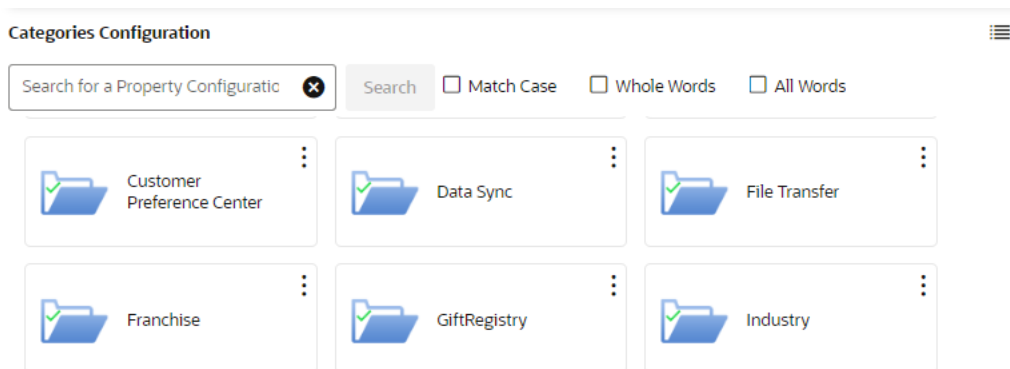
The System Configuration window consists of the following areas:

- Deployment Details
 - Queued Deployment Jobs
 - Categories Configuration
4. To refresh the results at any time click the System Configuration **Action** menu and click **Refresh**.

Categories Configuration

The Categories Configuration displays the Property Configurations.

Figure 14-56 Categories Configuration



Searching for Property Configurations

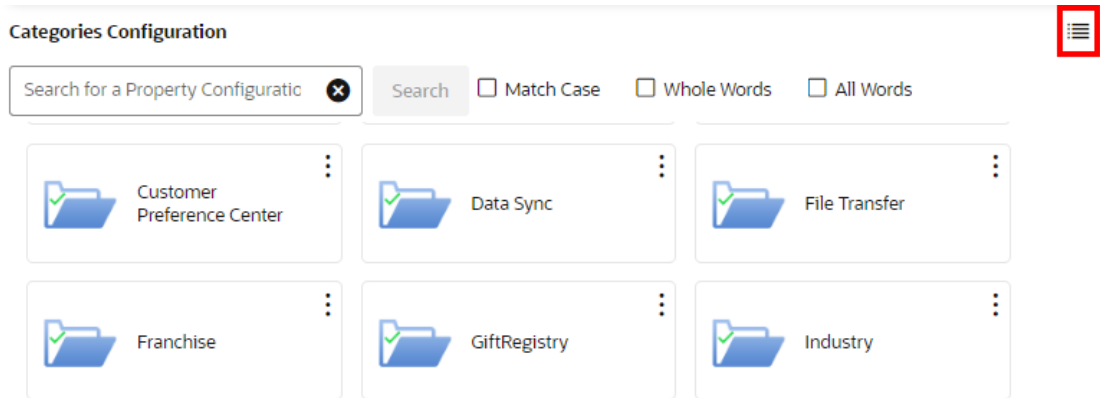
To search for a Property Configuration do the following:

1. Enter **any** or **all** of a **Property Configuration** name.
2. You may use search options that include:
 - Match Case
 - Whole Words
 - All Words
3. Click **Search**.
4. To reset the search click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Return to Categories**.

Categories Configuration Views

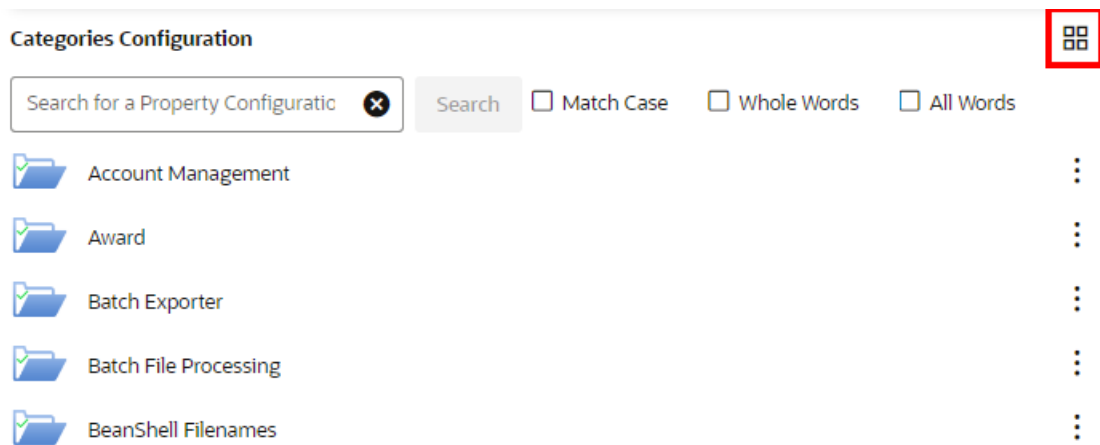
Click the **Switch to List** view icon to see the configurations in list form.

Figure 14-57 Switch to List



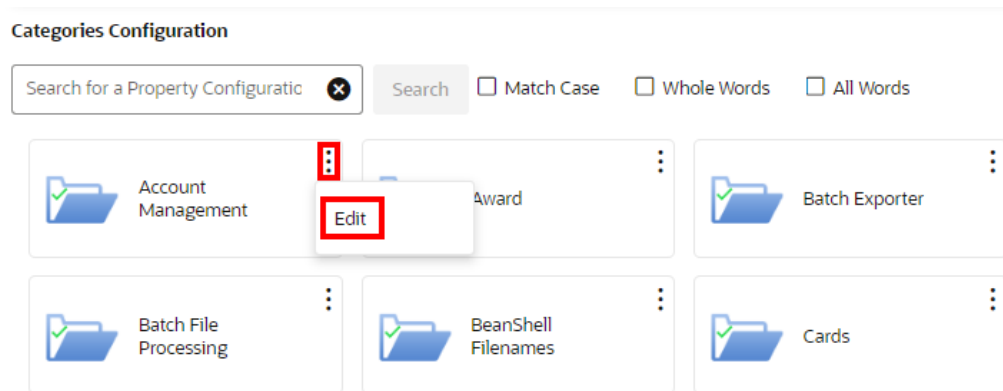
Click the **Switch to Card** view icon to see the configurations in list form.

Figure 14-58 Switch to Card

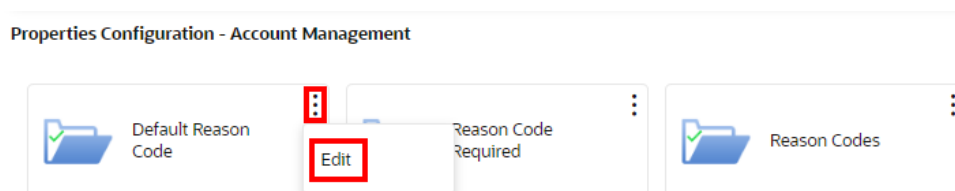


Viewing Property Configurations

To view a Property Configuration do the following:

Figure 14-59 Property Configuration

1. Click a **Category Configuration** tile or click the **Action** menu for that tile and click **Edit**. The Property Configurations for that Category Configuration displays.

Figure 14-60 Properties Configurations

2. To Edit the Property Configuration click the **tile** or click the **Action** menu and click **Edit**.
3. Make any **Value** changes deemed necessary.
4. Enter a **Justification**.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

 **Note:**

Saved property configurations need to be deployed. See [Deploy](#) for more information.

6. At any time you can refresh the results by clicking the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Refresh**.
7. To return to the Categories Configuration click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Return to Categories**.

Working with System Configurations

The following Action Menu options include:

- **Audit Log** - Review a listing of configuration activity, including property changes, deployment, imports and uploads.

- [Cancel Deploy](#) - Revert any properties that are awaiting deployment.
- [Deploy](#) - Update the system with any configuration property changes made.
- [Export File](#) - Export one or more configuration files for subsequent upload and import to another organization. Requires System Administration authority.
- [Import File](#) - Import an uploaded configuration file. Requires System Administration authority.
- [Refresh](#) - Redisplay the configuration categories, refreshing with any updates.
- [Rollback](#) - Advance to a page displaying the date and time when changes were deployed and where it is possible to roll back the deployed changes. Requires System Administration authority.
- [Upload File](#) - Upload one or more configuration files prior to import. Requires System Administration authority.
- [Upload Default File](#) - Upload default base configuration Beanshell template file.


Audit Log

To access the Audit Log do the following:

1. Click the **Action** menu.
2. Click **Audit Log**. The Audit Log window displays.

Figure 14-61 Audit Log

System Configuration



Deployment Details
Last Deploy Date 4/3/23, 12:48 PM
Deployed By Unknown

Queued Deployment Jobs

Job ID	Date	Time
No Jobs to display		

Audit Log

Sort By Update Date ▼ Descendin ▼

Audit Type	Update User ID	Update Date	Comment
DEPLOY	[REDACTED]	4/3/23, 12:48 PM	
PROPERTY CHANGE	[REDACTED]	4/3/23, 12:47 PM	test
PROPERTY CHANGE	[REDACTED]	4/3/23, 12:47 PM	non_strata_segment_batch_exporterbad
DEPLOY	[REDACTED]	4/3/23, 12:39 PM	

Audit Type is the type of activity performed. Possible audit types include:

- CANCEL DEPLOY - A scheduled deployment was canceled.
- DEPLOY - One or more property changes were deployed.
- EXPORTED FILE - A user selected the Export File option. The audit record indicates whether the export was successful.

- IMPORT AUTHORIZATION - An imported configuration file was authorized.
- IMPORT FAILED - An uploaded configuration file could not be imported
- IMPORTED FILE - An uploaded configuration file was successfully imported
- PROPERTY CHANGE - A property setting was changed.
- ROLLBACK - The changes in a deployment were reverted back to the previous value.
- UPLOAD - A configuration file was uploaded.

Other fields in the Audit Log include:

- Update User ID - The user ID of the person performing the activity.
 - Update Date - The date and time when the activity took place.
 - Comment - The comment or reason entered by the user at the Enter Reason for Change window. Displayed for property changes, override changes, and rollbacks.
3. The Audit Log is sorted ascending or descending using the following Sort By options:
 - Audit Type
 - Update Date (default)
 - Update User ID
 4. To view the Audit Log details, click the **Action** menu for the desired Audit Log and click **View**. The Audit Log appears.

Figure 14-62 Audit Log - Example

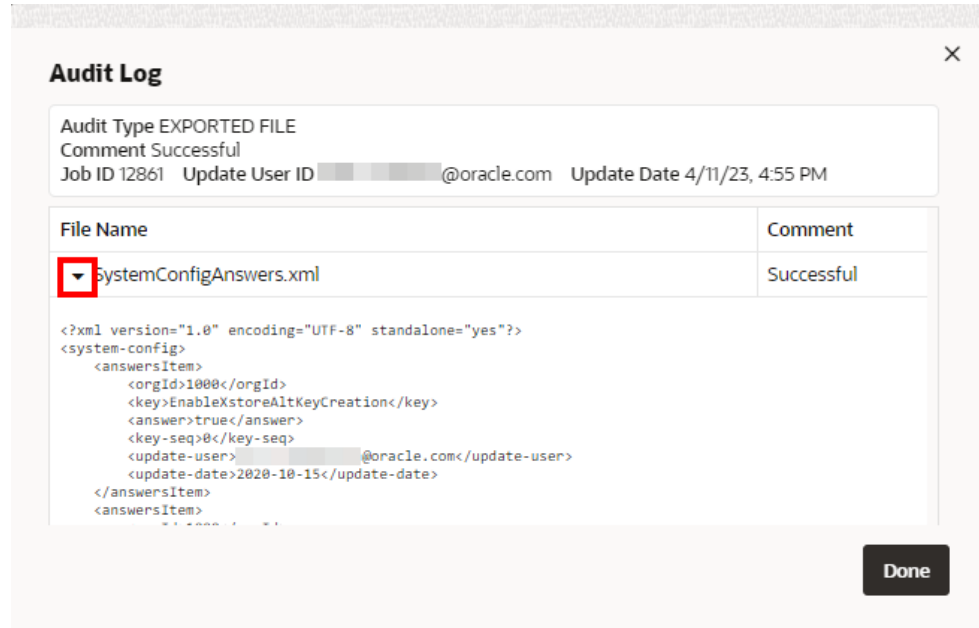
Audit Log		
Audit Type DEPLOY Job ID 12755 Update User ID [redacted]@oracle.com Update Date 4/3/23, 12:48 PM		
Key	Sequence	Answer
NonStrataSegBatchExporterTemplateList	0	non_strata_segment_batch_exporter_csv.template
NonStrataSegBatchExporterTemplateList	1	non_strata_segment_batch_exporterbad_xml.template

The Audit Log window displays the following information:

- Audit Type - The type of activity.
- Comment - The comment entered by the user at the Enter Reason for Change window, or assigned by the system for certain activities to indicate success or failure.
- Update User ID - The ID of the user performing the activity.
- Update Date - The date and time when the activity took place.

Audit Log audit types include:

- DEPLOY Detail: For each property updated in the deployment:
 - Key - The unique key identifying the property updated.
 - Sequence - A unique number to identify each change in the deployment. Begins with 0 for each property updated.
 - Answer - The new setting for the property.
 - EXPORTED FILE Detail:
 - File Name - The name of the configuration file to be exported.
 - Comment - Successful if the export succeeded; otherwise, indicates the reason for failure.
 - IMPORT AUTHORIZATION Detail
 - File Name - The name of the imported configuration file.
 - Comment - Set to Authorized.
 - IMPORT FAILED Detail
 - File Name - The name of the imported configuration file.
 - Comment - The reason for the failure.
 - IMPORTED FILE Detail
 - File Name - The name of the imported configuration file.
 - Comment - Set to Successful.
 - PROPERTY CHANGE Detail
 - Key - The unique key identifying the property
 - Seq - A unique number identifying the change in setting. Begins with 0 for the first entry for a property.
 - Answer - The changed setting for the property
 - ROLLBACK Detail
 - Key - The unique key identifying the property
 - Seq - A unique number identifying a changed property. Begins with 0 for the first property included in the rollback.
 - Answer - The setting of the property after applying the rollback
 - UPLOAD Detail
 - File Name - The name of the uploaded configuration file.
 - Comment - The number of records in the file.
5. In the **File Name** column, click the arrow (if present) to display the contents of the imported file.

Figure 14-63 Import File Contents

6. Click **Done** to close the window.
7. At any time you can refresh the results by clicking the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Refresh**.
8. To close the Audit Log click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Return to Categories**.

Cancel Deploy

You have the ability to cancel deploy configuration changes, so that you can control how changes are made to the system. To Cancel Deploy a job do the following:

1. Click the System Configuration **Action** menu and click **Cancel Deploy**. The Cancel Deploy Answers window displays.

Note:

You can cancel a deployment if it has not already run. This option is available only if: There are no outstanding errors. There is at least one changed property ready for deployment (either already in a scheduled deployment or updated since the most recent deployment). The system is not currently running a deployment.

Figure 14-64 Cancel Deploy Answers

Cancel Deploy Answers ×

⚠ You are about to cancel a deploy. Do you want to continue? ×

Queued Deployment Jobs			Deployment Details		
Job ID	Date	Time	Key	Sequence	Answer or Updated File
4067	4/7/23	1:00 AM	LoyaltyEligibilityTenderTypes	0	

Cancel Deployment Jobs


No Yes

2. Click **Yes** to Cancel the job or **No** to close the window without saving. A notification appears indicating a successful cancel deployment is scheduled.

 **Note:**

You can use this option even if you have not scheduled a deployment. In this case, the Cancel Deployment option discards any property changes you have applied since the most recent deployment.

Figure 14-65 Notification

 **Cancel Deploy Configuration Job has been created successfully.**

Deploy

You have the ability to deploy configuration changes, so that you can control how changes are made to the system. You will need to use the Deploy option to have any property changes take effect, including changes you make through the System Configuration pages as well as settings you have imported. To Deploy a job do the following:

1. Click the System Configuration **Action** menu and click **Deploy**. The Deploy Answers window displays.

 **Note:**

You can only deploy if: There are no outstanding errors. There is at least one changed property ready for deployment The system is not currently running a deployment. If there are no errors, the Deploy Answers window opens.

Figure 14-66 Deploy Answers

Deploy Answers ×

⚠ You are about to deploy. Do you want to continue? ×

Deployment Job Schedule

Once, Immediately Once, Later

Job Processing Window

Override Job Processing Window

Job processing window is based on server time.
The current server time is 4/4/23, 3:31 PM

Sunday	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours
Monday	Monday - 00:00, 24 hours
Tuesday	Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours
Wednesday	Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours
Thursday	Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours
Friday	Friday - 00:00, 24 hours
Saturday	Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours

Deployment Details

Key	Sequence	Answer or Updated File
TwitterQueryResultSize	0	500

No Yes

2. Enter the **Deployment Job Schedule**, options include:
 - Once, Immediately
 - Once, Later

 **Note:**

If Once, Later is selected, additional options for Start Date and Job Execution Time are displayed.


Figure 14-67 Once, Later - Deployment Job Schedule Options

Deploy Answers

⚠ You are about to deploy. Do you want to continue?

Deployment Job Schedule

Once, Immediately Once, Later

Start Date 

Job Execution Time

Job Processing Window

Override Job Processing Window

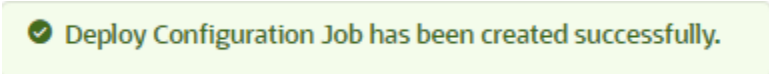
Job processing window is based on server time. The current server time is 4/12/23, 3:46 PM

	5 AM	6 AM	7 AM	8 AM	9 AM	10 ...	11 AM	12 PM	1 PM	2 PM	3 PM	4 PM	5 PM	6 PM	7 PM	8 PM
Sunday	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Monday	Monday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Tuesday	Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Wednesday	Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Thursday	Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Friday	Friday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Saturday	Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours															

- View the Job Processing Window to see when Jobs are processed. Select the **Override Job Processing Window** check box if the selected date and time is not during the Job Processing Window for the date of the week when the deployment is scheduled. The displayed times are in the server time, which may differ from your local time.
- Click **Yes** to Deploy the job or **No** to close the window without saving. A notification appears indicating a successful deployment is scheduled.

 **Note:**

If a deployment is scheduled, the Status Indicator changes to indicate the progress of the deployment. You can use the Job Scheduling option to edit a scheduled deployment. If an additional deployment for the same property is scheduled for a later date and time, it can overwrite the first scheduled deployment.

Figure 14-68 Notification


✓ Deploy Configuration Job has been created successfully.

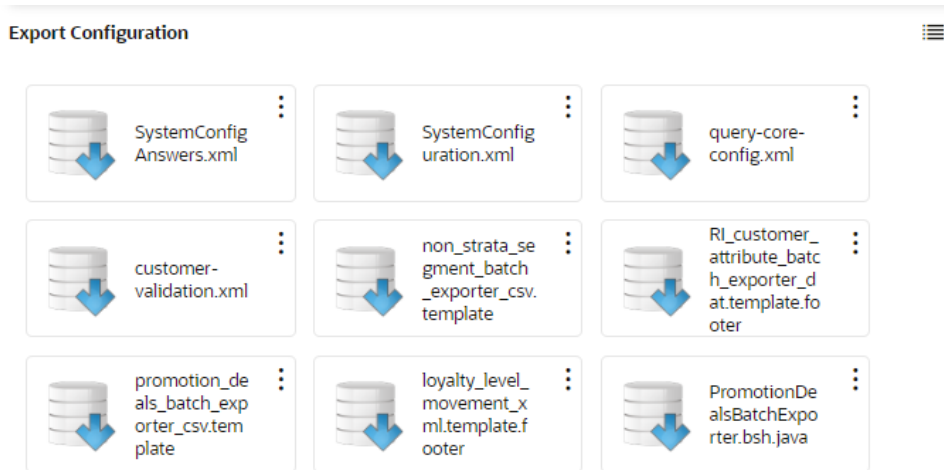
Export File

You can export configuration files for subsequent import into another Customer Engagement organization. The settings of the Allowable Answer Files for Export / Import and the Allowable Configuration Files for Export / Import, Allowable Query Core Configuration Files for Export / Import, Allowable Query Core Translation Files for Export / Import, Allowable Customer Validation Files for Export / Import, Beanshell Files and Template Files, control the allowable files.

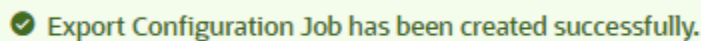
See Oracle Customer Engagement Implementation Guide, "System/Configuration Properties" for more information on these properties.

To Export a configuration file do the following:

1. Click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Export File**. The Export Configurations display.

Figure 14-69 Export Configuration

2. Click the tile to **Export**, or use the **Action** menu for that tile and click **Export**. A notification appears indicating the successful export.

Figure 14-70 Notification


✓ Export Configuration Job has been created successfully.

Note:

You can now go to the Process Queue in the Job Management feature to view the details.

3. At any time you can refresh the results by clicking the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Refresh**.
4. To close the Export Configuration click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Return to Categories**.

Import File

After you upload a configuration file, additional steps need to be completed before the settings are applied to the organization:

- The previously uploaded file must be authorized by a user who is different from the user who uploaded the file. See [Authorize Import Window](#).
- Once the file is authorized, a user can import it. The import step can be completed by any user with sufficient authority, including the user who uploaded the file or the user who authorized the file. See [Import Files Window](#).
- The changes need to be deployed; see [Deploy](#).

To Import a configuration file do the following:

1. Click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Import File**. The Import File list displays.

Figure 14-71 Import File List

Import File

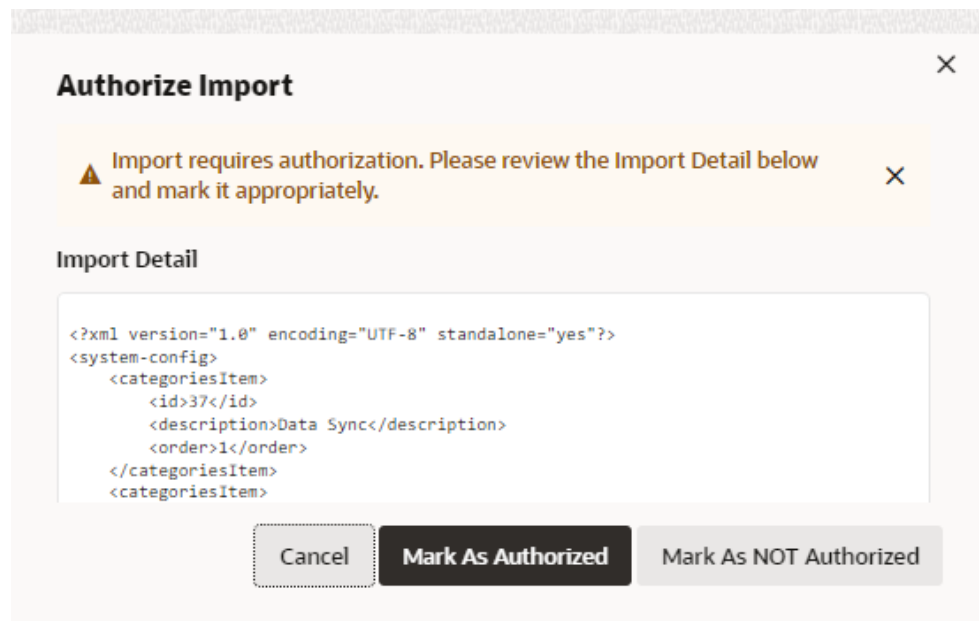
Sort By

Update User ID	Update Date	File Name	Authorized By	Authorized Date	Status
██████████@oracle.com	3/22/23, 11:28 AM	non_strata_segment			Processed ⋮
██████████@oracle.com	3/22/23, 11:27 AM	non_strata_segment			Processed ⋮
██████████@oracle.com	3/22/23, 11:27 AM	non_strata_segment			Processed ⋮
██████████@oracle.com	3/22/23, 11:27 AM	strata_segment_batch			Processed ⋮
██████████@oracle.com	3/22/23, 11:27 AM	strata_segment_batch			Processed ⋮
██████████@oracle.com	3/22/23, 11:27 AM	strata_segment_batch			Processed ⋮

The Import File page displays the following information on uploaded configuration files:

- Update User ID: The user ID of the person who uploaded the file
- Update Date: The date and time when the file was uploaded
- File Name: The name of the configuration file that was uploaded
- Authorized By: The user ID of the person who authorized the import
- Authorized Date: The date and time when the import was authorized
- Status: The current status of the import. Possible statuses are:
 - Waiting Authorization: You can click on the configuration file to import it only if you are not the user who uploaded the file

- Authorized: You can click on the configuration file to import it
 - Not Authorized: The file cannot be imported
 - Processed: The file has already been imported
2. The Import File list is sorted ascending or descending using the following Sort By options:
 - Authorized By
 - Authorized Date
 - File Name
 - Status
 - Update Date (default)
 - Update User ID
 3. Only files with the status of **Waiting Authorization** can be authorized. Click the **Action** menu for the file and click **Authorize**. The Authorize Import window displays.

Figure 14-72 Authorize Import

The Authorize Import window displays the contents of a previously uploaded configuration file, and indicates your options:

- Actions if Status is Waiting Authorization and User Did Not Upload the File - If you are not the user who uploaded the file and the status is Waiting Authorization, you can update the authorization status after examining the contents of the file, or mark the file as not authorized.
- Actions if Status is Waiting Authorization and User Has Uploaded the File - If you are the user who uploaded the file and the status is Waiting Authorization, you cannot update the status of the file.

- Actions if Status is Not Authorized - If the status is Not Authorized, you cannot change the status.
 - Actions if Status is Processed - If the status is Processed, you cannot change the status.
4. After reviewing the Import Details, either:
 - **Mark As Authorized:** The configuration file can be imported. Select this status only after examining the contents of the file and confirmed that the contents are correct. Click **Mark As Authorized** to authorize the file, a notification appears.

Figure 14-73 Notification

 File query-core-config.xml has been marked as Authorized.

- **Mark as Not Authorized:** The configuration file cannot be imported. Select this status if the contents of the file are not correct.. Click **Mark as NOT Authorized** to indicate the file is not authorized for import.
- Click **Cancel** to exit the window.

Note:

Using the Authorize action on any other file status will open the Import Details for viewing. Click **Cancel** to close the window.

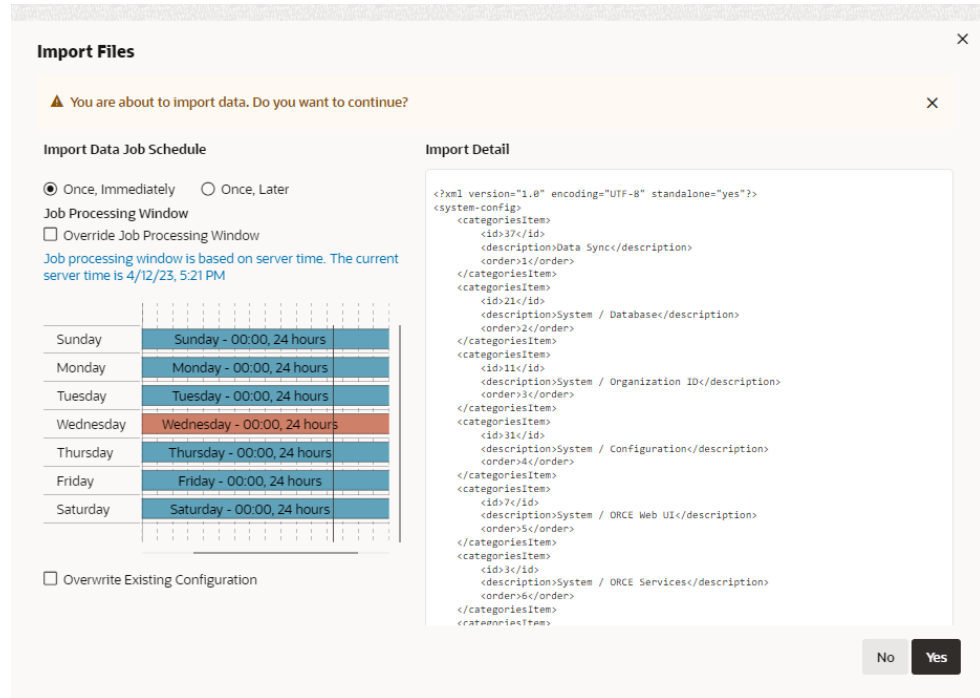
5. At any time you can refresh the results by clicking the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Refresh**.
6. Click the **Vertical Ellipse** for any Authorized file.

Note:

The Import Files window displays the contents of a previously uploaded configuration file, and indicates your options for importing the file. You can open this window by clicking an uploaded file at the Import File page only if the current status is Authorized. This window is available regardless of whether you were the user who uploaded or authorized the import.

7. Click **Import**.
The Import Files window appears.

Figure 14-74 Import Files



8. Enter the Deployment Job Schedule, options include:

- Once, Immediately - The deployment runs immediately.
- Once, Later - The deployment is scheduled for a later time.

 **Note:**

If Once, Later is selected, additional options for Start Date and Job Execution Time are displayed.


Figure 14-75 Once, Later - Import Data Job Schedule Options

Import Files

⚠ You are about to import data. Do you want to continue?

Import Data Job Schedule

Once, Immediately Once, Later

Start Date 

Job Execution Time

Job Processing Window

Override Job Processing Window

Job processing window is based on server time. The current server time is 4/12/23, 5:58 PM

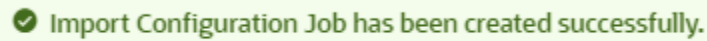
	5 AM	6 AM	7 AM	8 AM	9 AM	10 AM	11 AM	12 PM	1 PM	2 PM	3 PM	4 PM	5 PM	6 PM	7 PM	8 PM
Sunday	Sunday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Monday	Monday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Tuesday	Tuesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Wednesday	Wednesday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Thursday	Thursday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Friday	Friday - 00:00, 24 hours															
Saturday	Saturday - 00:00, 24 hours															

Overwrite Existing Configuration

9. View the **Job Processing Window** to see when Jobs are processed.
 - a. Select the **Override Job Processing Window** check box if the selected date and time is not during the Job Processing Window for the date of the week when the deployment is scheduled. The displayed times are in the server time, which may differ from your local time.
 - b. Select the **Start Date**: The date when the deployment should run.
 - c. Select the **Job Execution Time**: The hour, minute, and AM or PM.
 - d. The **Overwrite Existing Configuration** is used when there is existing data in the database. You must select the **Overwrite Existing Configuration** option to have the import process successfully.
10. Click **Yes** to schedule the Data Job or **No** to close the window without saving. A notification appears indicating a successful Data Job is scheduled.

 **Note:**

If an import is scheduled, the Status Indicator changes to indicate the progress of the import. You can use the Job Scheduling option to edit the scheduled import. If an additional import is scheduled for a later date and time, it overwrites the first scheduled import.

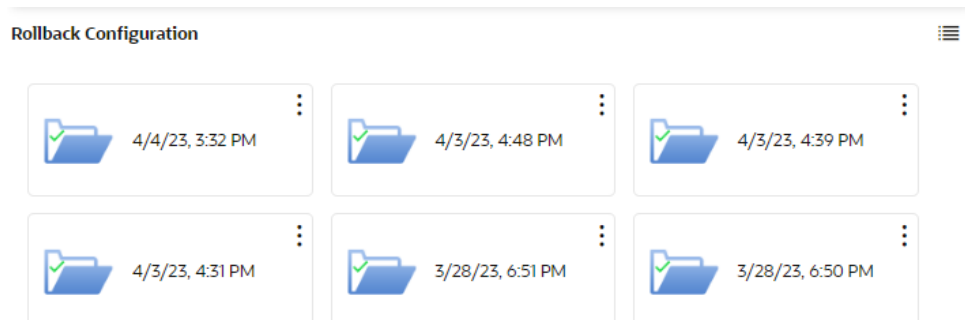
Figure 14-76 Notification


11. To close Import File click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Return to Categories**.

Rollback

To Rollback a configuration do the following:

1. Click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Rollback**. The Rollback Configuration displays. This screen displays each deployment of configuration changes in reverse chronological order (newest to oldest), indicating the date and time of the deployment.

Figure 14-77 Rollback Configuration

2. To rollback to the settings before a deployment, click a **Deployment Record**. The Rollback Answers window displays.

Figure 14-78 Rollback Answers

Rollback Answers ×

⚠ You are about to rollback. Do you want to continue? ×

Rollback Details	Key	Sequence	Answer or Updated File
	TwitterQueryResultSize	0	500

Justification

Required

3. Enter a **Justification**.
4. Click **Yes** to Rollback, or **No** to close the window without saving.

 **Note:**

If you click **Yes**, you will need to complete the Enter Reason for Change window. This reason is displayed in the Comment column of the Audit Log screen.

Figure 14-79 Notification

 **Rollback completed successfully.**

5. At any time you can refresh the results by clicking the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Refresh**.
6. To close the Rollback Configuration click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Return to Categories**.

Upload File

You can upload configuration files for subsequent import.

The settings of the Allowable Answer Files for Export / Import and the Allowable Configuration Files for Export / Import, Allowable Query Core Configuration Files for Export / Import, Allowable Query Core Translation Files for Export / Import, Allowable Customer Validation Files for Export / Import, Beanshell Files and Template Files, control the allowable files.

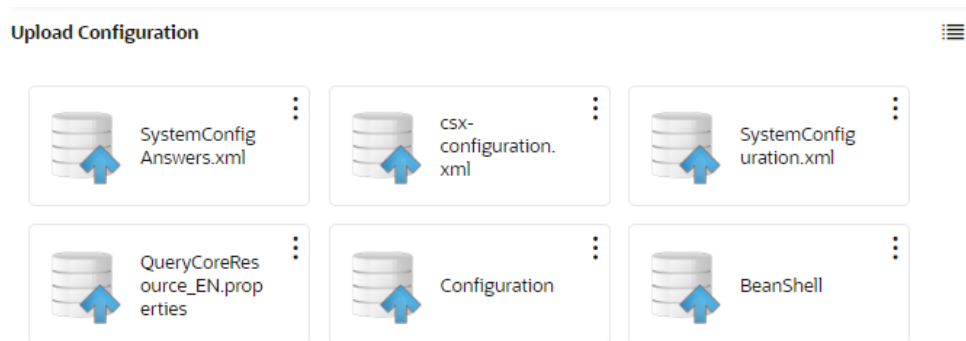
See Oracle Customer Engagement Implementation Guide, "System/Configuration Properties" for more information on these properties.

The upload process verifies that the selected file matches the name specified in the related property, and that the contents of the file appear to be valid. For example, the organization ID must match the ID of the environment where the upload is taking place.

To upload a file configuration do the following:

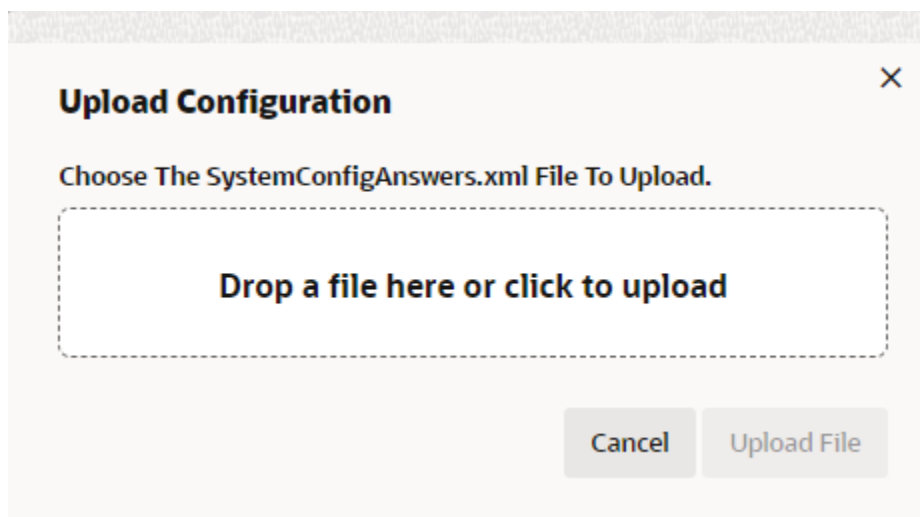
1. Click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Upload File**. The Upload Configurations display.

Figure 14-80 Upload Configuration



2. Click the tile to **Upload**, or use the **Action** menu for that tile and click **Upload**. The Upload Configuration window displays.

Figure 14-81 Upload Configuration



3. To add a file to upload, either:
 - Drag and Drop a file as shown in [Figure 14-81](#).
 - Click anywhere in the Drop a file here or click to upload box.
4. Click **Upload File** to upload the file, or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

5. At any time you can refresh the results by clicking the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Refresh**.
6. To close the Upload Configuration click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Return to Categories**.

Upload Default File

You can upload the default configuration/beanshell/template files and then import them to revert to the default/base configurations.

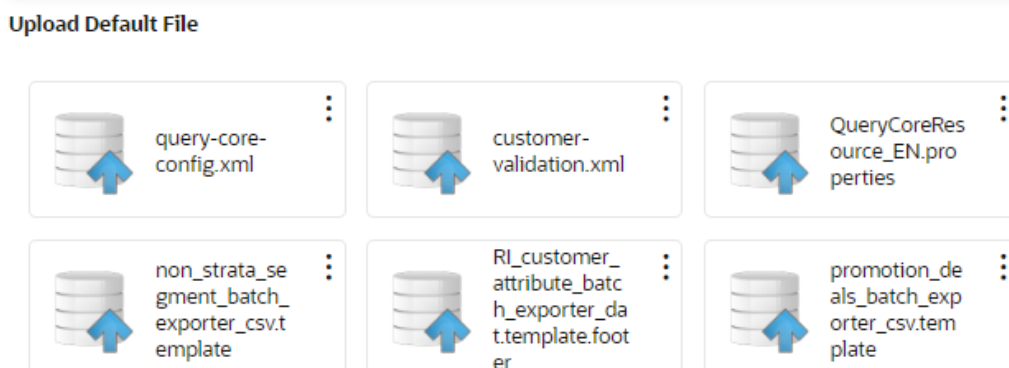
The settings of the Allowable Query Core Configuration Files for Export / Import, Allowable Query Core Translation Files for Export / Import, Allowable Customer Validation Files for Export / Import, Beanshell Files and Template Files control the allowable files.

See Oracle Customer Engagement Implementation Guide, "System/Configuration Properties" for more information on these properties.

To upload default configuration/beanshell/template files that revert to the default/base configurations do the following:

1. Click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Upload Default File**. The Upload Default Files display.

Figure 14-82 Upload Default File



2. Click the tile to **Upload**, or use the **Action** menu for that tile and click **Upload Default File**. A notification appears.


 Default file query-core-config.xml uploaded successfully.

Figure 14-83

3. At any time you can refresh the results by clicking the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Refresh**.
4. To close the Upload Default Files click the System Configurations **Action** menu and then click **Return to Categories**.

System Logs

Users who have the System admin role can view the log events. Log events include:

- Access
- Data Privacy Audit
- Duplicate Customer Merge
- File Reader
- File Transfer
- Loyalty Points
- Promote
- Promotions
- Quartz
- Services
- User Roles
- Web Services

Viewing System Logs

To access the System Logs do the following:

1. Click **Menu**.
2. Click the **Admin** task.
3. Click the **System Logs** task. The System Logs window displays.

The following fields are displayed:

- **Log ID** – ID of the log.
- **Context ID** – Diagnostic context information to correlate messages coming from a specific request or application.
- **Log Date** – The date and time the log event was generated.
- **Log Type** – The particular log containing the log event.
- **Log Level** – The level of the log event recorded.

Colors as well as text are used to indicate the severity. They include:

- **Info** - Pale Green
- **Warning** - Pale Yellow
- **Error** - Pale Red
- **Fatal** - Red
- **Debug** - Cyan
- **Trace** - Grey
- **Log Message** – The error message and first line of the recorded log event.

Figure 14-84 System Logs

System Logs

Export Log

Log ID	Context ID	Log Date	Log Type	Log Level	Log Message
44828066	aeef9ac7-28d6-41ba-be55-777f94a47efa	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Access	INFO	RELATEUI10.192.108.182.SysLogsResource.g etSysLogs.pseudoUserId:3042...
44828065	6bfd576c-927c-4f38-94ff-54047ac872ba	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Access	INFO	RELATEUI10.192.108.182.SysLogsResource.g etSysLogs.pseudoUserId:3042...
44828064	d8ecb69f-ff3f-4e2e-94fe-b26cedfc404e	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: BatchImportJob. The job took 126ms to run.
44828063	b43a0eb2-864f-4508-a9ec-95972c7b78880	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: BatchImportJob. The job took 49ms to run.
44828062	cd8ffa7b-af1e-4086-8aa9-440934f8de01	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: WebServiceStatsJob. The job took 57ms to run.
44828061	d8ecb69f-ff3f-4e2e-94fe-b26cedfc404e	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Starting Job: BatchImportJob
44828060	b43a0eb2-864f-4508-a9ec-95972c7b78880	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Starting Job: BatchImportJob
44828059	2db55f54-1493-483c-acbd-402117d116ce	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: CanceledJobMonitor. The job took 78ms to run.
44828058	6c5a360f-af2-4ab2-b094-6a70af527a17	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: BufferManager. The job took 66ms to run.
44828057	2db55f54-1493-483c-acbd-402117d116ce	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Starting Job: CanceledJobMonitor
44828056	cd8ffa7b-af1e-4086-8aa9-440934f8de01	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Starting Job: WebServiceStatsJob
44828055	7cce33e6-3b2d-44d1-92b1-18fc00f4416f	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Starting Job: IDCSyncJob
44828054	4dd6357b-5413-4155-bec8-db71cd532af8	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: CanceledJobMonitor. The job took 42ms to run.

4. The Filters panel enables you to enter criteria to filter for a specific system log. Enter the desired filter criteria which includes the following fields:
- **Log ID** – The log event sequence number.
 - **Context ID** – Diagnostic context information to correlate messages coming from a specific request or application.
 - **Date Range From and To** – The date range covering the log event.
 - **Select Log Type** – The particular log containing the log event. Default is All.
 - Access
 - Data Privacy Audit
 - Duplicate Customer Merge
 - File Reader
 - File Transfer
 - Loyalty Points
 - Promote
 - Promotions
 - Quartz
 - Services
 - User Roles
 - Web Services
 - **Log Level** – The level of the log event recorded. Default is to show all. Log levels include:

- INFO
 - WARNING
 - ERROR
 - FATAL
 - DEBUG
 - TRACE
- **Show Exceptions Only** – Whether to show log events where an exception has been recorded or to show all log events. Default is Exception Only.
5. Click **Apply** to apply the filter criteria or, click **Reset** to clear any criteria changes back to the default filter criteria settings.

Exporting System Logs

Using the Export Log button creates an immediate job to export the log events to a downloadable file based on the filter criteria.

To export a system log perform the following actions:

1. Navigate to the **System Logs** window.
2. Enter the desired **filter criteria** for a specific system log or logs.
3. Click **Apply** to apply the filter criteria or, click **Reset** to clear any criteria changes back to the default filter criteria settings.
4. Click **Export Log**.

Figure 14-85 Exporting Logs

System Logs

Filters

Log ID

Context ID

Date Range

From

To

Select Log Type

Log Level

Info

Warning

Error

Fatal

Debug

Trace

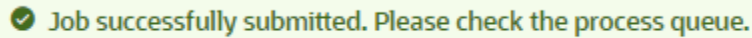
Show Exceptions Only

Log ID	Context ID	Log Date	Log Type	Log Level	Log Message
44828066	aeef9ac7-28d6-41ba-be55-777f94a47efa	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Access	INFO	RELATEUI10.192.108.182.SysLogsResource.getSysLogs.pseudoUserId.3042...
44828065	6bf576c-927c-4f38-94ff-54047ac872ba	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Access	INFO	RELATEUI10.192.108.182.SysLogsResource.getSysLogs.pseudoUserId.3042...
44828064	d8ecb69f-ff3f-4e2e-94fe-b26cedfc404e	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: BatchImportJob. The job took 126ms to run.
44828063	b43a0eb2-864f-4508-a9ec-95972cb78880	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: BatchImportJob. The job took 49ms to run.
44828062	cd8ffa7b-affe-4086-8aa9-440934f8de01	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: WebServiceStatsJob. The job took 57ms to run.
44828061	d8ecb69f-ff3f-4e2e-94fe-b26cedfc404e	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Starting Job: BatchImportJob
44828060	b43a0eb2-864f-4508-a9ec-95972cb78880	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Starting Job: BatchImportJob
44828059	2db55f54-1493-483c-acbd-402117d116ce	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: CanceledJobMonitor. The job took 78ms to run.
44828058	6c5a360f-aff2-4ab2-b094-6a70af327a77	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: BufferManager. The job took 60ms to run.
44828057	2db55f54-1493-483c-acbd-402117d116ce	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Starting Job: CanceledJobMonitor
44828056	cd8ffa7b-affe-4086-8aa9-440934f8de01	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Starting Job: WebServiceStatsJob
44828055	7cfe36e-362d-44d1-92b1-18f00f4416f	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Starting Job: IDCSSyncJob
44828054	4dd6357b-5413-4155-bec8-db71cd532af8	4/4/23, 1:50 PM	Quartz	INFO	Finished Job: CanceledJobMonitor. The job took 42ms to run.

 **Note:**

A message appears indicating success or failure.

Figure 14-86 Success Notification



The download link will be attached to the “Export System Logs” job in the task information panel found in the Job Management process queue.

The exported file will contain a file header:

```
>>>> Report Based On Criteria - , Log ID: Not specified From Date: Not  
specified, To Date: Not specified, Log Levels: [INFO, WARN, ERROR, FATAL, DEBUG,  
TRACE], Log Type: ALL, Context ID: Not specified <<<<
```

The header details the selection criteria used to generate the report.

The report detail contains the same information as displayed in the UI.

Task Management

Use the Task Management window to search for tasks, as well as to add, edit, and assign tasks. To access the Task Management window:

1. Click **Menu**.
2. Click the **Admin** task.
3. Click the **Task Management** task. The Task Management window displays.

Figure 14-87 Search Panel Options

Task Management

Search


Assigned User ID +


Assigned User Name

Task Name

Creator

Start Date Range

From 

To 

Task Search

Enter search parameters in the sidebar to search for tasks.

- The Search panel enables you to enter criteria to search for a specific task. Enter the desired search criteria which includes the following fields:
 - Assigned User ID** – ID of the assigned user
 - Assigned User Name** – Name of the assigned user
 - Task Name** – Name of the Task
 - Creator** – ID of the user who created the Task
 - Start Date Range From and To** – Dates on which the Range starts
 - End Date Range From and To** – Dates on which the Range ends
 - Task ID** – ID of the Task
 - Task Type** – Type of Task
 - Status** – Status of the task
 - Priority** – The priority assigned to the task
 - Location** – Location of the task
 - Event** – The promotion assigned to the task

- **Assigned Customer ID** – ID of the assigned customer
 - **First Name** – First name of the customer
 - **Last Name** – Last name of the customer
5. Click **Search** to see the results.

 **Note:**

The results will remain the same if the **Reset** button is clicked. The Reset button only clears the previously entered search criteria. The results will only refresh when another search is completed.

Figure 14-88 Results Pane

Task ID	Task Name	Start Date	End Date	Task Type	Creator	Status	Assigned To	Customer
<input type="checkbox"/> 149359	Editted using Automation Script	2/2/23	2/2/23	TODO	ORCE-GWT	IN_PROGRESS	ORCE-GWT	Jasleen Kaur
<input type="checkbox"/> 149357	Created using Automation Script	2/2/23	2/2/23	TODO	ORCE-GWT	IN_PROGRESS	ORCE-GWT	Jasleen Kaur
<input type="checkbox"/> 149356	Created using Automation Script	2/1/23	2/2/23	TODO	ORCE-GWT	IN_PROGRESS	ORCE-GWT	Jasleen Kaur
<input type="checkbox"/> 149353	Editted using Automation Script	1/31/23	1/31/23	TODO	ORCE-GWT	IN_PROGRESS	ORCE-GWT	Jasleen Kaur
<input type="checkbox"/> 149351	Created using Automation Script	1/31/23	1/31/23	TODO	ORCE-GWT	IN_PROGRESS	ORCE-GWT	Jasleen Kaur

The following information is displayed for each task:

- **Task ID** – The ID of the task.
- **Task Name** – The name of the task.
- **Start Date** – The date the task starts.
- **End Date** – The date the task ends.
- **Task Type** – The type of task.
- **Creator** – User who created the task.
- **Status** – The status of the task.
- **Assigned To** – The associate to whom the task is assigned.
- **Customer** – Name of the customer.

Sorting Results

Once the results appear the user can sort the list to refine the results. The following sorting options include:

Figure 14-89 Sort By Options

Sort By	Task ID	Descending
Sort By	Task ID	Descending

The following fields are sorted Ascending or Descending:

- **Assigned To** – The associate to whom the task is assigned.
- **Creator** – User who created the task.
- **Customer** – Name of the customer.
- **End Date** – The date the task ends.
- **Start Date** – The date the task starts.
- **Status** – The status of the task.
- **Task ID** – The ID of the task.
- **Task Name** – The name of the task.
- **Task Type** – The type of task.

Creating a Task

Users with the appropriate access level can add a task. To Create a Task:

- Click the **Add (+) icon**, or choose **Add** from the **Actions** menu. This displays a Create Task window.

Figure 14-90 Create Task

Assigning Customers

To assign Customers, do the following:

1. Click the **Assign Customer +** icon to assign a customer to the Task (optional).

Figure 14-91 Edit Assigned Customer

2. Enter some or all of a **customer's name** in the Search for Customer field. The user can search by any of the criteria shown in the search results including:
 - Name
 - Email Address
 - Phone Number
 - Customer ID
 - Alternate Key
3. Select **Partial**, if you want to results that match part of what you enter, or select **Exact** if you only want results that are an exact match.
4. Click **Search**.
5. Click **Assign** to assign the customer to the task.
6. Click **OK** to save the assignment or **Cancel** to return to the Task Details without saving any customer assignments.

Task Details

Enter the Task Details which include the following fields:

Figure 14-92 Task Details

- **Task Type** – Type of task (required field)

- **Subject** – The subject of the task (required field)
- **Status** – The status of the task (required field)
- **Start** – The date and time the task starts (required field)
- **Duration** – The duration of the task
- **End** – The date and time the task ends (required field)
- **Location** – The location of the task
- **Priority** – The priority assigned to the task (required field)
- **Event Type** – Type of event (only used for Event Type tasks)

Assigning Users

To Assign Users, do the following:

1. Click the **Actions** menu and click **Add** or click the **Add (+)** icon.

Figure 14-93 Add User to Task

User ID	Name	Email Address	Location ID	Assign To Task
No users found using search criteria.				

2. Enter some or all of a **user's name** in the Search for User field. The user can search by any of the criteria shown in the search results including:
 - User ID
 - Name
 - Email Address
 - Location ID
3. Select **Partial**, if you want to results that match part of what you enter, or select **Exact** if you only want results that are an exact match.
4. Click **Search**.
5. Click **Assign** to assign the user to the task.
6. Click **OK** to save the assignment or **Cancel** to return to the Task Details without saving any user assignments.

Deleting Users

To delete users, do the following:

1. Highlight a **user** from the Assigned Users section.
2. Click **Remove** from the **Actions Menu** or click the **X** icon.



Note:

To immediately remove the user, click **X**.

Task Notes

To add a Task Note, do the following:

1. Click **Add** from the **Actions Menu** or click the **+** icon.

Figure 14-94 Create Note for Task

Create Note for Task ×

Type

COMMENT ▼

Note

Required

256 characters remaining

Cancel OK

2. Select a note **Type** (required field).
3. Enter information in the Note field (required field)
4. Click **OK**.
5. To edit a note, highlight a **note** in Task Notes section and click **Edit** from the **Actions Menu** or click the **Edit** icon.

6. **Edit** the note.
7. Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close without saving.
8. To delete a note, highlight a **note** in Tasks Notes section and click **Delete** from the **Actions Menu** or click the **X** icon.

 **Note:**

To immediately remove the user, click **X**.

Task Confirmation

9. Click **OK** to create a task or **Cancel** to close the Create Task window without saving any changes.

Editing a Task

To edit a task use the following steps:

1. Highlight a **Task** row.
2. Click the **Action Menu**, and then click **Edit**, or click the **Edit** icon.
3. **Edit** the Task.
4. Click **OK** to accept the changes or **Cancel** to close the task without saving.

Viewing a Task

To view a task use the following steps:

1. Highlight a **Task** row.
2. Click the **Action Menu**, and then click **View**, or click the **Eyeglasses** icon.
3. Click **Done** to close the window.

Reassigning a Task

Users with the appropriate permissions can reassign a task. To reassign a task:

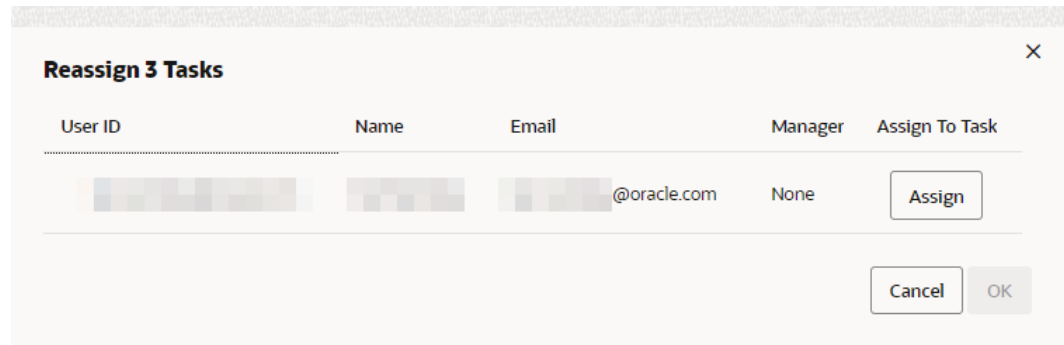
1. Click **Menu**.
2. Click the **Admin Task**.
3. Click the **Task Management** task. The Task Management window displays.

Figure 14-95 Task Management Window

Task ID	Task Name	Start Date	End Date	Task Type	Creator	Status	Assigned To	Customer
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	4 Created using Automation Sci	10/28/20	10/29/20	TODO		IN_PROGRESS		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	5 Created using Automation Sci	10/28/20	10/28/20	TODO		IN_PROGRESS		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	7 Created using Automation Sci	10/29/20	10/30/20	TODO		CLOSED		

4. Highlight a task you wish to reassign. To re-assign more than one task select the check box for each task.
5. Click the **Actions** menu and choose **Reassign**, or select the **Person** icon from the menu row tool bar. This opens the Reassign Task dialog window.

Figure 14-96 Reassign Task Window



6. Expand the list of users and from the list of available users, and click **Assign** to reassign the task.
7. Click **OK** to assign the task. A Warning window displays notifying that a different user is assigned the task.
8. Click **OK** to accept ownership of the task. The task is reassigned to another user.

Web Service Tracking

You have the ability to view web service call activity statistics hourly, daily and monthly, so that you can monitor successful and failed messages. Additional operation details for the service will also be available to allow the Associate to troubleshoot problems.

1. Click the **Tasks** icon.
2. Click **Admin**.
3. Click **Web Services Tracking**.

Activity Views

You can view the activities by Hourly, Daily, or Monthly. Select the header for each view to view by that time period.

Figure 14-97 Hourly Activity

Web Service Tracking

Hourly Activity Daily Activity Monthly Activity

Actions 04/04/2023 All times are in GMT. Data is updated periodically.

Service Name	Time	24 Hour Period Total		24 Hour Average		12:00 AM - 12:59 AM		1:00 AM - 1:59 AM		2:00 AM - 2:59 AM	
		Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed
CustomerServicesApiService		1,555	1	64	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
PoslogServicesApiService		3,050	0	127	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
SvcTransactionServicesApiService		3,750	0	156	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
dealServices		40	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 14-98 Daily Activity

Web Service Tracking

Hourly Activity **Daily Activity** Monthly Activity

Actions 04/02/2023 All times are in GMT. Data is updated periodically.

Service Name	Date	Weekly Total		Daily Average		4/2/23		4/3/23		4/4/23	
		Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed
CustomerServicesApiService		4,667	6	666	0	1,550	0	1,562	5	1,555	1
PoslogServicesApiService		9,150	0	1,307	0	3,050	0	3,050	0	3,050	0
SvcTransactionServicesApiService		11,250	0	1,607	0	3,750	0	3,750	0	3,750	0
TaskServicesApiService		1,012	0	144	0	574	0	438	0	0	0
dealServices		104	0	14	0	8	0	56	0	40	0

Figure 14-99 Monthly Activity

Web Service Tracking

Hourly Activity Daily Activity **Monthly Activity**

Actions 01/01/2023 All times are in GMT. Data is updated periodically.

Service Name	Month	Yearly Total		Monthly Average		January		February		March	
		Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed	Successful	Failed
AttributesServiceApiService		2	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0
AwardAccountServicesApiService		86	5	7	0	17	0	10	0	59	5
CardServicesApiService		286	20	23	1	105	4	40	8	141	8
CustomerServicesApiService		117,562	501	9,796	41	44,389	275	41,577	50	25,379	170
LoyaltyAccountServicesApiService		45	1	3	0	19	0	2	0	24	1

Viewing Operation Details

You have the ability to view operation details for a service to allow you to troubleshoot problems. To view operational details:

1. Use the **Date Picker** to enter a date.

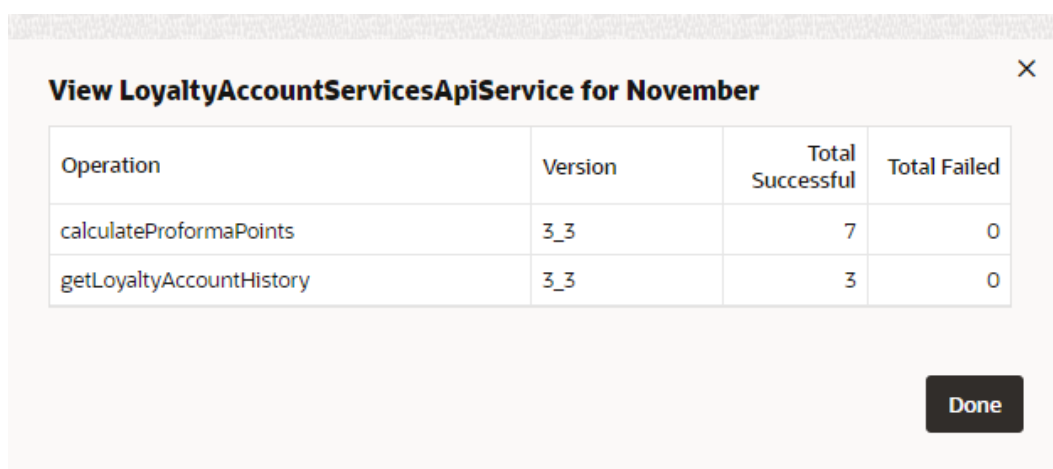
2. Select a **specific time period** with a value **greater than zero** within one of the Activity Views.

 **Note:**

The View Action Menu item is only available for specific time periods. The Total and Average section details of each view are unable to be viewed at that level.

3. Click the **Actions** menu **View** option, or the **Eyeglasses icon**. The service details displays.

Figure 14-100 Service Details



Operation	Version	Total Successful	Total Failed
calculateProformaPoints	3_3	7	0
getLoyaltyAccountHistory	3_3	3	0

4. After viewing the details click **Done** to close the window.
5. You can refresh the list by clicking the **Refresh** icon or picking the **Refresh** option from the **Actions menu**.

Users

You have the ability to view, search and edit a list of users, so that you can update user details.

Searching for Users

To search for a user do the following:

1. Click Tasks.
2. Click Admin
3. Click Users. The User Search window displays.

Figure 14-101 User Search

User Search

Search

User ID

Name

Email

Search Results

Enter search parameters in the sidebar to search for users.

4. Enter the **USER ID**, **Name**, or **Email** of the user.
5. Click **Search**. The list of users matching the search criteria displays.

Figure 14-102 Search Results

Search

User ID

Name

Email

Actions ⌵ ✎ ↶ ↷ ↻ Sort By ⌵ User ID ⌵ Ascending ⌵

User ID	Name	Email	Language Code	Service Account	Enabled
06683c981bf44f2b59f7893c	CECS Integration App 1		EN	Yes	Yes
100	Xstore User 100	@oracle.com	EN	No	Yes
CEUSER	CE USER	@oracle.com	EN	No	Yes
EITUSER	EIT USER	@oracle.com	EN	No	Yes
@oracle.com		@oracle.com	EN	No	Yes
@oracle.com		@oracle.com	EN	No	Yes
ORCE-Auto	ORCE-Auto	@oracle.com	EN	No	Yes

Viewing a User

To view a User, do the following:

1. Highlight the **row** of the User you want to view.
2. Click the **Actions** menu or the **View icon** to open the View Franchisee window.

Figure 14-103 View User

View User ×

User Details

User ID	0c683c981bf44ff	Pseudo User ID	3073	Country Code	US - UNITED STATES
Name	CECS Integration App 1	Language	EN - English	Manager Flag	<input type="checkbox"/>
Email		Location	(Please select)	Assigned Manager	

Enabled

User Home Screen

Default Home

User Assignments

<p>1 Assigned Roles</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left; font-size: small;">Role Name</th> <th style="text-align: left; font-size: small;">Assigned From Group</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ApiAccess</td> <td>(manually assigned)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Role Name	Assigned From Group	ApiAccess	(manually assigned)	<p>0 Assigned Role Groups</p> <p>No role groups assigned</p>	<p>0 Assigned Security Groups</p> <p>No security groups assigned</p>
Role Name	Assigned From Group					
ApiAccess	(manually assigned)					

Assigned Franchisees

Actions ▾ | + ×

Done

- View the details of the User and click **Done** to close the window.

Editing Users

To edit a User do the following:

- Highlight the **row** of the User.
- Click the **Actions** menu and select **Edit**, or click the **Edit (Pencil)** icon. The Edit User window displays.

Figure 14-104 Edit User

User Details

User ID: ORCE-GWT Pseudo User ID: 3035 Country Code: US - UNITED STATI

Name: ORCE-GWT Language: EN - English Manager Flag:

Email: vishal.bh.bhardwaj@oracle.com Location: (Please select) Assigned Manager:

Enabled:

User Home Screen

Default Home: Customer Promotion Segment Program Job Management

User Assignments

61 Assigned Roles

Role Name	Assigned From Group
AccountAdmin	GWTAutomation
AccountRedemption	GWTAutomation
AccountReloads	GWTAutomation

1 Assigned Role Groups

- GWTAutomation
- GWTAutomation

0 Assigned Security Groups

No security groups assigned

Cancel OK

3. The User Details editable regions for each user will vary based on privileges. Typically you can edit the **Language**, **Country Code**, **Assigned Manager**, and **Default Home Page**.

Assign a Manager

4. Click the **Assigned Manager Pencil** icon. The Add Manager to User window displays.

Figure 14-105 Add Manager To User

Add Manager To User

Search for User

Search by user ID or name or email address or location Search Partial Exact

Search Results

User ID	Name	Email Address	Location ID	Assign To User
No users found using search criteria.				

Cancel OK

5. In the Search for User field, enter the **User ID**, **Name**, or **Email Address** of the user you want to search for.
6. Select **Partial**, if you want to results that match part of what you enter, or select **Exact** if you only want results that are an exact match.

- Click **Search**. A list of users matching the search text is displayed in the Search Results grid.

Figure 14-106 Search Results Grid

Add Manager To User ✕

Search for User

Search by user ID or name or email address or location ✕ Partial Exact

Search Results

User ID	Name	Email Address	Location ID	Assign To User
100	Xstore User 100	r. [redacted]@oracle.com		<input type="button" value="Assign"/>
CEUSER	CE USER	[redacted]@oracle.com		<input type="button" value="Assign"/>

- For each user you wish to assign, click **Assign**.
- For each user you wish to unassign, click **Unassign**.
- Click **OK** to accept the changes, or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

Assigned Franchisees

- You can assign Franchisees to the User.

Click the **Add (+) icon**, or choose **Add** from the **Actions** menu. The Assigned Franchisees window displays.

Figure 14-107 Assigned Franchisees

Assigned Franchisees ✕

Search for Franchisee

Search by Franchisee ID or Name or Description ✕

Search Results

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations
No Franchisees to display		

12. Enter any or part of a **Franchisee ID, Name, or Description**.
13. Click **Search**. The Search Results list appears.

Figure 14-108 Search Results

Assigned Franchisees ×

Search for Franchisee

Search by Franchisee ID or Name or Description ✕ Search

Search Results

Franchisee Name	Franchisee Description	Locations	Assign All
S Franchisee 1 (ID 1)	Franchisee 1	1	Assign
S Franchisee 2 (ID 2)	Franchisee 2	1	Assign
J JS-Franchisee-1 (ID 3)	Job Testing - Franchisee Assignment	1	Assign

Cancel OK

14. For each Franchisee you wish to assign, click **Assign**.
15. For each user you wish to unassign, click **Unassign**.
16. Click **Assign All** to assign all of the Franchisees that appear in the search results.
17. Click **OK** to accept the changes, or **Cancel** to close the window without saving.
18. To delete a previously assigned Franchisee, highlight the row of the **Franchisee** and click the **X icon**, or click the **Action** menu and click **Delete**.
19. After all edits are finished click **OK** save the changes, or click **Cancel** to close the window without saving.

15

Segment Queries

When creating an Unstratified or a Stratified Segment, it is important to know what you need to enter/select in each field, whether there is a particular format for the data entered, and what the query is going to return. If you are not sure what Customer Engagement is doing, you may get an error on the query or the results may not be what you expect.

This appendix explains what is required for each query template.

The following conventions apply to data entry when creating a segment:

- Dates must be in the MM/DD/YYYY format.
- When entering numbers, do not use commas, dollar signs, or decimal places unless specifically instructed to do so.
- When entering text, do not use any punctuation unless instructed otherwise.

Overview

This chapter addresses the following;

- [Overview](#)
- [Segment Query Categories](#)
- [Segment Queries](#)
- [Strata Queries](#)

Segment Query Categories

The following is a list of the Segment Query categories:

- Customer Demographics
- Customer Contact
- Customer Attributes
- Purchase Activity
- Basic Programs
- Segment Elements
- Promotion Activity
- Strategic Segments
- Loyalty Segments

These categories are available at the Segment Query step of the Create Segment wizard, and control the customers selected for the Stratified or Unstratified Segment.

The following is a list of the Stratified Query categories:

- Loyalty Summary
- Transaction Criteria
- Line Item Detail

These categories control how the customers are broken out into strata for a Stratified Segment, and are available at the Strata Query step of the Create Segment Wizard if a Strata Type of Loyalty or Transaction was selected at the Strata Field step.

The Strata Query step is not available when a Strata Type of Customer was selected at the Strata Field step. Also, this step is not available for an Unstratified Segment.

Segment Queries

The following categories are available at the Segment Query step of the Create Segment wizard, and control the customers to select for the Stratified or Unstratified Segment.

Customer Demographics

This category is available at the Segment Query step of the Create Segment wizard, and controls the customers to select for the Stratified or Unstratified Segment

Customer ID

This query returns active and valid Customers whose Customer ID matches your input.

Figure 15-1 Customer ID

Customer ID

Customer whose Customer ID

Required

Customer City

This query returns active and valid Customers whose primary and active address is in the city you have specified.

Figure 15-2 Customer City

Customer City

Customer city of residence

Required

Customer State

This query returns active and valid Customers whose primary and active address is in the state you have specified.

Figure 15-3 Customer State

Customer State

Customer State = Required

Postal Code

This query returns active and valid Customers whose primary and active address is in the postal code (zip code) you have specified. Use only five digits for US zip codes.

Figure 15-4 Postal Code

Postal Code

Postal Code = Required

Postal Code Vicinity

This query returns active and valid Customers whose addresses are within a radius of a specified number of miles of a specified location.

Figure 15-5 Postal Code Vicinity

Postal Code Vicinity


Customer living within miles of location id Required Required

Customer Birthdate

This query returns Customers whose birthday matches the parameters you input. The date you input must be a valid date ([default] = current date).

Figure 15-6 Customer Birthdate

Customer Birthdate

Birthday = 

Required

Customer Birth Month

This query returns active and valid Customers whose birth month matches your selection ([default] = ,ÁúJanuary,Äù).

Figure 15-7 Customer Birth Month

Customer Birth Month

Customer birth month =

Home Location

This query returns active and valid Customers whose Home Location matches your entry. The Home Location you enter must be a valid location for your organization.

Figure 15-8 Home Location

Home Location

Customers with home location =

Required

Signup Location

This query returns all Customers whose signup location matches the one you specify. The location you enter must be a valid location for your organization.

Figure 15-9 Signup Location**▼ Signup Location**

Signup location =
Required

Customer Last Update Date

This query returns active and valid Customers whose last update date matches what you have entered. The date must be a valid date.

Figure 15-10 Customer Last Update Date**▼ Customer Last Update Date**

Customer Last Update Date =
Required

Signup Date

This query returns active and valid Customers whose signup date matches what you have entered. The date must be a valid date.

Figure 15-11 Signup Date**▼ Signup Date**

Customer sign-up date =
Required

Create Date

This query returns active and valid Customers whose create date matches what you have entered. The date must be a valid date.

Figure 15-12 Create Date**▼ Create Date**

Customer creation date =
Required

Active Customers

This query returns all active and valid Customers. This query has no parameters to configure

Figure 15-13 Active Customers

▼ Active Customers

Active Customers

Customer Contact

This section

Mail Contact Permission

This query returns all Customers who have given permission to be contacted by mail.

Figure 15-14 Mail Contact Permission

▼ Mail Contact Permission

Mail contact

Address Type Code

This query returns all Customers whose address type matches what you entered.

Figure 15-15 Address Type Code

▼ Address Type Code

Address type
Required

Phone Contact Permission

This query returns all Customers who have given permission to be contacted by telephone.

Figure 15-16 Phone Contact Permission

▼ Phone Contact Permission

Phone contact

Phone Type

This query returns all Customers whose phone type matches your selection.

Figure 15-17 Phone Type

▼ Phone Type

Phone type = Required

Email Contact Permission

This query returns all Customers who have given permission to be contacted by email.

Figure 15-18 Email Contact Permission

▼ Email Contact Permission

Email contact

Valid Email Addresses

This query returns all Customers whose email address has been validated or not validated.

Figure 15-19 Valid Email Addresses

▼ Valid Email Addresses

Email address that is valid

Email Address Type

This query returns all Customers whose email type matches your selection.

Figure 15-20 Email Address Type

▼ Email Address Type

Email type = Required

Customer Attributes

This category is available at the Segment Query step of the Create Segment wizard, and controls the customers to select for the Stratified or Unstratified Segment.

String Attribute Values

This query returns all Customers with a string attribute whose value matches your entry.

Figure 15-21 String Attribute Values

▼ String Attribute Values

Customers with attribute name Required

having a string value = Required

Logical Attribute Values

This query returns all Customers with a logical attribute that has been assigned the selected value.

Figure 15-22 Logical Attribute Values

▼ Logical Attribute Values

Customers with attribute name Required

having value


Date Attribute Values


This query returns all Customers with a date attribute that has been assigned a date between the entered values.

Figure 15-23 Date Attribute Values

▼ Date Attribute Values

Customers with attribute name Required

having dates between  and Required

 Required

Purchase Activity

This category is available at the Segment Query step of the Create Segment wizard, and controls the customers to select for the Stratified or Unstratified Segment.

Lifetime Sales

This query returns all Customers whose lifetime sales amount matches what you have entered.

Figure 15-24 Lifetime Sales

▼ Lifetime Sales

Total sales Required

Lifetime Returns

This query returns all Customers whose lifetime returns amount matches what you have entered.

Figure 15-25 Lifetime Returns

▼ **Lifetime returns**

Returns total = Required

Year-To-Date Sales

This query returns all Customers whose year-to-date sales amount matches what you have entered.

Figure 15-26 Year-to-Date Sales

▼ **Year-To-Date Sales**

YTD sales = Required

Year-To-Date Returns

This query returns all Customers whose year-to-date returns amount matches what you have entered.

Figure 15-27 Year-to-Date Returns

▼ **Year-To-Date Returns**

YTD returns = Required


Customer First Purchase Date

This query returns active and valid Customers whose first use date matches the date criteria entered. The date must be a valid date.

Figure 15-28 Customer first Purchase Date

Customer First Purchase Date

Customer first purchase date =

Date 

Required


Customer Last Purchase Date

This query returns active and valid Customers whose last use date matches the date criteria entered. The date must be a valid date.

Figure 15-29 Customer Last Purchase Date

Customer Last Purchase Date

Customer last purchase date =

Date 

Required

Number of Visits Between Dates


This query returns all active Customers who made x visits between the dates specified. Both dates must be filled in and valid.

Figure 15-30 Number of Visits Between Dates


Number of Visits Between Dates

Number of visits =

Required

between the dates of  and

Required



Required

Value of Spending in the Last X Days

This query returns all the Customers who have spent a designated amount or more within the last X number of days.

Figure 15-31 Value of Spending in last X Days

▼ Value of Spending in the Last X Days

Customers spending at least Required

in the last days Required


Value of Spending Between Dates


This query returns all the Customers who have spent a designated amount or more within a designated range of dates.

Figure 15-32 Value of Spending Between Dates

▼ Value of Spending Between Dates

Sum of transactions = Required

between the dates of Date  and Required

Date  Required

Fixed Period Activity

This query returns active and valid Customers who have completed transactions between the business dates you have specified. Both dates must be filled in and valid.

Figure 15-33 Fixed Period Activity

▼ **Fixed Period Activity**

Purchases between the dates of

 and
Required


Required

Purchase in the Last X Months

This query returns all Customers who have made a purchase within the number of months you specify.

Figure 15-34 Purchase in the Last X Months

▼ **Purchase in the Last X Months**

Purchases in the last months.
Required

Purchase Within X Days

This query returns all Customers who have made a purchase within the number of days you specify.

Figure 15-35 Purchase Within X Days

▼ **Purchase Within X Days**

Purchase in last days
Required

Department in X Months

This query returns all Customers who have made a purchase from Department X within Y months.

Figure 15-36 Department in X Months

▼ Department in X Months

Department in months
Required Required

Class in X Months

This query returns all Customers who have purchased an item in the class you specified in the last X months.

Figure 15-37 Class in X Months

▼ Class in X Months

Class in months
Required Required

Returns in X Days

This query returns active and valid Customers who have made one or more returns in the number of days you have specified.

Figure 15-38 Returns in X Days

▼ Returns In X Days

Purchases returned in days
Required

Transactions from Location Group in Last X Days

This query returns the list of Customers who have performed a transaction at a location within a configured location group in the last X days.

Figure 15-39 Transactions from Location Group in Last X Days

▼ Transactions from Location Group in Last X Days

Transactions from Location Attribute Name Required

Attribute Value Required

in last days Required

Purchased Item from Location Group in Last X Days

This query returns Customers who have purchased one or more items from a location within a location group in the last X days.

Figure 15-40 Purchase Item from Location Group in Last X Days

▼ Purchased Item from Location Group in Last X Days

Have purchased item level ▼

Item Value Required

From Location attribute Name Required

Location attribute Value Required

in last days Required

Purchased Item with String Type Attribute in Last X Days

This query returns Customers who have purchased, within the last X days, an Item assigned a certain string-type Item Attribute with an indicated value.

Figure 15-41 Purchase Item with String Type Attribute in Last X Days

✓ Purchase Item with String type Attribute in last X days

Purchase from Item Attribute Name ▼

Attribute Value Required

in last days Required


Purchased Item with Date Type Attribute in Last X Days

This query returns Customers who have purchased, within the last X days, an Item assigned a certain date-type Item Attribute with an indicated value.

Figure 15-42 Purchased Item with Date Type Attribute in Last X Days

✓ Purchase Item with Date type Attribute in last X days

Purchase from Item Attribute Name ▼ Required

Attribute Value  Required

in last days Required

Purchased Item with Logical Type Attribute in Last X Days

This query returns Customers who have purchased, within the last X days, an Item assigned a certain logical-type Item Attribute with an indicated value.

Figure 15-43 Purchased Item with Logical Type Attribute in Last X Days

▼ Purchase Item with Logical type Attribute in last X days

Purchase from Item Attribute Name ▼

Attribute Value ▼

in last days
Required

Purchased Item with Numeric Type Attribute in Last X Days

This query returns Customers who have purchased, within the last X days, an Item assigned a certain numeric-type Item Attribute with an indicated value.

Figure 15-44 Purchased Item with Numeric Type Attribute in Last X Days

▼ Purchase Item with Numeric type Attribute in last X days

Purchase from Item Attribute Name ▼

Attribute Value ▼ Required

in last days
Required

Basic Programs

This category is available at the Segment Query step of the Create Segment wizard, and controls the customers to select for the Stratified or Unstratified Segment.

Big Spenders

This query returns all active Customers who have spent at least X dollars in at least Y visits. The amount spent must be a number between 0 and 1,000,000. The number of visits must be a number between 0 and 999.

Figure 15-45 Big Spenders

▼ **Big Spenders**

Customers who spent at least
Required

and visited at least times
Required

Reactivation Program

This query returns active and valid Customers who have shopped X times but not in the last Y months. The number of times shopped must be a number between 0 and 1000 and the number of months must be a number between 0 and 120

Figure 15-46 Reactivation Program

▼ **Reactivation Program**

Customers who've shopped times
Required

but not in the last months
Required

Happy Birthday

This query returns all active Customers who have a valid address, have given permission to be contacted by mail, and whose birthday is in the month you selected ([default] = January)

Figure 15-47 Happy Birthday

▼ **Happy Birthday**

Birthday Month is

Happy Anniversary

This query returns all active Customers who have a valid address, have given permission to be contacted by mail, and whose signup date is in the month you selected ([default] = January).

Figure 15-48 Happy Anniversary

✓ Happy Anniversary

Sign-up Month

Thank You!

This query returns active and valid Customers who have spent at least X dollars in the last Y days. The amount spent must be a number between 1 and 1,000,000 and the number of days must be a number between 1 and 1000 (i.e. 100 dollars in the last 30 days)

Figure 15-49 Thank You

✓ Thank You!

Customers spending at least
Required

in the last days
Required

Cross Sell Program

This query returns active and valid Customers who have purchased item X in the last Y days. The number of days must be a number between 1 and 1000

Figure 15-50 Cross Sell Program

✓ Cross Sell Program

Purchased Item ID
Required

in last days
Required

Big Spender - Location

This query returns active Customers who have spent at least X dollars in location Y. The amount spent must be a number between 0 and 1,000,000. The location can be any valid location in your organization. You can only specify one (1) location

Figure 15-51 Big Spender Store

▼ **Big Spender - Location**

Spent at least
Required

in location
Required

Anniversary Program

This query returns active Customers who have purchased item X between Y and Z days ago. The Purchased Item can be any valid item in your organization. The first number of days (Y) must be an integer between 0 and 1000 and the second number of days (Z) must be an integer between 1 and 1000.

Figure 15-52 Anniversary Program

▼ **Anniversary Program**

Purchased Item
Required

between and days ago.
Required Required

Segment Elements

This section

Customers in Segment

This query returns all Customer who are in the Segment ID specified.

Figure 15-53 Customers in Segment

✓ **Customers in Segment**
 Customers in segment where ID Required

Customers in Segment Strata Level

This query returns all Customers in a specified strata level within a Segment.

Figure 15-54 Customers in Segment Strata Level

✓ **Customers in Segment Strata Level**
 Customers in Segment ID Required
 with Strata Level Required

Promotion Activity

This category is available at the Segment Query step of the Create Segment wizard, and controls the customers to select for the Stratified or Unstratified Segment

Promotion Responders

This query returns all active Customers who have responded to the promotion specified (if Yes is selected in the dropdown selection) or not responded to the promotion (if No is selected). The promotion can be any valid promotion in your organization

Figure 15-55 Promotion Responders

✓ **Promotion Responders**
 Customers responding to promotion ID Required

Campaign Responders

This query returns all active Customers who have responded to the campaign specified (if Yes is selected in the dropdown selection) or not responded to the campaign (if No is selected). The campaign can be any valid campaign in your organization.

Figure 15-56 Campaign Responders

▼ Campaign Responders

Customers responding to campaign ID ▼

Required

Strategic Segments

This category is available at the Segment Query step of the Create Segment wizard, and controls the customers to select for the Stratified or Unstratified Segment

Customer Status

This query returns valid Customers whose status matches the one you have selected. Your options are ,ÁÚActive,À [default] and ,ÁÚInactive,À.

Figure 15-57 Customer Status

▼ Customer Status

Customer Status: ▼

Mail File

This query returns all active Customers who have given permission to be contacted by mail and have a valid address.

Figure 15-58 Mail File

▼ Mail File

Active customers in mail file

Mail File By Home Location

This query returns all active Customers whose home location is or is not the one you have specified, have given permission to be contacted by mail, and have a valid address.

Figure 15-59 Mail File by Home Location

▼ **Mail File By Home Location**

Mail File By Home Location
Required

Phone File

This query returns all active Customers who have given permission to be contacted by telephone and have a valid telephone number that is not their Fax number.

Figure 15-60 Phone File

▼ **Phone File**

Active customers in phone file.

Phone File By Home Location

This query returns all active Customers whose home location is or is not the one you have specified, have given permission to be contacted by phone, and have a valid telephone number that is not their Fax number.

Figure 15-61 Phone File by Home Location

▼ **Phone File By Home Location**

Phone File By Home Location
Required

Email File

This query returns all active Customers who have given permission to be contacted by email and have a valid email address

Figure 15-62 Email File

▼ **Email File**

Active customers in email file.

Email File By Home Location

This query returns all active Customers whose home location is or is not the one you have specified, have given permission to be contacted by email, and have a valid email address.

Figure 15-63 Email File by Home Location

▼ **Email File By Home Location**

Email File By Home Location = Required

Loyalty Segments

In the following queries, you can find the Program IDs by selecting Account -> Card Definition from the Application Menu. The resulting list page will list the Programs. Within the Card Definition, select the Card Prefix associated with the Program; Customer Engagement will then display the associated Programs and Program IDs.

You can find the Level ID by selecting a Loyalty Program from the Program List page (see previous paragraph) and clicking Edit-Level. The resulting page will list the levels along with their Level IDs for the selected program.

This category is available at the Segment Query step of the Create Segment wizard, and controls the customers to select for the Stratified or Unstratified Segment

Program X, Program Level Y, based on First Use Date

This query returns all active Customers who participate in Program X at Level Y and who first used their Loyalty Account within the last Z Days [default], Weeks, or Months

Figure 15-64 Program X, Program Y, Based on First Use Date

✓ Program X, Program Level Y, based on first use date

All members of program Required

Program Level Required

where first use date in the last Days Required

Program X, Program Level Y, based on Last Use Date

This query returns all active Customers who participate in Program X at Level Y and who last used their Loyalty Account within the last Z Days [default], Weeks, or Months

Figure 15-65 Program X, Program Y, Based on Last Date

✓ Program X, Program Level Y, based on last use date

All members of program Required

Program Level Required

where last use date in the last Days Required

Loyalty Points Earned YTD

This query returns all Customers whose year-to-date earned points balance matches the entered data.

Figure 15-66 Loyalty Points Earned YTD

✓ Loyalty Points Earned YTD

Program members with a YTD earned point balance

Required

Loyalty Points Earned LTD

This query returns all Customers whose lifetime-to-date earned points balance matches the entered data.

Figure 15-67 Loyalty Points Earned LTD

✓ **Loyalty Points Earned LTD**

Program members with a LTD earned point balance

Required

Any Program, Member/Non-Member

This query returns all Customers who have Cards/accounts that are or are not part of any Loyalty Program.

Figure 15-68 Any Program, Member/Non-Member

✓ **Any Program, Member/Non-Member**

All

of any Loyalty Program

Program X, Program Level Y, Member/Non-Member

This query returns all Customers who have Cards/accounts that are part of Program X and Program Level Y. Program Level Y must be an integer between 0 and 99999.

Figure 15-69 Program X, Program Level Y, Member/Non-Member

✓ **Program X, Program Level Y, Member/Non-Member**

All

of Program

Required

Program Level

Required

Program X, Program Level Y, Loyalty Activity by Location in Last Z Days

This query returns all active Customers who have Cards/accounts that are part of Program X and Program Level Y and who have a loyalty transaction of the type indicated from the location indicated (Location Attribute Name and Value) within the last number of days indicated and whose Loyalty Point total matches your selection.

Figure 15-70 Program X, Program Level Y, Loyalty Activity by Location in Last Z Days

Program X, Program Level Y, Loyalty Activity by Location In Last Z Days

All members of program Required

Program Level Required

having activity of type ▼

Location Attribute Name Required

Location Attribute Value Required

Business Date in Last Z Days Required

Accumulated point value ▼ Required

Any Program, Loyalty Activity by Location in Last X Days

This query returns all Customers who have Cards/accounts that are part of any Program and who have a loyalty transaction of the type indicated from the location indicated (Location Attribute Name and Value) within the last number of days indicated, and whose Loyalty Point total matches your selection.

Figure 15-71 Any Program, Loyalty Activity by Location in Last X Days**∨ Any Program, Loyalty Activity by Location In Last X Days**

All members of any program

having activity of type

All ▼

Location Attribute Name

Required

Location Attribute Value

Required

Business Date in Last X Days

Required

Accumulated point value

= ▼

Required

Strata Queries

These categories control how the customers are broken out into strata for a Stratified Segment, and are available at the Strata Query step of the Create Segment Wizard if a Strata Type of Loyalty or Transaction was selected at the Strata Field step.

The Strata Query step is not available when a Strata Type of Customer was selected at the Strata Field step. Also, this step is not available for an Unstratified Segment.

Loyalty Summary

These options are available at the Strata Query step if you select Strata Type = Loyalty at the Strata Field step.

Program Id X Program Level Y Active/Inactive

This query returns all the Customers who are members of a Program at a certain Program Level who are either Active or Inactive.



Figure 15-72 Program Id X Program Level Y Active/Inactive

✓ **Program Id X Program Level Y Active/Inactive**
 All members of program
Required
 Program Level
Required
 having an account status of

Loyalty Activity Type by Date Range

This query returns all the Customers who are members of a Program at a certain Program Level who have performed a certain account activity within a specified date range.

Figure 15-73 Loyalty Activity Type by Date Range

✓ **Loyalty Activity Type by Date Range**
 All members of program
Required
 program level
Required
 activity type
 with activities between the dates of 
Required
 and 
Required

Loyalty Activity Type in Last X Days

This query returns all the Customers who are members of a Program at a certain Program Level who have performed a certain account activity within a certain number of days in the past.

Figure 15-74 Loyalty Activity Type in Last X Days

▼ Loyalty Activity Type in Last X Days

All members of program Required

program level Required

activity type All ▼

with activities in the last days Required

Loyalty Activity Type YTD

This query returns all the Customers who are members of a Program at a certain Program Level who have performed a certain account activity within the year to date.

Figure 15-75 Loyalty Activity Type YTD

▼ Loyalty Activity Type YTD

All members of program Required

Program Level Required

Activity Type All ▼

Loyalty Activity Type LTD

This query returns all the Customers who are members of a Program at a certain Program Level who have performed a certain account activity within the lifetime to date of the account.

Figure 15-76 Loyalty Activity Type LTD

▼ Loyalty Activity Type LTD

All members of program Required

Program Level Required

Activity Type All ▼

Transaction Criteria

These options are available at the Strata Query step if you select Strata Type = Transaction and Based on = Header at the Strata Field step

Location

This query returns the list of Customers who performed a transaction at a certain location.

Figure 15-77 Location

▼ Location

Location: Required

Transactions in last X Months

This query returns the list of Customers who performed a transaction within a certain number of days in the past.

Figure 15-78 Transactions in last X Months

▼ Transactions in last X months


Transactions in last months Required


Transaction Date Range

This query returns the list of Customers who performed a transaction within a certain date range.

Figure 15-79 Transaction Date Range

▼ **Transaction Date Range**

From Date:  Required

to Date:  Required

Subtotal Amount

This query returns the list of Customers who have had a subtotal of a certain, defined value.

Figure 15-80 Subtotal Amount

▼ **Subtotal Amount**

Subtotal = Required

Transaction from Location Group in Last X Days

This query returns the list of Customers who have performed a transaction at a location within a configured location group in the last X days.

Figure 15-81 Transaction from Location Group in Last X Days

▼ **Transactions from Location Group in Last X Days**

Transactions from Location Attribute Name Required

Attribute Value Required

in last days Required

Line Item Detail

These options are available at the Strata Query step if you select Strata Type = Transaction and Based on = Detail at the Strata Field step.

Location

This query returns the list of Customers who performed a transaction at a certain location.

Figure 15-82 Location

▼ Location

Location:
Required

Transactions in last X Months

This query returns the list of Customers who performed a transaction within a certain number of days in the past.

Figure 15-83 Transactions in Last X Months

▼ Transactions in last X months


Transactions in last months
Required

Transaction Date Range

This query returns the list of Customers who performed a transaction within a certain date range.

Figure 15-84 Transaction Date Range

▼ Transaction Date Range

From Date: 
Required

to Date: 
Required

Item Department

This query returns the list of Customers who performed a transactions containing an item belonging to a certain item department.

Figure 15-85 Item Department

▼ Item Department

Department Id = Required

Item Class

This query returns the list of Customers who performed a transaction containing an item belonging to a certain item class.

Figure 15-86 Item Class

▼ Item Class

Item class = Required

Item Style

This query returns the list of Customers who performed a transaction containing an item belonging to a certain item style.

Figure 15-87 Item Style

▼ Item Style

Style Id = Required

Returned Item

This query returns the list of Customers who have either returned or not returned items in a transaction.

Figure 15-88 Returned Item

▼ Returned Items

Returned Items:

Item Price

This query returns the list of Customers with a transaction containing an item of a certain price.

Figure 15-89 Item Price

▼ Item Price

Item Price:
Required

Item Quantity

This query returns the list of Customers with a transaction containing a certain quantity of any item.

Figure 15-90 Item Quantity

▼ Item Quantity

Item Quantity:
Required

Item ID

This query returns the list of Customers who performed a transaction containing a certain item.

Figure 15-91 Item ID

▼ Item Id

Item Id
Required

Purchased Item from Location Group in Last Y Days

This query returns the list of Customers who purchased an item within a certain set of items, from a certain set of locations, within a certain number of days in the past.

Figure 15-92 Purchased Item from Location Group in Last Y Days

✓ Purchased Item from Location Group in Last Y Days

Have purchased item level

Item Value
Required

From Location attribute Name
Required

Location attribute Value
Required

in last days
Required

A

Calculations

This appendix provides additional information on a few of the core retail calculations to help aid your understanding. It is important to understand that a particular measure can be calculated in many ways because it is impacted by many different input measures. When a value is changed that impacts the other editable values, the impacted measures that then need to be recalculated are protected so that you cannot also update the values. This prevents deadlock or circular calculation in which you do not know where to start recalculating.

Calculations on Scorecards

The following table lists the calculations used in Scorecards.

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation
Promotion Scorecard	revenue LY (tile)	promotion performance	SUM(CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT.DIRECT_REVENUE)
	average transaction (tile)		
	average units (tile)		TABLE: CMP_PROMO_TRAN_RESULT
		direct revenue	SUM(TRAN_TOTAL - INDIRECT_REVENUE)
		indirect revenue	SUM(INDIRECT_REVENUE)
		total revenue	SUM(TRAN_TOTAL)
		Cost of goods sold	SUM(COST_OF_GOODS_TOTAL)
		markdowns	SUM(MARKDOWN_TOTAL)
		awards	Number of Award accounts (AWD_AWARD_ACCT.ACCOUNT_ID) multiplied by the award certificate amount (CMP_PROMO_AWARD_CERTIFICATE.AMOUNT)
		gross profit	SUM(TRAN_TOTAL) - SUM(COST_OF_GOODS_TOTAL)
		margin %	gross profit / SUM(TRAN_TOTAL) * 100
		promotion cost	SUM(CMP_OFFER.FIXED_OFFER_COST) + SUM(COST_PER_THOUSAND) + (Sum of all associated CMP_PROMO_COST.AMOUNT)
		net profits	gross profit - promotion cost
		Promotion Cost per Customer per audience	promotion cost / total number of customers in target audience (CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET)

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation
Promotion Scorecard continued		Promotion Cost per responded customer	<p>promotion cost / total number of customers in target audience that have responded (CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET where CUST_RESPONDED_FLAG = 1)</p> <p>Note: If Target name is null or "Unidentified", the response will include a count of the distinct transactions from the CMP_PROMO_TRAN_RESULT table for the promotion.</p>
		Revenue per customer in audience	<p>direct revenue / total number of customers in target audience (CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET) (For Points promotions this will be always be 0)</p>
		Revenue per Responded Customer	<p>direct revenue / total number of customers in target audience that have responded (CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET where CUST_RESPONDED_FLAG = 1)</p> <p>Note: If Target name is null or "Unidentified", the response will include a count of the distinct transactions from the CMP_PROMO_TRAN_RESULT table for the promotion.</p> <p>(For Points promotions the INDIRECT_REVENUE is used in the calculation)</p>
		Net Profit per customer in audience	<p>net profits / total number of customers in target audience (CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET)</p>
	average units (tile) continued	Net Profit per responded customer	<p>net profits / total number of customers in target audience that have responded (CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET where CUST_RESPONDED_FLAG = 1)</p> <p>Note: If Target name is null or "Unidentified", the response will include a count of the distinct transactions from the CMP_PROMO_TRAN_RESULT table for the promotion.</p>
		value of discount	<p>SUM(CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT.TOTAL_DISCOUNT) for the coupon code, Promotion and target</p>
		average sales by coupon	<p>SUM(CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT.DIRECT_REVENUE) / Count of distinct RTL_TRAN_ID (Transaction Ids) in CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT for the Coupon Code, Promotion and Offer.</p>
		coupon revenue	<p>SUM(CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT.DIRECT_REVENUE) for the Coupon Code, Promotion and Offer.</p>

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation
		Estimated distribution	CMP_PROMODEAL_COUPONCODE.ESTIMATED_DISTRIBUTION (If CMP_PROMO.COUPON_SERIALIZED_FLAG is set, then CMP_PROMODEAL_COUPONCODE.COUPON_GEN_COUNT is used instead)
		response %	(Count of distinct customers in CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT for the coupon code, promotion, offer and target / Estimated distribution) * 100
	points for purchase	loyalty points tile	SUM(NUM_PTS) from LYL_LOYALTY_ACCT_ACT for the promotion
		average points per transaction	SUM(CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT.LOYALTY_POINTS) / Count of distinct CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT.RTL_TRAN_ID (Transaction Ids)
	response rate (tile)	total	COUNT of distinct Customer Ids in CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET for the promotion and target.
		sent	COUNT of CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET records where the EMAIL_DELIVERED_FLAG is set for the promotion and target.
		opened	COUNT of CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET records where the EMAIL_OPENED_FLAG is set for the promotion and target.
		clicked	COUNT of CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET records where the EMAIL_CLICKED_THROUGH_FLAG is set for the promotion and target.
		undeliverable	COUNT of CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET records where the EMAIL_UNDELIVERED_FLAG is set for the promotion and target.
		Net targeted	total - undeliverable
		net delivery	sent - undeliverable
		respondents	COUNT of distinct Customer Ids in CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET where the CUST_RESPONDED_FLAG = 1 for the promotion and target.
Promotion Scorecard continued	response rate (tile) continued	non- respondents	total - respondents
		net response rate	respondents / net delivery
		Response rate	respondents / total

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation
Offer Scorecard	Revenue LTD (tile)	award value	"For points promotions - Sum of the number of points (NUM_PTS) from Loyalty Account Activity (LYL_LOYALTY_ACCT_ACT) for the promotion and target. For other promotions: Award Certificate amount multiplied by the number of accounts linked to the promotion and target."
		redeemed award value	award value - remaining value (which is the sum of awd_award_coupons.amount for the award accounts linked to the promotion and target)
		direct revenue	"SUM(CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT.DIRECT_REVENUE) for the offer For Points Promotions, this value is always 0."
		last month revenue	This value is the total direct revenue as calculated above for the duration selected on the scorecard.
		response rate	respondents / Count of distinct customers from CMP_CUST_PROMO_TARGET for the promotion and offer
	Average Unit Retail (tile)	respondents	Count of distinct customers from CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT for the offer.
		Direct Revenue	"SUM(CMP_PROMODEAL.DIRECT_REVENUE) For Points Promotions - Total Points = SUM(CMP_PROMODEAL.LOYALTY_POINTS) "
		total cost of goods sold	SUM(TRN_LINE_ITEM.ITEM_UNIT_COST) where VOID_FLAG=0 AND LINEITM_TYPCODE = Sale AND CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT record exists for the transaction and offer
		total discounts	SUM(CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT.TOTAL_DISCOUNT) for the offer
		average units sold	SUM(TRN_LINE_ITEM.ITEM_QUANTITY) where VOID_FLAG=0 AND LINEITM_TYPCODE = Sale AND CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT record exists for the transaction and offer / Count of distinct RTL_TRAN_ID (Transaction Ids) from the CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT table for the offer.
Segment Scorecard	stratified, unstratified, personal list	margin %	(net profit / direct revenue) * 100
		net profits	direct revenue - total cost of goods sold
		customer in segment	Count of CUST_ID from CST_CUSTOMER joined to QRY_USER_QUERY and QRY_CUSTOMER_SEGMENT tables for the segment

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation
		average value	AVG(TOTAL_SALES_AMT) from CST_CUSTOMER joined to QRY_USER_QUERY and QRY_CUSTOMER_SEGMENT tables for the segment
		average days since purchase	AVG(Current date - CST_CUSTOMER.LAST_TRANS_DATE) joined to QRY_USER_QUERY and QRY_CUSTOMER_SEGMENT tables for the segment
Segment Scorecard continued	stratified, unstratified, personal list continued	average purchases LTD	AVG(CST_CUSTOMER.TOTAL_TRANS_COUNT) joined to QRY_USER_QUERY and QRY_CUSTOMER_SEGMENT tables for the segment
		LTD Spend	AVG(CST_CUSTOMER.TOTAL_SALES_AMT) joined to QRY_USER_QUERY and QRY_CUSTOMER_SEGMENT tables for the segment
		YTD Spend	AVG(CST_CUSTOMER.YTD_SALES_AMT) joined to QRY_USER_QUERY and QRY_CUSTOMER_SEGMENT tables for the segment
Program Home	all active program		Count of total programs in ACT_PROGRAM where the ACTIVE_FLAG = 1
	active tender outstanding balance		SUM(SVC_TENDER_ACCT.BALANCE * EXCHANGE_RATE obtained from DRV_CURRENCY_EXCHANGE_RATES) for all SVC_TENDER_PROGRAM records
	active award certificates/ value		SUM(AWD_AWARD_COUPONS.AWARD_AMOUNT * EXCHANGE_RATE obtained from DTV_CURRENCY_EXCHANGE_RATES) from AWD_AWARD_ACCT (Award accounts) where the EXPIRATION_DATE is null or greater than/equal to the current date.
	active loyalty outstanding points		SUM(EARNED_PTS_BALANCE) from LYL_LOYALTY_ACCT (Loyalty accounts)
Promotion Home	promotion revenue LTD		SUM(CMP_PROMO_TRAN_RESULT.TRAN_TOTAL) for all promotions that are active on the current date and not terminated.
	offer revenue LTD		SUM(CMP_PROMO_DEAL_RESULT.DIRECT_REVENUE) for all active promotions on the current date.
Segment Home	total active		Count of QRY_USER_QUERY (segment) records where there is a Job associated (job_job_def) that has the enabled_flag set.

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation	Metric/Graph
Tender Program Scorecard	accounts analysis (toggle)	active account rate	The percentage of currently active accounts out of the total number of cards.	metric

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation	Metric/Graph
		current active accounts	The total number of accounts currently active for the program.	metric
		total cards	The total number of cards in all of the cards series for the program.	metric
		card series	The number of card series for the program.	metric
		active accounts	The number of active accounts by month.	graph
	activity analysis (toggle)	issued value LTD	The total value issued lifetime to date to all active account holders. This includes the activation amount, recharge amount and any amounts returned to the account.	metric
		issued value MTD	The total value issued month to date to all active account holders. This includes the activation amount, recharge amount and any amounts returned to the account.	metric
		redeemed value LTD	The total value redeemed lifetime to date for all active account holders. This includes the cash out amount, post authorize amount, redeemed amount and service charge amount.	metric
		redeemed value MTD	The total value redeemed month to date for all active account holders. This includes the cash out amount, post authorize amount, redeemed amount and service charge amount.	metric
		outstanding balance	The total value issued that has not yet been redeemed for all active account holders.	metric
		average balance per account	The average balance held on account for all active account holders. This is calculated by dividing the total outstanding balance by the total number of active accounts.	metric
		issued value	The total value issued by month.	graph
		redeemed value	The total value redeemed by month.	graph
		outstanding balance value	The total outstanding balance for all active account holders by month.	graph

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation	Metric/Graph
Award Program Scorecard	analysis	redemption rate LTD	The percentage of lifetime to date awards redeemed from those that have been issued.	metric
		outstanding e-award value	The total value of e-awards available for redemption.	metric
		customers in program	The percentage of customers that are active members for the program. This includes both primary and secondary account holders.	metric
		current active accounts	The total number of currently active accounts. This includes registered and anonymous accounts.	metric
		registered accounts total	The total number of accounts that are registered to customers and are not anonymous for the program.	metric
		registered accounts percentage	The percentage of active accounts that are registered to customers compared to all accounts (registered plus anonymous) for the program.	metric
		issued awards	The total number of award certificates and e-awards issued by month.	graph
		issued award certificates	The total number of award certificates issued by month.	graph
		issued e-awards	The total number of e-awards issued by month.	graph
		redeemed awards	The total number of award certificates and e-awards redeemed by month.	graph
		redeemed award certificates	The total number of award certificates redeemed by month.	graph
		redeemed e-awards	The total number of e-awards redeemed by month.	graph
		outstanding awards	The total number of award certificates and e-awards issued but not yet redeemed by month.	graph
		outstanding award certificates	The total number of award certificates issued but not yet redeemed by month.	graph
outstanding e-awards	The total number of e-awards issued but not yet redeemed by month.	graph		
outstanding e-award balance	The total value of e-awards available for redemption by month.	graph		

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation	Metric/Graph
Loyalty Program Scorecard	accounts analysis (toggle)	customers in program	The percentage of customers that are active members for the program. This includes both primary and secondary account holders.	metric
		current active accounts	The total number of accounts currently active for the program.	metric
		registered accounts total	The total number of accounts that are registered to customers and are not anonymous for the program.	metric
		registered accounts percentage	The percentage of active accounts that are registered to customers compared to all accounts (registered plus anonymous) for the program.	metric
		newly registered accounts	The total newly registered accounts by month. The total can be filtered down by loyalty level.	graph
	accounts analysis (toggle) accounts summary	total registered accounts	The total registered accounts by month. The total can be filtered down by loyalty level.	graph
		percent of program	The percentage of all active accounts in the loyalty program level compared to the entire program. This includes both registered and anonymous account holders.	accounts summary
		points issued	The total number of lifetime to date points issued to all active account holders for the loyalty level. This includes both earned and bonus points. Escrow points are excluded.	accounts summary
		points redeemed	The total number of lifetime to date points redeemed by active account holders for the loyalty level.	accounts summary
		members who received points	The total number of unique customer ID's associate with a points issue transaction for the loyalty program level. This includes both primary and secondary account holders.	accounts summary

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation	Metric/Graph
		average points balance	The average points balance for all active accounts for the loyalty program level. This includes both registered and anonymous account holders. This is calculated by dividing the total earned points balance by the total number of active accounts.	accounts summary
	activity analysis (toggle)	points issued LTD	The total number of lifetime to date points issued to all active account holders for the loyalty level. This includes both earned and bonus points. Escrow points are excluded.	metric
		points issued MTD	The total number of month to date points issued to all active account holders for the loyalty level. This includes both earned and bonus points. Escrow points are excluded.	metric
		points redeemed LTD	The total number of lifetime to date points redeemed by active account holders for the program.	metric
		points redeemed MTD	The total number of month to date points redeemed by active account holders for the program.	metric
		outstanding points	The total number of points issued that have not yet been redeemed. This includes both earned and bonus points. Escrow points are excluded.	metric
		average balance per account	The average points balance for all active accounts for the loyalty program. This includes both registered and anonymous account holders. This is calculated by dividing the total earned points balance by the total number of active accounts.	metric
		issued value	The total points issued by month. The total can be filtered down by loyalty level.	graph
		redeemed value	The total points redeemed by month. The total can be filtered down by loyalty level.	graph
		outstanding balance value	The total points issued but not yet redeemed by month. The total can be filtered down by loyalty level.	graph

ORCE Feature	Location	Tile/Data Field	Calculation	Metric/Graph
	activity analysis (toggle) accounts summary	percent of program	The percentage of all active accounts in the loyalty program level compared to the entire program. This includes both registered and anonymous account holders.	accounts summary
		points issued	The total number of lifetime to date points issued to all active account holders for the loyalty level. This includes both earned and bonus points. Escrow points are excluded.	accounts summary
		points redeemed	The total number of lifetime to date points redeemed by active account holders for the loyalty level.	accounts summary
		members who received points	The total number of unique customer ID's associate with a points issue transaction for the loyalty program level. This includes both primary and secondary account holders.	accounts summary
		average points balance	The average points balance for all active accounts for the loyalty program level. This includes both registered and anonymous account holders. This is calculated by dividing the total earned points balance by the total number of active accounts.	accounts summary